

# PROJECT MANUAL

WEST POINT JR SEMINARY

4342 W 920 SOUTH ST.  
WEST POINT, UT

501-9425

THE CHURCH OF  
**JESUS CHRIST**  
OF LATTER-DAY SAINTS

May 9,2024



# TABLE of CONTENTS

## PROCUREMENT AND CONTRACTING REQUIREMENTS GROUP

### INTRODUCTORY INFORMATION

PROJECT TITLE PAGE  
CERTIFICATIONS PAGE  
SEALS PAGE  
TABLE OF CONTENTS  
LIST OF DRAWING SHEETS

### DIVISION 00: PROCUREMENT AND CONTRACTING REQUIREMENTS

#### PROCUREMENT REQUIREMENTS SUBGROUP

##### 00 1000 SOLICITATION

INVITATION TO BID

##### 00 2000 INSTRUCTIONS FOR PROCUREMENT

INSTRUCTIONS TO BIDDERS

##### 00 3000 AVAILABLE INFORMATION

INFORMATION AVAILABLE TO BIDDERS  
GEOTECHNICAL DATA

##### 00 4000 PROCUREMENT FORMS AND SUPPLEMENTS

BID FORM  
EQUAL PRODUCT APPROVAL REQUEST FORM  
SUBCONTRACTORS AND MAJOR MATERIALS SUPPLIERS LIST

##### 00 4500 REPRESENTATIONS AND CERTIFICATIONS

CONSTRUCTION MATERIAL ASBESTOS REPRESENTATION

#### CONTRACTING REQUIREMENTS SUBGROUP

##### 00 5000 CONTRACTING FORMS AND SUPPLEMENTS

AGREEMENT BETWEEN OWNER AND CONTRACTOR FOR A FIXED SUM (US)

##### 00 7000 CONDITIONS OF THE CONTRACT

GENERAL CONDITIONS FOR A FIXED SUM (US)  
SUPPLEMENTARY CONDITIONS FIXED SUM (US)

## SPECIFICATIONS GROUP

#### GENERAL REQUIREMENTS SUBGROUP

### DIVISION 01: GENERAL REQUIREMENTS

**01 1000 SUMMARY**

01 1100 SUMMARY OF WORK  
01 1200 MULTIPLE CONTRACT SUMMARY  
01 1400 WORK RESTRICTIONS

**01 2000 PRICE AND PAYMENT PROCEDURES**

01 2900 PAYMENT PROCEDURES

**01 3000 ADMINISTRATIVE REQUIREMENTS**

01 3100 PROJECT MANAGEMENT AND COORDINATION  
01 3200 CONSTRUCTION PROGRESS DOCUMENTATION  
01 3300 SUBMITTAL PROCEDURES  
01 3500 SPECIAL PROCEDURES

**01 4000 QUALITY REQUIREMENTS**

01 4000 QUALITY REQUIREMENTS  
01 4200 REFERENCES  
01 4301 QUALITY ASSURANCE - QUALIFICATIONS  
01 4523 TESTING AND INSPECTION SERVICES  
01 4546 DUCT TESTING, ADJUSTING, AND BALANCING

**01 5000 TEMPORARY FACILITIES AND CONTROLS**

01 5100 TEMPORARY UTILITIES  
01 5200 CONSTRUCTION FACILITIES  
01 5400 CONSTRUCTION AIDS  
01 5600 TEMPORARY BARRIERS AND ENCLOSURES  
01 5700 TEMPORARY CONTROLS  
01 5800 PROJECT IDENTIFICATION

**01 6000 PRODUCT REQUIREMENTS**

01 6100 COMMON PRODUCT REQUIREMENTS  
01 6200 PRODUCT OPTIONS  
01 6400 OWNER-FURNISHED PRODUCTS  
01 6600 PRODUCT DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING REQUIREMENTS

**01 7000 EXECUTION AND CLOSEOUT REQUIREMENTS**

01 7300 EXECUTION  
01 7400 CLEANING AND WASTE MANAGEMENT  
01 7700 CLOSEOUT PROCEDURES  
01 7800 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

**FACILITY CONSTRUCTION SUBGROUP****DIVISION 02: EXISTING CONDITIONS: NOT USED****DIVISION 03: CONCRETE****03 1000 CONCRETE FORMING AND ACCESSORIES**

03 1113 STRUCTURAL CAST-IN-PLACE CONCRETE FORMING  
03 1511 CONCRETE ANCHORS

**03 2000 CONCRETE REINFORCING**

03 2100 REINFORCEMENT BARS  
03 2116 EPOXY-COATED REINFORCEMENT STEEL BARS

**03 3000 CAST-IN-PLACE CONCRETE**

03 3111 CAST-IN-PLACE STRUCTURAL CONCRETE  
03 3517 CONCRETE SEALER-FINISHING  
03 3923 MEMBRANE CONCRETE CURING

**03 6000 GROUTING**

03 6213 NON-METALLIC NON-SHRINK GROUT

**DIVISION 04: MASONRY****04 0500 COMMON WORK RESULTS FOR MASONRY**

04 0501 COMMON MASONRY REQUIREMENTS  
04 0513 CEMENT AND LIME MASONRY MORTARING

**04 2000 UNIT MASONRY**

04 2223 ARCHITECTURAL CONCRETE UNIT MASONRY

**04 7000 MANUFACTURED MASONRY AND STONE**

04 7300 MANUFACTURED MASONRY VENEER

**DIVISION 05: METALS****05 0500 COMMON WORK RESULTS OF METALS**

05 0503 SHOP-APPLIED METAL COATINGS  
05 0523 METAL FASTENINGS

**05 1000 STRUCTURAL METAL FRAMING**

05 1223 STRUCTURAL STEEL FOR BUILDINGS

**05 5000 METAL FABRICATIONS**

05 5133 VERTICAL METAL LADDERS

**DIVISION 06: WOOD, PLASTICS, AND COMPOSITES****06 0500 COMMON WORK RESULTS OF WOOD, PLASTICS, AND COMPOSITES**

06 0573 PRESERVATIVE WOOD TREATMENT

**06 1000 ROUGH CARPENTRY**

06 1011 WOOD FASTENINGS  
06 1100 WOOD FRAMING  
06 1636 WOOD PANEL PRODUCT SHEATHING  
06 1643 GYPSUM SHEATHING  
06 1712 STRUCTURAL COMPOSITE LUMBER: SCL  
06 1733 WOOD 'I' JOISTS  
06 1800 GLUED-LAMINATED CONSTRUCTION

**06 2000 FINISH CARPENTRY**

06 2001 COMMON FINISH CARPENTRY REQUIREMENTS  
06 2024 DOOR, FRAME, AND FINISH HARDWARE INSTALLATION

06 2710 SHELVING

#### **06 4000 ARCHITECTURAL WOODWORK**

06 4001 COMMON ARCHITECTURAL WOODWORK REQUIREMENTS  
06 4114 WOOD-VENEER-FACED ARCHITECTURAL CABINETS

### **DIVISION 07: THERMAL AND MOISTURE PROTECTION**

#### **07 1000 DAMPPROOFING AND WATERPROOFING**

07 1113 BITUMINOUS DAMPPROOFING

#### **07 2000 THERMAL PROTECTION**

07 2113 BOARD INSULATION  
07 2116 BLANKET INSULATION  
07 2500 WEATHER BARRIERS  
07 2616 BELOW-GRADE VAPOR RETARDERS

#### **07 4000 ROOFING AND SIDING PANELS**

07 4600 RAINSCREEN DRAINAGE MAT  
07 4616 ALUMINUM SIDING

#### **07 5000 MEMBRANE ROOFING**

07 5419 POLYVINYL-CHLORIDE ROOFING: PVC

#### **07 6000 FLASHING AND SHEET METAL**

07 6113 STANDING SEAM SHEET METAL ROOFING  
07 6210 GALVANIZED STEEL FLASHING AND TRIM  
07 6311 METAL SOFFIT PANELS  
07 6322 STEEL FASCIA

#### **07 7000 ROOF AND WALL SPECIALTIES AND ACCESSORIES**

07 7123 MANUFACTURED GUTTERS AND DOWNSPOUTS  
07 7233 ROOF HATCHES

#### **07 9000 JOINT PROTECTION**

07 9213 ELASTOMERIC JOINT SEALANTS  
07 9219 ACOUSTICAL JOINT SEALANTS

### **DIVISION 08: OPENINGS**

#### **08 0100 OPERATION AND MAINTENANCE OF OPENINGS**

08 0601 HARDWARE GROUP AND KEYING SCHEDULES

#### **08 1000 DOORS AND FRAMES**

08 1213 HOLLOW METAL FRAMES  
08 1313 HOLLOW METAL DOORS  
08 1429 FLUSH WOOD DOORS: FACTORY-FINISHED, CLEAR

#### **08 4000 ENTRANCES, STOREFRONTS, AND CURTAIN WALLS**

08 4113 ALUMINUM-FRAMED ENTRANCES AND STOREFRONTS

#### **08 5000 WINDOWS**

08 5113 ALUMINUM WINDOWS

## **08 7000 HARDWARE**

08 7101 COMMON FINISH HARDWARE REQUIREMENTS  
08 7102 HANGING DEVICES  
08 7103 SECURING DEVICES  
08 7104 OPERATING TRIM  
08 7106 CLOSING DEVICES  
08 7107 PROTECTIVE PLATES AND TRIM  
08 7108 STOPS AND HOLDERS  
08 7109 ACCESSORIES  
08 7913 KEY STORAGE AND CONTROL EQUIPMENT

## **08 8000 GLAZING**

08 8000 GLAZING

## **08 9000 LOUVERS AND VENTS**

# **DIVISION 09: FINISHES**

## **09 0500 COMMON WORK RESULTS FOR FINISHES**

09 0503 FLOORING SUBSTRATE PREPARATION

## **09 2000 PLASTER AND GYPSUM BOARD**

09 2116 GYPSUM BOARD ASSEMBLIES  
09 2226 METAL SUSPENSION SYSTEM: GYPSUM BOARD

## **09 3000 TILING**

09 3000 TILING

## **09 5000 CEILINGS**

09 5113 ACOUSTICAL PANEL CEILINGS  
09 5323 METAL ACOUSTICAL SUSPENSION ASSEMBLIES

## **09 6000 FLOORING**

09 6816 SHEET CARPET: BACK CUSHION, DIRECT GLUE

## **09 8000 ACOUSTICAL TREATMENT**

## **09 9000 PAINTS AND COATINGS**

09 9001 COMMON PAINTING AND COATING REQUIREMENTS  
09 9112 EXTERIOR PAINTED FERROUS METAL  
09 9113 EXTERIOR PAINTED GALVANIZED METAL  
09 9121 INTERIOR PAINTED POURED CONCRETE  
09 9123 INTERIOR PAINTED GYPSUM BOARD, PLASTER  
09 9124 INTERIOR PAINTED METAL  
09 9125 INTERIOR PAINTED WOOD  
09 9324 INTERIOR CLEAR-FINISHED HARDWOOD  
09 9413 INTERIOR TEXTURED FINISHING

# **DIVISION 10: SPECIALTIES**

## **10 1000 INFORMATION SPECIALTIES**

- 10 1424 ENGRAVED STONE PANEL SIGNAGE
- 10 1453 TRAFFIC SIGNAGE
- 10 1495 MISCELLANEOUS INTERIOR SIGNAGE

**10 2000 INTERIOR SPECIALTIES**

- 10 2600 RUB RAILS
- 10 2613 CORNER GUARDS
- 10 2813 COMMERCIAL TOILET ACCESSORIES

**10 4000 SAFETY SPECIALTIES**

- 10 4400 FIRE PROTECTION SPECIALTIES

**10 5000 STORAGE SPECIALTIES**

- 10 5516 MAIL COLLECTION BOXES

**10 8000 OTHER SPECIALTIES**

- 10 8200 LOUVERED ROOFTOP EQUIPMENT SCREENS

**DIVISION 11: EQUIPMENT: NOT USED**

**DIVISION 12: FURNISHINGS**

**12 2000 WINDOW TREATMENTS**

- 12 2123 ROLL-DOWN BLINDS

**DIVISIONS 13 THROUGH 19: NOT USED**

**FACILITY SERVICES SUBGROUP**

**DIVISION 20: NOT USED**

**DIVISION 21: NOT USED**

**DIVISION 22: PLUMBING**

**22 0500 COMMON WORK RESULTS FOR PLUMBING**

- 22 0501 COMMON PLUMBING REQUIREMENTS
- 22 0529 HANGERS AND SUPPORTS FOR PLUMBING PIPING AND EQUIPMENT
- 22 0548 VIBRATION AND SEISMIC CONTROLS FOR PLUMBING PIPING AND EQUIPMENT
- 22 0553 IDENTIFICATION FOR PLUMBING PIPES AND EQUIPMENT
- 22 0719 PLUMBING PIPING INSULATION

**22 1000 PLUMBING PIPES AND PUMPS**

- 22 1116 DOMESTIC WATER PIPING
- 22 1119 DOMESTIC WATER PIPING SPECIALTIES
- 22 1313 FACILITY SEWERS
- 22 1319 FACILITY SANITARY SEWER SPECIALTIES

**22 3000 PLUMBING EQUIPMENT**

- 22 3305 ELECTRIC DOMESTIC WATER HEATERS

**22 4000 PLUMBING FIXTURES**

22 4126 RESIDENTIAL DISPOSERS  
22 4213 COMMERCIAL WATER CLOSETS AND URINALS  
22 4216 COMMERCIAL LAVATORIES AND SINKS  
22 4700 DRINKING FOUNTAINS AND WATER COOLERS

**DIVISION 23: HEATING, VENTILATING, AND AIR-CONDITIONING****23 0500 COMMON WORK RESULTS FOR HVAC**

23 0501 COMMON HVAC REQUIREMENTS  
23 0529 HANGERS AND SUPPORTS FOR HVAC PIPING AND EQUIPMENT  
23 0548 VIBRATION AND SEISMIC CONTROLS FOR HVAC PIPING AND EQUIPMENT  
23 0553 IDENTIFICATION FOR HVAC PIPING AND EQUIPMENT  
23 0713 DUCT INSULATION  
23 0719 HVAC PIPING INSULATION  
23 0933 ELECTRIC AND ELECTRONIC CONTROL SYSTEM FOR HVAC

**23 1000 FACILITY FUEL SYSTEMS**

23 1123 FACILITY NATURAL GAS PIPING

**23 2000 HVAC PIPING AND PUMPS**

23 2300 REFRIGERANT PIPING  
23 2600 CONDENSATE DRAIN PIPING

**23 3000 HVAC AIR DISTRIBUTION**

23 3001 COMMON DUCT REQUIREMENTS  
23 3114 LOW-PRESSURE METAL DUCTS  
23 3300 AIR DUCT ACCESSORIES  
23 3316 FIRE AND SMOKE DAMPERS  
23 3346 FLEXIBLE DUCTS  
23 3401 EXHAUST FANS  
23 3713 DIFFUSERS, REGISTERS, AND GRILLES  
23 3714 LOUVERS AND VENTS

**23 7000 CENTRAL HVAC EQUIPMENT**

23 7416 PACKAGED, SMALL-CAPACITY, ROOFTOP AIR-CONDITIONING UNITS

**DIVISION 24 & 25: NOT USED****DIVISION 26: ELECTRICAL****26 0500 COMMON WORK RESULTS FOR ELECTRICAL**

26 0501 COMMON ELECTRICAL REQUIREMENTS  
26 0503 ELECTRICAL UTILITY SERVICES  
26 0519 LINE-VOLTAGE ELECTRICAL POWER CONDUCTORS AND CABLES  
26 0523 CONTROL-VOLTAGE ELECTRICAL CABLES  
26 0526 GROUNDING AND BONDING FOR ELECTRICAL SYSTEMS  
26 0533 RACEWAY AND BOXES FOR ELECTRICAL SYSTEMS  
26 0613 ELECTRICAL EQUIPMENT MOUNTING HEIGHT SCHEDULE  
26 0924 LIGHTING CONTROL SYSTEM

**26 2000 LOW-VOLTAGE ELECTRICAL TRANSMISSION**

26 2417 CIRCUIT-BREAKER PANELBOARDS  
26 2726 WIRING DEVICES



26 2816 ENCLOSED SWITCHES AND CIRCUIT BREAKERS

**26 5000 LIGHTING**

26 5100 INTERIOR LIGHTING  
26 5121 INTERIOR LIGHTING: LED DIMMING DRIVERS  
26 5200 EMERGENCY LIGHTING  
26 5600 EXTERIOR LIGHTING

**DIVISION 27: COMMUNICATIONS**

**27 1000 STRUCTURED CABLING**

27 1116 COMMUNICATIONS CABINETS, RACKS, FRAMES, AND ENCLOSURES  
27 1501 COMMUNICATIONS HORIZONTAL CABLING

**27 5000 DISTRIBUTED COMMUNICATIONS AND MONITORING SYSTEMS**

27 5117 AUDIO SYSTEMS

**DIVISION 28: ELECTRONIC SAFETY AND SECURITY**

**28 3000 ELECTRONIC DETECTION AND ALARM**

28 3101 FIRE DETECTION AND ALARM SYSTEM

**DIVISION 29: NOT USED**

**SITE AND INFRASTRUCTURE SUBGROUP**

**DIVISION 30: NOT USED**

**DIVISION 31: EARTHWORK**

**31 0500 COMMON WORK RESULTS FOR EARTHWORK**

31 0500 COMMON EARTHWORK REQUIREMENTS

**31 1000 SITE CLEARING**

31 1000 SITE CLEARING  
31 1413 TOPSOIL STRIPPING AND STOCKPILING

**31 2000 EARTH MOVING**

31 2000 EARTH MOVING

**DIVISION 32: EXTERIOR IMPROVEMENTS**

**32 0100 OPERATION AND MAINTENANCE OF EXTERIOR IMPROVEMENTS**

32 0113 ASPHALT PAVING SURFACE TREATMENT: ASPHALT BASE PENETRATION SEAL

**32 1000 BASES, BALLASTS, AND PAVING**

32 1216 ASPHALT PAVING  
32 1313 CONCRETE PAVING

32 1713 PARKING BUMPERS  
32 1723 PAVEMENT MARKINGS

**32 3000 SITE IMPROVEMENTS**

32 3113 CHAIN LINK FENCES AND GATES

**32 8000 IRRIGATION**

32 8423 UNDERGROUND SPRINKLERS  
32 8466 UNDERGROUND SPRINKLERS - CONTROLLERS

**32 9000 PLANTING**

32 9001 COMMON PLANTING REQUIREMENTS  
32 9101 PLANT MAINTENANCE  
32 9113 SOIL PREPARATION  
32 9120 TOPSOIL AND PLACEMENT  
32 9223 SODDING  
32 9300 PLANTS

**DIVISION 33: UTILITIES**

**33 1000 WATER UTILITIES**

33 1113 FACILITY WATER DISTRIBUTION PIPING  
33 1313 FACILITY SANITARY SEWERS

**33 4000 STORM DRAINAGE UTILITIES**

33 4100 STORM UTILITY DRAINAGE PIPING

**DIVISIONS 36 THROUGH 39: NOT USED**

**PROCESS EQUIPMENT SUBGROUP**

**DIVISIONS 40 THROUGH 49: NOT USED**

END OF TABLE OF CONTENTS

# BIDDING REQUIREMENTS

FIXED SUM PROJECT (U.S.)

BLANK PAGE

# INVITATION TO BID (U.S.)

---

**1. GENERAL CONTRACTORS INVITED TO BID THE PROJECT:**

Stallings Construction  
BC Builders  
Warner & Associates Construction  
Gines Construction  
Saunders Constructions

**2. PROJECT:**

West Point Jr Seminary

**3. LOCATION:**

4342 W 920 South St, West Point, UT 84015

**4. OWNER:**

The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints, a Utah corporation sole  
c/o  
Salt Lake Project Management Office  
50 E. North Temple COB 12  
SLC, UT 84150

**5. CONSULTANT:**

Uncommon Architects

**6. DESCRIPTION OF PROJECT:**

- A. Seminary
- B. Products or systems may be provided through relationships the Owner has negotiated with suppliers as indicated in the Specifications.

**7. TYPE OF BID:** Bids will be on a lump-sum basis. Segregated bids will not be accepted.

**8. TIME OF SUBSTANTIAL COMPLETION:** The time limit for substantial completion of this work will be 300 calendar days and will be as noted in the Agreement.

**9. BID OPENING:** Bids will be received by Owners preferred method at 3:00 PM on May 28,2024 via Conslog to be announced. Bids will be publicly opened at 3:00 PM on May 28,2024 via Conslog to be announced.

**10. BIDDING DOCUMENTS:**

- A. Bidding Documents may be examined at the following plan room locations:
  - 1) Dodge Data and Analytics
  - 2) Mountainlands Area Plan Room
  - 3)
  - 4)

11. **BID BOND:** If required, bid security in the amount of 5 percent (5%) of the bid will accompany each bid in accordance with the Instruction to Bidders.
12. **BIDDER'S QUALIFICATIONS:** Bidding by the General Contractors will be by invitation only.
13. **OWNER'S RIGHT TO REJECT BIDS:** The Owner reserves the right to reject any or all bids and to waive any irregularity therein.

END OF DOCUMENT

# INSTRUCTIONS TO BIDDERS (U.S.)

---

## 1. DEFINITIONS:

- A. The definitions set forth in Section 1 of the General Conditions are applicable to the documents included under Bidding Requirements.
- B. Bidding Documents include the Bidding Requirements and the proposed Contract Documents. The proposed Contract Documents consist of the documents identified as Contract Documents in the Form of Agreement, except for Modifications. The Bidding Requirements are those documents identified as such in the proposed Project Manual.
- C. Addenda are written, or graphic documents issued by the Architect prior to execution of the Contract which modify or interpret the Bidding Documents. They become part of the Contract Documents as noted in the Form of Agreement upon execution of the Contract.

## 2. BIDDER'S REPRESENTATIONS:

- A. By submitting a bid, the bidder represents that
  - 1) Bidder has carefully studied and compared the Bidding Documents with each other. Bidder understands the Bidding Documents and the bid is fully in accordance with the requirements of those documents,
  - 2) Bidder has thoroughly examined the site and any building located thereon, has become familiar with local conditions which might directly or indirectly affect the contract work, and has correlated its personal observations with the requirements of the proposed Contract Documents, and
  - 3) Bid is based on the materials, equipment, and systems required by the Bidding Documents without exception.

## 3. BIDDING DOCUMENTS:

- A. Copies
  - 1) Bidding Documents may be obtained as set forth in the Invitation to Bid.
  - 2) Partial sets of Bidding Documents will not be issued.
  - 3) Bidders will use complete sets of Bidding Documents in preparing bids and make certain that those submitting sub-bids to them have access to all portions of the documents that pertain to the work covered by sub-bid, including General Conditions, Supplementary Conditions, and Division 01. Bidder assumes full responsibility for errors or misinterpretations resulting from use of partial sets of Bidding Documents by itself or any sub-bidder.
- B. Interpretation or Correction of Bidding Documents
  - 1) Bidders will request interpretation or correction of any apparent errors, discrepancies, and omissions in the Bidding Documents.
  - 2) Corrections or changes to Bidding Documents will be made by written addenda.
- C. Substitutions and Equal Products
  - 1) Generally speaking, substitutions for specified products and systems, as defined in the Uniform Commercial Code, are not acceptable. However, equal products may be approved upon compliance with Contract Document requirements.
  - 2) The terms '*Acceptable Manufacturers*', '*Approved Manufacturers*', '*Suppliers*', '*Installers*' and '*VMR (Value Managed Relationship) Manufacturers / Suppliers / Installers*' are used throughout the Project Manual to differentiate among the options available to Contractor regarding specified products, manufacturers, and suppliers. See Section 016000 for options available regarding acceptance of equal products.
  - 3) Base bid only on materials, equipment, systems, suppliers or performance qualities specified in the Bidding Documents.

- 4) Architect is only authorized to consider requests for approval of equal products to replace specified products in Sections where the heading 'Acceptable Manufacturers' is used and statement, 'Equal as approved by Architect before bidding. See Section 016000' or 'Equal as approved by Architect before installation. See Section 016000,' appears. In Sections where the afore-mentioned statements do not appear and a different heading is used, Architect is authorized as Owner's representative to decline consideration of requests for approval of equal products. Approvals of equal products in such Sections must be made by Owner and will generally be for subsequent Projects.

- D. Addenda - Addenda will be sent to bidders and to locations where Bidding Documents are on file no later than 2 business days prior to bid opening.

#### **4. BIDDING PROCEDURES:**

##### **A. Form and Style of Bids**

- 1) Use Owner's online bidding tool.
- 2) Fill in all blanks on online bidding tool. Signatures will be executed by representative of bidder duly authorized to make contracts.
- 3) Bids will bear no information other than that requested on bid form. Do not delete from or add to the information requested on the bid form.

##### **B. Bid Security**

- 1) If required, each bid will be accompanied by a bid bond naming Owner, as listed in the Agreement, as obligee. If Bidder refuses to enter into a Contract or fails to provide bonds and insurance required by the General Conditions, amount of bid security will be forfeited to Owner as liquidated damages, not as a penalty.
- 2) Bid bond will be issued by a surety company meeting requirements of the General Conditions for surety companies providing bonds and will be submitted on AIA Document A310, Bid Bond or AIA authorized equivalent provided by surety company. The attorney-in-fact who executes the bond on behalf of the surety will affix to the bond a certified and current copy of the power of attorney.
- 3) Owner may retain bid security of bidders to whom an award is being considered until -
  - a. Contract has been executed and bonds have been furnished,
  - b. Specified time has elapsed so bids may be withdrawn, or
  - c. All bids have been rejected.

##### **C. Submission of Bids**

- 1) Follow the instructions in the Owner's bidding tool when submitting your bid.
- 2) It is bidder's sole responsibility to see that its bid is received at specified time.
- 3) No oral, facsimile transmitted, telegraphic, or telephonic bids, modifications, or cancellations will be considered.

##### **D. Modification or Withdrawal of Bid**

- 1) Bidder guarantees there will be no revisions or withdrawal of bid amount for 45 days after bid opening.
- 2) Prior to bid opening, bidders may withdraw bid from Owner's bidding tool.

#### **5. CONSIDERATION OF BIDS:**

##### **A. Opening of Bids - See Invitation to Bid.**

##### **B. Rejection of Bids - Owner reserves right to reject any or all bids and to waive any irregularity therein.**

##### **C. Acceptance of Bid**

- 1) No bidder will consider itself under contract after opening and reading of bids until Agreement between Owner and Contractor is fully executed.
- 2) Bidder's past performance, organization, subcontractor selection, equipment, and ability to perform and complete its contract in manner and within time specified,



together with amount of bid, will be elements considered in award of contract.

**6. POST-BID INFORMATION:**

- A. The conditionally accepted bidder submitting a bid involving subcontractors will submit its list of proposed subcontractors within 24 hours after bid opening.

**7. PERFORMANCE BOND AND PAYMENT BOND:**

- A. Bond Requirements - Performance Bond and Labor and Material Payment bond may be required for this Project as specified in the General Conditions.
- B. Time of Delivery of Bonds - Bonds will be delivered to Owner with Agreement signed by bidder.

**8. FORM OF AGREEMENT BETWEEN OWNER AND CONTRACTOR:**

- A. Agreement form will be "Agreement Between Owner and Contractor for a Fixed Sum (U.S.)" provided by Owner.

**9. MISCELLANEOUS:**

- A. Pre-Bid Conference
  - 1) A pre-bid conference will be held at a time and place to be announced.
- B. Liquidated Damages - Conditions governing liquidated damages are specified in the General Conditions and in the Supplementary Conditions.
- C. Examination Schedule for Existing Building and Site
  - 1)
- D. Exemption from local taxes - See Supplementary Conditions

END OF DOCUMENT

BLANK PAGE

# INFORMATION AVAILABLE TO BIDDERS (U.S.)

---

## 1. GEOTECHNICAL DATA

### A. Geotechnical Report -

- 1) Owner has secured the services of a geotechnical engineer to aid in design of the Project. Following conditions apply -
  - a) A geotechnical report has been prepared by AGECE Applied GeoTech, referred to as the Geotechnical Engineer.
  - b) A copy of this report will be issued to each invited Contractor.
  - c) This report was obtained solely for use in design by Consultant and is not a part of the Contract Documents. It is not intended that Contractor rely on geotechnical engineer's report.
  - d) Reports are provided for Contractor's information but are not a warranty of subsurface conditions.
- 2) Prior to bidding, Contractor may make his own subsurface investigations to satisfy himself with site and subsurface conditions.

END OF DOCUMENT

BLANK PAGE

## SUBCONTRACTORS AND MAJOR MATERIALS SUPPLIERS LIST

Project Name: \_\_\_\_\_ Date: \_\_\_\_\_

Stake: \_\_\_\_\_ Project No: \_\_\_\_\_

General Contractor: \_\_\_\_\_

General Contractor is to provide the names of the following subcontractors and suppliers to the Owner's Project Manager immediately following the bid opening:

### VMR SUBCONTRACTORS

Roofing \_\_\_\_\_

Doors, Frames & Hardware \_\_\_\_\_

Storefronts \_\_\_\_\_

Wood Flooring \_\_\_\_\_

Other \_\_\_\_\_

Other \_\_\_\_\_

### SUBCONTRACTORS AND SUPPLIERS

Grading / Site work \_\_\_\_\_

Site Utilities \_\_\_\_\_

Demolition \_\_\_\_\_

Paving \_\_\_\_\_

Termite Control \_\_\_\_\_

Site Concrete \_\_\_\_\_

Fencing \_\_\_\_\_

Irrigation System \_\_\_\_\_

Landscaping \_\_\_\_\_

Building Concrete \_\_\_\_\_

Masonry \_\_\_\_\_

Structural Steel \_\_\_\_\_

Framing \_\_\_\_\_

Trusses \_\_\_\_\_

Insulation \_\_\_\_\_

EIFS \_\_\_\_\_

Soffit / Fascia \_\_\_\_\_

Steeple \_\_\_\_\_

Millwork \_\_\_\_\_

Drywall \_\_\_\_\_

Ceramic Tile \_\_\_\_\_

Acoustical Tile \_\_\_\_\_

Painting \_\_\_\_\_

Wall Coverings \_\_\_\_\_

Elevators / Lifts \_\_\_\_\_

Draperies \_\_\_\_\_

Fire Sprinklers \_\_\_\_\_

Plumbing \_\_\_\_\_

HVAC \_\_\_\_\_

Electrical \_\_\_\_\_

Controls \_\_\_\_\_

Sound / Satellite \_\_\_\_\_

# EQUAL PRODUCT APPROVAL REQUEST FORM (U.S.)

---

Project Name: \_\_\_\_\_ Request Number: \_\_\_\_\_

TO: \_\_\_\_\_

FROM: \_\_\_\_\_

BID DATE: \_\_\_\_\_

---

A proposed product is not legally approved and cannot legally be included in a bid or used in the Work until it appears in an Addendum or other Contract Modification as defined in the General Conditions. See Instructions To Bidders Paragraph 3.C, General Conditions, and Section 016000.

---

## PROPOSED EQUAL PRODUCT:

Specification Section: \_\_\_\_\_

Specified Products: \_\_\_\_\_

Proposed Product: \_\_\_\_\_

The Undersigned certifies:

1. Proposed equal product has been fully investigated and determined to be equal or superior in all respects to specified products.
2. Same warranty will be furnished for proposed equal product as for specified products.
3. Same maintenance service and source of replacement parts, as applicable, is available.
4. Proposed equal product will have no adverse effect on other trades and will not affect or delay progress schedule.
5. Proposed equal product does not affect dimensions and functional clearances.

## ATTACHMENTS:

Include the following attachments -

1. Copy of the Project Manual Section where the proposed equal product would be specified, rewritten or red-lined to include any changes necessary to correctly specify the proposed equal product. Identify completely changes necessary to the original Project Manual Section.
2. Copies of details, elevations, cross-sections, and other elements of the Project Drawings redone as necessary to show changes necessary to accommodate proposed equal product. Identify completely the changes from the original Drawings.
3. Complete product literature and technical data, installation and maintenance instructions, test results, and other information required to show complete conformance with requirements of the Contract Documents.

**SIGNED:** \_\_\_\_\_

Printed Name \_\_\_\_\_

Company \_\_\_\_\_

Address \_\_\_\_\_

City, State, Zip Code \_\_\_\_\_

Telephone \_\_\_\_\_ Fax \_\_\_\_\_

**REVIEW COMMENTS:**

\_\_\_\_\_ Accepted. See Addenda Number \_\_\_\_\_.

\_\_\_\_\_ Submission not in compliance with instructions. Respond to attached comments and resubmit.

\_\_\_\_\_ Proposed equal product not acceptable. Use specified products.

\_\_\_\_\_ Not Reviewed. Submission received too late. Use specified products.

---

**ADDITIONAL COMMENTS:**

---

**BY:** \_\_\_\_\_ **DATE:** \_\_\_\_\_



# CONSTRUCTION MATERIAL ASBESTOS STATEMENT (U.S.)

PROJECTS FOR:  
THE CHURCH OF JESUS CHRIST OF LATTER-DAY SAINTS,  
a Utah corporation sole

Building Name: \_\_\_\_\_

Building Plan Type: \_\_\_\_\_

Building Address: \_\_\_\_\_

Building Owner: The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints, a Utah corporation sole.

Project Number: \_\_\_\_\_

Completion Date: \_\_\_\_\_

As PROJECT CONSULTANT and principal in charge; based on my best knowledge, information, inspection, and belief; I certify that on the above referenced Project, no asbestos-containing building materials were specified in the construction documents or given approval in shop drawings or submittals.

\_\_\_\_\_  
Project Consultant and Principal in Charge (signature)                      Date

\_\_\_\_\_  
Company Name

As GENERAL CONTRACTOR in charge of construction; based on my best knowledge, information, inspection, and belief; I affirm that on the above-referenced Project, no asbestos-containing building materials were used in the construction.

\_\_\_\_\_  
General Contractor (signature)                      Date

\_\_\_\_\_  
Company Name

# GENERAL CONDITIONS

## For a Fixed Sum (U.S.)

---

### TABLE OF CONTENTS

SECTION 1 GENERAL PROVISIONS	SECTION 9 PAYMENTS AND COMPLETION
SECTION 2 OWNER	SECTION 10 PROTECTION OF PERSONS AND PROPERTY
SECTION 3 CONTRACTOR	SECTION 11 INSURANCE AND BONDS
SECTION 4 ADMINISTRATION OF THE CONTRACT	SECTION 12 UNCOVERING AND CORRECTION OF WORK
SECTION 5 SUBCONTRACTORS	SECTION 13 RESOLUTION OF DISPUTES
SECTION 6 CONSTRUCTION BY OWNER OR BY SEPARATE CONTRACTORS	SECTION 14 TERMINATION
SECTION 7 CHANGES IN THE WORK	SECTION 15 MISCELLANEOUS PROVISIONS
SECTION 8 TIME	

### SECTION 1 - GENERAL PROVISIONS

#### 1.1 DEFINITIONS

- A. Adverse Weather: weather conditions that are seasonally abnormal and could not have been reasonably anticipated.
- B. Agreement: the document entitled "Agreement Between Owner and Contractor for a Fixed Sum (U.S.), executed by Owner and Contractor for performance of the Work.
- C. Architect: the entity identified as such in the Agreement.
- D. Change In The Work: a modification to the requirements of the Contract Documents or a delay in Substantial Completion resulting from an instruction from Owner or Architect to Contractor or from another event or circumstance.
- E. Change Order: a written instrument prepared by Architect and signed by Owner, Contractor, and Architect stating their agreement upon the following: (1) the occurrence of a Change in the Work; (2) the amount of the adjustment, if any, in the Contract Sum as a result of the Change in the Work; and (3) the extent of the adjustment, if any, in the Contract Time as a result of the Change in the Work.
- F. Construction Change Directive: a written order prepared by Architect and signed by Architect and Owner which: (1) orders a Change in the Work if the terms of a Change Order cannot be agreed upon prior to performance of a Change in the Work described in Section 7.1 or after occurrence of an event or circumstance described in Section 7.2; and (2) states a proposed basis for adjustment, if any, in the Contract Sum, the Contract Time, or both, resulting from the Change in the Work.
- G. Contract Documents: the documents identified as such in the Agreement.
- H. Contract Sum: the total amount set forth in the Agreement payable by Owner to Contractor for performance of the Work.
- I. Contract Time: the period of time set forth in the Agreement for the Substantial Completion of the Work.
- J. Contractor: the entity identified as such in the Agreement.
- K. Day: calendar day unless otherwise specifically defined.
- L. Direct Costs: actual costs for labor, materials, equipment, insurance, bonds, subcontract costs and onsite supervision relating to the Project. They do not include labor costs for project managers or other off-site administration.
- M. Drawings: the documents identified as such in the Agreement.
- N. Field Change: a written order prepared by Architect and signed by Architect and Contractor for a minor Change in the Work consistent with the general intent of the Contract Documents costing \$1,000 or less, resulting in no time extension, and which is necessary to avoid delaying the Work.
- O. Modification: a written amendment to the Contract Documents in the form of a:
  - 1. Change Order;
  - 2. Construction Change Directive; or
  - 3. Field Change.
- P. Owner: the entity identified as such in the Agreement.
- Q. Project: the total construction designed by Architect of which the Work performed under the Contract Documents may be the whole or a part.

- R. Product Data: standard illustrations, schedules, performance charts, instructions, brochures, diagrams, and other information furnished by Contractor to illustrate details regarding materials or equipment to be used in the Work, or the manner of installation, operation, or maintenance of such materials or equipment.
- S. Project Manual: the document identified as such in the Agreement.
- T. Samples And Mock-ups: physical examples that illustrate materials, equipment, or workmanship and establish standards by which the Work will be judged.
- U. Shop Drawings: drawings, diagrams, illustrations, schedules, performance charts, fabrication and installation drawings, setting diagrams, patterns, templates, and other data which illustrate some portion of the Work and confirm dimensions and conformance to the Contract Documents specially prepared by Contractor or any Subcontractor, manufacturer, supplier, or distributor.
- V. Specifications: the documents identified as such in the Agreement.
- W. Subcontractor: any entity supplying labor, materials, equipment, construction or services for the Work under separate contract with Contractor or any other Subcontractor.
- X. Submittals: Shop Drawings, Product Data, Samples and Mock-ups and any other documents or items furnished by Contractor or its Subcontractors to Owner or Architect to demonstrate how any portion of the Work will be accomplished or the type of materials or products that will be used in the Work.
- Y. Substantial Completion: Completion of the Work to a point where Owner can use the Work for its intended purposes. The date of Substantial Completion is the date certified as such by Architect in accordance with the Contract Documents.
- Z. Work: all labor, materials, equipment, construction, and services required by the Contract Documents.
- AA. Written Notice: notice in writing given from one party to the other at the addresses or facsimile numbers listed in the Agreement, or at such other addresses or facsimile numbers as the parties will designate from time to time by Written Notice, and will be effective at the earliest of:
  1. The date of personal delivery to the other party with signed acknowledgment of receipt; or
  2. The date sent by facsimile transmission to the other party provided receipt of the facsimile is verified by an electronic confirmation report by the party sending the facsimile transmission and further provided that a confirmation copy is sent to the other party by courier or by registered or certified mail within twenty-four (24) hours after the time and date of the facsimile transmission; or
  3. The date of receipt by the other party as stated on the return receipt if sent by registered or certified mail, or by courier.

## 1.2 CORRELATION AND INTENT OF CONTRACT DOCUMENTS

- A. The intent of the Contract Documents is to require Contractor to provide all labor, materials, equipment, construction, and services necessary for the proper execution and completion of the Work. The Contract Documents are complementary and what is required by any one will be as binding as if required by all. Contractor will perform the Work in accordance with the requirements expressly set forth in or reasonably inferable from the Contract Documents.
- B. The organization of the Contract Documents is not intended to control Contractor in dividing the Work among Subcontractors or to establish the extent of the Work to be performed by any trade.
- C. Words used in the Contract Documents that have well known technical or trade meanings are used therein in accordance with such recognized meanings.
- D. In the interest of brevity, the Contract Documents may omit modifying words such as "all" and "any" and articles such as "the" and "an," but the fact that a modifier or an article is absent from one statement and appears in another is not intended to affect the interpretation of either statement.

## 1.3 OWNERSHIP AND USE OF CONTRACT DOCUMENTS

The Drawings, the Project Manual, and copies thereof are the property of Owner. Contractor will not use these documents on any other project. Contractor may retain one copy of the Drawings and the Project Manual as a contract record set and will return or destroy all remaining copies following final completion of the Work.

## 1.4 PUBLIC STATEMENTS REGARDING PROJECT

Contractor will not make any statements or provide any information to the media about the Project without the prior written consent of Owner. If Contractor receives any requests for information from media, Contractor will refer such requests to Owner.

## 1.5 OWNERSHIP AND USE OF RENDERINGS AND PHOTOGRAPHS

Renderings representing the Work are the property of Owner. All photographs of the Work, whether taken during performance of the Work or at completion, are the property of the Owner. The Owner reserves all rights including copyrights to renderings and photographs of the Work. No renderings or photographs shall be used or distributed without written consent of the Owner.

## **1.6 NO COMMERCIAL USE OF TRANSACTION OR RELATIONSHIP**

Without the prior written consent of Owner, which Owner may grant or withhold in its sole discretion, neither Contractor nor Contractor's affiliates, officers, directors, agents, representatives, shareholders, members, Subcontractors, Sub-subcontractors or employees shall make any private commercial use of their relationship to Owner or the Project, including, without limitation:

- A. By referring to this Agreement, Owner, or the Project verbally or in any sales, marketing or other literature, letters, client lists, press releases, brochures or other written materials except as may be necessary for Contractor to perform Contractor's obligations under the terms of this Agreement;
- B. By using or allowing the use of any photographs of the Project or any part thereof, or of any service marks, trademarks or trade names or other intellectual property now or which may hereafter be associated with, owned by or licensed by Owner in connection with any service or product; or
- C. By contracting with or receiving money or anything of value from any person or commercial entity to facilitate such person or entity obtaining any type of commercial identification, advertising or visibility in connection with the Project.

Notwithstanding the foregoing, Contractor may include a reference to Owner and the services and equipment provided under this Agreement in a professional résumé or other similar listing of Contractor's references without seeking Owner's written consent in each instance; provided, that such reference to Owner, the services and equipment is included with at least several other similar references and is given no more prominence than such other references.

## **1.7 CONFIDENTIALITY / PROPERTY RIGHTS**

- A. Owner will retain ownership and intellectual property rights in all plans, designs, drawings, documents, concepts, and materials provided by or on behalf of Owner to Contractor and to all work products of Contractor for or relative to Work performed under this Agreement, such products, services, and Work of Contractor constituting works made for hire. Contractor will not reuse any portions of such items provided by Owner or developed by Contractor for Owner pursuant to this Agreement, or disclose any such items to any third party without the prior written consent of Owner. Owner may withhold its consent in its' absolute discretion.
- B. In addition, Contractor shall ensure that Contractor, Subcontractors, and the employees, agents and representatives of Contractor and its Subcontractors maintain in strict confidence, and shall use and disclose only as authorized by Owner all Confidential Information of Owner that Contractor receives in connection with the performance of this Agreement. Notwithstanding the foregoing, Contractor may use and disclose any information to the extent required by an order of any court or governmental authority, but only after it has notified Owner and Owner has had an opportunity to obtain reasonable protection for such information in connection with such disclosure. For purposes of this Agreement, "Confidential Information" means:
  - 1. The name or address of any affiliate, customer or contractor of Owner or any information concerning the transactions of any such person with Owner;
  - 2. Any information relating to contracts, agreements, business plans, budgets or other financial information of Owner to the extent such information has not been made available to the public by the Owner; and
  - 3. Any other information that is marked or noted as confidential by the Owner at the time of its disclosure.

## **1.8 COMPLY WITH INTELLECTUAL PROPERTY RIGHTS OF OTHERS**

Contractor represents and warrants that no Work (with its means, methods, goods, and services attendant thereto), provided to Owner will infringe or violate any right of any third party and that Owner may use and exploit such Work, means, methods, goods, and services without liability or obligation to any person or entity (specifically and without limitation, such Work, means, methods, goods, and services will not violate rights under any patent, copyright, trademark, or other intellectual property right or application for the same).

## **SECTION 2 - OWNER**

### **2.1 OWNER'S DESIGNATED REPRESENTATIVE**

Owner will designate in writing a representative who will have express authority to bind Owner with respect to all matters requiring Owner's approval or authorization.

### **2.2 INFORMATION AND SERVICES REQUIRED OF OWNER**

- A. Owner will be responsible for establishment of property lines and benchmarks for grading.
- B. Owner will furnish to Contractor any information or services it is required to furnish under the Contract Documents with reasonable promptness to avoid delay in the orderly progress of the Work.
- C. Owner will furnish to Contractor a reasonable number of copies of the Drawings, the Project Manual, and the Addenda.

### **2.3 OWNER'S RIGHT TO INSPECT THE WORK**

Owner and its representatives will have the right to inspect any portion of the Work wherever located at any time.

### **2.4 OWNER'S RIGHT TO STOP THE WORK**

If Contractor fails to carry out the Work in accordance with the Contract Documents or fails to correct Work which is not in accordance with the Contract Documents in a timely manner, Owner may order Contractor in writing to stop the Work, or any portion thereof, until the cause for that order has been eliminated.

## **SECTION 3 - CONTRACTOR**

### **3.1 REVIEW OF CONTRACT DOCUMENTS AND FIELD CONDITIONS BY CONTRACTOR**

- A. By executing the Agreement, Contractor represents that it has visited the Project site, familiarized itself with the local conditions under which the Work is to be performed, and correlated its own observations with the requirements of the Contract Documents.
- B. Contractor will carefully review and compare the Contract Documents and any other available information relating to the Project prior to commencing and during performance of each portion of the Work and will immediately report to Architect any errors, inconsistencies, and omissions it discovers.
- C. Should Contractor or any of its Subcontractors become aware of any question regarding the meaning or intent of any part of the Contract Documents prior to commencing that portion of the Work about which there is a question, Contractor will request an interpretation or clarification from Architect before proceeding. Contractor proceeds at its own risk if it proceeds with the Work without first making such a request and receiving an interpretation or clarification from Architect. If neither Contractor nor its Subcontractors become aware of the question until after work on the relevant portion of the Work has commenced, then the following precedence will govern for purposes of determining whether resolution of the question constitutes a Change in the Work:
  - 1. The Agreement takes precedence over all other Contract Documents.
  - 2. The Supplementary Conditions take precedence over the General Conditions.
  - 3. The General Conditions and Supplementary Conditions take precedence over the Drawings and the Specifications.
  - 4. An Addendum or a Modification takes precedence over the document(s) modified by the Addendum or Modification.
  - 5. The Specifications take precedence over the Drawings.
  - 6. Within the Drawings, larger scale drawings take precedence over smaller scale drawings, figured dimensions over scaled dimensions, and noted materials over graphic indications.
- D. Contractor will give Architect notice of any additional drawings, specifications, or instructions required to define the Work in greater detail, or to permit the proper progress of the Work, sufficiently in advance of the need for information so as not to delay the Work.
- E. It is not Contractor's responsibility to ascertain that the Contract Documents are in accordance with requirements of applicable laws, statutes, ordinances, building codes, rules and regulations. However, if Contractor observes that portions of the Contract Documents are at variance with those requirements, Contractor will immediately notify Architect in writing. Contractor will not proceed unless Owner and/or Architect effects Modifications to the Contract Documents required for compliance with such requirements. Contractor will be fully responsible for any work knowingly performed contrary to such requirements and will fully indemnify Owner against loss and bear all costs and penalties arising therefrom.
- F. Contractor will take field measurements and verify field conditions and will compare such field measurements and conditions and other information known to Contractor with the Contract Documents before ordering any materials or commencing construction activities. Contractor will immediately report errors, inconsistencies, and omissions that it discovers to Architect. If Contractor orders materials or commences construction activities before taking field measurements and verifying field conditions, Contractor will not be entitled to any compensation for additional costs to Contractor resulting from field measurements or conditions different from those anticipated by Contractor which would have been avoided had Contractor taken field measurements and verified field conditions prior to ordering the materials or commencing construction activities.
- G. If site conditions indicated in the Contract Documents or other information provided by Owner or Architect to Contractor differ materially from those Contractor encounters in performance of the Work, Contractor will immediately notify Architect in writing of such differing site conditions.
- H. Where the Contract Documents require the Contractor to provide professional services for architecture or engineering, the Contractor shall cause such services to be performed by appropriately licensed professionals.

### **3.2 SUPERVISION OF CONSTRUCTION PROCEDURES**

- A. Contractor will supervise and direct the Work. Contractor will be solely responsible for all construction means, methods, techniques, sequences, and procedures and for coordinating all portions of the Work. All loss, damage, liability, or cost of correcting defective work arising from the use of any construction means, methods, techniques, sequences or procedures will be borne by Contractor, notwithstanding that such construction means, methods, techniques, sequences or procedures are referred to, indicated or implied by the Contract Documents, unless Contractor has given timely notice to Owner and Architect in writing that such means, methods, techniques, sequences or procedures are not safe or suitable, and Owner has then instructed Contractor in writing to proceed at Owner's risk.
- B. Contractor will utilize its best skill, efforts, and judgment to provide efficient business administration and supervision, to furnish at all times an adequate supply of workers and materials, and to perform the Work in an expeditious and economical manner consistent with the interests of Owner.
- C. Contractor will be responsible for:
  - 1. The proper observance of property lines and set back requirements as shown in the Contract Documents;

2. The location and layout of the Work as shown in the Contract Documents with respect to the position of the Work on the property and the elevation of the Work in relation to grade; and
  3. Setting and maintaining construction stakes.
- D. Contractor will be responsible to Owner for the acts and omissions of its employees and Subcontractors as well as persons either directly or indirectly employed by Subcontractors.
  - E. Contractor will not be relieved of its obligation to perform the Work in accordance with the Contract Documents as a result of any tests, inspections, or approvals by Owner, Architect or their consultants.
  - F. Contractor will be responsible for inspection of portions of the Work already completed to determine that such portions are in proper condition to receive subsequent portions of the Work.
  - G. Contractor recognizes that the Project site and the surrounding area is frequently visited by the public and is important to Owner's image and function and will maintain the premises free from debris and waste materials resulting from Construction. At the completion of Construction, Contractor shall promptly remove construction equipment, tools, surplus materials, waste materials and debris.

### **3.3 LABOR AND MATERIALS**

- A. Unless otherwise provided in the Contract Documents, Contractor will provide and pay for all labor, materials, equipment, tools, water, heat, utilities, transportation, and other facilities and services necessary for the proper execution and completion of the Work.
- B. Contractor will at all times enforce strict discipline and good order among those performing the Work and will not permit employment of any unfit person or anyone not skilled in the tasks assigned to them.
- C. Contractor is fully responsible for the Project and all materials and work connected therewith until Owner has accepted the Work in writing. Contractor will replace or repair at its own expense any materials or work damaged or stolen, regardless of whether it has received payment for such work or materials from the Owner.
- D. Contractor will remedy all damage or loss to any property caused in whole or in part by Contractor, any Subcontractor, or by anyone for whose acts any of them may be liable.
- E. Contractor will be responsible for determining that all materials furnished for the Work meet all requirements of the Contract Documents. Architect may require Contractor to produce reasonable evidence that a material meets such requirements, such as certified reports of past tests by qualified testing laboratories, reports of studies by qualified experts, or other evidence which, in the opinion of Architect, would lead to a reasonable certainty that any material used, or proposed to be used, in the work meets the requirements of the Contract Documents. All such data will be furnished at Contractor's expense. This provision will not require Contractor to pay for periodic testing of different batches of the same material, unless such testing is specifically required by the Contract Documents to be performed at Contractor's expense.
- F. Contractor will coordinate and supervise the work performed by Subcontractors so that the Work is carried out without conflict between trades and so that no trade, at any time, causes delay to the general progress of the Work. Contractor and all Subcontractors will at all times afford each trade, any separate contractor, or Owner, reasonable opportunity for the installation of Work and the storage of materials.
- G. Contractor warrants to Owner that the materials and equipment furnished for the Work will be new unless otherwise specified by the Contract Documents, and that the Work will be free from defects, and will conform with the requirements of the Contract Documents. Work not conforming to these requirements, including substitutions not properly approved and authorized, may be considered defective in the discretion of Owner. If required by Architect, Contractor will furnish satisfactory evidence as to the kind and quality of the materials and equipment used in performing the Work.
- H. Owner may elect to purchase materials required for the Work. In that event, Contractor will comply with the procedures set forth in the Contract Documents relating to such materials.

### **3.4 COMPLIANCE WITH LAWS**

Contractor will comply with all applicable laws, ordinances, rules, regulations, and orders of any public authorities relating to performance of the Work.

### **3.5 TAXES**

- A. Contractor will pay all sales, use, consumer, payroll, workers compensation, unemployment, old age pension, surtax, and similar taxes assessed in connection with the performance of the Work.
- B. Owner will pay all taxes and assessments on the real property comprising the Project site.

### **3.6 PERMITS AND FEES**

- A. Owner will obtain and pay for all zoning and use permits and permanent easements necessary for completion of the Work.

- B. Contractor will obtain and pay for the building permit, and all other permits, governmental fees, licenses and inspections necessary for the proper execution and completion of the Work.
- C. Contractor will secure any certificates of inspection and of occupancy required by authorities having jurisdiction over the Work. Contractor will deliver these certificates to Architect prior to issuance of the Certificate of Substantial Completion by Architect.

### **3.7 CONTRACTOR'S ON-SITE REPRESENTATIVE**

Contractor will employ a competent representative acceptable to Owner to supervise the performance of the Work. This representative will be designated in writing by Contractor prior to commencement of work and will not be changed prior to final inspection of the Work without prior written consent of Owner. This representative will represent Contractor for all purposes, including communication with Owner.

### **3.8 CONTRACTOR'S CONSTRUCTION SCHEDULES**

- A. Contractor will prepare and submit for Owner's and Architect's information Contractor's construction schedule for the Work in accordance with the requirements of the Contract Documents.
- B. Contractor will prepare and maintain a Submittal schedule which is coordinated with Contractor's construction schedule and sets forth specified times for Architect to review Submittals.

### **3.9 DOCUMENTS AND SUBMITTALS AT THE SITE**

Contractor will keep at the Project site for use by Owner, Architect, or their representatives, a record copy of the Project Manual, the Drawings, all Addenda, and all Modifications. These documents will be maintained in good order and currently marked to record changes and selections made during construction. In addition, Contractor will keep at the Project site one copy of all Submittals.

### **3.10 SUBMITTALS**

- A. Submittals are not Contract Documents and do not alter the requirements of the Contract Documents unless incorporated into the Contract Documents by a Modification.
- B. Contractor will review, approve, and submit to Architect Submittals in accordance with the Contract Documents. By approving Submittals, Contractor represents that it has determined and verified field measurements, field construction criteria, materials, catalog numbers, and similar data, and that it has checked and coordinated each Submittal with the requirements of the Work and of the Contract Documents or will make such determination, verification, check, and coordination prior to commencing the relevant portion of the Work. In reviewing Submittals Architect will be entitled to rely upon Contractor's representation that such information is correct and accurate.
- C. Contractor will inform Architect in writing at the time of submission of any Submittal or portion thereof which deviates from the requirements of the Contract Documents. Contractor will provide Architect with documentation demonstrating to Architect that the Submittal is equal to or better than the specified product or work. Contractor will not be relieved of responsibility for deviations from the requirements of the Contract Documents by Architect's acceptance of a Submittal unless Contractor has informed Architect in writing of the deviation and Architect has incorporated the deviation into the Contract Documents by a Modification.
- D. Contractor will not perform any portions of the Work requiring Submittals until the respective Submittal has been reviewed and accepted in writing by Architect.
- E. When professional certification of performance criteria of materials, systems or equipment is required by the Contract Documents, Owner will be entitled to rely upon such certifications, and neither Owner nor Architect will be expected to make any independent examination with respect thereto.
- F. Submittals not required by the Contract Documents may be returned to Contractor without action.

### **3.11 CUTTING AND PATCHING**

Contractor will be responsible for any cutting, fitting, and patching that may be required to complete the Work and make its parts fit together properly.

### **3.12 ACCESS TO WORK**

Contractor will permit Owner, Architect, their representatives and consultants, access to the Work wherever located at any time.

### **3.13 ROYALTIES AND PATENTS**

Contractor will pay all royalties and license fees required by the Work or by Contractor's chosen method of performing the Work. Contractor will defend and hold Owner harmless from all suits or claims for infringement of any patent, license or other intellectual property rights or any loss on account thereof.

### **3.14 INDEMNIFICATION**

- A. Contractor will indemnify and hold harmless Owner and Owner's representatives, employees, agents, architects, and consultants from and against any and all claims, damages, liability, demands, costs, judgments, awards, settlements, causes of action, losses and expenses (collectively "Claims" or "Claim"), including but not limited to attorney fees, consultant fees, expert fees, copy costs, and other expenses, arising out of or resulting from performance of the Work, attributable to bodily injury, sickness, disease, or death, or to injury to or destruction of real or personal property, including loss of use resulting therefrom, except to the extent that such liability arises out of the negligence of Owner, its representatives, agents, and employees. This indemnity includes, without limitation, indemnification of Owner from all losses or injury to Owner's property, except to the extent that such loss or injury arises out of the negligence of Owner, its representatives, agents, and employees. This indemnity applies, without limitation, to include Claims occurring both during performance of the Work and/or subsequent to completion of the Work. In the event that any Claim is caused in part by a party indemnified hereunder, that party will bear the cost of such Claim to the extent it was the cause thereof. In the event that a claimant asserts a Claim for recovery against any party indemnified hereunder, the party indemnified hereunder may tender the defense of such Claim to Contractor. If Contractor rejects such tender of defense and it is later determined that the negligence of the party indemnified hereunder did not cause all of the Claim, Contractor will reimburse the party indemnified hereunder for all costs and expenses incurred by that party in defending against the Claim. Contractor will not be liable hereunder to indemnify any party for damages resulting from the sole negligence of that party.
- B. In addition to the foregoing, Contractor will be liable to defend Owner in any lawsuit filed by any Subcontractor relating to the Project. Where liens have been filed against Owner's property, Contractor (and/or its bonding company which has issued bonds for the Project) will obtain lien releases and record them in the appropriate county and/or local jurisdiction and provide Owner with a title free and clear from any liens of Subcontractors. In the event that Contractor and/or its bonding company are unable to obtain a lien release, Owner in its absolute discretion may require Contractor to provide a bond around the lien or a bond to discharge the lien, at Contractor's sole expense.
- C. In addition to the foregoing, Contractor will indemnify and hold Owner harmless from any claim of any other contractor resulting from the performance, nonperformance or delay in performance of the Work by Contractor.
- D. The indemnification obligation herein will not be limited by a limitation on the amount or type of damages, compensation or benefits payable by or for Contractor or a Subcontractor under worker's compensation acts, disability benefit acts, or other employee benefit acts.

### **3.15 PROJECT MEETINGS**

Contractor will attend and participate in meetings as required by the Contract Documents.

## **SECTION 4 - ADMINISTRATION OF THE CONTRACT**

### **4.1 ARCHITECT**

In the event that Owner terminates its contractual relationship with Architect, Owner will appoint in writing another architect, whose status under the Contract Documents will be that of the former Architect in all respects.

### **4.2 ARCHITECT'S ADMINISTRATION OF THE CONTRACT**

- A. Architect will make periodic visits to the site to familiarize itself generally with the progress and quality of the Work and to determine if the Work is proceeding in accordance with the Contract Documents. Although Architect is required to make periodic inspections, it is not required to make exhaustive or continuous onsite inspections. On the basis of its observations while at the site, Architect will keep Owner informed of the progress of the Work and will endeavor to guard Owner against defects and deficiencies in the Work. Architect's failure to observe a defect or deficiency in the Work will not relieve Contractor of its duty to perform the Work in accordance with the Contract Documents.
- B. Architect will review Contractor's payment requests and determine the amounts due Contractor in accordance with Section 9.
- C. Communications between Contractor and Owner relating to the Work will be through Architect. Communications between Owner or Contractor with Architect's consultants relating to the Work will be through Architect. Communications between Owner or Architect and subcontractors relating to the Work will be through Contractor. Communications between Contractor and any separate contractor will be through Architect, except as otherwise specified in the Contract Documents.
- D. Owner and/or Architect will have the right to reject and require removal of the following at Contractor's expense:
  1. Any portion of the Work that does not meet the requirements of the Contract Documents.
  2. Any portion of the Work damaged or rendered unsuitable during installation or resulting from failure to exercise proper protection.
- E. Architect will have authority to suspend the Work, with concurrence of Owner, whenever such suspension may be necessary in its reasonable opinion to insure the proper performance of the Work.
- F. Architect will review Contractor's Submittals and will accept or take other appropriate action regarding the Submittals. Architect's review of the Submittals will be for the limited purpose of checking for general conformance with the Contract Documents and will not be conducted for the purpose of determining the accuracy and completeness of details such as dimensions and quantities, or for substantiating instructions for installation or performance of equipment or systems, all of which remain the responsibility of Contractor. Architect's review of Submittals will not relieve Contractor of its obligations under the Contract Documents. Architect's review of Submittals will not constitute acceptance of safety precautions or construction



means, methods, techniques, sequences or procedures. Architect's acceptance of a specific item will not indicate acceptance of an assembly of which the item is a component.

- G. Architect has authority to order Construction Change Directives and Field Changes in accordance with Section 7.
- H. Architect will conduct inspections to determine the dates of Substantial Completion and final completion, will receive and review written guarantees and related documents required by the Contract and assembled by Contractor, and will review and certify or reject Contractor's final payment request.
- I. Architect will be the interpreter of the performance and requirements of the Contract Documents. Architect's interpretations will be in writing or in the form of drawings.
- J. Architect's decisions in matters relating to aesthetic effect will be final if consistent with the Contract Documents and approved by Owner.

## **SECTION 5 - SUBCONTRACTORS**

### **5.1 AWARD OF SUBCONTRACTS FOR PORTIONS OF THE WORK**

- A. Contractor will enter into contracts with Subcontractors to perform all portions of the Work that Contractor does not customarily perform with its own employees.
- B. Contractor will not contract with any Subcontractor who has been rejected by Owner. Contractor will not be required to contract with any Subcontractor against whom it has a reasonable objection.
- C. If Owner rejects any Subcontractor proposed by Contractor, Contractor will propose an acceptable substitute to whom Owner has no reasonable objection.
- D. Contractor will not make any substitution for any Subcontractor that has been accepted by Owner and Architect without the prior written approval of Owner and Architect.

### **5.2 SUBCONTRACTUAL RELATIONS**

- A. Contractor's responsibility for the Work includes the labor and materials of all Subcontractors, including those recommended or approved by Owner. Contractor will be responsible to Owner for proper completion and guarantee of all workmanship and materials under any subcontracts. Any warranties required for such work will be obtained by Contractor in favor of Owner and delivered to Architect. It is expressly understood and agreed that there is no contractual relationship between Owner and any Subcontractor, and under no circumstances will Owner be responsible for the non-performance or financial failure of any Subcontractor or any effects therefrom.
- B. Contractor agrees to pay the Subcontractors promptly upon receipt of payment from Owner for that portion of the funds received which represents the Subcontractor's portion of the Work completed to Contractor's satisfaction for which Owner has made payment.
- C. Contractor will require each Subcontractor to:
  - 1. Be licensed by the state in which the Project is located where such licensing is required by the governing authority;
  - 2. Be bound by the terms of the Contract Documents as far as they are applicable to the Subcontractor's work;
  - 3. Assume toward Contractor the same obligations Contractor has assumed toward Owner, including the prompt payment of its Subcontractors;
  - 4. Submit its applications for payment to Contractor in time to permit Contractor to make timely application to Owner;
  - 5. Execute claim or lien releases or lien waivers for payments made by Contractor; and
  - 6. Make all claims for Changes in the Work to Contractor in the same manner as Contractor is required to make such claims to Owner.

## **SECTION 6 - CONSTRUCTION BY OWNER OR BY SEPARATE CONTRACTORS**

### **6.1 OWNER'S RIGHT TO PERFORM WORK OR AWARD SEPARATE CONTRACTS**

- A. Owner reserves the right to perform work itself or to award separate contracts in connection with the Project.
- B. When separate contracts are awarded, "Contractor" in the Contract Documents in each case will mean the contractor who signs each separate contract.

### **6.2 MUTUAL RESPONSIBILITY**

- A. Contractor will afford other contractors reasonable opportunity to place and store their materials and equipment on site and to perform their work and will properly connect and coordinate its Work with theirs where applicable.
- B. If any part of Contractor's Work depends upon the work of any separate contractor for proper performance or results, Contractor will inspect and promptly report to Architect any apparent discrepancies or defects in such work that render it unsuitable for

proper performance and results. Failure of Contractor to so inspect and report will constitute an acceptance of the work of the separate contractor as fit and proper to receive Contractor's Work, except as to defects not then reasonably discoverable.

- C. Contractor will promptly remedy damage caused by Contractor or any Subcontractor to the completed or partially completed work of other contractors or to the property of Owner or other contractors.

### **6.3 OWNER'S RIGHT TO CLEAN UP**

If a dispute arises among Contractor and separate contractors as to the responsibility under their separate contracts for maintaining the Project free from waste materials and rubbish, Owner may clean the Project, allocate the cost among those responsible as Owner and Architect determine to be just, and withhold such cost from any amounts due or to become due to Contractor.

## **SECTION 7 - CHANGES IN THE WORK**

### **7.1 CHANGES IN THE WORK RESULTING FROM AN INSTRUCTION BY OWNER OR ARCHITECT TO CONTRACTOR**

- A. If Owner or Architect gives Contractor an instruction that modifies the requirements of the Contract Documents or delays Substantial Completion, Contractor may be entitled to an adjustment in the Contract Sum and/or the Contract Time. If compliance with the instruction affects the cost to Contractor to perform the Work, the Contract Sum will be adjusted to reflect the reasonable increase or decrease in cost subject to the conditions set forth in Section 7.1, Paragraphs B through G. If compliance with the instruction delays Substantial Completion, the Contract Time will be extended for a period of time commensurate with such delay subject to the conditions set forth in Section 7.1, Paragraphs B through G and Section 7.3, Paragraph A and Contractor will be paid liquidated damages for the delay as set forth in Section 7.3, Paragraph B.
- B. If Contractor receives an instruction from Owner or Architect that Contractor considers to be a Change in the Work, Contractor, before complying with the instruction, will notify Architect in writing that Contractor considers such instruction to constitute a Change in the Work. If Architect agrees that compliance with the instruction will constitute a Change in the Work, Contractor will furnish a proposal for a Modification in accordance with Section 7.1, Paragraphs C. and D. within ten (10) days.
- C. If Contractor claims that it is entitled to an adjustment in the Contract Sum (including without limitation costs related to a time extension) as a result of an instruction by Owner or Architect, Contractor will furnish a proposal for a Change Order containing a price breakdown itemized as required by Owner. The breakdown will be in sufficient detail to allow Owner to determine any increase or decrease in Direct Costs as a result of compliance with the instruction. Any amount claimed for subcontracts will be supported by a similar price breakdown and will itemize the Subcontractor's profit and overhead charges. Profit and overhead will be subject to the following limitations:
  - 1. The Subcontractor's profit and overhead will not exceed ten (10) percent of its Direct Costs on work performed. Subcontractor's profit and overhead will not exceed five (5) percent on work performed by its sub-subcontractors.
  - 2. Contractor's profit and overhead on work performed by its own crews will not exceed ten (10) percent of its Direct Costs.
  - 3. Contractor's profit and overhead mark up on work performed by its Subcontractors will not exceed five (5) percent of the Subcontractors' charges for such work.
  - 4. Amounts due Owner as a result of a credit change will be the actual net savings to Contractor from the Change in the Work as confirmed by Architect. On credit changes, profit and overhead on the originally estimated work will not be credited back to Owner. If both additions and credits are involved in a single Change in the Work, overhead and profit will be figured on the basis of net increase, if any, related to that Change in the Work.
- D. If Contractor claims that it is entitled to an adjustment in the Contract Time as a result of an instruction from Owner or Architect, Contractor will include in its proposal justification to support Contractor's claim that compliance with the instruction will delay Substantial Completion.
- E. Upon receipt of Contractor's proposal for Modification, Architect and Owner will determine whether to proceed with the Change in the Work. If Architect and Owner determine to proceed with the Change in the Work, they will issue a Change Order, a Construction Change Directive or a Field Change as appropriate.
- F. Contractor agrees that if it complies with an instruction from Owner or Architect without first giving written notice to Architect as provided in Section 7.1., Paragraph B, and receiving a Change Order, Construction Change Directive or Field Change, Contractor will not be entitled to any adjustment in the Contract Sum or the Contract Time as a result of the instruction and waives any claim therefor.
- G. If Contractor is instructed to perform work which it claims constitutes a Change in the Work but which Owner and Architect do not agree constitutes a Change in the Work, Contractor will comply with the instruction. Contractor may submit its claim for adjustment to the Contract Sum, the Contract Time, or both as a dispute pursuant to Section 13 within thirty (30) days after compliance with the instruction. Contractor agrees that if it fails to submit its claim for resolution pursuant to Section 13 within thirty (30) days after compliance with the instruction, then Contractor will not be entitled to any adjustment in the Contract Sum or the Contract Time as a result of the instruction and waives any claim therefor.
- H. Contractor agrees that it is responsible for submitting accurate cost and pricing data to support its Change Order Proposals. Owner will have the right to examine the Contractor's records to verify the accuracy and appropriateness of the pricing data used to price change order proposals.

### **7.2 CHANGE IN THE WORK RESULTING FROM AN EVENT OR CIRCUMSTANCE**

- A. If an event or circumstance other than an instruction from Owner or Architect affects the cost to Contractor of performing the Work or delays Substantial Completion, Contractor may be entitled to an adjustment in the Contract Sum and/or the Contract Time. If the circumstance or event affects the cost to Contractor to perform the Work and is caused by a willful or negligent act or omission of Owner or Architect, the Contract Sum will be adjusted to reflect the reasonable increase or decrease in Contractor's cost to perform the Work resulting from the event or circumstance, subject to the conditions set forth in Section 7.2, Paragraphs B through F. If the event or circumstance delays Substantial Completion and is described in Section 7.3, Paragraph A, the Contract Time will be extended for a period of time commensurate with such delay subject to the conditions set forth in such section. If the circumstance or event delays Substantial Completion and is caused by a willful or negligent act or omission of Owner or Architect, then Contractor will be compensated for costs incident to the delay in accordance with Section 7.3, Paragraph B. Contractor will not be entitled to any adjustment to the Contract Sum or other damages from Owner as a result of any event or circumstance unless the event or circumstance results from a willful or negligent act or omission of Owner or Architect.
- B. If a Change in the Work results from any event or circumstance caused by the willful or negligent act or omission of Owner or Architect, Contractor will give Owner Written Notice of such event or circumstance within twenty-four (24) hours after commencement of the event or circumstance so that Owner can take such action as is necessary to mitigate the effect of the event or circumstance. Contractor will not be entitled to any adjustment in either the Contract Time or the Contract Sum based on any damages or delays resulting from such event or circumstance during a period more than twenty-four (24) hours prior to Contractor giving such Written Notice to Owner.
- C. Contractor will submit in writing any claims for an adjustment in the Contract Time and/or the Contract Sum resulting from an event or circumstance within the time limits set forth below. In the event that Contractor fails to submit its claim in writing within the time limits set forth below, then Contractor agrees it will not be entitled to any adjustment in the Contract Time or the Contract Sum or to any other damages from Owner due to the circumstance or event and waives any claim therefor.
  - 1. Claims for an adjustment in the Contract Time due to Adverse Weather will be made by the tenth (10th) of the month following the month in which the delay occurred.
  - 2. Claims for an adjustment in the Contract Time and/or the Contract Sum due to any other circumstance or event will be submitted within seven (7) days after the occurrence of the circumstance or event.
- D. If Contractor claims that it is entitled to an adjustment in the Contract Sum (including without limitation costs related to a time extension) because of an event or circumstance resulting from the willful or negligent act or omission of Owner or Architect, Contractor will furnish a proposal for a Change Order containing a price breakdown as described in Section 7.1, Paragraph C. Any amount claimed for increased labor costs as a result of the event or circumstance must be supported by a certified payroll. Any claim for rented equipment or additional material costs must be supported by invoices.
- E. If Contractor claims that it is entitled to an adjustment in the Contract Time as a result of an event or circumstance, Contractor will include with its claim copies of daily logs, letters, shipping orders, delivery tickets, Project schedules, and other supporting information necessary to justify Contractor's claim that the event or circumstance delayed Substantial Completion. If Contractor is entitled to an adjustment in the Contract Time as a result of an event or circumstance caused by the willful or negligent act or omission of Owner or Architect, Contractor will be compensated for all costs related to the delay in accordance with Section 7.3, Paragraph B.
- F. Within thirty (30) days after receipt of Contractor's claim, Architect will either deny the claim or recommend approval to Owner. If Owner approves the claim, the adjustment in the Contract Time and/or Contract Sum will be reflected in a Change Order pursuant to Section 7.5 or a Construction Change Directive pursuant to Section 7.6. If Owner or Architect denies Contractor's claim, Contractor may submit its claim as a dispute pursuant to Section 13 within thirty (30) days of receipt of the denial of the claim. If Contractor fails to submit its claim for resolution pursuant to Section 13 within the thirty (30) day time period, then Contractor agrees it is not entitled to any adjustment in the Contract Time and/ or Contract Sum or any other damages as a result of the event or circumstance and waives any claim therefor.

### 7.3 EXTENSIONS OF TIME

- A. If Substantial Completion of the Project is delayed because of any of the following causes, then the Contract Time will be extended by Change Order for a period of time equal to such delay:
  - 1. Labor strikes or lock-outs;
  - 2. Adverse weather;
  - 3. Unusual delay in transportation;
  - 4. Unforeseen governmental requests or requirements;
  - 5. A Change in the Work resulting from an instruction by Owner or Architect to Contractor subject to the conditions set forth in Section 7.1; or
  - 6. Any other event or circumstance caused by the willful or negligent act or omission of Owner or Architect.
- B. Contractor will not be entitled to any compensation for delay described in Section 7.3, Paragraph A, subparagraphs 1, 2, 3 and 4. For each day of delay in Substantial Completion described in Section 7.3, Paragraph A, subparagraphs 5 and 6, Contractor will be paid liquidated damages in the amount per day set forth in the Supplementary Conditions to compensate Contractor for all damages resulting from any delay including but not limited to damages for general conditions costs, additional job site costs, additional home office overhead costs, disruption costs, acceleration costs, increase in labor costs, increase in subcontract costs, increase in materials costs, and any other costs incident to the delay. Contractor will be entitled to no other compensation relating to the delay.

- C. In no event will any time extension or cost adjustment be given on account of delay which reasonably should have been anticipated by the Contractor or in circumstances where performance of the Work is, was, or would have been, delayed by any other cause for which the Contractor is not entitled to an extension.

#### **7.4 DOCUMENTATION OF CHANGES IN THE WORK**

Every Change in the Work will be documented by a Change Order, a Construction Change Directive or a Field Change. If Owner, Architect and Contractor reach agreement regarding the adjustment in the Contract Sum, if any, and the adjustment in the Contract Time, if any, resulting from a Change in the Work, then the parties will execute a Change Order pursuant to Section 7.5. If Owner, Architect and Contractor cannot reach agreement regarding the adjustment in Contract Sum or the adjustment in Contract Time resulting from a Change in the Work, then Owner and Architect will issue a Construction Change Directive pursuant to Section 7.6. Field Changes require the agreement of Architect and Contractor only.

#### **7.5 CHANGE ORDERS**

Contractor's signature upon a Change Order is Contractor's acknowledgment that it is not entitled to any additional adjustment in the Contract Sum or the Contract Time or any other damages or compensation as a result of the Change in the Work other than that provided for in the Change Order, irrespective of whether a subsequent claim for additional compensation or time extensions relating to the Change in the Work is described as a change in the requirements of the Contract Documents, a delay, a disruption of the Work, an acceleration of the Work, an impact on the efficiency of performance of the Work, an equitable adjustment, or other claim and irrespective of whether the impact of the Change in the Work is considered singly or in conjunction with the impact of other Changes in the Work.

#### **7.6 CONSTRUCTION CHANGE DIRECTIVES**

- A. Contractor will promptly comply with all Construction Change Directives.
- B. Pending final resolution of any adjustment in the Contract Sum or Contract Time relating to a Construction Change Directive, the amounts proposed by Owner in the Construction Change Directive may be included in Contractor's payment requests once the work relating thereto is completed.
- C. If after the work described in the Construction Change Directive is completed, Owner, Architect, and Contractor reach agreement on adjustments in the Contract Sum, Contract Time, or both, such agreement will be reflected in an appropriate Change Order.
- D. If the parties do not reach agreement regarding an adjustment to the Contract Sum, Contract Time, or both relating to the Construction Change Directive within thirty (30) days of the completion of the work described therein, then Contractor may submit its claim for an adjustment pursuant to Section 13 within thirty (30) days of the completion of such work. Contractor agrees that if it fails to submit its claim for resolution pursuant to Section 13 within thirty (30) days of completion of the work described in the Construction Change Directive, then it will not be entitled to an adjustment in Contract Sum or Contract Time resulting from such work except as set forth in the Construction Change Directive and waives any claim therefor.

#### **7.7 FIELD CHANGES**

Architect and Contractor will sign a Field Change order listing the Change In The Work and the Contract Sum including markups before Contractor proceeds with the Field Change.

#### **7.8 WAIVER OF CLAIMS**

Except as set forth in Section 7, Contractor will not be entitled to any adjustment in the Contract Sum or the Contract Time or for any damages of any kind whatsoever resulting from an instruction from Owner or Architect, any event or circumstance, or any act or omission of Owner or Architect and Contractor expressly waives any and all claims therefor.

### **SECTION 8 - TIME**

#### **8.1 TIME IS OF THE ESSENCE**

All time limits stated in the Contract Documents are of the essence. By executing the Agreement, Contractor confirms that the Contract Time is a reasonable period for performing the Work. Contractor will proceed expeditiously with adequate resources and will achieve Substantial Completion within the Contract Time.

#### **8.2 COMMENCEMENT OF THE WORK**

Contractor will not commence work on the Project site until the date set forth in the Written Notice to proceed. However, Contractor may enter into subcontracts and secure material for the Project after receipt of the Agreement with Owner's authorized signature. Owner will issue the Written Notice to proceed within forty-five (45) days after Owner receives acceptable bonds and evidence of insurance pursuant to Section 11 unless Owner earlier terminates the Agreement pursuant to Section 14.

#### **8.3 DELAY IN COMPLETION OF THE WORK**

- A. For each day after the expiration of the Contract Time that Contractor has not achieved Substantial Completion, Contractor will pay Owner the amount set forth in the Supplementary Conditions as liquidated damages for Owner's loss of use of the Project

and the added administrative expense to Owner to administer the Project during the period of delay. In addition, Contractor will reimburse Owner for any additional Architect's fees, attorney fees, expert fees, consultant fees, copy costs, and other expenses incurred by Owner as a result of the delay. Owner may deduct any liquidated damages or reimbursable expenses from any money due or to become due to Contractor. If the amount of liquidated damages and reimbursable expenses exceeds any amounts due to Contractor, Contractor will pay the difference to Owner within ten (10) days after receipt of a written request from Owner for payment.

- B. At the time Architect certifies that Contractor has achieved Substantial Completion, Architect will identify the remaining items to be completed for final completion of the Work and will establish with Contractor a reasonable time for completion of those items. Architect will set forth the items to be completed and the time established for their completion in a Certificate of Substantial Completion. For each day that Contractor exceeds the time allowed for completion of the items set forth in the Certificate of Substantial Completion, Contractor will pay to Owner as liquidated damages for additional administrative expenses the amount set forth in the Supplementary Conditions. In addition, Contractor will reimburse Owner for any additional Architect's fees, attorney fees, expert fees, consultant fees, copy costs, and other expenses incurred by Owner as a result of the delay in completing such items.

## **SECTION 9 - PAYMENTS AND COMPLETION**

### **9.1 SCHEDULE OF VALUES**

Contractor will submit to Architect a schedule of values which allocates the Contract Sum to various portions of the Work. The schedule of values will be supported by such data to substantiate its accuracy as required by Architect. This schedule, when accepted by Owner and Architect, will be used as a basis for reviewing Contractor's payment requests.

### **9.2 PAYMENT REQUESTS**

- A. Not more than once a month, Contractor will submit a payment request to Architect for Work completed, materials stored on the site, and for materials stored offsite as of the date of the payment request. The amount of the payment request will be based upon the schedule of values and will be equal to the value of the Work completed:
  1. Less retention;
  2. Less all prior amounts paid by Owner to Contractor as part of the Contract Sum; and
  3. Less allowable offsets.

The payment request may include Changes in the Work that have been performed by Contractor and authorized by Owner and/or Architect pursuant to Section 7. If a payment request includes materials stored offsite, Contractor will include with the payment request a list of the materials, the location where they are stored and the written request of Contractor and its performance bond surety that payment be made for such materials.

- B. Contractor warrants and guarantees that upon the receipt of payment for materials and equipment, whether incorporated in the Project or not, title to such materials and equipment will pass to Owner free and clear of all liens, claims, security interests, or encumbrances. Notwithstanding this payment and passage of title, Contractor will remain responsible for all such materials and equipment until actual delivery to the project site, incorporation into the Work, and final acceptance by Owner. Contractor further warrants that no material or equipment covered by a payment request is subject to an agreement under which an interest therein or an encumbrance thereon is retained by the seller or any other person or entity.

### **9.3 PAYMENT REQUEST CERTIFICATION**

- A. Architect will, within seven (7) days after receipt of Contractor's payment request, forward to Owner the payment request certified for such amount as Architect determines is properly due. If Architect certifies less than the full amount of the payment request, Architect will notify Contractor and Owner of Architect's reasons for withholding certification of the full amount requested.
- B. The certification of the payment request will constitute a representation by Architect to Owner based upon Architect's observations at the site and the data comprising the payment request, that the Work has progressed to the point indicated and that, to the best of Architect's knowledge, information, and belief, the quality of the Work is in accordance with the Contract Documents. The foregoing representations are subject to an evaluation of the Work for conformance with the Contract Documents upon Substantial Completion, to results of subsequent tests and inspections, to minor deviations from the Contract Documents correctable prior to completion, and to specific qualifications expressed by Architect. However, the certification of the payment request will not constitute a representation that Architect has:
  1. Conducted exhaustive or continuous on-site inspections to check the quantity or quality of the Work;
  2. Reviewed construction means, methods, techniques, sequences, or procedures;
  3. Reviewed copies of requisitions received from Subcontractors or other data requested by Owner to substantiate Contractor's right to payment; or
  4. Made examination to ascertain how or for what purpose Contractor has used money previously paid on account of the Contract Sum.
- C. In taking action on Contractor's payment request, Owner will be entitled to rely on the accuracy and completeness of the information furnished by Contractor.

### **9.4 DECISIONS TO WITHHOLD CERTIFICATION AND PAYMENT**

- A. Architect may withhold certification of a payment request in whole or in part to the extent reasonably necessary to protect Owner if, in the opinion of Architect, the representations to Owner required by Section 9.3, Paragraph B cannot be accurately made. If

Architect is unable to certify payment in the amount of the payment request, Architect will notify Contractor and Owner as provided in Section 9.3, Paragraph A. If Contractor and Architect cannot agree on a revised amount, Architect will promptly certify a payment request for the amount for which Architect is able to make such representations to Owner. Architect may also decide not to certify payment or, because of subsequently discovered evidence or subsequent observations, may nullify the whole or a part of a payment request previously certified, to such extent as may be necessary in Architect's opinion to protect Owner from loss because of:

1. Defective work not remedied;
2. Third-party claims filed or reasonable evidence indicating probable filing of such claims;
3. Failure of Contractor to make payments properly to Subcontractors for labor, materials, equipment, construction or services;
4. Reasonable evidence that the Work cannot be completed for the unpaid balance of the Contract Sum;
5. Damage to Owner or another contractor for which Contractor is responsible;
6. Reasonable evidence that the Work will not be completed within the Contract Time and that the unpaid balance will not be adequate to cover the cost of completing the Work and damages for the anticipated delay; or
7. Contractor's persistent failure to carry out the Work in accordance with the Contract Documents.

- B. Owner reserves the right to withhold payments to Contractor, subsequent to Architect's certification of any payment request, in order to protect Owner from loss due to any condition described in Section 9.4, Paragraph A, Subparagraphs 1 through 7. Upon satisfactory resolution of any such conditions, payments so withheld will be made.

## **9.5 PROGRESS PAYMENTS**

- A. Owner will pay Contractor progress payments within the parameters of Section 9.2 within fifteen (15) days after Owner receives the certified payment request from Architect.
- B. Owner will make payments to Contractor by either placing the payments in the mail addressed to Contractor or by electronic transfer at Owner's discretion.
- C. Upon receipt of any payment from Owner, Contractor will pay to each Subcontractor the amount paid to Contractor on account of such Subcontractor's portion of the Work.
- D. Contractor will maintain a copy of each payment request at the Project site for review by the Subcontractors.
- E. No payment made under the Contract Documents, either in whole or in part, will be construed to be an acceptance of defective or improper materials or workmanship.
- F. In addition and notwithstanding the foregoing, Owner will also withhold and retain 10% of payments made to Contractor.
- G. Owner will pay any unpaid retention less any amounts withheld pursuant to Section 9.4 within forty-five (45) days after Contractor achieves Substantial Completion, submits its payment request for retained funds, delivers to the Architect Owner's form entitled "Contractor's Substantial Completion Affidavit and Consent of Surety" fully executed by Contractor and its surety, obtains Waiver and Release documents executed by all subcontractors and suppliers having claim against the retained funds, and Owner receives a certificate of occupancy.

## **9.6 FINAL PAYMENT**

- A. Owner will make full and final payment of the Contract Sum within thirty (30) days of the completion of all of the following requirements:
1. Contractor has submitted its final payment request;
  2. Architect has declared to Owner in writing that the Work is complete;
  3. Contractor has obtained waiver and release upon final payment documents executed by all of the subcontractors performing work and/or providing materials covered by the Contractor's final payment request; and
  4. Contractor has collected and provided to Owner all manufacturers' and other guaranties and warranties, properly signed and endorsed to Owner, that are required by the Contract Documents that extend for a period beyond one year after substantial completion. (Delivery of such guaranties and warranties will not relieve Contractor for any obligation assumed under any other provision of the Contract Documents.)
- B. Acceptance of final payment by Contractor or any Subcontractor will constitute a waiver of claims by the payee except for those claims previously made in writing pursuant to Section 7 and identified by Contractor in its affidavit as still pending.
- C. If the aggregate of previous payments made by Owner exceeds the amount due Contractor, Contractor will reimburse the difference to Owner.

## **SECTION 10 - PROTECTION OF PERSONS AND PROPERTY**

### **10.1 SAFETY PRECAUTIONS AND PROGRAMS**

Contractor will be responsible to Owner for initiating and supervising all safety programs in connection with the performance of the Work.

### **10.2 SAFETY OF PERSONS AND PROPERTY**

- A. Contractor will take reasonable precautions to prevent damage, injury, or loss to:

1. All persons on the site;
  2. The Work and materials and equipment to be incorporated into the Work; and
  3. Other property at the site or adjacent to it.
- B. Contractor will give notices and comply with applicable laws, ordinances, rules, regulations, and other lawful requirements of public authorities bearing on the safety or protection of persons and property. No work will be performed that may pose an undue safety hazard to Contractor, Contractor's employees, or any other person.
- C. Contractor will designate a responsible member of its organization at the site whose duty will be the prevention of accidents. This person will be Contractor's onsite representative unless otherwise designated in writing by Contractor to Owner and Architect.

### 10.3 EMERGENCIES

In case of an emergency endangering life or threatening the safety of any person or property, Contractor may, without waiting for specific authorization from Architect or Owner, act at its own discretion to safeguard persons or property. Contractor will immediately notify Architect of such emergency action and make a full written report to Architect within five (5) days after the event.

### 10.4 HAZARDOUS MATERIALS

In the event the Contractor encounters on the site material reasonably believed to be hazardous materials which have not been rendered harmless, the Contractor shall immediately stop Work in the area affected and report the condition to the Owner and Architect in writing. The Work in the affected area shall be resumed in the absence of hazardous materials, or when it has been rendered harmless, by written agreement of the Owner and Contractor.

## SECTION 11 - INSURANCE AND BONDS

### 11.1 CONTRACTOR'S LIABILITY INSURANCE

- A. Contractor will obtain the following insurance and provide evidence thereof as described below prior to commencement of the Work or within ten (10) days after signing the Agreement, whichever is earlier:
1. Workers Compensation Insurance.
  2. Employers Liability Insurance with minimum limits of the greater of \$500,000 E.L. each accident, \$500,000 E. L. disease- each employee, \$500,000 E.L. disease-policy limit or as required by the law of the state in which the Project is located.
  3. Commercial General Liability Insurance – ISO Form CG 00 01 (12/07) or equivalent Occurrence policy which will provide primary coverage to the additional insureds (the Owner and the Architect) in the event of any Occurrence, Claim, or Suit with:
    - a. Limits of the greater of Contractor's actual coverage amounts or the following:
      - 1) \$2,000,000 General Aggregate;
      - 2) \$2,000,000 Products - Comp/Ops Aggregate;
      - 3) \$1,000,000 Personal and Advertising Liability;
      - 4) \$1,000,000 Each Occurrence;
      - 5) \$50,000 Fire Damage to Rented Premises (Each Occurrence).
    - b. Endorsements attached to the General Liability policy including the following or their equivalent:
      - 1) ISO Form CG 25 03 (05/09), Amendment of Limits of Insurance (Designated Project or Premises), describing the Agreement and specifying limits as shown above.
      - 2) ISO Form CG 20 10 (07/04), Additional Insured -- Owners, Lessees, Or Contractors (Form B), naming Owner and Architect as additional insureds.
  4. Automobile Liability Insurance, with:
    - a. Combined Single Limit each accident in the amount of \$1,000,000 or Contractor's actual coverage, whichever is greater; and
    - b. Coverage applying to "Any Auto."
- B. Contractor will provide evidence of such insurance to Owner as follows:
1. Deliver to Owner a Certificate of Liability Insurance, on ACORD 25 (2010/05) Form, or equivalent:
    - a. Listing Owner and its consultants as the Certificate Holders and Additional Insured on the general liability and any excess liability policies;
    - b. Attaching the ISO or equivalent endorsements set forth above to the Certificate of Liability Insurance;
    - c. Identifying the Project;
    - d. Listing the insurance companies providing coverage (All companies listed must be rated in A.M. Best Company Key Rating Guide-Property-Casualty and each company must have a rating of B+ Class VII or better. Companies which are not rated are not acceptable); and
    - e. Bearing the name, address and telephone number of the producer and signed by an authorized representative of the producer. The signature may be original, stamped, or electronic.
- C. Contractor will maintain, from commencement of the Work, Insurance coverage required herein as follows:
1. Commercial General Liability Insurance through expiration of warranty period specified in Section 12.2, Paragraph B. including completion of any warranty repairs; and
  2. All other insurance through Final Payment.
- D. Owner reserves the right to reject any insurance company, policy, endorsement, or certificate of insurance with or without cause.

- E. Owner may, in writing and at its sole discretion, modify the insurance requirements.
- F. The cost of insurance as required above will be the obligation of Contractor. Contractor will be responsible for payment of all deductible amounts under all insurance.
- G. Owner will provide builders risk insurance for the cost of the Project. The policy will be written on an all risk basis with coverage for perils of wind, flood, earthquake, and terrorism, with exclusions standard for the insurance industry. The policy will be subject to a \$5,000 deductible per occurrence which will be the responsibility of Contractor and will not be a reimbursable expense. Owner will provide a copy of the terms and conditions of the builders risk policy to Contractor upon Contractor's request. Contractor will comply with terms, conditions, and deadlines of the builders risk policy. The terms, conditions, and deadlines of the builders risk policy shall govern coverage. In addition, when there is a loss which may be covered by the builders risk insurance policy, Contractor will comply with the following:
  1. Contractor will report the loss immediately to builders risk commercial insurer by calling 1-866-537-7475 and shall make such further written submissions as required and otherwise comply with all requirements of the builders risk policy.
  2. Contractor will report the loss immediately to the Owner.
  3. Contractor will immediately notify its general liability insurance carrier of the loss.
  4. Contractor will take all necessary and appropriate actions to protect the property and individuals from further loss, harm, and injury. In the event there are damages resulting from fire or water, restoration shall be performed only by a certified restoration contractor.
  5. To the extent possible, Contractor will preserve and not disturb the evidence of the loss until after the builders risk commercial insurer and all interested parties and their insurance carriers have had the opportunity to view and investigate the site and loss.
  6. Contractor will cooperate with Owner and the builders risk commercial insurer in the investigation, documentation, and settlement of loss claims, including without limitation promptly responding to all requests for information and documentation from the builders risk commercial insurer and/or Owner.

## **11.2 PERFORMANCE BOND AND LABOR AND MATERIAL PAYMENT BOND**

- A. Prior to commencement of the Work or within ten (10) days after signing the Agreement, whichever is earlier, Contractor will furnish to Owner a performance bond and a labor and material payment bond each in an amount equal to one hundred percent (100%) of the Contract Sum as security for all obligations arising under the Contract Documents. Such bonds will:
  1. Be written on Form AIA Document A312 (1984).
  2. Be issued by a surety company or companies licensed in the state in which the Project is located and holding valid certificates of authority under Sections 9304 to 9308, Title 31, of the United States Code as acceptable sureties or reinsurance companies on federal bonds.
  3. Have a penal sum obligation not exceeding the authorization shown in the current revision of Circular #570 as issued by the United States Treasury Department, i.e. "Treasury List".
  4. Be accompanied by a certified copy of the power of attorney stating the authority of the attorney-in-fact executing the bonds on behalf of the surety.
- B. Owner reserves the right to reject any surety company, performance bond, or labor and material payment bond with or without cause.
- C. The cost of the bonds as required above will be the obligation of Contractor.

## **SECTION 12 - UNCOVERING AND CORRECTION OF WORK**

### **12.1 UNCOVERING OF WORK**

Contractor will notify Architect at least twenty-four (24) hours in advance of performing work that would cover up work or otherwise make it difficult to perform inspections required by the Specifications or by applicable governing authorities. Should any such work be covered without proper notification having been given to Architect, Contractor will uncover that work for inspection at its own expense.

### **12.2 CORRECTION OF WORK**

- A. Contractor will promptly correct any portion of the Work that is rejected by Architect or which fails to conform to the requirements of the Contract Documents, whether observed before or after Substantial Completion and whether or not fabricated, installed, or completed. Contractor will bear the cost of correcting such rejected Work, including additional testing and inspection costs, compensation for Architect's services, and any other expenses made necessary thereby.
- B. Contractor will remedy any defects due to faulty materials, equipment, or workmanship which appear within a period of one (1) year from the date of Substantial Completion or within such longer period of time as may be prescribed by law or by the terms of any applicable special warranty required by the Contract Documents. Contractor will pay all costs of correcting faulty work, including without limitation additional Architect's fees, attorney fees, expert fees, consultant fees, copy costs, and other expenses when incurred.
- C. Nothing in the Contract Documents will be construed to establish a period of limitation within which Owner may enforce the obligation of Contractor to comply with the Contract Documents. The one-year period specified above has no relationship to the time within which compliance with the Contract Documents may be sought to be enforced, nor to the time within which proceedings may be commenced to establish Contractor's liability with respect to Contractor's obligations.



## **12.3 ACCEPTANCE OF NONCONFORMING WORK**

- A. If Owner prefers to accept any portion of the Work not in conformance with the Contract Documents, Owner may do so instead of requiring removal and correction of the nonconforming Work. In that event, the Contract Sum will be reduced by an amount agreed upon by the parties that reflects the difference in value to Owner between the Work as specified and the nonconforming Work. Such adjustment may consider increased maintenance costs, early replacement costs, increased inefficiency of use, and the like and will be effective whether or not final payment has been made. Such adjustment will be reflected in a Change Order pursuant to Section 7.5.
- B. Temporary or trial usage by Owner or Architect of mechanical devices, machinery, apparatus, equipment, or other work or materials supplied under the Contract Documents prior to written acceptance by Architect, will not constitute Owner's acceptance.

## **SECTION 13 - RESOLUTION OF DISPUTES**

### **13.1 SUBMITTAL OF DISPUTE**

In the event there is any dispute arising under this Agreement which cannot be resolved by agreement between the parties, either party may submit the dispute with all documentation upon which it relies to the Director of Architecture, Engineering, and Construction, Meetinghouse Facilities Department, 50 East North Temple, Salt Lake City, Utah 84150, who will convene a dispute resolution conference within thirty (30) days. The dispute resolution conference will constitute settlement negotiations and any settlement proposal made pursuant to the conference will not be admissible as evidence of liability. In the event that the parties do not resolve their dispute pursuant to the dispute resolution conference, either party may commence legal action to resolve the dispute. Any such action must be commenced within six (6) months from the first day of the dispute resolution conference or be time barred. Submission of the dispute to the Director as outlined above is a condition precedent to the right to commence legal action to resolve any dispute. In the event that either party commences legal action to adjudicate any dispute without first submitting the dispute to the Director, the other party will be entitled to obtain an order dismissing the litigation without prejudice and awarding such other party any costs and attorney fees incurred by that party in obtaining the dismissal, including without limitation copy costs, and expert and consultant fees and expenses.

### **13.2 CONTRACTOR TO PROCEED WITH DILIGENCE**

Pending final resolution of a dispute hereunder, Contractor will proceed diligently with the performance of its obligations under this Agreement.

## **SECTION 14 - TERMINATION**

### **14.1 TERMINATION BY CONTRACTOR**

In the event Owner materially breaches any term of the Contract Documents, Contractor will promptly give Written Notice of the breach to Owner. If Owner fails to cure the breach within ten (10) days of the Written Notice, Contractor may terminate the Agreement by giving Written Notice to Owner and recover from Owner the percentage of the Contract Sum represented by the Work completed on the Project site as of the date of termination together with any out of pocket loss Contractor has sustained with respect to materials and equipment as a result of the termination prior to completion of the Work, less any offsets. Contractor will not be entitled to unearned profits or any other compensation or damages as a result of the termination and hereby waives any claim therefor. Contractor will provide to Owner all warranty, as built, inspection, and other close out documents as well as materials that Contractor has in its possession or control at the time of termination. Without limitation, Contractor's indemnities and obligations under section 3.14 as well as all warranties in the specifications relative to Work provided through the date of termination survive a termination hereunder.

### **14.2 TERMINATION BY OWNER FOR CAUSE**

Should Contractor fail to provide Owner with the bonds and certificates of insurance required by Section 11 within the time specified therein, make a general assignment for the benefit of its creditors, fail to apply enough properly skilled workmen or specified materials to properly prosecute the Work in accordance with Contractor's schedule, or otherwise materially breach any provision of the Contract Documents, then Owner may, without any prejudice to any other right or remedy, give Contractor Written Notice thereof. If Contractor fails to cure its default within ten (10) days, Owner may terminate the Agreement by giving Written Notice to Contractor. In such case, Owner may, in Owner's sole discretion, take legal assignment of subcontracts and other contractual rights of Contractor and/or take possession of the premises and all materials, tools, equipment, and appliances thereon, and finish the Work by whatever method Owner deems expedient. Contractor will not be entitled to receive any further payment until the Work is finished. If the unpaid balance of the Contract Sum exceeds the expense of finishing the Work, including compensation for additional administrative, architectural, consultant, and legal services (including without limitation attorney fees, expert fees, copy costs, and other expenses), such excess will be paid to Contractor. If such expense exceeds the unpaid balance, Contractor will pay the difference to Owner. Contractor will provide to Owner all warranty, as built, inspection, and other close out documents as well as materials that Contractor has in its possession or control at the time of termination. Without limitation, Contractor's indemnities and obligations under section 3.14 as well as all warranties in the specifications relative to Work provided through the date of termination survive a termination hereunder.

### **14.3 TERMINATION BY OWNER FOR CONVENIENCE**

Notwithstanding any other provision contained in the Contract Documents, Owner may, without cause and in its absolute discretion, terminate the Agreement at any time. In the event of such termination, Contractor will be entitled to recover from Owner the

percentage of the Contract Sum equal to the percentage of the Work which Architect determines has been completed on the Project site as of the date of termination together with any out of pocket loss Contractor has sustained with respect to materials and equipment as a result of the termination prior to completion of the Work, less any offsets. Contractor will not be entitled to unearned profits or any other compensation as a result of the termination and hereby waives any claim therefor. Contractor will provide to Owner all warranty, as built, inspection, and other close out documents as well as materials that Contractor has in its possession or control at the time of termination. Owner may, in Owner's sole discretion, take legal assignment of subcontracts and other contractual rights of Contractor. Without limitation, Contractor's indemnities and obligations under section 3.14 as well as all warranties in the specifications relative to Work provided through the date of termination survive a termination hereunder.

## **SECTION 15 - MISCELLANEOUS PROVISIONS**

### **15.1 GOVERNING LAW**

The parties acknowledge that the Contract Documents have substantial connections to the State of Utah. The Contract Documents will be deemed to have been made, executed, and delivered in Salt Lake City, Utah. To the maximum extent permitted by law, (i) the Contract Documents and all matters related to their creation and performance will be governed by and enforced in accordance with the laws of the State of Utah, excluding conflicts of law rules; and (ii) all disputes arising from or related to the Contract Documents will be decided only in a state or federal court located in Salt Lake City, Utah and not in any other court or state. Toward that end, the parties hereby consent to the jurisdiction of the state and federal courts located in Salt Lake City, Utah and waive any other venue to which they might be entitled by virtue of domicile, habitual residence, place of business, or otherwise.

### **15.2 NO WAIVER**

No action or failure to act by Owner, Architect, or Contractor will constitute a waiver of a right or duty afforded them under the Contract Documents, nor will such action or failure to act constitute approval of or acquiescence in a breach thereunder, except as may be specifically agreed in writing.

### **15.3 RULE OF CONSTRUCTION**

Owner and Contractor agree that the Contract Documents will be deemed to have been drafted by both Owner and Contractor and will not be construed against either Owner or Contractor because of authorship.

### **15.4 ENFORCEMENT**

In the event either party commences legal action to enforce or rescind any provision of the Contract Documents, the prevailing party will be entitled to recover its attorney fees and costs, including without limitation all copy costs and expert and consultant fees and expenses, incurred in that action and on all appeals, from the other party.

### **15.5 TESTS AND INSPECTIONS**

- A. Owner and Architect have the right to have tests made when they deem it necessary. Tests conducted by Owner or Architect will be paid for by Owner. Should a test reveal a failure of the Work to meet Contract Document requirements, the cost of the test as well as subsequent tests related to the failure necessary to determine compliance with the Contract Documents will be paid for by Owner, with the cost thereof deducted from the Contract Sum by Modification.
- B. Tests will be made in accordance with recognized standards by a competent, independent testing laboratory. Materials found defective or not in conformity with Contract Document requirements will be promptly replaced or repaired at the expense of Contractor.
- C. Owner and Architect have the right to obtain samples of materials to be used in the Work and to test samples for determining whether they meet Contract Document requirements. Samples required for testing will be furnished by Contractor and selected as directed by Architect. Samples may be required from the sample's source, point of manufacture, point of delivery, or point of installation at Architect's discretion. Samples not required as a Submittal in the Specifications will be paid for by Owner. Should tests reveal a failure of the Sample to meet the Contract Document requirements, Contractor will provide other Samples that comply with the requirements of the Contract Documents.

END OF DOCUMENT

**SUPPLEMENTARY CONDITIONS**  
**FIXED SUM (U.S.)**

---

**ITEM 1 - GENERAL**

1. Conditions of the Agreement and General Conditions apply to each Division of the Specifications.
2. Provisions contained in Division 01 apply to all Divisions of the Specifications.

**ITEM 2 - LIQUIDATED DAMAGE AMOUNTS:**

1. The amount of liquidated damages to the benefit of the Contractor for delays under General Conditions Section 7.3, Paragraph B is \$\_\_\_\_\_ per day.
2. The amount of liquidated damages to be paid to the Owner for delays in Substantial Completion under General Conditions Section 8.3, Paragraph A is \$\_\_\_\_\_ per day.
3. The amount of liquidated damages to be paid to the Owner for delays in completing work itemized on the Substantial Completion Certificate under General Conditions Section 8.3, Paragraph B is \$\_\_\_\_\_ per day.

**ITEM 3 - PERMITS**

1. Delete Section 3.6, Paragraph B of the General Conditions and replace with the following:  
B. \_\_\_\_\_

**ITEM 4 - MISCELLANEOUS CHANGES IN GENERAL CONDITIONS**

1. FOR PROJECTS EXCEEDING \$5 MILLION – CONTRACTOR TO PROVIDE BUILDER’S RISK INSURANCE (AND NOT OWNER)

*Replace Section 11.1 Contractor’s Liability Insurance of the General Conditions with the following:*

**11.1 CONTRACTOR'S LIABILITY INSURANCE**

- A. Contractor will obtain the following insurance and provide evidence thereof as described below prior to commencement of the Work or within ten (10) days after signing the Agreement, whichever is earlier:
  1. Workers Compensation Insurance.
  2. Employers Liability Insurance with minimum limits of the greater of: \$500,000 E.L. each accident, \$500,000 E. L. disease-each employee, \$500,000 E.L. disease-policy limit; or as required by the law of the state in which the Project is located.
  3. Commercial General Liability Insurance – ISO Form CG 00 01 (12/07) or equivalent Occurrence policy which will provide primary coverage to the additional insureds (the Owner and the Architect) in the event of any Occurrence, Claim, or Suit with:
    - a. Limits of the greater of: Contractor’s actual coverage amounts or the following:
      - 1) \$2,000,000 General Aggregate;
      - 2) \$2,000,000 Products - Comp/Ops Aggregate:

- 3) \$1,000,000 Personal and Advertising Injury:
  - 4) \$1,000,000 Each Occurrence;
  - 5) \$50,000 Damage to Rented Premises.
- b. Endorsements attached to the General Liability policy including the following or their equivalent:
- 1) ISO Form CG 25 03 (05/09), Designated Construction Project(s) General Aggregate Limit, describing the project and specifying that limits apply to each project of the contractor.
  - 2) ISO Form CG 20 10 (07/04), Additional Insured – Owners, Lessees or Contractors – Scheduled Person or Organization, naming Owner and Architect as additional insureds.
4. Automobile Liability Insurance, with:
- a. Combined Single Limit each accident in the amount of \$1,000,000 or Contractor's actual coverage, whichever is greater; and
  - b. Coverage applying to "Any Auto" or equivalent to all owned autos, hired autos, and non-owned autos.
5. Builder's Risk Insurance Policy – ISO Form CP 00 20 (10/12), Builders Risk Coverage (or equivalent form) and ISO Form CP 10 30 (10/12) Causes of Loss – Special Form, and ISO Form CP 11 20 (06/07) Builders Risk – Collapse During Construction (or equivalent form) with Limits of Insurance in the amount of the Contract Sum.
- a. Policy will cover materials stored at temporary storage locations and materials in transit.
  - b. Include Owner and Subcontractors as additional insureds.
  - c. Policy will be subject to a deductible of not less than \$5,000 per occurrence which will be the responsibility of Contractor and will not be included in the Cost of the Work or be a reimbursable expense.
- B. Contractor will provide evidence of such insurance to Owner as follows:
1. Deliver to Owner a Certificate of Insurance on ACORD 25 (2010/05) or equivalent:
    - a. Listing Owner as the Certificate Holder and Owner and Architect as Additional Insureds on general liability and any excess liability policies;
    - b. Attaching the endorsements set forth above for additional insured on general liability (CG 20 10 07/04) and Designated Construction Project Aggregate Limit (CG 25 03 05/09).
    - c. Identifying the Project.
    - d. Listing the insurance companies providing coverage. All companies must be rated in A.M. Best Company's Key Rating Guide – Property-Casualty, current edition, at a rating B+ Class VII or better. Companies that are not rated are not acceptable.
    - e. Bearing the name, address, and telephone number of the producer and signed by an authorized representative of the producer. The signature may be original, stamped, or electronic. A faxed or digital copy is also acceptable.
  2. Deliver to Owner a Certificate of Insurance on ACORD 27, Evidence of Property Insurance, for the Builders Risk Insurance Policy attaching the endorsement giving evidence that the Owner and all Subcontractors are listed as additional insureds on the Builders Risk Policy.

- C. Contractor will maintain, from commencement of the Work, Insurance coverage required herein as follows:
  - 1. Commercial General Liability Insurance through expiration of warranty period specified in Section 12.2, Paragraph B. including completion of any warranty repairs;
  - 2. Builders' Risk Insurance through Substantial Completion; and
  - 3. All other insurance through final payment.
- D. In the event of a loss, or upon request by Owner, Contractor will provide Owner with a copy of required insurance policies above.
- E. Owner reserves the right to reject any insurance company, policy, endorsement, or certificate of insurance with or without cause.
- F. Owner may, in writing and at its sole discretion, modify the insurance requirements.

## **ITEM 5 - STATE SPECIFIC SUPPLEMENTARY CONDITIONS**

### **Utah**

#### **RETENTION APPLIED TO CONTRACTOR PAYMENTS FOR PROJECTS IN UTAH:**

*Replace section 9.5.F of the General Conditions with the following:*

- F. In addition and notwithstanding the foregoing, Owner may also withhold and retain 5% of payments made to Contractor. These retention funds will be held in an interest bearing account.

#### **PAYMENT OF RETAINED FUNDS IN UTAH:**

*Replace section 9.5 G of the General Conditions with the following:*

- G. After Contractor achieves Substantial Completion and submits its payment request for retained funds and delivers to the Architect Owner's form entitled "Contractor's Substantial Completion Affidavit and Consent of Surety" fully executed by Contractor and its surety, if any, and provides statutory Conditional Waiver and Release documents executed by all subcontractors and suppliers having claim against the retained funds, Owner will pay any unpaid retention less any amounts withheld pursuant to Section 9.4 within forty-five (45) days from the later of (a) the date Owner received Contractor's payment request for retained funds and fully executed Contractor's Substantial Completion Affidavit and Consent of Surety, (b) the date a certificate of occupancy is issued; (c) the date that a building inspector having authority to issue its own certificate of occupancy does not issue that certificate but permits occupancy.

#### **UTAH STATE SALES TAX:**

*Add the following to the General Conditions:*

- 1. Contractors should be exempt on purchases of material installed or converted into real property to be used by the Owner. The Contractor will furnish each vendor with a completed Exemption Certificate Form TC-721. The certificate will be prepared by the Contractor for each vendor in order to obtain the exemption.
- 2. The Owner's tax exempt number is 11871701-002-STC.

## **UTAH NOTICE OF INTENT TO OBTAIN FINAL COMPLETION:**

*Add the following to the General Conditions:*

- A. Contractor will file with the State Construction Registry, on its own behalf and/or on behalf of Owner, a notice of intent to obtain final completion at least 45 days before the day on which the Owner or Contractor files or could file a notice of completion under Utah Code Ann. Section 38-1a-506 if:
  - 1. The completion of performance time under the original contract for construction work is greater than 120 days;
  - 2. The total original construction contract price exceeds \$500,000; and
  - 3. The original contractor or owner has not obtained a payment bond in accordance with Utah Code Ann. Section 14-2-1.

## **UTAH NOTICE OF COMPLETION:**

*Add the following to the General Conditions:*

- A. Within five (5) calendar days of final completion of the Project and in compliance with Section 38-1a-507 Utah Code Annotated, Contractor will file with the State Construction Registry, and copy to Owner, a notice of completion which will include, without limitation, the following:
  - 1. The name, address, telephone number, and email address of the person filing the notice of completion;
  - 2. The name of the county in which the Project and/or Project site is located;
  - 3. The date on which final completion is alleged to have occurred;
  - 4. The method used to determine final completion; and
  - 5. One of the following:
    - a. The tax parcel identification number of each parcel included in the Project and/or Project site;
    - b. The entry number of a preliminary notice on the same project that includes the tax parcel identification number of each parcel included in the Project and/or Project site; or
    - c. The entry number of the building permit issued for the Project.
- B. Notwithstanding any other provision of the Contract Documents to the contrary, Contractor and Owner agree that any breach or failure to comply with this Section by the Contractor will constitute a breach of contract and the Contractor will be liable for any direct, indirect, or consequential damages to the Owner flowing from this breach.

## **UTAH PROGRESS PAYMENTS AND FINAL PAYMENT:**

*Replace Section 9.5.A of the General Conditions with the following:*

## **9.5 PROGRESS PAYMENTS**

- A. Owner will pay Contractor progress payments within the parameters of Section 9.2 within fifteen (15) days after:
1. Contractor has submitted a progress payment request;
  2. Contractor has obtained Conditional Waiver and Release Upon Progress Payment documents (in content complying with Utah Code § 38-1a-802) executed by each of the subcontractors performing work and/or providing materials covered by the Contractor's progress payment request; and
  3. Owner receives the certified payment request from Architect.

*Replace Section 9.6.A.3 of the General Conditions with the following:*

## **9.6 FINAL PAYMENT**

3. Contractor has obtained Waiver and Release Upon Final Payment documents (in content complying with Utah Code § 38-1a-802) executed by each of the subcontractors performing work and/or providing materials covered by the Contractor's final payment request;

END OF DOCUMENT

4884-7961-0114

**SECTION 01 1100****SUMMARY OF WORK****PART 1 - GENERAL****1.1 SUMMARY**

- A. Section Includes But is Not Limited To:
1. Administrative and procedural requirements Summary of Work requirements.

**1.2 WORK COVERED BY CONTRACT DOCUMENTS**

- A. Provisions contained in Division 01 apply to Sections of Divisions 02 through 49 of Specifications. Instructions contained in Specifications are directed to Contractor. Unless specifically provided otherwise, obligations set forth in Contract Documents are obligations of Contractor.
- B. Contractor shall furnish total labor, materials, equipment, and services necessary to perform The Work in accordance with Contract Documents.

**1.3 WORK BY OWNER**

- A. Owner will furnish and install some portions of The Work with its own forces. Contractor will be provided with schedule of when these items are to be performed.
1. General:
    - a. Complete work necessary to accommodate work to be performed by Owner before scheduled date for performance of such work. Contractor will be back charged for actual expenses incurred by Owner for failure to timely complete such work.
    - b. Store and protect completed work provided by Owner until date of Substantial Completion.
  2. Work furnished and installed by Owner include, but are not limited to, following:
    - a. High Security Cylinders and Cores:
    - b. Selected Commercial Toilet Accessories.
    - c. Carpet and Carpet Base.
    - d. Owner will terminate building telephone cables at terminal board.
    - e. Pews.

**PART 2 - PRODUCTS Not Used****PART 3 - EXECUTION Not Used****END OF SECTION**



**SECTION 01 1200****MULTIPLE CONTRACT SUMMARY****PART 1 - GENERAL****1.1 SUMMARY**

- A. Section Includes But is Not Limited To:
1. Administrative and procedural requirements for Multiple Contracts.

**1.2 SUMMARY OF CONTRACTS**

- A. Owner may issue separate contracts for operations scheduled to precede and be substantially completed before beginning of The Work under this Contract.
1. Contractor will be given written notice from such contractors of any revisions to scheduled completion of their work at least 30 days in advance. Owner will reimburse Contractor for expenses incurred by Contractor by failure to be properly notified.
- B. Owner has issued or will issue separate contracts for operations scheduled to be completed between Notice to Proceed and Substantial Completion.
1. General:
    - a. Schedule performance of work covered by such separate contracts in Contractor's Construction Schedule so as to avoid delays in Substantial Completion. Give written notice to such contractors and to Owner of any revisions to scheduled delivery and work dates at least 90 days in advance.
    - b. Complete work necessary to accommodate items provided under such separate contracts before scheduled date for performance of such work. Contractor will be back charged for actual expenses incurred by Owner for failure to timely complete such work including, but not limited to, cost of crews during downtime or for call backs and costs to correct substrate deficiencies.
    - c. Store and protect completed work provided under separate contracts until date of Substantial Completion.
  2. Packaged Audio / Visual System.
  3. Sheet Carpeting. See Section 09 6816.
  4. Section 09 6816.
  5. Soap dispensers, paper towel dispensers, and toilet tissue dispensers. See Section 10 2813.
  6. Testing and Inspection. See Section 01 4523 "Testing and Inspection" for testing and inspection, and testing laboratory services for materials, products, and construction methods:
    - a. Aggregate Base. See Section 31 1123.
    - b. Air System Testing, Adjusting, and Balance. See Section 01 4546.
    - c. Asphalt Paving. See Section 32 1216.
    - d. Concrete. See Section 03 3111.
    - e. Concrete Moisture Vapor Emission and Alkalinity level. See Section 09 0503, Section 09 6466, Section 09 6519, and Section 09 6567.
    - f. Concrete Paving. See Section 32 1313.
    - g. Drill-In Mechanical Anchors / Adhesive Anchors / Screw Anchors. See Section 03 1511 and Section 04 0519.
    - h. Fill / Engineering Fill. See Section 31 2323.
    - i. Headed Concrete Anchor Studs / Deformed Bar Anchors. See Section 03 1511.
    - j. Masonry (Non-structural). Tests and inspections is not required. See Section 04 0501 'Common Masonry Requirements'.
    - k. Masonry (Structural). Tests and inspections are required as specified in Sections under Heading 04 2000 'Unit Masonry'. For administrative requirements, see Section 04 0501 'Common Masonry Requirements'.
    - l. Pervious Concrete Paving. See Section 32 1314.

- m. Reinforcement Bars. See Section 03 2100 (Epoxy-Coated Reinforcement Bars. See Section 03 2116).
  - n. Shop-Fabricated Wood Trusses: Metal Plate Connected Wood Trusses. See Section 06 1753.
  - o. Structural Steel Framing. See Section 05 1200.
  - p. Wood Panel Product Sheathing. See Section 06 1636.
7. Water Audit. See Section 32 8423.
- C. Owner has issued or will issue separate contracts for operations normally scheduled to follow Substantial Completion.
- 1. General:
    - a. Give written notice to such contractors and to Owner of any revisions of scheduled date of Substantial Completion at least 90 days in advance. Contractor will be back charged for actual expenses incurred by Owner for failure to accurately report date of Substantial Completion.
    - b. Complete work necessary to accommodate items provided under such separate contracts before Substantial Completion. Contractor will be back charged for actual expenses incurred by Owner for failure to complete such work before Substantial Completion.
  - 2. Furnishings.

**PART 2 - PRODUCTS Not Used**

**PART 3 - EXECUTION Not Used**

**END OF SECTION**

**SECTION 01 1400****WORK RESTRICTIONS****PART 1 - GENERAL****1.1 SUMMARY**

- A. Section Includes But is Not Limited To:
1. Administrative and procedural requirements for Work Restrictions.

**1.2 PROJECT CONDITIONS**

- A. During construction period, Contractor will have use of premises for construction operations. Contractor will ensure that Contractor, its employees, subcontractors, and their employees comply with following requirements:
1. Confine operations to areas within Contract limits shown on Drawings. Do not disturb portions of site beyond Contract limits.
  2. Do not allow alcoholic beverages, illegal drugs, or persons under their influence on Project site.
  3. Do not allow use of tobacco in any form on Project Site.
  4. Do not allow pornographic or other indecent materials on site.
  5. Do not allow work on Project site on Sundays except for emergency work.
  6. Refrain from using profanity or being discourteous or uncivil to others on Project Site or while performing The Work.
  7. Wear shirts with sleeves, wear shoes, and refrain from wearing immodest, offensive, or obnoxious clothing, while on Project Site.
  8. Do not allow playing of obnoxious and loud music on Project Site. Do not allow playing of any music within existing facilities.
  9. Do not build fires on Project Site.
  10. Do not allow weapons on Project Site, except those carried by law enforcement officers or other uniformed security personnel who have been retained by Owner or Contractor to provide security services.
- B. Do not load or permit any part of the structure to be loaded with a weight that will endanger its safety. Questions of structural loading as part of construction means and methods shall be addressed by a licensed structural engineer engaged by Contractor, subject to the review by Architect.

**PART 2 - PRODUCTS Not Used****PART 3 - EXECUTION Not Used****END OF SECTION**

**SECTION 01 2900****PAYMENT PROCEDURES****PART 1 - GENERAL****1.1 SUMMARY**

- A. Section Includes But is Not Limited To:
1. Administrative and procedural requirements to prepare and process Applications for Payments.

**1.2 PAYMENT REQUESTS**

- A. Use Payment Request forms provided by Owner.
- B. Each Payment Request will be consistent with previous requests and payments certified by Architect and paid for by Owner.
- C. Request Preparation:
1. Complete every entry on Payment Request form.
  2. Entries will match data on approved schedule of values and Contractor's Construction Schedule. Use updated schedules if revisions have been made.
  3. Submit signed Payment Request to Architect with current Construction Schedule.
- D. Provide following submittals before or with submittal of Initial Payment Request:
1. List of Subcontractors.
  2. Initial progress report.
  3. Contractor's Construction Schedule.
  4. Submittal Schedule.
- E. Provide Affidavit of Contractor and Consent of Surety with Payment Request following Substantial Completion.

**1.3 SCHEDULE OF VALUES**

- A. Submit schedule of values on Owner's standard form to Architect 20 days minimum before submission of Initial Payment Request as a necessary condition before payment will be processed. Coordinate preparation of schedule of values with preparation of Contractor's Construction Schedule. Correlate line items in Schedule of Values with other required administrative schedules and forms,
1. Contractor's Construction Schedule.
  2. Payment Request form.
  3. Schedule of Allowances.
  4. Schedule of Alternates.

**PART 2 - PRODUCTS Not Used****PART 3 - EXECUTION Not Used****END OF SECTION**

**SECTION 01 3100****PROJECT MANAGEMENT AND COORDINATION****PART 1 - GENERAL****1.1 SUMMARY**

- A. Section Includes But is Not Limited To:
  - 1. Administrative and procedural requirements for Project Management and Coordination on Projects.

**1.2 PROJECT COORDINATION**

- A. Project designation for this Project is West Point Seminary.
- B. This Project designation will be included on documents generated for Project by Contractor and Subcontractors, or be present on a cover letter accompanying such documents.

**1.3 MULTIPLE CONTRACT COORDINATION**

- A. Contractor shall be responsible for accurately maintaining and reporting schedule of The Work from Notice to Proceed to date of Substantial Completion.
- B. Contractor shall be responsible for providing Temporary Facilities And Controls for those who perform work on Project from Notice to Proceed to date of Substantial Completion.
- C. Contractor shall be responsible for providing Construction Waste Management And Disposal services for those who perform work on Project from Notice to Proceed to date of Substantial Completion.
- D. Contractor shall be responsible for Final Cleaning for entire Project.

**1.4 PROJECT MEETINGS AND CONFERENCES**

- A. Preconstruction Conference:
  - 1. Attend preconstruction conference and organizational meeting scheduled by Architect at Project site or other convenient location.
  - 2. Be prepared to discuss items of significance that could affect progress, including such topics as:
    - a. Construction schedule.
    - b. Critical Work sequencing.
    - c. Current problems.
    - d. Designation of responsible personnel.
    - e. Distribution of Contract Documents.
    - f. Equipment deliveries and priorities.
    - g. General schedule of inspections by Architect and its consultants.
    - h. General inspection of tests.
    - i. Office, work, and storage areas.
    - j. Preparation of record documents and O & M manuals.
    - k. Procedures for processing interpretations and Modifications.
    - l. Procedures for processing Payment Requests.
    - m. Project cleanup.
    - n. Security.
    - o. Status of permits.
    - p. Submittal of Product Data, Shop Drawings, Samples, Quality Assurance / Control submittals.

- q. Use of the premises.
  - r. Work restrictions.
  - s. Working hours.
3. Architect will record minutes of meetings and distribute copies to Owner and Contractor within three (3) working days.
- B. Progress Meetings:
- 1. Attend progress meetings at Project site at regularly scheduled intervals determined by Architect, at least once a month.
  - 2. Progress meetings will be open to Owner, Architect, Subcontractors, and anyone invited by Owner, Architect, and Contractor.
  - 3. Be prepared to discuss items of significance that could affect progress, including following:
    - a. Progress since last meeting.
    - b. Whether Contractor is on schedule.
    - c. Activities required to complete Project within Contract Time.
    - d. Labor and materials provided under separate contracts.
    - e. Off-site fabrication problems.
    - f. Access.
    - g. Site use.
    - h. Temporary facilities and services.
    - i. Hours of work.
    - j. Hazards and risks.
    - k. Project cleanup.
    - l. Quality and Work standards.
    - m. Status of pending modifications.
    - n. Documentation of information for Payment Requests.
    - o. Maintenance of Project records.
  - 4. Architect will prepare minutes of progress meetings and distribute copies of minutes to Owner and Contractor within three (3) working days.
- C. Pre-Installation Conferences:
- 1. Attend pre-installation conferences specified in Contract Document.
    - a. If possible, schedule these conferences on same day as regularly scheduled Progress Meetings. If this is not possible, coordinate scheduling with Architect.
    - b. Request input from attendees in preparing agenda.
  - 2. Be prepared to discuss following items:
    - a. Requirements of Contract Documents.
    - b. Completed work necessary for installation of items or systems.
    - c. Conditions not in compliance with installation requirements.
    - d. Installation and inspection schedule.
    - e. Coordination between trades.
    - f. Space and access limitations.
    - g. Testing.
  - 3. Architect will prepare meeting minutes and distribute minutes to Owner and Contractor within three (3) working days.

## **PART 2 - PRODUCTS Not Used**

## **PART 3 - EXECUTION Not Used**

**END OF SECTION**

**SECTION 01 3200****CONSTRUCTION PROGRESS DOCUMENTATION****PART 1 - GENERAL****1.1 SUMMARY****A. Section Includes But is Not Limited To:**

1. Administrative and procedural requirements for documenting the progress of construction during performance of the Work.

**1.2 SCHEDULING OF WORK****A. Bar Chart Schedule:**

1. Submit horizontal bar chart schedule before Preconstruction Conference. Provide separate time bar for each construction activity listed on Owner's payment request form. Within each time bar, show estimated completion percentage. Provide continuous vertical line to identify first working day of each week. Show each activity in chronological sequence. Show graphically sequences necessary for completion of related portions of The Work. As The Work progresses, place contrasting mark in each bar to indicate actual completion.
2. Provide copies of schedule for Architect and Owner and post copy in field office.
3. Revise schedule monthly. Send copy of revised schedule to Owner and Architect and post copy in field office.
4. Project Management Software Programs:
  - a. Any software project management program capable of Bar Chart Scheduling for projects of equal size and complexity is approved by Contractor and approved by Owner's Project Manager.

**B. Daily Construction Reports:**

1. Prepare daily reports of operations at Project including at least following information:
  - a. List of Subcontractors at site.
  - b. Approximate count of personnel at site by trade.
  - c. High and low temperatures, general weather conditions.
  - d. Major items of equipment on site.
  - e. Materials, equipment, or Owner-furnished items arriving at or leaving site.
  - f. Accidents and unusual events.
  - g. Site or structure damage by water, frost, wind, or other causes.
  - h. Meetings, conferences, and significant decisions.
  - i. Visitors to the job including meeting attendees.
  - j. Stoppages, delays, shortages, losses.
  - k. Any tests made and their result if known.
  - l. Meter readings and similar recordings.
  - m. Emergency procedures.
  - n. Orders and requests of governing authorities.
  - o. Modifications received, carried out.
  - p. Services connected, disconnected.
  - q. Equipment or system tests and start-ups.
  - r. Brief summary of work accomplished that day.
  - s. Signature of person preparing report.
2. Submit daily reports to Architect at least weekly.
3. Maintain copies of daily reports at field office.

**PART 2 - PRODUCTS Not Used**

**PART 3 - EXECUTION Not Used**

**END OF SECTION**



**SECTION 01 3300****SUBMITTAL PROCEDURES****PART 1 - GENERAL****1.1 SUMMARY**

- A. Section Includes But is Not Limited To:
  - 1. Administrative and procedural requirements for Submittal Procedures.
- B. Related Requirements:
  - 1. Section 01 7800: 'Closeout Submittals' for administrative and procedural requirements for closeout submittals.

**1.2 SUBMITTAL SCHEDULE**

- A. Furnish submittal schedule within 20 days after receipt of Notice to Proceed, listing items specified to be furnished for review to Architect including product data, shop drawings, samples, and Informational submittals.
  - 1. Coordinate submittal schedule with Contractor's construction schedule.
  - 2. Enclose the following information for each item:
    - a. Scheduled date for first submittal.
    - b. Related Section number.
    - c. Submittal category.
    - d. Name of Subcontractor.
    - e. Description of part of the Work covered.
    - f. Scheduled date for resubmittal.
    - g. Scheduled date for Architect's final release or approval.
- B. Print and distribute copies to Architect and Owner and post copy in field office. When revisions are made, distribute to same parties and post in same location.
- C. Revise schedule monthly. Send copy of revised schedule to Owner and Architect and post copy in field office.

**1.3 SUBMITTAL PROCEDURES**

- A. Coordination:
  - 1. Coordinate preparation and processing of submittals with performance of construction activities. Transmit each submittal sufficiently before performance of related construction activities to avoid delay.
    - a. Coordinate each submittal with fabrication, purchasing, testing, delivery, other submittals, and related activities that require sequential activity.
    - b. Coordinate transmittal of different types of submittals required for related elements of The Work so processing will not be delayed by need to review submittals concurrently for coordination. Architect reserves right to withhold action on a submittal requiring coordination with other submittals until related submittals are received.
  - 2. Processing Time:
    - a. Allow sufficient review time so installation will not be delayed by time required to process submittals, including time for resubmittals.
      - 1) Allow 21 days for initial review. Allow additional time if processing must be delayed allowing coordination with subsequent submittals. Architect will promptly advise Contractor when submittal being processed must be delayed for coordination.

- 2) If an intermediate submittal is necessary, process same as initial submittal.
  - 3) Allow 10 days for reprocessing each submittal.
  - 4) No extension of Contract Time will be authorized because of failure to transmit submittals to Architect in sufficient time before work is to be performed to allow processing.
3. Identification:
- a. Place permanent label or title block on each submittal for identification. Include name of entity that prepared each submittal on label or title block.
    - 1) Provide space approximately 4 by 5 inches on label or beside title block on Shop Drawings to record Contractor's review and approval markings and action taken.
    - 2) Include following information on label for processing and recording action taken:
      - a) Project name.
      - b) Date.
      - c) Name and address of Architect.
      - d) Name and address of Contractor.
      - e) Name and address of Subcontractor.
      - f) Name and address of supplier.
      - g) Name of manufacturer.
      - h) Number and title of appropriate Specification Section.
      - i) Drawing number and detail references, as appropriate.
4. Transmittal:
- a. Package each submittal appropriately for transmittal and handling. Transmit each submittal from Contractor to Architect using transmittal letter. On transmittal, record relevant information and requests for data. Include Contractor's certification that information complies with Contract Document requirements, or, on form or separate sheet, record deviations from Contract Document requirements, including minor variations and limitations.
  - b. Submittals received from sources other than Contractor or not marked with Contractor's approval will be returned without action.

#### 1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data:
1. Submit Product Data, as required by individual Sections of Specifications.
  2. Mark each copy of each set of submittals to show choices and options used on Project. Where printed Product Data includes information on products that are not required for Project, mark copies to indicate information relating to Project.
  3. Certify that proposed product complies with requirements of Contract Documents. List any deviations from those requirements on form or separate sheet.
  4. Submit five copies of each required submittal unless otherwise required. Architect will return three copies marked with action taken and with corrections or modifications required.
  5. Submit electronic files PDF: Architect will return a PDF copy marked with action taken and with corrections or modifications required.
- B. Shop Drawings:
1. Submit newly prepared graphic data to accurate scale. Except for templates, patterns, and similar full-size Drawings, submit Shop Drawings on sheets at least 8-1/2 by 11 inches (215 by 280 mm) but no larger than 36 by 48 inches (915 by 1 200 mm). Highlight, encircle, or otherwise show deviations from Contract Documents. Include following information as a minimum:
    - a. Dimensions.
    - b. Identification of products and materials included.
    - c. Compliance with specified standards.
    - d. Notation of coordination requirements.
    - e. Notation of dimensions established by field measurement.
  2. Do not reproduce Contract Documents or copy standard information as basis of Shop Drawings. Standard printed information prepared without specific reference to Project is not acceptable as Shop Drawings.
  3. Review and designate (stamp) approval of shop drawings. Unless otherwise specified, submit to Architect six copies of shop drawings required by Contract Documents. Shop drawings not

required by Contract Documents, but requested by Contractor or supplied by Subcontractor, need not be submitted to Architect for review.

C. Samples:

1. Submit full-size, fully fabricated Samples cured and finished as specified and physically identical with material or product proposed. Samples include partial sections of manufactured or fabricated components, cuts or containers of materials, color range sets, and swatches showing color, texture, and pattern.
  - a. Mount, display, or package Samples to ease review of qualities specified. Prepare Samples to match samples provided by Architect, if applicable. Include following:
    - 1) Generic description of Sample.
    - 2) Sample source.
    - 3) Product name or name of manufacturer.
    - 4) Compliance with recognized standards.
    - 5) Availability and delivery time.
2. Submit Samples for review of kind, color, pattern, and texture, for final check of these characteristics with other elements, and for a comparison of these characteristics between final submittal and actual component as delivered and installed.
  - a. Where variations in color, pattern, texture or other characteristics are inherent in material or product represented, submit set of three samples minimum that show approximate limits of variations.
  - b. Refer to other specification Sections for requirements for Samples that illustrate workmanship, fabrication techniques, details of assembly, connections, operation and similar construction characteristics.
  - c. Refer to other Sections for Samples to be returned to Contractor for incorporation into The Work. Such Samples shall be undamaged at time of use. On transmittal, indicate special requests regarding disposition of Sample submittals.
3. Where Samples are for selection of color, pattern, texture, or similar characteristics from a range of standard choices, submit full set of choices for material or product. Preliminary submittals will be reviewed and returned with Architect's mark indicating selection and other action.
4. Except for Samples illustrating assembly details, workmanship, fabrication techniques, connections, operation, and similar characteristics, submit three sets. One will be returned marked with action taken.
5. Samples, as accepted and returned by Architect, will be used for quality comparisons throughout course of construction.
  - a. Unless noncompliance with Contract Documents is observed, submittal may serve as final submittal.
  - b. Sample sets may be used to obtain final acceptance of construction associated with each set.

## 1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Informational submittals are design data, test reports, certificates, manufacturer's instructions, manufacturer's field reports, and other documentary data affirming quality of products and installations. Submit five copies of each required submittal unless otherwise required. Architect will return three copies marked with action taken and with corrections or modifications required. [or] Submit electronic files: PDF. Architect will return a PDF copy marked with action taken and with corrections or modifications required.
1. Certificates: Describe certificates intended to document affirmations by Contractor or others that the work is in accordance with the Contract Documents, but do not repeat provisions of Parts 2 or 3.
  2. Delegated Design Submittals / Design Data: Describe submittals intended to demonstrate design work prepared by Contractor's licensed professionals.
  3. Test And Evaluation Reports: Describe submittal of test reports or evaluation service reports intended to document required tests.
  4. Manufacturer Instructions: Describe submittals intended to document manufacturer instructions.
  5. Source Quality Control Submittals: Describe submittal of source quality control documentation.
  6. Field Quality Control Submittals: Describe submittal of field quality control documentation.

7. Manufacturer Reports: Describe submittal of Manufacturer reports as documentation of manufacturer activities.
8. Special Procedure Submittals: Describe submittals intended to document special procedures. An example would be construction staging or phasing for remodeling an existing facility while keeping it in operation. While the Contractor would normally be responsible for managing this, submittal of his plan as documentation could be specified.
9. Qualification Statements: Describe submittals intended to document qualifications of entities employed by Contractor.

## 1.6 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. This title groups submittals that occur during project closeout. Coordinate with section 01 7800 Closeout Submittals.
  1. As Built Record Drawings as defined in the Agreement.
  2. Project Manual: Complete Project Manual including Addenda and Modifications as defined in General Conditions.
  3. Maintenance Contracts: Describe submittal of the maintenance contract specific to the Section.
  4. Operations & Maintenance Data: Describe submittal of operation and maintenance data necessary for products of the Section.
  5. Warranty Documentation: Describe submittal of final executed warranty document specific to the Section.
  6. Record Documentation: Describe submittal of record documentation specific to the Section.
  7. Software: Describe submittal system software and programming software specific to the Section.

## 1.7 MAINTENANCE MATERIAL SUBMITTALS

- A. This title groups maintenance material required submittals specific to the Section. Items may be provided at completion of Work or submitted with section 01 7800 Closeout Submittals:
  1. Spare Parts: Describe spare parts necessary for Owner's use in facility operation and maintenance. 'Parts' are generally understood to be items such as filters, motor drive belts, lamps, and other similar manufactured items that require only simple replacement.
  2. Extra Stock Materials: Describe extra stock materials to be provided for Owner's use in facility operation and maintenance. Extra stock materials are generally understood to be items such as ceiling tiles, flooring, paint etc.
  3. Tools:
    - a. Describe tools to be provided for Owner's use in facility operation and maintenance. Tools are generally understood to be wrenches, gauges, circuit setters, etc, required for proper operation or maintenance of a system.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS Not Used

## PART 3 - EXECUTION Not Used

**END OF SECTION**

**SECTION 01 3500****SPECIAL PROCEDURES****PART 1 - GENERAL****1.1 SUMMARY**

- A. Section Includes But is Not Limited To:
1. Administrative and procedural requirements for Special Procedures.

**1.2 REFERENCES**

- A. Association Publications:
1. U.S. Department of Labor, Occupational Safety and Health Administration:
    - a. 29 CFR 1926 OSHA, 'Construction Industry Regulations' (January 2014 or latest version).
      - 1) 29 CFR 1926.20, 'General Safety And Health Provisions'.
      - 2) 29 CFR 1926.64, 'Hot Work Permit'.
      - 3) 29 CFR 1926.352, 'Fire Prevention'.
      - 4) 29 CFR 1926.500, 'Fall Protection'.

**1.3 ADMINISTRATIVE REQUIREMENTS**

- A. Acceleration of Work:
1. Complete The Work in accordance with Construction Schedule. If Contractor falls behind schedule, take such actions as are necessary, at no additional expense to Owner, to bring progress of The Work back in accordance with schedule.
  2. Owner may request proposal for completion of The Work at date earlier than expiration of Contract Time:
    - a. Promptly provide requested proposal showing cost of such acceleration of The Work. Consult with Owner and Architect regarding possible options to decrease cost of such acceleration.
    - b. If Owner determines to order acceleration of The Work, change in Contract Sum and Contract Time resulting from acceleration will be included in a Change Order.

**1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE**

- A. Regulatory Agency Sustainability Approvals:
1. Meet regulations of 29 CFR 1926 OSHA, 'Construction Industry Regulations'.
  2. Owner's Safety Requirements:
    - a. Personal Protection:
      - 1) Contractor shall ensure:
        - a) Positive means of fall protection, such as guardrails system, safety net system, personal fall arrest system, etc, is provided to employees whenever exposed to a fall **6 feet (1.80 m)** or more above a lower level.
        - b) Personnel working on Project shall wear hard hats and safety glasses as required by regulation and hazard.
        - c) Personnel working on Project shall wear long or short sleeve shirts, long pants, and hard-toed boots or other sturdy shoes appropriate to type and phase of work being performed.
      - b. Contractor Tools And Equipment:
        - 1) Contractor shall ensure:

- a) Tools and equipment are in good working condition, well maintained, and have necessary guards in place.
  - b) Ground Fault Circuit Interrupters (GFCI) is utilized on power cords and tools.
  - c) Scaffolding and man lifts are in good working condition, erected and maintained as required by governmental regulations.
  - d) Ladders are in good condition, well maintained, used as specified by Manufacturer, and secured as required.
- c. Miscellaneous:
- 1) Contractor shall ensure:
    - a) Protection is provided on protruding rebar and other similar objects.
    - b) General Contractor Superintendent has completed the OSHA 10-hour construction outreach training course or equivalent.
    - c) Implementation and administration of safety program on Project.
    - d) Material Safety Data Sheets (MSDS) are provided for substances or materials for which an MSDS is required by governmental regulations before bringing on site.
    - e) Consistent safety training is provided to employees on Project.
    - f) Implement and coordinate Lockout / Tagout procedures with Owner's Representative as required.
  - 2) Report accidents involving injury to employees on Project that require off-site medical treatment to Owner's designated representative.
- d. Hot Work Permit:
- 1) Permit shall document that fire prevention and protection requirements in 29 CFR 1926.352, 'Fire Prevention' have been implemented prior to beginning hot work operations.
  - 2) Required for doing hot work involving open flames or producing heat or sparks such as:
    - a) Brazing.
    - b) Cutting.
    - c) Grinding.
    - d) Soldering.
    - e) Thawing pipe.
    - f) Torch applied roofing.
    - g) Welding.

**PART 2 - PRODUCTS Not Used**

**PART 3 - EXECUTION Not Used**

**END OF SECTION**

**SECTION 01 4000****QUALITY REQUIREMENTS****PART 1 - GENERAL****1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS**

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

**1.2 SUMMARY**

- A. This Section includes administrative and procedural requirements for quality assurance and quality control.
- B. Related Requirements:
  - 1. Section 01 3100: 'Project Management and Coordination' for Pre-Installation Conferences for testing and inspection.
  - 2. Section 01 3200: 'Construction Progress Documentation' for developing a schedule of required tests and inspections.
  - 3. Section 01 3300: 'Submittal Procedures'.
  - 4. Section 01 4301: 'Quality Assurance – Qualifications' establishes minimum qualification levels required.
  - 5. Section 01 4523: 'Testing and Inspecting Services' for testing and inspection, and testing laboratory services for materials, products, and construction methods.
  - 6. Section 01 7300: 'Executions' for cutting and patching for repair and restoration of construction disturbed by testing and inspecting activities.
  - 7. Divisions 01 thru 49 establish responsibility for providing specific testing and inspections.

**1.3 REFERENCES**

- A. Definitions:
  - 1. Accreditation: Process in which certification of competency, authority, or credibility is presented. Verify that laboratories have an appropriate quality management system and can properly perform certain test methods (e.g., ANSI, ASTM, and ISO test methods) and calibration parameters according to their scopes of accreditation.
  - 2. Approved: To authorize, endorse, validate, confirm, or agree to.
  - 3. Experienced: When used with an entity, "experienced" means having successfully completed a minimum of five previous projects similar in size and scope to this Project; being familiar with requirements indicated; and having complied with requirements of authorities having jurisdiction.
  - 4. Installer/Applicator/Erector: Contractor or another entity engaged by Contractor as an employee, Subcontractor, or Sub-subcontractor, to perform a construction operation, including installation, erection, application, and similar operations.
    - a. Using a term such as "carpentry" does not imply that certain construction activities must be performed by accredited or unionized individuals of corresponding generic name, such as "carpenter." It also does not imply that requirements specified apply exclusively to trades people of corresponding generic name.
  - 5. Mockups: Full-size, physical assemblies that are constructed on-site. Mockups are used to verify selections made under sample submittals, to demonstrate aesthetic effects and, where indicated, qualities of materials and execution, and to review construction, coordination, testing, or operation; they are not Samples. Approved mockups establish standard by which the Work will be judged.

6. Observation: Visual observation of building / site elements or structural system by registered design professional for general conformance to approved construction documents at significant construction stages and at completion. Observation does not include or waive responsibility for performing inspections or special inspections.
  7. Preconstruction Testing: Tests and inspections that are performed specifically for Project before products and materials are incorporated into the Work to verify performance or compliance with specified criteria.
  8. Product Testing: Tests and inspections that are performed by testing agency qualified to conduct product testing and acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, to establish product performance and compliance with industry standards.
  9. Service Provider: Agency or firm qualified to perform required tests and inspections.
  10. Source Quality Control Testing: Tests and inspections that are performed at source, i.e., plant, mill, factory, or shop.
  11. Testing Agency: Entity engaged to perform specific tests, inspections, or both.
  12. Testing Agency Laboratory: Agency or firm qualified to perform field and laboratory tests to determine characteristics and quality of materials and workmanship.
  13. Verification: Act of reviewing, inspecting, testing, etc. to establish and document that product, service, or system meets regulatory, standard, or specification requirements.
- B. Reference Standards:
1. International Code Council (IBC) (2015 or most recent edition adopted by AHJ):
    - a. IBC Chapter 17, 'Structural Tests and Special Inspections'.

#### 1.4 ADMINISTRATIVE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Conflicting Requirements:
1. General:
    - a. If compliance with two or more standards is specified and standards establish different or conflicting requirements for minimum quantities or quality levels, comply with most stringent requirement.
    - b. Refer uncertainties and requirements that are different, but apparently equal, to Architect for a decision before proceeding.
  2. Minimum Quantity or Quality Levels:
    - a. Quantity or quality level shown or specified shall be minimum provided or performed.
    - b. Actual installation may comply exactly with minimum quantity or quality specified, or it may exceed minimum within reasonable limits.
    - c. To comply with these requirements, indicated numeric values are minimum or maximum, as appropriate, for context of requirements.
    - d. Refer uncertainties to Architect for decision before proceeding.
- B. Coordination:
1. Coordinate sequence of activities to accommodate required quality assurance and quality control services with minimum of delay and to avoid necessity of removing and replacing construction to accommodate testing and inspecting.
- C. Scheduling:
1. Schedule times for tests, inspections, obtaining samples, and similar activities.

#### 1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Testing and inspecting services are used to verify compliance with requirements specified or indicated. These services do not relieve Contractor of responsibility for compliance with Contract Document requirements.
1. Specific quality assurance and quality control requirements for individual construction activities are specified in Sections that specify those activities and Section 01 4523. Requirements in those Sections may also cover production of standard products.



2. Specified tests, inspections, and related actions do not limit Contractor's other quality control procedures that facilitate compliance with Contract Document requirements.
  3. Requirements for Contractor to provide quality assurance and quality control services required by Architect, Owner, or authorities having jurisdiction are not limited by provisions of this Section.
- B. Quality Assurance Services:
1. Activities, actions, and procedures performed before and during execution of the Work to verify compliance and guard against defects and deficiencies and substantiate that proposed construction will comply with requirements.
  2. Owner or Owner's designated representative(s) will perform quality assurance to verify compliance with Contract Documents.
- C. Activities performed by Owner's Quality Assurance Testing Agency include, but are not limited to following:
1. Individual Sections in Division 01 through Division 49:
    - a. Pre-Installation Conference agenda review items for:
      - 1) Schedule requirements.
      - 2) Testing and inspection requirements:
      - 3) Requirements and frequency of testing and inspections.
      - 4) Mock-up or sample requirements.
      - 5) Submittals requirements.
    - b. Quality Assurance personal qualifications.
      - 1) Qualification documentation including certificates if required.
    - c. Non-Conforming Work:
      - 1) Prepare non-compliance log to track non-compliant testing or inspections.
  2. Weekly Activities:
    - a. Summarize and track any non-compliance issues.
    - b. Provide summary report of previous week's performed Work.
    - c. Visit contractors periodically to find out if they have any concerns with Quality Assurance inspectors and check on any schedule changes.
    - d. Visit Owner's Representatives periodically to find out if they have any concerns with how project is progressing.
- D. Mockups: Before installing portions of the Work requiring mockups, build mockups for each form of construction and finish required to comply with following requirements, using materials indicated for completed Work:
1. Coordinate with individual section in Division 01 through Division 49 if there are any additional requirements or modification to these requirements:
    - a. Build mockups in location and of size indicated or, if not indicated, as directed by Architect.
    - b. Notify Architect seven days in advance of dates and times when mockups will be constructed.
    - c. Demonstrate proposed range of aesthetic effects and workmanship.
    - d. Obtain Architect's approval of mockups before starting work, fabrication, or construction.
      - 1) Allow seven days for initial review and each re-review of each mockup.
    - e. Maintain mockups during construction in undisturbed condition as standard for judging completed Work.
      - 1) Demolish and remove mockups when directed, unless otherwise indicated.

## 1.6 QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Quality Control Services:
1. Quality Control will be sole responsibility of Contractor.
    - a. Tests, inspections, procedures, and related actions during and after execution of the Work to evaluate that actual products incorporated into the Work and completed construction comply with requirements performed by Contractor:
      - 1) They do not include inspections, tests or related actions performed by Architect, Owner, governing authorities or independent agencies hired by Owner or Architect.
      - 2) Quality assurance performed by Owner will be used to validate Quality Control performed by Contractor.

- b. Where services are indicated as Contractor's responsibility, engage a qualified Testing Agency to perform these quality control services.
  - 1) Contractor shall not employ same testing entity engaged by Owner, without Owner's written approval.
  
- B. Manufacturer's Field Services: Where indicated, engage factory-authorized service representative to inspect field-assembled components and equipment installation, including service connections. Report results in writing as specified in Section 01 3300: 'Submittal Procedures'.
  
- C. Associated Services: Cooperate with agencies performing required tests, inspections, and similar quality control services, and provide reasonable auxiliary services as requested. Notify Testing Agency sufficiently in advance of operations to permit assignment of personnel. Provide following:
  - 1. Access to the Work.
  - 2. Incidental labor and facilities necessary to facilitate tests and inspections.
  - 3. Adequate quantities of representative samples of materials that require testing and inspecting. Assist Testing Agency in obtaining samples.
  - 4. Facilities for storage and field curing of test samples.
  - 5. Delivery of samples to testing agencies.
  - 6. Preliminary design mix proposed for use for material mixes that require quality control by Testing Agency.
  - 7. Security and protection for samples and for testing and inspecting equipment at Project site.
  
- D. Testing Agency Responsibilities: Cooperate with Architect and Contractor in performance of duties. Provide qualified personnel to perform required tests and inspections:
  - 1. Civil And Structural Testing:
    - a. Civil and structural field tests, laboratory testing, and inspections are provided by Owner's independent Testing Agency as specified in Section 01 4523 'Testing And Inspection Services'. Quality Control is sole responsibility of Contractor:
      - 1) Owner's employment of an independent Testing Agency does not relieve Contractor of Contractor's obligation to perform testing and inspection as part of his Quality Control:
        - a) Testing and inspections, if performed by Contractor, will be responsibility of Contractor to be performed by an independent entity.
      - 2) Contractor bears full responsible for compliance with all contract requirements and quality control on project and will be responsible for quality of asphalt mixture and asphalt installation.
    - b. Weekly Activities:
      - 1) Ensure that non-compliance log is current.
      - 2) Provide summary reports of performed Work.

## **PART 2 - PRODUCTS Not Used**

## **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

### **3.1 REPAIR AND PROTECTION**

- A. General: On completion of testing, inspecting, sample taking, and similar services, repair damaged construction and restore substrates and finishes.
  - 1. Provide materials and comply with installation requirements specified in other Specification Sections. Restore patched areas and extend restoration into adjoining areas with durable seams that are as invisible as possible.
  - 2. Comply with Contract Document requirements for Section 01 7300 'Execution' for cutting and patching.
  
- B. Protect construction exposed by or for Quality Assurance and Quality Control activities.

- C. Repair and protection are Contractor's responsibility, regardless of assignment of responsibility for Quality Assurance and Quality Control Services.

**END OF SECTION**

**SECTION 01 4200****REFERENCES****PART 1 - GENERAL****1.1 SUMMARY**

- A. Section Includes But is Not Limited To:
1. Reference standards, definitions, specification format, and industry standards.

**1.2 REFERENCES**

- A. Definitions:
1. Approved: The term "approved," when used to convey Architect's action on Contractor's submittals, applications, and requests, is limited to Architect's duties and responsibilities as stated in the Conditions of the Contract.
  2. Directed: The term "directed" is a command or instruction by Architect. Other terms including "requested," "authorized," "selected," "approved," and "permitted" have the same meaning as "directed."
  3. Experienced: The term "experienced," when used with an entity, means having successfully completed a minimum often previous projects similar in size and scope to this Project; being familiar with the special requirements indicated, and having complied with requirements of authority having jurisdiction.
  4. Furnish: The term "furnish" means supply and deliver to Project site, ready for unloading, unpacking, assembly, installation, and similar operations.
  5. General: Basic Contract definitions are included in the Conditions of the Contract.
  6. Indicated: The term "indicated" refers to requirements expressed by graphic representations, or in written form on Drawings, in Specifications, and in other Contract Documents. Terms such as "shown," "noted," "scheduled," and "specified" are used to help the user locate the reference.
  7. Install: The term "install" describes operations at Project site including unloading, temporary storage, unpacking, assembling, erecting, placing, anchoring, applying, working to dimension, finishing, curing, protecting, cleaning, and similar operations.
  8. Installer: An "Installer" is the Contractor, or another entity engaged by the Contractor, as an employee, Subcontractor, or Sub-subcontractor, to perform a particular construction operation, including installation, erection, application, and similar operations.
  9. Project Site: The term "Project site" means the space available for performing construction activities. The extent of the Project site is shown on the Drawings and may or may not be identical with the description of the land on which the Project is to be built.
  10. Provide: The term "provide" means to furnish and install, complete and ready for the intended use.
  11. Regulations: The term "regulations" includes laws, ordinances, statutes, and lawful orders issued by authorities having jurisdiction, and rules, conventions, and agreements within the construction industry that control performance of the Work.
  12. Submitted: The terms "submitted," "reported," "satisfactory" and similar words and phrases means submitted to Architect, reported to Architect and similar phrases.
  13. Testing Agencies: A "testing agency" is an independent entity engaged to perform specific inspections or tests, either at the Project site or elsewhere, or to report on and, if required, to interpret results of those inspections or tests.
  14. Trades: Using terms such as "carpentry" does not imply that certain construction activities must be performed by accredited or unionized individuals of a corresponding generic name, such as "carpenter." It also does not imply that requirements specified apply exclusively to tradespersons of the corresponding generic name.
- B. References Standards:

1. Specification Format: Specifications will follow MasterFormat™ 2004 for organizing numbers and titles. (The Construction Specifications Institute, Project Resource Manual/CSI Manual of Practice, 5<sup>th</sup> Edition. New York, McGraw-Hill, 2005).
  - a. Specification Identifications:
    - 1) The Specifications use section numbers and titles to help cross referencing in the Contract Documents.
    - 2) Sections in the Project Manual are in numeric sequence; however, the sequence is incomplete. Consult the table of contents at the beginning of the Project Manual to determine numbers and names of sections in the Contract Documents.
  - b. Specification Language:
    - 1) Specifications should be prepared, with concern and respect for their legal status. Specifications should be Clear, Concise, Correct and Complete.
    - 2) Streamlining: Streamlining is used to list products, materials, reference standards, and other itemized specifications. This technique places the subject first and provides keywords for quick reference
  - c. Sentence Structure:
    - 1) Specifications to be written in the “Imperative Mood”.
      - a) The verb that clearly defines the action becomes the first word in the sentence.
      - b) The imperative sentence is concise and readily understandable.
    - 2) Streamlining is used to list products, materials, reference standards, and other itemized specifications. This technique places the subject first and provides keywords for quick reference.
  - d. Abbreviated Language:
    - 1) Abbreviations should be used only on drawings and schedules where space is limited.
    - 2) Abbreviations with multiple meanings should be avoided, unless used in different disciplines where their meaning is clear from the context in which they are used.
    - 3) Abbreviations should be limited to five or fewer letters
      - a) The verb that clearly defines the action becomes the first word in the sentence.
  - e. Symbols:
    - 1) Caution should apply to symbols substituted for words or terms.
  - f. Numbers:
    - 1) The use of Arabic numerals rather that words for numbers is recommended.

C. Industry Standards:

1. Except where Contract Documents specify otherwise, construction industry standards will apply and are made a part of Contract Documents by reference.
2. Where compliance with two or more standards is specified and standards apparently establish different or conflicting requirements for minimum quantities or quality levels, refer to Architect for decision before proceeding. Quantity or quality level shown or specified will be minimum provided or performed. Actual installation may comply exactly with minimum quantity or quality specified, or it may exceed minimum within reasonable limits. In complying with these requirements, indicated numeric values are minimum or maximum, as appropriate for context of requirements. Refer uncertainties to Architect for decision before proceeding.
3. Each entity engaged in construction on Project is required to be familiar with industry standards applicable to that entity's construction activity. Copies of applicable standards are not bound with Contract Documents. Where copies of standards are needed for performance of a required construction activity, Contractor will obtain copies directly from publication source.
4. Trade Association names and titles of general standards are frequently abbreviated. The following acronyms or abbreviations, as referenced in Contract Documents, are defined to mean association names. Names and addresses are subject to change and are believed to be, but are not assured to be, accurate and up to date as of date of Contract Documents.

AABC	Associated Air Balance Council	Washington	DC	(202) 737-0202	<a href="http://www.aabchq.com">www.aabchq.com</a>
AAMA	American Architectural Manufacturers Association	Schaumburg	IL	(847) 303-5664	<a href="http://www.aamanet.org">www.aamanet.org</a>
AASHTO	American Association of State Highway & Transportation Officials	Washington	DC	(202) 624-5800	<a href="http://www.aashto.org">www.aashto.org</a>

AAMA	American Architectural Manufacturers Association	Schamamburg	IL	(847) 303-5774	<a href="http://www.aamanet.org">www.aamanet.org</a>
AASHTO	American association of State Highways and Transportation Officials	Washington	DC		<a href="http://www.transportation.org">www.transportation.org</a> <a href="http://www.aashto.org">www.aashto.org</a>
ACI	American Concrete Institute International	Farmington Hills	MI	(248) 848-3700	<a href="http://www.aci-int.org">www.aci-int.org</a>
AGA	American Gas Association	Washington	DC	(202) 824-7000	<a href="http://www.aga.org">www.aga.org</a>
AHRI	Air Conditioning Heating & Refrigeration Institute	Arlington	VA	(703) 524-8800	<a href="http://www.ari.org">www.ari.org</a>
AIA	American Institution of Architects	Washington	DC	(202) 626-7300	<a href="http://www.aia.org">www.aia.org</a>
AISC	American Institute of Steel Construction	Chicago	IL	(312) 670-2400	<a href="http://www.aisc.org">www.aisc.org</a>
AISI	American Iron & Steel Institute	Washington	DC	(202) 452-7100	<a href="http://www.steel.org">www.steel.org</a>
AITC	American Institution of Timber Construction	Englewood	CO	(303) 792-9559	<a href="http://www.aitc-glulam.org">www.aitc-glulam.org</a>
AMCA	Air Movement & Control Association International	Arlington Heights	IL	(847) 394-0150	<a href="http://www.amca.org">www.amca.org</a>
ANSI	American National Standards Institute	New York	NY	(212) 642-4900	<a href="http://www.ansi.org">www.ansi.org</a>
APA	APA-Engineered Wood Association	Tacoma	WA	(253) 565-6600	<a href="http://www.apawood.org">www.apawood.org</a>
API	American Petroleum Institute	Washington	DC	(202) 682-8000	<a href="http://www.api.org">www.api.org</a>
AQMD	South Coast Air Quality Management District	Diamond Bar	CA	(909) 396-2000	<a href="http://www.aqmd.gov">www.aqmd.gov</a>
ASHRAE	American Society of Heating, Refrigerating, & Air-Conditioning Engineers	Atlanta	GA	(404) 636-8400	<a href="http://www.ashrae.org">www.ashrae.org</a>
ASME	American Society of Mechanical Engineers International	New York	NY	(800) 843-2763	<a href="http://www.asme.org">www.asme.org</a>
ASTM	ASTM International	West Conshohocken	PA	(610) 832-9500	<a href="http://www.astm.org">www.astm.org</a>
AWI	Architectural Woodwork Institute	Potomac Falls	VA	(571) 323-3636	<a href="http://www.awinet.org">www.awinet.org</a>
AWPA	American Wood Protection Association	Birmingham	AL	(205) 733-4077	<a href="http://www.awpa.com">www.awpa.com</a>
AWS	American Welding Society	Miami	FL	(800) 443-9353	<a href="http://www.aws.org">www.aws.org</a>
AWWA	American Water Works Assoc	Denver	CO	(303) 794-7711	<a href="http://www.awwa.org">www.awwa.org</a>
BHMA	Builders Hardware Manufacturers Association	New York	NY	(212) 297-2122	<a href="http://www.buildershardware.com">www.buildershardware.com</a>
BIA	Brick Industry Association	Reston	VA	(703) 620-0010	<a href="http://www.bia.org">www.bia.org</a>
CFI	International Certified Floor-covering Installers, Inc.	Kansas City	MO	(816) 231-4646	<a href="http://www.cfi-installers.org">www.cfi-installers.org</a>
CRI	Carpet & Rug Institution	Dalton	GA	(706) 278-3176	<a href="http://www.carpet-rug.com">www.carpet-rug.com</a>
CRSI	Concrete Reinforcing Steel Institute	Schaumburg	IL	(847) 517-1200	<a href="http://www.crsi.org">www.crsi.org</a>
CISPI	Cast Iron Soil Pipe Institute	Chattanooga	TN	(423) 892-0137	<a href="http://www.cispi.org">www.cispi.org</a>
DHI	Door & Hardware Institute	Chantilly	VA	(703) 222-2010	<a href="http://www.dhi.org">www.dhi.org</a>
DIPRA	Ductile Iron Pipe Research Association.	Birmingham	AL	(205) 402-8700	<a href="http://www.dipra.org">www.dipra.org</a>
EIMA	EIFS Industry Members Association	Morrow	GA	(800) 294-3462	<a href="http://www.eima.com">www.eima.com</a>
FM	FM Global	Johnston	RI	(401) 275-3000	<a href="http://www.fmglobal.com">www.fmglobal.com</a>

FSC	Forest Stewardship Council	Bonn, Germany		+49 (0) 228 367 66 0	<a href="http://www.fsc.org">www.fsc.org</a>
GA	Gypsum Association	Hyattsville	MD	(301) 277-8686	<a href="http://www.gypsum.org">www.gypsum.org</a>
GS	Green Seal	Washington	DC	(202) 872-6400	<a href="http://www.greenseal.org">www.greenseal.org</a>
HPVA	Hardwood Plywood & Veneer Association	Reston	VA	(703) 435-2900	<a href="http://www.hpva.org">www.hpva.org</a>
ICC	International Code Council	Washington	DC	(888) 422-7233	<a href="http://www.iccsafe.org">www.iccsafe.org</a>
ICC-ES	ICC Evaluation Service	Whittier	CA	(562) 699-0543	<a href="http://www.icc-es.org">www.icc-es.org</a>
ICBO	International Conference of Building Officials				(See ICC)
ISO	International Organization for Standardization	Geneva, Switzerland			<a href="http://www.iso.org">www.iso.org</a>
ISSA	International Slurry Surfacing Association	Annapolis	MD	(410) 267-0023	<a href="http://www.slurry.org">www.slurry.org</a>
KCMA	Kitchen Cabinet Manufacturers Association	Reston	VA	(703) 264-1690	<a href="http://www.kcma.org">www.kcma.org</a>
LPI	Lightning Protection Institute	Maryville	MO	(800) 488-6864	<a href="http://www.lightning.org">www.lightning.org</a>
MFMA	Maple Flooring Manufacturers' Association	Deerfield	IL	(888) 480-9138	<a href="http://www.maplefloor.org">www.maplefloor.org</a>
MSS	Manufacturer's Standardization Society of The Valve and Fittings Industry	Vienna	VA	(703) 281-6613	<a href="http://www.mss-hq.com">www.mss-hq.com</a>
NAAMM	National Association of Architectural Metal Manufacturers	Glen Ellyn	IL	(630) 942-6591	<a href="http://www.naamm.org">www.naamm.org</a>
NEC	National Electric Code	(from NFPA).			
NEMA	National Electrical Manufacturer's Association	Rosslyn	VA	(703) 841-3200	<a href="http://www.nema.org">www.nema.org</a>
NFPA	National Fire Protection Association	Quincy	MA	(800) 344-3555	<a href="http://www.nfpa.org">www.nfpa.org</a>
NFRC	National Fenestration Rating Council	Greenbelt	MD	(301) 589-1776	<a href="http://www.nfrc.org">www.nfrc.org</a>
NSF	NSF International	Ann Arbor	MI	(734) 769-8010	<a href="http://www.nsf.org">www.nsf.org</a>
PCA	Portland Cement Association	Skokie	IL	(847) 966-6200	<a href="http://www.cement.org">www.cement.org</a>
PCI	Precast / Prestressed Concrete Institute	Chicago	IL	(312) 786-0300	<a href="http://www.pci.org">www.pci.org</a>
PEI	Porcelain Enamel Institute	Norcross	GA	(770) 676-9366	<a href="http://www.porcelainenamel.com">www.porcelainenamel.com</a>
RFCI	Resilient Floor Covering Institute	LaGrange	GA	(706) 882-3833	<a href="http://www.rfci.com">www.rfci.com</a>
SCTE	Society of Cable Telecommunications Engineers	Exton	PA	(800) 542-5040	<a href="http://www.scte.org">www.scte.org</a>
SDI	Steel Deck Institute	Fox River Grove	IL	(847) 458-4647	<a href="http://www.sdi.org">www.sdi.org</a>
SDI	Steel Door Institute	Westlake	OH	(440) 899-0010	<a href="http://www.steeldoor.org">www.steeldoor.org</a>
SIGMA	Sealed Insulating Glass Manufacturer's Association	Chicago	IL	(312) 644-6610	<a href="http://www.arcata.com">www.arcata.com</a>
SJI	Steel Joist Institute	Myrtle Beach	SC	(843) 293-1995	<a href="http://www.steeljoist.org">www.steeljoist.org</a>
SMACNA	Sheet Metal & Air Conditioning Contractors National Association	Chantilly	VA	(703) 803-2980	<a href="http://www.smacna.org">www.smacna.org</a>
SPIB	Southern Pine Inspection Bureau	Pensacola	FL	(850) 434-2611	<a href="http://www.spib.org">www.spib.org</a>
SSMA	Steel Stud Manufacturer's Association	Glen Ellyn	IL	(630) 942-6592	<a href="http://www.ssma.com">www.ssma.com</a>
TCNA	Tile Council of North America	Anderson	SC	(864) 646-8453	<a href="http://www.tileusa.com">www.tileusa.com</a>
TPI	Truss Plate Institute	Alexandria	VA	(703) 683-1010	<a href="http://www.tpinst.org">www.tpinst.org</a>

TPI	Turfgrass Producers International (formally American Sod Producers Association)	East Dundee	IL	(847) 649-5555	<a href="http://www.turfgrasssod.org">www.turfgrasssod.org</a>
UL	Underwriters Laboratories	Camas	WA	(877) 854-3577	<a href="http://www.ul.com">www.ul.com</a>
WDMA	Window and Door Manufacturer's Association	Chicago	IL	(312) 321-6802	<a href="http://www.nwwda.org">www.nwwda.org</a>
WWPA	Western Wood Products Association	Portland	OR	(503) 224-3930	<a href="http://www.wwpa.org">www.wwpa.org</a>

D. Federal Government Agencies:

- Names and titles of federal government standard or specification producing agencies are often abbreviated. Following acronyms or abbreviations referenced in Contract Documents represent names of standard or specification producing agencies of federal government. Names and addresses are subject to change but are believed to be, but are not assured to be, accurate and up to date as of date of Contract Documents.

CS	Commercial Standard (U S Department of Commerce)	Washington	DC	(202) 512-0000	<a href="http://www.doc.gov">www.doc.gov</a>
EPA	Environmental Protection Agency	Washington	DC	(202) 272-0167	<a href="http://www.epa.gov">www.epa.gov</a>
FCC	Federal Communications Commission	Washington	DC	(888) 225-5322	<a href="http://www.fcc.gov">www.fcc.gov</a>
FS	Federal Specifications Unit (Available from GSA)	Washington	DC	(202) 619-8925	<a href="http://www.gsa.gov">www.gsa.gov</a>
MIL	Military Standardization Documents (U S Department of Defense)	Philadelphia	PA	(215) 697-2179	<a href="http://www.dod.gov">www.dod.gov</a>
NIST	National Institute of Standards and Technology, technology Administration (US Department of Commerce)	Gaithersburg	MD	(301) 975-4500	<a href="http://www.ts.nist.gov">www.ts.nist.gov</a>
OSHA	Occupational Safety & Health Administration (U S Department of Labor)	Washington	DC	202) 219-8148	<a href="http://www.osha.gov">www.osha.gov</a>
PS	Product Standard of NBS (U S Department of Commerce)	Washington	DC	(202) 512-1800	<a href="http://www.doc.gov">www.doc.gov</a>

E. Governing Regulations / Authorities:

- Contact authorities having jurisdiction directly for information and decisions having a bearing on the Work.
- Obtain copies of regulations required to be retained at Project Site, available for reference by parties who have a reasonable need for such reference.

**PART 2 - PRODUCTS Not Used**

**PART 3 - EXECUTION Not Used**

**END OF SECTION**



**SECTION 01 4301****QUALITY ASSURANCE - QUALIFICATIONS****PART 1 - GENERAL****1.1 SUMMARY**

- A. Related Documents:
1. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.
- B. Related Requirements:
1. Section 01 4000: 'Quality Requirements' includes administrative and procedural requirements for quality assurance and quality control.
  2. Section 01 4523: 'Testing and Inspecting Services' for testing and inspection, and testing laboratory services for materials, products, and construction methods.

**1.2 REFERENCES**

- A. Definitions:
1. Accreditation: Process in which certification of competency, authority, or credibility is presented. Verify that laboratories have an appropriate quality management system and can properly perform certain test methods (e.g., ANSI, ASTM, and ISO test methods) and calibration parameters according to their scopes of accreditation.
  2. Quality-Assurance Services: Activities, actions, and procedures performed before and during execution of the Work to guard against defects and deficiencies and substantiate that proposed construction will comply with requirements.
  3. Testing Agency: Entity engaged to perform specific tests, inspections, or both.
  4. Testing Agency Laboratory: Agency or firm qualified to perform field and laboratory tests to determine characteristics and quality of materials and workmanship.
- B. Reference Standards:
1. ASTM International:
    - a. ASTM E329-18, 'Standard Specification for Agencies Engaged in Construction Inspection and/or Testing.'

**1.3 QUALIFICATIONS**

- A. Qualifications: Qualifications paragraphs in this Article establish minimum qualification levels required; individual Specification Sections specify additional requirements:
1. Manufacturers / Distributors / Fabricator / Suppliers / Installers Qualifications: Firm experienced in producing products similar to those indicated for this Project and with record of successful in-service performance, as well as sufficient production capacity to produce required units.
    - a. Owner established Relationships:
      - 1) Where heading 'Category One, Two, or Three Approved' *Manufacturers / Suppliers / Distributors / Installers* is used to identify list Owner established Relationships, Owner has established relationships that extend beyond requirements of this Project.
      - 2) No other *Manufacturers / Suppliers / Distributors / Installers* will be acceptable.
      - 3) Follow specified procedures to preserve relationships between Owner and specified *Manufacturers / Suppliers / Distributors / Installers* and advantages that accrue to Owner from those relationships.
      - 4) Following areas of the Work have restrictions on sub-bids by Contractor:

- a) Aluminum-Framed Entrances And Storefronts, Section 08 4113: Category Three Approved, no other Manufacturer / Installers accepted.
  - b) Common Finish Hardware Requirements, Section 08 7101: Category Three Approved, no other Supplier accepted:
    - (1) Accessories, Section 08 7109.
    - (2) Accessories for Pairs of Doors, Section 08 7105.
    - (3) Closing Devices, Section 08 7106.
    - (4) Hanging Devices, Section 08 7102.
    - (5) Operating Trim, Section 08 7104.
    - (6) Protective Plates and Trim, Section 08 7107.
    - (7) Securing Devices, Section 08 7103.
    - (8) Stops and Holders, Section 08 7108.
  - c) Flush Wood Doors: Factory Finished, Clear, Section 08 1429: Category Three Approved, no other Supplier accepted.
  - d) Hollow Metal Frames, Section 08 1213: Category Three Approved, no other Supplier accepted.
  - e) Hollow Metal Doors, Section 08 1313: Category Three Approved, no other Supplier accepted.
  - f) Pews, Section 12 6713: Category One Approved, no other Manufacturer / Installers accepted.
  - g) Polyvinyl-Chloride Roofing: PVC, Section 07 5419: Category Three Approved, no other Manufacturer / Installers accepted.
  - h) Sheet Carpeting, Section 09 6816: Category One Approved, no other Manufacturer / Installers accepted.
  - i) Wood Framing, Division 06 'Wood', Category Three Approved, no other Supplier accepted for USA Projects Only except approved Supplier:
    - (1) Glue-Laminated Construction, Section 06 1800.
    - (2) Structural Composite Lumber, Section 06 1712.
    - (3) Wood Framing, Section 06 1100.
    - (4) Wood 'I' Joists, Section 06 1733.
    - (5) Wood-Panel Product Sheathing, Section 06 1636.
- b. Approved:
- 1) Where heading '*Approved Suppliers / Distributors / Installers / Applicators / Fabricators*' is used to identify list of specified suppliers / distributors / installers / applicators / fabricators, use only listed suppliers / installers / fabricators.
  - 2) No substitutions will be allowed.
  - 3) Following areas of the Work have restrictions on sub-bids by which may be accepted by Contractor:
    - a) Architectural Woodwork, Sections 06 4001: Fabricator approved by Architect before bidding.
    - b) Audio Systems, Section 27 5117: Alternate Installers approved by Owner before bidding.
    - c) Ceramic Tiling, Section 09 3013: No other Suppliers accepted.
    - d) Ceramic Tiling, Section 09 3013: Installers approved by Architect before bidding.
    - e) Electrical, Division 26: Installers approved by Architect before bidding.
    - f) Electric And Electronic Control System for HVAC, Section 23 0933, No other Distributors accepted.
    - g) HVAC, Division 23: Installers approved by Architect before bidding.
    - h) Painting And Coating, Sections Under 09 9000 heading of Table of Contents: Applicators approved by Architect before bidding.
    - i) Planting, Sections under 32 9000 heading of Table of Contents: Installers approved by Architect before bidding.
    - j) Plumbing, Division 22: Installers approved by Architect before bidding.
    - k) Rough Carpentry, Sections 06 1100, 06 1636, 06 1712, 06 1733, and 06 1800: Alternate Supplier approved by Architect before bidding.
    - l) Rough Carpentry, Sections 06 1100, 06 1636, 06 1712, 06 1733, 06 1753, and 06 1800: Installers approved by Architect before bidding.
    - m) Wet-Pipe Sprinkler Systems, Section 21 1313: Installers approved by Architect before bidding.

- n) Video Systems, Section 27 4117: Alternate Installers approved by Owner before bidding.
- c. Acceptable Suppliers / Installers:
  - 1) Where heading '*Acceptable Suppliers / Installers / Fabricators*' is used, qualifications as specified in Quality Assurance in Part 1 of individual sections will be used to determine requirements of those that will be acceptable to be used on Project. Lists for acceptable installers can include additional installers that may be approved before bidding or by addendum.
    - a) Underground Sprinklers, Section 32 8423: Acceptable Landscape Installers approved by Landscape Architect before bidding. Equal Landscape Installers to be approved by Architect before bidding.
- 2. Factory-Authorized Service Representative Qualifications:
  - a. Authorized representative of manufacturer who is trained and approved by manufacturer to inspect installation of manufacturer's products that are similar in material, design, and extent to those indicated for this Project.
- 3. Installer Qualifications:
  - a. Firm or individual experienced in installing, erecting, or assembling work similar in material, design, and extent to that indicated for this Project, whose work has resulted in construction with a record of successful in-service performance.
- 4. Manufacturer Qualifications:
  - a. Firm experienced in manufacturing products or systems similar to those indicated for this Project and with a record of successful in-service performance, as well as sufficient production capacity to produce required units.
- 5. Manufacturer's Field Services Qualifications:
  - a. Experienced authorized representative of manufacturer to inspect field-assembled components and equipment installation, including service connections.
- 6. Professional Engineer Qualifications:
  - a. Professional engineer who is legally qualified to practice in jurisdiction where Project is located and who is experienced in providing engineering services of kind indicated. Engineering services are defined as those performed for installations of system, assembly, or products that are similar to those indicated for this Project in material, design, and extent.
- 7. Specialists:
  - a. Certain sections of Specifications require that specific construction activities shall be performed by entities who are recognized experts in those operations.
  - b. Specialists shall satisfy qualification requirements indicated and shall be engaged for activities indicated.
  - c. Requirement for specialists shall not supersede building codes and regulations governing the Work.
- 8. Testing Agency Qualifications:
  - a. Independent Testing Agency with experience and capability to conduct testing and inspecting indicated, as documented according to ASTM E329; and with additional qualifications specified in individual Sections; and where required by authorities having jurisdiction, that is acceptable to authorities.
    - 1) Testing Laboratory:
      - a) AASHTO Materials Reference Laboratory (AMRL) Accreditation Program.
      - b) Cement and Concrete Reference Laboratory (CCRL).
      - c) Nationally Recognized Testing Laboratory (NRTL): Nationally recognized testing laboratory according to 29 CFR 1910.7.
      - d) National Voluntary Laboratory (NVLAP): Testing Agency accredited according to National Institute of Standards and Technology (NIST) Technology Administration, U. S. Department of Commerce Accreditation Program.

## **PART 2 - PRODUCTS Not Used**

## **PART 3 - EXECUTION Not Used**

**END OF SECTION**

**SECTION 01 4523****TESTING AND INSPECTING SERVICES****PART 1 - GENERAL****1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS**

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section

**1.2 SUMMARY**

- A. This Section includes testing, inspections, special testing, special inspections, and testing laboratory services for materials, products, and construction methods as specified hereafter for the Work.
- B. Specified tests, inspections, and related actions do not limit Contractor's quality control procedures to fully comply with Contract Document requirements in all regards.
- C. Costs: Costs of initial services for testing and inspection personnel will be paid by Owner unless otherwise noted.
  - 1. If initial tests indicate non-compliance with contract document requirements, any subsequent testing will be performed by same personnel and paid for by Contractor.
- D. Related Requirements:
  - 1. Section 01 4000: 'Quality Requirements' includes administrative and procedural requirements for quality assurance and quality control.
  - 2. Section 01 4301: 'Quality Assurance – Qualifications' establishes minimum qualification levels required.
  - 3. Division 01 through Division 49 establish responsibility for providing specific testing and inspections and Field Tests and Inspections.

**1.3 REFERENCES**

- A. Association Publications:
  - 1. Council of American Structural Engineers. CASE Form 101: *Statement of Special Inspections*. Washington, DC: CASE, 2001. (c/o American Council of Engineering Companies, 1015 15<sup>th</sup> St., NW, Washington, DC 20005; 202-347-7474; [www.acec.org](http://www.acec.org)).
  - 2. International Code Council (IBC):
    - a. IBC Chapter 17, 'Structural Tests and Special Inspections'.
- B. Definitions:
  - 1. Accreditation: Process in which **certification** of competency, authority, or credibility is presented. Verify that laboratories have an appropriate quality management system and can properly perform certain test methods (e.g., ANSI, ASTM, and ISO test methods) and calibration parameters according to their scopes of accreditation.
  - 2. Approved: To authorize, endorse, validate, confirm, or agree to.
  - 3. Field Quality Control: Testing, Inspections, Special Testing and Special Inspections to assure compliance to Contract Documents.
  - 4. Inspection/Special Inspection:
    - a. Inspection: Not required by code provisions but may be required by Contract Documents.
    - b. Special Inspection: Inspection required of materials, installation, fabrication, erection or placement of components and connections requiring special expertise to ensure compliance

- with approved construction documents and reference standards (required by code provisions and by Contract Documents).
- c. Special Inspection-Continuous: Full-time observation of the Work requiring inspection by approved inspector who is present in area where the Work is being performed.
  - d. Special Inspection-Periodic: Part-time or intermittent observation of the Work requiring inspection by approved inspector who is present in area where the Work has been or is being performed and at completion of the Work.
5. Mockups: Full-size, physical assemblies that are constructed on-site. Mockups are used to verify selections made under sample submittals, to demonstrate aesthetic effects and, where indicated, qualities of materials and execution, and to review construction, coordination, testing, or operation. They are not samples. Approved mockups establish standard by which the Work will be judged.
  6. Observation: Visual observation of building / site elements or structural system by registered design professional for general conformance to approved construction documents at significant construction stages and at completion. Observation does not include or waive responsibility for performing inspections or special inspections.
  7. Preconstruction Testing: Tests and inspections that are performed specifically for Project before products and materials are incorporated into the Work to verify performance or compliance with specified criteria.
  8. Quality Assurance: Testing, Inspections, Special Testing and Special Inspections provided for by Owner.
  9. Quality Control: Testing, Inspections, Special Testing and Special Inspections provided for by Contractor.
  10. Special Inspection: See Inspection.
  11. Special Inspector: Certified individual or firm that implements special inspection program for project.
  12. Special Test: See Test.
  13. Test/Special Test: Field or laboratory tests to determine characteristics and quality of building materials and workmanship:
    - a. Test: Not required by code provisions but may be required by Contract Documents.
    - b. Special Test: Required by code provisions and by Contract Documents.
  14. Testing Agency: Entity engaged to perform specific tests, inspections, or both.
  15. Testing Agency Laboratory: Agency or firm qualified to perform field and laboratory tests to determine characteristics and quality of materials and workmanship.
  16. Verification: Act of reviewing, inspecting, testing, etc. to establish and document that product, service, or system meets regulatory, standard, or specification requirements.
- C. Reference Standards:
1. ASTM International:
    - a. ASTM A898/A898M-17, 'Standard Specification for Straight Beam Ultrasonic Examination of Rolled Steel Structural Shapes'.
    - b. ASTM C42/C42M-18, 'Standard Test Method for Obtaining and Testing Drilled Cores and Sawed Beams of Concrete'.
    - c. ASTM C138/C138M-17a, 'Standard Test Method for Density (Unit Weight), Yield, and Air Content (Gravimetric) of Concrete'.
    - d. ASTM C597-16, 'Standard Test Method for Pulse Velocity Through Concrete'.
    - e. ASTM C803/C803M-18, 'Standard Test Method for Penetration Resistance of Hardened Concrete'.
    - f. ASTM C805/C805M-13a, 'Standard Test Method for Rebound Number of Hardened Concrete'.
    - g. ASTM C1019-18, 'Standard Test Method for Sampling and Testing Grout'.
    - h. ASTM C1021-08(2014), 'Standard Practice for Laboratories Engaged in Testing of Building Sealants'.
    - i. ASTM C1077-17, 'Standard Practice for Agencies Testing Concrete and Concrete Aggregates for Use in Construction and Criteria for Testing Agency Evaluation'.
    - j. ASTM C1093-15a, 'Standard Practice for Accreditation of Testing Agencies for Masonry'.
    - k. ASTM D3666-16, 'Standard Specification for Minimum Requirements for Agencies Testing and Inspecting Road and Paving Materials'.

- i. ASTM D3740-12a, 'Standard Practice for Minimum Requirements for Agencies Engaged in Testing and/or Inspection of Soil and Rock as Used in Engineering Design and Construction'.
  - m. ASTM E114-15, 'Standard Practice for Ultrasonic Pulse-Echo Straight-Beam Examination by the Contact Method'.
  - n. ASTM E164-13, 'Standard Practice for Contact Ultrasonic Testing of Weldments'.
  - o. ASTM E329-18: 'Standard Specification for Agencies Engaged in Construction Inspection and/or Testing'.
  - p. ASTM E488-18, 'Standard Test Methods for Strength of Anchors in Concrete Elements'.
  - q. ASTM E543-15, 'Standard Specification for Agencies Performing Nondestructive Testing'.
  - r. ASTM E587-15, 'Standard Practice for Ultrasonic Angle-Beam Examination by the Contact Method'.
  - s. ASTM E709-15, 'Standard Guide for Magnetic Particle Testing'.
  - t. ASTM E1212-17, 'Standard Practice for Quality Management Systems for Nondestructive Testing Agencies'.
  - u. ASTM F710-17, 'Standard Practice for Preparing Concrete Floors to Receive Resilient Flooring'.
  - v. ASTM F2170-18, 'Standard Test Method for Determining Relative Humidity in Concrete Floor Slabs Using in situ Probes'.
2. Code of Federal Regulations:
    - a. 29 CFR 1910, Subpart A, Section 1910.7, 'Definition and Requirements for a Nationally Recognized Testing Laboratory'.
  3. International Code Council Code (IBC) (2018 or most recent edition adopted by AHJ):
    - a. IBC Chapter 17, 'Special Inspections And Tests'.
      - 1) Section 1704, 'Special Inspections And Tests, Contractor Responsibility And Structural Observations'.
      - 2) Section 1705, 'Required Special Inspection And Tests'.
        - a) Section 1705.2, 'Steel Construction'.

## 1.4 SUBMITTALS

- A. Informational Submittals:
  1. General: Additional submittal requirements are specified in Individual Sections in Division 01 through Division 50.
  2. Certificates:
    - a. Testing Agency will submit certified written report of each inspection, test, or similar service.
  3. Tests and Evaluation Reports:
    - a. Testing Agency or Agencies will prepare logs, test reports, and certificates applicable to specific tests and inspections and deliver copies (or electronic record) distributed as follows:
      - 1) 1 copy to Owner's Representative.
      - 2) 1 copy to Architect.
      - 3) 1 copy to Consulting Engineers (Engineer of Record).
      - 4) 1 copy to General Contractor.
      - 5) 1 copy to Authorities Having Jurisdiction (if required).
    - b. Other tests, certificates, and similar documents will be obtained by Contractor and delivered to Owner's Representative and Architect in such time as not to delay progress of the Work or final payment therefore.
    - c. Submittal Format:
      - 1) Schedule of Tests and Inspections: Prepare in tabular form and include following:
        - a) Specification Section number and title.
        - b) Description of test and inspection.
        - c) Identification of applicable standards.
        - d) Identification of test and inspection methods.
        - e) Number of tests and inspections required.
        - f) Time schedule or time span for tests and inspections.
        - g) Entity responsible for performing tests and inspections.
        - h) Requirements for obtaining samples.
      - 2) Certified written reports of each inspection, test, or similar service will include, but not be limited:

- a) Date of issue.
  - b) Project title and number.
  - c) Name, address, and telephone number of Testing Agency.
  - d) Dates and locations of samples and tests or inspections.
  - e) Names of individuals making tests and inspections.
  - f) Description of the Work and test and inspection method.
  - g) Identification of product and Specification Section.
  - h) Complete test or inspection data.
  - i) Test and inspection results and an interpretation of test results.
  - j) Record of temperature and weather conditions at time of sample taking and testing and inspecting.
  - k) Comments or professional opinion on whether tested or inspected Work complies with Contract Document requirements.
  - l) Name and signature of laboratory inspector.
  - m) Recommendations on retesting and re-inspecting.
4. Source Quality Control Submittals:
- a. Testing Agency will submit following prior to commencing the Work:
    - 1) Qualifications of Testing Agency management and personnel designated to project.
    - 2) Testing Agency 'Written Practice for Quality Assurance'.
    - 3) Qualification records for Inspector and non-destructive testing technicians designated for project.
    - 4) Testing Agency non-destructive testing procedures, equipment calibration records, and personnel training records.
    - 5) Testing Agency Quality Control Plan for monitoring and control of testing operations.
    - 6) Welding Inspection Procedures (Structural Steel testing).
    - 7) Bolting Inspection Procedures (Structural Steel testing).
    - 8) Shear Connector Stud Inspection Procedures (Structural Steel testing).
    - 9) Seismic Connections Inspection Procedures (Structural Steel testing).

## 1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Owner or Owner's designated representative(s) will perform quality assurance. Owner's quality assurance procedures may include observations, inspections, testing, verification, monitoring and any other procedures deemed necessary by Owner to verify compliance with Contract Documents.
- B. Owner will employ independent Testing Agencies to perform certain specified testing, as Owner deems necessary.
- C. Certification:
  1. Product producers and associations, which have instituted approved systems of quality control and which have been approved by document approval agencies, are not required to have further testing.
  2. Concrete mixing plants, plants producing fabricated concrete and wood or plywood products certified by agency, lumber, plywood grade marked by approved associates, and materials or equipment bearing underwriters' laboratory labels require no further testing and inspection.
- D. Written Practice for Quality Assurance:
  1. Testing Agency will maintain written practice for selection and administration of inspection personnel, describing training, experience, and examination requirements for qualification and certification of inspection personnel.
  2. Written practice will describe testing agency procedures for determining acceptability of structure in accordance with applicable codes, standards, and specifications.
  3. Written practice will describe Testing Agency inspection procedures, including general inspection, material controls, visual welding inspection, and bolting inspection.

## 1.6 QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Quality Control will be sole responsibility of Contractor. Contractor will be responsible for testing and inspections, coordination, start-up, operational checkout, and commissioning of all items of the Work included in Project. All costs for these services will be included in Contractor's cost of the Work.
- B. Contractor will assign one (1) employee to be responsible for Quality Control. This individual may have other responsibilities and may be Contractor's Project superintendent or Contractor's Project Manager.
- C. Notify results of all Testing and Inspection performed by Contractor's independent Testing Agencies to Architect and Owner's Representative within twenty four (24) hours of test or inspection having been performed.
  - 1. Testing and Inspection Reports will be distributed as follows:
    - a. 1 copy to Owner's Representative.
    - b. 1 copy to Architect.
    - c. 1 copy to Consulting Engineer(s) (Engineer of Record).
    - d. 1 copy to Authorities Having Jurisdiction (if required).
- D. Contractor's Responsibility:
  - 1. Owner's employment of an independent Testing Agency does not relieve Contractor of Contractor's obligation to perform the Work in strict accordance with requirements of Contract Documents.
  - 2. Tests and inspections that are not explicitly assigned to Owner are responsibility of Contractor.
  - 3. Cooperate with Testing Agency(s) performing required inspections, tests, and similar services and provide reasonable auxiliary services as requested. Notify Testing Agency before operations to allow assignment of personnel. Auxiliary services required include but are not limited to:
    - a. Providing access to the Work and furnishing incidental labor, equipment, and facilities deemed necessary by Testing Agency to facilitate inspections and tests at no additional cost to Owner.
    - b. Taking adequate quantities of representative samples of materials that require testing or helping Testing Agency in taking samples.
    - c. Providing facilities for storage and curing of test samples, and delivery of samples to testing laboratories.
    - d. Providing Testing Agency with preliminary design mix proposed for use for materials mixes that require control by Testing Agency.
  - 4. Contractor will integrate Owner's independent Testing Agency services within Baseline Project Schedule and with other Project activities.
  - 5. For any requested inspection, Contractor will complete prior inspections to ensure that items are ready for inspection.
  - 6. All Work is subject to testing and inspection and verification of correct operation prior to 100% payment to Contractor of line item(s) pertaining to that aspect of the Work.
  - 7. For Mechanical Equipment, inspection and documented approval of individual equipment and/or system(s) must be accomplished prior to requesting Substantial Completion Inspection for any area affected by said equipment and/or system:
    - a. Contractor will perform thorough checkout of operations with manufacturer's representatives prior to requesting formal inspection by Owner.
    - b. Contractor must notify Owner's Representative, in advance, as to when manufacturer's representative is scheduled to arrive at Site.
  - 8. Comply:
    - a. Upon completion of Testing Agency's inspection, testing, sample-taking, and similar services, repair damaged construction and restore substrates and finishes to eliminate deficiencies, including deficiencies in visual qualities of exposed finishes.
    - b. Comply with Contract Documents in making such repairs.
  - 9. Data: Furnish records, drawings, certificates, and similar data as may be required by testing and inspection personnel to assure compliance with Contract Documents.
  - 10. Defective Work (Non-Conforming Work): Non-conforming Work as covered in General Conditions applies, but is not limited to following requirements:



- a. Where results of inspections, tests, or similar services show that the Work does not comply with Contract Document requirements, correct deficiencies in the Work promptly to avoid Work delays.
  - b. Where testing personnel take cores or cut-outs to verify compliance, repair prior to acceptance.
  - c. Contractor responsible for any and all costs incurred resulting from inspection that was scheduled prematurely or retesting due to failed tests.
  - d. Remove and replace any Work found defective or not complying with contract document requirements at no additional cost to Owner.
  - e. Should test return unacceptable results, Contractor will bear all costs of retesting and re-inspection as well as cost of all material consumed by testing, and replacement of unsatisfactory material and/or workmanship.
11. Protection:
- a. Protect construction exposed by or for quality assurance and quality control service activities, and protect repaired construction.
12. Scheduling: Contractor is responsible for scheduling times for inspections, tests, taking samples, and similar activities:
- a. Schedule testing and inspections in advance so as not to delay the Work and to eliminate any need to uncover Work for testing or inspection.
  - b. Notify Testing Agency and Architect as noted in Sections in Division 01 through Division 50 prior to any time required for such services.
  - c. Incorporate adequate time for performance of all inspections and correction of noted deficiencies.
  - d. Schedule sequence of activities to accommodate required services with minimum of delay.
  - e. Schedule sequence of activities to avoid necessity of removing and replacing construction to accommodate testing and inspections
13. Test and Inspection Log:
- a. Provide system of tracking all field reports, describing items noted, and resolution of each item. Prepare record of tests and inspections. Include following:
    - 1) Date test or inspection was conducted.
    - 2) Description of the Work tested or inspected.
    - 3) Date test or inspection results were transmitted to Architect.
    - 4) Identification of Testing Agency or inspector conducting test or inspection.
  - b. Maintain log at Project site:
    - 1) Post changes and modifications as they occur.
    - 2) Provide access to test and inspection log for Architect's reference during normal working hours.

## 1.7 TESTING AND INSPECTIONS - GENERAL

- A. Testing specifically identified to be conducted by Owner, will be performed by an independent entity and will be arranged and paid for by Owner.
- B. Individual Sections in Division 01 through Division 49 indicate if Owner will provide testing and inspection of the Work of that Section.
- C. Tests include but not limited to those described in detail in 'Field Quality Control' in Part 3 of Individual Sections in Divisions 01 through Division 49.
- D. Owner may engage additional consultants for testing, air balancing, commissioning, or other special services:
  1. Activities of any such Owner consultants are in addition to Contractor testing of materials or systems necessary to prove that performance is in compliance with Contract requirements.
  2. Contractor must cooperate with persons and firms engaged in these activities.
- E. Taking Specimens:
  1. Except as may be specifically otherwise approved by Architect, only testing laboratory shall secure, handle, transport, or store any samples and specimens for testing.

- F. Scheduling Testing Agency:
  - 1. Contractor will coordinate the Work and facilitate timeliness of such testing and inspecting services so as not to delay the Work.
  - 2. Contractor will notify Testing Agency and Architect to schedule tests and / or inspections.
- G. For 'building-wide' and/or life safety systems, such as emergency lighting, emergency power uninterruptible power supply systems, fire alarm, fire sprinkler systems, smoke evacuation systems, toxic gas monitoring, capturer exhaust systems, etc. formal start-up inspection will be completed prior to requesting Substantial Completion Inspection for any area of Project:
  - 1. Manufacturer's representatives and installing contractor will demonstrate both operation and compliance to Owner's agents and consultants. If coordinated and scheduled appropriately by Contractor, these equipment and/or systems inspections may also serve to provide required Owner training, if approved in advance by Owner.
  - 2. Contractor responsible for requesting that Architect arrange for inspection of materials, equipment, and work prior to assembly or enclosure that would make materials, equipment, or work inaccessible for inspection and at other times as may be required.

## 1.8 TESTING AGENCY SERVICES AND RESPONSIBILITIES

- A. Testing Agency, including independent testing laboratories, will be licensed and authorized to operate in jurisdiction in which Project is located.
  - 1. Approved Testing Agency Qualifications: Requirements of Section 01 4301 apply.
- B. Testing and Inspection Services:
  - 1. Testing Agency will not release, revoke, alter, or increase Contract Document requirements or approve or accept any portion of the Work.
  - 2. Testing Agency will not give direction or instruction to Contractor.
  - 3. Testing Agency will have full authority to see that the Work is performed in strict accordance with requirements of Contract Documents and directions of Owner's Representative and/or Architect.
  - 4. Testing Agency will not provide additional testing and inspection services beyond scope of Work without prior approval of Owner's Representative and / or Architect.
- C. Excavation Support and Protection:
  - 1. Anchor tie-back System:
    - a. Observe and record proof tests.
  - 2. Soil Nail Systems:
    - a. Observe and record proof tests.
    - b. Observe drilling for changes in soil type, hole diameter, length, and cleanliness.
    - c. Periodically observe placement of drainage materials, reinforcing, and shotcrete.
    - d. Review compressive strength test results of grout and shotcrete.
- D. Testing Agency Duties:
  - 1. Independent Testing Agency engaged to perform inspections, sampling, and testing of materials and construction specified in individual specification Sections will cooperate with Architect and Contractor in performance of its duties and will provide qualified personnel to perform required inspections and tests.
  - 2. Testing Agency will test or obtain certificates of tests of materials and methods of construction, as described herein or elsewhere in technical specification.
  - 3. Testing Agency will provide management, personnel, equipment, and services necessary to perform testing functions as outlined in this section.
  - 4. Testing Agency must have experience and capability to conduct testing and inspecting indicated by ASTM standards and that specializes in types of tests and inspections to be performed.
  - 5. Testing Agency will comply with requirements of ASTM E329, ASTM E543, ASTM C1021, ASTM C1077, ASTM C1093, ASTM D3666, ASTM D3740, and other relevant ASTM standards.
  - 6. Testing Agency must calibrate all testing equipment at reasonable intervals (minimum yearly) with accuracy traceable to either National Bureau of Standards or accepted values of natural physical constants.

7. Welding Procedure Review: Testing Agency will provide review and approval or rejection of all welding procedures to be used and will verify compliance with all reference standard requirements.

E. Testing and Inspection Reports:

1. Conduct and interpret tests and inspections and state in each report whether tested and inspected the Work complies with or deviates from requirements.
2. Laboratory Reports: Testing Agency will furnish reports of materials and construction as required, including:
  - a. Description of method of test.
  - b. Identification of sample and portion of the Work tested.
    - 1) Description of location in the Work of sample.
    - 2) Time and date when sample was obtained.
    - 3) Weather and climatic conditions at time when sample was obtained.
  - c. Evaluation of results of tests including recommendations for action.
3. Inspection Reports:
  - a. Testing Agency will furnish 'Inspection at Site' reports for each site visit documenting activities, observations, and inspections.
  - b. Include notation of weather and climatic conditions, time and date conditions and status of the Work, actions taken, and recommendations or evaluation of the Work.
4. Reporting Testing and Inspection (Conforming Work):
  - a. Submit testing and inspection reports as required within twenty four (24) hours of test or inspection having been performed.
5. Reporting Testing and Inspection Defective Work (Non-Conforming Work):
  - a. Testing Agency, upon determination of irregularities, deficiencies observed or test failure(s) observed in the Work during performance of its services of test or inspection having been performed, will:
    - 1) Verbally notify results to Architect, Contractor, and Owner's Representative within one hour of test or inspection having been performed (if Defective Work (Non-Conforming Work) is incorporated into project).
    - 2) Submit written inspection report and test results as required within twenty four (24) hours of test or inspection having been performed.
  - b. Prepare non-compliance log to track non-compliant testing or inspections.
6. Final Report:
  - a. Submit final report of tests and inspections at Substantial Completion, which identify unresolved deficiencies.

## 1.9 ARCHITECT'S RESPONSIBILITIES

A. Architect Duties:

1. Notify Owner's Representative before each test and/or inspection.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS Not Used

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Field Tests And Inspections:

1. Field Tests and Inspections requirements are described in 'Field Quality Control' of individual Sections in Division 01 through Division 49.

**END OF SECTION**

**SECTION 01 4546****DUCT TESTING, ADJUSTING, AND BALANCING****PART 1 - GENERAL****1.1 SUMMARY**

- A. Includes But Is Not Limited To:
  - 1. Test, balance, and adjust air duct systems services provided by Owner as described in Contract Documents.
- B. Related Requirements:
  - 1. Section 01 1200: 'Multiple Contracts Summary': Owner will provide test, balance, and adjust air duct systems. PART 3 of this Section establishes requirements for field tests of 'Testing Agency'.
  - 2. Section 01 4523: 'Testing and Inspecting Services' for testing and inspection, and testing laboratory services for materials, products, and construction methods.
  - 3. Division 23:
    - a. Completing installation and start-up of mechanical systems, and changing sheaves, belts, and dampers as required for correct balance.
    - b. Maintain HVAC system and equipment in full operation each working day of testing, balancing, and adjusting.

**1.2 ADMINISTRATIVE REQUIREMENTS**

- A. Coordination:
  - 1. Contractor to assist Testing Agency in testing and balancing of mechanical system.
- B. Scheduling:
  - 1. Contractor to schedule this work in cooperation with other Sections involved and to comply with completion date for test, balance, and adjust air duct systems as described in Contract Documents.
  - 2. Contact Testing Agency and coordinate (Owner' Representative to provide 'Testing Agency' contact information):
    - a. One inspection when 60 percent of ductwork is installed.
    - b. One inspection when 90 percent of equipment and ductwork is installed.
  - 3. Contact Testing Agency and coordinate date(s) for test and balance work when following is completed:
    - a. HVAC and exhaust systems including installation of specialties, devices, and new filters.
    - b. Proper function of control system components including electrical interlocks, damper sequences, air and water reset, and fire and freeze stats has been verified.
    - c. Automatic temperature controls have been calibrated and set for design operating conditions.
    - d. Verification of proper thermostat calibration and setting of control components such as static pressure controllers and other devices that may need set points changed during process of balancing system.
  - 4. If, in opinion of Testing Agency, systems are not ready for test and balance, reschedule as required.

**1.3 SUBMITTALS**

- A. Informational Submittals:
  - 1. Test and Evaluation Reports:
    - a. Preliminary Report(s):
      - 1) Four copies to be given to Owner's Representative.

- b. Final Report :
  - 1) Four copies to be given to Owner's Representative.
- B. Closeout Submittals:
  - 1. Include following in Operations And Maintenance Manual specified in Section 01 7800:
    - a. Record Documentation:
      - 1) Testing and Inspection Reports:
        - a) Testing Agency Testing and Evaluation Final Report of testing, balancing, and adjusting air duct systems. Bind approved copy of Testing and Evaluation Report in Operations And Maintenance Manual for Division 23.

## 1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Qualifications:
  - 1. Approved Testing Agency. Section 01 4301 applies, but is not limited to following:
    - a. Testing Agency shall specialize in testing and balancing of heating, ventilating, and cooling systems to balance, adjust, and test air moving equipment, air distribution, and exhaust systems.
    - b. Testing Agency shall provide proof of having successfully completed at least five years of specialized experience in air and hydronic system balancing.
    - c. Testing Agency shall provide testing under direct supervision of qualified heating and ventilating engineer.
    - d. Neither Architect's engineering consultant nor anyone performing work on this Project under other Sections of Division 23 shall be permitted to do this work.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS: Not Used

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 OWNER-FURNISHED TESTING AND INSPECTION

- A. Owner to provide Testing and Inspection for testing, balancing, and adjusting air duct systems:
  - 1. See Section 01 1200: Multiple contracts for administrative and procedural requirements for Testing and Inspection services.

### 3.2 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Field Tests
  - 1. Air System Testing, Adjusting, And Balance:
    - a. Inspections and site visits. (For paragraph a thru c, note deficiencies, if any, that needs to be corrected and report this to Owner's Representative, Architect, and Mechanical Engineer):
      - 1) One inspection when ductwork installation is 60 percent complete.
      - 2) One inspection when ductwork is installation is 90 percent complete.
      - 3) One inspection when potable hot and cold water system is 90 percent complete.
      - 4) Site visit for test and balance. Before commencing test and balance, perform an inspection to verify 100 percent completion of system. Confirm completion of work, correction of previously noted deficiencies, and look for new deficiencies not noted in previous inspections. If the work is complete, then proceed with test and balance. If the work is not complete and ready for test and balance, inform Contractor and submit an invoice to Owner's Representative for compensation for travel time, expenses, and time on site. Report deficiencies or incomplete work to Owner's Representative, Architect, and Mechanical Engineer.
      - 5) Additional site visits (beyond those set forth above) to complete the work after issues are resolved may be needed and will be paid for separately from compensation for

services set forth in this Agreement, pursuant to hourly rates and conditions set forth in Attachment "A".

- b. Checklist for Inspections and site visits:
- 1) Pre-Startup Inspection – use for inspections and site visits a thru d in paragraph 1 above. All pertinent items shall be checked, including but not limited to following:
    - a) Removal of shipping blocks and stops.
    - b) Vibration isolators' alignment and adjustment.
    - c) Flexible connections properly installed and aligned.
    - d) Safety controls, safety valves and high or low limits in operation.
    - e) All systems properly filled.
    - f) Filters in place and seal provided around edges.
    - g) Filters and strainers are clean.
    - h) Fire damper installation and operation, and access door installation.
    - i) Installation of all gauges on equipment.
    - j) Control system is operating.
    - k) All dampers, valves, and operators are properly installed and operating.
    - l) All ductwork is installed and sealed.
    - m) Voltage to unit matches nameplate voltage.
  - 2) First Run Inspection – use for inspections and site visits d and e in paragraph 1 above. Recheck items in Pre-Startup list, and check for following items:
    - a) Excessive vibration or noise.
    - b) Loose components.
    - c) Initial control settings.
    - d) Motor amperages.
    - e) Heat buildup in motors.
    - f) Control system is calibrated and functioning as required.
  - 3) System Operation Inspection – use for inspections and site visits d and e in paragraph 1 above. Observe mechanical systems under operation for sufficient amount of time to ensure proper operation in all running modes. Check following items periodically.
    - a) Filters and strainers.
    - b) Filters and strainers.
    - c) Check for system leaks at seals and valves.
- c. Performance Requirements:
- 1) Testing and balancing in complete accordance with Associated Air Balance Council (AABC) Standards for Field Measurement & Instructions, Form P1266, Volume I.
- d. Site tests: Air Test and Balancing Procedure:
- 1) Instruments used by Consultant shall be accurately calibrated and maintained in good working order.
  - 2) All supply air and return air fans in all HVAC zone systems, energy recovery ventilators, and exhaust fans in building shall be operating when final setup of all units is performed.
  - 3) Perform tests at high and low speeds of multi-speed systems and single speed systems.
  - 4) Perform following testing and balancing functions in accordance with Associated Air Balance Council National Standards.
    - a) Fan Speeds - Air handling units (with variable pitch pulleys and sheaves): Test and adjust fan RPM to achieve design CFM requirements.
    - b) Fan Speeds - Furnaces (with direct drive motors): Set fan speed to lowest possible setting that will achieve design CFM requirements. Adjust down from Contractor setting, if necessary. Adjust low voltage fan speed jumpers (provided and installed by installing contractor) as necessary to achieve design cooling air flow at lowest possible setting. An exception to this would be when furnace is variable speed blower for dehumidification applications.
    - c) Current And Voltage: Measure and record motor current and voltage.
    - d) Pitot-Tube Traverse Method:
      - (1) Make measurements in duct where velocity is uniform, 7-1/2 duct diameters downstream and 2 duct diameters minimum upstream from any turbulence, i.e., elbow, damper, take-off, etc.
      - (2) Perform pitot-tube traverse of outdoor ventilation air duct serving each piece of air moving equipment.

- (3) Where single outdoor ventilation air trunk duct serves multiple pieces of equipment, perform pitot-tube traverse of duct branch serving each piece of equipment as well as pitot-tube traverse of total air flow in trunk with all pieces of equipment operating.
- e) Where pitot-tube traverse is not possible or if pitot-tube traverse is unreliable, flow hood measurement over exterior intake louver or grille is acceptable for measuring outdoor ventilation air.
- f) Use proportionate method of air balance leaving fan at lowest possible speed and at least one branch balance damper fully open.
- 5) Static Pressure: Test and record system static pressures, including suction and discharge static pressure of each fan.
- 6) Air Temperature: Take dry bulb air temperatures on entering and leaving side of each cooling coil. Dry bulb temperatures shall be taken on entering and leaving side of each heating unit.
- 7) Zone Ducts: Adjust zone ducts to within design CFM requirements. At least one zone balancing damper shall be completely open.
- 8) Branch Ducts: Adjust branch ducts to within design CFM requirements. Multi-diffuser branch ducts shall have at least one outlet or inlet volume damper completely open.
- 9) Tolerances: Test and balance all fans, zone ducts, registers, diffusers etc. to + or – 10 percent of design CFM.
- 10) Identification: Identify location and area of each grille, diffuser, register, and terminal box. Record on air outlet data sheets.
- 11) Description: Record size, type, and manufacturer of each diffuser, grille, and register on air outlet data sheets.
- 12) Drafts: Adjust diffusers, grilles, and registers to minimize drafts. For high sidewall supply air diffusers install horizontal blade core to direct air flow upward 15 degree and set adjustable vertical blades to spread air flow horizontally and evenly in fan pattern.
- 13) Permanently mark all outside air, supply air, and return air damper positions after balancing has been completed.
- 14) Smoke testing: Smoke testing, or some other approved means, may be required to determine leak locations if air balance report indicates that any system's CFM total is less than 90 percent of design CFM. Prior to test, verify that system's duct joints have been sealed as specified and that air moving device in question is supplying required design system air flow. Mechanical Engineer will approve test method required. If smoke test is selected, use following procedure. Provide necessary precautions to protect those performing or observing test from being exposed to smoke.
  - a) Use zinc chloride smoke candles, titanium tetrachloride ampules or sticks, or other devices acceptable to Mechanical engineer to generate smoke.
  - b) Close openings in duct except for one opening at farthest end of duct run.
  - c) Circulate smoke at pressurized condition of **1/2 inch (13 mm)** minimum water gauge static pressure.
  - d) Report findings to mechanical engineer in writing.
- e. Air System Test and Evaluation Report:
  - 1) Record test data on AABC standard forms or facsimile.
  - 2) Preliminary Report: Provide and deliver four copies of complete data for evaluation and approval to Owner.
  - 3) Final report: Provide and deliver complete four copies of final report to Owner prior to project Substantial Completion date.
  - 4) Complete with logs, data, and records as required herein. Print logs, data, and records on white bond paper bound together in report form.
  - 5) Certified accurate and complete by Consultant's certified test and balance engineer.
  - 6) Contain following general data in format selected by Consultant:
    - a) Project Number.
    - b) Project Title.
    - c) Project Location.
    - d) Project Architect and Mechanical Engineer.
    - e) Consultant and Certified Engineer.
    - f) Contractor and mechanical sub-contractor.
    - g) Dates tests were performed.
    - h) Certification Document.

- i) Report Forms similar to AABC Standard format.
- 7) Report shall include following:
  - a) Instrumentation List including type, model, manufacturer, serial number, and calibration dates.
  - b) HVAC zone identification to include reduced ductwork floor plan from project documents with outlets and inlets numbered to match written test and balance report. This page may be oversized but it should fold up neatly within standard 8 1/2 x 11 report paper size.
  - c) Record following for each piece of air handling equipment:
    - (1) Manufacturer, model number, and serial number.
    - (2) Design and manufacture rated data.
    - (3) Actual CFM.
    - (4) Suction and discharge static pressure of each fan.
    - (5) Outdoor-ventilation-air and return-air total CFM.
    - (6) Final RPM of each motor or speed tap.
    - (7) Actual operating current and voltage of each fan motor.
    - (8) Fan and motor sheave manufacturer, model, size, number of grooves and center distance.
    - (9) Belt size and quantity.

### 3.3 PREPARATION

- A. Heating, ventilating, and cooling systems and equipment shall be in full operation and continue in operation during each working day of testing and balancing.

**END OF SECTION**



**SECTION 01 5100****TEMPORARY UTILITIES****PART 1 - GENERAL****1.1 SUMMARY**

- A. Section Includes But is Not Limited To:
1. Administrative and procedural requirements for Temporary Utilities.

**1.2 ADMINISTRATIVE REQUIREMENTS**

- A. Where necessary, engage appropriate local utility companies to install temporary service or connect to existing service. Where utility company provides only part of service, provide remainder with matching, compatible materials and equipment. Comply with utility company's recommendations.
1. Comply with industry standards and applicable laws and regulations of authorities having jurisdiction.
  2. Arrange for authorities having jurisdiction to inspect and test each temporary utility before use. Obtain required certifications and permits.
  3. Arrange with utility company and existing users for time when service can be interrupted, where necessary, to make connections for temporary services.
  4. Provide adequate capacity at each stage of construction. Before temporary utility availability, provide trucked-in services.
  5. Obtain construction easements necessary to bring temporary and/or permanent utilities to site.
  6. Use qualified personnel for installation and maintenance of temporary facilities. Locate temporary utilities where they will serve Project adequately and result in minimum interference with the Work of Owner or other Contractors on Project Site. Relocate and modify temporary utilities as required.
  7. Pay cost and use charges for temporary and permanent utilities until Substantial Completion has been granted by Owner.
- B. Prepare schedule indicating dates for implementation and termination of each temporary utility. At earliest feasible time, change over from use of temporary service to use of permanent service.
- C. Keep temporary utilities clean and neat in appearance. Operate in safe and efficient manner. Take necessary fire prevention measures. Do not overload utilities, or allow them to interfere with progress of The Work. Do not allow hazardous, dangerous or unsanitary conditions, or public nuisances to develop or persist on Project site.
- D. Limit availability of temporary utilities to essential and intended uses to reduce waste and abuse.
- E. Maintain temporary utilities in good operating condition until removal. Protect from damage by freezing temperatures and similar elements.
1. Maintain operation of temporary enclosures, heating, cooling, humidity control, ventilation, and similar facilities on 24-hour day basis where required to achieve indicated results and to avoid possibility of damage.
  2. Prevent water filled piping from freezing. Maintain markers for underground lines. Protect from damage during excavation operations.
- F. Remove each temporary utility and control when need has ended, or when replaced by permanent utility, but not later than Substantial Completion. Complete permanent construction that may have been delayed because of interference with temporary utility. Repair damaged work, clean exposed surfaces, and replace construction that cannot be satisfactorily repaired.
1. Materials and facilities that make up temporary utilities are property of Contractor.

2. By Substantial Completion, clean and renovate permanent utilities used during construction period, including but not limited to:
  - a. Replace air filters and clean inside of ductwork and housings.
  - b. Replace significantly worn parts and parts subjected to unusual operating conditions.
  - c. Replace lamps that are burned out or noticeably dimmed by substantial hours of use.

### **1.3 TEMPORARY ELECTRIC POWER**

- A. Provide weatherproof, grounded electric power service and distribution system of sufficient size, capacity, and power characteristics during construction period.

### **1.4 TEMPORARY FIRE PROTECTION**

- A. Install and maintain temporary fire protection facilities of types needed to protect against predictable and controllable fire losses. At a minimum, provide and maintain in working order two Standard UL Labeled ABC all-purpose 10 lb fire extinguishers. Do not incorporate these extinguishers into final Project.
  1. Store combustible materials in containers in fire-safe locations.
  2. Maintain unobstructed access to fire extinguishers, fire hydrants, temporary fire protection facilities, stairways, and other access routes for fighting fires.
  3. Provide supervision of welding operations, combustion type temporary heating units, and similar sources of fire ignition.

### **1.5 HEATING, COOLING, AND VENTILATING:**

- A. Install and operate temporary heating, cooling, and ventilating units including fuel, temporary piping, fittings, wiring, and connections necessary to provide environmental conditions specified for various portions of the Work. Coordinate ventilation requirements to produce ambient conditions required and reduce consumption of energy.
- B. Repair damage to building and contents caused by cold, heat, dampness, and/or heating, cooling, and ventilating equipment. Select equipment that will not have harmful effect on completed installations or on elements being installed.
- C. Maintain safe conditions for use of temporary heating, cooling, and ventilating systems including, but not limited to, following requirements:
  1. Operate equipment according to equipment manufacturer's instructions.
  2. Provide fresh air ventilation required by equipment manufacturer.
  3. Keep temperature of fuel containers stabilized.
  4. Secure fuel containers from overturning.
  5. Operate equipment away from combustible materials.
- D. Permanent mechanical system may be operated subject to following conditions:
  1. Do not operate system when work causing air-borne dust is occurring or when dust caused by such work is present without installation of temporary filtering system approved by Architect.
  2. Operate system at no cost to Owner, including cost of fuel.
  3. Assume all responsibility and risk for operation of system.
  4. Return permanent mechanical equipment to 'like-new' condition for Substantial Completion Inspection.

### **1.6 TEMPORARY LIGHTING**

- A. Install and operate temporary lighting that will provide adequate illumination for construction operations and traffic conditions.

**1.7 TEMPORARY TELEPHONES**

- A. Provide temporary telephone service for all personnel engaged in construction activities, throughout construction period.
- B. Contractor will pay for Local calls. Party making call will pay for long-distance and toll calls.
- C. At each telephone, post list of important telephone numbers.

**1.8 TEMPORARY WATER SERVICE**

- A. Install water service and distribution piping of sizes and pressures adequate for construction until permanent water service is in use.

**PART 2 - PRODUCTS Not Used****PART 3 - EXECUTION Not Used**

**END OF SECTION**

**SECTION 01 5200****CONSTRUCTION FACILITIES****PART 1 - GENERAL****1.1 SUMMARY**

- A. Section Includes But is Not Limited To:
1. Administrative and procedural requirements for Construction Facilities.

**1.2 ADMINISTRATIVE REQUIREMENTS**

- A. Prepare schedule indicating dates for implementation and termination of each temporary facility.
- B. Keep temporary facilities clean and neat in appearance. Operate in safe and efficient manner. Take necessary fire prevention measures. Do not overload facilities, or allow them to interfere with progress of The Work. Do not allow hazardous, dangerous or unsanitary conditions, or public nuisances to develop or persist on Project site.
- C. Maintain facilities in good operating condition until removal.
- D. Remove each temporary facility when need has ended, or when replaced by authorized use of permanent facility, or by Substantial Completion. Complete permanent construction that may have been delayed because of interference with temporary facility. Repair damaged work, clean exposed surfaces, and replace construction that cannot be satisfactorily repaired.
1. Materials and facilities that make up temporary facilities are property of Contractor.
  2. By Substantial Completion, clean and renovate permanent facilities used during construction period.

**1.3 FIELD OFFICES**

- A. Provide and maintain insulated, weather tight temporary office of sufficient size to accommodate Contractor's personnel at Project site and for use by Owner, Architect and Subcontractors.
1. Keep office clean and orderly.
  2. Heat and cool office as needed.
  3. Furnish office with locking door, light(s), table(s), bench(es), rack(s) for drawings, telephone, and FAX machine.
  4. Make office available for progress meetings.
  5. Provide an operable fire extinguisher in facility.
  6. Provide hardhats for Owner's Representatives for site visits.
- B. If Owner agrees to permit removal of temporary office before Substantial Completion, Contractor may use a room as an office after temporary office is removed. Equip room as specified above and restore to 'like-new' condition before Substantial Completion.

**1.4 SANITARY FACILITIES**

- A. Provide temporary sanitary toilet. Service and maintain temporary toilet in a clean, sanitary condition.

**PART 2 - PRODUCTS Not Used**

**PART 3 - EXECUTION Not Used**

**END OF SECTION**

**SECTION 01 5400**

**CONSTRUCTION AIDS**

**PART 1 - GENERAL**

**1.1 SUMMARY**

- A. Section Includes But is Not Limited To:
  - 1. Administrative and procedural requirements for Construction Aids.

**1.2 SCAFFOLDING, PLATFORMS, STAIRS, ETC**

- A. Furnish and maintain equipment such as temporary stairs, ladders, ramps, platforms, scaffolds, hoists, runways, derricks, chutes, and elevators as required for proper execution of The Work.
- B. Apparatus, equipment, and construction shall meet requirements of applicable laws and safety regulations.

**PART 2 - PRODUCTS Not Used**

**PART 3 - EXECUTION Not Used**

**END OF SECTION**

**SECTION 01 5600****TEMPORARY BARRIERS AND ENCLOSURES****PART 1 - GENERAL****1.1 SUMMARY**

- A. Section Includes But is Not Limited To:
1. Administrative and procedural requirements for Temporary Barriers and Enclosures.

**1.2 ADMINISTRATIVE REQUIREMENTS**

- A. Protection Of Existing Improvements: Protect streets, private roads, and sidewalks, including overhead protection where required. Repair damage to existing improvements caused by construction activities.
- B. Protection Of Adjacent Property: Provide necessary protection for adjacent property and lateral support thereof.
- C. Proprietary Camera Services: In its absolute discretion, and with or without notice to Contractor, Owner may provide from time to time, but is not obligated to provide, one or more cameras on or about Project site and/or signage or notices of the same:
1. If provided by Owner, such camera(s) and/or signage and notices are solely for Owner's benefit and convenience and shall not be for benefit of Contractor, Subcontractor(s) or for any third person.
  2. Owner shall have no liability, obligation, or responsibility to Contractor, Subcontractors, or any third person relative to such camera(s), signage, or notices, or absence of camera(s), signage, or notices, including without limitation, installation, maintenance, operation, repair, testing, functionality, capacity, recording, monitoring, posting, etc., of the same (hereafter 'Proprietary Camera Services').
  3. Contractor, with Owner's prior consent (which shall not be unreasonably withheld), may relocate such camera(s), signage, or notices as necessary to not unreasonably, materially and physically interfere with work at Project Site.
  4. Contractor's obligations under Contract Documents, including but not limited to, Contractor's obligation for security of Project Site, are not modified by Owner's opportunity to provide, actually providing, or not providing Proprietary Camera Services and/or signage or notices regarding the same.
  5. This Specification Section does not preclude Contractor from providing its own camera(s), signage, or notices pursuant to terms and conditions of this Agreement. Neither does this Section reduce, expand or modify any other right or obligation of Owner pursuant to terms of this Agreement.

**1.3 TEMPORARY AIR BARRIERS**

- A.

**1.4 TEMPORARY DUST BARRIERS**

- A.

**1.5 TEMPORARY NOISE BARRIERS**

A.

**1.6 TEMPORARY BARRICADES**

- A. Comply with standards and code requirements in erecting barricades, warning signs, and lights.
- B. Take necessary precautions to protect persons, including members of the public, from injury or harm.

**1.7 TEMPORARY FENCING**

- A. Before construction begins, install 6 foot high enclosure fence with lockable entrance gates. Locate where shown on Drawings. If not shown on Drawings, enclose entire site or portion sufficient to accommodate construction operations.

**1.8 TEMPORARY SECURITY BARRIERS**

- A. Install temporary enclosures of partially completed areas of construction. Provide locking entrances to prevent unauthorized entrance, vandalism, theft, and other violations of security.
- B. Secure materials and equipment stored on site.
- C. Secure building at the end of each work day.
- D. Maintain exterior building security until Substantial Completion.

**1.9 TEMPORARY TREE AND PLANT PROTECTION**

- A. Protection:
  - 1. Before commencing site work, build and maintain protective fencing around existing trees and vegetation as shown on the drawings.
  - 2. Individual trees will have protective fencing built beyond drip line.
  - 3. Build protective fencing around groups of trees and other vegetation as indicated on Drawings.
  - 4. Keep areas within protective fencing undisturbed and do not use for any purpose.
- B. Maintenance:
  - 1. Maintain existing tree, shrubs, and vegetation as indicated in Contract Documents:
    - a. Remove and replace vegetation that dies or is damaged beyond repair due to construction activities.
    - b. Damage to any tree, shrub, or vegetation that has been indicated to remain and be protected, will have a cost associated with it. This includes branches, trunk and root systems:
      - 1) Trees: \$1,000.00.
      - 2) Shrubs: \$ 100.00.
      - 3) Vegetation: \$ 50.00.
- C. Pruning:
  - 1. Provide a qualified Tree Service Firm if pruning is required:
    - a. Coordinate with authorities having jurisdiction.
    - b. Coordinate with Owner and Architect on site before pruning is to begin.



**PART 2 - PRODUCTS Not Used**

**PART 3 - EXECUTION Not Used**

**END OF SECTION**

**SECTION 01 5700****TEMPORARY CONTROLS****PART 1 - GENERAL****1.1 SUMMARY**

- A. Section Includes But is Not Limited To:
  - 1. Administrative and procedural requirements for Temporary Controls.

**1.2 TEMPORARY EROSION AND SEDIMENT CONTROL**

- A. Take precautions necessary to prevent erosion and transportation of soil downstream, to adjacent properties, and into on-site or off-site drainage systems.
- B. Develop, install, and maintain an erosion control plan if required by law.
- C. Repair and correct damage caused by erosion.

**1.3 TEMPORARY ENVIRONMENTAL CONTROLS**

- A. Provide protection, operate temporary facilities, and conduct construction in ways and by methods that comply with environmental regulations, and reduce possibility that air, waterways, and subsoil might be contaminated or polluted, or that other undesirable effects might result:
  - 1. Avoid use of tools and equipment that produce harmful noise.
  - 2. Restrict use of noise making tools and equipment to hours that will minimize complaints from persons or firms near site.
- B. Provide protection against weather (rain, winds, storms, frost, or heat) to maintain all work, materials, apparatus, and fixtures free from injury or damage.
- C. Protect excavation, trenches, and building from damage from rain water, spring water, ground water, backing up of drains or sewers, and all other water:
  - 1. For temporary drainage and dewatering facilities and operations not directly associated with construction activities included under individual Sections, comply with requirements of applicable local regulations. Where feasible, use permanent facilities.
  - 2. If sewers are not available or cannot be used, provide drainage ditches, dry wells, stabilization ponds, and similar facilities. Filter out excessive amounts of soil, construction debris, chemicals, oils and similar contaminants that might clog sewers or pollute waterways before discharge.
- D. Comply with governing ordinances relating to weed control and removal.

**PART 2 - PRODUCTS Not Used****PART 3 - EXECUTION Not Used****END OF SECTION**

**SECTION 01 5800**

**PROJECT IDENTIFICATION**

**PART 1 - GENERAL**

**1.1 SUMMARY**

- A. Section Includes But is Not Limited To:
  - 1. Administrative and procedural requirements for Project Identification.

**1.2 TEMPORARY PROJECT SIGNAGE**

- A. Contractor may, at its option, erect a temporary project identification sign.
  - 1. Sign may be free-standing or attached to temporary field office or storage shed.
  - 2. No other signs or advertisements are allowed on building site.

**PART 2 - PRODUCTS Not Used**

**PART 3 - EXECUTION Not Used**

**END OF SECTION**

**SECTION 01 6100****COMMON PRODUCT REQUIREMENTS****PART 1 - GENERAL****1.1 SUMMARY**

- A. Section Includes But is Not Limited To:
1. Administrative and procedural requirements for Common Product Requirements.

**1.2 ADMINISTRATIVE REQUIREMENTS**

- A. Provide products that comply with Contract Documents, that are undamaged, and, unless otherwise indicated, new and unused at time of installation. Provide products complete with accessories, trim, finish, safety guards, and other devices and details needed for complete installation and for intended use and effect.
- B. Except for required labels and operating data, do not attach or imprint manufacturer's or producer's nameplates or trademarks on surfaces of products that will be exposed to view in occupied spaces or on building exterior.
1. Locate required product labels and stamps on concealed surface or, where required for observation after installation, on accessible surface that is not conspicuous.
  2. Provide permanent nameplates on items of service-connected or power-operated equipment. Locate on easily accessible surface that is inconspicuous in occupied spaces. Nameplate will contain following information and other essential operating data:
    - a. Name of product and manufacturer.
    - b. Model and serial number.
    - c. Capacity.
    - d. Speed.
    - e. Ratings.
- C. Where specifications describe a product or assembly by specifying exact characteristics required, with or without use of brand or trade name, provide product or assembly that provides specified characteristics and otherwise complies with Contract requirements.
- D. Where Specifications require compliance with performance requirements, provide products that comply with these requirements and are recommended by manufacturer for application described. General overall performance of product is implied where product is specified for specific application. Manufacturer's recommendations may be contained in published product literature, or by manufacturer's certification of performance.
- E. Where specifications only require compliance with an imposed code, standard, or regulation, select product that complies with standards, codes or regulations specified.
- F. Where Specifications require matching an established Sample, Architect's decision will be final on whether proposed product matches satisfactorily. Where no product available within specified category matches satisfactorily nor complies with other specified requirements, refer to Architect.
- G. Where specified product requirements include phrase *' . . . as selected from manufacturer's standard colors, patterns, textures . . . '* or similar phrase, select product and manufacturer that comply with other specified requirements. Architect will select color, pattern, and texture from product line selected.
- H. Refer to individual Specification Sections and Allowance provisions in Division 01 for allowances that control product selection, and for procedures required for processing such selections.

- I. Remove and replace products and materials not specified in Contract Documents but installed in the Work with specified products and materials at no additional cost to Owner and for no increase in Contract time.
- J. Informational Submittals:
  1. Sustainable Design Submittals:
    - a. Submit five copies of each required submittal unless otherwise required. Architect will return three copies marked with action taken and with corrections or modifications required.
    - b. Submit electronic files: PDF. Architect will return a PDF copy marked with action taken and with corrections or modifications required.

**PART 2 - PRODUCTS Not Used**

**PART 3 - EXECUTION Not Used**

**END OF SECTION**

**SECTION 01 6200****PRODUCT OPTIONS****PART 1 - GENERAL****1.1 SUMMARY**

- A. Section Includes But is Not Limited To:
1. Administrative and procedural requirements for Product Options.

**1.2 ADMINISTRATIVE REQUIREMENTS**

- A. Product Selection:
1. When option of selecting between two or more products is given, product selected will be compatible with products previously selected, even if previously selected products were also options.
    - a. Regional materials.
- B. Non-Conforming Work:
1. Non-conforming work as covered in Article 12.3 of General Conditions applies, but is not limited, to use of non-specified products or manufacturers.
- C. Product selection is governed by Contract Documents and governing regulations, not by previous Project experience. Procedures governing product selection include:
1. Substitutions And Equal Products:
    - a. Generally speaking, substitutions for specified products and systems, as defined in the Uniform Commercial Code, are not acceptable. However, equal products may be approved upon compliance with Contract Document requirements.
    - b. Approved Products / Manufacturers / Suppliers / Distributors / Fabricators / Installers:
      - 1) Category One:
        - a) Owner has established 'Relationships' that extend beyond requirements of this Project. No substitutions or equal products will be allowed on this Project.
        - b) Specification Sections specify Owner Furnished and Owner Installed Manufacturers or Products.
        - c) Follow specified procedures to preserve relationships between Owner and specified manufacturers / suppliers and advantages that accrue to Owner from those relationships.
      - 2) Category Two:
        - a) Owner has established 'Relationships' that contain provisions extending beyond requirements of this Project. No substitutions or equal products will be allowed on this Project.
        - b) Specification Sections specify Owner Furnished and Contractor Installed Manufacturers, Suppliers, Distributors or Products.
        - c) Follow specified procedures to preserve relationships between Owner and specified manufacturers / suppliers and advantages that accrue to Owner from those relationships.
      - 3) Category Three:
        - a) Owner has established 'Relationships' that contain provisions extending beyond requirements of this Project. Use these products to preserve advantages that accrue to Owner from those programs. No substitutions or equal products will be allowed on this Project.
        - b) Specification Sections specify Contractor Furnished and Contractor Installed Manufacturers, Suppliers, Distributors, Fabricators or Products.
      - 4) Category Four:

- a) Provide only specified products available from manufacturers listed. No substitutions, private-labeled, or equal products, or mixing of manufacturers' products is allowed on this Project.
- b) In Sections where lists recapitulating Manufacturers previously mentioned in Section are included under heading '*Manufacturers*' or '*Approved Manufacturers*', this is intended as a convenience to Contractor as a listing of contact information only. It is not intended that all manufacturers in list may provide products where specific products and manufacturers are listed elsewhere in Section.
- c. Acceptable Products / Manufacturers / Suppliers / Installers:
  - 1) Type One: Use specified products / manufacturers unless approval to use other products / manufacturers has been obtained from Architect by Addendum.
  - 2) Type Two: Use specified products / manufacturers unless approval to use other products and manufacturers has been obtained from Architect in writing before installing or applying unlisted or private-labeled products.
  - 3) Use 'Equal Product Approval Request Form' to request approval of equal products, manufacturers, or suppliers before bidding or before installation, as noted in individual Sections.
- d. Quality / Performance Standard Products / Manufacturers:
  - 1) Class One: Use specified product / manufacturer or equal product from specified manufacturers only.
  - 2) Class Two: Use specified product / manufacturer or equal product from any manufacturer.
  - 3) Products / manufacturers used shall conform to Contract Document requirements.

**PART 2 - PRODUCTS Not Used****PART 3 - EXECUTION Not Used****END OF SECTION**

**SECTION 01 6400****OWNER - FURNISHED PRODUCTS****PART 1 - GENERAL****1.1 SUMMARY**

- A. Administrative and procedural requirements for Owner-Furnished Products. Install items furnished by Owner or receive and store in safe condition items purchased directly by Owner according to requirements of Contract Documents:
1. Fixed Markerboards. See Section 10 1116.
  2. Fixed Tackboards. See Section 10 1123.
  3. Interior Signage. See Section 10 1495.
  4. Network Streaming Equipment: See Section 27 4117 and Section 27 5117.
  5. Projection Screens. See Section 11 5213.

**1.2 ADMINISTRATIVE REQUIREMENTS**

- A. General:
1. Review 'Contractor Notice of Owner Furnished Materials' notice listing Owner-furnished products to be delivered for Project:
    - a. Review due (delivery) dates and vendor lead times for each item and coordinate with construction schedule. Immediately report recommended changes to Owner's Purchasing Coordinator listed in 'Contractor Notice of Owner Furnished Materials'. Contact vendors directly if changes to delivery dates become necessary during construction.
    - b. Report problems in coordinating due (delivery) dates with construction schedule to Architect and Owner's Purchasing Coordinator.
  2. Receive unload, store and protect Owner-furnished materials and products.
    - a. Provide labor and equipment necessary to receive, unload, and store materials and products.
    - b. Count number of pieces received and note any discrepancies on Delivery Receipt before driver leaves:
      - 1) Compare 'Contractor Notice of Owner Furnished Materials' notice' with packing slips.
      - 2) Note discrepancies in number, size, color, model numbers, etc. on Delivery Receipt.
    - c. Include Project Name and Project Number on Delivery Receipt.
    - d. Check for visible evidence of damage such as holes, tears, or crushed portions of cartons and note on Delivery Receipt before driver leaves:
      - 1) Include Project Name and Project Number on Delivery Receipt.
      - 2) If you are unsure if carton is damaged, take photo of cartons and share it with Owner's Purchasing Coordinator.
    - e. Properly store and protect all deliveries of Owner Furnished materials and Products.
  3. Within forty-eight (48) hours of delivery:
    - a. Open and inspect each piece of freight delivered. Take picture of any concealed damage not reported at time of delivery and report it to Owner's Purchasing Coordinator.
    - b. Compare 'Contractor Notice of Owner Furnished Materials' with packing slips. Note discrepancies in number, size, color, model numbers, etc.
    - c. Deliver copy of Delivery Receipt (bill of lading) on which you have noted any loss or damage to Owner's Purchasing Coordinator. Include in your submission any report of concealed damage, discrepancies or photos.
  4. Failure to strictly follow above procedures will result in your assumption of all financial responsibility for this shipment. All replacement and reorders must be made through Owner's Purchasing Coordinator and must allow Owner's vendor sufficient lead time to produce and ship new product.



5. When above procedures are strictly followed, shortages and damaged items will be replaced by Owner at Owner's cost.

**PART 2 - PRODUCTS Not Used**

**PART 3 - EXECUTION Not Used**

**END OF SECTION**

**SECTION 01 6600****PRODUCT DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING REQUIREMENTS****PART 1 - GENERAL****1.1 SUMMARY**

- A. Section Includes But is Not Limited To:
  - 1. Administrative and procedural requirements for Product Delivery, Storage, and Handling Requirements.

**1.2 ADMINISTRATIVE REQUIREMENTS**

- A. Deliver, store, and handle products according to manufacturer's recommendations, using means and methods that will prevent damage, deterioration, and loss, including theft.

**1.3 DELIVERY AND ACCEPTANCE REQUIREMENTS**

- A. Schedule delivery to reduce long-term storage at site and to prevent overcrowding of construction spaces.
- B. Coordinate delivery with installation time to ensure minimum holding time for items that are flammable, hazardous, easily damaged, or sensitive to deterioration, theft, and other losses.
- C. Deliver products to site in manufacturer's original sealed container or other packaging system, complete with labels and instructions for handling, storing, unpacking, protecting, and installing.
- D. Inspect products upon delivery to ensure compliance with Contract Documents, and to ensure that products are undamaged and properly protected.

**1.4 STORAGE AND HANDLING REQUIREMENTS**

- A. Store products at site in manner that will simplify inspection and measurement of quantity or counting of units.
- B. Store heavy materials away from Project structure so supporting construction will not be endangered.
- C. Store products subject to damage by elements above ground, under cover in weathertight enclosure, with ventilation adequate to prevent condensation. Maintain temperature and humidity within range required by manufacturer's instructions.

**PART 2 - PRODUCTS Not Used****PART 3 - EXECUTION Not Used****END OF SECTION**

**SECTION 01 7300****EXECUTION****PART 1 - GENERAL****1.1 SUMMARY**

- A. Section Includes But is Not Limited To:
1. Administrative and procedural requirements for governing Execution of the Work.

**1.2 COMMON INSTALLATION PROVISIONS**

- A. Manufacturer's Instructions: Comply with Manufacturer's installation instructions and recommendations to extent that those instructions and recommendations are more explicit or stringent than requirements contained in Contract Documents. Notify Architect of conflicts between Manufacturer's installation instructions and Contract Document requirements.
- B. Provide attachment and connection devices and methods necessary for securing Work. Secure work true to line and level. Anchor each product securely in place, accurately located, and aligned with other Work. Allow for expansion and building movement.
- C. Visual Effects: Provide uniform joint widths in exposed work. Arrange joints in exposed work to obtain best visual effect. Refer questionable choices to Architect for final decision.
- D. Install each component during weather conditions and Project status that will ensure best possible results. Isolate each part of completed construction from incompatible material as necessary to prevent deterioration.
- E. Coordinate temporary enclosures with required inspections and tests, to reduce necessity of uncovering completed construction for that purpose.
- F. Mounting Heights: Where mounting heights are not shown, install individual components at standard mounting heights recognized within the industry or local codes for that application. Refer questionable mounting height decisions to Architect for final decision.

**PART 2 - PRODUCTS Not Used****PART 3 - EXECUTION Not Used****END OF SECTION**

**SECTION 01 7400****CLEANING AND WASTE MANAGEMENT****1.1 SUMMARY**

- A. Includes But Not Limited To:
  - 1. Administrative and procedural requirements for Cleaning and Waste Management as described in Contract Documents.
- B. Related Requirements:
  - 1. Section 01 1200: Coordination of responsibilities for waste management.
  - 2. Section 01 6400: Waste removal of Owner furnished products.
  - 3. In addition to standards described in this section, comply with all requirements for cleaning-up as described in various other Sections of these Specifications.

**1.2 REFERENCES**

- A. Definitions:
  - 1. Asphalt Pavement, Brick, and Concrete (ABC) Rubble: Rubble that contains only weathered (cured) asphalt pavement, clay bricks and attached mortar normally used in construction, or concrete that may contain rebar. The rubble shall not be mixed with, or contaminated by, another waster or debris.
  - 2. Construction Waste: Building and site improvement materials and other solid waste resulting from construction, remodeling, renovation, or repair operations. Construction waste includes packaging.
  - 3. Demolition Waste: Building and site improvement materials resulting from demolition or selective demolition operations.
  - 4. Disposal: Removal off-site of demolition and construction waste and subsequent sale, recycling, reuse, or deposit in landfill or incinerator acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
  - 5. Recycle: Recovery of demolition or construction waste for subsequent processing in preparation for reuse.
  - 6. Salvage: Recovery of demolition or construction waste and subsequent sale or reuse in another facility.
  - 7. Salvage and Reuse: Recovery of demolition or construction waste and subsequent incorporation into the Work.

**PART 2 - PRODUCTS: Not Used****PART 3 - EXECUTION****3.1 PROGRESS CLEANING**

- A. Comply with regulations of authorities having jurisdiction and safety standards for cleaning.
- B. Keep premises broom clean during progress of the Work.
- C. Keep site and adjoining streets reasonably clean. If necessary, sprinkle rubbish and debris with water to suppress dust.
- D. During handling and installation, protect construction in progress and adjoining materials in place. Apply protective covering where required to ensure protection from soiling, damage, or deterioration until Substantial Completion.

- E. Clean and maintain completed construction as frequently as necessary throughout construction period. Adjust and lubricate operable components to ensure ability to operate without damaging effects.
- F. Supervise construction activities to ensure that no part of construction completed or in progress, is subject to harmful, dangerous, damaging, or otherwise deleterious exposure during construction period.
- G. Before and during application of painting materials, clear area where such work is in progress of debris, rubbish, and building materials that may cause dust. Sweep floors and vacuum as required and take all possible steps to keep area dust free.
- H. Clean exposed surfaces and protect as necessary to avoid damage and deterioration.
- I. Place extra materials of value remaining after completion of associated work have become Owner's property as directed by Owner or Architect.
- J. Construction Waste Management And Disposal:
  - 1. Remove waste materials and rubbish caused by employees, Subcontractors, and contractors under separate contract with Owner and dispose of legally. Remove unsuitable or damaged materials and debris from building and from property.
    - a. Provide adequate waste receptacles and dispose of materials when full.
    - b. Properly store volatile waste and remove daily.
    - c. Do not deposit waste into storm drains, sanitary sewers, streams, or waterways. Do not discharge volatile, harmful, or dangerous materials into drainage systems.
  - 2. Do not burn waste materials or build fires on site. Do not bury debris or excess materials on Owner's property.

### 3.2 FINAL CLEANING

- A. Immediately before Substantial Completion, thoroughly clean building and area where The Work was performed. Remove all rubbish from under and about building, landscaped areas and parking lot and leave building and Project Site ready for occupancy by Owner.
- B. Comply with individual manufacturer's cleaning instructions.
- C. Clean each surface or unit to condition expected in normal, commercial building cleaning and maintenance program, including but not limited to:
  - 1. Interior Cleaning:
    - a. Clean inside glazing, exercising care not to scratch glass.
    - b. Remove marks, stains, fingerprints and dirt.
    - c. Clean and polish woodwork and finish hardware.
    - d. Remove labels that are not permanent labels.
    - e. Clean plumbing fixtures and tile work. Remove spots, soil or paint.
    - f. Clean surfaces of mechanical and electrical equipment. Remove excess lubrication and other substances. Clean light fixtures and lamps.
    - g. Clean other fixtures and equipment and remove stains, paint, dirt, and dust.
    - h. Remove temporary floor protection and clean floors.
  - 2. Exterior Cleaning:
    - a. Clean outside glazing, exercising care not to scratch glass.
    - b. Remove marks, stains, and dirt from exterior surfaces.
    - c. Clean and polish finish hardware.
    - d. Remove temporary protection systems.
    - e. Clean dirt, mud, and other foreign material from paving, sidewalks, and gutters.
    - f. Clean drop inlets, through-curb drains, and other drainage structures.
    - g. Remove trash, debris, and foreign material from landscaped areas.

**END OF SECTION**

**SECTION 01 7700****CLOSEOUT PROCEDURES****PART 1 - GENERAL****1.1 SUMMARY**

- A. Section Includes But is Not Limited To:
  - 1. Administrative and procedural requirements for Closeout Procedures.

**1.2 GENERAL**

- A. Closeout process consists of three specific project closeout inspections. Contractor shall plan sufficient time in construction schedule to allow for required inspections before expiration of Contract Time.
- B. Contractor shall conduct his own inspections of The Work and shall not request closeout inspections until The Work of the contract is reasonably complete and correction of obvious defects or omissions are complete or imminent.
- C. Date of Substantial Completion shall not occur until completion of construction work, unless agreed to by Architect and included on Certificate of Substantial Completion.

**1.3 PRELIMINARY CLOSEOUT REVIEW**

- A. When Architect, Owner and Contractor agree that project is ready for closeout, Pre-Substantial Inspection shall be scheduled. Preparation of floor substrate to receive carpeting and any work which could conceivably damage or stain carpet must be completed, as carpet installation will be scheduled immediately following this inspection.
- B. Prior to this inspection, completed test and evaluation reports for HVAC system and font, where one occurs, are to be provided to Project Manager, Architect, and applicable consultants.
- C. Architect and his appropriate consultants, together with Contractor and mechanical, plumbing, fire protection, and electrical sub-contractors shall conduct a space by space and exterior inspection to review materials and workmanship and to demonstrate that systems and equipment are operational.
  - 1. Punch list of items requiring completion and correction will be created.
  - 2. Time frame for completion of punch list items will be established, and date for Substantial Completion Inspection shall be set.

**1.4 SUBSTANTIAL COMPLETION INSPECTION**

- A. When Architect, Owner and Contractor agree that project is ready for Substantial Completion, an inspection is held. Punch list created at Pre-Substantial Inspection is to be substantially complete.
- B. Prior to this inspection, Contractor shall discontinue or change over and remove temporary facilities from the site, along with construction tools, mock-ups and similar elements.
- C. Architect, Owner and Contractor review completion of punch list items. When Owner and Architect confirm that Contractor has achieved Substantial Completion of The Work, Owner, Architect and Contractor will execute Certificate of Substantial Completion that contains:
  - 1. Date of Substantial Completion.
  - 2. Punch List Work not yet completed, including seasonal and long lead items.

3. Amount to be withheld for completion of Punch List Work.
  4. Time period for completion of Punch List Work.
  5. Amount of liquidated damages set forth in Supplementary Conditions to be assessed if Contractor fails to complete Punch List Work within time set forth in Certificate.
- D. Contractor shall present Closeout Submittals to Architect and place tools, spare parts, extra stock, and similar items required by Contract Documents in locations as directed by Facilities Manager.

### **1.5 FINAL ACCEPTANCE MEETING**

- A. When punch list items except for any seasonal items or long lead items which will not prohibit occupancy are completed, Final Acceptance Meeting is held.
- B. Owner, Architect and Contractor execute Owner's Project Closeout - Final Acceptance form, and verify:
1. All seasonal and long lead items not prohibiting occupancy, if any, are identified, with committed to completion date and amount to be withheld until completion.
  2. Owner's maintenance personnel have been instructed on all system operation and maintenance as required by the Contract Documents.
  3. Final cleaning requirements have been completed.
- C. If applicable, once any seasonal and long lead items are completed, Closeout Inspection is held where Owner and Architect verify that The Work has been satisfactorily completed, and Owner, Architect and Contractor execute Closeout portion of the Project Closeout - Final Acceptance form.
- D. When Owner and Architect confirm that The Work is satisfactorily completed, Architect will authorize final payment.

### **PART 2 - PRODUCTS Not Used**

### **PART 3 - EXECUTION Not Used**

**END OF SECTION**



**SECTION 01 7800****CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS****PART 1 - GENERAL****1.1 SUMMARY**

- A. Section Includes But is Not Limited To:
  - 1. Administrative and procedural requirements for Closeout Submittals.
- B. Related Requirements:
  - 1. Section 01 3300: 'Submittal Procedures' for administrative and procedural requirements for submittal procedures.

**1.2 ADMINISTRATIVE REQUIREMENTS**

- A. Project Record Documents:
  - 1. Do not use record documents for construction purposes:
    - a. Protect from deterioration and loss in secure, fire-resistive location.
    - b. Provide access to record documents for Architect's reference during normal working hours.
  - 2. Maintain clean, undamaged set of Drawings:
    - a. Mark set to show actual installation where installation varies from the Work as originally shown.
    - b. Give particular attention to concealed elements that would be difficult to measure and record at a later date.
    - c. Mark record sets with red erasable pencil. Use other colors to distinguish between variations in separate categories of the Work.
    - d. Mark new information that is important to Owner, but was not shown on Drawings.
    - e. Note related Change Order numbers where applicable.
- B. As Built Record Drawings:
  - 1. As required in agreement with the Owner:
    - a. Architect will provide two full-size sets of prints of the As Built Record Drawings to the Facilities Management Office, printed from the updated AutoCAD drawing files or updated Revit model files, as specified by Owner, that have been modified to show actual dimensions and location of equipment, material, utility lines, and other work as actually constructed, based upon information provided by Contractor. Architect will submit updated As Built Record Drawings in PDF (ISO32000 format) to Owner.
    - b. Architect will submit following:
      - 1) Updated AutoCAD as built record drawing files with associated plot style tables or Revit as built record model files, as specified by Owner.
      - 2) Revit Model O&M lifecycle requirements to be tracked by Facility Manager.

**1.3 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS**

- A. Operations And Maintenance Manual:
  - 1. General:
    - a. Include closeout submittal documentation as required by Contract Documentation.
    - b. Include workmanship bonds, final certifications, equipment check-out sheets, and similar documents.
    - c. Releases enabling Owner unrestricted use of The Work and access to services and utilities. Include occupancy permits, operating certificates, and similar releases.
    - d. Include Project photographs, damage or settlement survey, and similar record information required by Contract Documents.

- e. Submittal Format:
  - 1) Digital copies unless otherwise noted, required for each individual specification section that include 'Closeout Submittals'.
  - 2) Include only closeout submittals as defined in individual specification section as required in Contract Documents.
2. Project Manual:
  - a. Copy of complete Project Manual including Addenda, Modifications as defined in General Conditions, and other interpretations issued during construction:
    - 1) Mark these documents to show variations in actual Work performed in comparison with text of specifications and Modifications.
    - 2) Show substitutions, selection of options, and similar information, particularly on elements that are concealed or cannot otherwise be readily discerned later by direct observation.
3. Maintenance Contracts:
  - a. Digital format only.
4. Operations and Maintenance Data:
  - a. Digital format only:
    - 1) Cleaning instructions.
    - 2) Maintenance instructions.
    - 3) Operations instructions.
    - 4) Equipment list.
    - 5) Parts list.
5. Warranty Documentation:
  - a. Digital format of final, executed warranties.
6. Record Documentation:
  - a. Digital format only.
    - 1) Certifications.
    - 2) Color and pattern selections.
    - 3) Design Data.
    - 4) Geotechnical Evaluation Reports (soils reports).
    - 5) Manufacture Reports.
    - 6) Manufacturer's literature or cut sheets.
    - 7) Shop Drawings.
    - 8) Source Quality Control.
    - 9) Special Procedures.
    - 10) Testing and Inspection Agency Reports.
    - 11) Testing and Inspection Reports.
7. Software:
  - a. Audio and Video System software, programming and set-files.
8. Irrigation Plan.
  - a. Laminated and un-laminated reduced sized hard copies.
9. Landscape Management Plan (LMP):
  - a. Irrigation Section:
    - 1) Submittal Format: Digital format and hard copy of each.
    - 2) Documentation required by sections under 32 8000 Heading: 'Irrigation'.
  - b. Landscaping Section:
    - 1) Submittal Format: Digital format and hard copy of each.
    - 2) Documentation required by sections under 32 9000 Heading: 'Planting'.

B. Revit Model O&M Requirements:

1. Architect to include all information for each instance that occurs from below list within associated family in Revit model (ie. serial numbers, warranty information, manufacturer, etc):
  - a. Revit Model Items:

Item	Inventory Name	Categories
230	Elevator, Passenger	Building Equipment
277	Escalator	Building Equipment

231	Wheelchair Lift	Building Equipment
735	Internet Connection Equipment	Computer Equipment
535	Generator, Fixed	Electrical Distribution & Fixtures
1058	UPS System	Electrical Distribution & Fixtures
14	Floor, Carpet	Floors
213	Air Handler, With Coils	HVAC Distribution System
212	Air Handler, Without Coils	HVAC Distribution System
199	Boiler, Hot Water	HVAC Distribution System
200	Boiler, Steam	HVAC Distribution System
456	Boiler, Steam, Power Generating	HVAC Distribution System
215	Chiller, Water	HVAC Distribution System
641	Coils, Evaporator (A Coil)	HVAC Distribution System
214	Condensing Unit	HVAC Distribution System
217	Cooler, Evaporative (Swamp)	HVAC Distribution System
216	Cooling Tower	HVAC Distribution System
622	Dehumidifier System	HVAC Distribution System
209	Fan Coil Unit	HVAC Distribution System
202	Furnace, Duct	HVAC Distribution System
201	Furnace, Forced Air	HVAC Distribution System
208	Heat Pump	HVAC Distribution System
207	Heat Pump, Mini Split, Exterior	HVAC Distribution System
206	Heat Pump, Mini Split, Interior	HVAC Distribution System
205	Heat Pump, Room, Thru Wall	HVAC Distribution System
448	Heater, Radiant Tube	HVAC Distribution System
253	Heater, Wall Mounted, Gas	HVAC Distribution System
621	Humidifier System	HVAC Distribution System
204	HVAC Package Unit (Roof Top)	HVAC Distribution System
1056	Outside Air Tempering Unit	HVAC Distribution System
295	Chemical, Treatment & Filtration System	HVAC Distribution System
1050	Cooling Tower Water Filter	HVAC Distribution System
501	Tank, Motor Fuel, Underground	HVAC Distribution System
497	Tank, Water Storage	HVAC Distribution System
73	Organ Pipe	Musical Instruments
962	Heater, Unit Steam/Hot Water	Plumbing Distribution & Fixtures
988	Water Filter System, Water Main	Plumbing Distribution & Fixtures
779	Backflow Preventer	Plumbing Distribution & Fixtures
138	Tank, Fuel Storage, Above Ground	Plumbing Distribution & Fixtures
137	Tank, Fuel Storage, Underground	Plumbing Distribution & Fixtures
502	Tank, Motor Fuel, Above Ground	Plumbing Distribution & Fixtures
620	Water Cistern and Associated Filtration	Plumbing Distribution & Fixtures
136	Water Well System	Plumbing Distribution & Fixtures
151	Roofing, Asphalt Shingles	Roofing
152-A	Roofing, Metal Shingles: Stone Coated	Roofing
152-B	Roofing, Metal Shingles: Aluminum	Roofing
152-C	Roofing, Metal Shingles: Copper	Roofing
154	Roofing, Concrete Roof Tiles	Roofing
155	Roofing, Standing Seam Sheet Metal	Roofing
156	Roofing, Built Up Asphalt or Bitumen Membrane	Roofing
157-A	Roofing, Single Ply Membrane (EPDM)	Roofing
157-B	Roofing, Single Ply Membrane (PVC)	Roofing
157-C	Roofing, Single Ply Membrane (TPO)	Roofing
158	Roofing, Vegetated Protected Membrane	Roofing
281	Satellite Receiver (IRD)	Sound, Satellite, Security, & Fire Systems
717	Glycol System	Sound, Satellite, Security, & Fire Systems

676 Fire Alarm System, Active

Sound, Satellite, Security, &amp; Fire Systems

1033 Sign, Exit Illuminated Tritium (nuclear)

Sound, Satellite, Security, &amp; Fire Systems

**1.4 MAINTENANCE MATERIAL SUBMITTALS**

- A. Submit item(s) required by Section 01 3300 'Submittal Procedures' and as defined in individual specification section if required in Contract Documents. Items may be provided at completion of Work or with Closeout Submittals.

**1.5 WARRANTIES**

- A. When written guarantees beyond one (1) year after substantial completion are required by Contract Documents, secure such guarantees and warranties properly addressed and signed in favor of Owner. Include these documents in Operations & Maintenance Manual(s) specified above.
- B. Delivery of guarantees and warranties will not relieve Contractor from obligations assumed under other provisions of Contract Documents.

**PART 2 - PRODUCTS Not Used****PART 3 - EXECUTION Not Used****END OF SECTION**

**SECTION 03 1113****STRUCTURAL CAST-IN-PLACE CONCRETE FORMING****PART 1 - GENERAL****1.1 SUMMARY**

- A. Includes But Not Limited To:
  - 1. Design, construction, and safety of formwork.
  - 2. Furnish and install required formwork ready for placing of concrete.
  - 3. Strip and dispose of formwork.
- B. Related Requirements:
  - 1. Section 03 3111: 'Cast-In-Place Structural Concrete' for:
    - a. Tolerances for placing structural concrete.
    - b. Pre-installation conference held jointly with other concrete related sections.

**1.2 REFERENCES**

- A. Reference Standards:
  - 1. American Concrete Institute:
    - a. ACI 318-14, 'Building Code Requirements for Structural Concrete and Commentary'.

**1.3 ADMINISTRATIVE REQUIREMENTS**

- A. Pre-Installation Conference:
  - 1. Participate in pre-installation conference as specified in Section 03 3111.
  - 2. In addition to agenda items specified in Section 01 3100 and 31 3111, review following:
    - a. Review Section 01 4523 for Testing and Inspection administrative requirements and responsibilities and Field Quality Control tests and inspections required of this section.
      - 1) Review requirements and frequency of testing and inspections.
- B. Scheduling:
  - 1. Notify Testing Agency and Architect as directed in Section 03 3111.

**1.4 SUBMITTALS**

- A. Informational Submittals:
  - 1. Manufacturer Instructions:
    - a. Printed application instructions for form release agents.

**PART 2 - PRODUCTS****2.1 COMPONENTS**

- A. Forms: Wood, metal, or plastic as arranged by Contractor:
  - 1. Forming material shall be compatible with specified form release agents and with finish requirements for concrete to be left exposed or to receive a smooth rubbed finish.

## 2.2 ACCESSORIES

- A. Form Release Agents:
  - 1. Unexposed Surfaces Only: Contractor's option.
- B. Expansion / Contraction Joints:
  - 1. 1/2 inch thick.
  - 2. Manufactured commercial fiber type:
    - a. Meet requirements of ASTM D1751.
    - b. Type Two Acceptable Products:
      - 1) Conflex by Knight-Celotex, Northfield, IL [www.aknightcompany.com](http://www.aknightcompany.com).
      - 2) Sealtight by W R Meadows Inc, Hampshire, IL [www.wrmeadows.com](http://www.wrmeadows.com).
      - 3) Equal as approved by Architect before installation. See Section 01 6200.
  - 3. Recycled Vinyl:
    - a. Light gray color.
    - b. Type Two Acceptable Products:
      - 1) Proflex by Oscoda Plastics Inc, Oscoda, MI [www.oscodaplastics.com](http://www.oscodaplastics.com).
      - 2) Equal as approved by Architect before Installation. See Section 01 6200.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 INSTALLATION

- A. Forms:
  - 1. Assemble forms so forms are sufficiently tight to prevent leakage.
  - 2. Properly brace and tie forms.
  - 3. Make proper form adjustments before, during, and after concreting.
  - 4. Use new forms, or used forms that have been cleaned of loose concrete and other debris from previous concreting and repaired to proper condition. Use APA Plyform B-B Class I, or APA HDO Plyform B-B Class I, on exposed to view concrete that do not receive a smooth rubbed finish.
- B. Accessories:
  - 1. General:
    - a. Provide for installation of inserts, templates, fastening devices, sleeves, and other accessories to be set in concrete before placing.
    - b. Position anchor bolts for hold-down anchors and columns and securely tie in place before placing concrete.
  - 2. Form Release / Finish Agents:
    - a. Film thickness shall be no thicker than as recommended by Manufacturer.
    - b. Allow no release / finish agent on reinforcing steel or footings.
  - 3. Expansion Joints:
    - a. Install at joints between floor slab and foundation wall where shown on Drawings.
- C. Form Removal (Slab on Grade):
  - 1. Removal of forms can usually be accomplished in twelve (12) to twenty-four (24) hours.
  - 2. If temperature is below 50 deg F or if concrete (stairs, beams, etc) depends on forms for structural support, leave forms intact for sufficient period for concrete to reach adequate strength.
  - 3. For exposed to view surfaces that receive a smooth rubbed finish, remove forms while concrete is still "green".
  - 4. Metal bars or prys should not be used. Use wood wedges, tapping gradually when necessary.

### 3.2 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Field Tests and Inspections:
  - 1. Concrete Formwork:
    - a. Inspections are not required and will be performed at discretion of Architect.

**END OF SECTION**

**SECTION 03 1511****CONCRETE ANCHORS****PART 1 - GENERAL****1.1 SUMMARY**

- A. Products Furnished But Not Installed Under This Section:
  - 1. Cast-in place and post-installed concrete anchors including:
    - a. Adhesive anchors for concrete.
    - b. Expansion anchors for concrete.
    - c. Screw anchors for concrete.
    - d. Concrete anchors and inserts not specified elsewhere.
  - 2. Installer responsible when inspection results of concrete anchors require corrective actions.
- B. Related Requirements:
  - 1. Section 01 1200: 'Multiple Contract Summary' for Owner Furnished Testing and Inspecting Services.
  - 2. Section 01 4523: 'Testing and Inspecting Services' for testing and inspection, and testing laboratory services for materials, products, and construction methods.
  - 3. Section 03 3111: 'Cast-In-Place Structural Concrete' for installation and inspection of cast-in-place anchors.
  - 4. Section 06 1100: 'Wood Framing' for installation of drilled in anchors.

**1.2 REFERENCES**

- A. Reference Standards:
  - 1. American Concrete Institute:
    - a. ACI 355.4-11, 'Qualification of Post-Installed Adhesive Anchors in Concrete and Commentary'.
    - b. ACI 548.12-12, 'Specification for Bonding Hardened Concrete and Steel to Hardened Concrete with an Epoxy Adhesive'.
  - 2. American National Standards Institute / American Welding Society (Following are specifically referenced for Structural Steel testing):
    - a. ANSI/AWS D1.1/D1.1M:2015, 'Structural Welding Code - Steel'.
  - 3. ASTM International:
    - a. ASTM A307-14, 'Standard Specification for Carbon Steel Bolts and Studs, 60 000 psi Tensile Strength'.
    - b. ASTM A563-15, 'Standard Specification for Carbon and Alloy Steel Nuts'.
    - c. ASTM A706/A706M-16, 'Standard Specification for Low-Alloy Steel Deformed and Plain Bars for Concrete Reinforcement'.
    - d. ASTM F1554-18, 'Standard Specification for Anchor Bolts, Steel, 36, 55, and 105-ksi Yield Strength'.
    - e. ASTM F3125/F3125-15a, 'Standard Specification for High Strength Structural Bolts, Steel and Alloy Steel, Heat Treated, 120 ksi (830 MPa) and 150 ksi (1040 MPa) Minimum Tensile Strength, Inch and Metric Dimensions'.
  - 4. International Code Council (IBC) (2018 or most recent edition adopted by AHJ):
    - a. IBC Chapter 17, 'Structural Tests and Special Inspections'.

**1.3 ADMINISTRATIVE REQUIREMENTS**

- A. Scheduling:
  - 1. Inspection shall be performed according IBC requirements.



2. Notify Testing Agency and Architect one week before installing anchors so inspection may be scheduled.

#### 1.4 SUBMITTALS

- A. Action Submittals:
  1. Product Data:
    - a. Manufacturer's product literature for each item.
- B. Informational Submittals:
  1. Certificates:
    - a. Adhesive Anchors:
      - 1) Installer to provide current ACI/CRSI certification to Architect prior to installation of anchors.
  2. Test And Evaluation Reports:
    - a. Provide ESR for products used indicating conformance with current applicable ESR Acceptance Criteria.
  3. Manufacturer's Instructions:
    - a. Manufacturer's published installation recommendations for each item.
  4. Qualification Statements:
    - a. All concrete anchors except Adhesive Anchors:
      - 1) Installer to provide record of installer installation training showing dates and those trained for all installed products when required when by Architect.
- C. Closeout Submittals:
  1. Include following in Operations And Maintenance Manual specified in Section 01 7800:
    - a. Record Documentation:
      - 1) Testing and Inspection Reports:
        - a) Testing Agency inspection reports of all inspected anchors.

#### 1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Qualifications:
  1. Manufacturer:
    - a. Having sufficient capacity to produce and deliver required materials without causing delay in work.
  2. Installer:
    - a. Acceptable to Manufacturer, experienced in performing work of this section and has specialized in installation of work similar to that required for this project.
    - b. Adhesive Anchors:
      - 1) Adhesive Anchors installed in horizontal to vertical overhead orientation to support sustained tension loads shall be installed by Certified Adhesive Anchor Installer (AAI) as certified through ACI/CRSI:
        - a) Refer to most current version of ACI 318 for certification requirements.
        - b) Proof of current certification shall be submitted to the Architect for approval prior to commencement of installation.
    - c. All other Concrete Anchors:
      - 1) Arrange for manufacturer's field representative to provide installation training for all products to be used, prior to commencement of work:
        - a) Provide installation training when required by Architect.
- B. Field Inspection:
  1. Owner is responsible for Quality Assurance. Quality assurance performed by Owner will be used to validate Quality Control performed by Contractor.
  2. Owner will provide Inspection for post-installed concrete anchors:

- a. Owner will employ testing agency to perform inspection for post-installed concrete anchors as specified in Field Quality Control in Part 3 of this specification:
  - 1) Owner's employment of an independent Testing Agency does not relieve Contractor of Contractor's obligation to perform the Work in strict accordance with requirements of Contract Documents and perform contractor testing and inspection.
  - 2) See Section 01 1200: 'Multiple Contract Summary'.

## 1.6 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

### A. Delivery And Acceptance Requirements:

1. Materials shall be delivered in original, unopened packages with labels intact.

### B. Storage And Handling Requirements:

1. Store materials protected from exposure to harmful weather conditions and as directed by Manufacturer.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 MATERIALS

#### A. Concrete Anchors:

1. General:
  - a. Use hot-dipped galvanized or stainless steel with matching nuts and washers in exterior and moist interior applications unless indicated otherwise on Contract Drawings.
  - b. Install hot-dipped or stainless-steel anchor bolts to attach wood sill plates to foundation with 1/4 inch by 3-inch x 3-inch minimum adjustable plate washers and standard cut washers between wood sill plates and nuts.
  - c. Nut: Conform to requirements of ASTM A563, Grade A, Hex.
  - d. Conform to requirements of ASTM F3125/F3125 for chemical, physical and mechanical requirements for quenched and tempered bolts manufactured from steel and alloy steel.
2. Threaded rod for adhesive anchors and cast-in anchors:
  - a. Conform to requirements of ASTM A307, Grade A or ASTM F1554 Grade 36 unless indicated otherwise on Contract Drawings.
3. Cast-In-Place Anchor Bolts:
  - a. J-Bolts:
    - 1) Non-headed type threaded 2 inches minimum conforming to requirements of ASTM F1554, Grade A.
    - 2) Anchor hook to project 2 inches minimum including bolt diameter.
  - b. Headed Bolts:
    - 1) Headed type threaded 2 inches minimum conforming to requirements of ASTM F1554, Grade A.
4. Reinforcing Bars:
  - a. Composed of deformed carbon steel meeting requirements of ASTM A615/A615M, Grade 60.
5. Adhesive Anchors:
  - a. Products shall have current ESR conforming to current ICC Acceptance Criteria AC308 for concrete.
  - b. Rod diameter and embedment length as indicated on Contract Drawings.
  - c. Type Two Acceptable Products:
    - 1) HIT-RE 500V3 with SafeSet Epoxy Adhesive by Hilti Fastening Systems, Tulsa, OK [www.us.hilti.com](http://www.us.hilti.com).
    - 2) Pure 110+ by Powers Fasteners Inc., Brewster NY [www.powers.com](http://www.powers.com).
    - 3) SET-XP Epoxy by Simpson Strong-Tie Co., Pleasanton, CA [www.simpsonanchors.com](http://www.simpsonanchors.com).
    - 4) Equal as approved by Architect before installation. See Section 01 6200.

6. Expansion Anchors:
  - a. Products shall have current ESR conforming to current ICC Acceptance Criteria AC193 for concrete.
  - b. Type Two Acceptable Products:
    - 1) KWIK Bolt TZ Expansion Anchor by Hilti Fastening Systems, Tulsa, OK [www.us.hilti.com](http://www.us.hilti.com).
    - 2) Power-Stud +SD2 by Powers Fasteners Inc., Brewster NY [www.powers.com](http://www.powers.com).
    - 3) Strong-Bolt by Simpson Strong-Tie Co., Pleasanton, CA [www.simpsonanchors.com](http://www.simpsonanchors.com).
    - 4) Equal as approved by Architect before installation. See Section 01 6200.
7. Screw Anchors:
  - a. Provide anchors with length identification markings conforming to ICC Acceptance Criteria AC 193 for concrete.
  - b. Type Two Acceptable Products:
    - 1) KWIK HUS-EZ by Hilti Fastening Systems, Tulsa, OK [www.us.hilti.com](http://www.us.hilti.com).
    - 2) Wedge-Bolt+ by Powers Fasteners Inc., Brewster NY [www.powers.com](http://www.powers.com).
    - 3) Titen HD by Simpson Strong Tie Co, Pleasanton, CA [www.simpsonanchors.com](http://www.simpsonanchors.com).
    - 4) Equals as approved by Architect through shop drawing submittal before installation. See Section 01 6200.

## **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

### **3.1 EXAMINATION**

- A. Verification Of Conditions:
  1. Embedded Items:
    - a. Identify position of reinforcing steel and other embedded items before drilling holes for anchors:
      - 1) Exercise care in coring or drilling to avoid damaging existing reinforcing or embedded items.
      - 2) Take precautions as necessary to avoid damaging pre-stressing tendons, electrical and telecommunications conduit, and gas lines.
    - b. Notify Engineer if reinforcing steel or other embedded items are encountered during drilling.
  2. Base Material Strength:
    - a. Unless otherwise specified, do not drill holes in concrete until:
      - 1) Concrete has minimum age of 21 days at time of anchor installation.
      - 2) Concrete has achieved full design strength for load achievement.

### **3.2 PREPARATION**

- A. Surface Preparation:
  1. Clean surfaces prior to installation.
  2. Prepare surface in accordance with Manufacturer's written recommendations.

### **3.3 INSTALLATION**

- A. Post-Installed Anchors:
  1. General:
    - a. Drill holes with rotary impact hammer drills using carbide-tipped bits.
    - b. Unless otherwise shown on Drawings, drill holes perpendicular to concrete surface.
    - c. Perform anchor installation in accordance with Manufacturer's published instructions.
  2. Adhesive Anchors:
    - a. Clean holes in accordance with Manufacturer's published instructions before installation of adhesive:

- 1) Follow Manufacturer's recommendations to ensure proper mixing of adhesive components.
- b. Adhesive:
  - 1) Inject adhesive into holes proceeding from bottom of hole and progressing toward surface so as to avoid introduction of air pockets into adhesive.
  - 2) Inject sufficient adhesive into hole to ensure that annular gap is filled to surface.
  - 3) Remove excess adhesive from surface and threads of anchor as necessary.
- c. Shim anchors with suitable device to center anchor in hole. Do not disturb or load anchors before Manufacturer's specified cure time has elapsed.
- d. Temperature:
  - 1) Observe Manufacturer's recommendations with respect to installation temperatures for adhesive anchors.
  - 2) Base material temperatures must be maintained above minimum temperatures allowed by Manufacturer for full required epoxy cure time.
3. Expansion Anchors:
  - a. Protect threads from damage during anchor installation and prior to use.
  - b. Set anchors to Manufacturer's recommended torque, using a torque wrench. Following attainment of ten (10) percent of specified torque, one hundred (100) percent of specified torque shall be reached within 7 or fewer complete turns of nut. If specified torque is not achieved within required number of turns, remove and replace anchor, unless otherwise directed by Architect.
4. Screw Anchors:
  - a. Protect threads from damage during anchor installation and prior to use.
  - b. Set anchor flush, collared.
  - c. Do not exceed Manufacturer's maximum allowed torque when seating anchor.

### 3.4 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Field And Inspections:
1. Civil and structural field inspections are provided by Owner's independent Testing Agency as specified in Section 01 4523 'Testing and Inspection Services':
    - a. Quality Control is sole responsibility of Contractor.
      - 1) Owner's employment of an independent Testing Agency does not relieve Contractor of Contractor's obligation to perform testing and inspection as part of his Quality Control:
        - a) Testing and inspections, if performed by Contractor, will be responsibility of Contractor to be performed by an independent entity.
  2. Expansion Anchors / Adhesive Anchors / Screw Anchors:
    - a. Certified Inspector from Testing Agency shall verify procedures used for installation of all concrete anchors and monitor their installation for compliance with Manufacturer's requirements.
    - b. Inspections:
      - 1) Inspections shall include required verification and inspection of anchors as referenced in IBC Table 1704.4 and in accordance with most current version of ACI 318 or ACI 318M and applicable ASTM material standards that:
        - a) The correct rod/anchor is used; size and type.
        - b) The correct hole size is used and prepared per Manufacturer's instructions.
        - c) That climactic conditions, and concrete temperature, allow for the anchors' installation and use.
        - d) Proper hole cleaning equipment, per Manufacturer's instructions, is used.
        - e) Torque applied to anchors does not exceed Manufacturer's allowable limits.
        - f) Torque applied to anchors is per Manufacturer's instructions.
- B. Non-Conforming Work:
1. Contractor is to immediately notify Architect of incorrectly placed, misplaced or malfunctioning anchors and request instructions for corrective actions.

**3.5 CLEANING**

- A. Waste Management:
  - 1. Disposal of rubbish, debris, and packaging materials.

**3.6 PROTECTION**

- A. General:
  - 1. Protect installed products from damage during construction.

**END OF SECTION**

**SECTION 03 2100****REINFORCEMENT BARS****PART 1 - GENERAL****1.1 SUMMARY**

- A. Includes But Not Limited To:
  - 1. Furnish and install concrete reinforcement bars as described in Contract Documents.
- B. Related Requirements:
  - 1. Section 01 1200: 'Multiple Contract Summary' for Owner Furnished Testing and Inspecting Services.
  - 2. Section 01 4523: 'Testing and Inspecting Services' for testing and inspection, and testing laboratory services for materials, products, and construction methods.
  - 3. Section 03 1113: 'Structural Cast-In-Place Concrete Forming'.
  - 4. Section 03 2116: 'Epoxy-Coated Reinforcement Bars'.
  - 5. Section 03 3111: 'Cast-In-Place Structural Concrete' for:
    - a. Reinforcement installed in concrete.
    - b. Pre-installation conference held jointly with other concrete related sections.

**1.2 REFERENCES**

- A. Association Publications:
  - 1. American Concrete Institute:
    - a. ACI 'Detailing Manual' (2004 Edition).
  - 2. Concrete Reinforcing Steel Institute (CRSI):
    - a. CRSI, 'Manual of Standard Practice' (2009 28th Edition).
- B. Reference Standards:
  - 1. American Concrete Institute:
    - a. ACI 117-10: 'Specifications for Tolerances for Concrete Construction and Materials and Commentary' (Reapproved 2015).
    - b. ACI 318-14, 'Building Code Requirements for Structural Concrete and Commentary'.
  - 2. ASTM International (Following are specifically referenced for reinforcement bars testing):
    - a. ASTM A615/A615M-18, 'Standard Specification for Deformed and Plain Carbon-Steel Bars for Concrete Reinforcement'.

**1.3 ADMINISTRATIVE REQUIREMENTS**

- A. Pre-Installation Conferences:
  - 1. Participate in pre-installation conference as specified in Section 03 3111.
  - 2. In addition to agenda items specified in Section 01 3100, and Section 03 3111, review following:
    - a. Installation scheduling and reinforcing placement.
    - b. Review Section 01 4523 for Testing and Inspection administrative requirements and responsibilities and Field Quality Control tests and inspections required of this section.
      - 1) Review requirements and frequency of testing and inspections.
- B. Scheduling:
  - 1. Notify Testing Agency and Architect as directed in Section 03 3053 and Section 03 3111.

## 1.4 SUBMITTALS

- A. Action Submittals:
  - 1. Shop Drawings:
    - a. Reinforcing placement drawings.
- B. Informational Submittals:
  - 1. Certificates:
    - a. Mill certificates for mill tests for reinforcing in accordance with ASTM A615/A615M.
- C. Closeout Submittals:
  - 1. Include following in Operations And Maintenance Manual specified in Section 01 7800:
    - a. Record Documentation:
      - 1) Testing and Inspection Reports:
        - a) Testing Agency Inspection Reports of reinforcement bars.

## 1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Regulatory Agency Sustainability Approvals:
  - 1. Comply with provisions of following codes and standards except where more stringent requirements are shown or specified:
    - a. American Concrete Institute:
      - 1) ACI 318, 'Building Code Requirements for Structural Concrete and Commentary'.
    - b. Concrete Reinforcing Steel Institute:
      - 1) CRSI, 'Manual of Standard Practice'.
- B. Qualifications:
  - 1. Throughout progress of the work of this section, provide at least one (1) person who shall be thoroughly familiar with Construction Documents and other applicable specified requirements, completely trained and experienced in necessary skills, and who shall be present at site and shall direct all work performed under this Section:
    - a. In actual installation of the work of this Section, use adequate numbers of skilled workmen to ensure installation in strict accordance with approved design.
    - b. In acceptance or rejection of work performed under this Section, no allowance will be made for lack of skill on part of workmen.
- C. Testing And Inspection:
  - 1. Owner is responsible for Quality Assurance. Quality assurance performed by Owner will be used to validate Quality Control performed by Contractor.
  - 2. Owner will provide Testing and Inspection for inspection of reinforcement bars:
    - a. Owner will employ testing agencies to perform testing and inspection for inspection of reinforcement bars as specified in Field Quality Control in Part 3 of this specification:
      - 1) Owner's employment of an independent Testing Agency does not relieve Contractor of Contractor's obligation to perform the Work in strict accordance with requirements of Contract Documents and perform contractor testing and inspection.
      - 2) See Section 01 1200: 'Multiple Contract Summary'.

## 1.6 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Delivery And Acceptance Requirements:
  - 1. Deliver bars separated by size and tagged with manufacturer's heat or test identification number.
  - 2. Reinforcement bars shall be free of heavy rust scales and flakes, or other coating at time of delivery and placing.
- B. Storage And Handling Requirements:
  - 1. Properly protect rebar on site after delivery.

## **PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

### **2.1 MATERIAL**

- A. Reinforcement Bars:
  - 1. Bars shall have grade identification marks and conform to ASTM A615/A615M:
    - a. Grade 60 minimum, except dowels that are to be field bent, Grade 40 minimum.
  - 2. Bars shall be deformed type.
  - 3. Bars shall be free of heavy rust scales and flakes, or other bond-reducing coatings.

### **2.2 ACCESSORIES**

- A. Bar Supports:
  - 1. Concrete masonry units or bricks are not acceptable.
  - 2. For exposed-to-view concrete surfaces, where legs of supports are in contact with forms, provide supports with legs which are plastic protected (CRSI, Class 1) or stainless steel protected (CSRI, Class 2).
  - 3. Type Two Acceptable Products:
    - a. Concrete 'dobies' or blocks wired to reinforcing.
    - b. Manufactured chairs with 4 sq inch bearing surface on sub-grade, or other feature to prevent chair from being pushed into sub-grade or damaging vapor retarder under slabs on grade.
    - c. Equals as approved by Architect before installation. See Section 01 6200.

### **2.3 FABRICATION**

- A. Fabricate reinforcement bars according to the Concrete Reinforcing Steel Institute (CRSI) 'Manual of Standard Practice' and details on Contract Documents.

## **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

### **3.1 INSTALLATION**

- A. General:
  - 1. Avoid cutting or puncturing vapor retarder during reinforcement placement and concrete operations.
  - 2. Clean reinforcement of loose rust and mill scale, earth, ice, and other materials which reduce or destroy bond with concrete.
  - 3. Blowtorch shall not be used to facilitate field cutting or bending or any other reinforcing work.
  - 4. Reinforcement shall not be bent after partially embedded in hardened concrete.
- B. Placing Reinforcement:
  - 1. Comply with Concrete Reinforcing Steel Institute CRSI 'Manual of Standard Practice' recommended practice for 'Placing Reinforcing Bars' for details and methods of reinforcement placement and supports. and as herein specified.
  - 2. Accurately position, support, and secure reinforcement against displacement by formwork, construction, or concrete placement operations:
    - a. Locate and support reinforcing by chairs, runners, bolsters, bar supports, spacers, or hangers, as required as recommended by 'ACI Detailing Manual, except slab on grade work.
    - b. Support bars in slabs on grade and footings with specified bar supports around perimeter and at 4-1/2 feet on center each way maximum to maintain specified concrete cover.
    - c. Install bar supports at bar intersections.
  - 3. Bend bars cold.
  - 4. Dowel vertical reinforcement for formed concrete columns or walls out of footing or structure below with rebar of same size and spacing required above.



5. Securely anchor and tie reinforcement bars and dowels before placing concrete. Set wire ties with ends directed into concrete, not toward exposed concrete surfaces.
- C. Splices:
1. Non-Concrete Structural System:
    - a. Avoid splices of reinforcement bars at points of maximum stress. Lap bars 60 bar diameters minimum unless dimensioned otherwise on Drawings. Run reinforcement bars continuous through cold joints.
  2. Concrete Structural System:
    - a. In beams, slabs, and walls, avoid splices of reinforcement bars at points of maximum stress.
    - b. Lap bars as follows:
      - 1) Compression Splices: 45 bar diameters minimum.
      - 2) Tension Splices: In accordance with ACI 318 Class B requirements.
      - 3) No splice shall be less than 20 inches.
      - 4) For epoxy coated rebar, increase lap-splice lengths by 1.5 times those listed above.
    - c. In columns, splices in vertical bars are permitted only at floor levels or points of lateral support and shall consist of 45 bar diameter laps.
    - d. Run reinforcement bars continuous through cold joints.
- D. Tolerances:
1. Provide following minimum concrete cover for reinforcement as per ACI 318 or ACI 318M. Arrange, space and securely tie bars and bar supports to hold reinforcement in position during concrete placement operations:
    - a. Concrete cast against and permanently exposed to earth:
      - 1) Interior Slabs on Grade: 1 inch clear from top of slab at 4 inch slabs, 2 inches clear at 6 inch slabs.
      - 2) Sections other than Slabs: 3 inches.
    - b. Concrete Exposed to Earth or Weather:
      - 1) No. 6 and Larger Bars: 2 inches.
      - 2) No. 5 and Smaller Bars, W31 and D31 Wire: 1-1/2 inches.
    - c. Concrete not exposed to weather or in contact with ground:
      - 1) Slabs, walls, and joists:
        - a) No. 14 and No. 18 bars: 1-1/2 inches.
        - b) No. 11 bars and smaller: 3/4 inches.
      - 2) Beams and Columns:
        - a) Primary reinforcement, ties, stirrups and spirals: 1-1/2 inches.
      - 3) Shells, folded plate members:
        - a) No. 6 bars and larger: 3/4 inch.
        - b) No. 5 bar, W31 or D31 wire, and smaller: 1/2 inch.

### 3.2 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Field Tests and Inspections:
1. Civil and structural field tests, laboratory testing, and inspections are provided by Owner's independent Testing Agency as specified in Section 01 4523 'Testing And Inspection Services':
    - a. Quality Control is sole responsibility of Contractor.
      - 1) Owner's employment of an independent Testing Agency does not relieve Contractor of Contractor's obligation to perform testing and inspection as part of his Quality Control:
        - a) Testing and inspections, if performed by Contractor, will be responsibility of Contractor to be performed by an independent entity.
  2. Reinforcement Bars:
    - a. Testing Agency shall provide inspection for Reinforcement Bars. See Section 03 3111 for Testing and Inspection requirements.

**END OF SECTION**

**SECTION 03 2116****EPOXY - COATED REINFORCEMENT STEEL BARS****PART 1 - GENERAL****1.1 SUMMARY**

- A. Includes But Not Limited To:
  - 1. Furnish and install epoxy coated reinforcement steel bars as described in Contract Documents.
- B. Related Requirements:
  - 1. Section 01 1200: 'Multiple Contract Summary' for Owner Furnished Testing and Inspecting Services.
  - 2. Section 01 4523: 'Testing and Inspecting Services' for testing and inspection, and testing laboratory services for materials, products, and construction methods.
  - 3. Section 03 1113: 'Structural Cast-In-Place Concrete Forming'.
  - 4. Section 03 2100: 'Reinforcement Bars'.
  - 5. Section 03 3111: 'Cast-In-Place Structural Concrete' for:
    - a. Reinforcement installed in concrete.
    - b. Pre-installation conference held jointly with other concrete related sections.

**1.2 REFERENCES**

- A. Association Publications:
  - 1. American Concrete Institute:
    - a. ACI 'Detailing Manual' (2004 Edition).
  - 2. Concrete Reinforcing Steel Institute (CRSI):
    - a. CRSI, 'Manual of Standard Practice' (2009 28th Edition).
- B. Reference Standards:
  - 1. American Concrete Institute:
    - a. ACI 117-10: 'Specifications for Tolerances for Concrete Construction and Materials and Commentary' (Reapproved 2015).
    - b. ACI 318-14, 'Building Code Requirements for Structural Concrete and Commentary'.
  - 2. ASTM International (Following are specifically referenced for reinforcement bars testing):
    - a. ASTM A615/A615M-18, 'Standard Specification for Deformed and Plain Carbon-Steel Bars for Concrete Reinforcement'.
    - b. ASTM A775/A775M-17, 'Standard Specification for Epoxy-Coated Reinforcing Bars'.

**1.3 ADMINISTRATIVE REQUIREMENTS**

- A. Pre-Installation Conferences:
  - 1. Participate in pre-installation conference as specified in Section 03 3111.
  - 2. In addition to agenda items specified in Section 01 3100, and Section 03 3111, review following:
    - a. Installation scheduling and reinforcing placement.
    - b. Review Section 01 4523 for Testing and Inspection administrative requirements and responsibilities and Field Quality Control tests and inspections required of this section.
      - 1) Review requirements and frequency of testing and inspections.
- B. Scheduling:
  - 1. Notify Testing Agency and Architect as directed in Section 03 3111.

## 1.4 SUBMITTALS

- A. Action Submittals:
  - 1. Shop Drawings:
    - a. Reinforcing placement drawings.
- B. Informational Submittals:
  - 1. Certificates:
    - a. Mill certificates certifying mill tests for reinforcing in accordance with ASTM A775/A775M.
      - 1) Mill test is to be approved before fabrication begins.
- C. Closeout Submittals:
  - 1. Include following in Operations And Maintenance Manual specified in Section 01 7800:
    - a. Record Documentation:
      - 1) Testing and Inspection Reports:
        - a) Testing Agency Inspection Reports of reinforcement bars.

## 1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Regulatory Agency Sustainability Approvals:
  - 1. Comply with provisions of following codes and standards except where more stringent requirements are shown or specified:
    - a. American Concrete Institute:
      - 1) ACI 318, 'Building Code Requirements for Structural Concrete and Commentary'.
    - b. Concrete Reinforcing Steel Institute:
      - 1) CRSI, 'Manual of Standard Practice'.
- B. Qualifications:
  - 1. Throughout progress of the work of this section, provide at least one (1) person who shall be thoroughly familiar with Construction Documents and other applicable specified requirements, completely trained and experienced in necessary skills, and who shall be present at site and shall direct all work performed under this Section:
    - a. In actual installation of the work of this Section, use adequate numbers of skilled workmen to ensure installation in strict accordance with approved design.
    - b. In acceptance or rejection of work performed under this Section, no allowance will be made for lack of skill on part of workmen.
- C. Testing and Inspection:
  - 1. Owner is responsible for Quality Assurance. Quality assurance performed by Owner will be used to validate Quality Control performed by Contractor.
  - 2. Owner will provide Testing and Inspection for reinforcement bars:
    - a. Owner will employ testing agencies to perform testing and inspection for reinforcement bars as specified in Field Quality Control in Part 3 of this specification:
      - 1) Owner's employment of an independent Testing Agency does not relieve Contractor of Contractor's obligation to perform the Work in strict accordance with requirements of Contract Documents and perform contractor testing and inspection.
      - 2) See Section 01 1200: 'Multiple Contract Summary'.

## 1.6 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Delivery And Acceptance Requirements:
  - 1. Deliver bars separated by size and tagged with manufacturer's heat or test identification number.
  - 2. Reinforcement steel bars shall be free of abrasions or other penetrations of epoxy-coating at time of delivery and placing.
- B. Storage And Handling Requirements:
  - 1. Properly protect rebar on site after delivery.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 MATERIAL

- A. Epoxy Coated Reinforcement Steel Bars:
  - 1. Bars shall have grade identification marks and conform to ASTM A615/A615M with coating conforming to ASTM A775/A775M and comply with requirements of ACI 318.21.2.5:
    - a. Bar supports shall be completely coated with epoxy or vinyl, compatible with both concrete and epoxy coating on bars. Coating shall be at least 1/8 inch thick at tips.
    - b. Tie wire shall be nylon coated.
  - 2. Actual yield strength based on mill tests does not exceed specified yield strength by more than 18,000 psi and Ratio of actual ultimate stress (at breaking point) to actual tensile yield stress shall not be less than 1.25.
    - a. Grade 60 minimum, except dowels that are to be field bent, Grade 40 minimum.
  - 3. Bars shall be deformed type.
  - 4. Bars shall be free of heavy rust scales and flakes, or other bond-reducing coatings.

### 2.2 FABRICATION

- A. Fabricate reinforcement bars according to the Concrete Reinforcing Steel Institute (CRSI) 'Manual of Standard Practice' and details on Contract Documents.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 INSTALLATION

- A. General:
  - 1. Clean reinforcement of loose rust and mill scale, earth, ice, and other materials which reduce or destroy bond with concrete.
  - 2. Blowtorch shall not be used to facilitate field cutting or bending or any other reinforcing work.
  - 3. Reinforcement shall not be bent after partially embedded in hardened concrete.
- B. Placing Reinforcement:
  - 1. Comply with Concrete Reinforcing Steel Institute CRSI 'Manual of Standard Practice' recommended practice for 'Placing Reinforcing Bars' for details and methods of reinforcement placement and supports. and as herein specified.
  - 2. Accurately position, support, and secure reinforcement against displacement by formwork, construction, or concrete placement operations:
    - a. Locate and support reinforcing by chairs, runners, bolsters, bar supports, spacers, or hangers, as required as recommended by 'ACI Detailing Manual, except slab on grade work.
    - b. Support bars in slabs on grade and footings with specified bar supports around perimeter and at 4-1/2 feet on center each way maximum to maintain specified concrete cover.
    - c. Install bar supports at bar intersections.
  - 3. Bend bars cold.
  - 4. Dowel vertical reinforcement for formed concrete columns or walls out of footing or structure below with rebar of same size and spacing required above.
  - 5. Securely anchor and tie reinforcement bars and dowels before placing concrete. Set wire ties with ends directed into concrete, not toward exposed concrete surfaces.
- C. Splices:
  - 1. Non-Concrete Structural System:
    - a. Avoid splices of reinforcement bars at points of maximum stress. Lap bars 60 bar diameters minimum unless dimensioned otherwise on Drawings. Run reinforcement bars continuous through cold joints.

2. Concrete Structural System:
  - a. In beams, slabs, and walls, avoid splices of reinforcement bars at points of maximum stress.
  - b. Lap bars as follows:
    - 1) Compression Splices: 45 bar diameters minimum.
    - 2) Tension Splices: In accordance with ACI 318 Class B requirements.
    - 3) No splice shall be less than 20 inches.
    - 4) For epoxy coated rebar, increase lap-splice lengths by 1.5 times those listed above.
  - c. In columns, splices in vertical bars are permitted only at floor levels or points of lateral support and shall consist of 45 bar diameter laps.
  - d. Run reinforcement bars continuous through cold joints.
- D. Tolerances:
  1. Provide following minimum concrete cover for reinforcement as per ACI 318 or ACI 318M. Arrange, space and securely tie bars and bar supports to hold reinforcement in position during concrete placement operations:
    - a. Concrete cast against and permanently exposed to earth:
      - 1) Exterior Slabs on Grade (where shown): 2 inches.
      - 2) Sections other than Slabs: 3 inches.
    - b. Concrete Exposed to Earth or Weather:
      - 1) No. 6 and Larger Bars: 2 inches.
      - 2) No. 5 and Smaller Bars, W31 and D31 Wire: 1-1/2 inches.

### 3.2 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Field Tests and Inspections:
  1. Civil and structural field tests, laboratory testing, and inspections are provided by Owner's independent Testing Agency as specified in Section 01 4523 'Testing and Inspection Services':
    - a. Quality Control is sole responsibility of Contractor.
      - 1) Owner's employment of an independent Testing Agency does not relieve Contractor of Contractor's obligation to perform testing and inspection as part of his Quality Control:
        - a) Testing and inspections, if performed by Contractor, will be responsibility of Contractor to be performed by an independent entity.
  2. Reinforcement Bars:
    - a. Testing Agency shall provide inspection for Reinforcement Bars. See Section 03 3111 for Testing and Inspection requirements.

**END OF SECTION**

**SECTION 03 3111****CAST-IN-PLACE STRUCTURAL CONCRETE****PART 1 - GENERAL****1.1 SUMMARY**

- A. Includes But Not Limited To:
1. Furnish and install concrete work as described in Contract Documents including:
    - a. Quality of concrete used on Project but furnished under other Sections.
    - b. Concrete mix information and use of admixtures.
    - c. Field Quality Control Testing and Inspection requirements for concrete.
    - d. Pre-installation conference held jointly with other concrete related sections.
    - e. Sealants and curing compounds used with concrete.
    - f. Compact aggregate base for miscellaneous cast-in-place concrete.
    - g. Miscellaneous cast-in-place concrete and equipment pads.
- B. Products Installed But Not Furnished Under This Section:
1. Concrete accessories.
  2. Folding Panel Partition floor guide track.
  3. Inserts, bolts, boxes, templates, and fastening devices for other work, including those for bases only for Mechanical and Electrical.
  4. Light pole base anchors.
  5. Membrane Concrete Curing.
  6. Pipe bollards.
- C. Related Requirements:
1. Section 01 1200: 'Multiple Contract Summary' for Owner Furnished Testing and Inspecting Services.
  2. Section 01 4523: 'Testing and Inspecting Services' for testing and inspection, and testing laboratory services for materials, products, and construction methods.
  3. Section 03 1113: 'Structural Cast-In-Place Concrete Forming'.
  4. Section 03 1511: 'Concrete Anchors and Inserts'.
  5. Section 03 2100: 'Reinforcement Bars'.
  6. Section 03 2116: 'Epoxy-Coated Reinforcement Steel Bars'.
  7. Section 03 3517: 'Concrete Sealer Finishing' for application of concrete sealers.
  8. Section 03 3923: 'Membrane Concrete Curing' for quality of curing materials used.
  9. Section 05 1223: 'Structural Steel For Buildings' for:
    - a. Furnishing of pipe for pipe bollards.
  10. Section 07 9213: 'Elastomeric Joint Sealant' for quality of sealants.
  11. Section 10 2239: 'Folding Panel Partitions' for floor guide track.
  12. Section 26 5600: 'Exterior Lighting' for furnishing of light pole base anchors.
  13. Section 31 0501: 'Common Earthwork Requirements' for:
    - a. General procedures and requirements for earthwork.
    - b. Pre-installation conference held jointly with other common earthwork related sections.
  14. Section 31 1123: 'Aggregate Base' for aggregate base under miscellaneous cast-in-place concrete and exterior slabs, under interior slabs-on-grade concrete, and asphalt paving.
  15. concrete and exterior slabs, under interior slabs-on-grade concrete, asphalt paving, and concrete paving.
  16. Section 31 2213: 'Rough Grading' for rough grading and preparation of natural soil subgrades below fill and aggregate base materials.
  17. Section 31 2216: 'Fine Grading' for grading of subgrade below aggregate base and topsoil.
  18. Section 31 2323: 'Fill' for compaction procedures and tolerances.
  19. Section 32 8423: 'Underground Sprinklers' for sleeves for underground irrigation system.
  20. Section 32 9121: 'Topsoil Grading' for grading of subgrade below topsoil.

21. Divisions 22, 23, And 26: Mechanical and electrical devices including boxes, conduits, pipes, hangers, inserts, and other work to be embedded in concrete work before placing.
22. Furnishing of items to be embedded in concrete specified in Section involved.
23. Owner will provide concrete leveling compounds and patching compounds required for carpet installation.

## 1.2 REFERENCES

### A. Association Publications:

1. American Concrete Institute, Farmington Hills, MI [www.concrete.org](http://www.concrete.org). Abstracts of ACI Periodicals and Publications.
  - a. ACI 117.1R-14: 'Guide for Tolerance Compatibility in Concrete Construction'.
  - b. Certifications:
    - 1) ACI CP-1(16), '*Technical Workbook for ACI Certification of Concrete Field Testing Technician-Grade 1*'.
    - 2) ACI CP-10(10), '*Craftsman Workbook for ACI Certification of Concrete Flatwork Technician/Finisher*'.
    - 3) ACI CP-19(16), '*Technical Workbook for ACI Certification of Concrete Strength Testing Technician*'.

### B. Definitions:

1. Cold Weather, as referred to in this Section, is four (4) hours with ambient temperature below 40 deg F in twenty-four (24) hour period.
2. Floor Flatness (F<sub>F</sub>): Rate of change in elevation of floor over 12 inches section.
3. Floor Levelness (F<sub>L</sub>): Measures difference in elevation between two points which are 10 feet apart.
4. Hot Weather, as referred to in this Section, is ambient air temperature above 100 deg F or ambient air temperature above 90 deg F with wind velocity 8 mph or greater.

### C. Reference Standards:

1. American Association of State and Highway Transportation Officials:
  - a. AASHTO M 153-06 (2016), 'Standard Specification for Preformed Sponge Rubber and Cork Expansion Joint Fillers for Concrete Paving and Structural Construction'.
2. American Concrete Institute
  - a. ACI 117-10 (R2015): 'Specifications for Tolerances for Concrete Construction and Materials and Commentary'.
  - b. ACI 305.1-14, 'Specification for Hot Weather Concreting'.
  - c. ACI 306.1-90 (R2002), 'Standard Specification for Cold Weather Concreting'.
  - d. ACI 318-14, 'Building Code Requirements for Structural Concrete' (ACI 318) and 'Commentary on Building Code Requirements for Structural Concrete' (ACI 318R).
3. ASTM International:
  - a. ASTM C31/C31M-19, 'Standard Practice for Making and Curing Concrete Test Specimens in the Field'.
  - b. ASTM C33/C33M-18, 'Standard Specification for Concrete Aggregates'.
  - c. ASTM C39/C39M-18, 'Standard Test Method for Compressive Strength of Cylindrical Concrete Specimens'.
  - d. ASTM C94/C94M-17a, 'Standard Specification for Ready-Mixed Concrete'.
  - e. ASTM C140/C140M-18a, 'Standard Test Methods for Sampling and Testing Concrete Masonry Units and Related Units'.
  - f. ASTM C143/C143M-15a, 'Standard Test Method for Slump of Hydraulic-Cement Concrete'.
  - g. ASTM C150/C150M-18, 'Standard Specification for Portland Cement'.
  - h. ASTM C172/C172M-17, 'Standard Practice for Sampling Freshly Mixed Concrete'.
  - i. ASTM C173/C173M-16, 'Standard Test Method for Air Content of Freshly Mixed Concrete by the Volumetric Method'.
  - j. ASTM C192/C192M-18, 'Standard Practice for Making and Curing Concrete Test Specimens in the Laboratory'.
  - k. ASTM C231/C231M-17a, 'Standard Test Method for Air Content of Freshly Mixed Concrete by the Pressure Method'.

- l. ASTM C260/C260M-10a(2016), 'Standard Specification for Air-Entraining Admixtures for Concrete'.
  - m. ASTM C330/C330M-17a, 'Standard Specification for Lightweight Aggregates for Structural Concrete'.
  - n. ASTM C494/C494M-17, 'Standard Specification for Chemical Admixtures for Concrete'.
  - o. ASTM C496/C496M-17, 'Standard Test Method for Splitting Tensile Strength of Cylindrical Concrete Specimens'.
  - p. ASTM C567/C567M-14, 'Standard Test Method for Determining Density of Structural Lightweight Concrete'.
  - q. ASTM C595/C595M-18, 'Standard Specification for Blended Hydraulic Cements'.
  - r. ASTM C618-19, 'Standard Specification for Coal Fly Ash and Raw or Calcined Natural Pozzolan for Use in Concrete'.
  - s. ASTM C1077-17, 'Standard Practice for Agencies Testing Concrete and Concrete Aggregates for Use in Construction and Criteria for Testing Agency Evaluation'.
  - t. ASTM C1157/C1157M-17, 'Standard Performance Specification for Hydraulic Cement'.
  - u. ASTM D1751-18, 'Standard Specification for Preformed Expansion Joint Filler for Concrete Paving and Structural Construction (Non-extruding and Resilient Bituminous Types)'.
  - v. ASTM E329-18: 'Standard Specification for Agencies Engaged in Construction Inspection and/or Testing'.
  - w. ASTM E1155-14, 'Standard Test Method for Determining  $F_F$  Floor Flatness and  $F_L$  Floor Levelness Numbers'.
4. International Code Council (IBC) (2018 or latest approved edition):
- a. IBC Chapter 17, 'Special Inspections and Tests'.
    - 1) Section 1704, 'Special Inspections and Tests, Contractor Responsibility and Structural Observations'.
    - 2) Section 1705, 'Required Special Inspection and Tests'.
      - a) Section 1705.2, 'Steel Construction'.

### 1.3 ADMINISTRATIVE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Pre-Installation Conference:
1. Participate in MANDATORY pre-installation conference as specified in Section 01 3100 and held jointly with following sections:
    - a. Section 03 1113: 'Structural Cast-In-Place Concrete Forming'.
    - b. Section 03 2100: 'Reinforcement Bars'.
    - c. Section 03 2116: 'Epoxy-Coated Reinforcement Steel Bars'.
    - d. Section 26 0526: 'Grounding and Bonding for Electrical Systems'.
    - e. Section 33 1119: 'Fire Suppression Utility Distribution Piping'.
    - f. Section 33 3313: 'Sanitary Utility Sewerage'.
  2. Schedule pre-installation conference prior to placing of footings, installation of foundation forms and reinforcing steel, and installation of anchors, dowels, inserts, and block outs in foundation walls and slabs.
  3. In addition to agenda items specified in Section 01 3100, review following:
    - a. Set up concrete placement pour card system and verify that all relevant trades have signed off prior to concrete placement.
    - b. Obtaining trade sign-offs on each pour card will be responsibility of General Contactor's foreman or whoever is in charge of ordering concrete.
    - c. Pour cards will be turned in to Quality Assurance representative after the work has been completed so that they can be reviewed and filed.
    - d. Review installation scheduling, coordination, placement of building concrete, and placement of items installed in and under concrete.
    - e. Review installation scheduling, coordination and placement of site concrete and of items installed in concrete.
    - f. Review 'Verification of Conditions' requirements.
    - g. Review requirements for preparation of subgrade and aggregate base requirements.
    - h. Review formwork requirements.
    - i. Review approved mix design requirements, mix designs and use of admixtures.
    - j. Review reinforcing bar submittals.
    - k. Review installation schedule and placement of reinforcing bars.



- l. Review placement, finishing, and curing of concrete, including cold and hot weather requirements.
  - m. Review joint layout plan for control and expansion joints, fillers for sidewalks, curbs, and gutters:
    - 1) Review jointing requirements.
  - n. Review smooth rubbed concrete finish procedures and requirements (applied immediately after removing concrete formwork while concrete is 'green').
  - o. Review concrete slab tolerances and corrective measures if tolerances not met.
  - p. Review safety issues.
  - q. Review Section 01 4523 for Testing and Inspection administrative requirements and responsibilities and Field Quality Control tests and inspections required of this section.
    - 1) Review requirements and frequency of testing and inspections.
- B. Scheduling:
- 1. Notify Testing Agency and Architect twenty-four (24) hours minimum before placing concrete.

#### 1.4 SUBMITTALS

- A. Action Submittals:
- 1. Joint layout plan for control and expansion joints for sidewalks, curbs, and gutters for written approval before starting work on this Section.
  - 2. Shop Drawings:
    - a. Show dimensioned locations of anchor bolts for hold-down anchors and columns.
    - b. Show reinforcement and all necessary bending diagrams and reinforcing steel list, and construction joint locations.
    - c. Provide bar schedules and bending details.
    - d. Reinforced concrete walls shall be shown in scale elevation (scale at least one quarter inch to one foot). Details shall be in accordance with ACI rules.
    - e. Show all formwork for concrete surfaces which are to remain exposed in the finished work.
- B. Informational Submittals:
- 1. Certificates:
    - a. Installers:
      - 1) Certification for National Ready Mixed Concrete Association (NRMCA).
      - 2) Certification for ACI-certified Flatwork Finishers and Technicians.
  - 2. Design Data:
    - a. Mix Design:
      - 1) Furnish proposed mix design to Architect for review prior to commencement of Work.
        - a) Include density (unit weight) and void content determined per ASTM C1688/C1688M for fresh mixed properties and per ASTM C140/C140M for hardened concrete properties.
        - b) Mix design shall show proposed admixture, amount, usage instructions, and justification for proposed use.
    - b. Ready-Mix Supplier:
      - 1) Require mix plant to furnish delivery ticket for each batch of concrete. Keep delivery tickets at job-site for use of Owner or his representatives. Tickets shall show following:
        - a) Name of ready-mix batch plant.
        - b) Serial number of ticket.
        - c) Date and truck number.
        - d) Name of Contractor.
        - e) Name and location of Project.
        - f) Specific class or designation of concrete conforming to that used in Contract Documents.
        - g) Amount of concrete.
        - h) Amount and type of cement.
        - i) Total water content allowed by mix design.
        - j) Amount of water added at plant.
        - k) Sizes and weights of sand and aggregate.
        - l) Time loaded.

- m) Type, name, manufacturer, and amount of admixtures used.
- n) Design Data.
- 2) Provide certificates with supporting testing reports verifying compliance with Contract Document requirements and that materials provided are from single source for following:
  - a) Cement.
  - b) Aggregate.
  - c) Fly Ash.
- 3. Source Quality Control Submittals:
  - a. Concrete mix design: Submit mix designs to meet following requirements:
    - 1) Mix Type A:
      - a) General purpose concrete type mix used for footings and for exterior concrete (excluding concrete paving) where not subject to freeze/thaw cycles and deicing or where higher strength is needed due to soil conditions.
      - b) 3000 psi minimum at twenty-eight (28) days.
      - c) Water / Cementitious Material: 0.45 to 0.50 by weight.
    - 2) Mix Type B:
      - a) Unexposed interior concrete slabs on grade.
      - b) 3500 psi minimum at twenty-eight (28) days.
      - c) Water / Cementitious Material: 0.45 maximum by weight.
    - 3) Mix Type D:
      - a) For exterior concrete paving, curbs, gutters, and waterways not exposed to freeze/thaw cycles and deicing salts.
      - b) 4000 psi minimum at twenty-eight (28) days.
      - c) Water / Cementitious Material: 0.45 maximum by weight.
      - d) For concrete paving, use mix design based upon use of 1-1/2 inches coarse aggregate (about 15 percent).
    - 4) Mix Type E:
      - a) Exterior concrete exposed to freeze/thaw cycles and deicing salts or where soils are 'corrosive'.
      - b) 4500 psi minimum at twenty-eight (28) days.
      - c) Water / Cementitious Material: 0.40 maximum by weight.
      - d) Use twenty-five (25) percent Class F fly ash as part of cementitious material.
      - e) Mix Type F should be used for all exterior concrete exposed to freeze/thaw cycles and deicing salts, unless dictated otherwise by site conditions.
      - f) For concrete paving, use mix design based upon use of 1-1/2 inches coarse aggregate (about 15 percent).
    - 5) Mix Type F - Self-Consolidating Concrete (SCC):
      - a) Rarely used optional mix type.
      - b) Self-consolidating concrete may be used for all architectural concrete, heavily reinforced concrete, concrete for structural repairs, and other members as described in contract documents.
      - c) 4000 psi minimum at twenty-eight (28) days.
      - d) All self-consolidating concrete shall contain high-range water-reducing admixture and viscosity-modifying admixture where required.
      - e) Minimum flow of 20 inches – 30 inches or as required by successful test placement.
      - f) Workability, pump ability, finish ability, and setting time of mix design shall be verified with successful test placement onsite.
      - g) Viscosity Modifying Admixture (VMA) shall be used to optimize viscosity of Self-Consolidating Concrete (SCC) at dosage rates per manufacturer's recommendation.
    - 6) Air Entrainment: Six (6) percent, plus or minus 1-1/2 percent for exterior concrete and foundation walls exposed to freeze/thaw cycles.
    - 7) Do not add water any time during mixing cycle above amount required to meet specified water / cement ratio. No reduction in amount of cementitious material is allowed.
  - b. Slump:
    - 1) 4-inch slump maximum before addition of high range water reducer.
    - 2) 8-inch slump maximum with use of high range water reducer.
    - 3) Slump not required for Mix Type G.

- c. Admixtures:
  - 1) Mix design shall show proposed admixture, amount, usage instructions, and justification for proposed use. Do not use any admixture without Architect's written approval.
  - 2) Fly ash: Amount of specified Class F (or Class C where Class F is not available) fly ash not to exceed twenty-five (25) percent of weight of cementations materials may used.
  - 3) Chemical:
    - a) Specified accelerator or retarder may be used if necessary, to meet environmental conditions.
    - b) Special additives to promote rapid drying concrete, or moisture vapor reduction (MVRA), may be used in interior concrete slabs on grade and elevated concrete decks that will receive flooring if necessary, to meet construction schedules.
- C. Closeout Submittals:
  - 1. Include following in Operations and Maintenance Manual specified in Section 01 7800:
    - a. Record Documentation:
      - 1) Pour Reports:
        - a) Provide report that records following information:
        - b) Date and time of start of pour, Date and time of end of pour, and Date and time of end of finishing procedures.
        - c) Temperature at start of pour, Temperature at end of Pour, and Maximum temperature during performance of finishing procedures.
        - d) Wind speed at start of pour, Wind speed at end of pour, and Maximum wind speed during performance of finishing procedures.
        - e) Humidity at start of pour, Humidity at end of pour, and High and low humidity during performance of finishing procedures.
        - f) Cloud cover at start of pour, Cloud cover at end of pour, and High and low cloud cover during performance of finishing procedures.
        - g) Screeding method and equipment used.
        - h) Saw cut method and equipment used.
      - 2) Testing and Inspection Reports:
        - a) Testing Agency Testing and Inspecting Reports of concrete.
      - 3) Warranty. Submit rapid concrete drying or MVRA manufacturer warranties for concrete moisture vapor emission induced flooring failure and adhesion; ensure both have been completed in project's name and registered with manufacturer.
        - a) Provide warranty to cover cost of flooring failures due to moisture migration from slabs for life of concrete. Include cost of repair or removal of failed flooring, placement of topical moisture remediation system, and replacement of flooring with comparable flooring system.
        - b) Provide stand-alone adhesion warranty matching duration of flooring adhesive or primer manufacturer's material defect warranty.

## 1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Qualifications: Requirements of Section 01 4301 applies, but is not limited to following:
  - 1. Installers and Installation Supervisor:
    - a. ACI-certified Flatwork Technician and Finisher and a supervisor who is an ACI-certified Concrete Flatwork Technician.
  - 2. Ready-Mix Supplier:
    - a. Comply with ASTM C94/C94M requirements and be certified according to NRMCA's 'Certification of Ready Mixed Concrete Production Facilities'.
  - 3. Testing Agencies:
    - a. Independent agency qualified according to ASTM C1077 and ASTM E329.
      - 1) Personnel conducting field tests shall be qualified as ACI Concrete Field-Testing Technicians, Grade I according to ACI CP-1 or equivalent certification program.
      - 2) Personnel performing laboratory tests shall be ACI-certified Concrete Strength Testing Technician and Concrete Laboratory Testing Technician - Grade I. Testing Agency laboratory supervisor shall be ACI-certified Concrete Laboratory Testing Technician - Grade II.

- B. Testing and Inspection:
1. Owner is responsible for Quality Assurance. Quality assurance performed by Owner will be used to validate Quality Control performed by Contractor.
  2. Owner will provide Testing and Inspection on concrete:
    - a. Owner will employ testing agencies to perform testing and inspection on concrete as specified in Field Quality Control in Part 3 of this specification:
      - 1) Owner's employment of an independent Testing Agency does not relieve Contractor of Contractor's obligation to perform the Work in strict accordance with requirements of Contract Documents and perform contractor testing and inspection.
      - 2) See Section 01 1200: 'Multiple Contract Summary'.

## 1.6 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Delivery And Acceptance Requirements:
1. Expansion Joint Filler Material:
    - a. Deliver materials to site in manufacturer's original, unopened containers and packaging, with labels clearly identifying product name and manufacturer.
- B. Storage And Handling Requirements:
1. Expansion Joint Filler Material:
    - a. Store materials in a clean, dry area in accordance with manufacturer's instructions.
    - b. Protect materials during handling and application to prevent damage.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 SYSTEM

- A. Manufacturers:
1. Manufacturer Contact List:
    - a. Aridus Admixture by US Concrete, Euleess, TX [www.us-concrete.com/aridus/](http://www.us-concrete.com/aridus/).
    - b. BASF (Construction Chemicals Division), Cleveland, OH [www.master-builders-solutions.basf.us/en-us](http://www.master-builders-solutions.basf.us/en-us).
    - c. Bonsal American, Charlotte, NC [www.bonsal.com](http://www.bonsal.com).
    - d. Concure Systems Admixture by Concure Systems, Phoenix, AZ [www.ConcureSystems.com](http://www.ConcureSystems.com).
    - e. Dayton Superior Specialty Chemicals, Kansas City, KS [www.daytonsuperiorchemical.com](http://www.daytonsuperiorchemical.com).
    - f. Euclid Chemical Company, Cleveland, OH [www.euclidchemical.com](http://www.euclidchemical.com).
    - g. Fritz-Pak Concrete Admixtures, Dallas, TX [www.fritzpak.com](http://www.fritzpak.com).
    - h. GCP Applied Technologies, Cambridge, MA [www.gcpat.com/construction/en-us](http://www.gcpat.com/construction/en-us).
    - i. ISE Logik Industries, Gulfport, MS [www.iselogik.com](http://www.iselogik.com).
    - j. Kryton International Inc., Vancouver, British Columbia, Canada [www.kryton.com](http://www.kryton.com).
    - k. L & M Construction Chemicals, Omaha, NE [www.lmcc.com](http://www.lmcc.com).
    - l. Larsen Weldcrete by Larsen Products Corp, Rockville, MD [www.larsenproducts.com](http://www.larsenproducts.com).
    - m. Sika Corporation, Lyndhurst, NJ [www.sikaconstruction.com](http://www.sikaconstruction.com) and Sika Canada, Pointe Claire, QC [www.sika.ca](http://www.sika.ca).
    - n. Unitex, Kansas City, MO [www.unitex-chemicals.com](http://www.unitex-chemicals.com).
    - o. U S Mix Products Co, Denver, CO [www.usspec.com](http://www.usspec.com).
    - p. W R Meadows, Hampshire, IL [www.wrmeadows.com](http://www.wrmeadows.com).
- B. Performance:
1. Design Criteria: Conform to requirements of ASTM C94/C94M unless specified otherwise:
  2. Capacities:
    - a. For testing purposes, following concrete strengths are required:
      - 1) At 7 days: 70 percent minimum of 28-day strengths.
      - 2) At 28 days: 100 percent minimum of 28-day strengths.

## C. Materials:

1. Hydraulic Cement: Meet requirements of ASTM C150/C150M, Type <Insert Type>.
  - a. Meet requirements of ASTM C595/C595M, Type <Insert Type>.
  - b. Meet requirements of ASTM C1157/C1157M, Type <Insert Type>.
2. Aggregates:
  - a. Coarse:
    - 1) Meet requirements of ASTM C33/C33M or nonconforming aggregate that by test or actual service produces concrete of required strength and conforms to local governing codes.
    - 2) Aggregate shall be uniformly graded by weight.
  - b. Fine:
    - 1) Meet requirements of ASTM C33/C33M.
    - 2) Aggregate shall be uniformly graded by weight.
3. Water: Clear, apparently clean, and potable.
4. Admixtures And Miscellaneous:
  - a. Fly Ash:
    - 1) Meet requirements of ASTM C618, Class F (or Class C where Class F is not available) and with loss on ignition (LOI) of three (3) percent maximum.
  - b. Chemical:
    - 1) No admixture shall contain calcium chloride nor shall calcium chloride be used as an admixture. All chemical admixtures used shall be from same manufacturer and compatible with each other.
    - 2) Air Entraining Admixture:
      - a) Meet requirements of ASTM C260/C260M.
      - b) Type Two Acceptable Products:
        - (1) Equal as approved by Architect before use. See Section 01 6200.
    - 3) Water Reducing Admixture:
      - a) Meet requirements of ASTM C494/C494M, Type A and containing not more than 0.05 percent chloride ions.
      - b) Type Two Acceptable Products:
        - (1) Equal as approved by Architect before use. See Section 01 6200.
    - 4) Water Reducing, Retarding Admixture:
      - a) Meet requirements of ASTM C494/C494M, Type D and contain not more than 0.05 percent chloride ions.
      - b) Type Two Acceptable Products:
        - (1) Equal as approved by Architect before use. See Section 01 6200.
    - 5) High Range Water Reducing Admixture (Superplasticizer):
      - a) Meet requirements of ASTM C494/C494M, Type F or G and containing not more than 0.05 percent chloride ions.
      - b) Type Two Acceptable Products:
        - (1) Equal as approved by Architect before use. See Section 01 6200.
    - 6) Non-Chloride, Non-Corrosive Accelerating Admixture:
      - a) Meet requirements of ASTM C494/C494M, Type C or E and containing not more than 0.05 percent chloride ions.
      - b) Type Two Acceptable Products:
        - (1) Equal as approved by Architect before use. See Section 01 6200.
    - 7) Corrosion Inhibiting Admixture:
      - a) Liquid admixture to inhibit corrosion of steel reinforcement in concrete by introducing proper amount of anodic inhibitor. Admixture shall contain thirty (30) percent calcium nitrite solution and shall be used where called for in specifications or on drawings.
      - b) Type Two Acceptable Products:
        - (1) Eucon CIA by Euclid.
        - (2) DCI or DCI-S by GCP Applied Technologies.
        - (3) Equal as approved by Architect before use. See Section 01 6200.
    - 8) Alkali-Silica Reactivity Inhibiting Admixture:
      - a) Specially formulated lithium nitrate admixture for prevention of alkali-silica reactivity (ASR) in concrete. Admixture must have test data indicating conformance to ASTM C1293.
      - b) Type Two Acceptable Products:

- (1) Eucon Integral ARC by Euclid.
  - (2) RASIR by W R Grace.
  - (3) Equal as approved by Architect before use. See Section 01 6200.
- 9) Viscosity Modifying Admixture (VMA):
- a) Liquid admixture used to optimize viscosity of Self-Consolidating Concrete (SCC). Subject to compliance with requirements, provide following at dosage rates per manufacturer's recommendation.
  - b) Type Two Acceptable Products:
    - (1) Equal as approved by Architect before use. See Section 01 6200.
- 10) Shrinkage Reducing Admixture (SRA):
- a) Liquid admixture specifically designed to reduce drying shrinkage and potential for cracking.
  - b) Type Two Acceptable Products:
    - (1) Equal as approved by Architect before use. See Section 01 6200.
- 11) Rapid Drying Admixture in Interior Concrete Slabs on Grade:
- a) Admixture specifically designed to promote rapid drying of concrete.
  - b) Type Two Acceptable Products:
    - (1) Equal as approved by Architect before use. See Section 01 6200.
- 12) Moisture Vapor Reduction Admixture (MVRA):
- a) Liquid, inorganic, ASTM C494/C494M Type S Admixture free of volatile organic compounds (VOCs); specifically formulated to close capillary systems formed during concrete placement and to reduce moisture vapor emission and transmission with no adverse effect on concrete properties or finish flooring.
  - b) Type Two Acceptable Products:
    - (1) MVRA 900 by ISE Logik Industries: [www.iselogik.com](http://www.iselogik.com).
    - (2) Concure Systems Admixture by Concure Systems, Phoenix, AZ [www.ConcureSystems.com](http://www.ConcureSystems.com).
    - (3) Equal as approved by Architect before use. See Section 01 6200.
- 13) Waterproofing Admixture: Admixture formulated to reduce permeability to liquid water, with no adverse effect on concrete properties:
- a) Functioning by growth of crystals in capillary pores.
  - b) Permeability of Cured Concrete: No measurable leakage when tested in accordance with COE CRD-C 48 at 200 feet of head; provide test reports.
  - c) Type Two Acceptable Products:
    - (1) CWPA 800 by ISE Logik Industries: [www.iselogik.com](http://www.iselogik.com).
    - (2) Krystol Internal Membrane (KIM) by Kryton: [www.kryton.com](http://www.kryton.com).
    - (3) Equal as approved by Architect before use. See Section 01 6200.

## 2.2 ACCESSORIES

### A. Formwork:

1. Meet requirements specified in Section 03 1113:

### B. Bonding Agents:

1. Type Two Acceptable Products:
  - a. Acrylic Additive by Bonsal American.
  - b. Day Chem Ad Bond (J-40) by Dayton Superior.
  - c. Flex-Con by Euclid Chemical Co.
  - d. Larsen Weldcrete by Larsen Products Corp.
  - e. Everbond by L & M Construction Chemicals.
  - f. MasterEmaco A 660 (formally Acryl 60) by BASF.
  - g. U S Spec Multicoat by U S Mix Products.
  - h. Intralok by W R Meadows.
  - i. Equal as approved by Architect before use. See Section 01 6200.

### C. Expansion Joint Filler:

1. Expansion Joint Filler Material:
  - a. Design Criteria:

- 1) Resilient, flexible, non-extruding, expansion-contraction joint filler meeting requirements of ASTM D1751.
  - 2) 1/2 inch thick.
  - 3) Resilience:
    - a) When compressed to half of original thickness, recover to minimum of seventy (70) percent of original thickness.
    - b. Type Two Acceptable Products:
      - 1) Fiber Expansion Joint by W R Meadows, Hampshire, IL [www.wrmeadows.com](http://www.wrmeadows.com).
      - 2) Equal as approved by Architect before installation. See Section 01 6200.
- D. Finishing Material (Exposed Vertical Faces of Foundation and Retaining Walls):
1. Finishing Material available in multiple concrete shades to closely match concrete surface.
  2. Type Two Acceptable Products:
    - a. Mixture of 1 part cement (using same cement as used in concrete foundations), 1 part sand with 95 percent passing #50 sieve.
    - b. RapidSet WunderFixx by CTS Cement Manufacturing Corporation, Cypress, CA [www.rapidset.com](http://www.rapidset.com).
    - c. Equal as approved by Architect before installation. See Section 01 6200.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Verification Of Conditions:
1. Concrete Forms:
    - a. Verify dimensions and spot elevations for locations of forms for concrete footings, stem walls, building slabs, curbs, gutters, walkways, and drainage systems are correct before concrete is placed.
      - 1) Notify Architect of incorrect dimensions or spot elevations in writing.
      - 2) Do not place concrete until corrections are made and verified.

### 3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Concrete Mixing:
1. General:
    - a. All concrete shall be machine mixed.
    - b. Water gauge shall be provided to deliver exact predetermined amount of water for each batch.
    - c. Reliable system must be employed to ensure that no less than predetermined amount of cement goes into each batch.
    - d. Re-tempering partly set concrete will not be permitted.
  2. Transit Mix:
    - a. Transit mix concrete may be used provided it conforms to Specifications and tests herein described and ASTM C94/C94M.
    - b. Central plant producing concrete and equipment transporting it are suitable for production and transportation of controlled concrete and plant is currently approved by local state DOT.
    - c. Maximum elapsed time between time of introduction of water and placing shall be one (1) hour.
    - d. Minimum time of mixing shall be one (1) minute per cubic yard after all material, including water, has been placed in drum, and drum shall be reversed for an additional two (2) minutes.
    - e. Mixing water shall be added only in presence of Inspecting Engineer or inspector employed by Testing Agency.
    - f. Trucks shall not be overloaded in excess of rated capacity as recommended by manufacturer.
  3. Cold Weather Concreting Procedures:

- a. General Requirements:
    - 1) Materials and equipment required for heating and protection of concrete shall be approved and available at Project site before beginning cold weather concreting.
    - 2) Forms, reinforcement, metallic embedments, and fillers shall be free from snow, ice, and frost. Surfaces that will be in contact with newly placed concrete, including sub-grade materials, shall be 35 deg F minimum at time of concrete placement.
    - 3) Thaw sub-grade 6 inches deep minimum before beginning concrete placement. If necessary, re-compact thawed material.
    - 4) Use no frozen materials or materials containing ice.
    - 5) See ACI 306.1 'Standard Specification for Cold Weather Concreting' for additional requirements.
  4. Hot Weather Concreting Procedures:
    - a. General:
      - 1) Maximum concrete temperature allowed is 90 deg F in hot weather.
      - 2) Cool aggregate and subgrades by sprinkling.
      - 3) Avoid cement over 140 deg F.
      - 4) Use cold mixing water or ice.
      - 5) Use fog spray or evaporation retardant to lessen rapid evaporation from concrete surface.
      - 6) See ACI 305.1 'Specification for Hot Weather Concreting' for additional requirements.
- B. Surface Preparation:
1. Earthwork Preparation:
    - a. Aggregate base and subgrade:
      - 1) Prepare aggregate base as specified in Section 31 1123.
      - 2) Prepare natural soil subgrade as specified in Section 31 2213.
      - 3) Prepare fill subgrade as specified in Section 31 2323.
    2. Inserts, bolts, boxes, templates, pipes, conduits, and other accessories required by Divisions 22, 23, and 26 shall be installed and inspected before placing concrete.
    3. Install inserts, bolts, boxes, templates, pipes, conduits, and other accessories furnished under other Sections to be installed as part of work of this Section:
      - a. Tie anchor bolts for hold-down anchors and columns securely to reinforcing steel.
- C. Removal:
1. Remove water and debris from space to be placed:

### 3.3 INSTALLATION

- A. Placing Concrete:
1. General:
    - a. Place as soon after mixing as possible.
    - b. Deposit as nearly as possible in final position.
    - c. No concrete shall be deposited in water.
    - d. Placing of concrete shall be continuous until panel or section is complete.
    - e. Compact concrete in forms by vibrating and other means where required.
      - 1) Thoroughly consolidate concrete around reinforcing bars (Consolidation not required in concrete around reinforcing bars with Mix Type G).
      - 2) Use and type of vibrators shall conform to ACI 309.
    - f. Form vertical surfaces full depth. Do not allow concrete to flow out from under forms in any degree into landscaped areas.
    - g. Consolidate concrete thoroughly.
    - h. Do not embed aluminum in concrete.
    - i. Do not use contaminated, deteriorated, or re-tempered concrete.
    - j. Avoid accumulation of hardened concrete.
    - k. Dusting with cement not permitted.
  2. Footings:
    - a. Level top of finish footing and leave rough.
    - b. Where joints are required, bulkhead, key horizontally, and dowel with two No. 5 reinforcing bars, 48 inches long.



- 3. Foundation Walls: Leave steel projecting where required for floor tie.
- 4. Exterior Slabs:
  - a. For continuous placing and where shown on Drawings, saw cut one inch deep control joints before shrinkage occurs (2 inches at 6 inch slabs).
- 5. Miscellaneous Concrete Elements:
  - a. Equipment Bases: Coordinate with appropriate Sections for locations and dimensions.
  - b. Light Pole Bases, Mow Strips, and Aprons:
    - 1) Install bond breaker consisting of three (3) layers of 30 lb. roofing felt between pole base and adjoining sidewalk, mow strip and building foundations, and aprons and building foundations.
  - c. Mow Strips and Aprons:
    - 1) Aggregate base not necessary under mow strips and aprons.
    - 2) Form and cast mow strips in place.
    - 3) Set top of mow strip above finish grade as follows:
      - a) Sodded Areas: 2 inches below.
      - b) Seeded Areas: One inch below.
      - c) Ground Cover Areas: 2 inches below.
      - d) Trees and Shrub Areas (not individual trees): 4 inches below.
    - 4) Compact topsoil underneath mow strips and aprons to density of undisturbed earth.
  - d. Pipe Bollards:
    - 1) Install plumb and fill with concrete.
  - e. Sidewalks, Exterior Stairs, And Landings:
    - 1) Slope with cross slope of 1/8 to 1/4 inch per ft (one to two percent) in direction of intended drainage.
    - 2) Slope away from building 1/8 to 1/4 inch per ft (one to two percent) minimum.
    - 3) Concrete walks shall be screeded to bring surface to grades and lines as indicated. Surface shall be floated with wood float with no coarse aggregate showing and then given broom finish before concrete sets.
- 6. Joints:
  - a. Control Joints (Contraction Joints):
    - 1) Form control joints with early-entry, dry-cut saws as soon as final trowel operations are complete, and joints can be cut without raveling.
    - 2) Depth of control joints shall be approximately one quarter of concrete slab thickness, but not less than one inch.
    - 3) Control joints to be hand tooled in sidewalks, curbs and gutters, mow strips, and aprons.
    - 4) Table One:

Concrete Control Joint On-Center Spacing (+/-)		
Sidewalks	4 feet to 6 feet	1.2 meters to 1.8 meters
Curbs and Gutters	10 feet	3.0 meters
Mow Strips	3 feet to 5 feet	0.90 meters to 1.50 meters
Flat Drainage Structures	10 feet	3 meters
Retaining Walls w/guardrails	Align with posts	
Retaining Walls w/chain link fencing	Align with posts	

- b. Expansion Joints:
  - 1) Expansion joints in Concrete Paving are specified in Section 32 1313.
  - 2) Install so top of expansion joint material is 1/4 inch below finished surface of concrete.
  - 3) No expansion joint required between curbs and sidewalks parallel to curb.
  - 4) Provide expansion joints at ends of exterior site concrete elements that are perpendicular to and terminate at curbs, building foundations or other concrete elements (i.e. sidewalks, mow strips, aprons).
  - 5) Provide expansion joints between sidewalks that are parallel, and adjacent, to storage building or main building.
  - 6) Provide expansion joints around perimeter of concrete slab on grade at mechanical enclosure, around perimeter of slab on grade at dumpster enclosure and at top and bottom of exterior stairs.

7) Table Two:

Concrete Expansion Joint (Isolation) On-Center Spacing (+/-)		
Sidewalks, Curbs and Gutters	40 feet to 100 feet	12 meters to 30 meters
Mow Strips and Aprons	20 feet to 40 feet	6 meters to 12 meters
Flat Drainage Structures	50 feet	15 meters
Retaining Walls w/guardrails	36 feet	11 meters
Retaining Walls w/chain link fencing	50 feet	15 meters

- 8) Seal expansion joints as specified in Section 07 9213 for following areas:
  - a) Between entryway slabs and building foundations.
  - b) Between sidewalks and building foundations.
  - c) Within curbs and gutters.
  - d) Within flat drainage structures and at joints between flat drainage structures and other concrete elements.
- 9) Expansion joints are not required to be sealed for following areas:
  - a) Within aprons and where apron abuts sidewalks.
  - b) Within mow strips and where mow strip abuts building foundation and sidewalks.
  - c) Within sidewalks.

7. Bonding Fresh and Hardened Concrete:

- a. Re-tighten forms.
- b. Roughen surfaces.
- c. Clean off foreign matter and laitance.
- d. Wet but do not saturate.
- e. Slush with neat cement grout or apply bonding agent.
- f. Proceed with placing new concrete.

8. Anchor Bolts:

- a. Place anchor bolts not tied to reinforcing steel immediately following leveling of concrete. Reconsolidate concrete around bolt immediately after placing bolt.
- b. Do not disturb bolts during finishing process.

B. Finishing:

1. Interior Concrete Flatwork:

- a. Screed Concrete.
- b. Float Finish:
  - 1) Float as soon after screeding as possible.
  - 2) Consolidate surface with power-driven floats with exception of areas inaccessible to power-driven floats, which may be hand-floated.
  - 3) Re-straighten, cutting down high spots and filling low spots.
  - 4) Repeat float passes and re-straightening until surface has uniform, smooth, granular texture.
- c. Rough:
  - 1) Top of building slab to receive setting bed for ceramic or paver tile.
- d. Trowel Finish:
  - 1) Steel trowel slab after concrete has set enough to avoid bringing water and fines to surface.
  - 2) Perform troweling with power-driven trowels with exception of areas inaccessible to power-driven trowels, which may be hand-troweled.
  - 3) Continue troweling passes and re-straightening with 10-foot highway straightedge until surface is free of trowel marks and uniform in texture and appearance.
  - 4) Apply burnished, burned-out trowel finish.

2. Exterior Concrete Flatwork:

- a. Curb, Gutter, Sidewalks, Mow Strips, Flat Drainage Structures, Stairs, And Miscellaneous:
  - 1) After completion of final floating, performed immediately after screeding and when excess moisture or surface sheen has disappeared, complete surface finishing, as follows:
    - a) Provide fine hair finish where grades are less than 6 percent 1-1/4 inch.
    - b) Provide rough hair finish where grades exceed 6 percent 1-1/4 inch.

- c) Broom finish, by drawing broom across concrete surface, perpendicular to line of traffic. Repeat operation if required to provide fine line texture acceptable to Architect. At curb and gutter, apply broom finish longitudinal to curb and gutter flowline.
  - d) On inclined slab surfaces, provide coarse, non-slip finish by scoring surface with stiff-bristled broom, perpendicular to line of traffic. At curb and gutter, apply broom finish longitudinal to curb and gutter flowline.
  - e) Do not remove forms for twenty-four (24) hours after concrete has been placed. After form removal, clean ends of joints and point-up any minor honeycombed areas. Remove and replace areas or sections with major defects, as directed by Architect.
  - f) Round edges exposed to public view to 1/2-inch radius, including edges formed by expansion joints.
  - g) Remove edger marks.
3. Vertical Surfaces (Exposed To View Vertical Surfaces, Exposed Retaining Walls, Exposed Foundation Walls, Concrete Piers, and etc.):
- a. General:
    - 1) Finishing Material to fill and smooth interior and exterior concrete surface defects such as spalls, gouges, cracks, dents, chips, bug holes, stone pockets, honeycombs, voids and other defective areas.
    - 2) Chamfer lines shall be finished.
  - b. Surface Preparation:
    - 1) Formwork shall be stripped from concrete while concrete is still 'green'.
    - 2) Concrete surface to be finished immediately after formwork has been removed.
      - a) Immediately after removing forms, remove joints, marks, bellies, projections, loose materials and other irregularities, and cut back metal ties from surfaces to be exposed.
      - b) Repair defective areas and voids or stone pockets with Finishing Material and smooth to even surface matching surrounding undamaged area.
  - c. Smooth Rubbed Finish:
    - 1) Thoroughly wet with water, apply Finishing Material in thin layer, rub in circular motion to smooth uniform finish.
    - 2) Entire surface shall be protected from rapid drying for not less than three (3) days.
    - 3) Surfaces shall be cleaned of drip marks and discolorations.
    - 4) Concrete surface shall be left with clean, neat, uniform finish, free from form markings and shall be uniform in color and texture.
4. Light Pole Bases:
- a. Exposed portion to have smooth rubbed finish as specified in Vertical Surfaces in previous paragraph.
- C. Curing:
1. Membrane Concrete Curing:
    - a. As specified in Section 09 3923 'Membrane Concrete Curing'.
    - b. Follow Manufacturer's written instructions for preparation, application rates, placement, and cleanup:
      - 1) Apply as soon as troweling on interior concrete is complete.
      - 2) Apply as soon as brooming or finishing of exterior concrete is complete.
      - 3) Spraying application is required.
      - 4) Do not dilute or thin product.
      - 5) Do not apply when temperature of concrete is less than 40 deg F.
      - 6) Apply uniformly without puddles or ponding.
      - 7) Do not apply before bleed water has dissipated.
      - 8) Do not apply over standing water.
- D. Exterior Concrete Sealer:
1. Exterior Concrete Sealer:
    - a. Exterior concrete placed after about September 1 and located in areas of freeze/thaw cycles and deicing salts are to be sealed per Section 03 3517 'Exterior Concrete Sealer'.
    - b. Apply product as specified in Section 03 3517.

E. Tolerances:

1. General:

- a. Tolerances shall conform to requirements of ACI 117 or CSA A23.1/A23.2, except where specified differently:
  - 1) Floor test surfaces shall be measured and reported within seventy two (72) hours after completion of slab concrete finishing operations and before removal of any supporting shores to eliminate any curling effect F-numbers.
- b. Maximum Variation Tolerances:
  - 1) Table Three:

Maximum Variation Tolerances		
Thickness, standard	plus 3/8-inch, minus 1/4 inch	plus 9.5 mm, minus 3 mm
Thickness, footings	minus 0 inch	minus 0 mm
Plan, 0 - 20 feet	1/2 inch	12.7 mm
Plan, 40 feet or greater	3/4 inch	19 mm
Plan, footings	plus 1/2 inch	plus 12.7 mm
Eccentricity, footings	2-inch maximum standard, 1/2 inch at masonry	50 mm maximum standard, 12.7 mm at masonry
Openings, size	minus 1/4 inch, plus one inch	minus 6 mm, plus 25.4 mm
Openings, location	plus / minus 1/2 inch at center	plus / minus 12.7 mm at center
Plumb	1/2 inch maximum	12.7 mm maximum
Consecutive Steps, treads	1/4 inch	6 mm
Consecutive Steps, risers	1/8 inch	3 mm
Flight of Stairs, treads	1/4 inch in total run	6 mm in total run
Flight of Stairs, risers	1/8 inch in total height	3 mm in total height

2. Local Flatness / Levelness of Interior Slabs:

a. Carpet and Tile Areas:

- 1) Specified Overall Value of F<sub>F</sub>25 / F<sub>L</sub>20 and Minimum Local Value of F<sub>F</sub>15 / F<sub>L</sub>13 when tested in accordance with ASTM E1155.
- 2) Specified Overall Value of F<sub>F</sub>30 / F<sub>L</sub>20 and Minimum Local Value of F<sub>F</sub>18 / F<sub>L</sub>13 when tested in accordance with ASTM E1155 in ceramic, resilient or vinyl tiled areas.
- 3) Used on building slabs to be covered by carpet and tile as shown on Contract Drawings. Verify and coordinate with Finish Schedule.
- 4) Remedy For Out-of-Tolerance Building Slabs:
  - a) Sections of building slabs which do not meet specified tolerances but are within ten (10) percent of specified tolerances, may be corrected by grinding or filling, at Owner's option.
  - b) Remove and replace sections of slabs measuring outside specified correctable tolerances.
  - c) Carpet areas: If floor leveling compounds or concrete patching compounds are required to bring floor into specified tolerances, they will be provided by Owner in conjunction with carpet installation and back-charged to Contractor.

**3.4 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL**

A. Field Tests and Inspections:

- 1. Civil and structural field tests, laboratory testing, and inspections are provided by Owner's independent Testing Agency as specified in Section 01 4523 'Testing And Inspection Services':
  - a. Quality Control is sole responsibility of Contractor:
    - 1) Owner's employment of an independent Testing Agency does not relieve Contractor of Contractor's obligation to perform testing and inspection as part of his Quality Control:
      - a) Testing and inspections, if performed by Contractor, will be responsibility of Contractor to be performed by an independent entity.
- 2. Reinforcement Bars and Bolts:
  - a. Testing Agency shall provide inspections will include following:

- 1) Bolts:
  - a) Inspection of bolts to be installed in concrete prior to and during placement of concrete.
  - b) Periodic inspection of anchors installed in hardened concrete.
- 2) Reinforcement Bars:
  - a) Periodic inspection of reinforcement bars and placement prior to concrete placement to verify grade, size, cover, spacing, and position of reinforcing.
  - b) Inspect that all reinforcement bars are be positively identified as to heat number and mill analysis.
  - c) Confirm surface of reinforcing bars is free of form release oil or other deleterious substances.
3. Concrete:
  - a. Testing Agency shall provide testing and inspection for concrete as per ASTM C1077.
  - b. Testing and inspections, if performed, will include following:
    - 1) Periodic inspection verifying use of required design mix.
    - 2) Inspection of reinforcing bars and anchor bolts before placement of concrete for proper installation.
    - 3) Inspection at time fresh concrete is sampled to fabricate specimens for strength tests, perform slump and air content tests, and determine temperature of concrete.
    - 4) Inspection of concrete placement for proper application techniques.
      - a) Steel tools are not to be used on exterior concrete.
    - 5) Periodic inspection for maintenance of specified curing temperature and techniques:
      - a) Steel tools are not to be used on exterior concrete. Bull floating and finish floating is to be performed with magnesium or wood floats.
    - 6) Periodic inspect of formwork for shape, location and dimensions of concrete member being formed:
      - a) Certified Inspector shall inspect forms for general location, configuration, camber, shoring, sealing of form joints, correct forming material, concrete accessories, and form tie locations.
    - 7) Periodic inspection of concrete finishing operations for proper finishing techniques.
    - 8) Periodic inspection for placement of specified curing compounds.
  - c. Testing Agency will sample and test during placement of concrete as directed by Architect and may include following:
    - 1) Sampling Fresh Concrete: ASTM C172/C172M, except modified for slump to comply with ASTM C94/C94M:
      - a) Slump: ASTM C143/C143M, test each time set of compressive specimens are made.
      - b) Air Content: ASTM C173/C173M, volumetric method for lightweight or normal weight concrete: ASTM C231/C231M, pressure method for normal weight concrete each time set of compression test specimens are made.
      - c) Concrete Temperature: Test each time set of compressive specimens are made.
      - d) Unit Weight: ASTM C567/C567M, test each time set of compressive specimens are made.
    - 2) Concrete floor flatness and floor levelness of interior slabs as per ASTM E1155.
    - 3) Concrete moisture and alkalinity testing. See Section 09 0503 Flooring Substrate Preparation.
  - d. Compression Test Specimen: ASTM C31/C31M, one (1) set of four (4) standard cylinders for each compressive strength test, unless otherwise directed. Mold and store cylinders for laboratory cured test specimens except when field-cure test specimens are required.
  - e. Compressive Strength Tests: ASTM C39/C39M:
    - 1) Obtain one (1) composite sample for each day's pour of each concrete mixture exceeding 5 cu. yd, but less than 50 cu. yd, plus one (1) set for each additional 50 cu. yd or fraction thereof.
    - 2) One (1) specimen tested at seven (7) days, two (2) specimens tested at twenty-eight (28) days, and one (1) specimen retained in reserve for later testing if required.
    - 3) If strength of field-cured cylinders is less than eighty-five (85) percent of companion laboratory-cured cylinders, evaluate current operations and provide corrective procedures for protecting and curing in-place concrete.
    - 4) Strength level of concrete will be considered satisfactory if averages of sets of three (3) consecutive strength test results equal or exceed specified compressive strength, and

no individual strength test result falls below specified compressive strength by more than 500 psi.

- f. Samples:
  - 1) Fresh Concrete: ASTM C172/C172M except modified for slump to comply with ASTM C94/C94M.
    - a) Slump: ASTM C143/C43M, test each time set of compressive specimens are made.
    - b) Air Content: ASTM C173/C173M, volumetric method for lightweight or normal weight concrete: ASTM C231/C231M, pressure method for normal weight.
    - c) Concrete Temperature: Test each time set of compressive specimens are made.
    - d) Unit Weight: ASTM C567/C567M, test each time set of compressive specimens are made.
- B. Non-Conforming Work: Non-conforming work as covered in the General Conditions applies, but is not limited to the following:
  - 1. Correct any work found defective or not complying with contract document requirements at no additional cost to the Owner.

### 3.5 CLEANING

- A. General:
  - 1. Curing:
    - a. Clean tools, equipment as directed by Manufacturer's instructions.

### 3.6 PROTECTION

- A. Concrete:
  - 1. Protect concrete that has not received its initial set from precipitation to avoid excess water in mix and unsatisfactory surface finish.
  - 2. Do not allow materials resulting from construction activities, which will affect concrete or application of finish floor systems adversely, to come in contact with interior concrete slabs.
  - 3. Protect interior concrete floors from stains, paint, mortar and other construction activities.
- B. Curing:
  - 1. Restrict foot or vehicle traffic as curing membrane dries as recommended by Manufacturer.

**END OF SECTION**

**SECTION 03 3517****CONCRETE SEALER FINISHING****PART 1 - GENERAL****1.1 SUMMARY**

- A. Includes But Not Limited To:
1. Furnish and install Concrete Sealer on concrete surfaces as described in Contract Documents including:
    - a. Concrete sealers are used on existing or new exterior concrete surfaces exposed to freeze/thaw cycles and deicing salts or where exterior concrete is placed after about September 1st or as otherwise desired by Project Manager or Facilities Manager.
      - 1) Concrete sealer on exterior concrete is not needed or used in areas not exposed to freeze/thaw cycles and deicing salts.
- B. Related Requirements:
1. Section 03 3111: 'Cast-In-Place Structural Concrete' for concrete mix information and use admixtures.
  2. Section 03 3923: 'Membrane Concrete Curing for curing application.
  3. Section 32 1723: 'Pavement Markings' for concrete pavement parking stripes.

**1.2 REFERENCES**

- A. Definitions:
1. Concrete Sealers: As used in this specification, are sealers applied to concrete surfaces to protect from surface damage, corrosion, and staining. Sealers either block pores in concrete to reduce absorption of water and salts or form impermeable layer which prevents such materials from passing. Concrete sealer, when selected and applied properly, will prevent intrusion of water and deicers, minimizing freeze/thaw damage.
- B. Reference Standards:
1. American Association of State and Highway Transportation Officials:
    - a. AASHTO T 259-02(2012), 'Standard Method of Test for Resistance of Concrete to Chloride Ion'.
    - b. AASHTO T 260-97(2011), 'Standard Method of Test for Sampling and Testing for Chloride Ion in Concrete and Concrete Raw Materials'.
  2. ASTM International:
    - a. ASTM C672/C672M-12 'Standard Test Method for Scaling Resistance of Concrete Surfaces Exposed to Deicing Chemicals'.
  3. German Institute for Standardization (DIN Standards):
    - a. DIN EN 1504-2, 'Products and systems for the protection and repair of concrete structures - Definitions, requirements, quality control and evaluation of conformity - Part 2: Surface protection systems for concrete (2005).

**1.3 ADMINISTRATIVE REQUIREMENTS**

- A. Pre-Installation Conference: Schedule pre-installation conference for same time as application of mockup application.
- B. Sequencing:

## 1.4 SUBMITTALS

- A. Action Submittals:
  - 1. Product Data:
    - a. Concrete Sealer:
      - 1) Manufacturer's product literature or cut-sheets for specified products.
      - 2) Manufacturer's LEED product literature for specified products.
- B. Informational Submittals:
  - 1. Manufacturer Instructions:
    - a. Concrete Sealer: Written preparation and application instructions.
  - 2. Source Quality Control Submittals:
    - a. Provide protection plan of surrounding areas and non-work surfaces if requested by Architect/Owner's Representative.
  - 3. Qualification Statements:
    - a. Applicator: Provide qualification documentation.

## 1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Regulatory Agency Sustainability Approvals:
  - 1. Comply with applicable VOC standards and other local requirements.
- B. Qualifications:
  - 1. Applicator:
    - a. Applicator shall be acceptable to Manufacturer as applicator of its product.
    - b. Minimum five (5) satisfactorily completed installations of comparable quality, scope, similar size, and complexity in past two (2) years before bidding. Include contact information of person with oversight of each project.
    - c. Provide qualification documentation.
- C. Mockup:
  - 1. Required for all projects. Scheduled as per pre-installation conference.
  - 2. Mockup shall be representative of work to be expected.
  - 3. Mockup will be used to judge workmanship, concrete substrate preparation, operation of equipment, material application.
  - 4. Square footage or size of mock up is between Architect/Owner's Representative and Concrete Sealer Applicator. Consider between 10 sq ft to 20 sq ft for small projects and 100 sq ft to 200 sq ft for larger areas.
  - 5. Provide as many field mockups required to verify selections made under submittals and to demonstrate effects of concrete sealer. Approval does not constitute approval of deviations from Contract Documents, unless such deviations are specifically approved by Architect/Owner's Representative in writing.
  - 6. Install mockup in accordance with specification using same materials, staff and equipment.
  - 7. Use same personnel that will be doing project, including Supervisor.
  - 8. Approvals should be based on:
    - a. Compliance with approved submittals.
  - 9. Approval from Architect/Owner's Representative is required BEFORE starting work on Project.
  - 10. Allow twenty-four (24) hours for inspection of mockup before proceeding with work.

## 1.6 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Delivery And Acceptance Requirements:
  - 1. Materials shall be delivered in original, unopened packages with labels intact.
- B. Storage And Handling Requirements:
  - 1. Follow Manufacturer's written instructions for handling and storage of product.



- a. Store in unopened containers in clean, dry area between 35 deg F and 110 deg F or as directed by Manufacturer's instruction.

## 1.7 FIELD CONDITIONS

### A. Ambient Conditions:

1. Concrete Sealer:
  - a. Follow printed Manufacturer's instruction for environmental hazards:
  - b. Follow printed Manufacturer's instruction for ambient conditions for application of product including:
    - 1) Minimum and maximum application temperatures.
    - 2) Application precautions when rain is expected.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 PRODUCTS

#### A. Exterior Concrete Sealer:

1. Description:
  - a. Concrete sealer that protects new and existing exterior concrete from freeze/thaw cycles and deicing salts.
2. Design Criteria:
  - a. General:
    - 1) Penetrating water repellent silane or linseed oil/mineral spirit concrete sealers are to be used.
    - 2) Siloxanes are not to be used to replace silane or linseed oil/mineral spirits sealers.
  - b. Linseed Oil/Mineral Spirits Sealers:
    - 1) Protects concrete from freeze/thaw cycles and deicing salts.
    - 2) Resists penetration of water and deicing salts.
  - c. Silane Based Sealers:
    - 1) Protects concrete from freeze/thaw cycles and deicing salts.
    - 2) Resists penetration of water and deicing salts.
    - 3) 100 percent silane active ingredient content.
    - 4) Penetrating sealer.
    - 5) Water repellent.
    - 6) Clear (colorless, non-yellowing). Surface appearance after application: unchanged.
3. Limitations:
  - a. VOC:
    - 1) If Low VOC product is required or desired, use only those products listed as 'Low VOC' in acceptable products below.
4. Type One Acceptable Products. See Section 01 6200 for definition of Categories. Applicator Option:
  - a. Linseed Oil/Mineral Spirits Sealers:
    - 1) Anti Spall J33 Concrete Sealer by Dayton Superior Corporation, Miamisburg, OH [www.daytonsuperior.com](http://www.daytonsuperior.com).
      - a) Low VOC.
    - 2) Equal product meeting design criteria requirements as approved by Architect/Owner's Representative before BID. See Section 01 6200.
  - b. Silane Based Sealers:
    - 1) MasterProtect H 1000 by BASF, Cleveland, OH [www.master-builders-solutions.basf.us](http://www.master-builders-solutions.basf.us).
      - a) Low VOC.
    - 2) Weather Worker J29A by Dayton Superior Corporation, Miamisburg, OH [www.daytonsuperior.com](http://www.daytonsuperior.com).
    - 3) Barcade Silane 100 by Euclid, Cleveland, OH [www.euclidchemical.com](http://www.euclidchemical.com).
      - a) Low VOC.
    - 4) Sikagard 705L by Sika Corporation, Lyndhurst, NJ [www.usa.sika.com](http://www.usa.sika.com).

- a) Low VOC.
- 5) TK-590-100 by TK Products, Minnetonka, MN [www.tkproducts.com](http://www.tkproducts.com).
- 6) Equal product meeting design criteria requirements as approved by Architect/Owner's Representative before BID. See Section 01 6200.

### **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

#### **3.1 EXAMINATION**

- A. Verification Of Conditions:
  - 1. Verify concrete has properly cured.

#### **3.2 PREPARATION**

- A. Surface Preparation:
  - 1. Concrete Sealer:
    - a. Take necessary precautions to protect adjoining property.
    - b. Do not contaminate any body of water by direct application, cleaning of equipment or disposal of wastes.
  - 2. Cleaning:
    - a. Clean concrete surface of membrane curing and all dirt, mud spots, silt spots, loose material, vegetation, oil spots, and other objectionable and foreign material.
    - b. Remove debris, sand, dirt, and dust from concrete surface.
    - c. Power brooms, power blowers, air compressors, water flushing equipment, and blowers are acceptable equipment for cleaning concrete surface.

#### **3.3 APPLICATION**

- A. Concrete Sealer:
  - 1. General:
    - a. Apply concrete sealer after surface preparation has been completed as per Manufacturer's recommendations.
    - b. Follow Manufacturer's ambient conditions for minimum and maximum application temperatures and application precautions when rain is expected.
    - c. Stir material thoroughly before and during application if required by Manufacturer.
    - d. Do not apply sealer if standing water is visible on concrete surface to be treated.
    - e. Apply even distribution of sealer.
    - f. Do NOT over apply. All product should penetrate substrate with no surface build-up. Any excess or puddles of material must be removed.
  - 2. Apply Concrete Sealer:
    - a. Linseed Oil/Mineral Spirits Sealers:
      - 1) For maximum protection, apply onto concrete surface before it is exposed to deicing salts.
      - 2) Do not apply in temperatures below 40 deg F.
      - 3) Apply first coat at 1 gallon per 350 sq ft.
      - 4) When first coat is dry to touch, apply second coat at 1 gallon per 600 sq ft.
      - 5) When second coat is totally dry, surface is ready for traffic.
      - 6) Texture and absorption of surface will influence final coverage rates.
      - 7) This application will turn concrete to dark amber color.
    - b. Silane Based Sealers:
      - 1) Apply at rate of about 1 gallon per 300 sq ft or as per Manufacturer's recommendations depending upon absorbency of concrete surface.
  - 3. Allow Concrete Sealer to dry as per Manufacturer's recommendations.

**3.4 CLEANING**

- A. General:
  - 1. Clean tools, equipment and spills as directed by Manufacturer's instructions.
  - 2. Clean drips and over spray while still wet.
  
- B. Waste Management:
  - 1. Sterilant/Concrete Sealers:
    - a. Follow Manufacturer's recommendations for approved disposal of product and containers.
      - 1) Do not reuse empty containers.

**END OF SECTION**

**SECTION 03 3923****MEMBRANE CONCRETE CURING****PART 1 - GENERAL****1.1 SUMMARY**

- A. Products Furnished but Not Installed Under This Section:
  - 1. Quality of membrane concrete curing as described in Contract Documents.
- B. Related Requirements:
  - 1. Section 03 3111: 'Cast-In-Place Structural Concrete' for application of membrane concrete curing.
  - 2. Section 03 3517: 'Concrete Sealer-Finishing' for application of concrete sealer.

**1.2 REFERENCES**

- A. Definitions:
  - 1. Curing: Process by which hydraulic-cement concrete matures and develops hardened properties, over time, as result of continued hydration of cement in presence of sufficient water and heat. Also used to describe action taken to maintain moisture and temperature conditions in freshly placed concrete.
- B. Reference Standards:
  - 1. American Association of State and Highway Transportation Officials:
    - a. AASHTO M 148-05, 'Standard Specification for Liquid Membrane-Forming Compounds for Curing'.
  - 2. ASTM International:
    - a. ASTM C309-11, 'Standard Specification for Liquid Membrane-Forming Compounds for Curing Concrete'.

**1.3 SUBMITTALS**

- A. Action Submittals:
  - 1. Product Data:
    - a. Manufacturer's product data.
    - b. Material Safety Data Sheets (MSDS).
- B. Informational Submittals:
  - 1. Manufacturer Instructions:
    - a. Printed installation instructions.

**1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE**

- A. Regulatory Agency Sustainability Approvals:
  - 1. Comply with applicable VOC standards and other local requirements.

**1.5 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING**

- A. Delivery And Acceptance Requirements:
  - 1. Materials shall be delivered in original, unopened packages with labels intact.

- B. Storage And Handling Requirements:
  - 1. Follow Manufacturer's written instructions for handling and storage of product:
    - a. Store in unopened containers in clean, dry area between 35 deg F and 110 deg F (Keep from freezing) or as directed by Manufacturer's instruction.
  - 2. Shelf Life: Do not use curing compound that is over one (1) year from manufacturer date.

## 1.6 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Ambient Conditions:
  - 1. Do not apply curing compound when temperature of concrete is less than 40 deg F.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 MATERIALS

- A. Membrane Concrete Curing:
  - 1. Description:
    - a. Clear water-based, ready-to use membrane curing agent that cures freshly placed concrete, forming effective barrier against moisture loss from concrete surface.
  - 2. Design Criteria:
    - a. Exterior Concrete:
      - 1) Dissipating or non-dissipating membrane curing agent.
    - b. Interior Concrete:
      - 1) Dissipating membrane curing agent only.
    - c. VOC-compliant compound.
    - d. Meet requirements of ASTM C309 and AASHTO M 148, Type 1 or 1-D, Class B.
    - e. Interior concrete: containing no mineral spirits, naphtha, or other components detrimental to finish flooring installation.
    - f. Maintain ninety-five (95) percent of mix water present in concrete mass after application.
    - g. Gradually dissipate after twenty-eight (28) days without leaving stain or discoloring concrete surface.
  - 3. Horizontal and Vertical Cast-In-Place Structural Concrete:
    - a. Type One Acceptable Products.
      - 1) Exterior Concrete:
        - a) Clear Cure J7WB by Dayton Superior Corporation, Miamisburg. OH [www.daytonsuperior.com](http://www.daytonsuperior.com).
        - b) Clear Water Resin by Right Point, Dekalb, IL [www.rightpointe.com](http://www.rightpointe.com).
        - c) L&M Cure R by L&M Construction Chemicals, Inc. Omaha, NE [www.lmcc.com](http://www.lmcc.com).
        - d) VOCOMP 20 (do not use when concrete sealer will be applied in areas of freeze/thaw and deicer salts) by W.R. Meadows, Inc. Hampshire, IL [www.wrmeadows.com](http://www.wrmeadows.com).
        - e) 1100-Clear by W. R. Meadows, Inc. Hampshire, IL [www.wrmeadows.com](http://www.wrmeadows.com).
      - 2) Interior Concrete:
        - a) Clear Cure J7WB by Dayton Superior Corporation, Miamisburg. OH [www.daytonsuperior.com](http://www.daytonsuperior.com).
        - b) Clear Water Resin by Right Point, Dekalb, IL [www.rightpointe.com](http://www.rightpointe.com).
        - c) L&M Cure R by L&M Construction Chemicals, Inc. Omaha, NE [www.lmcc.com](http://www.lmcc.com).
        - d) 1100-Clear by W. R. Meadows, Inc. Hampshire, IL [www.wrmeadows.com](http://www.wrmeadows.com).
    - b. Equal product meeting design criteria requirements as approved by Architect/Owner's Representative before BID. See Section 01 6200.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION: Not Used

END OF SECTION

**SECTION 03 6213****NON-METALLIC NON-SHRINK GROUTING****PART 1 - GENERAL****1.1 SUMMARY**

- A. Includes But Not Limited To:
  - 1. Furnish and install structural grout as described in Contract Documents.
    - a. For grout base for structural columns.
    - b. For grout base for exterior light poles.
    - c. For grout base for machine bases.
    - d. For securing anchor bolts and hardware in concrete.
    - e. For securing anchor bolts and hardware in masonry.
- B. Related Requirements:
  - 1. Section 04 0516: 'Masonry Grouting'.

**1.2 REFERENCES**

- A. Association Publications:
  - 1. American Concrete Institute:
    - a. ACI 305R-10, 'Guide to Hot Weather Concreting'.
    - b. ACI 306R-10, 'Guide to Cold Weather Concreting'.
    - c. ACI 351.1R-12, 'Grouting Between Foundations and Bases for Support of Equipment and Machinery'.
- B. Reference Standards:
  - 1. ASTM International:
    - a. ASTM C1107/C1107M-17, 'Standard Specification for Packaged Dry, Hydraulic-Cement Grout (Non-shrink).'
  - 2. United States Army Corps of Engineers (USACE):
    - a. CRD C-621-93, 'Handbook for Concrete and Cement Standard Specification for Packaged, Dry, Hydraulic-Cement Grout (Non-shrink).'

**1.3 SUBMITTALS**

- A. Action Submittals
  - 1. Product Data:
    - a. Manufacturer's data sheets on each product to be used, including:
      - 1) Preparation instructions and recommendations.
      - 2) Storage and handling requirements and recommendations.
      - 3) Manufacturer's printed installation instructions for each product.

**1.4 DELIVERY, STORAGE AND HANDLING**

- A. Delivery And Acceptance Requirements:
  - 1. Materials shall be delivered in original, unopened packages with labels intact clearly identifying product name and manufacturer until time of use.
- B. Storage And Handling Requirements:
  - 1. Follow Manufacturer's recommendations including but not limited to following:
    - a. Store in clean, dry location.

- b. Keep containers sealed until ready for use.
- c. Store materials at room temperature before use.
- 2. Protect materials during handling and placement to prevent damage or contamination.
  - a. Protect materials from freezing or overheating.
- 3. Shelf Life: One (1) year minimum in original, unopened containers.

## 1.5 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Ambient Conditions:
  - 1. General:
    - a. Do not place grout over frozen concrete.
  - 2. Maintain environmental conditions and protect Work during and after installation to comply with referenced standards and Manufacturer's printed recommendations:
    - a. Do not install products under environmental conditions outside Manufacturer's recommendations.
  - 3. Follow ACI requirements for cold and hot weather concreting or Manufacturer's written instructions, whichever is more stringent:
    - a. Cold Weather Limitations:
      - 1) Follow requirements of ACI 306R for cold weather concreting.
    - b. Hot Weather Limitations:
      - 1) Follow requirements of ACI 305R for hot weather concreting.
    - c. ACI 305R-10, 'Guide to Hot Weather Concreting'.
    - d. ACI 306R-10, 'Guide to Cold Weather Concreting'.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 MATERIALS

- A. Design Criteria:
  - 1. Description:
    - a. Commercial non-shrink, non-metallic grout.
  - 2. Meet following requirements:
    - a. ASTM C1107/C1107M, Type B or Type C.
    - b. Corps and Engineers CRD C-621.
    - c. Compressive strength of 6000 psi minimum.
- B. Type Two Acceptable Products:
  - 1. Masterflow 928 by BASF Systems, Shakopee, MN or BASF Canada, Mississauga, ON [www.buildingsystems.basf.com](http://www.buildingsystems.basf.com)
  - 2. ProSpec F77 by Bonsal American, Inc., Charlotte, NC [www.bonsal.com](http://www.bonsal.com).
  - 3. Advantage 1107 Grout by Dayton Superior Corporation, Oregon, IL [www.daytonsuperiorchemical.com](http://www.daytonsuperiorchemical.com).
  - 4. NS Grout by Euclid Chemical Company, Cleveland, OH [www.euclidchemical.com](http://www.euclidchemical.com).
  - 5. Five Star Grout by Five Star Products Inc, Fairfield, CT [www.fivestarproducts.com](http://www.fivestarproducts.com).
  - 6. Duragrout by L&M Construction Chemicals Inc., Omaha, NE [www.lmcc.com](http://www.lmcc.com).
  - 7. Planigrout 712 by MAPEI Corporation, Deerfield Beach, FL [www.mapei.US](http://www.mapei.US) or Mapei Inc., Laval, QC [www.mapei.com/CA](http://www.mapei.com/CA).
  - 8. SikaGrout 212 by Sika Corporation, Lyndhurst, NJ [www.usa.sika.com](http://www.usa.sika.com) or Sika Canada, Inc. Pointe-Claire, QC [www.can.sika.com](http://www.can.sika.com).
  - 9. MP Grout by US Mix Products Company, Denver, CO [www.usspec.com](http://www.usspec.com).
  - 10. Sealtight CG-86 Grout by W R Meadows, Hampshire, IL [www.meadows.com](http://www.meadows.com).
  - 11. Equal as approved by Architect before installation. See Section 01 6200.

## **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

### **3.1 EXAMINATION**

- A. Verification Of Conditions:
  - 1. Examine substrate and verify substrate is suitable for installation.
  - 2. Notify Architect of unsuitable conditions in writing.
    - a. Do not install board over unsuitable conditions.
    - b. Commencement of Work by installer is considered acceptance of substrate.

### **3.2 PREPARATION**

- A. Surface Preparation:
  - 1. Prepare concrete surfaces in accordance with Manufacturer's written instructions:
  - 2. Remove all loose materials.
  - 3. Clean surface of any substance that could interfere with bond on material including dirt, paint, tar, asphalt, wax, oil, grease, latex compounds, form release agents, laitance, loose toppings, foreign substances and any other residues.
  - 4. Saturate area to be grouted with water in accordance with Manufacturer's written instructions.

### **3.3 APPLICATION**

- A. General:
  - 1. Follow Manufacturer's recommended thickness.
- B. Mixing:
  - 1. Mix grout in accordance with Manufacturer's written instructions.
  - 2. Add mix water in amount in accordance with Manufacturer's written instructions to provide required placing consistency.
  - 3. Do not add water in amount that will cause bleeding or segregation of mixed grout.
  - 4. Do not add any sand, cement, admixtures, or fluidifiers to grout.
- C. Placement:
  - 1. Place grout in accordance with Manufacturer's written instruction including but not limited to the following:
    - a. Proper curing is required.
    - b. Use cold weather or hot weather grouting procedures in accordance with Manufacturer's written instructions, as temperature dictates:
      - 1) Do not use at temperatures that may cause premature freezing.
      - 2) Do not allow to freeze until 4000 psi is attained.
    - c. Employ cold weather or hot weather grouting practices as temperatures dictates.
  - 2. Completely eliminate air pockets and provide full contact between grout and item being grouted. Do not exceed Manufacturer's recommended thickness.
- D. Curing:
  - 1. Cure grout in accordance with Manufacturer's written instructions or ACI curing practices.
  - 2. Wet cure grout until forms are removed.
  - 3. Seal grout surfaces after forms are removed as recommended by Manufacturer.
- E. Keep grout surfaces wet after curing compound has dried for as long as recommended by Manufacture.

### **3.4 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL**

- A. Field Inspections:



1. Verify product has been installed as per Contract Documents and Manufacturer's written instructions.
- B. Non-Conforming Work: Non-conforming work as covered in the General Conditions applies, but is not limited to the following:
  1. Correct any work found defective or not complying with Contract Document requirements at no additional cost to the Owner.

### **3.5 CLEANING**

- A. Use clean water.
- B. Clean tools and equipment with water before material hardens.

### **3.6 PROTECTION**

- A. Follow Manufacturer's recommendation for protection when applying material.
- B. Protect placed grout from freezing until minimum strength of 4000 psi is reached.
- C. Protect placed grout from damage during construction.

**END OF SECTION**

**SECTION 04 0501****COMMON MASONRY REQUIREMENTS****PART 1 - GENERAL****1.1 SUMMARY**

- A. Includes But Not Limited To:
  - 1. Common requirements and procedures for Masonry including:
    - a. References.
    - b. Definitions.
    - c. Pre-Installation Conferences held jointly with masonry sections.
    - d. Joint backing for masonry control joints and masonry expansion joints.
- B. Related Requirements:
  - 1. Section 07 9213: 'Elastomeric Joint Sealants' used with masonry joints.
  - 2. Sections Under 04 0000 Heading: 'Masonry':
    - a. Pre-installation conference held jointly with other masonry related sections including:
      - 1) Section 04 0513: 'Cement and Lime Masonry Mortaring'.
      - 2) Section 04 0516: 'Masonry Grouting'.
      - 3) Section 04 2114: 'Brick Veneer Unit Masonry'.
      - 4) Section 04 2223: 'Architectural Concrete Unit Masonry'.

**1.2 REFERENCES**

- A. Association Publications:
  - 1. The Brick Industry Association, Reston VA: 'Technical Notes on Brick Construction' (July 2012), [www.gobrick.com](http://www.gobrick.com).
- B. Definitions:
  - 1. Brick:
    - a. Cavity Wall Masonry: Wall consisting of two wythes of masonry in which space between wythes is not grouted.
    - b. Hollow Brick: Masonry unit of clay or shale whose net cross-sectional area in any plane parallel to bearing surface is not less than 60 percent of its gross cross-sectional area measured in same plane (See ASTM C652).
    - c. Solid Brick: Solid masonry unit of clay or shale, usually formed into rectangular prism while plastic and burned or fired in a kiln. Solid brick can have core holes whose area is no more than twenty-five 25 percent of total bed surface of the brick.
    - d. Running Bond: Same as common bond, with continuous horizontal joints, but vertical joints are offset or in line. Bricks of each course are offset from the previous instead of being right on top of each other. If running bond is being used with modular brick, end of brick will be at mid-point of brick on course below. Running bond only requires minimal cutting at each end and will easily follow a gentle curve. Running bond method most used.
    - e. Unit Masonry: as referred to in this specification is defined as Brick Veneer, Hollow Brick, Architectural Concrete, Composite, and Cavity Wall.
    - f. Warpage: Distortion of surfaces or edges of an individual brick from a plane surface or from straight line.
    - g. Wythe: Continuous vertical section of masonry one (1) unit in thickness.
  - 2. Brick Classifications:
    - a. Brick Color:
      - 1) No color-related tolerances in ASTM standards for brick. Standards are dictated by sample panel, mockups, or project specification.
    - b. Brick Grade (durability and exposure):

- 1) Brick is subjected to environmental and service conditions that vary. Brick is specified for its specific durability based on severity of weather and exposure and physical properties. Brick grades classifications are based on Weathering Index:
  - a) Grade SW: Severe weathering (stronger and more durable, and require less maintenance).
  - b) Grade MW: Moderate weathering (less durable).
  - c) Grade NW: Negligible or no weathering (least durable and should only be used for interior work).
- c. Brick Types:
  - 1) Type FBX:
    - a) Brick for general use in masonry where higher degree of precision and lower permissible variation in size than permitted for Type FBS.
    - b) Maintains strict requirements on absorption, waste, chipping, cracks, dimensions and distortion (warpage).
    - c) Allows very narrow color range, minimal size variations, and uniform in appearance.
  - 2) Type FBS:
    - a) Brick for general use in masonry:
    - b) Wider range of color and size variations, but lack of production controls results in many odd color lots.
  - 3) Type FBA:
    - a) Brick for general use in masonry selected to produce characteristic architectural effects resulting from non-uniformity in size and texture of individual units:
    - b) Used for aesthetic qualities.
    - c) Has no limits for size and color variations.
3. Cold Weather: as referred to in this Section, is four (4) hours with ambient temperature below 40 deg F in twenty-four (24) hour period.
4. Efflorescence: Deposit or encrustation of soluble salts, generally white and most commonly consisting of calcium sulfate that may form on surface of stone, brick, concrete, or mortar when moisture moves through and evaporates on masonry. Often caused by free alkalis leached from mortar, grout, adjacent concrete, or in clays. Test for efflorescence is described in ASTM C67 and CAN/CSA A82.
5. Flashing:
  - a. Cavity Wall Flashing: Same as flexible flashing.
  - b. Flashing: Thin impervious material placed in mortar joints and through air spaces in masonry to prevent water penetration and/or provide water drainage.
  - c. Flexible Flashing: Water-proof material typically used in cavity wall construction to contain and assist in proper water drainage that may penetrate wall system veneer. Other materials may be required to constitute the system.
  - d. Foundation Flashing: Same as flexible flashing.
  - e. Head And Sill Flashing: Same as flexible flashing.
  - f. Through-Wall Flashing: Generally considered same as flexible flashing.
6. Hot Weather: as referred to in this Section, is ambient air temperature above 100 deg F or ambient air temperature above 90 deg F with wind velocity 8 mph or greater.
7. Masonry Joints:
  - a. Masonry Control Joint: Determines location of movement in concrete masonry walls that is due to volume changes resulting from shrinkage. Vertical control joint is vertical gap through concrete masonry wythe and filled with inelastic materials. Joint backing with sealant is used on exterior side of control joint to prevent water and air penetration. Concrete masonry generally shrinks over time.
  - b. Masonry Expansion Joint. Expansion joint separates brick masonry walls into segments to prevent cracking caused by changes in temperature, moisture expansion, elastic deformation, settlement and creep. Joints are formed by leaving continuous unobstructed opening through brick wythe that may be filled with highly compressible material. Joint backing with sealant is used on exterior side of expansion joint to prevent water and air penetration. Brick masonry generally expands over time.
8. Vents:
  - a. Weep Hole: Opening placed in mortar joints of facing material at level of flashing, to permit escape of moisture.

- b. Weep Vent: Inserts placed in Weep Hole to screen insects from entering but allowing escape of moisture.
  - c. Vents (Open Head Joints): Placed at top of drainage air space to help reduce moisture buildup in air space by promoting ventilation. Weep vents may be placed vents to screen insects from entering but allowing movement of air through weep holes.
- C. Reference Standards:
- 1. ASTM International:
    - a. ASTM D2000-18, 'Standard Classification for Rubber Products in Automotive Applications'.
    - b. ASTM D2240-15, 'Standard Test Method for Rubber Property-Durometer Hardness'.
    - c. ASTM D2287-12, 'Standard Specification for Nonrigid Vinyl Chloride Polymer and Copolymer Molding and Extrusion Compounds'.
  - 2. The Masonry Society (TMS):
    - a. TMS 402/602-16, 'Building Code Requirements and Specification for Masonry Structures'.

### 1.3 ADMINISTRATIVE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Coordination:
- 1. Coordinate work with other trades with items to be built into masonry such as electrical switches and plumbing faucets.
- B. Pre-Installation Conference:
- 1. Participate in MANDATORY pre-installation conference as specified in Section 01 3100 held jointly with other Division 04 'Masonry' specifications in this Project that require pre-installation conferences:
    - a. Conduct conference at Project site.
    - b. Schedule pre-installation conference during construction of mockup panel.
  - 2. In addition to agenda items specified in Section 01 3100, review following:
    - a. Review storage and handling requirements.
    - b. Review cold and hot weather procedure requirements.
- C. Scheduling:
- 1. Brick Unit Veneer Masonry:
    - a. Structural Mortar:
      - 1) Notify Testing Agency and Architect twenty-four (24) hours minimum before placing masonry units, reinforcing, mortar and/or grout.

### 1.4 SUBMITTALS

- A. Action Submittals:
- 1. Product Data: As specified in each masonry section.
  - 2. Samples: As specified in each masonry section.

### 1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Testing And Inspection:
- 1. Owner is responsible for Quality Assurance. Quality assurance performed by Owner will be used to validate Quality Control performed by Contractor.
  - 2. Owner will provide Testing and Inspection for structural masonry (prisms, units, mortar, and grout):
    - a. Owner will employ testing agencies to perform testing and inspection for structural masonry as specified in Field Quality Control in Part 3 of this specification:
      - 1) Owner's employment of an independent Testing Agency does not relieve Contractor of Contractor's obligation to perform the Work in strict accordance with requirements of Contract Documents and perform contractor testing and inspection.
      - 2) See Section 01 1200: 'Multiple Contract Summary'.

- B. Scheduling:
  - 1. Notify Testing Agency and Architect twenty-four (24) hours minimum before placing mortar.
  - 2. Notify Testing Agency and Architect twenty-four (24) hours minimum before placing grout.
- C. Mockups:
  - 1. Masonry Sample Panel:
    - a. Sample panel 4 feet long by 3 feet high of proposed color range, texture, bond, mortar, and workmanship. Include mock-up framing and sheathing to show wall construction to be used on Project, including:
      - 1) Anchor and tie systems.
      - 2) Any specialty details, such as reveals, soldier courses, window details.
      - 3) Expansion joints if required on Project.
      - 4) Flexible flashing and required components at foundation.
      - 5) Seismic reinforcing.
    - b. Sample panel(s) shall be constructed using 'production run' material to be used on Project unless otherwise approved in writing by Architect and/or Owner.
    - c. Sample panel(s) to be used as standard of comparison for masonry work built of same material.
    - d. Sample panel(s) shall remain at jobsite until all masonry is completed.
    - e. Do not start work until Architect has accepted sample panel(s).
    - f. At Architect's direction, demolish mock-ups and remove debris.

## 1.6 DELIVERY, HANDLING, AND STORAGE

- A. Delivery And Acceptance Requirements:
  - 1. Check, carefully unload, and deliver material to site in such manner as to avoid soiling, damaging, or chipping.
  - 2. Do not use damaged masonry units, damaged components of structure, or damaged packaged materials.
  - 3. Masonry Accessories: Materials shall be delivered in original, unopened packages with labels intact.
- B. Storage And Handling Requirements:
  - 1. Aggregate:
    - a. Store different aggregates separately.
    - b. Store on high ground, or ideally, off ground to prevent contamination from dirt, organic materials and ground water, any of which may contribute to efflorescence and may be deleterious to mortar performance.
    - c. Store under protective cover to avoid saturation and freezing in cold weather.
  - 2. Cementitious material:
    - a. Store in such manner as to prevent deterioration or intrusion of foreign material or moisture.
    - b. Do not use cementitious materials that have become contaminated.
    - c. Protect from precipitation and groundwater.
      - 1) Store materials on elevated platforms, under cover, and in dry location.
      - 2) Do not use cementitious materials that have become damp or has become unsuitable for good construction.
  - 3. Masonry accessories:
    - a. Store masonry accessories clear of ground, including metal items, to prevent corrosion and contamination by dirt and ground water which may contain soluble salts and other matter which may contribute to efflorescence and staining.
    - b. Plastic and asphalt coated flashing material should not be stored in areas exposed to sunlight. During installation, flashing must be pliable so that no cracks occur at corners or bends.
    - c. Protect from damage until installation.
  - 4. Masonry units:
    - a. Store materials protected from exposure to harmful weather conditions as directed by manufacturer.
    - b. Store material on planks clear of ground which may contain soluble salts and protect from damage, dirt, or disfigurement.

- c. If units are not stored in an enclosed location, cover tops and sides of stacks with waterproof membrane, securely tied. If units become wet, do not install until they are dry.
5. Masonry Reinforcement:
  - a. Protect reinforcement, ties, and metal accessories from permanent distortions, elements and store off ground.

## 1.7 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Ambient Conditions:
  1. Mortar:
    - a. Ideal mortar temperature is 70 deg F  $\pm$  10 deg F. Mixing temperature should be maintained within 10 deg F.
  2. Cold Weather Requirements. Implement approved cold weather procedures and comply with requirements contained in TMS 402/602 including but not limited to following:
    - a. Preparation requirements (prior to conducting masonry work):
      - 1) Do not lay masonry units having either temperature below 20 deg F or containing frozen moisture, visible ice, or snow on their surface.
      - 2) Do not use frozen materials or materials mixed or coated with ice or frost. Keep materials free of ice and snow. Do not lay masonry on frozen material. Remove and replace unit masonry damaged by frost or by freezing conditions.
      - 3) Remove visible ice and snow from top surface of existing foundations and masonry to receive new construction. Heat these surfaces above freezing, using methods that do not result in damage.
      - 4) Preparation of mortar.
    - b. Construction requirements (work in progress and based on ambient air temperature):
      - 1) Do not heat water or aggregates used in mortar or grout above 140 deg F. Comply with cold weather requirements for ambient air temperatures prior to conducting masonry work in accordance with TMS 402/602.
  3. Hot Weather Requirements. Implement approved hot weather procedures and comply with requirements contained in TMS 402/602 including but limited to following:
    - a. Preparation (prior to conducting masonry work). Comply hot weather procedures when:
      - 1) Ambient air temperature exceeds 100 deg F, or exceeds 90 deg F with wind velocity greater than 8 mph.
      - 2) Ambient temperature exceeds 115 deg F, or exceeds 105 deg F with wind velocity greater than 8 mph.
    - b. Construction requirements (work in progress). Comply hot weather procedures when prior to conducting masonry work in accordance with TMS 402/602.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS (NOT USED)

## PART 3 - EXECUTION (NOT USED)

**END OF SECTION**

**SECTION 04 0513****CEMENT AND LIME MASONRY MORTARING****PART 1 - GENERAL****1.1 SUMMARY**

- A. Includes But Not Limited To:
  - 1. Quality of masonry mortar used on Project.
- B. Related Requirements:
  - 1. Section 04 0501: 'Common Masonry Requirements'.
  - 2. Sections Under 04 2000 Heading: Furnish and install mortar.

**1.2 REFERENCES**

- A. Definitions:
  - 1. See Section 04 0501: 'Common Masonry Requirements' for common masonry definitions.
- B. Reference Standards:
  - 1. ASTM International:
    - a. ASTM C144-18, 'Standard Specification for Aggregate for Masonry Mortar'.
    - b. ASTM C150/C150M-18, 'Standard Specification for Portland Cement'.
    - c. ASTM C207-18, 'Standard Specification for Hydrated Lime for Masonry Purposes'.
    - d. ASTM C270-14a, 'Standard Specification for Mortar for Unit Masonry'.

**1.3 ADMINISTRATIVE REQUIREMENTS**

- A. Pre-Installation Conference:
  - 1. Participate in MANDATORY pre-installation conference as specified in Section 01 3100 held jointly with other Division 04 'Masonry' specifications in this Project that require pre-installation conference as specified in Section 04 0501: 'Common Masonry Requirements'.

**1.4 SUBMITTALS**

- A. Informational Submittals:
  - 1. Source Quality Control Submittals:
    - a. If pre-mixed wet mortar or pre-blended dry mortar mix are to be used, provide certification from Manufacturer or Supplier verifying that mixes meet specification requirements.
    - b. If site mixed / blended mortar is to be used, provide written description of proposed method of measuring and mixing of materials.

**1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE**

- A. Testing And Inspection:
  - 1. As specified in Section 04 0501: 'Common Masonry Requirements'.

**1.6 DELIVERY, HANDLING, AND STORAGE**

- A. Delivery And Acceptance Requirements:
  - 1. As specified in Section 04 0501: 'Common Masonry Requirements'.

- B. Storage And Handling Requirements:
  - 1. Cementitious material:
    - a. As specified in Section 04 0501: 'Common Masonry Requirements'.

## **PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

### **2.1 SYSTEM**

- A. Design Criteria:
  - 1. Mixing:
    - a. Meet either proportion or property specifications of ASTM C270 for masonry mortar as per Table 3 'Proportion Specifications' and Table 4 'Physical Requirements for Masonry Cement Mortars'.
    - b. Conform with requirements of ASTM C780 and ASTM C1586.
    - c. Machine mixing should be used whenever possible.
  - 2. Mortar Minimum Compressive Strength at twenty-eight (28) days:
    - a. Type N: 750 psi.
      - 1) Brick Veneer Unit Masonry.
      - 2) Cast Stone Masonry.
      - 3) Cavity Wall Unit Masonry: Enclosure Walls.
    - b. Type S: 1800 psi.
- B. Materials:
  - 1. Portland Cement:
    - a. Meet requirements of ASTM C150/C150M and ASTM C270.
  - 2. Hydrated Lime:
    - a. Meet requirements of ASTM C207 for hydrated lime.
  - 3. Aggregate:
    - a. Meet requirements of ASTM C144 and ASTM C270.
- C. Mixes:
  - 1. General:
    - a. Heat water and sand to 140 deg F maximum if temperature is below 40 deg F.
  - 2. Unit Masonry for mortar as specified in each Masonry specification section:
    - a. Proportions of ingredients in compliance with proportion specification of ASTM 270 using Portland cement.

## **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

### **3.1 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL**

- A. Field Tests and Inspections:
  - 1. Field tests and inspection as specified in 04 0501: 'Common Masonry Requirements'.
  - 2. Sampling and testing of mortar are not required.

**END OF SECTION**



**SECTION 04 2223****ARCHITECTURAL CONCRETE UNIT MASONRY****PART 1 - GENERAL****1.1 SUMMARY**

- A. Includes But Not Limited To:
  - 1. Furnish and install architectural concrete unit masonry as described in Contract Documents.
  - 2. Furnish and install anchor bolts and embedded anchors as described in Contract Documents.
  - 3. Grout door frames installed in CMU walls.
  
- B. Products Installed But Not Furnished Under This Section:
  - 1. Anchor bolts.
  - 2. Door frames.
  - 3. Elastomeric joint sealants.
  - 4. Grout.
  - 5. Metal lintels.
  - 6. Mortar.
  - 7. Reinforcement bars.
  - 8. Reglets.
  - 9. Wall vents.
  
- C. Related Requirements:
  - 1. Section 03 2100: 'Reinforcement Bars'.
  - 2. Section 04 0501: 'Common Masonry Requirements' for:
    - a. Common masonry requirements and procedures.
    - b. Pre-installation conference held jointly with other masonry related sections.
  - 3. Section 04 0513: 'Cement and Lime Masonry Mortaring' for quality of mortar.
  - 4. Section 04 0516: 'Masonry Grouting' for quality of grout.
  - 5. Section 04 0519: 'Masonry Anchors and Inserts' for anchor bolts used in masonry.
  - 6. Section 05 1223: 'Structural Steel For Buildings' for metal Lintels.
  - 7. Section 07 7126: 'Reglets'.
  - 8. Section 07 9213: 'Elastomeric Joint Sealants'.
  - 9. Section 08 1213: 'Hollow Metal Frames' for door frames.
  - 10. Section 08 9516: 'Wall Vents'.

**1.2 REFERENCES**

- A. Definitions:
  - 1. Section 04 0501: 'Common Masonry Requirements' for:
    - a. Common Masonry Terms.
  
- B. Reference Standards:
  - 1. ASTM International:
    - a. ASTM C90-16a, 'Standard Specification for Loadbearing Concrete Masonry Units'.
    - b. ASTM C331/C331M-17, 'Standard Specification for Lightweight Aggregates for Concrete Masonry Units'.
  - 2. The Masonry Society (TMS):
    - a. TMS 402/602-16, 'Building Code Requirements and Specification for Masonry Structures'.

### 1.3 ADMINISTRATIVE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Pre-Installation Conference:
  - 1. Participate in MANDATORY pre-installation conference as specified in Section 01 3100 held jointly with other Division 04 'Masonry' specifications in this Project that require pre-installation conference as specified in Section 04 0501.

### 1.4 SUBMITTALS

- A. Informational Submittals:
  - 1. Certificates:
    - a. Prior to construction, certificates for materials used in masonry construction indicating compliance with contract documents are to be submitted. This is "Unit Strength Method" approach.
  - 2. Source Quality Control Submittals:
    - a. Manufacturer's certification that units meet compressive strength specified requirements.

### 1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Qualifications:
  - 1. Installer: Requirements of Section 01 4301 applies, but not limited to following:
    - a. Minimum of five (5) years' experience on successfully completed projects of similar nature.
- B. Testing And Inspection:
  - 1. As specified in Section 04 0501: 'Common Masonry Requirements'.

### 1.6 DELIVERY, HANDLING, AND STORAGE

- A. Delivery And Acceptance Requirements:
  - 1. As specified in Section 04 0501: 'Common Masonry Requirements'.
- B. Storage And Handling Requirements:
  - 1. Aggregate, Cementitious Material, Masonry Accessories, Masonry Units, and Reinforcement:
    - a. As specified in Section 04 0501: 'Common Masonry Requirements'.

### 1.7 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Ambient Conditions:
  - 1. Cold Weather and Hot Weather Limitations:
    - a. As specified in Section 04 0501: 'Common Masonry Requirements'.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 SYSTEM

- A. Design Criteria:
  - 1. Minimum Compressive Strength of (2000 psi 13.8 MPa).
- B. Materials:
  - 1. Mortar: Type 'S' mortar as specified in Section 04 0513: 'Cement and Lime Masonry Mortaring'.
  - 2. Concrete Masonry Units:
    - a. Design Criteria:
      - 1) Meet requirements of ASTM C90, lightweight classification:

- a) 85 lbs per cu ft (1 362 kg per cu meter) minimum weight classification.
  - b) Lightweight aggregates conforming to ASTM C331/C331M.
  - c) Do not use re-crushed masonry units as aggregate.
- 2) Outside Corners: Square-edged, except where bull nose is indicated on Contract Drawings.
  - 3) Use special shapes for lintels, corners, jambs, sash, control joints, headers, bonding, etc, as required.
  - 4) Uniform color and textures with unbroken edges. Smooth face, except where shown otherwise on Contract Drawings.

## 2.2 ACCESSORIES

- A. Construction Cleaning Compounds:
  1. Type Two Acceptable Products:
    - a. 202 or 202V by Diedrich Technologies, Oak Creek, WI [www.diedrichtechnologies.com](http://www.diedrichtechnologies.com).
    - b. Sureklean No. 600 or Vana-Trol by ProSoCo Inc, Kansas City, KS [www.prosoco.com](http://www.prosoco.com).
    - c. Equal as approved by Architect before use. See Section 01 6200.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Verification Of Conditions:
  1. Verify substrates have been properly prepared.
  2. Verify built-in items are in proper location, and ready for roughing into masonry.
  3. Notify Architect of any unsatisfactory preparation before proceeding.
    - a. Do not install masonry over unsuitable conditions.
    - b. Commencement of Work by installer is considered acceptance of substrate.

### 3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Coordinate placement of reinforcement, anchors and accessories, flashings and weep holes and other moisture control products specified in other sections.
- B. Prior to placing masonry:
  1. Clean reinforcement by removing mud, oil, or other materials that will adversely affect or reduce bond at time mortar or grout is placed.
  2. Remove laitance, loose aggregate, and anything else that would prevent mortar from bonding to foundation.
- C. Wetting Masonry Units:
  1. Concrete masonry:
    - a. Do not wet concrete masonry units before laying. Wet cutting is permitted.
- D. Reinforcement:
  1. Place reinforcement and ties in grout spaces prior to grouting.
- E. Provide temporary bracing during installation of masonry work:
  1. Design, provide, and install bracing that will assure stability of masonry during construction.
  2. Maintain bracing in place until building structure provides permanent support.

### 3.3 INSTALLATION

- A. Interface With Other Work:

1. Masonry Cutting:
  - a. Make cuts proper size to accommodate work of other trades.
  - b. Cut openings for electrical devices using cover plates no larger than can be covered by standard size plate.
  - c. Replace unit masonry in which larger than necessary openings are cut.
  - d. Do not patch openings with mortar or other material.
  
- B. General:
  1. Cold Weather and Hot Weather Limitations:
    - a. Place grout and mortar as specified in Section 04 0501: 'Common Masonry Requirements'.
  2. Maintain masonry courses to uniform dimension. Form vertical and horizontal joints of uniform thickness.
  3. Step back unfinished work for joining with new work. Use toothing only with Architect's approval.
  4. Built-In Work:
    - a. As work progresses, install masonry flashings and weep holes and other built-in work specified in other sections.
  
- C. Tolerances:
  1. Masonry work shall be true to vertical and horizontal planes within **1/8 inch (3 mm)** in **10 feet (3 meters)**, non-cumulative.
  2. Maintain **3/8 inch (9.5 mm)** mortar joints throughout.
  3. Grout space or cavity width, except for masonry walls passing framed construction: minus **1/4 inch (6.4 mm)**, plus **3/8 inch (9.5 mm)**.
  
- D. Mortar:
  1. Use mortar within two (2) hours of initial mixing. Discard mortar that has begun to set. Set masonry units within one (1) minute of spreading mortar.
  2. Do not allow mortar build-up in cavity between brick veneer and Concrete Masonry Units (CMU).
  
- E. Grouting:
  1. General:
    - a. Provide grout that conforms to requirements as specified in Section 04 0516: 'Masonry Grouting'.
    - b. Use fine grout for cavities **2 inches (50 mm)** and smaller in smallest dimension. Use coarse grout for cavities greater than **2 inches (50 mm)** in smallest dimension.
    - c. Grout hollow metal door frames installed in masonry walls solid.
    - d. Provide grout-leveling bed for support of wall plates.
  2. Concrete Masonry Units:
    - a. Fully grout cells containing reinforcing bars.
    - b. Consolidate grout by means of mechanical vibrator. Do not use cell reinforcing to rod grout.
    - c. Before loss of plasticity, mechanically reconsolidate grout.
  3. Placing time:
    - a. Place grout within **1-1/2 inches (38 mm)** introducing water in the mixture and prior to initial set:
      - 1) Discard site-mixed grout that does not meet specified slump without adding water after initial mixing.
      - 2) For ready-mixed grout:
        - a) Addition of water is permitted at time of discharge to adjust slump.
        - b) Discard ready-mixed grout that does not meet specified slump without adding water, other than water that was added at time of discharge.
        - c) Time limitation is waived as long as ready-mixed grout meets specified slump.
  4. Confinement:
    - a. Confine grout to areas indicated on Contract Drawings. Use material to confine grout that permits bond between masonry units and mortar.
  5. Grout Pour Height:
    - a. Place grout in **48 inch (1 200 mm)** maximum lifts.
  6. Consolidation:
    - a. Consolidate grout at the time of placement:
      - 1) Consolidate grout at time of placement in height by mechanical vibration or by puddling.

- 2) Consolidate pours exceeding **12 inch (305 mm)** in height by mechanical vibration, and reconsolidate by mechanical vibration after initial water loss and settlement has occurred.
  - b. Consolidation or reconsolidation is not required for self-consolidating grout.
  7. Grout Key:
    - a. When grouting, form grout keys between grout pours. Form grout keys between grout lifts when first lift is permitted to set prior to placement of subsequent lift:
      - 1) Form grout key by terminating grout minimum of **1-1/2 inch (38 mm)** below mortar joint.
      - 2) Do not form grout keys within beams.
      - 3) At beams or lintels laid with closed bottom units, terminate grout pour at bottom of beam or lintel without forming grout key.
- F. Laying:
1. Layout:
    - a. Running bond except where indicated otherwise.
  2. Joints:
    - a. Tool concave. Fill completely except where indicated differently.
    - b. Do not tool until mortar has taken initial set.
    - c. Point holes in joints. Fill and tool properly.
  3. Concrete Masonry Units:
    - a. Lay hollow masonry units dry. Do not lay masonry on frozen material.
    - b. Place hollow units so:
      - 1) Face shells of bed joints are fully mortared.
      - 2) Webs are fully mortared in all courses of piers, columns and pilasters and when necessary to confine grout or insulation.
      - 3) Head joints are mortared, minimum distance from each face equal to face shell thickness of unit.
      - 4) Vertical cells to be grouted are aligned and unobstructed openings for grout are provided in accordance with Contract Drawings.
    - c. Align cells or cavities to preserve unobstructed cavity for grouting:
      - 1) Do not allow excess mortar to block cells.
      - 2) Full bedding required on both webs and face shell under first course. Other courses need only face shell bedding except where bedding is needed to control flow of grout.
- G. Reinforcing:
1. Reinforcing shall be free of material that may destroy bond.
  2. Continuous Joint Reinforcing:
    - a. Beginning approximately **8 inches (200 mm)** from base of masonry, provide joint reinforcing **16 inches (400 mm)** on center vertically, except **8 inches (200 mm)** on center if drip crimped.
    - b. Maximum offset between brick and block coursing is **1-1/4 inch (32 mm)** using ladder adjustable-wire reinforcement or ladder adjustable-wire reinforcement with seismic hook type reinforcing. If brick and block coursing is exactly lined up, ladder adjustable-wire reinforcing may be used. However, such reinforcing may not be bent to fit coursing that does not line up.
    - c. Lap splices and intersections minimum of **6 inches (150 mm)**.
  3. Reinforcing:
    - a. Place steel as shown on Contract Drawings.
    - b. Splice 48 bar diameters minimum.
    - c. Dowel vertical reinforcing bars out of structure below with bars of same size and spacing.
    - d. Place horizontal bars in **8 inch (200 mm)** deep bond beam units at top of wall and at **48 inches (1 200 mm)** on center between. Continue bond beam units and reinforcement uninterrupted around corners and across wall intersections.
    - e. Place special vertical bars of same size as normal vertical reinforcement at corners and jambs of openings and recesses where bond beams are interrupted and at beam bearing locations not otherwise detailed.
    - f. Unless detailed otherwise, place special horizontal bars of same size as normal reinforcing above and below openings. Extend bars **24 inches (600 mm)** minimum beyond opening.
- H. Embedded items and accessories:
1. Install embedded items and accessories as follows:

- a. Construct chases as masonry units are laid.
- b. Install pipes and conduits passing horizontally through masonry partitions.
- c. Place pipes and conduits passing horizontally through piers, pilasters, or columns.
- d. Place horizontal pipes and conduits in and parallel to plane of walls.
- e. Install and secure connectors, flashing, weep holes, weep vents, nailing blocks, and other accessories.
- f. Install movement (control and expansion) joints.
- g. Provide control joints as shown on Contract Drawings if included for Project.
- h. Aluminum:
  - 1) Do not embed aluminum conduits, pipes, and accessories in masonry, grout, or mortar, unless they are effectively coated or isolated to prevent chemical reaction between aluminum and cement or electrolytic action between aluminum and steel.

### 3.4 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

#### A. Field Tests And Inspections:

##### 1. Unit Masonry:

- a. Civil and structural field tests, laboratory testing, and inspections are provided by Owner's independent Testing Agency as specified in Section 01 4523 'Testing And Inspection Services':
  - 1) Quality Control is sole responsibility of Contractor.
    - a) Owner's employment of an independent Testing Agency does not relieve Contractor of Contractor's obligation to perform testing and inspection as part of his Quality Control:
      - (1) Testing and inspections, if performed by Contractor, will be responsibility of Contractor to be performed by an independent entity.
- b. Masonry (Masonry Prisms, Masonry Units, Reinforcement, Mortar and Grout):
  - 1) Testing and Inspections shall conform to IBC Section 17 'Special Inspections And Tests' and in accordance with Chapter 3 'Quality And Construction' of TMS 402/602, 'Building Code Requirements and Specification for Masonry Structures':
    - a) Quality assurance program shall comply with requirements of Chapter 3, for Level A 'Quality Assurance' for Risk Category I, II, or III structures or Level B 'Quality Assurance' for Risk Category IV structures and as defined in ASCE 7 or latest approved adopted building code. See Structural Design Criteria as shown on Contract Documents.

#### B. Non-Conforming Work:

1. Remove and replace defective material at Architect's direction and at no additional cost to Owner.

### 3.5 CLEANING

#### A. General:

1. Clean exposed masonry surfaces of stains, efflorescence, mortar and grout droppings, and debris using methods that do not damage masonry.
2. After mortar has hardened, wet masonry and clean with specified cleaning compound. Use stiff fibered brush for application. Rinse masonry surfaces with water immediately after cleaning. Leave masonry clean, free of mortar daubs, and with tight mortar joints.
3. Wash adjacent non-masonry surfaces. Use detergent and soft brushes or cloth.
4. Sweep and rake adjacent pavement and grounds to remove mortar and debris. Where necessary, pressure wash pavement surfaces to remove mortar, dust, dirt, and stains.

#### B. Waste Management:

1. Unit Masonry:
  - a. Clean up masonry debris and remove from site.

### 3.6 PROTECTION

#### A. General:

1. Brace masonry walls until walls attain adequate strength and are tied into building structure.
2. Do not allow structural loading of masonry walls until walls attain adequate strength.
3. During construction, all walls should be kept dry by covering top of wall with strong, water-resistant membrane at end of each day or shutdown period. Covering should overhang wall by at least **24 inches (610 mm)** on each side, and should be secured against wind.
4. Covering should remain in place until top of cavity wall is completed or protected by adjacent materials.
5. Protect masonry with covering during rainy weather.

#### B. Cold Weather Requirements:

1. In cold weather, all materials and walls should be properly protected against freezing including storing of materials, preparation of mortar, heating of masonry units, laying precautions, and protection of Work.
2. Remove all masonry deemed frozen or damaged.

**END OF SECTION**

**SECTION 04 7300**  
**MANUFACTURED MASONRY VENEER**

**PART 1 - GENERAL**

1.01 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes: Portland cement based manufactured [stone] [and] [brick] veneer and trim.
- B. Related Sections:
1. **07 60 00–Flashing and Sheet Metal.**
  2. **07 92 00–Joint Sealants.**
  3. **09 24 00–Portland Cement Plastering.**
  4. **10 30 00–Fireplaces and Stoves.**

1.02 REFERENCES

- A. American National Standards Institute (ANSI):
1. ANSI A118.4 Specifications for Latex-Portland Cement Mortar.
- B. American Society for Testing and Materials (ASTM):
1. ASTM C 39 – Standard Test Method for Compressive Strength of Cylindrical Concrete Specimens.
  2. ASTM C 67 – Standard Test Methods for Sampling and Testing Brick and Structural Clay Tile.
  3. ASTM C 144 – Standard Specification for Aggregate for Masonry Mortar.
  4. ASTM C 177 – Standard Test Method for Steady-State Head Flux Measurements and Thermal Transmission Properties by Means of the Guarded-Hot-Plate Apparatus.
  5. ASTM C 207 – Standard Specification for Hydrated Lime for Masonry Purposes.
  6. ASTM C 270 – Standard Specification for Mortar for Unit Masonry.
  7. ASTM C 482 – Standard Test Method for Bond Strength of Ceramic Tile to Portland Cement.
  8. ASTM C 567 – Standard Test Method for Determining Density of Structural Lightweight Concrete.
  9. ASTM C 847 – Standard Specification for Metal Lath.
  10. ASTM C 932 – Standard Specification for Surface-Applied Bonding Compounds for Exterior Plastering.
  11. ASTM C 979 – Standard Specification for Pigments for Integrally Colored Concrete.
  12. ASTM C 1032 – Standard Specification for Woven Wire Plaster Base.
  13. ASTM C 1059 – Standard Specification for Latex Agents for Bonding Fresh To Hardened Concrete.
  14. ASTM D 226 – Standard Specification for Asphalt-Saturated Organic Felt Used in Roofing and Waterproofing.
  15. ASTM C1063 –Standard Specification for Installation of Lathing and Furring to Receive Interior and Exterior Portland Cement-Based Plaster
  16. ASTM C1329 Standard specification for Portland cement
  17. ASTM C578 – Standard Specification for Rigid, Cellular Polystyrene Thermal Insulation
  18. ASTM C1289 – Standard Specification for Faced Rigid Cellular Polyisocyanurate Thermal Insulation Board
  19. ASTM E2556/E2556M – Standard Specification for Vapor Permeable Flexible Sheet Water-Resistive Barriers Intended for Mechanical Attachment
- C. Other Standards:



1. UBC Standard No. 14-1, Kraft Waterproof Building Paper
  2. ICC AC38 Acceptance Criteria for Water Resistive Barriers
  3. UU-B-790 Building Paper, Vegetable Based, Kraft , waterproofed, water repellent and fireproof
- D. International Code Council (ICC):
1. ESR Report.
- E. Underwriter's Laboratory (UL): Building Materials Directory.
- F. **US Department of Housing and Urban Development (HUD): Material Release Numbers 910Fs.**

### 1.03 SUBMITTALS

- A. Reference Section 01 33 00–Submittal Procedures; submit following items:
1. Product Data.
  2. Samples:
    - a. Standard sample board consisting of small-scale pieces of veneer units showing full range of textures and colors.
    - b. Full range of mortar colors.
  3. Verification Samples: Following initial sample selection submit “laid-up” sample board using the selected stone and mortar materials and showing the full range of colors expected in the finished Work; minimum sample size: 3 by 3 feet (1 by 1 m).
  4. Quality Assurance/Control Submittals:
    - a. Qualifications:
      - 1) Proof of manufacturer qualifications.
      - 2) Proof of installer qualifications.
    - b. Regulatory Requirements: Evaluation reports.
    - c. Veneer manufacturer’s installation instructions.
    - d. Installation instructions for other materials.
- B. Closeout Submittals: Reference Section 01 78 00–Closeout Submittals; submit following items:
1. Maintenance Instructions.
  2. Special Warranties.

### 1.04 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Qualifications:
1. Manufacturer Qualifications: Eldorado Stone, LLC.
  2. Installer Qualifications: Experienced mason familiar with installation procedures and related local, state and federal codes masonry.
- B. Certifications:
1. ICC Evaluation Service – Evaluation Report ESR-1215.
  2. ICC ESR-1215, Florida Building Code Supplement
  3. ASTM C1670
  4. LARR – Research Report RR25589
  5. HUD – Material Release Number 910F
  6. UL – Classification listing in Building Materials Directory: UL 546T (F8002).
- C. Field Sample:
1. Prepare 4 by 4 foot (1200 by 1200 mm) sample at a location on the structure as selected by the Architect. Use approved selection sample materials and colors. Include Corner, trim and mortar joints, and abutting materials.

2. Obtain Architect's written approval before permanent installation.
3. Protect and retain sample as a basis for approval of completed manufactured stone work. Approved sample may be incorporated into completed work.

#### 1.05 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Follow manufacturer's instructions.

#### 1.06 MOCK UP

- A. Construct a masonry wall as a mock-up panel sized 4 feet long by 3 feet high; include mortar and accessories, structural backup, anchor and tie systems, any specialty details, such as reveals, soldier courses, window details, etc., brick expansion joints if required on Project, flexible flashing and required components at foundation, and seismic reinforcing in mock-up.
  1. Sample panel(s) shall be constructed using 'production run' material to be used on Project unless otherwise approved in writing by Architect and/or Owner.
  2. Sample panel(s) are to be used as standard of comparison for masonry work built of same materials.
  3. Sample panel(s) shall remain at jobsite until all masonry is completed.
  4. Do not start work until Architect has accepted sample panel(s).
  5. At Architect's direction, demolish mock-ups and remove debris.
- B. Locate where directed.
- C. Mock-up may remain as part of the Work.

#### 1.07 PROJECT/SITE CONDITIONS

- A. Environmental Requirements: When air temperature is 40 degrees F (4.5 degrees C) or below, consult local building code for Cold-Weather Construction requirements.
- B.

#### 1.08 WARRANTY

- A. Special Warranty: Manufacturer's standard warranty coverage against defects in materials when installed in accordance with manufacturer's installation instructions.

### **PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

#### 2.01 MANUFACTURER

- A. MSI  
2291 S Commerce Center Dr  
West Valley, UT 84120  
Tel: (801) 907-4800  
Website: <https://www.msisurfaces.com/>
  1. Manufacturer's Distributor:
- B. Product:
  1. Dark Stone Color: Sedona Grey
  2. Light Stone Color: Sunset Silver
- C. Substitutions: Approved Equal.
- D. Veneer Unit properties: Precast veneer units consisting of portland cement, lightweight aggregates, and mineral oxide pigments.

1. Compressive Strength: ASTM C 192 and ASTM C 39, 5 sample average: greater than 1,800 psi (12.4MPa).
  2. Shear Bond: ASTM C 482: 50 psi (345kPa), minimum.
  3. Freeze-Thaw Test: ASTM C 67: Less than 3 percent weight loss and no disintegration.
  4. Thermal Resistance: ASTM C 177: 0.473 at 1.387 inches thick
  5. Weight per square foot: 2012 IBC and 2012 IRC, ASTM C1670, 15 pounds, saturated.
- E. Weather Barrier: ASTM D 226, Type 1, No. 15, non-perforated asphalt-saturated felt paper
- F. Reinforcing: ASTM C 847, 3.4lb (1.8 kg/m<sup>2</sup>) galvanized 3/8" rib lath complying with code agency requirements for the type of substrate over which stone veneer is installed.
- G. Mortar:
1. Cement: Portland cement complying with ASTM C 1329.
  2. Lime: ASTM C 207.
  3. Sand: ASTM C 144, natural or manufactured sand.
  4. **Color Pigment: ASTM C 979, mineral oxide pigments.**
  5. Water: Potable.
  6. Pre-Packaged Latex-Portland Cement Mortar: ANSI A118.4.
- H. Bonding Agent: Exterior integral bonding agent meeting [ASTM C 932] [ASTM C 1059 Type II]
- I. **Water Repellent: Water based silane or siloxane masonry water repellent**

## 2.02 MORTAR MIXES

- A. Standard Installation (Grouted Joints):
1. Mix mortar in accordance with ASTM C 270,
  2. Polymer modified mortar complying with ANSI A118.4
    - a. **Add color pigment in grout joint mortar in accordance with pigment manufacturer's instructions not to exceed 10% by weight of cement.**

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.01 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates upon which work will be installed.
- B. Coordinate with responsible entity to perform corrective work on unsatisfactory substrates.
- C. Commencement of work by installer is acceptance of substrate.

### 3.02 PREPARATION

- A. Protection: Protect adjacent work from contact with mortar.
- B. Surface Preparation: Prepare substrate in accordance with manufacturer's installation instructions for the type of substrate being covered.

### 3.03 INSTALLATION

- A. Install and clean stone in accordance with manufacturer's installation instructions for Standard Installation (Grouted Joint) or Jointless/Dry-Stacked installation as specified above.
- B. **Apply repellent in accordance with repellent manufacturer's application instructions.**

**3.04 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL**

- A. Manufacturer's Field Services: Manufacturer's Field Service Representative shall make two periodic site visits review of on-going installation process but is not responsible for any errors or omissions that are not observed or are previously completed.**

**3.05 CLEANING**

- A. Reference Section 01 74 00–Cleaning and Waste Management.
- B. Remove protective coverings from adjacent work.
- C. Cleaning Veneer Units:
1. Wash with soft bristle brush and water/granulated detergent solution
  2. Rinse immediately with clean water
- D. Removing Efflorescence:
1. Allow veneer to dry thoroughly
  2. Scrub with soft bristle brush and clean water
  3. Rinse immediately with clean water; allow to dry
  4. If efflorescence is still visible, contact ES Customer Service for assistance

END OF SECTION<sup>1</sup>

---

<sup>1</sup> This specification was prepared specifically for Eldorado Stone Corporation by ASC Specification Consultants. Comments or suggestions for improvement should be addressed to Eldorado Stone via the contact information on page one.

Revised: APRIL 12, 2022

**SECTION 05 0503****SHOP-APPLIED METAL COATINGS****PART 1 - GENERAL****1.1 SUMMARY**

- A. Includes But Not Limited To:
  - 1. Quality of factory or shop-applied priming applied to steel supplied to Project without finish coat.
  - 2. Quality of and procedures for field touch-up and repair of factory-applied priming and galvanizing.
- B. Related Requirements:
  - 1. Section 05 4010: 'Cold-Formed Load-Bearing Metal Framing' for repair to galvanized coatings.
  - 2. Sections under 09 9000 heading: Finish painting.

**1.2 REFERENCES**

- A. Reference Standards:
  - 1. ASTM International:
    - a. ASTM A780/A780M-09(2015), 'Standard Practice for Repair of Damaged and Uncoated Areas of Hot-Dip Galvanized Coatings'.
    - b. ASTM B695-04(2016), 'Standard Specification for Coatings of Zinc Mechanically Deposited on Iron and Steel'.

**1.3 ADMINISTRATIVE REQUIREMENTS**

- A. Pre-Installation Conference:
  - 1. Participate in pre-installation conference.
  - 2. In addition to requirements of Section 01 3100, review following:
    - a. Meet with Architect before commencing repair of galvanized surfaces to establish extent of repairs required and, if applicable, choice of methods to be used.

**1.4 SUBMITTALS**

- A. Action Submittals:
  - 1. Product Data:
    - a. Product data and samples, if requested by Architect.

**PART 2 - PRODUCTS****2.1 FINISHES**

- A. Factory And Shop-Applied Primer:
  - 1. Compatible with and of equal or better quality than finish paint system to be applied by Sections under 09 9000 heading.
  - 2. Primer on unexposed, unfinished surfaces may be fabricator's standard shop coat.
- B. Repairs To Primed Surface:

- C. Unless otherwise specified, use primer which matches characteristics of original primer and is compatible with and of equal or better quality than finish paint system to be applied by Sections under 09 9000 heading.
- D. Material For Repairs Of Galvanized Surfaces:
  - 1. Non-Structural, Non-Load-Bearing Items Not Exposed To Weather:
    - a. Zinc-Rich Paints:
      - 1) Zinc-Dust Content: Dried film shall contain 94 percent minimum of zinc-dust by weight.
      - 2) Type One Acceptable Manufacturers:
        - a) Galvax by Alvin Products Inc, Everett, MA [www.alvinproducts.com](http://www.alvinproducts.com).
        - b) ZRC Galvilite by ZRC Worldwide, Marshfield, MA [www.zrcworldwide.com](http://www.zrcworldwide.com).
        - c) Equal as approved by Architect before bidding. See Section 01 6200.
  - 2. Structural, Load-Bearing Items And Items Exposed To Weather:
    - a. Zinc-Based Solders, Powder, Or Rod:
      - 1) Zinc-Cadmium solder with liquidus temperature range from 518 to 527 deg F, or
      - 2) Zinc-Tin-Lead alloy with liquidus temperature range from 446 to 500 deg F.
    - b. Sprayed Zinc: Wire, ribbon, or powdered zinc suitable for process.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 PREPARATION

- A. Surface Preparation:
  - 1. General:
    - a. Clean, grind, or otherwise prepare welds in steel that is to be coated within limits acceptable to welder responsible for structural integrity.
    - b. Surfaces to be coated shall be clean, dry and free of oil, grease, and corrosion products.
  - 2. Preparation Of Primed, Ungalvanized Surfaces:
    - a. Clean welds and grind serious abrasions.
  - 3. Preparation Of Galvanized Surfaces:
    - a. Follow requirements of ASTM A780/A780M and following:
    - b. For Repair Using Zinc-Rich Paints:
      - 1) Blast clean surfaces to near-white metal, in accordance with SSPC-SP10 (1 to 2 mil anchor pattern), as minimum.
      - 2) Where circumstances do not allow blast cleaning, power disk sand to bright metal finish.
      - 3) Extend surface preparation into undamaged galvanized area.
      - 4) Remove flux residue and weld spatter from welded areas.
    - c. For Repair Using Zinc-Based Alloys:
      - 1) Clean surface to be reconditioned using wire brush, light grinding action, or mild blasting.
      - 2) Extend surface preparation into surrounding, undamaged galvanized areas.
      - 3) Remove flux residue and weld spatter from welded areas.
      - 4) Preheat cleaned area to at least 600 deg F.
        - a) Do not overheat surface beyond 750 deg F or allow surrounding galvanized coatings to be burned.
        - b) Wire brush surface during preheating.
    - d. For Repair Using Sprayed Zinc (Metallizing):
      - 1) Blast clean surfaces to near-white metal, in accordance with SSPC-SP5 as minimum.
      - 2) Extend surface preparation into undamaged galvanized area.
      - 3) Remove flux residue and weld spatter from welded areas.

### 3.2 REPAIR / RESTORATION

- A. Repairs To Primed, Ungalvanized Surfaces:

1. Thoroughly clean metal and give one (1) prime coat of specified material, well-worked into metal joints and open spaces. Match existing primed finish as required.
  - a. Do not apply primer at temperatures below 45 deg F.
  - b. Protect un-primed machine-finished surfaces against corrosion by priming.
  
- B. Repairs To Galvanized Surfaces:
  1. Non-Structural, Non-Load-Bearing Items Not Exposed to Weather:
    - a. Repair Using Zinc-Rich Paints: Spray- or brush-apply zinc-rich paint to prepared area. Apply paint in single application employing multiple spray passes to achieve dry film thickness of 2 mils.
  2. Structural, Load-Bearing Items and Items Exposed to Weather:
    - a. Repair Using Zinc-Based Alloys:
      - 1) Rub cleaned, pre-heated areas with repair stick to deposit evenly distributed layer of zinc alloy. If powdered zinc alloys are used, sprinkle powder on surface and spread out with spatula or similar tool.
      - 2) Remove flux residue by rinsing with water or wiping with damp cloth.
    - b. Repair Using Sprayed Zinc (Metallizing): Apply 2 mil minimum coating by means of metal-spraying pistols fed with either zinc wire or zinc powder in accordance with requirements of ASTM B695, Type I.
  3. All Items:
    - a. Apply repair materials immediately after surface preparation is complete.
    - b. Take thickness measurements, with either magnetic or electromagnetic gauge, to ensure applied coating is as specified or agreed to.

**END OF SECTION**

**SECTION 05 0523****METAL FASTENING****PART 1 - GENERAL****1.1 SUMMARY**

- A. Includes But Not Limited To:
  - 1. Quality of structural metal-to-metal, wood-to-metal, and wood-to-wood bolts used on Project.
  - 2. Requirements and standards for site welded metal-to-metal connections.
- B. Related Requirements:
  - 1. Section 03 1511: 'Concrete Anchors and Inserts' for cast-in-place and drilled-in anchor bolts.
  - 2. Furnishing and installing of structural bolts specified under Section concerned.
  - 3. Performance of welding specified under Section concerned.

**1.2 REFERENCES**

- A. Reference Standards:
  - 1. American National Standards Institute / American Welding Society:
    - a. ANSI/AWS D1.1/D1.1M:2015, 'Structural Welding Code - Steel'.
    - b. ANSI/AWS D1.3/D1.3M:2018, 'Structural Welding Code - Sheet Steel'.
  - 2. ASTM International:
    - a. ASTM A307-14, 'Standard Specification for Carbon Steel Bolts and Studs, 60,000 psi Tensile Strength'.

**1.3 QUALITY ASSURANCE**

- A. Qualifications: Requirements of Section 01 4301 applies, but not limited to the following:
  - 1. Welders shall be certified 30 days minimum before beginning work on Project. If there is doubt as to proficiency of welder, Architect may require welder to take another test, at no expense to Owner. Certification shall be by Pittsburgh Laboratories or other authority approved by Architect.
- B. Certifications:
  - 1. Maintain welder's certifications on job-site.

**PART 2 - PRODUCTS****2.1 MANUFACTURED UNITS**

- A. Materials:
  - 1. Bolts And Threaded Fasteners:
    - a. Bolts: Conform to requirements of ASTM A307, Grade A.

**2.2 ACCESSORIES**

- A. Arc-Welding Electrodes: Type E70XX AWS Iron and Steel Arc-welding electrodes and meeting current AISC Specifications.



**PART 3 - EXECUTION****3.1 PERFORMANCE**

- A. Welding shall meet requirements of ANSI / AWS D1.1 and D1.3.
- B. Minimum weld sizes, unless detailed otherwise.
  - 1. Weld pipe columns to base plates and top plates with 1/4-inch fillet weld all around.
  - 2. Weld glu-lam connection side plates to base plates with 1/4-inch fillet weld all along outside edges.
  - 3. Weld stiffeners to pipe columns with 1/4-inch fillet weld all around.

**END OF SECTION**

**SECTION 05 1223****STRUCTURAL STEEL FOR BUILDINGS****PART 1 - GENERAL****1.1 SUMMARY**

- A. Products Furnished but Not Installed Under This Section:
  - 1. Miscellaneous structural steel including following:
    - a. Lintels.
    - b. Structural pipe for bollards.
    - c. Structural pipe for satellite dish base.
- B. Related Requirements:
  - 1. Section 03 3111: 'Cast-In-Place Structural Concrete' for installation of bollards and satellite dish base.
  - 2. Sections under 04 2000 heading: Installation of lintels, channel frames, and miscellaneous structural steel.
  - 3. Section 05 0503: 'Shop-Applied Metal Coatings' for quality of priming.
  - 4. Section 05 0523: 'Metal Fastening' for quality of welding.
  - 5. Section 06 1100: 'Wood Framing' for installation of miscellaneous structural steel.
  - 6. Section 09 9113: 'Exterior Painted Galvanized Metal' for preparing and painting new exterior exposed galvanized metal surfaces.

**1.2 REFERENCES**

- A. Reference Standards:
  - 1. American Society for Testing And Materials:
    - a. ASTM A36/A36M-14, 'Standard Specification for Carbon Structural Steel'.
    - b. ASTM A53/A53M-18, 'Standard Specification for Pipe, Steel, Black and Hot-Dipped, Zinc-Coated, Welded and Seamless'.
    - c. ASTM A500/A500M-18, 'Standard Specification for Cold-Formed Welded and Seamless Carbon Steel Structural Tubing in Rounds and Shapes'.

**PART 2 - PRODUCTS****2.1 COMPONENTS**

- A. Materials:
  - 1. Structural Pipe for Bollards.
    - a. Meet requirements of ASTM A53/A53M, Type E or S, Grade B.
      - 1) Weight Class, STD, Schedule 40.
      - 2) Weight Class, XS, Schedule 80.
      - 3) Weight Class, DXS.
  - 2. Structural Tubing: Meet requirements of ASTM A500/A500M, Grade B.
  - 3. Miscellaneous Steel:
    - a. Meet requirements of ASTM A36/A36M for the following:
      - 1) Miscellaneous structural steel.
      - 2) Lintels for exterior walls.
      - 3) Miscellaneous structural steel.
- B. Fabrication:

1. After fabrication and before shop priming, hot-dip or mechanically galvanize to be installed in following:
    - a. Bollards.
    - b. Lintels in exterior walls.
    - c. Satellite dish base.
  2. Shop prime steel provided under this Section.
- C. Finishes:
1. Galvanized:
    - a. Galvanize finish for following:
      - 1) Bollards.
      - 2) Lintels in exterior walls.
      - 3) Satellite dish base.
    - b. See Section 09 9113 for preparing and painting new exterior exposed galvanized metal surfaces.

**PART 3 - EXECUTION: Not Used**

**END OF SECTION**

**SECTION 05 5133****VERTICAL METAL LADDERS****PART 1 - GENERAL****1.1 SUMMARY**

- A. Products Furnished But Not Installed Under This Section:
  - 1. Metal Interior Ladders.
- B. Related Requirements:
  - 1. Section 05 0503: 'Shop-Applied Metal Coatings' for quality of priming.
  - 2. Section 05 0523: 'Metal Fastening' for quality of welding.
  - 3. Section 06 2001: 'Common Finish Carpentry Requirements' for installation.
  - 4. Section 09 9124: 'Interior Painted Metal' for painting of interior ladders.

**1.2 REFERENCES**

- A. Reference Standards:
  - 1. American National Standards Institute/American Ladder Institute:
    - a. ANSI/ALI A14.3-2018, 'American National Standard for Ladders - Fixed - Safety Requirements'.
  - 2. ASTM International:
    - a. ASTM A36/A36M-14, 'Standard Specification for Carbon Structural Steel'.

**PART 2 - PRODUCTS****2.1 ASSEMBLIES**

- A. Materials:
  - 1. Steel For Interior Ladders: Meet requirements of ASTM A36/A36M.
  - 2. Stringers: **3/8 by 2-1/2 inch (9.5 by 63 mm)** flat bar stock.
  - 3. Treads: **One inch (25 mm)** round rungs.
  - 4. Mounting Brackets: Drilled angles.
- B. Fabrication:
  - 1. Fabricate ladders to comply with requirements of ANSI/ALI A14.3 including but not limited to :
    - a. Minimum requirements for design, construction, and use of fixed ladders.
    - b. Requirements for cages, wells, and ladder safety systems used with fixed ladders, in order to minimize personal injuries.
    - c. All parts and appurtenances necessary for safe and efficient ladder shall be considered integral parts of design.
  - 2. Weld joints. Grind joints to be smooth to the touch and finished to match adjoining surfaces.
  - 3. Space treads **12 inches (300 mm)** on centers.
  - 4. Fabricate mounting brackets of drilled angles.
  - 5. Prime interior ladders.

**2.2 ASSESSORIES**

- A. Safety Post:
  - 1. Description:

- a. Enables user to step on or off fixed ladder below in safe standing position while holding onto post.
  - b. Telescoping, steel, spring balanced, painted finish.
  - c. Extends to 42 inches (1 067 mm) to locked position.
2. Design Criteria:
    - a. Meets ANSI A14.3 and OSHA 1910.27 requirements 200 pound load.
  3. Type One Acceptable Products:
    - a. Model SLP by Maxam Metal Products Limited, Burnaby, BC [www.maxammetal.com](http://www.maxammetal.com).
    - b. Equal as approved by Architect before bid. See Section 01 6200.

## **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

### **3.1 INSTALLATION**

- A. Support ladder with welded steel brackets located at top and bottom, and equally spaced but no more than 60 inches (15 000 mm) on center between top and bottom where ladder is installed against a wall. Size brackets to support design loads specified in ANSI/ALI A14.3.
- B. Safety Post:
  1. Mount safety post to top two rungs of fixed vertical ladder.

**END OF SECTION**

**SECTION 06 0573****PRESERVATIVE WOOD TREATMENT****PART 1 - GENERAL****1.1 SUMMARY**

- A. Includes But Not Limited To:
  - 1. Quality of wood preservative treatment where specified.
- B. Related Requirements:
  - 1. Section 06 1100:
    - a. Characteristics of wood to be pressure-treated.
    - b. Furnishing and installing of pressure-treated wood.

**1.2 REFERENCES**

- A. Definitions:
  - 1. Preservative-Treated Wood: Wood exposed to high levels of moisture or heat susceptible to decay by fungus and other organisms, and to insect attack. The damage caused by decay or insects can jeopardize the performance of the wood members so as to reduce the performance below that required. Preservative treatment requires pressure-treatment process to achieve depth of penetration of preservative into wood to verify that the wood will be resistant to decay and insects over time.
  - 2. Treated Wood: Wood impregnated under pressure with compounds that reduce its susceptibility to flame spread or to deterioration caused by fungi, insects, or marine bores.
- B. Reference Standards:
  - 1. American Wood Protection Association:

**1.3 SUBMITTALS**

- A. Informational Submittals:
  - 1. Certificate: Certificate of pressure treatment showing compliance with specification requirements and including information required under IBC Section 2303.1.8.1, 'Identification'.

**PART 2 - PRODUCTS****2.1 SYSTEMS**

- A. Manufacturers:
  - 1. Type One Acceptable Manufacturers:
    - a. Arch Wood Protection Inc, Atlanta, GA [www.wolmanizedwood.com](http://www.wolmanizedwood.com).
    - b. Hoover Treated Wood Products, Thomson, GA [www.frtw.com](http://www.frtw.com).
    - c. Osmose Inc, Griffin, GA [www.osmose.com](http://www.osmose.com).
    - d. U S Borax Inc, Valencia, CA [www.borax.com/wood](http://www.borax.com/wood).
    - e. Viance LLC, Charlotte, NC [www.treatedwood.com](http://www.treatedwood.com).
    - f. Equal as approved by Architect before bidding. See Section 01 6200.
- B. Performance:
  - 1. Framing lumber grade and species shall be as specified in Section 06 1100 for particular use.

2. Interior Wood in Contact with Concrete or Masonry:
  - a. Preservatives:
    - 1) Disodium octoborate tetrahydrate (DOT / SBX) meeting requirements of AWPA U1 and with retention of 0.25 lbs per cu ft.
    - 2) Zinc borate meeting requirements of AWPA U1 and with retention of 0.17 lbs per cu ft.
    - 3) CCA-C (47.5 percent chromium trioxide, 18.5 percent copper oxide and 34 percent arsenic pentoxide) by Koppers Performance Chemicals, Griffin, Georgia, <http://www.koppersperformancechemicals.com/> (0.25 lb/cu ft minimum retention).
    - 4) DURA-GUARD by Hoover Treated Wood Products, Thomson, GA [www.frtw.com](http://www.frtw.com) (.40 lb/cu ft minimum retention).
  - b. Lumber: Treat in accordance with AWPA U1.
3. Exterior Wood Continuously Exposed To Weather:
  - a. Preservatives: Waterborne preservatives meeting requirements of AWPA U1 with retention levels as required by AWPA U1 for specific application.
  - b. Lumber: Treat in accordance with AWPA U1.

**PART 3 - EXECUTION: Not Used**

**END OF SECTION**

**SECTION 06 1011****WOOD FASTENINGS****PART 1 - GENERAL****1.1 SUMMARY**

- A. Includes But Not Limited To:
  - 1. Quality of wood fastening methods and materials used for Rough Carpentry unless specified otherwise.
- B. Related Requirements:
  - 1. Section 03 1511: 'Concrete Anchors and Inserts' for Quality of Anchors and Inserts.
  - 2. Section 05 0523: 'Metal Fastenings' for Quality of bolts used for Rough Carpentry.
  - 3. Furnishing and installing of other fasteners are specified in individual Sections where installed.

**1.2 REFERENCES**

- A. Reference Standards;
  - 1. ASTM International:
    - a. ASTM A153/A153M-16a, 'Standard Specification for Zinc Coating (Hot-Dip) on Iron and Steel Hardware'.
    - b. ASTM D3498-18, 'Standard Specification for Adhesives for Field-Gluing Plywood to Lumber Framing for Floor Systems'.
    - c. ASTM F1667-18a, 'Standard Specification for Driven Fasteners: Nails, Spikes, and Staples'.

**1.3 SUBMITTALS**

- A. Action Submittals:
  - 1. Product Data:
    - a. Manufacturer's literature on framing anchors and powder actuated fasteners.
  - 2. Shop Drawings:
    - a. Submit diameter and lengths of fasteners proposed for use on Project. If length or diameter of proposed fasteners differ from specified fasteners, also include technical and engineering data for proposed fasteners including, but not limited to:
      - 1) Adjusted fastener spacing where using proposed fasteners and,
      - 2) Adjusted number of fasteners necessary to provide connection capacity equivalent to specified fasteners.
    - b. Submit on powder-actuated fasteners other than those specified in Contract Documents showing design criteria equivalents at each application.
    - c. Show type, quantity, and installation location of framing anchors. Where necessary, reference Drawing details, etc, for installation locations.

**PART 2 - PRODUCTS****2.1 MANUFACTURED UNITS**

- A. Description:
  - 1. Nail Terminology:
    - a. When following nail terms are used in relation to this Project, following lengths and diameters will be understood. Refer to nails of other dimensions by actual length and diameter, not by one of listed terms:



Nail Term	Length	Diameter	Length	Diameter
8d Box	2-1/2 inches	0.113 inch	63.5 mm	2.827 mm
8d Common	2-1/2 inches	0.131 inch	63.5 mm	3.389 mm
10d Box	3 inches	0.128 inch	76.2 mm	3.251 mm
10d Common	3 inches	0.148 inch	76.2 mm	3.759 mm
16d Box	3-1/2 inches	0.135 inch	88.9 mm	3.411 mm
16d Sinker	3-1/4 inches	0.148 inch	82.6 mm	3.759 mm
16d Common	3-1/2 inches	0.162 inch	88.9 mm	4.115 mm

B. Materials:

1. Wood fastener list:
  - a. Provide VMR Suppliers with wood fastener list.
2. Fasteners:
  - a. General:
    - 1) Fasteners for preservative treated and fire-retardant-treated wood shall be of hot dipped zinc-coated galvanized steel, stainless steel, silicon bronzed, or copper. Coating weights for zinc-coated fasteners shall be in accordance with ASTM A153/A153M.
  - b. Nails:
    - 1) Meet requirements of ASTM F1667.
    - 2) Unless noted otherwise, nails listed on Drawings or in Specifications shall be common nail diameter, except 16d nails, which shall be box diameter.
  - c. Wood Screws:
    - 1) SDS Screws:
      - a) Category Four Approved Products. See Section 01 6200 for definitions of categories.
        - (1) SDS Screws by Simpson Strong Tie Co, Dublin, CA [www.strongtie.com](http://www.strongtie.com).
      - 2) All Other: Standard type and make for job requirements.
    - d. Powder-Actuated Fasteners:
      - 1) Type One Quality Standard: Hilti X-DNI 62P8.
      - 2) Manufacturers:
        - a) Hilti, Tulsa, OK [www.us.hilti.com](http://www.us.hilti.com).
        - b) Redhead Division of ITW, Wood Dale, IL [www.itw-redhead.com](http://www.itw-redhead.com) and Markham, ON [www.itwconstruction.ca](http://www.itwconstruction.ca).
        - c) Equals as approved by Architect through shop drawing submittal before installation. See Section 01 6200.
  3. Adhesives:
    - a. Construction Mastics:
      - 1) Meet requirements of 'APA-The Engineered Wood Association' Specification AFG-01 or ASTM D3498.
      - 2) Use phenol-resorcinol type for use on pressure treated wood products.
  4. Framing Anchors:
    - a. Framing anchors and associated fasteners in contact with preservative hot dipped zinc-coated galvanized steel or stainless steel. Do not use stainless steel items with galvanized items.
    - b. Type Two Acceptable Products:
      - 1) KC Metals Inc, San Jose, CA [www.kcmetals.com](http://www.kcmetals.com).
      - 2) Simpson Strong Tie Co, Dublin, CA [www.strongtie.com](http://www.strongtie.com).
      - 3) United Steel Products Co Inc (USP), Montgomery, MN [www.uspconnectors.com](http://www.uspconnectors.com).
      - 4) Equals as approved by Architect through shop drawing submittal before installation. See Section 01 6200.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 ERECTION

- A. Secure one Manufacturer approved fastener in each hole of framing anchor that bears on framing member unless approved otherwise in writing by Architect.

- B. Provide washers with bolt heads and with nuts bearing on wood.

**END OF SECTION**

**SECTION 06 1100****WOOD FRAMING****PART 1 - GENERAL****1.1 SUMMARY**

- A. Includes But Not Limited To:
  - 1. Furnish and install wood framing and blocking as described in Contract Documents.
- B. Products Installed but Not Furnished Under This Section:
  - 1. Glue-laminated structural units.
  - 2. Miscellaneous structural steel elements.
  - 3. Roof related blocking, wood nailers, and curbs.
  - 4. Structural composite lumber.
  - 5. Wood 'I' joists.
  - 6. Wood panel product sheathing.
  - 7. Wood trusses.
- C. Related Requirements:
  - 1. Section 05 1223: 'Structural Steel for Buildings' for furnishing of miscellaneous structural steel.
  - 2. Section 06 0573: 'Preservative Wood Treatment' for quality of preservative wood treatment.
  - 3. Section 06 1636: 'Wood Panel Product Sheathing' for:
    - a. Pre-installation conference held jointly with Section 06 1100.
  - 4. Section 06 1712: 'Structural Composite Lumber - SCL'.
  - 5. Section 06 1733: 'Wood I Joists'.
  - 6. Section 06 1753: 'Shop Fabricated Wood Trusses'.
  - 7. Section 06 1800: 'Glued-Laminated Construction'.
  - 8. Sections under 06 4000 Heading: 'Architectural Woodwork' for wall blocking requirements.
  - 9. Sections in Division 07: Roofing membranes for related blocking, wood nailers, and curbs.
  - 10. Section 08 4113: 'Aluminum-Framed Entrances and Storefronts':
    - a. Pre-installation conference held jointly with Section 06 1100.

**1.2 REFERENCES**

- A. Association Publications:
  - 1. American Lumber Standard Committee (ALSC) (Maintains NIST standard):
    - a. Voluntary Product Standard:
      - 1) PS 20-15, 'American Softwood Lumber Standard'.
  - 2. National Institute of Standards and Technology (NIST), U. S. Department of Commerce:
    - a. Voluntary Product Standard DOC PS 20-15, 'American Softwood Lumber Standard'.
- B. Reference Standards:
  - 1. Truss Plate Institute / Structural Building Components Association:
    - a. TPI / SBCA. 'Building Component Safety Information BCSI 2013, 'Guide to Good Practice for Handling, Installing, Restraining & Bracing of Metal Plate Connected Wood Trusses'.

**1.3 ADMINISTRATIVE REQUIREMENTS**

- A. Pre-Installation Conference:
  - 1. Participate in MANDATORY pre-installation conference held jointly with Section 06 1636.
    - a. Schedule pre-installation conference immediately before beginning framing work.
    - b. In addition to agenda items specified in Section 01 3100, review following:
      - 1) Equipment and gypsum board blocking in wood framed walls.

- 2) Operable partition headers.
  - 3) Rough opening.
  - 4) Shear walls and struts.
  - 5) Nails and nailing requirements.
  - 6) Truss installation.
  - 7) Connections.
2. Participate in pre-installation conference held jointly with Section 08 4113.
    - a. Schedule pre-installation conference for one (1) week before scheduled installation of storefront system.
    - b. In addition to agenda items specified in Section 01 3100, review following:
      - 1) Rough opening requirements.

#### 1.4 SUBMITTALS

- A. Informational Submittals:
  1. Test And Evaluation Reports:
    - a. Technical and engineering data on nails to be set by nailing guns for Architect's approval of types proposed to be used as equivalents to specified hand set nails and adjusted number and spacing of pneumatically-driven nails to provide equivalent connection capacity.
  2. Manufacturer Instructions:
    - a. Copies of pamphlets specified in REFERENCE Article. After Architect's examination, keep pamphlets on Project site with approved shop drawings. Pamphlets may be obtained from Truss Plate Institute, Wood Truss Council of America, or from Truss Fabricator.
  3. Qualification Statements:
    - a. Alternate Supplier(s):
      - 1) Provide name and contact information.
      - 2) Provide Qualification documentation as requested.

#### 1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Qualifications:
  1. Suppliers:
    - a. Licensed by American or Canadian Institute of Timber Construction, or American Wood Systems.
    - b. Category Three Approved Suppliers Approved Supplier(s):
      - 1) Approval subject to agreement process approval.
    - c. Alternate Supplier(s):
      - 1) Fabricator Firm specializing in performing work of this section:
        - a) Firm experience in supplying products indicated for this Project.
        - b) Financial stability.
        - c) Sufficient production capacity to produce required units.
        - d) Comply with specifications and Contract Documents.
        - e) Agree to complete reporting documents, including: Agree to provide total costs to the Church including breakdown costs of millwork.
      - 2) Submit documentation to Architect or Owner.

#### 1.6 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Delivery And Acceptance Requirements:
  1. Protect lumber and sheathing and keep under cover in transit and at job site.
  2. Do not deliver material unduly long before it is required.
- B. Storage And Handling Requirements:
  1. Store lumber and sheathing on level racks and keep free of ground to avoid warping.
  2. Stack to insure proper ventilation and drainage.

3. Handle and store wood trusses in accordance with ANSI / WTCA Booklet BSCI except trusses may be unloaded by dumping if trusses are shipped horizontally, are rolled off low profile roller bed trailer, and no part of any truss is required to drop more than 18 inches.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 SUPPLIERS

#### A. Suppliers:

1. Category Three Approved Suppliers. See Section 01 6200 for definitions of Categories and Section 01 4301 for Qualification Requirements:
  - a. BMC, West Jordan, UT. [www.BuildWithBMC.com](http://www.BuildWithBMC.com). Contact Par Palmer:
    - 1) Office: (801) 224-0541.
    - 2) Mobile: (801) 376-9853.
    - 3) E-Mail: [Par.Palmer@BuildWithBMC.com](mailto:Par.Palmer@BuildWithBMC.com) or [www.BuildWithBMC.com](http://www.BuildWithBMC.com).
  - b. J. M. Thomas Forest Products, Ogden, UT. [www.thomasforest.com](http://www.thomasforest.com). Contact Tom Karren:
    - 1) Office: (800) 962-8780.
    - 2) FAX: 801-782-9652.
    - 3) E-Mail: [tom@thomasforest.com](mailto:tom@thomasforest.com).
  - c. Shelter Products, Inc., Portland, OR [www.shelter-products.com](http://www.shelter-products.com). Contact Mike Running:
    - 1) Office: (800) 662-3612.
    - 2) Cell: NA.
    - 3) FAX: (503) 238-2663.
    - 4) E-Mail: [mrunning@shelter-products.com](mailto:mrunning@shelter-products.com).

**INFORMATION:** Alternate Supplier(s) are to be included on each project. One or two Alternate Supplier(s) are to be included as approved by Project Manager. Alternate Supplier(s) must provide Qualification Statement submittal as outlined in this specification to Project Manager. Provide Supplier name(s) and contact information.

- d. Alternate Supplier:
  - 1) .
  - 2) .

### 2.2 MATERIALS

#### A. Wood Framing List:

1. Provide Category Three Approved Suppliers with wood framing list.

#### B. Dimension Lumber:

1. Design Criteria:
  - a. Meet requirements of PS 20 and National Grading Rules for softwood dimension lumber.
  - b. Bear grade stamp of WWPA, SPIB, or other association recognized by American Lumber Standards Committee identifying species of lumber by grade mark or by Certificate of Inspection.
  - c. Lumber 2 inches or less in nominal thickness shall not exceed 19 percent in moisture content at time of fabrication and installation and be stamped 'S-DRY', 'K-D', or 'MC15'.
  - d. Preservative Treated Plates / Sills:
    - 1) 2x4: Standard and better Douglas Fir, Southern Pine, or HemFir, or StrandGuard by iLevel by Weyerhaeuser Boise, ID [www.ilevel.com](http://www.ilevel.com). (LSL 1.3 E)
    - 2) 2x6 and Wider: No. 2 or or MSR 1650f - 1.5e Douglas Fir, Southern Pine, HemFir, or StrandGuard by iLevel by Weyerhaeuser, Boise, ID [www.ilevel.com](http://www.ilevel.com). (LSL 1.3 E).

#### C. Posts, Beams, And Timbers 5 Inches by 5 Inches and Larger:

1. Design Criteria:
  - a. No. 1 or better Douglas Fir or Southern Pine.

#### D. Lumber Ledgers:

1. Design Criteria:
  - a. No. 2 Douglas Fir-Larch, or Southern Pine.

E. See Contract Drawings for additional requirements.

## 2.3 ACCESSORIES

- A. Blocking:
  1. Sound lumber without splits, warps, wane, loose knots, or knots larger than 1/2 inch.
- B. Furring Strips:
  1. Utility or better.
- C. Sill Sealer:
  1. Closed-cell polyethylene foam, 1/4 inch thick by width of plate.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 INSTALLATION

- A. General:
  1. Use preservative treated wood for wood members in contact with concrete or masonry, including wall, sill, and ledger plates, door and window subframes and bucks, etc.
- B. Interface With Other Work:
  1. Coordinate with other Sections for location of blocking required for installation of equipment and building specialties. Do not allow installation of gypsum board until required blocking is in place.
  2. Where manufactured items are to be installed in framing, provide rough openings of dimensions within tolerances required by manufacturers of such items. Confirm dimensions where not shown on Contract Drawings.
- C. Tolerances:
  1. Walls:
    - a. 1/4 inch in 20 feet, non-cumulative in length of wall.
    - b. 1/8 inch in 10 feet with 1/4 inch maximum in height of wall.
    - c. Distances between parallel walls shall be 1/4 inch maximum along length and height of wall.
- D. Floors:
  1. Place with crown side up.
  2. Provide accurately fitted header and trimmer joists of same size as regular joists around floor openings, unless detailed otherwise, and support by steel joist hangers.
  3. Double joists under partitions that parallel run of joists.
- E. Walls:
  1. Openings: Single, bearing stud supporting header and one adjacent (king) stud continuous between top and bottom plates, unless shown otherwise.
  2. Corners And Partition Intersections: Triple studs.
  3. Top Plates in Bearing Partitions: Doubled or tripled and lapped. Stagger joints at least 48 inches.
  4. Firestops:
    - a. Horizontal or vertical concealed spaces in walls, light coves, soffits, drop ceilings, and other features over 10 feet in length or height, and at stairs, ceiling levels, floor levels, and other junctures of horizontal to vertical concealed spaces.
    - b. Within concealed spaces of exterior wall finishes and exterior architectural elements, such as trims, cornices or projections, at maximum intervals of 20 feet, length or height.
  5. Sill Plates:

- a. Shear Walls and Bearing Walls:
    - 1) Provide specified anchor 12 inches maximum and 4 inches minimum from each end of each plate.
    - 2) Shear Walls: Fasten with anchor bolts embedded in concrete or with screw anchors.
    - 3) Bearing Walls: Fasten with anchor bolts embedded in concrete, or with screw anchors or expansion bolts in drilled holes.
  - b. Non-Structural Walls: Fasten with powder actuated fasteners.
  - c. In addition to requirements of paragraphs 'a' and 'b' above, set sill plates of interior walls measuring less than 36 inches in length in solid bed of specified construction adhesive, except where sill sealer is used.
  - d. Install specified seal sealer under sill plates of exterior walls of main building and of acoustically insulated interior walls.
6. Posts And Columns:
- a. Unless shown otherwise, nail members of multiple member columns together with 16d at 6 inches on center from each side.
7. Beams And Girders:
- a. Built-Up Members:
    - 1) Stagger individual members of multiple span beams and girders so, over any one support, no more than half the members will have a joint. In all cases, however, joints shall occur over supports.
    - 2) Unless shown otherwise on Drawings, nail two-ply built-up members with 10d nails 12 inches on center top and bottom, staggered on opposite sides. Nail three-ply built-up members with 16d nails at 12 inches on center, top and bottom, staggered, on opposite sides. Set with crown edge up with full bearing at ends and intermediate supports.
  - b. Pre-Fabricated Members:
    - 1) Solid glu-lam, LVL, LSL, or PSL members may be used in place of built-up 2x framing members. Size shall be same as built-up member.
    - 2) Solid LVL or PSL members may be used in place of built-up LVL members. Size shall be same as sum of built-up members.
  - c. Wood shims are not acceptable under ends.
  - d. Do not notch framing members unless specifically shown in Drawing detail.
8. Nailing:
- a. Stud to plate (coordinate with Contract Drawings):

2 by 4 inch nominal	38 by 89 mm	End nail, two 16d OR toe nail, four 8d
2 by 6 inch nominal	38 by 140 mm	End nail, three 16d OR toe nail, four 8d
2 by 8 inch nominal	38 by 184 mm	End nail, four 16d OR toe nail, six 8d
2 by 10 inch nominal	38 by 235 mm	End nail, five 16d OR toe nail, six 8d
1-3/4 by 5-1/2 inch LVL	44 by 140 mm LVL	End nail, three 16d OR toe nail, four 8d
1-3/4 by 7-1/4 inch LVL	44 by 184 mm LVL	End nail, four 16d OR toe nail, six 8d
1-3/4 by 9-1/4 inch LVL	44 by 235 mm LVL	End nail, five 16d OR toe nail, six 8d
1-3/4 by 11-1/4 inch LVL	44 by 286 mm LVL	End nail, six 16d OR toe nail eight 8d

- b. Top plates: Spiked together, 16d, 16 inches on center.
  - c. Top plates: Laps, lap members 48 inches minimum and nail with 16d nails 4 inches on center
  - d. Top plates: Intersections, three 16d.
  - e. Backing And Blocking: Three 8d, each end.
  - f. Corner studs and angles: 16d, 16 inches on center.
- F. Roof And Ceiling Framing:
- 1. Place with crown side up at 16 inches on center unless noted otherwise.
  - 2. Install structural blocking and bridging as necessary and as described in Contract Documents.
  - 3. Special Requirements:
    - a. Roof And Ceiling Joists: Lap joists 4 inches minimum and secure with code approved framing anchors.
    - b. Roof Rafters and Outlookers:
      - 1) Cut level at wall plate and provide at least 2-1/2 inches bearing where applicable. Spike securely to plate with three 10d nails.

- 2) Attach to trusses or other end supports with framing anchors described in Contract Documents.
  - 3) Provide for bracing at bearing partitions.
  4. Installation of Wood Trusses:
    - a. Handle, erect, and brace wood trusses in accordance with TPI / WTCA Booklet BCSI.
    - b. Do not install damaged or broken wood trusses. Replace wood trusses that are broken, damaged, or have had members cut out during course of construction.
    - c. Provide construction bracing for trusses in accordance with TPI DSB-89.
    - d. Provide continuous 2x4 horizontal web bracing as shown on truss shop drawings.
      - 1) Secure bracing to each truss with two 10d or 16d nails.
      - 2) Lap splice bracing by placing bracing members side by side on common web member. Butt splices are not acceptable.
    - e. Unless directed or shown otherwise, provide diagonal 2x4 bracing between trusses at each line of horizontal web bracing.
      - 1) This diagonal bracing shall be continuous and extend from junction of web and top chord of one truss to junction of web and bottom chord of different truss.
      - 2) Install bracing at approximately 45-degree angle. Bracing will extend over three trusses minimum or more as determined by height of trusses and 45-degree installation angle.
      - 3) Install brace on side of web opposite horizontal web bracing and nail to each web with two 10d or 16d nails.
      - 4) Install one brace every 20 feet as measured from top of brace to top of next brace.
  5. Installation of Glue-Laminated Structural Units:
    - a. Install work in accordance with Fabricators instructions and Glue-Lam Erection Safety Practices.
    - b. Adequately support and brace work until tied into building structure to insure against collapse due to wind or other forces.
    - c. Maintain protection of beams until roofing has been installed.
  6. Installation of Structural Composite Lumber:
    - a. Install temporary horizontal and cross bracing to hold members plumb and in safe condition until permanent bracing is installed.
    - b. Install permanent bracing and related components before application of loads to members.
  7. Installation of wood Web Joists:
    - a. Handle, erect, and brace sheathing wood web joists in accordance with Manufacturer's instructions.
    - b. Do not install damaged or broken wood web joists.
    - c. Install temporary horizontal and cross bracing to hold members plumb and in safe condition until permanent bracing is installed.
    - d. Cut holes through webs at locations or of sizes shown on Drawings and as recommended by Manufacturer.
  8. Secure headers and header backing to structure as described in Contract Documents.
- G. Accessory / Equipment Mounting and Gypsum Board Back Blocking (nailers) for Wood Framing):
1. Furnish and install blocking in wood framing required for hardware, specialties, equipment, accessories, and mechanical and electrical items, etc.
- H. Accessory / Equipment Mounting and Standing & Running Trim Blocking (nailers) for Metal Framing:
1. Furnish and install blocking in wood framing required for hardware, specialties, equipment, accessories, and mechanical and electrical items, etc.
  2. Attach blocking not installed with clips with two fasteners in each end of each piece of blocking.
- I. Furring Strips:
1. On Wood or Steel: Nail or screw as required to secure firmly.
    - a. Ceiling:
      - 1) Attach furring strips to the underside of structural elements with #8 wood screws, of length to penetrate wood framing 1 inch minimum.

**END OF SECTION**



**SECTION 06 1636****WOOD PANEL PRODUCT SHEATHING****PART 1 - GENERAL****1.1 SUMMARY**

- A. Includes But Not Limited To:
  - 1. Furnish and install wood panel product sheathing required for walls, roofs, and floors as described in Contract Documents.
- B. Related Requirements:
  - 1. Section 01 1200: 'Multiple Contracts Summary'.
  - 2. Section 01 4523: 'Testing and Inspecting Services' for testing and inspection, and testing laboratory services for materials, products, and construction methods.
  - 3. Section 06 1100: 'Wood Framing' for:
    - a. Pre-installation conference held jointly with Section 06 1636.

**1.2 REFERENCES**

- A. Association Publications:
  - 1. National Institute of Standards and Technology (NIST), U. S. Department of Commerce:
    - a. Voluntary Product Standard DOC PS 1-09. 'Structural Plywood'.
    - b. Voluntary Product Standard DOC PS 2-04. 'Performance Standard for Wood-Based Structural-Use Panels'.
  - 2. The Engineered Wood Association (APA), Tacoma, WA [www.apawood.org](http://www.apawood.org).
    - a. Performance Rated Panels, 'Product Guide' (for products bearing the APA trademark) December 2011.
    - b. Voluntary Product Standard:
      - 1) PS 1-09. 'Structural Plywood'.
      - 2) PS 2-04. 'Performance Standard for Wood-Based Structural-Use Panels'.
    - c. PRP-108 'Performance Standards and Policies for Structural-Use Panels'.
  - 3. TECO, Cottage Grove, WI [www.tecotested.com](http://www.tecotested.com).
    - a. TECO PRP-133: ('Fire Rated Assemblies – OSB substitution for plywood in UL fire-rated assemblies that specify plywood).
- B. Reference Standards:
  - 1. International Code Council (IBC) (2018 or latest AHJ approved edition):
    - a. IBC Chapter 17, 'Special Inspections And Tests'.

**1.3 ADMINISTRATIVE REQUIREMENTS**

- A. Pre-Installation Conference:
  - 1. Participate in pre-installation conference as specified in Section 06 1100.
  - 2. In addition to agenda items specified in Section 01 3100 and Section 06 1100, review following:
    - a. Review Section 01 4523 for Testing and Inspection administrative requirements and responsibilities and Field Quality Control inspection required of this section.
- B. Scheduling:
  - 1. Notify Testing Agency and Architect twenty-four (24) hours minimum before placing sheathing.

## 1.4 SUBMITTALS

- A. Informational Submittals:
  - 1. Qualification Statements:
    - a. Alternate Supplier(s):
      - 1) Provide name and contact information.
      - 2) Provide Qualification documentation as requested.
- B. Closeout Submittals:
  - 1. Include following in Operations And Maintenance Manual specified in Section 01 7800:
    - a. Record Documentation:
      - 1) Testing and Inspection Reports:
        - a) Testing Agency Inspection Reports of sheathing.

## 1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Qualifications:
  - 1. Suppliers:
    - a. Licensed by American or Canadian Institute of Timber Construction, or American Wood Systems.
    - b. Category Three Approved Supplier(s):
      - 1) Approval subject to agreement process approval.
    - c. Alternate Supplier(s):
      - 1) Fabricator Firm specializing in performing work of this section:
        - a) Firm experience in supplying products indicated for this Project.
        - b) Financial stability.
        - c) Sufficient production capacity to produce required units.
        - d) Comply with specifications and Contract Documents.
        - e) Agree to complete reporting documents, including: Agree to provide total costs to the Church including breakdown costs of millwork.
      - 2) Submit documentation to Architect or Owner.
- B. Testing and Inspection:
  - 1. Owner will provide Testing and Inspection for inspection of sheathing:
    - a. Owner will employ testing agencies to perform inspection for sheathing as specified in Field Quality Control in Part 3 of this specification.
      - 1) Owner's employment of an independent Testing Agency does not relieve Contractor of Contractor's obligation to perform the Work in strict accordance with requirements of Contract Documents and perform contractor testing and inspection.
      - 2) See Section 01 1200: 'Multiple Contract Summary'.
    - b. Owner's employment of an independent Testing Agency does not relieve Contractor of Contractor's obligation to perform testing and inspection as part of his Quality Control.
      - 1) Testing and inspections, if performed by Contractor, will be responsibility of Contractor to be performed by an independent entity.

## 1.6 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Delivery And Acceptance Requirements:
  - 1. Do not deliver material unduly long before it is required.
  - 2. Protect sheathing and keep under cover in transit and at job site.
- B. Storage And Handling Requirements:
  - 1. Store sheathing on level racks and keep free of ground.
  - 2. Stack to insure proper ventilation and drainage.

**PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

**2.1 MANUFACTURED UNITS**

- A. Suppliers:
  - 1. Category Three Approved Suppliers. See Section 01 6200 for definitions of Categories and Section 01 4301 for Qualification Requirements:
    - a. BMC, West Jordan, UT. [www.BuildWithBMC.com](http://www.BuildWithBMC.com). Contact Par Palmer:
      - 1) Office: (801) 224-0541.
      - 2) Mobile: (801) 376-9853.
      - 3) E-Mail: [Par.Palmer@BuildWithBMC.com](mailto:Par.Palmer@BuildWithBMC.com) or [www.BuildWithBMC.com](http://www.BuildWithBMC.com).
    - b. J. M. Thomas Forest Products, Ogden, UT. [www.thomasforest.com](http://www.thomasforest.com). Contact Tom Karren:
      - 1) Office: (800) 962-8780.
      - 2) FAX: 801-782-9652.
      - 3) E-Mail: [tom@thomasforest.com](mailto:tom@thomasforest.com).
    - c. Shelter Products, Inc., Portland, OR [www.shelter-products.com](http://www.shelter-products.com). Contact Mike Running:
      - 1) Office: (800) 662-3612.
      - 2) Cell: NA.
      - 3) FAX: (503) 238-2663.
      - 4) E-Mail: [mrunning@shelter-products.com](mailto:mrunning@shelter-products.com).

**2.2 MATERIALS**

- A. Performance:
  - 1. Design Criteria:
    - a. Meet requirements of PS 1, PS 2, or PRP-133 (TECO). Except where plywood is specifically indicated on Contract Drawings, oriented strand board (OSB) is acceptable.
- B. Sheathing:
  - 1. Wood framing list:
    - a. Provide Category Three Approved Suppliers with wood framing list.
  - 2. Sheathing:
    - a. Sheathing shall bear grade stamp from American Plywood Association (APA) or equal grading organization.
    - b. Sheathing shall not exceed 18 percent moisture content when fabricated or more than 19 percent when installed in Project.
    - c. Sheathing **23/32 inch (18.3 mm)** thick and thicker used for single-layer subflooring shall be tongue and groove.
    - d. Sheathing used for same purpose shall be of same thickness. In all cases, thickness specified is minimum required regardless of span rating.
    - e. Minimum span ratings for given thicknesses shall be as follows:

Thickness	Span Rating
<b>3/8 inch</b>	24 / 0
<b>7/16 inch nominal</b>	24 / 16
<b>15/32 inch actual</b>	32 / 16
<b>1/2 inch nominal</b>	32 / 16
<b>19/32 inch actual</b>	40 / 20
<b>5/8 inch nominal</b>	40 / 20
<b>23/32 inch actual</b>	48 / 24
<b>3/4 inch nominal</b>	48 / 24

**2.3 ACCESSORIES**

- A. Nails:

1. As indicated on Contract Drawings.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 INSTALLATION

- A. General:
1. Top of nail heads shall be flush with sheathing surface.
  2. Use of edge clips to provide spacing between sheathing panels is acceptable.
- B. Wall Sheathing:
1. Spacing:
    - a. Provide **1/8 inch (3 mm)** space between sheets at end and edge joints.
  2. Edge Bearing And Blocking:
    - a. Panel edges shall bear on framing members and butt along their center lines.
    - b. Back block panel edges, which do not bear on framing members, with **2 inch nominal (45 mm)** framing.
  3. Nail Spacing:
    - a. As indicated on Contract Drawings.
    - b. Place nails not less than **3/8 inch (9.5 mm)** in from edge.
  4. Thickness:
    - a. As indicated on Contract Drawings.
  5. Do not install any piece of wall sheathing with shortest dimension of less than **12 inches (300 mm)**.
- C. Roof Sheathing:
1. Placing:
    - a. Lay face grain at right angles to supports. Provide blocking for support if framing turns at roof overhang.
    - b. Provide **1/8 inch (3 mm)** space between sheets at end and side joints.
    - c. Stagger panel end joints.
    - d. Sheathing shall be continuous of two spans minimum.
  2. Edge Bearing and Blocking:
    - a. As indicated on Contract Drawings.
  3. Nail Spacing:
    - a. As indicated on Contract Drawings.
    - b. Place nails at least **3/8 inch (9.5 mm)** in from edge.
  4. Thickness:
    - a. As indicated on Contract Drawings.
  5. Do not install any piece of roof sheathing with shortest dimension of less than **24 inches (600 mm)** unless support is provided under all edges.
- D. Floor Sheathing:
1. Floor Sheathing: 1 Layer Subflooring (floors accessible to public).
    - a. Apply bead of glue to structural supports. Lay face grain / strength axis across supports and with panel continuous over two supports minimum.
    - b. Allow expansion gap of at least **1/2 inch (12.5 mm)** at walls.
    - c. Tongue and Groove.
    - d. Nail Spacing:
      - 1) As indicated on Contract Drawings.
    - e. Thickness:
      - 1) As indicated on Contract Drawings.
    - f. Do not install any piece of bottom layer floor sheathing with shortest dimension of less than **24 inches (600 mm)**.
  2. Subflooring: 2 Layers Subflooring.
    - a. Bottom layer:
      - 1) Glue subflooring layers together along lines of structural supports.

- 2) Leave **1/32 inch (1 mm)** gap at side and end joints.
  - 3) Nail as per floor sheathing nailing requirements.
  - 4) Thickness:
    - a) **19/32 inch actual (15 mm)** minimum thickness, except where specifically noted otherwise.
  - 5) Do not install any piece of single layer floor sheathing with shortest dimension of less than **24 inches (600 mm)**.
- b. Top layer:
- 1) Stagger joints of second layer subflooring so they do not line up with joints of first layer subflooring, but do align with intermediate structural member (for example, align with field nailing of bottom subflooring layer).
  - 2) Glue subflooring layers together along lines of structural supports.
  - 3) Leave **1/32 inch (1 mm)** gap at side and end joints.
  - 4) Nail at **6 inch (150 mm)** centers on ends and **12 inch (300 mm)** centers on intermediate structural members.
  - 5) Thickness:
    - a) **19/32 inch actual (15 mm)** minimum thickness, except where specifically noted otherwise.
  - 6) Do not install any piece of single layer floor sheathing with shortest dimension of less than **24 inches (600 mm)**.

### 3.2 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Field Inspections:
1. Sheathing:
    - a. General:
      - 1) Owner is responsible for Quality Assurance. Quality assurance performed by Owner will be used to validate Quality Control performed by Contractor.
      - 2) Quality Control is sole responsibility of Contractor as specified in Section 01 4523 'Testing And Inspection Services'.
    - b. For walls and roof areas where nail spacing is **4 inches (100 mm)** and less on center, Inspector shall verify wood panel sheathing, grade, thickness and nominal size of framing members, adjoining panel edges, nail size and spacing, bolting and other fastening of other components.

### 3.3 PROTECTION

- A. Protect roof sheathing from moisture until roofing is installed.

**END OF SECTION**

**SECTION 06 1643****GYPSUM SHEATHING****PART 1 - GENERAL****1.1 SUMMARY**

- A. Includes But Not Limited To:
  - 1. Furnish and install exterior gypsum sheathing required for exterior walls as described in Contract Documents.
- B. Related Requirements:
  - 1. Section 07 2419: 'Water-Drainage EIFS'.

**1.2 REFERENCES**

- A. Definitions:
  - 1. Flame Spread Classification: Standard rating of relative surface burning characteristics of a building material as compared to a standard material.
  - 2. Gypsum Sheathing: Gypsum board used as a backing for exterior surface materials, manufactured with water-repellant paper and may be manufactured with a water-resistant core.
- B. Reference Standards:
  - 1. ASTM International:
    - a. ASTM C1002-18, 'Standard Specification for Steel Self-Piercing Tapping Screws for the Application of Gypsum Panel Products or Metal Plaster Bases to Wood Studs or Steel Studs'.
    - b. ASTM C1177/C1177M-17, 'Standard Specification for Glass Mat Gypsum Substrate for Use as Sheathing'.
    - c. ASTM C1280-18, 'Standard Specification for Application of Gypsum Sheathing'.
    - d. ASTM D3273-16, 'Standard Test Method for Resistance to Growth of Mold on the Surface of Interior Coatings in an Environmental Chamber'.
    - e. ASTM E84-18b, 'Standard Test Method for Surface Burning Characteristics of Building Materials'.
    - f. ASTM E119-18c, 'Standard Test Methods for Fire Tests of Building Construction and Materials'.
  - 2. Gypsum Association:
    - a. GA-253-07, 'Application of Gypsum Sheathing'.
    - b. GA-254-07, 'Fire-Resistant Gypsum Sheathing'.
  - 3. Underwriters Laboratories (UL):
    - a. UL 263: 'Test Method for Building Construction and Materials' (14th edition).
    - b. UL 723: 'Standard for Safety Test for Surface Burning Characteristics of Building Materials'; (11th Edition - 2018).

**1.3 SUBMITTALS**

- A. Action Submittals:
  - 1. Product Data:
    - a. Manufacturer's specifications and installation instructions for each product specified.
- B. Closeout Submittals:
  - 1. Include following in Operations and Maintenance Manual specified in Section 01 7800:
    - a. Warranty Documentation:
      - 1) Final, executed copy of Warranty.

- b. Record Documentation:
  - 1) Manufacturers documentation:
    - a) Manufacturer's literature or cut sheet.

## 1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Regulatory Agency Sustainability Approvals:
  - 1. Burning Characteristics:
    - a. Meet requirements of ASTM E84 or UL 723.
  - 2. Fire-Test-Response Characteristics:
    - a. For assemblies with fire-resistance ratings, provide materials and construction identical to those of assemblies tested for fire resistance per ASTM E119 or UL 263 by testing and inspecting agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.

## 1.5 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Delivery And Acceptance Requirements:
  - 1. Materials shall be delivered in original, unopened packages with labels intact.
- B. Storage And Handling Requirements:
  - 1. Store materials stacked flat on leveled supports off ground to prevent sagging or damage to edges, ends and surfaces.
  - 2. Protect materials against damage from weather, direct sunlight exposure, surface contamination, construction traffic, or other causes.
  - 3. Follow Manufacturer's recommendations for protecting materials against mold from water exposure during storage, installation or after completion.

## 1.6 WARRANTY

- A. Manufacturer Warranty:
  - 1. Defects:
    - a. Manufacturer's five (5) year Limited Warranty against defects.
  - 2. Exposure:
    - a. Manufacturer's twelve (12) month Limited Warranty that product will withstand exposure to normal weather conditions when stored and installed according to Manufacturer's instructions.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 MATERIALS

- A. Manufacturers:
  - 1. Manufacturer Contact List:
    - a. CertainTeed Gypsum, Inc, Tampa, FL [www.certainteed.com](http://www.certainteed.com).
    - b. Georgia Pacific Gypsum Corp, Atlanta, GA [www.gp.com](http://www.gp.com).
    - c. USG, Chicago, IL [www.usg.com](http://www.usg.com).
- B. Gypsum Sheathing Board:
  - 1. Description:
    - a. Gypsum Sheathing is manufactured with a water resistive gypsum core with paper. Gypsum sheathing is intended for use as a substrate under exterior wall claddings in any climate.
  - 2. Design Criteria:
    - a. Non-fire-rated exterior wall construction:

- 1) Meet requirements of ASTM C1177/C1177M, 1/2 inch thick, faced with water-resistant facing material front and back, and having treated core.
- 2) Meet Burning Characteristics and Fire-Test Response Characteristics as specified in Quality Assurance in Part 1 of this specification.
- 3) Meet mold resistance requirements of ASTM D3273: 10, in a test as manufactured.
- 4) Category Four Approved Product. See Section 01 6200 for definitions of Categories:
  - a) DensGlass Sheathing by Georgia Pacific.
  - b) GlasRoc Sheathing by CertainTeed.
  - c) Securock Glass-Mat by USG.

## 2.2 ACCESSORIES

### A. Fasteners:

1. Bugle head screws as recommended by Sheathing Manufacturer and meeting requirements of ASTM C1002, corrosion resistant treated.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 EXAMINATION

#### A. Verification Of Conditions:

1. Inspection:
  - a. Examine substrate and verify framing is suitable for installation of sheathing:
    - 1) Notify Architect of unsuitable conditions in writing.
    - 2) Do not install sheathing over unsuitable conditions.
    - 3) Commencement of Work by installer is considered acceptance of substrate.

### 3.2 INSTALLATION

#### A. General:

1. Non-fire-rated exterior wall construction:
  - a. Comply with requirements of ASTM C1280, or GA-254, and Manufacturer's written instructions.

#### B. Walls:

1. Fastening:
  - a. Apply from center of wallboard towards ends and edges.
  - b. Do not apply screws closer than 3/8 inch to ends or edges. Screws on adjacent ends or edges shall be opposite each other. Space screws not over 6 inches on center.
  - c. Adjust power screw-driver to set heads in 1/32 inch dimple.
  - d. Drive screws with shank perpendicular to face of board.
2. Single Layer Application:
  - a. Use board of size to give minimum number of joints.
  - b. Edge joints to be parallel to and occur over framing members.
  - c. Butt edges in moderate contact. Do not force in place.
  - d. Leave facings true with joint, finishing flush, vertical work plumb.
3. Sealing Sheathing Joint/Penetrations:
  - a. Seal as required, according to Sheathing Manufacturer's written recommendations.

- C. Gypsum Board used with Soffits: Eliminate control and taped joints where board is sheathed with aluminum.



**3.3 PROTECTION**

- A. Gypsum Sheathing used with EIFS:
  - 1. Follow Manufacturer's recommendation for protecting gypsum sheathing from moisture and deterioration damage until air barrier, structural sheathing or exterior finish system is installed.

**END OF SECTION**

**SECTION 06 1712****STRUCTURAL COMPOSITE LUMBER: SCL****PART 1 - GENERAL****1.1 SUMMARY**

- A. Products Furnished But Not Installed Under This Section:
  - 1. Laminated Veneer Lumber (LVL).
  - 2. Parallel Strand Lumber (PSL).
  - 3. Laminated Strand Lumber (LSL).
- B. Related Requirements:
  - 1. Section 06 1100: 'Wood Framing' for installation, securing, bracing, etc.

**1.2 REFERENCES**

- A. Reference Standards:
  - 1. ASTM International:
    - a. ASTM D2559-12a(2018), 'Standard Specification for Adhesives for Structural Laminated Wood Products for Use Under Exterior Exposure Conditions'.
    - b. ASTM D5456-18, 'Standard Specification for Evaluation of Structural Composite Lumber Products'.

**1.3 SUBMITTALS**

- A. Informational Submittals:
  - 1. Certificates: Provide certification confirming that material structural design properties and design stresses have met or exceed requirements shown on Drawings.
  - 2. Test And Evaluation Reports: Copies of ICC or CCMC reports showing approval materials.
  - 3. Qualification Statements:
    - a. Alternate Supplier(s):
      - 1) Provide name and contact information.
      - 2) Provide Qualification documentation as requested.

**1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE**

- A. Qualifications:
  - 1. Suppliers:
    - a. Category Three Approved Supplier(s):
      - 1) Approval subject to agreement process approval.
    - b. Alternate Supplier(s):
      - 1) Fabricator Firm specializing in performing work of this section.
      - 2) Provide documentation of the following:
        - a) Firm experience in supplying products indicated for this Project.
        - b) Financial stability.
        - c) Sufficient production capacity to produce required units.
        - d) Comply with specifications and Contract Documents.
        - e) Agree to complete reporting documents, including: Agree to provide total costs to the Church including breakdown costs of millwork.
    - 3) Submit documentation to Architect or Owner.

**SECTION 06 1712****STRUCTURAL COMPOSITE LUMBER: SCL****PART 1 - GENERAL****1.1 SUMMARY**

- A. Products Furnished But Not Installed Under This Section:
  - 1. Laminated Veneer Lumber (LVL).
  - 2. Parallel Strand Lumber (PSL).
  - 3. Laminated Strand Lumber (LSL).
- B. Related Requirements:
  - 1. Section 06 1100: 'Wood Framing' for installation, securing, bracing, etc.

**1.2 REFERENCES**

- A. Reference Standards:
  - 1. ASTM International:
    - a. ASTM D2559-12a(2018), 'Standard Specification for Adhesives for Structural Laminated Wood Products for Use Under Exterior Exposure Conditions'.
    - b. ASTM D5456-18, 'Standard Specification for Evaluation of Structural Composite Lumber Products'.

**1.3 SUBMITTALS**

- A. Informational Submittals:
  - 1. Certificates: Provide certification confirming that material structural design properties and design stresses have met or exceed requirements shown on Drawings.
  - 2. Test And Evaluation Reports: Copies of ICC or CCMC reports showing approval materials.
  - 3. Qualification Statements:
    - a. Alternate Supplier(s):
      - 1) Provide name and contact information.
      - 2) Provide Qualification documentation as requested.

**1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE**

- A. Qualifications:
  - 1. Suppliers:
    - a. Category Three Approved Supplier(s):
      - 1) Approval subject to agreement process approval.
    - b. Alternate Supplier(s):
      - 1) Fabricator Firm specializing in performing work of this section.
      - 2) Provide documentation of the following:
        - a) Firm experience in supplying products indicated for this Project.
        - b) Financial stability.
        - c) Sufficient production capacity to produce required units.
        - d) Comply with specifications and Contract Documents.
        - e) Agree to complete reporting documents, including: Agree to provide total costs to the Church including breakdown costs of millwork.
    - 3) Submit documentation to Architect or Owner.

## 1.5 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Storage And Handling Requirements:
1. Store members on job site in accordance with Manufacturer's instructions.
  2. Keep dry and provide supports to keep members off floor or ground.
  3. Split plastic wrappers of members stored encased in plastic on bottom side to allow for air circulation.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 MANUFACTURED UNITS

- A. Suppliers:
1. Category Three Approved Suppliers. See Section 01 6200 for definitions of Categories and Section 01 4301 for Qualification Requirements:
    - a. BMC, West Jordan, UT. [www.BuildWithBMC.com](http://www.BuildWithBMC.com). Contact Par Palmer:
      - 1) Office: (801) 224-0541.
      - 2) Mobile: (801) 376-9853.
      - 3) E-Mail: [Par.Palmer@BuildWithBMC.com](mailto:Par.Palmer@BuildWithBMC.com) or [www.BuildWithBMC.com](http://www.BuildWithBMC.com).
    - b. J. M. Thomas Forest Products, Ogden, UT. [www.thomasforest.com](http://www.thomasforest.com). Contact Tom Karren:
      - 1) Office: (800) 962-8780.
      - 2) FAX: 801-782-9652.
      - 3) E-Mail: [tom@thomasforest.com](mailto:tom@thomasforest.com).
    - c. Shelter Products, Inc., Portland, OR [www.shelter-products.com](http://www.shelter-products.com). Contact Mike Running:
      - 1) Office: (800) 662-3612.
      - 2) Cell: NA.
      - 3) FAX: (503) 238-2663.
      - 4) E-Mail: [mrunning@shelter-products.com](mailto:mrunning@shelter-products.com).
    - d. Alternate Supplier:
      - 1) Alternate suppliers, if used, are to be included by addendum.
- B. Acceptable Manufacturers:
1. Boise Cascade Corp, Boise, ID [www.bc.com](http://www.bc.com).
  2. Georgia-Pacific Corp, Atlanta, GA [www.gp.com](http://www.gp.com).
  3. Jager Industries Inc, Calgary, AB [www.jagerbuildingsystems.com](http://www.jagerbuildingsystems.com).
  4. Louisiana Pacific Corp, Portland, OR [www.lpcorp.com](http://www.lpcorp.com).
  5. Roseburg Forest Products, Roseburg, OR [www.roseburg.com](http://www.roseburg.com).
  6. Trus Joist Corp, Div Weyerhaeuser, Boise, ID [www.tjm.com](http://www.tjm.com) or Surrey, BC (604) 588-7878.
  7. Web Joist, Chehalis, WA [www.webjoist.com](http://www.webjoist.com).
  8. Weyerhaeuser, Engineered Lumber Products, Boise, ID [www.woodbywy.com](http://www.woodbywy.com).
  9. Equal as approved by Architect before bidding. See Section 01 6200.
- C. Design Criteria:
1. Materials shall be tested and evaluated in accordance with ASTM D5456.
  2. Materials shall have current ICC-ES Evaluation Report, report approved by International Codes Council, or report issued by Architect approved model code evaluation service and shall comply with requirements of report.
- D. Materials:
1. Wood framing list:
    - a. Provide Category Three Approved Suppliers with wood framing list.
  2. Members:
    - a. Identify materials by stamp or stamps indicating manufacturer's name, product trade name, grade, species (if applicable), evaluation report number, plant number, and name or logo of independent inspection agency.
  3. Adhesive: Meet requirements of ASTM D2559.

- E. Fabrication: Materials shall be manufactured in a plant evaluated for fabrication by governing code evaluation service and under supervision of third party inspection agency listed by governing code evaluation service.

**PART 3 - EXECUTION: Not Used**

**END OF SECTION**

**SECTION 06 1733****WOOD 'I' JOISTS****PART 1 - GENERAL****1.1 SUMMARY**

- A. Products Furnished but Not Installed Under This Section:
  - 1. Plywood web 'I' joists, web stiffeners, and components.
- B. Related Requirements:
  - 1. Section 06 1100: 'Wood Framing' for installation, securing, bracing, etc.

**1.2 REFERENCES**

- A. Association Publications:
  - 1. International Code Council (ICC):
    - a. ICC, 500 New Jersey Avenue, NW, 6th Floor, Washington, DC 20001, Phone (888) ICC-SAFE (422-7233) [www.iccsafe.org](http://www.iccsafe.org).
    - b. ICC-ES Evaluation Reports, [www.icc-es.org](http://www.icc-es.org).

**1.3 SUBMITTALS**

- A. Action Submittals:
  - 1. Shop Drawings:
    - a. Include following information on submitted shop drawings:
      - 1) Show critical dimensions for determining fit and placement in building as well as loads joists are designed to support.
      - 2) Flange material and sizes.
      - 3) Size, thickness, and dimension of web.
      - 4) Lumber species and grades used.
      - 5) Web stiffener locations, make-up, and installation.
      - 6) Name and trademark of Manufacturer.
- B. Informational Submittals:
  - 1. Test And Evaluation Reports: Copies of ICC reports showing approval of connections and webs.
  - 2. Qualification Statements:
    - a. Alternate Supplier(s):
      - 1) Provide name and contact information.
      - 2) Provide Qualification documentation as requested.

**1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE**

- A. Qualifications:
  - 1. Suppliers:
    - a. VMR Approved Supplier(s):
      - 1) Approval subject to VMR agreement process approval.
    - b. Alternate Supplier(s):
      - 1) Fabricator Firm specializing in performing work of this section.
      - 2) Provide documentation of the following:
        - a) Firm experience in supplying products indicated for this Project.
        - b) Financial stability.
        - c) Sufficient production capacity to produce required units.

- d) Comply with specifications and Contract Documents.
  - e) Agree to complete reporting documents, including: Agree to provide total costs to the Church including breakdown costs of millwork.
- 3) Submit documentation to Architect or Owner.

## 1.5 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Storage And Handling Requirements:
- 1. Store joists in vertical position protected from weather.
  - 2. Handle with care to prevent damage.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 MANUFACTURED UNITS

- A. Suppliers:
- 1. Category Three Approved Suppliers. See Section 01 6200 for definitions of Categories and Section 01 4301 for Qualification Requirements:
    - a. BMC, West Jordan, UT. [www.BuildWithBMC.com](http://www.BuildWithBMC.com). Contact Par Palmer:
      - 1) Office: (801) 224-0541.
      - 2) Mobile: (801) 376-9853.
      - 3) E-Mail: [Par.Palmer@BuildWithBMC.com](mailto:Par.Palmer@BuildWithBMC.com) or [www.BuildWithBMC.com](http://www.BuildWithBMC.com).
    - b. J. M. Thomas Forest Products, Ogden, UT. [www.thomasforest.com](http://www.thomasforest.com). Contact Tom Karren:
      - 1) Office: (800) 962-8780.
      - 2) FAX: 801-782-9652.
      - 3) E-Mail: [tom@thomasforest.com](mailto:tom@thomasforest.com).
    - c. Shelter Products, Inc., Portland, OR [www.shelter-products.com](http://www.shelter-products.com). Contact Mike Running:
      - 1) Office: (800) 662-3612.
      - 2) Cell: NA.
      - 3) FAX: (503) 238-2663.
      - 4) E-Mail: [mrunning@shelter-products.com](mailto:mrunning@shelter-products.com).
    - d. Alternate Supplier:
      - 1) Alternate suppliers, if used, are to be included by addendum.
- B. Acceptable Manufacturers:
- 1. Boise Cascade Corp, Boise, ID [www.bc.com](http://www.bc.com).
  - 2. Georgia-Pacific Corp, Atlanta, GA [www.gp.com](http://www.gp.com).
  - 3. Jager Industries Inc, Calgary, AB [www.jagerbuildingsystems.com](http://www.jagerbuildingsystems.com).
  - 4. Louisiana Pacific Corp, Portland, OR [www.lpcorp.com](http://www.lpcorp.com).
  - 5. Roseburg Forest Products, Roseburg, OR [www.roseburg.com](http://www.roseburg.com).
  - 6. Trus Joist Corp, Div Weyerhaeuser, Boise, ID [www.tjm.com](http://www.tjm.com) or Surrey, BC (604) 588-7878.
  - 7. Web Joist, Chehalis, WA [www.webjoist.com](http://www.webjoist.com).
  - 8. Weyerhaeuser, Engineered Lumber Products, Boise, ID [www.woodbywy.com](http://www.woodbywy.com).
  - 9. Equal as approved by Architect before bidding. See Section 01 6200.
- C. Performance:
- 1. Design Criteria:
    - a. Provide joists that meet the load capacity and stiffness requirements shown on Drawings.
    - b. Provide joists that meet shear, moment, and stiffness properties shown on Drawings.
    - c. Custom design joists under supervision of registered professional engineer. Designs shall be in accordance with allowable values assigned by building code approval.
    - d. Only connections and webs currently approved by Research Committee of ICC or by Canadian Construction Materials Centre (CCMC) are acceptable for use.
    - e. Materials shall have current ICC-ES Evaluation Report, report approved by International Codes Council, or report issued by Architect approved model code evaluation service and shall comply with requirements of report.

- D. Materials:
  - 1. Wood framing list:
    - a. Provide Category Three Suppliers with wood framing list.

## **2.2 FABRICATION**

- A. Fabrication of joists shall be as approved by ICC, except where requirements of Contract Documents exceed ICC requirements.

### **PART 3 - EXECUTION: Not Used**

**END OF SECTION**



**SECTION 06 1800****GLUED-LAMINATED CONSTRUCTION****PART 1 - GENERAL****1.1 SUMMARY**

- A. Products Furnished but Not Installed Under This Section:
  - 1. Glu-lam beams.
- B. Related Requirements:
  - 1. Section 05 1223: Hardware and steel shapes.
  - 2. Section 06 1100: 'Wood Framing' for installation.

**1.2 REFERENCES**

- A. Reference Standards:
  - 1. American National Standards Institute:
    - a. ANSI A190.1-2017, 'Standard for Wood Products - Structural Glued Laminated Timber'.
  - 2. ASTM International:
    - a. ASTM A36/A36M-14, 'Standard Specification for Carbon Structural Steel.

**1.3 SUBMITTALS**

- A. Informational Submittals:
  - 1. Certificates: Copy of licensing certificate from AITC, APA-EWS, or CITC..
  - 2. Qualification Statements:
    - a. Alternate Supplier(s):
      - 1) Provide name and contact information.
      - 2) Provide Qualification documentation as requested.

**1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE**

- A. Qualifications:
  - 1. Fabricator: Licensed by American or Canadian Institute of Timber Construction, or American Wood Systems.
  - 2. Suppliers:
    - a. Category Three Approved Supplier(s):
      - 1) Approval subject to agreement process approval.
    - b. Alternate Supplier(s):
      - 1) Fabricator Firm specializing in performing work of this section.
      - 2) Provide documentation of the following:
        - a) Firm experience in supplying products indicated for this Project.
        - b) Financial stability.
        - c) Sufficient production capacity to produce required units.
        - d) Comply with specifications and Contract Documents.
        - e) Agree to complete reporting documents, including: Agree to provide total costs to the Church including breakdown costs of millwork.
    - 3) Submit documentation to Architect or Owner.

## 1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Qualifications:
  - 1. Fabricator: Licensed by American or Canadian Institute of Timber Construction, or American Wood Systems.
- B. Certifications:
  - 1. Each beam shall bear AITC, APA-EWS, or CITC quality mark.

## 1.6 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Delivery And Acceptance Requirements:
  - 1. Wrap members separately with heavy water repellent covers.
  - 2. Protect against damage in transit.
- B. Storage And Handling Requirements:
  - 1. Store and handle to insure maintenance of appearance.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 MANUFACTURED UNITS

- A. Suppliers:
  - 1. Category Three Approved Suppliers. See Section 01 6200 for definitions of Categories and Section 01 4301 for Qualification Requirements:
    - a. BMC, West Jordan, UT. [www.BuildWithBMC.com](http://www.BuildWithBMC.com). Contact Par Palmer:
      - 1) Office: (801) 224-0541.
      - 2) Mobile: (801) 376-9853.
      - 3) E-Mail: [Par.Palmer@BuildWithBMC.com](mailto:Par.Palmer@BuildWithBMC.com) or [www.BuildWithBMC.com](http://www.BuildWithBMC.com).
    - b. J. M. Thomas Forest Products, Ogden, UT. [www.thomasforest.com](http://www.thomasforest.com). Contact Tom Karren:
      - 1) Office: (800) 962-8780.
      - 2) FAX: 801-782-9652.
      - 3) E-Mail: [tom@thomasforest.com](mailto:tom@thomasforest.com).
    - c. Shelter Products, Inc., Portland, OR [www.shelter-products.com](http://www.shelter-products.com). Contact Mike Running:
      - 1) Office: (800) 662-3612.
      - 2) Cell: NA.
      - 3) FAX: (503) 238-2663.
      - 4) E-Mail: [mrunning@shelter-products.com](mailto:mrunning@shelter-products.com).
    - d. Alternate Supplier:
      - 1) Alternate suppliers, if used, are to be included by addendum.
- B. Materials:
  - 1. Wood framing list:
    - a. Provide Category Three Approved Suppliers with wood framing list.
  - 2. Wood:
    - a. Use stress grade 24F-1.8E Douglas Fir (24F-V4 DF/DF) or Southern Pine (24F-V3 SP/SP) unless noted otherwise on Contract Drawings.
    - b. Moisture content: twelve (12) percent maximum for straight, ten (10) percent maximum for curved.
    - c. Appearance:
      - 1) Industrial.
      - 2) Exposed in public areas: architectural grade.
    - d. Seal beam faces with penetrating sealer. Treat beam ends with wood preservative.
  - 3. Adhesives: Wet-use type.
  - 4. Hardware and steel shapes: Meet requirements of ASTM A36/A36M.

C. Fabrication:

1. Fabricate beams in accordance with requirements of ANSI A190.1.
2. Camber beams to radius of 2000 ft unless shown otherwise on Contract Drawings.

**PART 3 - EXECUTION: Not Used**

**END OF SECTION**

**SECTION 06 2001****COMMON FINISH CARPENTRY REQUIREMENTS****PART 1 - GENERAL****1.1 SUMMARY**

- A. Includes But Not Limited To:
1. Furnish and install sealants required for items installed under this Section, as described in Contract Documents.
  2. Furnish and install following items as described in Contract Documents:
    - a. Site-built attic access panels.
    - b. Site-built wall and draft stop access doors.
- B. Products Installed But Not Furnished Under This Section:
1. Architectural Woodwork.
  2. Factory Manufactured Access Doors.
  3. Fixed Shelving not part of casework.
  4. Folding Partition hardwood jambs, trim, chair rail, and floor guide track.
  5. Miscellaneous Wood Trim.
  6. Selected Building Specialties.
  7. Selected Equipment.
  8. Windows.
  9. Wood-Veneer-Faced Architectural Cabinets.
  10. Miscellaneous as specified elsewhere.
- C. Related Requirements:
1. Section 06 1100: 'Wood Framing' for furring and blocking.
  2. Section 06 1636: 'Wood Panel Product Sheathing'.
  3. Section 06 2210: 'Miscellaneous Wood Trim'.
  4. Sections under 06 4000 Heading: Furnishing of Architectural Woodwork.
    - a. Section 06 4001: 'Common Architectural Woodwork Requirements':
      - 1) Approved Fabricators.
      - 2) Quality of wood materials to be used in Finish Carpentry.
    - b. Section 06 4005: 'Plastic Laminate' for countertops.
    - c. Section 06 4114: 'Wood-Veneer-Faced Architectural Cabinets'.
    - d. Section 06 4313: 'Wood Stairs'.
    - e. Section 06 4512: 'Architectural Woodwork Wood Trim'.
  5. Section 06 6001: 'Miscellaneous Plastic Fabrications' for quality of Window Stools.
  6. Section 07 9213: 'Elastomeric Joint Sealants' for quality of sealants, submittal and installation requirements.
  7. Section 08 3110: 'Access Doors And Panels' for furnishing of Factory Manufactured Access Doors.
  8. Section 08 5113: 'Aluminum Windows' for furnishing of Windows.  
or
  9. Section 08 5313: 'Vinyl Windows' for furnishing of Windows.
  10. Section 09 8413: 'Fixed Sound-Absorptive Panels' for furnishing of Sound Panels.
  11. Sections under 09 9000 heading: Back priming of work to be installed against concrete or masonry or subjected to moisture, and finishing of finish carpentry and architectural woodwork.
  12. Sections in Division 10: Furnishing of Specialties.
  13. Sections in Division 11: Furnishing of Equipment.

## 1.2 REFERENCES

- A. Association Publications:
  - 1. Architectural Woodwork Institute / Architectural Woodwork Manufacturers Association of Canada / Woodwork Institute, 46179 Westlake Drive, Suite 120, Potomac Falls, VA [www.awinet.org](http://www.awinet.org).
    - a. Architectural Woodwork Standards (AWS), 2nd Edition, 2014.
- B. Definitions:
  - 1. Grade: Unless otherwise noted, this term means Grade rules for Economy, Custom, and/or Premium Grade:
    - a. Economy Grade: The lowest acceptable grade in both material and workmanship requirements, and is for work where price outweighs quality considerations.
    - b. Custom Grade: Typically specified for and adequately covers most high-quality architectural woodwork, providing a well-defined degree of control over a project's quality of materials, workmanship, or installation.
    - c. Premium Grade: The highest Grade available in both material and workmanship where the highest level of quality, materials, workmanship, and installation is required.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 MATERIALS

- A. Manufacturers:
  - 1. Manufacturer Contact List:
    - a. Bommer Industries, Landrum, SC [www.bommer.com](http://www.bommer.com).
    - b. Stanley, New Britain, CT [www.stanleyhardware.com](http://www.stanleyhardware.com) or Oakville, ON (800) 441-1759.
- B. Glue: Waterproof and of best quality.
- C. Site-built attic access panels.
  - 1. Materials:
    - a. Wood Panel Product Sheathing:
      - 1) **3/4 inch nominal (19 mm nominal)** minimum by width and length as identified in Contract Documents and as specified in Section 06 1636 'Wood Panel Product Sheathing'.
      - 2) Sheathing as specified in Section 06 1636 'Wood Panel Product Sheathing'.
    - b. Board Insulation (Rigid Foam):
      - 1) Meet requirements of ASTM C578, Type X or IX.
      - 2) Type One Acceptable Products:
        - a) Foamular 150 by Owens Corning.
        - b) Grayboard by Dow Chemical.
        - c) Equal as approved by Architect before bidding. See Section 01 6200.
      - 3) Adhesive: Any adhesive safe to use with extruded polystyrene.
  - 2. Accessories:
    - a. Neoprene Gasket:
      - 1) **3/4 inch (19 mm)** continuous around door edge between door stop and door.
- D. Site-built wall and draft stop access doors.
  - 1. Accessories:
    - a. Latch:
      - 1) Type Two Acceptable Products:
        - a) 1261, with wire pull and washer for opening from opposite side, by Stanley.
        - b) Equal as approved by Architect before installation. See Section 01 6200.
    - b. One Pair Self-Closing Hinges:
      - 1) Type Two Acceptable Products:
        - a) 2960 by Bommer Industries.
        - b) 158 by Stanley.

- c) Equal as approved by Architect before installation. See Section 01 6200.
- c. Stenciled Caution Signs:
  - 1) One on each side of draft stop door.
  - 2) Sign text shall read 'CAUTION - This Door Must Be Kept Closed' in 2 inch (50 mm) high letters.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Verification Of Conditions:
  - 1. Verify walls, ceilings, floors, and openings are plumb, straight, in-line, and square before installing Architectural Woodwork.
  - 2. Report conditions that are not in compliance to Architect before starting installation.

### 3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Surface Preparation:
  - 1. Install Architectural Woodwork after wall and ceiling painting is completed in areas where Architectural Woodwork is to be installed.

### 3.3 INSTALLATION

- A. Special Techniques:
  - 1. AWS Custom Grade is minimum acceptable standard, except where explicitly specified otherwise, for installation of architectural woodwork.
- B. General Architectural Woodwork Installation:
  - 1. Fabricate work in accordance with measurements taken on Project site.
  - 2. Scribe, miter, and join accurately and neatly to conform to details.
  - 3. Exposed surfaces shall be machine sanded, ready for finishing.
  - 4. Allow for free movement of panels.
  - 5. Countersink nails. Countersink screws and plug those exposed to view.
  - 6. Attach custom casework as specified in Sections under 06 4000 Heading: 'Furnishing of Architectural Woodwork' to wall blocking with #10 x 3 inch (76 mm) minimum Cabinet Screws. Attach wall cabinets with screws equally spaced horizontally not to exceed 12 inches (305 mm) O.C. with 3 inch (76 mm) maximum spacing at cabinet edges.
- C. Items Installed But Not Furnished Under This Section: Install in accordance with requirements specified in Section furnishing item.
  - 1. Window Stool:
    - a. Install window stool to structure with silicone sealant as specified in Section 07 9213 'Elastomeric Joint Sealant'.

**END OF SECTION**

**SECTION 06 2024****DOOR, FRAME, AND FINISH HARDWARE INSTALLATION****PART 1 - GENERAL****1.1 SUMMARY**

- A. Includes But Not Limited To:
  - 1. Furnish and install sealants for caulking door frames as described in Contract Documents.
  - 2. Furnish and install insulation in doorframes as described in Contract Documents.
  
- B. Products Installed But Not Furnished Under This Section:
  - 1. Flush wood doors.
  - 2. Hollow metal doors.
  - 3. Hollow metal door frames.
  - 4. Finish hardware.
  
- C. Related Requirements:
  - 1. Section 07 2116: 'Blanket Insulation' for quality of fiberglass insulation.
  - 2. Section 07 9213: 'Elastomeric Joint Sealants' for quality of sealants.
  - 3. Sections under 08 1000 heading: Furnishing of doors and metal frames.
  - 4. Sections under 08 7000 heading: Furnishing of finish hardware.

**1.2 ADMINISTRATIVE REQUIREMENTS**

- A. Pre-Installation Conference.
  - 1. Participate in pre-installation conference.
  - 2. In addition to agenda items specified in Section 01 3100, review following:
    - a. Schedule conference after hardware has been delivered to site and organized into hardware groups by door, but before installation of hardware.
    - b. Check for appropriate blocking and for correct hardware models and fasteners for substrates.
    - c. Review submittals and set of Manufacturer's installation, adjustment, and maintenance instructions submitted under Section 08 7101.
    - d. Review use of crowbar or other prying devices are not permitted to be used to set door frame into wall opening.

**1.3 SUBMITTALS**

- A. Informational Submittals:
  - 1. Installer Report:
    - a. Report verifying correct operation and adjustment of installed hardware.
  - 2. Special Procedure Submittals:
    - a. Copy of 'Installation Guide for Doors & Hardware' by Door & Hardware Institute. Guide may be obtained from Door and Hardware Institute (DHI).

**1.4 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING**

- A. Delivery And Acceptance Requirements:
  - 1. Wood Doors:
    - a. Do not have doors delivered to building site until after plaster, cement, and taping compound are dry.

- b. If doors are to be stored at job-site for more than one week, seal top and bottom edges if not factory sealed.
  - 2. Metal Frames:
    - a. Examine door frames and note damage upon acceptance.
- B. Storage And Handling Requirements:
  - 1. Wood Doors:
    - a. Store flat on a level surface in a dry, well ventilated building.
      - 1) Cover to keep clean but allow air circulation
    - b. Handle with clean gloves and do not drag doors across one another or across other surfaces.
    - c. Do not subject doors to abnormal heat, dryness, or humidity or sudden changes therein
      - 1) Condition doors to average prevailing humidity of locality before hanging.
  - 2. Metal Frames:
    - a. Protect metal frames from damage before and during installation.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS: Not Used

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 INSTALLATION

- A. Hollow Metal Frames:
  - 1. Site Tolerances:
    - a. Squareness: **1/16 inch (1.6 mm)** from top edge to opposite top edge.
    - b. Plumbness: **1/16 inch (1.6 mm)** from top of jamb to bottom of jamb.
    - c. Alignment: **1/16 inch (1.6 mm)** from plane of left side face of jamb to right side face of jamb.
    - d. Twist: **1/16 inch (1.6 mm)** across throat of jamb plane measured across each face to plane of opposite jamb throat.
    - e. Finished Clearance Between Door And Frame:
      - 1) **1/16 inch (1.6 mm)** at head and hinge jamb plus **1/16 inch (1.6 mm)** maximum
      - 2) **1/8 inch (3 mm)** at strike jamb plus or minus **1/16 inch (1.6 mm)** maximum.
      - 3) **1/2 inch (12.7 mm)** to top of finished floor surface or **1/4 inch (6 mm)** to top of threshold, plus or minus **1/16 inch (1.6 mm)** maximum.
  - 2. Set frame in location and level head.
    - a. Use of crowbar or other prying device to set door frame into wall opening will damage door frames and are not permitted to be used.
  - 3. Equalize with adjustable floor anchor.
  - 4. Set spreaders and fasten jambs to floor and wall.
    - a. Wood spreaders shall be square, fabricated from lumber one inch minimum thick, be same length as door opening at header, and same depth as frame.
    - b. Cut notches for frame stops.
    - c. Do not remove spreaders until frames are permanently anchored in wall.
    - d. Use one spreader at base of frame and another at strike level.
    - e. Do not use temporary spreaders welded to base of jambs during installation of frame.
  - 5. Fill gap between frame and framing with urethane foam or tightly-packed fiberglass insulation. If urethane foam is used, foam interior of frames before installing frame. Trim excess before installation of frame.
  - 6. Caulking:
    - a. Caulk around both sides of frames of doors receiving acoustical seals with specified sealant.
- B. Doors:
  - 1. When Project is completed, doors shall not bind, stick, or be mounted so as to cause future hardware difficulties.
  - 2. Do not impair utility or structural strength of door in fitting of door, applying hardware, or cutting and altering door louvers, panels, or other special details.



- C. Hardware:
  - 1. General:
    - a. Install using set of Manufacturer's installation, adjustment, and maintenance instructions submitted with hardware under Section 08 7101. Follow as closely as possible.
    - b. Mount closers on jamb stop side of door in parallel arm configuration where it is physically possible to do so and not damage or hinder operation of door or closer.
  - 2. Hardware for Wood Doors:
    - a. If doors are not factory-machined, use hardware templates furnished by Hardware Manufacturer when mounting hardware.
    - b. Set hinges flush with edge surface. Be sure that hinges are set in a straight line to prevent distortion.
    - c. Mount door latches high in strike plate opening so when door later settles, latch will not bind.

### 3.2 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Field Tests:
  - 1. Arrange to have keys brought to Project site and, in meeting attended by local representatives and Architect, test every new key and locking mechanism.
- B. Non-Conforming Work: Non-conforming work as covered in the General Conditions applies, but is not limited to the following:
  - 1. Correct any work found defective or not complying with contract document requirements at no additional cost to the Owner.
  - 2. Door frames:
    - a. Door frames damaged by use of crowbar or other prying devices to set door frames shall be repaired or replaced at no additional cost to Owner.

### 3.3 CLOSEOUT ACTIVITIES

- A. Instruction of Owner:
  - 1. Using Owner's Operations And Maintenance Manual, explain keying systems at same time keys and locking mechanisms are tested.
- B. Key Delivery:
  - 1. Immediately before Final Acceptance Meeting, turn change keys over to Owner properly organized, tagged, and placed in new or existing key cabinet.

**END OF SECTION**

**SECTION 06 2710****SHELVING****PART 1 - GENERAL****1.1 SUMMARY**

- A. Includes But Not Limited To:
1. Furnish and install adjustable shelving not part of casework, including mounting hardware, as described in Contract Documents.
- B. Related Requirements:
1. Section 06 4001: 'Common Architectural Woodwork Requirements'.

**1.2 REFERENCES**

- A. Association Publications:
1. Architectural Woodwork Institute / Architectural Woodwork Manufacturers Association of Canada / Woodwork Institute, 46179 Westlake Drive, Suite 120, Potomac Falls, VA [www.awinet.org](http://www.awinet.org).
    - a. Architectural Woodwork Standards (AWS), 2nd Edition, 2014.

**PART 2 - PRODUCTS****2.1 MATERIALS**

- A. Shelves:
1. Design Criteria:
    - a. Conform to applicable requirements of Sections 06 4001.
    - b. Fabricate the work of this section to AWS 'Custom Grade'.
    - c. Species as acceptable for AWS 'Custom Grade'.
  2. Material:
    - a. Panel Product:
      - 1) Glues (adhesives) used in manufacture and fabrication of panel products shall be Type I or II.
      - 2) Moisture content shall be same as specified for lumber.
      - 3) Cores:
        - a) All Other: Industrial grade particle board with minimum density of **45 lbs per cu ft (721 kg per cu meter)**.
      - 4) Facings:
        - a) All facings shall be Melamine or Kortron.
      - 5) Thickness:
        - a) **30 Inch (750 mm) Span And Less: 3/4 inch (19 mm) thick.**
        - b) **Spans Over 30 Inches (750 mm) To 42 Inches (1 050 mm): One inch (25 mm) thick.**
        - c) **Spans Over 42 inches (1 050 mm): One inch (25 mm) thick and provide equal center supports.**
    - b. Edgings:
      - 1) Use **3/4 inch (19 mm) Kortron or Melamine faced Panel Product with hot glued 3 mm thick PVC with eased edges.** Apply banding on all four edges of adjustable shelving and on exposed edges of fixed shelving, with one-inch return onto unexposed edges. Edge banding color to match Panel Product.

## 2.2 ACCESSORIES

- A. Manufacturer:
  - 1. Manufacturer Contact Information:
    - a. Knappe & Vogt, Grand Rapids, MI [www.knappeandvogt.com](http://www.knappeandvogt.com) or Knappe & Vogt Canada Inc, Mississauga, ON (905) 676-8166.
- B. Shelf Brackets And Standards In Main Building:
  - 1. Brackets:
    - a. Size according to shelf width, end of bracket to be within 2 inches (50 mm) of front edge of shelf.
    - b. Category Four Approved Product. See Section 01 6200 for definitions of Categories.
      - 1) 187WH extra heavy duty brackets by Knappe & Vogt.
  - 2. Standards:
    - a. Category Four Approved Product. See Section 01 6200 for definitions of Categories.
      - 1) 87WH extra heavy duty standard by Knappe & Vogt.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 INSTALLATION

- A. Attach metal standards by screws into framing members or special blocking. Utilize all available pre-drilled screw holes in standards.
- B. Attach wood shelf supports with 16d finish nails through sheathing into framing members or special blocking, two nails minimum into each framing member. Attach shelves to supports with 1-1/2 inch (38 mm) long minimum flathead screws with heads countersunk to be flush or slightly below shelf surface, one screw at each shelf corner minimum.

**END OF SECTION**

**SECTION 06 4001****COMMON ARCHITECTURAL WOODWORK REQUIREMENTS****PART 1 - GENERAL****1.1 SUMMARY**

- A. Includes But Not Limited To:
  - 1. General standards for materials and fabrication of Architectural Woodwork and for hardware associated with Architectural Woodwork.
- B. Related Requirements:
  - 1. Section 06 1100: 'Wood Framing' for furring and blocking.
  - 2. Section 06 2001: 'Common Finish Carpentry Requirements' for Installation.
  - 3. Section 06 2210: 'Miscellaneous Wood Trim'.
  - 4. Section 06 4005: 'Plastic Laminate'.
  - 5. Section 06 4114: 'Wood-Veneer-Faced Architectural Cabinets'.
  - 6. Section 06 4115: 'Rostrum Casework'.
  - 7. Section 06 4512: 'Architectural Woodwork Wood Trim'.
  - 8. Section 06 6001: 'Miscellaneous Plastic Fabrications'.
  - 9. Section 09 9324: 'Interior Clear-Finished Hardwood' for filling of nail holes and finishing.

**1.2 REFERENCES**

- A. Association Publications:
  - 1. Architectural Woodwork Institute / Architectural Woodwork Manufacturers Association of Canada / Woodwork Institute, 46179 Westlake Drive, Suite 120, Potomac Falls, VA [www.awinet.org](http://www.awinet.org).
    - a. Architectural Woodwork Standards (AWS), 2nd Edition, 2014.
- B. Definitions:
  - 1. Grade: Unless otherwise noted, this term means Grade rules for Economy, Custom, and/or Premium Grade:
    - a. Custom Grade: Typically specified for and adequately covers most high-quality architectural woodwork, providing a well-defined degree of control over a project's quality of materials, workmanship, or installation.

**1.3 SUBMITTALS**

- A. Action Submittals:
  - 1. Product Data:
    - a. Manufacturer's literature for specialty items and hardware not manufactured by Architectural Woodwork fabricator.
  - 2. Shop Drawings:
    - a. Category Three Approved Fabricator:
      - 1) Fabricator First Submittal:
        - a) Provide 1/4 inch (or larger) scale building layout and/or description of required room walls required for field dimension for Field Quality Control Submittal. Provide submittal before rough framing is completed.
      - 2) Fabricator Second Submittal:
        - a) Provide shop drawings for cabinet and casework that are included for project showing details, casework locations and layout and required dimensions based on Field Quality Control Submittals for compliance to Contract Drawings for approval to Project Architect.

- B. Informational Submittals:
  - 1. Field Quality Control Submittals:
    - a. Contractor First Submittal:
      - 1) Provide verification field dimensions and updated Contract Drawings of all areas requested from Fabricator First Submittal from Category Three Approved Fabricator including but limited to the following:
        - a) Field dimensions (finish wall dimensions) of all walls with casework.
      - 2) Submit First Submittal to Category Three Approved Fabricator within three (3) days of completion of gypsum board installation but before gypsum board finishing to allow Category Three Approved Fabricator necessary time to complete casework.
  - 2. Qualification Statement:
    - a. Fabricator:
      - 1) Category Three Approved Fabricators:
        - a) Provide Qualification documentation as part of agreement process.

#### 1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Qualifications: Requirements of Section 01 4301 applies, but not limited to following:
  - 1. Fabricator:
    - a. Category Three Approved Fabricators:
      - 1) Approval subject to agreement process approval.

#### 1.5 DELIVERY, HANDLING, AND STORAGE

- A. Delivery And Acceptance Requirements:
  - 1. Fabricator Responsibility:
    - a. Assemble architectural woodwork at Architectural Woodwork Fabricator's plant and deliver ready for erection insofar as possible.
    - b. Protect architectural woodwork from moisture and damage while in transit to job site.
  - 2. General Contractor Responsibility:
    - a. Report damaged materials received within two (2) days from delivery at project site.
- B. Storage And Handling Requirements:
  - 1. General Contractor Responsibility:
    - a. Unload and store in place where it will be protected from moisture and damage and convenient to use.

#### 1.6 WARRANTY

- A. Manufacturer Extended Warranty:
  - 1. Approved Fabricator's written guarantee that all Goods and Services will be free from defects in materials and workmanship for a period of five (5) years from date of substantial completion.

### PART 2 - PRODUCTS

#### 2.1 FABRICATORS

- A. Approved Fabricators. See Section 01 4301 for Qualification Requirements.
  - 1. Category Three Approved Fabricators. See Section 01 6200 for definitions of Categories and Section 01 4301 for Qualification Requirements:
    - a. Anderson Cabinet and Millwork, 198 North 4700 East, Rigby, ID 83442.
      - 1) Contact Information: Matt Miller phone (208) 538-7415 cell (208) 317-7412 e-mail [matt@andersoncabinet.com](mailto:matt@andersoncabinet.com).
    - b. Michael Seiter & Co., Inc., P.O. Box 315 Heber City, UT 84032.

- 1) Contact Information: Mark Seiter phone (435) 654-0601 fax (435) 654-0613 e-mail [mark@msandcoinc.com](mailto:mark@msandcoinc.com).
- c. Thompson and Sons Cabinets, 11834 N. 3400 West, Deweyville, UT 84309.
  - 1) Contact Information: David Thompson cell (435) 230-0876 office (435) 257-7152 e-mail [zcabinets@comcast.net](mailto:zcabinets@comcast.net).
2. Same Approved Fabricator shall furnish following Specification Sections:
  - a. Section 06 2210: 'Miscellaneous Wood Trim'.
  - b. Section 06 4005: 'Plastic Laminate'.
  - c. Section 06 4114: 'Wood-Veneer-Faced Architectural Cabinets'.
  - d. Section 06 4115: 'Rostrum Casework'.
  - e. Section 06 4512: 'Architectural Woodwork Wood Trim'.
  - f. Section 06 6001: 'Miscellaneous Plastic Fabrications'.

## 2.2 ASSEMBLIES

### A. Design Criteria:

1. General:
  - a. AWS Custom Grade is minimum acceptable standard, except where explicitly specified otherwise, for materials, construction, and installation of architectural woodwork.
2. Materials:
  - a. Lumber:
    - 1) Grade:
      - a) No defects in boards smaller than 600 sq in (3 871 sq cm).
      - b) One defect per additional 150 sq inches (968 sq cm) in larger boards.
      - c) Select pieces for uniformity of grain and color on exposed faces and edges.
      - d) No mineral grains accepted.
    - 2) Allowable Defects:
      - a) Tight knots not exceeding 1/8 inch (3 mm) in diameter. No loose knots permitted.
      - b) Patches (dutchmen) not apparent after finishing when viewed beyond 18 inches (450 mm).
      - c) Checks or splits not exceeding 1/32 inch by 3 inches (1 mm by 75 mm) and not visible after finishing when viewed beyond 18 inches (450 mm).
      - d) Stains, pitch pockets, streaks, worm holes, and other defects not mentioned are not permitted.
      - e) Normal grain variations, such as cats eye, bird's eye, burl, curl, and cross grain are not considered defects.
    - 3) Use maximum lengths possible, but not required to exceed 10 feet (3 meters) without joints. No joints shall occur closer than 72 inches (1 800 mm) in straight runs exceeding 18 feet (3 600 mm). Runs between 18 feet (3 600 mm) and 10 feet (3 meters) may have no more than one joint. No joints shall occur within 72 inches (1 800 mm) of outside corners nor within 18 inches (450 mm) of inside corners.
    - 4) Moisture content shall be six (6) percent maximum at fabrication. No opening of joints due to shrinkage is acceptable.

### B. Fabrication:

1. Follow Architectural Woodwork Standards (AWS) for fabrication of Architectural Woodwork.
2. Tolerances:
  - a. No planer marks (KCPI) allowed. Sand wood members and surfaces with 100 grit or finer.
  - b. Maximum Gap: None allowed.
  - c. Flushness Variation: 0.015 inch (0.4 mm) maximum.
  - d. Sanding Cross Scratches: 1/4 inch (6 mm) maximum.
  - e. Plug screw holes. Screw locations not to be visible beyond 18 inches (450 mm).
3. Fabricate work in accordance with measurements taken on job site.
4. 'Ease' sharp corners and edges of exposed members to promote finishing and protect users from splinters. Radius of 'easing' shall be uniform throughout Project and between 1/32 and 1/16 of an inch (0.8 and 1.6 of a millimeter).
5. Fabricate so veneer grain is vertical.
6. Joints:
  - a. Use lumber pieces with similar grain pattern when joining end to end.

- b. Compatibility of grain and color from lumber to panel products is required.
- 7. Install hardware in accordance with Manufacturer's directions. Leave operating hardware operating smoothly and quietly.
- 8. Remove or repair damaged surface of or defects in exposed finished surfaces of architectural woodwork to match adjacent similar undamaged surface.

**PART 3 - EXECUTION: Not Used**

**END OF SECTION**

**SECTION 06 4114****WOOD-VENEER-FACED ARCHITECTURAL CABINETS****PART 1 - GENERAL****1.1 SUMMARY**

- A. Products Furnished But Not Installed Under This Section:
1. Custom casework.
- B. Related Requirements:
1. Section 06 1100: 'Wood Framing' for wall blocking required for Custom Casework.
  2. Section 06 2001: 'Common Finish Carpentry Requirements' for installation of Custom casework.
  3. Section 06 4001: 'Common Architectural Woodwork Requirements' for:
    - a. Approved Fabricators.
    - b. General standards for materials and fabrication of Architectural Woodwork and for hardware associated with Architectural Woodwork.
  4. Section 09 9324: 'Interior Clear-Finished Hardwood' for wood finishes.
  5. Section 08 5619: 'Pass Windows' for pass through windows used in CES Module.
  6. Sections Under 22 4200 Heading: Plumbing Fixtures.

**1.2 REFERENCES**

- A. Association Publications:
1. Architectural Woodwork Institute / Architectural Woodwork Manufacturers Association of Canada / Woodwork Institute, 46179 Westlake Drive, Suite 120, Potomac Falls, VA [www.awinet.org](http://www.awinet.org).
    - a. Architectural Woodwork Standards (AWS), 2nd Edition, 2014.
    - b. HPVA, NWWDA, or APA.
  2. Hardwood Plywood & Veneer Association (HPVA), Reston, VA [www.hpva@hpva.org](http://www.hpva@hpva.org).
  3. The Engineered Wood Association (APA), Tacoma, WA [www.apawood.org](http://www.apawood.org).
  4. Window & Door Manufacturers Association (WDMA) Chicago, IL [www.wdma@wdma.com](http://www.wdma@wdma.com).
- B. Definitions:
1. Book-Match: Matching between adjacent veneer leaves on one panel face. Every other piece of veneer is turned over so that the adjacent leaves are "opened" as two pages in a book. The fibers of the wood, slanting in opposite directions in the adjacent leaves, create a characteristic light and dark effect when the surface is seen from an angle.
  2. Face Veneer: The outermost exposed wood veneer surface of a veneered wood door, panel, or other component exposed to view when the project is completed.
  3. Grade: Unless otherwise noted, this term means Grade rules for Economy, Custom, and/or Premium Grade:
    - a. Custom Grade: Typically specified for and adequately covers most high-quality architectural woodwork, providing a well-defined degree of control over a project's quality of materials, workmanship, or installation.
  4. High-Pressure Decorative Laminate (HPDL): Laminated thermosetting decorative sheets intended for decorative purposes. Also known as Plastic Laminate.
  5. Medium Density Fiberboard (MDF): Generic name for a panel or core manufactured from lignocellulosic fibers combined with synthetic resin or other suitable binder and bonded together under heat and pressure in hot press by process in which added binder creates entire bond.
  6. Panel Product: Panels manufactured with differences in core materials, adhesives or binders which affect characteristics of the panels. These include wood veneers and many prefinished wood panels and decorative overlays with aesthetic and performance characteristics.
  7. Plain-Sawn: A hardwood figure developed by sawing a log lengthwise at a tangent to the annual growth rings. It appears as U-shaped or straight markings in the board's face.



8. Running Match: Each panel face is assembled from as many veneer leaves as necessary. Any portion left over from one panel may be used to start the next.
9. Veneer: A thin sheet or layer of wood, usually rotary cut, sliced or sawn from a log or flitch. Thickness may vary from 1/100 inch (0.3 mm) to 1/4 inch (6.4 mm).

C. Reference Standards:

1. American National Standards Institute / Builders Hardware Manufacturers Association:
  - a. ANSI/BHMA A156.11-2014, 'Cabinet Locks'.
2. American National Standards Institute / Hardwood Plywood & Veneer Association:
  - a. ANSI/HPVA HP-1-2009, 'Standard for Hardwood and Decorative Plywood'.
3. American National Standards Institute / Window & Door Manufacturers Association (WDMA):
  - a. ANSI/WDMA I.S. 6A-13, 'Industry Standard for Architectural Stile and Rails Doors'.

### 1.3 ADMINISTRATIVE REQUIREMENTS

A. Coordination:

1. Coordinate the efforts of the various trades affected by the Work of this Section.
2. Coordinate completion of 2x6 (50mm x 100mm) wall blocking for custom casework.
3. Coordinate completion of custom casework.

### 1.4 SUBMITTALS

A. Action Submittals:

1. Product Data:
  - a. Manufacturer's literature or cut sheets for hardware.
2. Shop Drawings:
  - a. Confirm compliance with Contract Document requirements as to configuration and dimensions of custom casework.
  - b. Include plan and elevation views, materials used, standing and running trim profiles, assembly methods, joint details, fastening methods, accessories, and hardware.
3. Samples:
  - a. Interior Hardwood for Transparent Finish:
    - 1) Before performing work of this Section, prepare Control Sample, to match sample available from Owner, to be used as finishing standard for interior clear finished hardwood as specified in Section 09 9324.
    - 2) Design Criteria:
      - a) Provide 8 inch by 10 inch (200 mm by 255 mm) sample(s) of Red Oak to match Owner provided stain color selected for Project.
      - b) Control Sample will be used as performance standard for evaluating finish provided.

B. Informational Submittals:

1. Source Quality Control Submittals:
  - a. Samples:
    - 1) Interior Hardwood for Transparent Finish:
      - a) Owner will provide Control Sample for finish.
2. Special Procedure Submittals:
  - a. Copy of AWS manual with shop drawing submission.

### 1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Mockups:

1. Before fabrication of complete casework package, submit section or sections of cabinetry containing typical drawer, shelving, cabinet door panel, and hardware.
2. Match Owner provided selected sample finish specified in Section 09 9324.
3. Mockups may be installed in Project after approval.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 ASSEMBLIES

#### A. Components:

##### 1. Design Criteria:

##### a. General:

- 1) Except as noted otherwise, fabricate the work of this section according to AWS 'Custom Grade'.
  - a) Cabinet door wood grain direction shall run vertically and all doors shall be set matched.
  - b) Cabinet drawer front wood grain direction may run vertically or horizontally, with same direction maintained on all cabinet or elevation of cabinets.
- 2) Casework Construction Type:
  - a) Type B: Face-frame construction where front edge of cabinet body components are overlaid with frame.
- 3) Door interface style:
  - a) Type B Construction: Flush Overlay.

##### b. Solid Stock:

- 1) Exposed: Plain sawn Red Oak.
- 2) Semi-exposed And Concealed: Species as acceptable for AWS 'Custom Grade'.

##### c. Panel Product:

- 1) Glues (adhesives) used in manufacture and fabrication of panel products shall be Type I or II.
- 2) Moisture content shall be same as specified for lumber.
- 3) Cores:
  - a) Cabinet Doors: Medium density fiberboard (MDF) with minimum density of **48 lbs per cu ft (769 kg per cu meter)**.
  - b) All Other: Industrial grade particle board with minimum density of **45 lbs per cu ft (721 kg per cu meter)**.
- 4) Facings:
  - a) Hardwood veneer facings shall be plain sliced Maple AWS Grade A, or equal by HPVA, WDMA, or APA.
  - b) All other facings shall be Melamine or Kortron.
- 5) Edgings:
  - a) Scripture Cabinet Doors: **3/4 by 3/4 inch (19 by 19 mm)** edge-band, shaped as detailed, of wood species matching hardwood face veneer.
  - b) Other Cabinet Doors And Drawer Fronts Higher Than **8 Inches (200 mm)**:
    - (1) **3/4 inch by 1/8 to 1/4 inch (19 mm by 3 to 6 mm)** edge-band of wood species matching hardwood face veneer.
  - c) Melamine / Kortron Faced Shelves And Exposed Panel Product Edges:
    - (1) Hot-glued, 3 mm thick, PVC edge-banding.
    - (2) Wood-grain, except color matching Melamine or Kortron surface at shelf edges.
  - d) Wood Veneer Faced Shelves:
    - (1) **3/4 inch by 1/4 inch (19 mm by 6 mm)** edge-band of wood species matching hardwood face veneer on front edge with hot-glued, 2 mm thick minimum, wood-grained PVC edge-banding on other three sides.
  - e) Semi-Exposed Panel Product Edges:
    - (1) Hot-glued, 3 mm thick, wood grained PVC edge-banding.
  - f) All Other: **3/4 inch by 1/4 inch (19 mm by 6 mm)** edge-band of wood species matching hardwood face veneer.

##### d. Casework Doors:

- 1) Face Veneer:
  - a) Design Criteria:
    - (1) Plain sliced Maple meeting requirements of AWS Grade A, **1/50 inch (0.5 mm)** thick minimum immediately before finishing.
    - (2) Face veneers shall be running book matched.

##### e. Wood Lateral File Dividers:

- 1) Description:
    - a) **3/4 inch (19 mm)** by width of drawer Panel Product.
    - b) Attached at center of lateral file drawers as shown on Contract Documents.
    - c) Notch top corners to support metal file hanging rods.
- B. Fabrication:
1. Fabricators:
    - a. Approved Fabricators. See Section 06 4001 for Category Three Approved Fabricators.
  2. Cabinet Body:
    - a. Use AWS Flush Overlay construction on cabinet bodies.
    - b. If used, install Rail System adjustable shelf supports recessed.
  3. Drawers:
    - a. Fabricate with separate, screw-attached drawer front.
    - b. Joints shall be dowel and pressure-glued, or lock shoulder, glued, and pin nailed.
    - c. Set bottoms into sides, backs, and subfront with **1/4 inch (6 mm)** deep groove with **3/8 inch (9.5 mm)** minimum standing shoulder.
    - d. Every drawer shall have specified drawer guides and pull installed. Install drawer guides with 'Euroscrows', and pulls with through-bolts passing through both front and sub-front.
  4. Cabinet Doors:
    - a. Full height, panel product cabinet doors may be fabricated in two pieces and joined on back with metal backplate. Backplate shall match interior door surface color.
    - b. Hinges: Install hinges using plastic insertion dowels for hinges and 'Euroscrows' for baseplates.
    - c. Every cabinet door shall have specified pull installed.
  5. Cabinet Component Thickness And Material:
    - a. Use hardwood veneer facing on panel product, except on following surfaces:
      - 1) Where Kortron or Melamine shall be used.
      - 2) Cabinet exposed interiors surfaces (not including cabinet doors) and shelving faces behind cabinet doors in all rooms.
      - 3) Cabinet semi-exposed surfaces.
      - 4) Cabinet concealed surfaces.
      - 5) Cabinet exposed exteriors permanently concealed (not exposed to view).
      - 6) Drawer sides, backs, bottoms, and subfronts.
    - b. Ends, Divisions, Bottoms, Tops: **3/4 inch (19 mm)** thick panel product.
    - c. Rails: **3/4 inch (19 mm)** thick panel product.
    - d. Shelves:
      - 1) Panel product.
      - 2) Thickness:
        - a) **30 Inch (750 mm)** Span And Less: **3/4 inch (19 mm)** thick.
        - b) Spans Over **30 Inches (750 mm)** To **42 Inches (1 050 mm)**: **One inch (25 mm)** thick.
        - c) Spans Over **42 inches (1 050 mm)**: **One inch (25 mm)** thick and provide Hafele or equal center supports.
    - e. Backs: **1/4 inch (6 mm)** thick panel product.
    - f. Doors: **3/4 inch (19 mm)** thick panel product.
    - g. Drawer Sides, Backs, And Subfronts: **1/2 inch (12.7 mm)** thick minimum panel product.
    - h. Drawer Bottoms: **1/4 inch (6 mm)** thick panel product.
    - i. Separate Drawer Front:
      - 1) **8 Inches (200 mm)** High And Less: **3/4 inch (19 mm)** thick solid hardwood.
      - 2) More Than **8 Inches (200 mm)** High: **3/4 inch (19 mm)** panel product.
    - j. Hardboard Dividers: **1/4 inch (6 mm)** thick panel product.
    - k. Hardboard Shelves: **1/8 inch (3 mm)** thick hardboard, smooth both sides.
  6. Cabinet and Drawer Locks:
    - a. Install only on cabinets and drawers as shown on Contract Documents.
  7. Install plastic grommets in cable access holes in countertops located as located on Contract Documents.
- C. Finishes:
1. Factory Finishing:
    - a. Design Criteria:

- 1) Applied before leaving factory.
  - 2) Factory-finish to match Owner selected sample as specified in Section 09 9324.
- b. Color:
- 1) Maple.

## 2.2 ASSESSORIES

### A. Manufacturers:

1. Manufacturer Contact List for Assessories:
  - a. Accuride, Santa Fe Springs, CA [www accuride.com](http://www accuride.com).
  - b. Anybumper, Amite, LA [www Anybumper.com](http://www Anybumper.com).
  - c. Blum Inc, Stanley, NC [www blum.com](http://www blum.com).
  - d. CompX National, Mauldin, SC [www nclnet.com](http://www nclnet.com).
  - e. Grass America Inc, Kernerville, NC [www grassusa.com](http://www grassusa.com).
  - f. Hafele America Co., Archdale, NC [hafele.com](http://hafele.com).
  - g. Ives, Indianapolis, IN [www iveshardware.com](http://www iveshardware.com).
  - h. Knap & Vogt, Grand Rapids, MI [www knapeandvogt.com](http://www knapeandvogt.com) or Knap & Vogt Canada, Mississauga, ON (905) 676-8972.
  - i. Olympus Lock Co, Seattle, WA [www olympus-lock.com](http://www olympus-lock.com).
  - j. Rockford Process Control, Inc (RPC) Rockford, IL [www rockfordprocess.com](http://www rockfordprocess.com).
  - k. Salice America Inc, Charlotte, NC [www saliceamerica.com](http://www saliceamerica.com).
  - l. Stanley, New Britain, CT [www stanleyhardware.com](http://www stanleyhardware.com).

### B. Cabinet Hardware:

1. Cabinet And Drawer Pulls:
  - a. Satin Chromium Plated brass / bronze core bow handles, 4 inches (100 mm) long minimum.
  - b. Type Two Acceptable Products:
    - 1) 4484 by Stanley.
    - 2) Equal as approved by Architect before installation. See Section 01 6200.
2. Cabinet And Drawer Locks:
  - a. General:
    - 1) Pin tumbler type suitable for location.
    - 2) Keying: Key each cabinet and drawer individually as shown on Contract Documents except as follows:
      - a) Key each cabinet and drawer within each Office alike.
      - b) Crosskey knife drawer so all other cabinet and drawer keys will open drawer.
    - 3) Stamp keys with Room number and cabinet designation as shown on Signage Plan of Contract Drawings.
    - 4) Provide six (6) keys per cabinet.
  - b. Design Criteria:
    - 1) Barrel diameter: 7/8 inch (22 mm).
    - 2) Cylinder length: 7/8 inch (22 mm).
    - 3) Key removable in locked or unlocked position.
    - 4) Meet ANSI/BHMA A156.11 Grade 2 requirements.
  - c. Type Two Acceptable Manufacturers:
    - 1) Advantage Plus cam lock by CompX National Lock.
    - 2) 100DR/200DW N Series door and drawer lock by Olympus Lock Inc.
    - 3) Equal as approved by Architect before installation. See Section 01 6200.
3. Cabinet Adjustable Shelf Supports:
  - a. Either of following systems are acceptable, at Fabricator's option:
    - 1) 32mm System: Casework Fabricator's standard.
    - 2) Traditional System:
      - a) Class Two Quality Standards: 255 and 256 by Knap & Vogt.
4. Cabinet (Scripture) Hinges (used only in CES Module Cabinetry):
  - a. Description:
    - 1) Institutional overlay, semi-concealed hinge.
  - b. Design Criteria:
    - 1) Door thickness: 3/4 inch (19 mm):
      - a) Two (2) hinges.

- b) Hinge Opening: 180 degree.
- c. Category Four Approved Product. See Section 01 6000 for definitions of Categories (only approved hinge unless written approval of Project Manager):
  - 1) Model 374 Overlay Hinge by Rockford Process Control.
- 5. Cabinet (Scripture) Door Pull (used only in CES Module Cabinetry):
  - a. Type: Flush Pull.
  - b. Material:
    - 1) Baldwin: Brass.
    - 2) Schwinn: Zamac (Zinc, Aluminum, Magnesium, and Copper alloy).
  - c. Size:
    - 1) Baldwin: 1.30 inch (33 mm) wide x 3.12 inch (79 mm) long x 0.33 inch (8.38 mm) deep. Projection: 0.33 inch (8.38 mm).
    - 2) Schwinn: 34 mm (1 5/16 inch) wide x 103 mm (4 1/16 inch) long x 17 mm (1/16 inch) deep. Projection: 2 mm (1/16 inch).
  - d. Color / Finish: Satin Nickel Finish.
  - e. Type Two Acceptable Products:
    - 1) 9BR7013002 by Baldwin Hardware, Wyomissing, PA, [www.baldwinhardware.com](http://www.baldwinhardware.com).
    - 2) Item Z078 (SCW-59058) by Schwinn Hardware, Inc., Scottsdale, AR [www.schwinnhardware.com](http://www.schwinnhardware.com).
    - 3) Equal as approved by Architect before installation. See Section 01 6200.
- 6. Cabinet Hinges:
  - a. Description:
    - 1) Cup Hinge (Concealed Hinge or European style).
    - 2) Steel, nickel-plated, full overlay, self closing with dowel, Mod 17.
  - b. Design Criteria:
    - 1) Doors 48 inches (1 200 mm) High or Less:
      - a) Two (2) hinges.
      - b) Hinge Opening: 165 degree minimum.
    - 2) Doors over 48 inches (1 200 mm) High:
      - a) Four (4) hinges.
      - b) Hinge Opening: 165 degree minimum.
  - c. Basis of Design: Model 329.03.558 with Model 329.73.510 mounting plate by Hafele.
    - 1) Category Four Approved Manufacturers. See Section 01 6200 for definitions of Categories:
      - a) Blum.
      - b) Grass America.
      - c) Hafele.
      - d) Knappe & Vogt.
      - e) Salice.
- 7. Cabinet Inactive Leaf Catches:
  - a. Class Two Quality Standards:
    - 1) Full-Height Doors: Two Surface Bolts No 043 - 2 inch (50 mm) by Ives.
    - 2) All Other Doors: Elbow Catch No 2 by Ives.
- 8. Drawer Guides:
  - a. Keyboard / Pencil Drawers:
    - 1) Steel ball bearings, 45 lb (20 kg) load rating minimum.
    - 2) 3/4 extension, top mounting.
    - 3) Category Four Approved Products. See Section 01 6200 for definitions of Categories:
      - a) Series 2006 by Accuride.
      - b) Article 422.14.345 by Hafele.
      - c) Series KV8200 by Knappe & Vogt.
  - b. Standard Drawers:
    - 1) Full extension, steel ball bearings, 100 lb (45 kg) load rating.
    - 2) Category Four Approved Products. See Section 01 6200 for definitions of Categories:
      - a) Series 3832-Classic by Accuride.
      - b) Article 422.04.552 by Hafele.
      - c) Series KV8400 by Knappe & Vogt.
  - c. Lateral Files / Serving Area Drawers:
    - 1) Files/Drawers 30 inches (762 mm) wide and under:
      - a) Full extension, steel ball bearings, 150 lb (68 kg) load rating.

- b) Category Four Approved Products. See Section 01 6200 for definitions of Categories:
    - (1) Series 4034 by Accuride.
    - (2) Article 422.17.550 by Haffele.
    - (3) Series KV8505 by Knape & Vogt.
  - 2) Files/Drawers over 30 inches (762 mm) wide:
    - a) Duty, full extension, steel ball bearings, 200 lbs (90 kg) load rating.
    - b) Category Four Approved Products. See Section 01 6200 for definitions of Categories:
      - (1) Series 3640-A by Accuride.
      - (2) Article 422.07.554 by Haffele.
      - (3) Series KV8800 by Knape & Vogt.
- C. Cabinet Door Bumpers:
- 1. Description:
    - a. Polyurethane bumper to protect gypsum board from cabinet handle damage where cabinet handles hit gypsum wallboard surface.
  - 2. Design Criteria:
    - a. Clear.
    - b. Peel adhesion.
    - c. Size: 3/8 inch (9.5 mm diameter x 1/8 inch (3 mm) thick.
  - 3. Type Two Acceptable Products:
    - a. WS-34 Cylindrical Soft Durometer Cabinet Bumper by Anybumper.
    - b. Equal as approved by Architect before installation. See Section 01 6200.
- D. Pass Through Window Track:
- 1. Description:
    - a. Aluminum track with nylon or ball bearing steel rollers.
  - 2. Type One Acceptable Products:
    - a. Ezy-Roll Aluminum Track Number P1092 ANOD by Knape and Vogt, which includes:
      - 1) 1085 vinyl glides: Four (4) each.
      - 2) 1093 upper channel: One (1) each.
      - 3) 1095 shoe: Two (2) each.
      - 4) 1097 rollers: Four (4) each.
      - 5) 1099 lower track: One (1) each.
    - b. Equal as approved by Architect before bidding. See Section 01 6200.
  - 3. Sliding Window Lock:
    - a. Provide with four (4) keys.
    - b. Class Two Quality Standard:
      - 1) Number 965 NP Ratchet Lock by Knape & Vogt.

## 2.3 SOURCE QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Inspections:
- 1. Clear Finished Hardwood:
    - a. Color matches Owner provided sample specified in Section 09 9324.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION: Not Used

END OF SECTION

**SECTION 07 1113****BITUMINOUS DAMPPROOFING****PART 1 GENERAL****1.01 SECTION INCLUDES**

- A. Bituminous dampproofing.

**1.02 SUBMITTALS**

- A. Product Data: Provide properties of primer, bitumen, and mastics.
- B. Manufacturer's Installation Instructions: Indicate special procedures and perimeter conditions requiring special attention.

**1.03 FIELD CONDITIONS**

- A. Maintain ambient temperatures above 40 degrees F for 24 hours before and during application until dampproofing has cured.

**PART 2 PRODUCTS****2.01 BITUMINOUS DAMPPROOFING**

- A. Acceptable Products:
  - 1. Ecomul-11 by Epro Waterproofing Systems, Derby, KS [www.eproserv.com](http://www.eproserv.com).
  - 2. Henry 788 by Henry Company, El Segundo, CA [www.henry.com](http://www.henry.com).
  - 3. Karnak 100 by Karnak Chemical Corp, Clark, NJ [www.karnakcorp.com](http://www.karnakcorp.com).
  - 4. Sealmatic Asphalt Emulsion Dampproofing Type I by W R Meadows, Hampshire, IL [www.wrmeadows.com](http://www.wrmeadows.com).

**PART 3 EXECUTION****3.01 EXAMINATION**

- A. Verify existing conditions are acceptable prior to starting this work.
- B. Verify substrate surfaces are durable, free of matter detrimental to adhesion or application of dampproofing system.
- C. Verify that items penetrating surfaces to receive dampproofing are securely installed.

**3.02 PREPARATION**

- A. Protect adjacent surfaces not designated to receive dampproofing.
- B. Clean and prepare surfaces to receive dampproofing in accordance with manufacturer's instructions.
- C. Do not apply dampproofing to surfaces unacceptable to manufacturer.
- D. Apply mastic to seal penetrations, small cracks, or minor honeycombs in substrate.

**3.03 APPLICATION**

- A. Spray Application:
  - 1. Spray to a thickness of 10 mils (0.254 mm) minimum.
- B. Brush / Roller Application:
  - 1. Apply two coats of dampproofing at rate recommended by Manufacturer.
  - 2. Apply coats in cross hatch method so coats are applied perpendicular to each other.
  - 3. Before applying second coat allow first coat to dry in accordance with Manufacturer's recommendations.
- C. Prime surfaces in accordance with manufacturer's instructions.
- D. Apply from 6 inches below finish grade elevation down to top of footings.
- E. Seal items watertight with mastic, that project through dampproofing surface.

F. Do not backfill against bituminous dampproofing for twenty-four (24) hours after application.

**END OF SECTION**



**SECTION 07 2113****BOARD INSULATION****PART 1 - GENERAL****1.1 SUMMARY**

## A. Includes But Not Limited To:

1. Furnish and install board insulation on interior side of perimeter foundation walls and under floor slabs as described in Contract Documents.
2. Furnish and install board insulation on exterior perimeter of above grade framing walls as described in Contract Documents.

**1.2 REFERENCES**

## A. Definitions:

1. Flame Spread: The propagation of flame over a surface.
2. Flame Spread Index: The numerical value assigned to a material tested in accordance with ASTM E84.
3. Smoke-Developed Index: The numerical value assigned to a material tested in accordance with ASTM E84.

## B. Reference Standards:

1. ASTM International:
  - a. ASTM C518-17, 'Standard Test Method for Steady-State Thermal Transmission Properties by Means of the Heat Flow Meter Apparatus'.
  - b. ASTM C578-18, 'Standard Specification for Rigid, Cellular Polystyrene Thermal Insulation'.
  - c. ASTM C1289-18a, 'Standard Specification for Faced Rigid Cellular Polyisocyanurate Thermal Insulation Board'.
  - d. ASTM E84-18b, 'Standard Test Method for Surface Burning Characteristics of Building Materials'.
  - e. ASTM E96/E96M-16, 'Standard Test Methods for Water Vapor Transmission of Materials'.
2. Underwriters Laboratories, Inc.:
  - a. UL 723: 'Standard for Safety Test for Surface Burning Characteristics of Building Materials'; (11th Edition - 2018).

**1.3 ADMINISTRATIVE REQUIREMENTS**

## A. Coordination:

1. Installation of Polyethylene Film Vapor Retarder as specified in Section 07 2616 with Type 1 Insulation (Below Grade).

## B. Pre-Installation Conferences:

1. Participate in pre-installation conference as specified in Section 01 3100:
  - a. Schedule pre-installation conference prior to commencement of installing insulation with Installer and Manufacturer's Representative if available.
  - b. In addition to agenda items specified in Section 01 3100, review following:
    - 1) Review installation procedures.
    - 2) Review coordination of work with related and adjacent work.
    - 3) Review special details and flashing.

## 1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Regulatory Agency Sustainability Approvals:
  - 1. Insulation shall be manufactured to be in compliance with International Code Council (IBC) or other applicable building codes.
  - 2. Fire-Test-Response Characteristics: As determined by test method indicated below by qualified testing agency. Identify products with appropriate markings of applicable testing agency.
    - a. Surface-Burning Characteristics:
      - 1) Insulation shall have Class A flame spread rating in accordance with ASTM E84 or UL 723.
        - a) Class A (Flame spread index 0-25; Smoke-developed index 0-450).
        - b) Flash point: None.
  - 3. Qualifications:
    - a. Installer: Firm which has at least three (3) years experience in work of type required by this specification.

## 1.5 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Delivery And Acceptance Requirements:
  - 1. Materials shall be delivered in original, unopened packages with labels intact. Exercise care to avoid damage during unloading.
  - 2. Deliver materials in sufficient quantities to allow continuity of work.
- B. Storage And Handling Requirements:
  - 1. Store, protect and handle materials in accordance with Manufacturer's recommendations to prevent damage, contamination and deterioration. Keep material free of dirt and other foreign matter.
  - 2. Store in cool, dry area away from sources of heat, flame, ignition and strong oxidizing agents.
  - 3. Following Manufacturer's instructions for protection when handling and cutting insulation.

## 1.6 WARRANTY

- A. Manufacturer Warranty:
  - 1. Manufacturer's Insulation Warranty.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 MANUFACTURERES

- A. Manufacturer Contact List:
  - 1. Owens Corning, Toledo, OH [www.owens-corning.com](http://www.owens-corning.com).
  - 2. Dow Chemical, Midland, MI [www.dow.com](http://www.dow.com)

### 2.2 MATERIALS

- A. Board Insulation:
  - 1. Description:
    - a. Extruded polystyrene foam insulation for use above and below grade.
  - 2. Design Criteria:
    - a. Meet requirements of ASTM C578, Type IV.
    - b. Close-cell foam insulation.
    - c. Meet requirements of ASTM E84 or UL 723 for 'surface burning characteristics of building materials'.
  - 3. Type One Acceptable Products:

- a. Foamular 250 by Owens Corning.
- b. Styrofoam Scoreboard Extruded Polystyrene Foam Insulation by Dow Chemical.
- c. Equal as approved by Architect before bidding. See Section 01 6200.

## 2.3 ACCESSORIES

- A. Fasteners:
  1. Tapping screws with washers.
    - a. As recommended by Manufacturer.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Verification Of Conditions:
  1. Prior to all work of this section, carefully inspect installed work of all other trades and verify that all such work is complete to point where installation may properly commence.
  2. Verify insulation may be installed in accordance with original design and manufacturer's recommendations
  3. Discrepancies:
    - a. In event of discrepancy, immediately notify Architect.
    - b. Do not proceed with installation in areas of discrepancy until all such discrepancies have been fully resolved.

### 3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. General: Install insulation in compliance with International Code Council (IBC) or other applicable building codes and in accordance with Manufacturer's current recommendations.
- B. Type 1 Insulation (Below Grade):
  1. Remove ties and concrete protrusions that would keep insulation from fully contacting foundation wall face.
  2. Install against interior side of perimeter foundation walls extending downward from top of slab **48 inches (1 200 mm)** or to top of footing, whichever is less. Install using **3/8 inch (9.5 mm)** beads of adhesive at **12 inches (300 mm)** on center vertically and at each vertical and horizontal joint to completely seal insulation.

### 3.3 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Field Tests And Inspections:
  1. Upon completion of installation, visually inspect each insulated area and verify that all insulation is complete and properly installed.
- B. Non-Conforming Work: Non-conforming work as covered in the General Conditions applies, but is not limited to the following:
  1. Correct any work found not complying with contract document requirements at no additional cost to the Owner.

### 3.4 CLEANING

- A. Waste Management:
  1. Remove from site debris resulting from work of this Section.

**END OF SECTION**

**SECTION 07 2116****BLANKET INSULATION****PART 1 - GENERAL****1.1 SUMMARY**

## A. Includes But Not Limited To:

1. Furnish and install faced thermal and acoustic batt insulation as described in Contract Documents.
2. Quality of insulation used in speaker enclosures.

## B. Related Requirements:

1. Section 06 2024: 'Door, Frame, And Finish Hardware Installation' for furnishing and installing of insulation in hollow metal door frames.

**1.2 REFERENCES**

## A. Reference Standards:

1. ASTM International:
  - a. ASTM C665-17, 'Standard Specification for Mineral-Fiber Blanket Thermal Insulation for Light Frame Construction and Manufactured Housing'.

**1.3 QUALITY ASSURANCE**

## A. Regulatory Agency Sustainability Approvals:

1. Insulation shall be manufactured and installed in compliance with International Building Code (IBC) or other applicable building codes.

**PART 2 - PRODUCTS****2.1 SYSTEMS**

## A. Manufacturers:

## 1. Insulation:

## a. Type One Acceptable Manufacturers:

- 1) Certaineed Corp, Valley Forge, PA [www.certainteed.com](http://www.certainteed.com).
- 2) FiberTEK, Salt Lake City, UT [www.fibertekinsulation.com](http://www.fibertekinsulation.com).
- 3) Guardian Fiberglass, Greer, SC [www.guardianbp.com](http://www.guardianbp.com).
- 4) Johns Manville, Denver, CO [www.jm.com](http://www.jm.com).
- 5) Knauf Fiber Glass, Shelbyville, IN [www.knaufusa.com](http://www.knaufusa.com).
- 6) Owens-Corning Fiberglass Corporation, Toledo, OH [www.owens-corning.com](http://www.owens-corning.com).
- 7) Thermafiber, Wabash, IL [www.thermafiber.com](http://www.thermafiber.com).

## b. Equal as approved by Architect before bidding. See Section 01 6200.

## B. Materials:

## 1. Thermal And Acoustic Insulation:

- a. Order insulation by 'R' value rather than 'U' value, rating, or thickness, either 16 or 24 inches (400 or 600 mm) wide according to framing spacing.
- b. Unfaced Insulation: Meet requirements of ASTM C665, Type I.
  - 1) Support at trussed rafters:

- a) Provide support at trussed rafters where insulation is not enclosed by structure or drywall.
  - b) Provide stings/wires which run perpendicular to framing and attach at each trussed rafter and to framing at **32 inches (800 mm)** O.C. minimum and where batt ends adjoin each other.
  - or
  - c) Class Two Quality Standard: Simpson Strong Tie IS Insulation Supports with **14 gauge (1.89 mm)** carbon steel, spring wire and mitered tips for **16 inch (400 mm)** O.C. and **24 inch (610 mm)** O.C. spacing.
- c. 'R' Value Required:
- 1) Acoustically Insulated Ceilings:
    - a) Enclosed Spaces: Fill framed cavity with batt of appropriate thickness.
    - b) Unenclosed Spaces: R-19.
    - c) Unenclosed Spaces above Offices and Restrooms: R-30.
  - 2) Thermally Insulated Ceilings / Roof:
    - a) R-38C Cathedral / High Density: At 2x12 (**50x300 mm**) Overbuild Framing.
    - b) R-38 Standard: All Other. (R-49 in Climate Zones 6, 7, and 8).
  - 3) Wood Wall Stud Framing:

R-11	<b>3-1/2 inches deep</b>	<b>89 mm deep</b>
R-19	<b>5-1/2 inches deep</b>	<b>140 mm deep</b>
R-25	<b>7-1/4 inches deep</b>	<b>184 mm deep</b>
R-30	<b>9-1/4 inches deep</b>	<b>235 mm deep</b>
R-38	<b>11-1/4 inches deep</b>	<b>286 mm deep</b>

- 4) Metal Wall Stud Framing:

R-11	<b>3-1/2 inches deep</b>	<b>89 mm deep</b>
R-13	<b>3-5/8 inches deep</b>	<b>92 mm deep</b>
R-15	<b>4 inches deep</b>	<b>102 mm deep</b>
R-19	<b>5-1/2 inches deep</b>	<b>140 mm deep</b>
R-22	<b>6 inches deep</b>	<b>152 mm deep</b>
R-25	<b>7-1/4 inches deep</b>	<b>184 mm deep</b>
R-25	<b>8 inches deep</b>	<b>191 mm deep</b>
R-30	<b>9-1/4 inches deep</b>	<b>235 mm deep</b>
R-30	<b>10 inches deep</b>	<b>254 mm deep</b>
R-38	<b>11-1/2 inches deep</b>	<b>292 mm deep</b>
R-38	<b>12 inches deep</b>	<b>305 mm deep</b>

- 5) Structural Composite Lumber (SCL) Wall Framing:

R-11	<b>3-1/2 inches deep</b>	<b>89 mm deep</b>
R-19	<b>5-1/2 inches deep</b>	<b>140 mm deep</b>
R-25	<b>7-1/4 inches deep</b>	<b>184 mm deep</b>
R-30	<b>9-1/2 inches deep</b>	<b>241 mm deep</b>
R-38	<b>11-7/8 inches deep</b>	<b>302 mm deep</b>

**2.2 ACCESSORIES SYSTEMS**

- A. Attic Baffles:
  - 1. Design Criteria:
    - a. Baffle can be used with spray foam, loose-fill, fiberglass, or other insulation materials.
  - 2. Type One Acceptable Manufacturers:
    - a. SB24 SmartBaffle by DCI Products, Inc., Clifton Heights, PA [www.dciproducts.com](http://www.dciproducts.com).
    - b. Equal as approved by Architect before bidding. See Section 01 6200.

**PART 3 - EXECUTION****3.1 INSTALLATION****A. General:**

1. Leave no gaps in insulation envelope.
2. If two layers of insulation are used to attain required 'R' value, only layer towards interior of building shall have facing.
3. Provide minimum clearance around recessed lighting fixtures as approved by local code.

**B. In Framing:**

1. Install insulation behind plumbing and wiring, around duct and vent line penetrations, and in similar places.
2. Fit ends of batts snug against top and bottom plates.
3. Fit batts snug against stud framing at each side.
4. Where insulation is not enclosed by structure or drywall, support in place with wire or other suitable material as approved by Architect before bid.

**C. Attic Baffles:**

1. Install in accordance with manufacturer's instructions.
2. Install baffles between trusses and rafters at ventilation spaces to prevent insulation from blocking airflow from soffit.
3. Install baffles to prevent insulation from blocking ventilation airflow from soffit.

**END OF SECTION**

**SECTION 07 2500****WEATHER BARRIERS****PART 1 GENERAL****1.01 SECTION INCLUDES****1.02 SUBMITTALS**

- A. Product Data: Provide data on material characteristics and performance criteria.
- B. Manufacturer's Installation Instructions: Indicate preparation, installation methods, and storage and handling criteria.

**1.03 FIELD CONDITIONS**

- A. Maintain temperature and humidity recommended by materials manufacturers before, during, and after installation.

**PART 2 PRODUCTS****2.01 AIR BARRIER MATERIALS (WATER VAPOR PERMEABLE AND WATER-RESISTIVE)**

- A. Air Barrier Sheet, Mechanically Fastened:
  - 1. Approved Products. See Section 01 6000:
    - a. Styrofoam Weathermate Plus by Dow, Chemical Co, Midland, MI [www.dow.com](http://www.dow.com)
    - b. Tyvek HomeWrap by Du Pont Company, Wilmington, DE [www.dupont.com](http://www.dupont.com)
    - c. DriShield Housewrap by Protecto Wrap, Denver, CO [www.protectowrap.com](http://www.protectowrap.com)
    - d. Fortress Pro by Raven Industries, Sioux Falls, SD [www.ravenind.com](http://www.ravenind.com)
    - e. Typar Housewrap by Fiberweb, Old Hickory, TN [www.typar.com](http://www.typar.com).
  - 2. Materials:
    - a. Air Retarder:
      - 1) Non-woven.
      - 2) Meet requirements of ASTM E1677, Type I.
    - b. Sealing Tape:
      - 1) Acceptable Products:
        - (a) DuPont Contractor Tape.
        - (b) Fortress Pro Seaming Tape.
        - (c) Typar Construction Tape.
        - (d) 3M Contractor Sheathing Tape.
        - (e) Protecto Wrap BT25 XL Window Sealing Tape.
        - (f) As recommended in writing by Air Retarder Manufacturer.
    - c. Fasteners:
      - 1) Approved Products.
        - (a) Metal Framing: Corrosion resistant, self-tapping screws and plastic washers or Tyvek Wrap Caps. Screws to be 3/4 inch (19 mm) long minimum and washers one inch (25 mm) diameter.
        - (b) Wood Framing: Corrosion resistant roofing nails with 3/4 inch (19 mm) long shank minimum and one inch (25 mm) diameter plastic head or Tyvek Wrap Caps. Staples are only allowed to aid in installation with permanent fasteners installed immediately thereafter.

**2.02 ACCESSORIES**

- A. Sealants, Tapes, and Accessories Used for Sealing Water-Resistive Barrier and Adjacent Substrates: As indicated or complying with water-resistive barrier manufacturer's installation instructions.

**PART 3 EXECUTION**



### 3.01 EXAMINATION

- A. Verify that surfaces and conditions comply with requirements of this section.

### 3.02 PREPARATION

- A. Remove projections, protruding fasteners, and loose or foreign matter that might interfere with proper installation.
- B. Clean and prime substrate surfaces to receive adhesives and sealants in accordance with manufacturer's installation instructions.

### 3.03 INSTALLATION

- A. Install materials in accordance with manufacturer's installation instructions.
- B. Apply sealants and adhesives within recommended temperature range in accordance with manufacturer's installation instructions.
- C. Mechanically Fastened Exterior Sheets:
  - 1. Install sheets shingle-fashion to shed water, with seams aligned horizontal.
  - 2. Overlap seams as recommended by manufacturer, 6 inches, minimum.
  - 3. Overlap at outside and inside corners as recommended by manufacturer, 12 inches, minimum.
  - 4. Attach to framed construction with fasteners extending through sheathing into framing, and space fasteners at 12 to 18 inches on center along each framing member supporting sheathing.
  - 5. Attach to masonry construction using mechanical fasteners spaced at 12 to 18 inches vertically on center, and at 24 inches, maximum, horizontally on center.
  - 6. For applications indicated to be airtight, seal seams, laps, penetrations, tears, and cuts with self-adhesive tape; use only large-headed, gasketed fasteners as recommended by manufacturer.
  - 7. Install water-resistive barrier over jamb flashings.
  - 8. Install head flashings under water-resistive barrier.
  - 9. At framed openings with frames having nailing flanges, extend sheet into opening and over flanges; at head of opening, seal sheet over flange and flashing.
- D. Mechanically Fastened Sheets - Vapor Retarder On Interior:
  - 1. When insulation is to be installed in assembly, install vapor retarder over insulation.
  - 2. Installation as Air Barrier System:
    - a. Roof/Attic/Ceiling Applications:
      - 1) Staple to bottom of ceiling joists as recommended by Manufacturer.
      - 2) Seal retarder to interior and exterior wall top plates using recommended sealants.
      - 3) Fasten retarder through sealant to plates as recommended by Manufacturer.
      - 4) Allow retarder to overlap at corners as recommended by Manufacturer.
    - b. Exterior Wall Applications:
      - 1) Install wall application as recommended by Manufacturer.
      - 2) Apply recommended sealant over ceiling overlapped retarder material at top plate, to frame around window and door rough openings and to bottom plate as recommended by Manufacturer to ensure an air-tight assembly.
    - c. Acoustical and Sealant Application at Sheet Terminations:
      - 1) Install sealants as recommended by Manufacturer to ensure an air-tight assembly.
    - d. Lapped Joint Treatment:
      - 1) Apply recommended sealant to wood stud surface.
      - 2) Overlap and as recommended by Manufacturer.
      - 3) Seal overlapped joint using recommended sheathing tape.
      - 4) All vertical and horizontal seams should be treated as described above.
    - e. Penetrations:

- 1) Building envelope penetrations include windows, doors, electrical outlets, gas lines, plumbing, etc:
    - (a) Cut and fit sheeting tightly around penetrations as recommended by Manufacturer.
    - (b) Seal retarder around all electrical, HVAC and plumbing penetrations with recommended sealants or sheathing tapes.
  - f. Window and Door Treatment:
    - 1) Cut sheeting to fit rough opening as recommended by Manufacturer.
    - 2) Apply recommended sealant between retarder and window frame.
    - 3) Attach through sealant to window head, jambs and sill. Seal window to rough opening with recommended sealant.
    - 4) Apply recommended sealant between interior finishing material and attached sheeting.
  - g. Sheet Tears and Holes:
    - 1) Cover all tears and holes with recommended sheathing tape.
    - 2) Treat large holes (greater than 1 inch (25 mm)) like large penetrations using square patch.
  - h. Electrical Outlets:
    - 1) Wrap and seal electrical boxes using recommended sheathing tapes and sealants.
    - 2) Airtight plastic boxes are recommended.
  - i. Plumbing Penetrations:
    - 1) Secure plumbing lines to rigid mounting panel.
    - 2) Seal penetrations using recommended sealants.
    - 3) Attach sheeting to mounting panel using recommended sealants.
  - j. Air Barrier System Continuity:
    - 1) Install as continuous interior air barrier system:
      - (a) Maintain air barrier system continuity at wall, ceiling, floor and foundation intersections. Use recommended sealants. Seal between framing and retarder overlaps.
      - (b) Coordinate installation details with framing and insulation trade contractors.
  3. Fasteners:
    - a. Fasteners as approved by Manufacturer:
      - 1) Following recommendations for type, size, spacing and installation methods.
      - 2) To resist wind forces, fastened to supporting structure and supported by gypsum wallboard on one side and insulation on other.
  4. Seal penetrations through vapor retarder immediately before installation of gypsum board.
- E. Openings and Penetrations in Exterior Water-Resistive Barriers:
1. Install flashing over sills, covering entire sill framing member, and extend at least 5 inches onto water-resistive barrier and at least 6 inches up jambs; mechanically fasten stretched edges.
  2. At openings filled with frames having nailing flanges, seal head and jamb flanges using a continuous bead of sealant compressed by flange and cover flanges with sealing tape at least 4 inches wide; do not seal sill flange.
  3. At openings filled with nonflanged frames, seal water-resistive barrier to each side of framing at opening using flashing at least 9 inches wide, and covering entire depth of framing.
  4. At head of openings, install flashing under water-resistive barrier extending at least 2 inches beyond face of jambs; seal water-resistive barrier to flashing.
  5. At interior face of openings, seal gaps between window and door frames and rough framing using appropriate joint sealant over backer rod.
  6. Service and Other Penetrations: Form flashing around penetrating items and seal to surface of water-resistive barrier.

**3.04 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL**

- A. Owner's Inspection and Testing: Cooperate with Owner's testing agency.
  - 1. Allow access to work areas and staging.
  - 2. Notify Owner's testing agency in writing of schedule for work of this section to allow sufficient time for testing and inspection.
  - 3. Do not cover work of this section until testing and inspection is accepted.
- B. Vapor retarder is to be airtight and free from holes, tears, and punctures.
  - 1. Immediately before installation of gypsum board, inspect vapor retarder for holes, tears, and punctures and repair damaged areas.
  - 2. Immediately before completion of Project, inspect exposed vapor retarder for holes, tears, and punctures and repair damaged areas.
- C. Do not cover installed water-resistive barriers until required inspections have been completed.
- D. Obtain approval of installation procedures from water-resistive barrier manufacturer based on a mock-up installed in place, prior to proceeding with remainder of installation.
- E. Take digital photographs of each portion of installation prior to covering up weather barriers.

**3.05 PROTECTION**

- A. Do not leave materials exposed to weather longer than recommended by manufacturer.

**END OF SECTION**

**SECTION 07 2616****BELOW-GRADE VAPOR RETARDER****PART 1 - GENERAL****1.1 SUMMARY**

- A. Products Furnished But Not Installed Under This Section:
  - 1. Vapor retarder, seam tape, and penetration accessories for installation under interior slabs-on-grade.
- B. Related Requirements:
  - 1. Section 31 1123: 'Aggregate Base' for installation of vapor retarder over aggregate base under concrete slab.

**1.2 REFERENCE**

- A. Association Publications:
  - 1. American Concrete Institute:
    - a. ACI 302.1R-04, 'Guide for Concrete Floor and Slab Construction'.
      - 1) Section 3.2.3, 'Vapor Retarder'.
    - b. ACI 302.2R-06, 'Guide for Concrete Slabs that Receive Moisture-Sensitive Flooring Materials'.
- B. Definitions:
  - 1. Vapor Barrier: Material that has permeance of 0.1 perm or less. Vapor barrier is a material that is essentially vapor impermeable. Vapor barrier is a Class I vapor control layer. Test procedure for classifying vapor retarders is ASTM E-96 Test Method A—the desiccant or dry cup method.
  - 2. Vapor Retarder: Vapor retarder is a material that has permeance of 1.0 perm or less and greater than 0.1 perm. Vapor retarder is a material that is vapor semi-impermeable. Vapor retarder is a Class II vapor control layer. The test procedure for classifying vapor retarders is ASTM E-96 Test Method A—the desiccant or dry cup method.
  - 3. Vapor Retarder Classes and Permeance Descriptions:
    - a. Classes of Vapor Retarders:
      - 1) Class I Vapor Retarder: 0.1 perm or less.
      - 2) Class II Vapor Retarder: 1.0 perm or less and greater than 0.1 perm.
      - 3) Class III Vapor Retarder: 10 perm or less and greater than 1.0 perm.
    - b. Four general classes based on permeance):
      - 1) Vapor Impermeable: 0.1 perm or less.
      - 2) Vapor semi-impermeable: 1.0 perm or less and greater than 0.1 perm.
      - 3) Vapor semi-permeable: 10 perm or less and greater than 1.0 perm.
      - 4) Vapor permeable: greater than 10 perms.
- C. Reference Standards:
  - 1. ASTM International:
    - a. ASTM D1709-16a, 'Standard Test Methods for Impact Resistance of Plastic Film by the Free-Falling Dart Method'.
    - b. ASTM E96/E96M-16, 'Standard Test Methods for Water Vapor Transmission of Materials'.
    - c. ASTM E1745-11, 'Standard Specification for Water Vapor Retarders Used in Contact with Soil or Granular Fill under Concrete Slabs'.

### 1.3 SUBMITTALS

- A. Action Submittals:
  - 1. Product Data:
    - a. Manufacturer's literature or cut-sheets.
  - 2. Samples:
    - a. Vapor Retarder:
      - 1) Submit sample of specified vapor retarder.
  
- B. Informational Submittals:
  - 1. Test And Evaluation Reports:
    - a. Independent laboratory test results showing compliance with ASTM C1745 Standard.
  - 2. Source Quality Control Submittals:
    - a. Vapor Retarder:
      - 1) Installation, seaming, and penetration boot instructions.
  
- C. Closeout Submittals:
  - 1. Include following in Operations And Maintenance Manual specified in Section 01 7800:
    - a. Warranty Documentation:
      - 1) Final, executed copy of Warranty:
    - b. Record Documentation:
      - 1) Manufacturers documentation:
        - a) Manufacturer's documentation showing compliance to Contract Documents.

### 1.4 WARRANTY

- A. Manufacturer Warranty:
  - 1. Site review by manufacturers representative prior to concrete placement.
  - 2. Manufacturer standard warranty to be free of defects and installed without damage and life of the building limited warranty for vapor retarder.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 ASSEMBLIES

- A. Manufacturers:
  - 1. Manufacturer Contact List:
    - a. Fortifiber, Reno, NV [www.fortifiber.com](http://www.fortifiber.com).
    - b. Insulation Solutions, East Peoria, IL [www.insulationsolutions.com](http://www.insulationsolutions.com).
    - c. Raven Industries, Sioux Falls, SD [www.ravenind.com](http://www.ravenind.com).
    - d. Reef Industries, Houston, TX [www.reefindustries.com](http://www.reefindustries.com).
    - e. Stego Industries, San Juan Capistrano, CA [www.stegoindustries.com](http://www.stegoindustries.com).
    - f. W R Meadows, Hampshire, IL [www.wrmeadows.com](http://www.wrmeadows.com).
  
- B. Materials:
  - 1. Vapor Retarder:
    - a. Design Criteria:
      - 1) Meet requirements of ASTM E1745, Class A rating.
      - 2) Thickness: **15 mil (0.38 mm)** minimum.
      - 3) Physical Properties:
        - a) Water Vapor Pemeance      ASTM E96, Method A      Perm 0.01
        - b) Puncture Resistance      ASTM D1709.
    - b. Category Four Approved Products. See Section 01 6200 for definition of Categories.
      - 1) Griffolyn 15 by Reef Industries.
      - 2) Moistop Ultra 15 Underslab Vapor Retarder by Fortifiber.
      - 3) Perminator (15 mil) by W R Meadows.

- 4) Stego Wrap by Stego.
- 5) Vapor Block 15 by Raven Industries.
- 6) Viper Vaporcheck II (15 mil) by Insulation Solutions.

## 2.2 ACCESSORIES

- A. Vapor Barrier:
1. Seam Tape: As recommended by Membrane Manufacturer for continuous taping of seams and sealing of penetration boots.
  2. Penetration Boots at Utility Penetrations:
    - a. Quality Standard: Factory fabricated pipeboots:
      - 1) Moistop: The Boot.
      - 2) Raven: VaporBoot.
      - 3) Reef Industries: VaporBoot.
      - 4) All Others:
        - a) Other Manufacturer's boot system.
        - b) or
        - c) Field fabricated from same material as vapor retarder membrane.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION Not Used

END OF SECTION

**SECTION 07 4600****RAINSCREEN DRAINAGE MAT****PART 1 GENERAL****1.1 SECTION INCLUDES**

- A. Wall moisture/vapor drainage mat.

**1.2 RELATED SECTIONS**

- A. Section 04 20 00 – Clay Unit Masonry: Cavity wall construction of brick veneer.
- B. Section 04 40 00 – Stone Masonry: Wall construction of stone veneer.
- C. Section 04 70 00 – Manufactured Masonry: Wall construction of manufactured masonry veneer.
- D. Section 07 46 00 – Siding: Wall construction of siding veneers.
- E. Section 09 24 23 – Portland Cement Stucco: Wall construction of stucco.

**1.3 REFERENCES**

- A. ASTM E 84 - Standard Test Method for Surface Burning Characteristics of Building Materials.
- B. ASTM E 2273 - Standard Test Method for Determining the Drainage Efficiency of Exterior Insulation and Finish Systems (EIFS) Clad Wall Assemblies.
- C. UL Fire Resistance Rated

**\*\*NOTE TO SPECIFIER\*\* FOR UL RATED WALL ASSEMBLIES WITH DRIWALL RAINSCREEN PLEASE SEE MANUFACTURER.**

**1.4 SUBMITTALS**

- A. Submit under provisions of Section 01 33 00.
- B. Product Data: Manufacturer's data sheets on each product to be used, including:
  - 1. Preparation instructions and recommendations.
  - 2. Storage and handling requirements and recommendations.
  - 3. Installation methods.

**1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE**

- A. Manufacturer Qualifications: Minimum 2 years production of similar products.
- B. Installer Qualifications: Experience with installation of similar products.

**1.6 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING**

- A. Store products in manufacturer's unopened packaging until ready for installation.

## **PART 2 – PRODUCTS**

### **2.1 MANUFACTURERS**

- A. Acceptable Manufacturer: Keene Building Products; PO Box 241353, Mayfield Heights, Ohio 44124. Toll Free Tel: (877) 514-5336, Tel: (440) 605-1020. Fax: (440) 605-1120. Email: info@keeneBuilding.com. Web: http://www.KeeneBuilding.com.
- B. Substitutions: Not permitted.
- C. Requests for substitutions will be considered in accordance with provisions of Section 01 25 00.

### **2.2 DRAINAGE MAT**

**\*\* NOTE TO SPECIFIER \*\*** DRIWALL RAINSCREEN 020-1 IS A NOMINAL 0.25 INCH (6 MM) THICK, RANDOMLY ORIENTED GEOMETRIC PATTERNED DRAINAGE AND VENTILATION MAT. IT IS DESIGNED TO ELIMINATE MOISTURE AND MOISTURE VAPOR IN STUCCO, THIN STONE, MANUFACTURED STONE, SIDING AND BRICK OR STONE MASONRY APPLICATIONS. DRIWALL RAINSCREEN IS PRODUCED FROM AN EXTRUDED POLYMER MATRIX OF ENTANGLED MONOFILAMENTS. THE THREE-DIMENSIONAL MAT IS HEAT LAMINATED TO A NON-WOVEN LIGHTWEIGHT, BREATHABLE FABRIC TO PROVIDE A SEPARATION FROM CEMENTATIONS VENEERS. THE MONOFILAMENTS ARE HEAT WELDED AT THE JUNCTIONS TO FORM A RESILIENT STRUCTURE THAT SPACES THE VENEER AWAY FROM THE INNER SHEATHING. THE PRODUCT IS USEFUL IN CAVITY WALL DESIGNS AND RAINSCREEN SYSTEMS WHERE AN AIR SPACE IS NEEDED FOR DRAINAGE AND VENTILATION. WHEN DRIWALL RAINSCREEN IS USED NO MORTAR OR OTHER DEBRIS CAN ENTER THE CAVITY ASSURING PROPER DRAINAGE AND VENTILATION.

- A. Drainage Mat: Randomly oriented geometric patterned drainage and ventilation mat designed to eliminate moisture and moisture vapor in wall applications.

**\*\* NOTE TO SPECIFIER \*\*** PRODUCT SELECTION:

- FOR MANUFACTURED STONE USE DRIWALL RAINSCREEN 020-1
- FOR THIN SET NATURAL STONE USE DRIWALL RAINSCREEN 020-1
- FOR STUCCO USE DRIWALL RAINSCREEN 020-1
- FOR SIDING USE DRIWALL RAINSCREEN 020-1
- FOR NATURAL STONE USE ANY DRIWALL RAINSCREEN PRODUCT
- FOR BRICK USE ANY DRIWALL RAINSCREEN PRODUCT

- B. Product: Driwall Rainscreen 020-1 as manufactured by Keene Building Products.

1. Physical Characteristics: Three-dimensional mat heat laminated to a non-woven light-weight, vapor permeable fabric. The monofilament mat is heat welded at the junctions to form a resilient structure that isolates veneer from the back-up.
  - a. 0.25 inches (6 mm) thick.



- b. 12.7 oz/sq. yd. (431 g/sq m) total weight.
- c. 48 inches (122 cm) wide.
- d. 65 feet (19.8 m) roll length.
- 2. Performance:
  - a. Drainage of moisture and ventilation between veneer and back-up support.
- 3. Material: UV stabilized polypropylene.
  - a. Class A flame spread per ASTM E84.
  - b. ASTM ASTM E 2273 - Standard Test Method for Determining the Drainage Efficiency of Exterior Insulation and Finish Systems (EIFS) Clad Wall Assemblies.
  - c. Hydrophobic compound.
  - d. Resistant to chemicals.
  - e. Does not support mold growth.

**\*\* NOTE TO SPECIFIER \*\* DELETE APPLICATIONS NOT REQUIRED FOR PROJECT.**

C. Application:

- 1. Provide at manufactured stone veneer and as indicated or required.
- 2. Provide at thin set natural stone veneer and as indicated or required.
- 3. Provide at stucco veneer and as indicated or required.
- 4. Provide at natural stone veneer as indicated or required.
- 5. Provide at brick veneer and as indicated or required.
- 6. Provide at siding and as indicated or required.

### **PART 3 – EXECUTION**

#### 1.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Do not begin installation until substrates have been properly prepared.
- B. If substrate preparation is the responsibility of another installer, notify Architect of unsatisfactory preparation before proceeding.

#### 1.2 PREPARATION

- A. Clean surfaces thoroughly prior to installation.
- B. Prepare surfaces using the methods recommended by the manufacturer for achieving the best result for the substrate under the project conditions.

#### 1.3 DRAINAGE MAT INSTALLATION

- A. Install in accordance with manufacturer's instructions.
- B. Inspection of Wall Conditions and Weather Barrier/Building Wrap: Ensure that the wall is free from structural defects, that any membranes or flashing are properly installed and that the final system will have a path for moisture to escape from the wall.

**\*\* NOTE TO SPECIFIER \*\* DELETE APPLICATIONS NOT REQUIRED FOR PROJECT.**

C. Installation for Manufactured Stone and Thin Set Natural Stone:

- 1. Install building paper or house wrap and flashing to manufactures' recommendations.

2. Place drainage mat horizontally against exterior wall fabric side out, entangled core to the building interior. Starting at the bottom of the wall, position the first piece of drainage mat where the bottom edge of the stone will meet the ledger board.
3. Mechanically fasten with a staple hammer, large head nail or washer and screw one fastener for each square foot (0.1 sq. m). When installing over concrete or block back-up walls that do not accept mechanical fasteners hold in place with small dabs of glue every 2.0 feet (0.61 m). Do not fasten through flashing.
4. Seam adjacent piece with the selvage edge overlapping the top of the lower drainage mat piece.
5. Install expanded metal lathe over the drainage mat according to the stone manufacturer's recommendations.
6. Apply scratch coat according to stone manufacturer's recommendations.
7. Install manufactured stone according to guidelines. Provide a weep method for ventilation and drainage mat.
8. Trim drainage mat around all penetrations, windows and doors so that the material is flush to the flashing.

D. Installation for Stucco:

1. Install building paper or house wrap and flashing to manufactures' recommendations.
2. Place drainage mat horizontally against exterior wall fabric side out, entangled core to the building interior. Starting at the bottom of the wall, position the first piece of drainage mat where the bottom edge of the stone will meet the ledger board.
3. Mechanically fasten with a staple hammer, large head nail or washer and screw one fastener for each square foot (0.1 sq. m). When installing over concrete or block back-up walls that do not accept mechanical fasteners hold in place with small dabs of glue every 2.0 feet (0.61 m). Do not fasten through flashing.
4. Seam adjacent piece with the selvage edge overlapping the top of the lower drainage mat piece.
5. Install expanded metal lathe over the drainage mat according to the manufacturer's recommendations.
6. Apply stucco according to manufacturer's recommendations. Provide a weep method for ventilation and drainage.
7. Trim drainage mat around all penetrations, windows and doors so that the material is flush to the flashing.

E. Installation for Natural Stone:

1. Install building paper or house wrap and flashing to manufactures' recommendations.
2. Install only as much drainage mat as will be covered by the stone each day. Wall ties can be installed through the drainage mat material.
3. Place drainage mat horizontally against exterior wall fabric side out, entangled core to the building interior. Starting at the bottom of the wall, position the first piece of drainage mat where the bottom edge of the stone will meet the ledger board.
4. Mechanically fasten with a staple hammer, large head nail or washer and screw one fastener for each square foot (0.1 sq. m). When installing over concrete or block back-up walls that do not accept mechanical fasteners hold in place with small dabs of glue every 2.0 feet (0.61 m). Do not fasten through flashing.
5. Seam adjacent piece with the selvage edge overlapping the top of the lower drainage mat piece.
6. Cut additional 2 inches (51 mm) wide by 12 inches length (305 mm) pieces of drainage mat and place strips every 2.0 feet (0.61 m) on center at the base of the wall extending

- a outside of the wall as a weep vent. Place the strips fabric side UP.
7. Install stone.
  8. When wall is complete, cut vent strips back flush with wall.
- F. Installation for Brick:
1. Install building paper or house wrap and flashing to manufactures' recommendations.
  2. Install only as much drainage mat as will be covered by the brick each day. Wall ties can be installed through the drainage mat material.
  3. Place drainage mat horizontally against exterior wall fabric side out, entangled core to the building interior. Starting at the bottom of the wall, position the first piece of drainage mat where the bottom edge of the brick will meet the ledger board.
  4. Mechanically fasten with a staple hammer, large head nail or washer and screw one fastener for each square foot (0.1 sq. m). When installing over concrete or block back-up walls that do not accept mechanical fasteners hold in place with small dabs of glue every 2.0 feet (0.61 m). Do not fasten through flashing.
  5. Seam adjacent piece with the selvage edge overlapping the top of the lower drainage mat piece.
  6. Install brick according to Brick Institute of America or manufacturer recommendation leaving an open head joint every 2.0 feet (0.61 m).
  7. Provide vents to provide open head joints during construction.
- G. Installation for Siding:
1. Install building paper or house wrap and flashing to manufacturers' recommendations.
  2. Place drainage mat horizontally against exterior wall, fabric side out, entangled core to the building interior. Start at the bottom of the wall and work up.
  3. Mechanically fasten with a staple hammer, large head nail or washer and screw one fastener for each square foot (0.1 sq. m). When installing over concrete or block back-up walls that do not accept mechanical fasteners hold in place with small dabs of glue every 2.0 feet (0.61 m). Do not fasten through flashing.
  4. Seam adjacent piece with the selvage edge overlapping the top of the lower drainage mat piece. Shingle so that selvage edge is installed toward the bottom of the wall.
  5. Install siding, shingle or fiber-cement siding according to manufacturers' recommendations. When choosing a fastener, allow for thickness of drainage mat. Pneumatic nail guns can be used if nails meet manufacturers' recommendations and air pressure and depth gauge is set to fasten nail snug with surface.

**END OF SECTION**

**SECTION 07 4616**  
**PREFINISHED EXTRUDED ALUMINUM CLADDING**

**PART 1 GENERAL****1.01 RELATED DOCUMENTS**

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

**1.02 SUMMARY**

- A. Section includes prefinished aluminum wall and soffit cladding.
- B. Related Requirements:
  - 1. Section 06 1000 "Rough Carpentry" for wood furring, grounds, nailers, and blocking.
  - 2. Section 06 2013 "Exterior Finish Carpentry" for exterior trim.
  - 3. Section 072500 "Weather Barriers" for weather-resistive barriers.

**1.03 COORDINATION**

- A. Coordinate cladding installation with flashings and other adjoining construction to ensure proper sequencing.

**1.04 PREINSTALLATION MEETINGS**

- A. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference with the Architect prior to installation of any part of this system.

**1.05 ACTION SUBMITTALS**

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
  - 1. Include construction details, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components and profiles, and finishes.
- B. Samples for Initial Selection: For aluminum wall and soffit cladding including related accessories.
  - 1. Submit samples of the full color line of each applicable product for color selection by the Architect.
- C. Samples for Verification:
  - 1. 24-inch long-by-actual-width Sample of cladding.
  - 2. 24-inch long-by-actual-width Samples of trim and accessories.

**1.06 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS**

- A. Product Certificates: For each type of aluminum cladding.
- B. Research/Evaluation Reports: For each type of aluminum cladding required, from ICC-ES.
- C. Sample Warranty: For special warranty.

**1.07 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS**

- A. Maintenance Data: For each type of product, including related accessories, to include in maintenance manuals.

**1.08 MAINTENANCE MATERIAL SUBMITTALS**

- A. Furnish extra materials that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.
  - 1. Furnish full lengths of aluminum wall cladding including related accessories, in a quantity equal to 2 percent of amount installed.

**1.09 QUALITY ASSURANCE**

- A. Mockups: Build mockups to verify selections made under Sample submittals and to demonstrate aesthetic effects and to set quality standards for fabrication and installation.
  - 1. Build mockups for wall cladding including accessories.
    - a. Size: 48 inches (1200 mm) long by 60 inches (1800 mm) high.

- b. Include outside corner, inside corner, window opening, bottom trim, and interior soffit detailing.
2. Approved mockup may remain in place as part of the wall installation if appropriately installed.
3. Approval of mockups does not constitute approval of deviations from the Contract Documents contained in mockups unless Architect specifically approves such deviations in writing.

#### **1.10 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING**

- A. Deliver and store packaged materials in original containers with labels intact until time of use.
- B. Store materials on elevated platforms, under cover, and in a dry location.

#### **1.11 WARRANTY**

- A. Special Warranty: Manufacturer agrees to repair or replace products that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.
  1. Failures include, but are not limited to, the following:
    - a. Structural failures including cracking, fading, and deforming.
    - b. Deterioration of metals, metal finishes, and other materials beyond normal weathering.
    - c. Warpage or other out of plane distortion.
  2. Fading is defined as loss of color, after cleaning with product recommended by manufacturer, of more than 4 Hunter color-difference units as measured according to ASTM D2244.
  3. Warranty Period: 15 years from date of Substantial Completion.

### **PART 2 PRODUCTS**

#### **2.01 MANUFACTURERS**

- A. Source Limitations: Obtain products, including related accessories, from single source from single manufacturer.
- B. Approved manufacturer:
  1. Knotwood.  
Regional distributor:  
Parallel Rep. LLC  
www.parallelrep.com  
866.472.7255  
Regional Contact  
Hailey Poehlman  
720.435.1099  
Hpoehlman@parallelrep.com
  2. Equal as approved by the Architect prior to bidding.

#### **2.02 ALUMINUM WALL CLADDING – HORIZONTAL SIDING**

- A. Aluminum Wall Cladding: Formed and coated product complying with AAMA 1402.
- B. Approved product:
  1. Knotwood extruded aluminum cladding.  
<https://knotwood.com/cladding/cladding-technical-information/>
  2. Equal as approved by the Architect prior to bidding.
  3. Material: Coil-coated aluminum sheet, ASTM B209 (ASTM B209M), alloy as standard with manufacturer, with temper as required to suit forming operations and structural performance required.
    - a. Pattern:
      - 1) Exterior application: 6 inch exposure, oriented horizontally.
      - 2) Interior application above decorative soffits: 8 inch exposure, oriented horizontally.

- b. Nominal Thickness: 0.071 inch (1.8 mm).
- c. Panel Depth: 5/8 inch (16mm).
- d. Joint Style: Reveal joint.
- e. Finish: Manufacturer's standard wood-grain powder coating.
  - 1) Color: Spotted Gum.

### **2.03 ALUMINUM SOFFIT CLADDING (FOR DECORATIVE SOFFITS AS INDICATED ON DRAWINGS)**

- A. Aluminum Soffit Cladding: Formed and coated product complying with AAMA 1402.
- B. Approved product:
  - 1. Knotwood extruded aluminum soffit.  
<https://knotwood.com/cladding/cladding-technical-information/>
  - 2. Material: Coil-coated aluminum sheet, ASTM B209 (ASTM B209M), alloy as standard with manufacturer, with temper as required to suit forming operations and structural performance required.
    - a. Panel Width: Nominal 6 inches (150mm).
    - b. Nominal Thickness: 0.071 inch (1.8 mm).
    - c. Panel Depth: 5/8 inch (16mm).
    - d. Joint Style: Reveal joint.
    - e. Finish: Manufacturer's standard wood-grain powder coating.
      - 1) Colors: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range of colors.

### **2.04 ACCESSORIES**

- A. Cladding Accessories, General: Provide starter strips, edge trim, outside and inside corner caps, end caps, and other items as recommended by cladding manufacturer for building configuration.
  - 1. Provide accessories made from same material as adjacent cladding unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Extruded Aluminum Accessories: Where aluminum accessories are indicated, provide accessories complying with AAMA 1402.
- C. Fasteners:
  - 1. For fastening to wood, use #10 diameter or larger fasteners of sufficient length to penetrate a minimum of 1 inch (25 mm) into substrate.
  - 2. For fastening to metal, use #10 diameter or larger fasteners of sufficient length to penetrate a minimum of 1/4 inch (6 mm), or three screw-threads, into substrate.
- D. Soffit ventilation: Soffits installed under this Section are all interior and do not require ventilation.

## **PART 3 EXECUTION**

### **3.01 EXAMINATION**

- A. Examine substrates for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of aluminum wall and soffit cladding and related accessories.
  - 1. Shim walls as necessary to achieve required tolerances.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

### **3.02 PREPARATION**

- A. Clean substrates of projections and substances detrimental to application.

### **3.03 INSTALLATION**

- A. General: Comply with manufacturer's written installation instructions applicable to products and applications indicated unless more stringent requirements apply.

1. Center nails in elongated nailing slots without binding cladding to allow for thermal movement.
- B. Install aluminum wall and soffit cladding and related accessories according to AAMA 1402.
  1. Install without hat channels behind cladding.
  2. Install cladding with full reveal joints.
  3. Install the cladding system in the "bottom-up" method, beginning with starter trim and a full-height cladding board.
  4. Stagger vertical joints of each row. Locate joints over supports.
  5. Install fasteners at 32 inches (813 mm) on center and attach fasteners to structural supports. Install aligned, level, and plumb. All fasteners shall be concealed except as approved by the Architect.
  6. Install expansion control joints at intervals recommended by the manufacturer. Coordinate specific locations with the Architect prior to installation.
- C. Install joint sealants as specified in Section 079200 "Joint Sealants" and to produce a weathertight installation.
- D. Where aluminum cladding contacts dissimilar metals, protect against galvanic action by painting contact surfaces with primer or by applying sealant or tape or installing nonconductive spacers as recommended by manufacturer for this purpose.

#### **3.04 ADJUSTING AND CLEANING**

- A. Remove damaged, improperly installed, or otherwise defective materials and replace with new materials complying with specified requirements.
- B. Clean finished surfaces according to manufacturer's written instructions and maintain in a clean condition during construction.

**END OF SECTION**

**SECTION 07 5419****POLYVINYL-CHLORIDE ROOFING: PVC****PART 1 - GENERAL****1.1 SUMMARY**

- A. Includes But Not Limited To:
1. Furnish and install roofing membrane with flashings and other components to comprise total roofing system as described in Contract Documents including:
    - a. Single-ply membrane.
- B. Related Requirements:
1. Section 06 0573.13: 'Preservative Wood Treatment' for roof related blocking and roof nailers.
  2. Section 06 0573.33: 'Fire-Retardant Wood Treatment' for roof related blocking and roof nailers.
  3. Section 06 1100: 'Wood Framing' for roof related blocking, nailing and sheathing.
  4. Section 06 2001: 'Common Finish Carpentry Requirements' for wood nailers, curbs and blocking.
  5. Section 07 6220: 'Stainless Steel Flashing And Trim' for metal work installation and requirements.
- C. Products Installed But Not Furnished Under This Section:
1. Sheet metal work including caps, sleeves, umbrella hoods, pipe enclosures boxes, strapping, and scuppers.
- D. Related Requirements:
1. Division 07 for sheet metal work specialties and accessories.

**1.2 REFERENCES**

- A. Association Publications:
1. American National Standards Institute / Single Ply Roofing Industry:
    - a. ANSI/SPRI/FM 4435/ES-1 2003, 'Wind Design Standard for Edge Systems Used with Low Slope Roofing Systems'.
    - b. ANSI/SPRI WD-1 'Wind Design Standard for Roofing Assemblies'.
  2. FM Global Resource Catalogue by FM Global, Norwood, MA [www.fmglobal.com](http://www.fmglobal.com).
    - a. Approval Guide:
      - 1) Factory Mutual Standard 4470 - Approval Standard for Class 1 Roof Covers.
    - b. Property Loss Prevention Data Sheet 1-28, 'Wind Design' (latest edition).
    - c. Property Loss Prevention Data Sheet 1-29, 'Roof Deck Securement and Above-Deck Components' (latest edition).
    - d. Property Loss Prevention Data Sheet 1-49, 'Perimeter Flashing' (latest edition).
- B. Definitions:
1. Flame Spread Classification: Categories as per ASTM E84/UL 723 or ULC 102:
    - a. Class A: Highest fire-resistance rating for roofing as per ASTM E108. Indicated roofing is able to withstand severe exposure to fire exposure to fire originating from sources outside building.
    - b. Class B: Fire-resistance rating indicating roofing materials are able to withstand moderate exposure to fire originating from sources outside of building.
    - c. Class C: Fire-resistance rating indicating roofing materials are able to withstand light exposure to fire originating from sources outside of building.
- C. Reference Standards:
1. ASTM International:



- a. ASTM C1289-18a, 'Standard Specification for Faced Rigid Cellular Polyisocyanurate Thermal Insulation Board'.
- b. ASTM C1303/C1303M-15, 'Standard Test Method for Predicting Long-Term Thermal Resistance of Closed-Cell Foam Insulation'.
- c. ASTM D4434/D4434M-15, 'Standard Specification for Polyvinyl Chloride Sheet Roofing'.
- d. ASTM E84-18b, 'Standard Test Method for Surface Burning Characteristics of Building Materials'.
- e. ASTM E108-17, 'Standard Test Methods for Fire Tests of Roof Coverings'.
- 2. International Building Code (IBC) (2018 edition or latest edition adopted by AHJ):
  - a. Chapter 15, 'Roof Assemblies And Rooftop Structures':
    - 1) Section 1507, 'Requirements for Roof Coverings':
      - a) 1507.13, 'Thermoplastic single-ply Roofing'.
- 3. National Fire Protection Association:
  - a. NFPA 101: 'Life Safety Code' (2018 or most recent edition adopted by AHJ).
- 4. Underwriters Laboratories (UL):
  - a. UL 580: 'Tests for Uplift Resistance of Roof Assemblies' (5th Edition).
  - b. UL 723, 'Tests for Safety Test for Surface Burning Characteristics of Building Materials' (11th Edition).
  - c. UL 790, 'Standard Test Methods for Fire Tests of Roof Coverings' (8th Edition).
  - d. UL 1897-04, 'Uplift Tests for Roof Covering Systems' (7th Edition).
  - e. UL 2218, 'Standard for Impact Resistance of Prepared Roof Coverings Materials' (2nd Edition).

### 1.3 ADMINISTRATIVE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Pre-Installation Conferences:
  - 1. Participate in MANDATORY pre-installation conference.
    - a. Roofing Installer's Foreman and those responsible for installation of roofing to be in attendance. Include Roofing Manufacturer's Representative if available.
  - 2. Schedule pre-installation conference at project site after installation of roof deck including pipe and flue penetrations, but before application of any roofing system component.
  - 3. In addition to agenda items specified in Section 01 3100, review following:
    - a. Review Manufacturer's written instructions.
    - b. Review if Project is in high wind area.
    - c. Review delivery, storage, and handling requirements.
    - d. Review ambient conditions requirements.
    - e. Review roofing installation requirements including flashing and penetrations.
    - f. Review membrane safety stripe required to be located around perimeter of roof.
    - g. Review roofing drainage requirements.
    - h. Review temporary protections for roofing system.
    - i. Review cleaning and disposal requirements.
    - j. Review Special Procedure Submittal for Warranty Information to be given to Manufacturer before Manufacture will issue Roof Warranty by Installer.
    - k. Review safety issues.
    - l. Review field inspections and non-conforming work requirements.
    - m. Review protection of membrane by other trades after installation of membrane.

### 1.4 SUBMITTALS

- A. Action Submittals:
  - 1. Product Data:
    - a. Manufacturer's literature or cut sheet for each element of system.
    - b. Manufacturer's preparation and installation instructions and recommendations.
  - 2. Shop Drawings:
    - a. Prepared by Roofing Installer and approved by Roofing Membrane Manufacturer and include following:
      - 1) Base flashings.
      - 2) Location and type of penetrations.

- 3) Membrane terminations.
  - 4) Outline of roof and roof size.
  - 5) Perimeter and penetration details.
  - 6) Roof insulation:
    - a) Insulation fastening patterns for corner, perimeter, and field-of-roof locations.
    - b) Taper insulation, including slopes.
  - 7) Special details and materials.
  - b. Confirm that specified FM Class and UL Class assembly is appropriate for Project location.
  - c. Include approved copy of Manufacturer's Notice of Award or Assembly Letter.
3. Samples:
- a. Manufacturer's 4 inch (100 mm) square minimum sample representing actual color, membrane and thickness.
- B. Informational Submittals:
1. Certificates:
    - a. Installer's signed certificate stating roofing system complies with Contract Documents performance requirements and work only performed by trained and authorized personnel in those procedures.
    - b. Manufacturer's signed certificate that roof system has been inspected by Technical Service Representative and stating no deviation from system specified or approved shop drawings without written approval by Owner Representative and Manufacturer.
  2. Test And Evaluation Reports: Submit evidence that roof system has been tested and approved or listed as follows:
    - a. Submit evidence that roof system has been tested and approved or listed to meet Factory Mutual Research Corporation (FM) Classification required for this Project.
    - b. Submit evidence that roof system has been tested to meet UL Class requirement required for fire-resistance rating for this Project.
  3. Manufacturer Instructions:
    - a. Two (2) copies of Roofing Manufacturer's published instructions for Architect and maintain one (1) at job-site.
  4. Special Procedure Submittals:
    - a. Installer to fill out 'Roof Manufacturer' Installer Workmanship Warranty' and 'Manufacturer System Warranty' from information provided in the Attachment 'Roofing Manufacturer's Information For Architect' from Manufacturer and from Architect. Warranties are to be included in Closeout Submittals.
  5. Qualification Statement:
    - a. Roofing Manufacturer's certification of Installer.
- C. Closeout Submittals:
1. Include following in Operations And Maintenance Manual specified in Section 01 7800:
    - a. Warranty Documentation:
      - 1) Final, executed copy of 'Roofing Manufacturer System Warranty' including wind speed coverage and required Owner mandatory information.
      - 2) Final, executed copy of 'Roof Installer Workmanship Warranty' including required Owner mandatory information.
      - 3) Verify mandatory information as specified in Special Procedure Submittal has been included in Final Warranty.
    - b. Record Documentation:
      - 1) Manufacturers Documentation:
        - a) Record Shop Drawings if requested. Record shop drawings shall be given shop drawing number by Roofing Manufacturer.
        - b) Certificate: Manufacturer Inspection report by Technical Service Representative.
        - c) Certificate: Installer statement of compliance for performance requirements.
        - d) Test And Evaluation Report: UL fire-resistance rating test report.
        - e) Test And Evaluation Report: Factory Mutual Research Classification approval.

## 1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Regulatory Agency Sustainability Requirements:

1. Roof system will meet requirements of all federal, state, and local codes having jurisdiction (AHJ).
  2. Fire Characteristics Performance Requirement:
    - a. Roof system will achieve UL Class A rating when tested in accordance with ASTM E108 or UL-790:
      - 1) Materials shall be identified with appropriate markings of applicable testing agency.
  3. Thermal Performance Requirement:
    - a. Roof system will achieve minimum R value not less than 30.
  4. Wind Criteria as per ASCE 7-10:
    - a. Basic wind speed (V): 120Vmph 10-yr MRI; 76Vmph 25-yr MRI; 84Vmph 50-yr MRI; 90Vmph 100-yr MRI; 96Vmph
- B. Qualifications:
1. Requirements of Section 01 4301 applies but not limited to the following:
    - a. Installers Qualifications:
      - 1) Provide documentation if requested by Architect:
        - a) Roofing Installer shall be approved and authorized by Roofing System Manufacturer to install Manufacturer's product and eligible to receive Manufacturer's special warranty before bid.
        - b) Roofing Installer shall be able to document roofing membrane installation for five (5) year minimum.
        - c) Roofing Installer must have current license for the city, county, and state where project is located.
        - d) Roofing Installer must have license for specific type of roofing work to be performed.
        - e) Roofing Installer's foreman shall be skilled in his trade and qualified to lay out and supervise the Work.
        - f) Membrane and flashing installation shall be performed by personnel trained and authorized by Roofing Manufacturer.
        - g) Welding equipment shall be provided by or approved by Roofing Manufacturer. Mechanics intending to use equipment shall have successfully completed training course provided by Manufacturer's Technical Representative before welding.
    - b. Manufacturer Qualifications:
      - 1) Manufacturer shall manufacture membrane material for five (5) consecutive years.
        - a) No product with documented failure will be allowed.
      - 2) Manufacturer that is UL listed for membrane roofing system used for this Project.
      - 3) Source Limitations:
        - a) Provide roof components including roof insulation and fasteners for roofing system from same Manufacturer as membrane roofing or approved by Roofing Membrane Manufacturer.

## 1.6 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Delivery And Acceptance Requirements:
1. Make no deliveries to Project until installation is about to commence, or until approved storage area is provided.
  2. Deliver products job site in original unopened containers or wrappings bearing all seals and approvals.
  3. Deliver materials in sufficient quantities to allow continuity of work.
  4. Remove any material not approved from job site.
- B. Storage And Handling Requirements:
1. General:
    - a. Follow Manufacturer's instructions and precautions for storage of materials.
    - b. Handle and store roofing materials and place equipment in manner to avoid permanent deflection of roof decking.
    - c. Material Safety Data Sheets (MSDS) must be on location always during transportation, storage and application of materials.
  2. Storage Requirements:
    - a. Protection:

- 1) Protect roof materials from physical damage, moisture, soiling, and other sources in a clean, dry, protected location and with temperature range required by Manufacturer. Protect from direct sunlight.
- 2) Provide continuous protection of materials against moisture absorption (Manufacturer's/Supplier's shrink wrap is not accepted waterproofing).
- 3) Store membrane rolls lying down on pallets fully protected from weather with clean canvas tarpaulins.
- b. Roof Insulation:
  - 1) Comply with insulation Manufacturer's written instructions for handling, storing, and protection during installation.
- c. Safety:
  - 1) Store flammable materials in cool, dry area away from sparks, open flames, or excessive heat. Follow precautions outlined on containers or supplied by material manufacturer/supplier.
  - 2) Liquid materials such as solvents and adhesives shall be stored off site and installed away from open flames, sparks, and excessive heat.
  - 3) Site storage is acceptable if liquid materials are placed in a locked, sealed storage container.
  - 4) Situate equipment and materials so as to preclude danger, disturbance, or interference to public safety and traffic, and to not constitute fire hazard.
- d. Temperature:
  - 1) Store adhesives at temperatures above 40 deg F (4 deg C).and below 180 deg F (82 deg C).
- e. Unacceptable Material:
  - 1) Remove from job site materials that are determined to be damaged by Architect or by Roofing Manufacturer and replace at no additional cost to Owner.
  - 2) Remove all wet and damaged materials from site.
  - 3) Discard and legally dispose of liquid material that cannot be applied within its stated shelf life.
3. Handling Requirements:
  - a. Select and Handle operating equipment so as not to damage existing construction or new roofing system, or to overload structural system.
  - b. Handle rolled goods so as to prevent damage to edge or ends.

## 1.7 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Ambient Conditions:
  1. Temperature ranges shall be within tolerances allowed for material being used.
    - a. Roof surface shall be free of ponding water, ice, and snow.
    - b. Cold temperature:
      - 1) Follow Manufacturer's written instructions for cold temperature requirements before applying membrane adhesive:
        - a) Follow specified precautions.
        - b) Expose only enough adhesive to be used as directed by membrane manufacturer:
        - c) Low VOC restrictions (if required by local AHJ): Temperatures to be 40 deg F (4 deg C) and rising before applying.
    - c. Hot temperature:
      - 1) Do not expose membrane and accessories to constant temperature in excess of 180 deg F (82 deg C).
  2. Proceed with roofing work when existing and forecasted weather conditions permit.

## 1.8 WARRANTY

- A. Manufacturer Warranty:
  1. Roofing Membrane Manufacturer's Special Warranty for:
    - a. Thirty (30) year no dollar limit (NDL) material and labor warranty covering roofing system, including insulation, components of membrane roofing system and flashing degradation and workmanship.

- b. Accidental Puncture Warranty:
    - 1) Membrane Manufacturer's written Accidental Puncture Warranty for up to sixteen (16) hours of Labor to repair punctures after final inspection.
  - c. Warranty shall include wind speed coverage to **90 mph (145 kph)**.
- B. Roof Installer Workmanship Warranty:
- 1. Written five (5) year guarantee covering workmanship and repairs or replacement of work without cost to Owner, counter-signed by Installer and General Contractor from date of installation:
    - a. Roof Installer Workmanship Warranty must include information required in Attachment 'Warranty Information'.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 SYSTEM

- A. Manufacturer:
- 1. Category Three Approved Manufacturers. See Section 01 6200 for definitions of Categories:
    - a. Carlisle SynTec Incorporated, Carlisle PA [www.carlisle-syntec.com](http://www.carlisle-syntec.com). (717) 245-7000:
      - 1) Contact Information (USA, Canada and Global):
        - a) Primary Contact: Greg Petschke (Manager Strategic Accounts), office (800) 479-6832 cell (717) 215-2681 [greg.petschke@carlisesyntec.com](mailto:greg.petschke@carlisesyntec.com).
        - b) Secondary Contact: Kristen Morrow (Strategic Accounts Coordinator), phone (717) 245-7289 [kristen.morrow@carlisleccm.com](mailto:kristen.morrow@carlisleccm.com).
        - c) Secondary Contact: Horner & Associates (Utah, Idaho, Wyoming, and Montana): Tom (801) 842-8305 [tom@hornerassocd7.com](mailto:tom@hornerassocd7.com) or Gary (801) 712-0326 [gary@hornerassocd7.com](mailto:gary@hornerassocd7.com).
    - b. Sika Sarnafil, Canton, MA (800) 576-2358 or (781) 828-5400. [www.sikacorp.com](http://www.sikacorp.com).
      - 1) Contact Information (USA, Canada and Global):
        - a) Primary Contact: Steve Moosman, District Manager, office (801) 575-8648 x7551 cell (801) 201-6269 [moosman.steve@us.sika.com](mailto:moosman.steve@us.sika.com).
        - b) Secondary Contact: Jim Greenwell, Mountain Region Manager: office (801) 575-8648 x7558 cell (801) 455-3838 [greenwell.jim@us.sika.com](mailto:greenwell.jim@us.sika.com).
    - c. Versico Roofing Systems (Carlisle Construction Materials, Inc., Carlisle PA [www.versico.com](http://www.versico.com) (800) 992-7663:
      - 1) Contact Information (USA, Canada and Global):
        - a) Primary Contact: Chris Shermach, Corporate Accounts Manager: phone (815) 341-3770 [shermach@versico.com](mailto:shermach@versico.com).
        - b) Secondary Contact: Misty Fritz, phone (717) 245-7290 [misty.fritz@versico.com](mailto:misty.fritz@versico.com).
        - c) Secondary Contact: Kris Carruthers, phone (717) 960-4013 [kristine.carruthers@versico.com](mailto:kristine.carruthers@versico.com).
        - d) Secondary Contact (Utah only): Dan Barker phone (801) 668-4960 [division7specialties@msn.com](mailto:division7specialties@msn.com) or Justin Spencer phone (801) 458-7207 [js\\_division7specialties@msn.com](mailto:js_division7specialties@msn.com).
- B. Design Criteria:
- 1. General:
    - a. Installed membrane roofing and base flashings shall withstand specified uplift pressures, thermally induced movement, and exposure to weather without failure due to defective manufacture, fabrication, installation, or other defects in construction.
    - b. Membrane roofing and base flashings shall remain watertight.
  - 2. Drainage Requirement:
    - a. Roof system to provide positive drainage where all standing water dissipates within forty-eight (48) hours after precipitation ends.
  - 3. Material Compatibility:
    - a. Provide roofing materials that are compatible with one another under conditions of service and application required, as demonstrated by membrane Roofing Membrane Manufacturer based on testing and field experience.

4. Metal details, fabrication practices, and installation methods shall conform to applicable requirements of following:
  - a. Factory Mutual Loss Prevention Data Sheet 1-49, 'Perimeter Flashing' (latest issue).
  - b. Sheet Metal and Air Conditioning Contractors National Association Inc, 5th edition.

C. Components:

1. Membrane:
  - a. Description:
    - 1) Adhered:
      - a) Meet requirements of ASTM D4434/D4434M, Type III.
      - b) Category Four Approved Products. See Section 01 6200 for definitions of Categories:
        - (1) Carlisle SynTec:
          - (b) Sure-Flex PVC KEE synthetic fiber reinforced membrane.
        - (2) Sika Sarnafil:
          - (a) G410 fiberglass reinforced membrane with lacquer coating.
    - b. Thickness:
      - 1) Field membrane: Thickness: **80 mil (2.03 mm)** by optimum width and length determined by job conditions.
      - 2) Flashing membrane: Thickness: **0.60 mil (1.52 mm)** by optimum width and length determined by job conditions.
    - c. Safety Stripe:
      - 1) Provide continuous **4 inch (100 mm)** wide yellow membrane safety stripe.
    - d. Surface Color:
      - 1) White.
  2. Insulation:
    - a. FM and UL approved.
    - b. If required by Manufacturer for warranty, provide approved facer.
    - c. Polyisocyanurate Foam Insulation Board:
      - 1) Meet requirements of ASTM C1289.
      - 2) Insulation boards shall be Factory Mutual approved for classification selected for project.
      - 3) Facer:
        - a) Fiber reinforced paper facer or coated-glass fiber mat facer.
      - 4) Insulation panels directly under roofing membrane and roof system cover board shall not exceed **48 inches by 96 inches (1 200 mm by 2 400 mm)**.
      - 5) Insulation panels to be **2 inches (50 mm)** maximum thickness for each layer. Insulation shall be multiple layers and achieve minimum 'R' value of 30. Tapered layer shall slope at **1/4 in per ft (20 mm per meter)**.
  3. Roof System Cover Board (Recovery/Hard Board) Over Insulation:
    - a. Non-Fire Rated:
      - 1) 'Adhered' application:
        - a) Minimum thickness to be determined by roofing system Manufacturer based upon Warranty term and Wind Warranty requirements.
        - b) Category Four Approved Products. See Section 01 6200 for definitions of Categories:
          - (1) **1/2 inch (12.7 mm)** thick minimum Dens-Deck Prime Roof Board by G-P Gypsum.
          - (2) **1/2 inch 1/2 inch (12.7 mm)** thick minimum Securock by USG.
  4. Vapor Retarder / Air Barrier:
    - a. Wood Roof Decks:
      - 1) Self adhered retarder:
        - a) May be used as temporary roof membrane up to ninety (90) day exposure.
        - b) Category Four Approved Products. See Section 01 6200 for definitions of Categories:
          - (1) Carlisle SynTec:
            - (a) Systems 725 TR air and vapor barrier with primers and sealers as required.
          - (2) Sika Sarnafil:
            - (a) Sarnavap air and vapor barrier with primers and sealants as required.

## 2.2 ACCESSORIES

- A. Adhesives, Sealants and Sealer:
1. General:
    - a. Supplied by Roofing Membrane Manufacture Meet uplift and VOC requirements required for Project for specific application method and in compliance with all local codes and restrictions provided by Roofing Membrane Manufacture.
    - b. As accepted by Roofing Manufacturer under specified warranty.
  2. Provide sealants for use inside of the weatherproofing system that have a VOC content of 250 g/L or less when required by local codes or AHJ.
  3. Pourable Sealer:
    - a. Approved by Roofing Membrane Manufacturer for specified roof system.
  4. Membrane:
    - a. Category Four Approved Products. See Section 01 6200 for definitions of Categories:
      - 1) Carlisle SynTec:
        - a) Carlisle Sure Flex Low VOC membrane adhesive.
        - b) Carlisle Sure Flex Hydro Bond water based membrane adhesive.
      - 2) Sika Sarnafil:
        - a) Sarnacol 2170 VC: VOC acceptable membrane adhesive.
        - b) Sarnacol 2121: Water based membrane adhesive.
        - c) Sarnacol Stabond: VOC acceptable membrane adhesive.
  5. Insulation:
    - a. Category Four Approved Products. See Section 01 6200 for definitions of Categories:
      - 1) Carlisle SynTec:
        - a) Carlisle FAST or Flexible FAST low rise polyurethane foam adhesive.
      - 2) Sika Sarnafil:
        - a) Sarnacol 2163/AD/OM: Low rise polyurethane foam adhesive.
- B. Coated Metal:
1. Colors:
    - a. Not Seen From Ground: Color to match selected roof membrane.
    - b. Seen From Ground: Manufacturer's standard color as selected by Architect to match membrane surface color chosen for project.
  2. Category Four Approved Products. See Section 01 6200 for definitions of Categories:
    - a. Carlisle SynTec:
      - 1) Sure Flex coated metal **24 ga (0.6 mm)** G90 galvanized sheet metal laminated with **0.035 inch (0.9 mm)** thick PVC membrane:
      - 2) Membrane cover strips:
        - a) **0.060 inch (1.5 mm)** thick.
        - b) Color to match selected Sure Flex.
    - b. Sika Sarnafil:
      - 1) **25 ga (0.56 mm)** G90 galvanized sheet metal laminated with **0.020 inch (0.55 mm)** thick membrane:
      - 2) Sarnclad membrane cover strips:
        - a) **0.060 inch (1.5 mm)** thick.
        - b) Color to match selected Sarnaclad.
- C. Counterflashing:
1. Formed to meet design requirements and match existing metals and aesthetics, furnished by Membrane Manufacturer.
- D. Mechanical Attachment Accessories:
1. Fasteners:
    - a. Category Four Approved Products. See Section 01 6200 for definitions of Categories:
      - 1) Carlisle SynTec:
        - a) Carlisle Fasteners or engineered fasteners designed to anchor membrane and flashing into substrates that include steel, concrete, gypsum, and light weight concrete roof decks.
      - 2) Sika Sarnafil:

- a) Sarnafasteners or engineered fasteners designed to anchor membrane and flashing into substrates that include steel, concrete, gypsum, and light weight concrete roof decks.
- 2. Bars And Plates:
  - a. Category Four Approved Products. See Section 01 6200 for definitions of Categories:
    - 1) Carlisle SynTec:
      - a) Bars and plates engineered as companion assembly with Carlisle Fasteners. Used to secure membrane and/or flashing as required by Membrane Manufacturer.
    - 2) Sika Sarnafil:
      - a) Bars and plates engineered as companion assembly with Sarnafasteners. Used to secure membrane and/or flashing as required by Membrane Manufacturer.
- E. Miscellaneous Fasteners and Anchors:
  - 1. Fasteners, anchors, nails, straps, bars, etc. shall be of post-galvanized zinc or cadmium-plated steel, aluminum, or stainless steel. Mixing metal types and methods of contact shall be in such manner as to avoid galvanic corrosion.
  - 2. Compatible with substrates and flashings to be anchored:
    - a. Fasteners for attachment of metal to masonry shall be expansion type fasteners with stainless steel pins.
    - b. Concrete fasteners and anchors shall have minimum embedment of 1-1/4 inch (32 mm) and shall be approved for such use by Fastener Manufacturer.
    - c. Wood fasteners and anchors shall have embedment of one inch (25 mm) minimum and be approved for such use by Fastener Manufacturer.
- F. Prefabricated Flashing Accessories: Membrane corners and pipe stacks as supplied by Membrane manufacturer.
- G. Traffic Surface:
  - 1. Standard Walkway:
    - a. Description:
      - 1) Traffic surface used to protect roof membrane with limited slip surface.
      - 2) Approved for all wind load areas.
      - 3) Heat weldable walk roll.
    - b. Category Four Approved Products. See Section 01 6200 for definitions of Categories:
      - 1) Carlisle SynTec:
        - a) Sure Flex Walkway Roll.
      - 2) Sika Sarnafil:
        - a) SarnaTred Walkway Roll.
- H. Wood Nailers:
  - 1. Treat wood nailers as per Section 06 0573.13 for preservative wood treatment and Section 06 0573.33 for fire-retardant wood treatment. Creosote or asphaltic-treated wood is not acceptable.
  - 2. Wood nailers shall conform to Factory Mutual's Loss Prevention Data Sheet 1-49.
  - 3. Wood shall have maximum moisture content of 19 percent by weight on dry weight basis.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 INSTALLERS

- A. Category Three Approved Manufacturer's Roofing Installers: See Section 01 4301:
  - 1. Carlisle SynTec:
    - a. Contact Greg Petschke @ CarlisleSynTec for approved installers at: (717) 215-2681 or Greg.petschke@carlisleyntec.com
  - 2. Sika Sarnafil:
    - a. All Weather Waterproofing Inc. – Rob Graham
    - b. American Roofing Co. – James Yorgensen
    - c. Heritage Roofing – Jim Smith
    - d. Layton Roofing – Jeremy Searle



- e. Utah Tile & Roofing – J.C. Hill
3. Versico:
  - a. White Roofing – Shannon White
  - b. Rodac Roofing – Shawn Redd
  - c. American Frontier – Greg Allen
  - d. Rooftek – Brad Lord
  - e. Layton – Ray Greenwood

### 3.2 EXAMINATION

#### A. Verification Of Conditions:

1. Examine deck to determine if it is satisfactory for installation of roofing system:
  - a. Inspect for defects such as excessive surface roughness, contamination, structural inadequacy, or any other condition that will adversely affect quality of work.
  - b. Verify that roof drain lines are functioning correctly before starting work of this Section. Report such blockages in writing to Architect, with copy to Roofing Manufacturer, for corrective action before beginning work of this Section.
  - c. Verify that wood blocking, curbs, and nailers are securely anchored to roof deck at penetrations and terminations and nailers match thicknesses of insulation to be installed.
2. Notify Architect of unsuitable conditions in writing:
  - a. Commencement of Work by installer is considered acceptance of substrate.
  - b. Stop work immediately if any unusual or concealed condition is discovered and immediately notify Architect in writing, with letter copy to Roofing Manufacturer.
  - c. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

#### B. Examination And Assessment:

1. Examine decks for adequacy before commencing work. Requirements shall include but not limited to the following:
  - a. Designed slope required for proper drainage.
  - b. Location of roof drains.
  - c. Moisture conditions that will adversely affect quality of work.
  - d. Other condition incompatible with good roofing practice.
2. Notify Architect in writing of conditions with letter copy to Roofing Membrane Manufacturer that would limit guarantee on part of Manufacturer or applicator.

### 3.3 PREPARATION

#### A. Surface Preparation:

1. General:
  - a. Substrate shall be clean, smooth, dry, and free of flaws, sharp edges, loose and foreign material, oil and grease. Roofing shall not start until defects have been corrected.
  - b. Provide temporary walkways and work platforms as necessary to complete work under this section with no damage to surfaces exposed during work.
  - c. Coordinate application of membrane to provide protection of underlying materials from wetting or other damage by the elements on a continuous basis.
  - d. Sheet metal sleeves, caps, and enclosures shall be completely installed on daily basis.
  - e. Prevent materials from entering and clogging roof drains and conductors and from spilling or migrating onto surfaces of other construction. Remove roof-drain plugs when no work is taking place or when rain is forecast.
  - f. Complete terminations and base flashings and provide temporary seals to prevent water from entering completed sections of roofing system at the end of the workday or when rain is forecast.
  - g. Remove and discard temporary seals before beginning work on adjoining roofing.

#### B. Wood Nailers:

1. Install continuous treated wood nailers at perimeter of entire roof and around roof projections and penetrations as described on Contract Drawings by Section 06 1100 'Wood Framing'.

### 3.4 INSTALLATION

- A. Interface With Other Work:
1. Coordinate with Installers whose work penetrates roof deck or requires men and equipment to traverse roof deck.
- B. General:
1. Installation shall be in conformance with latest edition of manufacturer's specification except where Contract Documents are more restrictive.
  2. Roof surfaces shall be free of water, ice and snow. Surfaces to receive insulation, membrane, or flashings shall be dry. Should surface moisture occur, provide equipment necessary to dry surface before application.
  3. Secure new and temporary construction, including equipment and accessories, so as to preclude wind blow-off and subsequent roof or equipment damage.
  4. Install only as much roofing as can be made weathertight each day, including flashing and detail work. Clean seams and heat-weld before leaving jobsite.
  5. Schedule and execute work without exposing interior building areas to effects of inclement weather. Protect existing building and its contents against all risks.
  6. Before and during application, remove dirt, debris, and dust from surfaces either by vacuuming, sweeping, blowing with compressed air, or similar methods.
  7. Report rooftop contamination that is anticipated or that is occurring to Roofing Manufacturer to determine corrective steps to be taken.
- C. Vapor Retarder / Air Barrier Installation:
1. Wood Roof Decks:
    - a. Self adhered retarder: Apply self adhesive retarder directly over deck with overlaps and sheet edges sealed in accordance with Manufacturer's instruction.
  2. Conduct moisture and adhesion tests.
- D. Insulation:
1. Install insulation as recovery layer over substrate and to obtain desired thermal value. Roof assembly shall be dry.
  2. Neatly cut insulation cut to fit around penetrations and projections.
  3. Install tapered insulation in accordance with insulation manufacturer's shop drawings.
  4. Install tapered insulation around drains creating a drain sump.
  5. Do not install more insulation board than can be covered with roofing membrane by end of day's work or onset of inclement weather.
  6. 'Adhered' Adhesive Attachment:
    - a. All work surfaces should be clean, dry, free of dirt, dust, debris, oils, loose and/or embedded gravel, un-adhered coatings, and other contaminants.
    - b. Apply adhesive in thickness and pattern in accordance with Insulation Manufacturer, Factory Mutual, and Roofing Manufacturer recommendations for fastening rates and patterns.
    - c. Quantity and location of adhesive beads shall also result in insulation boards resting evenly on roof deck/substrate so there are no cavities between boards and substrate.
    - d. Carlisle FAST or Flexible FAST foam adhesive requirement:
      - 1) Apply adhesive when substrate and ambient temperature are (25 deg F (minus 3.9 deg C) or above.
    - e. Insulation shall be fully bonded to substrate or vapor retarder.
- E. Roof System Cover Board:
1. Offset roof system cover board joints 24 inches (600 mm) minimum from joints in underlying substrate or insulation.
  2. Wood Roof Decks:
    - a. Non-visible installation:
      - 1) Secure roof system cover board using insulation plates and fasteners spaced as required by Membrane Manufacturer's warranty requirements.
    - b. Visible (from ground/surrounding buildings) installation:
      - 1) Secure roof system cover board using low profile attachment plates and fasteners spaced as required by Membrane Manufacturer's warranty requirements.

- F. Membrane:
1. Inspection:
    - a. Inspect surface of insulation or substrate before installation of roof membrane.
    - b. Substrate shall be clean, dry and smooth with no excessive surface roughness, contaminated surfaces or unsound surfaces such as broken, delaminated, or damaged insulation boards.
    - c. All sharp projections shall be removed by sweeping, blowing or vacuum cleaning.
  2. Adhesive:
    - a. Follow ambient conditions as specified in Part 1 of this specification.
    - b. Follow Manufacturer's written application instructions including adhesive coverage rate requirements. Apply no adhesive in seam areas.
      - 1) Installer Option A):
        - a) Apply adhesive using solvent-resistant nap paint rollers.
      - 2) Installer Option B):
        - a) Apply adhesive using wet lay-in adhesive application.
  3. Hot-Air Welding Of Lap Areas:
    - a. General:
      - 1) Seams shall be hot air welded. Seam overlaps shall be **3 inches (75 mm)** wide minimum when automatic machine welding, and **4 inches (100 mm)** wide when hand welding.
      - 2) Membrane to be welded shall be clean and dry. No adhesive shall be in seam.
      - 3) Hand Welding:
        - a) Hand welded seams shall be completed in three stages. Allow hot-air welding equipment to warm up for one (1) minute minimum before welding.
      - 4) Seam shall be tack-welded every **36 inches (900 mm)** to hold membrane in place.
      - 5) Weld back edge of seam with narrow but continuous weld to prevent loss of hot air during final welding.
      - 6) Insert nozzle into seam at 45 degree angle. Once proper welding temperature has been reached and membrane begins to 'flow', position hand roller perpendicular to nozzle and press lightly. For straight seams, use **1-1/2 inch (38 mm)** wide nozzle. Use **3/4 inch (19 mm)** wide nozzle for corners and compound connections.
    - b. Machine Welding: Follow Roofing Manufacturer's instructions and use recommended equipment.
    - c. Quality Control of Welded Seams:
      - 1) Check welded seams for continuity using rounded screwdriver. Make on-site evaluation of welded seams daily at locations directed by Owner's Representative or representative of Roofing Manufacturer.
      - 2) Take **one inch (25 mm)** wide cross-section samples of welded seams at least three times a day. Patch each test cut at no additional cost to Owner.
- G. Flashings:
1. General:
    - a. Install flashings concurrently with roof membrane. No temporary flashings will be allowed without prior written approval of Owner's Representative and Roofing Manufacturer. Approval shall only be for specific locations on specific dates.
    - b. If water is allowed to enter under newly completed roofing, remove and replace affected area no additional cost to Owner.
    - c. Adhere flashings to compatible, dry, smooth, and solvent-resistant surfaces.
  2. Membrane Flashings:
    - a. Adhesive Application for Flashings:
      - 1) Adhere flashing membranes to solvent resistant substrates. Cut interior and exterior corners and miters and hot-air weld into place. No bitumen shall be in contact with membrane.
      - 2) Apply adhesive using solvent-resistant **3/4 inch (19 mm)** nap paint rollers. Apply adhesive in smooth, even coatings with no holidays, globs, or similar irregularities. Coat only area that can be completely covered in same day's operations. Allow surface with adhesive coating to dry completely prior to installing flashing membrane.
      - 3) When surface is dry, cut flashing membrane to workable length and evenly coat underside with adhesive apply at Manufacturer's adhesive coverage rate requirements.

- 4) When adhesive has dried sufficiently to produce strings when touched with a dry finger, roll coated membrane onto previously coated substrate being careful to avoid wrinkles. Do not allow adhesive on underside of membrane to completely dry. Overlap adjacent sheets **3 inches (75 mm)**. Flashings shall extend **4 inches (100 mm)** onto roofing membrane. Press bonded sheet firmly in place with hand roller.
- 5) Apply no adhesive in seam areas that are to be welded.
- b. Install fasteners and membrane fastenings plates at **12 inches (300 mm)** on center with acceptable fasteners into structural deck at the base of parapets, walls, and curbs. Also install Sarnastop at the base of tapered edge strips and at transitions, peaks, and valleys according to Roofing Manufacturer's details:
  - 1) Hurricane Bar:
    - a) Provide inside **4 ft (1.20 m)** perimeter peel stop (Hurricane Bar) required by Owner for all projects in all wind speed coverage areas.
  - c. Extend flashings **8 inches (200 mm)** minimum above roofing level unless otherwise accepted in writing by Owner's representative and Roofing Manufacturer.
  - d. Terminate flashings according to Roofing Manufacturer's recommended details.
  - e. Adhere flashing membranes to solvent resistant substrates. Cut interior and exterior corners and miters and hot-air weld into place. No bitumen shall be in contact with membrane.
3. Metal Flashings:
  - a. Complete metal work in conjunction with roofing and flashings so that watertight condition exists daily.
  - b. Install metal to provide adequate resistance to bending and allow for normal thermal expansion and contraction.
  - c. Metal joints shall be watertight.
  - d. Securely fasten metal flashings into solid wood blocking. Fasteners shall penetrate wood nailer **one inch (25 mm)** minimum.
  - e. Airtight and continuous metal hook strips are required behind metal fascias. Fasten hook strips **12 inches (300 mm)** on center into wood nailer or masonry wall.
  - f. Counterflashings shall overlap base flashings **4 inches (100 mm)** minimum.
  - g. Metal Base Flashings:
    - 1) Space adjacent sheets **1/4 inch (6 mm)** apart.
    - 2) Fasten ends of metal **6 inches (150 mm)** on center.
    - 3) Cover joint with **2 inch (50 mm)** wide aluminum tape.
    - 4) Hot-air weld **4 inch (100 mm)** wide strip of flashing membrane over joint.
  - h. Metal Edge Flashing:
    - 1) Install as per requirements of ANSI/SPRI/FM 4435/ES-1, 'Wind Design Standard for Edge Systems Used with Low Slope Roofing Systems'.
    - 2) Fasten metal edge flashings with two rows of post-galvanized flat head annular ring nails, **4 inches (100 mm)** on center staggered.
    - 3) Space adjacent sheets of metal **1/4 inch (6 mm)** apart.
    - 4) Cover joint with **2 inch (50 mm)** wide aluminum tape.
    - 5) Carlisle Sure Flex PVC coated metal:
      - a) Hot air weld **6 inch (150 mm)** wide strip of non - reinforced PVC flashing over coated metal joint.
    - 6) Sika Sarnafil Sarnaclad:
      - a) Hot-air weld **4 inch (100 mm)** wide strip of flashing membrane over joint.
- H. Temporary Cut-Off:
  1. Construct temporary waterstops to provide one hundred (100) percent watertight seal:
    - a. Make stagger of insulation joints even by installing partial panels of insulation.
    - b. Carry new membrane into waterstop.
    - c. Seal waterstop to deck or substrate so water will not travel under new or existing roofing.
    - d. Seal edge of membrane in continuous heavy application of sealant as described above.
    - e. When work resumes, cut-out contaminated membrane and dispose of off-site.
  2. If inclement weather occurs while temporary waterstop is in place, provide labor necessary to monitor situation to maintain watertight condition.
  3. If water is allowed to enter under newly completed roofing, remove affected area and replace at no additional cost to Owner.
- I. Walkway Rolls:

1. Mark lines on membrane to determine location and direction(s) of walkway network. Membrane surface shall be clean.
2. Follow Manufacturer's written application instructions including adhesive coverage rate requirements.

### **3.5 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL**

- A. Field Inspection:
1. Before Manufacturer's inspection for warranty, Installer must perform pre-inspection to review work and to verify flashing has been completed as well as application of caulking.
  2. Final Roof Inspection:
    - a. Arrange for Roofing Membrane Manufacturer's technical personnel to inspect roofing installation on completion.
  3. Upon completion of roof inspection, provide certification that installation has been performed in accordance with Contract Document and Roofing Manufacturer requirements.
- B. Non-Conforming Work:
1. Correct all work not in compliance to Contract Documents at no additional cost to Owner.
    - a. Repair or remove and replace components of membrane roofing system where inspections indicate that they do not comply with specified requirements.
    - b. Replace contaminated membrane.
  2. Additional inspections will be performed to determine compliance of replaced or additional work with specified requirements at no additional cost to Owner.
  3. Repair landscaped areas damaged by construction activities at no additional cost to Owner.

### **3.6 CLEANING**

- A. Waste Management:
1. Perform daily clean-up to collect wrappings, empty container, paper, and other roofing waste debris from project site.
  2. Upon completion, roofing waste materials must be disposed from site to dumping area legally authorized to receive such materials.
  3. Complete site cleanup, including both interior and exterior building areas that have been affected by construction, to Owner's satisfaction.

### **3.7 PROTECTION**

- A. General Contractor Responsibility:
1. Protection of roofing membrane from damage and wear from other trades from damage after completion of roof membrane.
  2. Clean overspray and spillage from adjacent construction using cleaning agents and procedures recommended by Manufacturer of affected construction.

**END OF SECTION**

**SECTION 07 6113****STANDING SEAM SHEET METAL ROOFING****PART 1 - GENERAL****1.1 SUMMARY**

- A. Includes But Not Limited To:
  - 1. Furnish and install metal roofing system as described in Contract Documents:
    - a. Roof system includes all components and labor required for complete metal roofing system including but not limited to:
      - 1) Roof metal panels.
      - 2) Panel clips.
      - 3) Trim / flashing.
      - 4) Fascia.
      - 5) Fillers.
      - 6) Closures.
      - 7) Sealants.
      - 8) Insulation.
      - 9) Any other required items.
- B. Related Requirements:
  - 1. Section 07 9213: 'Elastomeric Joint Sealant'.
  - 2. Division 22: 'Plumbing' for vent piping.
- C. Products Installed But Not Furnished Under This Section:
  - 1. Ridge Vent.
- D. Related Requirements:
  - 1. Section 07 7226: 'Ridge Vents'.

**1.2 REFERENCES**

- A. Association Publications:
  - 1. American Lumber Standard Committee:
    - a. PS 20-10, 'National Institute of Standards & Technology Voluntary Product Standard'.
  - 2. FM Global Resource Catalogue by FM Global, Norwood, MA [www.fmglobal.com](http://www.fmglobal.com).
    - a. Approval Guide:
      - 1) Factory Mutual Standard 4470 - Approval Standard for Class 1 Roof Covers.
    - b. Property Loss Prevention Data Sheet 1-28, 'Wind Design' (latest edition).
    - c. Property Loss Prevention Data Sheet 1-29, 'Roof Deck Securement and Above-Deck Components' (latest edition).
    - d. Property Loss Prevention Data Sheet 1-31, 'Metal Roof Systems' (latest edition).
    - e. Property Loss Prevention Data Sheet 1-49, 'Perimeter Flashing' (latest edition).
  - 3. Metal Building Manufacturers Association (MBMA):
    - a. Metal Roofing Systems Design Manual (August 2012).
- B. Definitions:
  - 1. Base Flashing: That portion of flashing attached to or resting on roof deck to direct flow of water onto roof covering.
  - 2. Cap Flashing: Material used to cover top edge of base flashings or other flashings to prevent water seepage behind base flashing. Cap flashing overlaps base flashing.
  - 3. Collar: Pre-formed flange placed over vent pipe to seal roof around vent pipe opening. Also called vent sleeve.

4. Deck: Structural component of roof of building which provides substrate to which roofing system is applied.
  5. Drip Edge: Non-corrosive, non-staining material used along eaves and rakes to allow water run-off to drip clear of underlying building.
  6. Flame Spread Classification: Categories as per ASTM E84/UL 723 or ULC 102:
    - a. Class A: Highest fire-resistance rating for roofing as per ASTM E108. Indicated roofing is able to withstand severe exposure to fire exposure to fire originating from sources outside building.
    - b. Class B: Fire-resistance rating indicating roofing materials are able to withstand moderate exposure to fire originating from sources outside of building.
    - c. Class C: Fire-resistance rating indicating roofing materials are able to withstand light exposure to fire originating from sources outside of building.
  7. Flange: Metal pan extending up and down roof slope around flashing pieces. Usually at plumbing vents.
  8. Flashing: Components used to prevent seepage of water into a building around any intersection or projection in a roof such as vent pipes, chimneys, adjoining walls, dormers and valleys.
  9. Galvalume: Trade name for protective coating composed of aluminum zinc.
  10. Ice Dam: Condition formed at lower roof edge by thawing and re-freezing of melted snow on roof overhang. Ice dams force water to 'back up' under shingles, causing leakage.
  11. Lap: Part of roofing material that overlaps section of adjacent material.
  12. Life Safety Code Classes (NFPA 101):
    - a. Class A: rating 0-25.
    - b. Class B: rating 26-75.
    - c. Class C: rating 76-200.
    - d. Class D: rating 201-500.
    - e. Class E: rating over 500.
  13. Metal Flashing: Roof components made from sheet metal that is used to terminate roofing membrane or other material alongside roof perimeters as well as at roof penetrations.
  14. Penetration: Any object that pierces surface of roof.
  15. Pipe Boot: Prefabricated flashing piece used to flash around circular pipe penetrations. Also known as Roof Jack.
  16. Roof Assembly: System of interacting roof components (including roof deck) designed to weatherproof, and normally, to insulate building's top surface.
  17. Roof Jack: Term used to describe Pipe Boot or Flashing Collar.
  18. Valley: Internal angle formed by intersection of two sloping roof planes to provide water runoff.
  19. Vent: Any outlet for air that protrudes through roof deck such as pipe or stack. Any device installed on roof, gable or soffit for purpose of ventilating underside of roof deck.
  20. Vent Sleeve: See collar.
  21. Wind Uplift: Wind-induced forces on roof system or components in roof system. Wind uplift generally includes negative pressure component caused by wind being deflected around and across surfaces of building and positive pressure component from air flow beneath roof deck.
- C. Reference Standards:
1. American Society of Civil Engineers (SEI/ASCE):
    - a. ASCE 7-10, 'Minimum Design Loads for Buildings and Other Structures'.
  2. ASTM International:
    - a. ASTM A653/A653M-18, 'Standard Specification for Steel Sheet, Zinc-Coated (Galvanized) or Zinc-Iron Alloy-Coated (Galvannealed) by the Hot-Dip Process'.
    - b. ASTM B209-14, 'Standard Specification for Aluminum and Aluminum-Alloy Sheet and Plate'.
    - c. ASTM C473-17, 'Standard Test Methods for Physical Testing of Gypsum Panel Products'.
    - d. ASTM C1177/C1177M-17, 'Standard Specification for Glass Mat Gypsum Substrate for Use as Sheathing'.
    - e. ASTM C1289-18a, 'Standard Specification for Faced Rigid Cellular Polyisocyanurate Thermal Insulation Board'.
    - f. ASTM D1970/D1970M-18, 'Standard Specification for Self-Adhering Polymer Modified Bituminous Sheet Materials Used as Steep Roofing Underlayment for Ice Dam Protection'.
    - g. ASTM D3273-16, 'Standard Test Method for Resistance to Growth of Mold on the Surface of Interior Coatings in an Environmental Chamber'.
    - h. ASTM E84-18b, 'Standard Test Method for Surface Burning Characteristics of Building Materials'.

- i. ASTM E108-17, 'Standard Test Methods for Fire Tests of Roof Coverings'.
  - j. ASTM E136-12, 'Standard Test Method for Behavior of Materials in a Vertical Tube Furnace at 750°C'.
  - k. ASTM E1592-05(2017), 'Standard Method for Structural Performance of Sheet Metal Roof and Siding Systems by Uniform Static Air Pressure Difference'.
  - l. ASTM E1646-95(2018), 'Standard Test Method for Water Penetration of Exterior Metal Roof Panel Systems by Uniform Static Air Pressure Difference'.
  - m. ASTM E1680-16, 'Standard Test Method for Rate of Air Leakage Through Exterior Metal Roof Panel Systems'.
3. International Building Code (IBC) (2018 edition or latest edition adopted by AHJ):
    - a. Chapter 15, 'Roof Assemblies And Rooftop Structures':
      - 1) Section 1503, 'Weather Protection'.
        - a) 1503.2, 'Flashing'.
      - 2) Section 1507, 'Requirements for Roof Coverings':
        - a) 1507.4, 'Metal Roof Panels':
  4. National Fire Protection Association:
    - a. NFPA 101: 'Life Safety Code' (2018 Edition or most recent edition adopted by AHJ).
  5. Underwriters Laboratories (UL):
    - a. UL 580: 'Tests for Uplift Resistance of Roof Assemblies' (5th Edition).
    - b. UL 723: 'Standard for Safety Test for Surface Burning Characteristics of Building Materials'; (11th edition - 2018).
    - c. UL 790, 'Standard Test Methods for Fire Tests of Roof Coverings' (8th Edition).
    - d. UL 1897-04, 'Uplift Tests for Roof Covering Systems' (7th Edition).
    - e. UL 2218, 'Standard for Impact Resistance of Prepared Roof Coverings Materials' (2nd Edition).

### 1.3 ADMINISTRATIVE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Pre-Installation Conference:
  1. Participate in mandatory pre-installation conference:
    - a. Schedule pre-installation conference before application of any roofing system component.
    - b. Roofing Installer's Foreman and those responsible for installation of roofing to be in attendance. Include Roofing Manufacturer's Representative if available.
  2. In addition to agenda items specified in Section 01 3100, review following:
    - a. Review Project high wind area requirements.
    - b. Review any items affecting issuance of roofing system warranty.
    - c. Review proper valley, flashing, penetrations, secondary underlayment, and sealants requirements.
    - d. Review Ridge Vent installation.
    - e. Review Cleaning and Disposal requirements.
    - f. Review Special Procedure Submittal for Warranty Information to be given to Roofing Manufacturer before Manufacture will issue Roof Warranty by Installer.
    - g. Review safety issues.

### 1.4 SUBMITTALS

- A. Action Submittals:
  1. Product Data:
    - a. Roofing Manufacturer to provide following:
      - 1) Manufacturer's literature or cut sheet for each element of system.
      - 2) Manufacturer's published preparation and installation instructions and recommendations for each element of system.
      - 3) Manufacturer's literature for maintaining of roof panels including precautions relating to cleaning, access and methods to protect roof panels and finishes.
      - 4) Color and style selection.
  2. Shop Drawings:
    - a. Show all aspects of installation and accessories.



- b. Provide drawings prepared especially for this project for all relevant conditions, including plans and elevations, sections and details, specified loads, flashings, roof edges, terminations, expansion joints, curbs, penetrations, and drainage. Specifically include interfaces with materials not supplied by Roofing Manufacturer and identify each component and its finish.
  - c. All fastening patterns shall be clearly designated to meet specified wind speed and warranty requirements:
    - 1) Include details for forming, joining, and securing sheet metal roofing, including pattern of panel locations, termination points, expansion joints, roof penetrations, edge conditions, special conditions, connections to adjoining work, and accessory items.
3. Samples:
- a. 12 inch (305 mm) long roof panel.
  - b. Roof attachment clips.
  - c. Color chips for selection of finish color and sheen.
  - d. After selection of finish color, provide two (2) 3 inch (76 mm) by 5 inch (125 mm) metal samples finished in color selected.

B. Informational Submittals:

- 1. Certificates:
  - a. Manufacturer's letter stating Installer has received training and licensing for installation of specified roof system.
  - b. Installer's signed certificate stating roofing system complies with Contract Documents performance requirements and work only performed by trained and authorized personnel in those procedures.
- 2. Test And Evaluation Reports:
  - a. Provide test reports showing that metal roof panel system complies with specified criteria including:
    - 1) Test report showing that metal panels have a UL 580, Class 90 rating.
    - 2) Test report showing metal panels have UL 2218, Class 4 hail rating.
  - b. For UL or FM requirements, provide documentation that shows that roofing system to be installed is UL-Classified or FM-approved, as applicable; include data itemizing components of classified or approved system.
  - c. Manufacturer's installation reports of installed roof including underlayment, substrate and installation of roof system components.
- 3. Manufacturer Instructions:
  - a. Provide instructions to installer, marked up to show exactly how all components will be installed; where instructions allow installation options, clearly indicate which option will be used.
- 4. Manufacturer Reports:
  - a. Installation reports:
    - 1) Manufacturer shall inspect installation at any time to apprise installer of their compliance with manufacturer's requirements. Typical inspections will include:
      - a) Prior to installation of metal roofing panels to inspect underlayment.
      - b) Installer is responsible for assuring that substrate is in suitable condition for installation of metal roofing components to substrate.
    - 2) Intermediate inspections to ensure proper installation of metal roofing panels (if required).
    - 3) At final completion of all metal roofing system work.
- 5. Special Procedure Submittals:
  - a. Contact Owner's Representative (FM Group or Project Manager) for following information:
    - 1) Installer to include following mandatory information to be added to 'Roofing Manufacturer System Warranty' submitted with Closing Documents.
      - a) Name of Owner (name of FM Group) \_\_\_\_\_
      - b) Mailing Address (FM office address) \_\_\_\_\_
      - c) Building Property ID (unique 7 digit identifier) \_\_\_\_\_
      - d) Project site address: \_\_\_\_\_
      - e) Roof Completion Date \_\_\_\_\_
      - f) Any addition data required from Manufacturer.
- 6. Qualification Statement:
  - a. Installer:

- 1) Provide Qualification documentation as specified.
- C. Closeout Submittals:
1. Include following in Operations And Maintenance Manual specified in Section 01 7800:
    - a. Operations and Maintenance Data:
      - 1) Maintenance, cleaning, and protection of finish instructions including:
        - a) Information describing methods of maintaining installed products and precautions regarding cleaning materials and methods relating to maintenance of appearance and performance of finishes.
    - b. Warranty Documentation:
      - 1) Final, executed copy of 'Roofing Manufacturer System Warranty' including wind speed coverage and required Owner mandatory information.
      - 2) Verify mandatory information as specified in Special Procedure Submittal has been included in Final Warranty.
    - c. Record Documentation:
      - 1) Manufacturer's documentation:
        - a) Manufacturer's literature.
        - b) Color selection.
        - c) Testing and evaluation reports.
      - 2) Roofing Inspection Documentation:
        - a) Include copy of each roof inspection report.
- D. Regulatory Agency Sustainability Approvals:
1. Building Codes:
    - a. Meet requirements for NFPA 101 Class A roof assembly.
    - b. Roof system will meet requirements of all federal, state, and local codes having jurisdiction.
  2. Fall Protection: Meet requirement of fall protection as required by federal, state, and local codes having jurisdiction.
  3. Fire Characteristics:
    - a. Provide metal roof panels and related roofing materials with fire-test-response characteristics indicated, as determined by testing identical products per test method indicated below by UL / ULC or another testing and inspecting agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction. Identify materials with appropriate markings of applicable testing and inspecting agency:
      - 1) Exterior Fire-Test Exposure: Class A; UL 790 or ASTM E108, for application and roof slopes indicated.
        - a) Materials shall be identified with appropriate markings of applicable testing agency.
  4. Impact Resistance:
    - a. Meet UL 2218 impact resistant testing.
    - b. Meet UL 2218 Class 4 impact resistant rating for hail.
  5. Wind Resistance:
    - a. Installation shall comply with IBC Table 1507.4.4, 'Attachment'.
  6. Wind Speed:
    - a. As required to meet local codes having jurisdiction.
  7. Wind Uplift Resistance:
    - a. Meet UL 580 wind uplift of roof assemblies.
    - b. Meet UL 1897 uplift test for roof covering systems.
    - c. Meet ASTM D7158/D7158M for wind resistance for uplift force/uplift resistance.
- E. Qualifications:
1. Manufacturer:
    - a. Minimum of ten (10) years experience in manufacturing metal roofing systems.
    - b. Roof panels produced under quality control program with inspections by Underwriter Laboratories, Inc. (AA-668) or Roofing Manufacturer's own quality control program.
  2. Installers:
    - a. Requirements of Section 01 4301 applies but not limited to following:
      - 1) Provide documentation of the following:
        - a) Approved and authorized by Metal Roofing Manufacturer to install Manufacturer's product and eligible to receive Manufacturer's warranty before bid.

- b) Current license for city, county, and state where project is located and license for specific type of roofing work to be performed.
- c) Minimum of at least one (1) qualified and authorized installer must be present at all times during all stages of roofing system installation.
- d) Roofing Installer's foreman shall be skilled in his trade and qualified to lay out and supervise the Work.
- e) Flashing installation shall be performed by personnel trained and authorized by Roofing Manufacturer.

## 1.5 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

### A. Delivery And Acceptance Requirements:

1. Make no deliveries to Project until installation is about to commence, or until approved storage area is provided.
2. Deliver products at job site in original unopened containers or wrappings bearing all seals and approvals.
3. Exercise extreme care in unloading, storing, and installing metal panels to prevent bending, warping, twisting, and surface damage.
4. Deliver materials in sufficient quantities to allow continuity of work.
5. Remove any material not approved from job site.

### B. Storage And Handling Requirements:

1. Storage Requirements:
  - a. General:
    - 1) Follow Manufacturer's instructions and precautions for storage of materials.
    - 2) Protect roof materials from physical damage, moisture, soiling, and other sources in clean, dry, protected location above grade.
    - 3) Store materials protected from exposure to harmful conditions.
    - 4) Store material above ground on well-supported platforms that provide minimum 1:5 slope.
    - 5) Stack materials to prevent bending, abrasion, scratching and denting.
    - 6) Prevent contact with materials that may be corrosive, discolor or stain.
  - b. Underlayment:
    - 1) Store materials protected from exposure to harmful weather conditions at temperatures within tolerances allowed.
  - c. Protection:
    - 1) Protect roof materials from physical damage, moisture, soiling, and other sources in clean, dry, protected location.
    - 2) Provide proper ventilation of metal components to prevent condensation build-up between metal components.
  - d. Unacceptable Material:
    - 1) Remove from job site materials that are determined to be damaged by Architect or by Metal Shingle Manufacturer and replace at no additional cost to Owner.
2. Handling Requirements:
  - a. Handle rolled goods so as to prevent damage to edge or ends.

## 1.6 WARRANTY

### A. Manufacturer Warranty:

1. Provide Roofing Manufacturer System Warranty' for thirty (30) year minimum no dollar limit (NDL) warranty for material and labor and workmanship for weather tightness of roof system for roof panels and accessories, underlayment, and all fasteners required.
  - a. Warranty includes roof insulation and cover board.
  - b. Roof system is subject to inspection at Manufacturer's option, at completion of installation.
2. Finish:
  - a. Manufacturer's written thirty five (35) year anti-weathering finish warranty for humidity resistance, chalk resistance, color change, abrasion resistance and salt spray resistance.

- 1) Color selected for project must meet warranty requirements before bid.
3. Special Warranty:
  - a. Provide manufacturers standard wind warranty or as required by local codes and AHJ for roof system components and substrates.
4. Warranty Period: Commencing on date of substantial completion.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 SYSTEM

- A. Manufacturers:
  1. Category Four Approved Manufacturers. See Section 01 6200 for definitions of Categories:
    - a. ATAS International, Inc., Allentown PA [www.ATAS.com](http://www.ATAS.com).
      - 1) Contact Information (USA and Canada):
        - a) Contact: Amy Lockrem Office: (480)-558-7210, (800) 879-8382 ext. 302.
      - b. Firestone Building Products Co., Indianapolis, IN [www.firestonebpco.com](http://www.firestonebpco.com).
        - 1) Contact Information (USA and Canada):
          - a) Primary Contact: Linda Kops - Strategic Account Executive, office (800) 428-4442 ext. 53236 cell (919) 272-3331 [kopslinda@firestonebp.com](mailto:kopslinda@firestonebp.com).
          - b) Secondary Contact: Terry Orchard - Commercial Building Solutions, 801-831-2100. [terryorchard@cbs-utah.com](mailto:terryorchard@cbs-utah.com) or Chris Booth - Commercial Building Solutions, (801) 550-6886. [chrisbooth@cbs-utah.com](mailto:chrisbooth@cbs-utah.com).
- B. Sheet Metal Roofing:
  1. Basis of Design Product:
    - a. Basis of design for this project is Firestone/ Style Standard: UC-6RS System Product by Firestone.
  2. Equivalent Approved Products:
    - a. Approved products only by following Manufactures: FLR 2" Field-Lok by ATAS.
- C. Description:
  1. Mechanically seamed, double-locked structural panel with single fold for weather tight roof.
- D. Design Criteria:
  1. Design Loads:
    - a. In accordance with ASCE 7 current edition and meeting IBC 2012 or current edition standards.
    - b. Maximum deflection under snow load: Not more than L/180 or as recommended by ASCE 7, whichever is less.
    - c. Wind Pull-Off Resistance:
      - 1) No failure of roof panel or fasteners when tested in accordance with ASTM E1592 for negative loading equal to negative design wind load; for assemblies not tested, capacity for gauge, span, or loading may be determined by interpolating between test values only.
    - d. Wind Uplift Resistance: Class 90 rating, minimum, when tested in accordance with UL 580.
  2. Air Infiltration:
    - a. Maximum of **0.007 cfm/sq ft (0.128 cu m/h/sq m)** at pressure differential of **6.24 psf (300 Pa)**, when tested in accordance with ASTM E1680.
  3. External Fire Resistance: Class A, when tested in accordance with ASTM E108 or UL 790.
  4. Impact Resistance:
    - a. Minimum of Class 4, when tested in accordance with UL 2218.
  5. Thermal Effects:
    - a. Design roof panels and their attachment to allow free movement in response to expansion and contraction forces resulting from temperature variation, as specified in MBMA Metal Roofing Systems Design Manual.
  6. Water Leakage:

- a. No uncontrollable water leakage at pressure differential of **2.86 psf (137 Pa)**, when tested in accordance with ASTM E1646.
- 7. Accessories and Their Fasteners:
  - a. Capable of resisting specified design wind uplift forces and allowing for thermal movement of roof panel system, not restricting free movement of roof panel system resulting from thermal forces except at designed points of roof panel fixity.
- 8. Provide all necessary members and connections, whether indicated in manufacturer's standard detail drawings or not.
- 9. Roof slope: 3 in 12 minimum.

E. Components:

- 1. General:
  - a. Provide all components of system supplied or specified by same manufacturer and compatible with roof panels of not less than minimum thickness required by Roof Manufacturer.
  - b. Roof System: (Basis of Design Product):
    - 1) Metal roofing panels and trim.
    - 2) Firestone CladGard SA FR underlayment.
    - 3) Firestone ISO 95+ Roof Insulation.
    - 4) Cover Board: Gypsum-based cover board.
    - 5) Flashing, anchorage, and accessories.
- 2. Roof Panels:
  - a. Steel Sheet: ASTM A653/A653M, G90 (lock-forming quality), extra smooth, tension-leveled, galvanized steel, minimum spangle.
  - b. **24 ga (0.025) (0.635 mm)**.
  - c. Fluorocarbon carbon finish.
  - d. Form roofing panels in longest practical lengths, true to shape, accurate in size, square, and free from distribution or manufacturing defects.
  - e. Seams:
    - 1) Seam height: **2 inches (50.8 mm)**.
    - 2) Seam spacing: **18 inches (457 mm)**.
    - 3) Seams shall be mechanically locked in the field with a mechanical seamer
    - 4) Seams shall have a factory applied integral seam sealant in leg of panel.
  - f. Accessories include valleys, copings, scuppers, downspouts, and edge flashings.
- 3. Trim, Flashing and Accessories:
  - a. Components of roof system supplied or specified by same manufacturer and compatible with roof panels of not less than minimum thickness required by Roof Manufacturer.
  - b. Fabricate trim, flashing, and accessories to roofing manufacturer's specified or approved profiles.
  - c. Exposed metal components of same finish as roof panels.
  - d. Color: To match roof panels.
- 4. Insulation Board:
  - a. FM and UL approved.
  - b. Polyisocyanurate Foam Insulation Board:
    - 1) Meet requirements of ASTM C1289, Type II, Class 1, Grade 2, felt or glass-fiber mat facer on both major surfaces.
    - 2) Insulation boards shall be Factory Mutual approved for classification selected for project.
    - 3) Insulation panels directly under roofing membrane and recovery board shall not exceed **48 inches by 96 inches (1 200 mm by 2 400 mm)**.
    - 4) Thickness: **3.3 inch (83.8 mm)**.
    - 5) R-Value (LTTR):
      - a) **1 inch (25 mm)** thickness: 5.6 minimum.
    - 6) Insulation shall have minimum 'R' value of 30.
    - 7) Compressive Strength: **20 psi (138 kPA)** when tested in accordance with ASTM C1289.
    - 8) Ozone Depletion Potential: Zero; made without CFC or HCFC blowing agents.
    - 9) Recycled Content: (19) nineteen percent post-consumer and (15) fifteen percent post-industrial, average.
    - 10) Acceptable Product: Flat ISO 95+ GL Polyisocyanurate Insulation.

5. Cover Board Over Insulation:
  - a. Description:
    - 1) Non-combustible, water resistant gypsum core with embedded glass mat facers.
  - b. General:
    - 1) Complying with ASTM C1177/C1177M, and with the following additional characteristics:
      - a) Surface Water Absorption: 2.5 g, maximum, when tested in accordance with ASTM C473.
      - b) Spanning Capability: Recommended by Manufacturer for following minimum flute spans:
        - c) **1/4 inch (6 mm)** Thickness: **2-5/8 inch (67 mm)**, minimum.
      - d) Surface Burning Characteristics: Flame spread of 0, smoke developed of 0, when tested in accordance with ASTM E84.
      - e) Combustibility: Non-combustible, when tested in accordance with ASTM E136.
      - f) Wind Uplift Resistance: Factory Mutual approved for use with FM 1-60 and 1-90 rated roofing assemblies.
      - g) Mold Growth Resistance: Zero growth, when tested in accordance with ASTM D3273 for minimum of 4 weeks.
    - 2) Type Two Acceptable Products:
      - a) Dens-Deck Prime Roof Board by G-P Gypsum, Atlanta, GA.
        - (1) Non Fire Rated: **1/4 inch (6.4 mm)** thick minimum.
        - (2) Fire Rated: **5/8 inch (16 mm)** thick minimum.
      - b) Equal as acceptable to Roofing Manufacturer and approved by Architect before installation. See Section 01 6200.
    - 3) Fasteners: Type and size as required by Roofing Manufacturer for roofing system and warranty to be provided; use only fasteners furnished by roof membrane manufacturer.

F. Fabrication:

1. Roof Panels shall be produced by Manufacturer meeting Manufacturer Qualification requirements as specified in Quality Assurance in Part 1 of this specifications (field fabrication not allowed).
2. Fabricate trim, flashing, and accessories to Manufacturer's specified or approved profiles.
  - a. Exposed metal components of same finish as roof panels.
  - b. Color same as roof panels.

G. Finishes:

1. Fluorocarbon Carbon:
  - a. Polyvinylidene Fluoride (PVDF) Resin-base finish (Kynar 500 or Hylar 5000) containing seventy (70) percent minimum (PVDF) in resin portion of formula and providing pencil hardness of 3H. Thermo-cured two-coat system consisting of corrosion inhibiting epoxy primer and topcoat factory-applied over properly pre-treated metal.
  - b. Reverse side coating thermo-cured system consisting of corrosion inhibiting epoxy primer applied over properly pre-treated metal.
  - c. Color as selected by Architect from Manufacturer's standard colors that meet Manufacturer's Finish Warranty requirements. Verify color before bid.

## 2.2 ACCESSORIES

A. Underlayment:

1. Description:
  - a. Self-adhering rubberized sheet waterproof membrane.
2. General:
  - a. Meet requirements of ASTM D1970/D1970M and UL 790 Class A Fire Resistance.
  - b. Resistance to Direct Exposure: At least forty two (42) days.
  - c. Minimum High Temperature Resistance: **230 deg F (110 deg C)**.
  - d. Water Vapor Permeance: **0.1 perm (5.7 ng/(Pa s sq m))**, maximum.
  - e. Type Two Acceptable Products:
    - 1) Firestone CladGard SA.
    - 2) Equal as acceptable to Roofing Manufacturer and approved by Architect before installation. See Section 01 6200.

- B. Fasteners:
1. Minimize exposed fasteners where possible.
  2. Factory-coated steel fasteners and metal or plastic plates complying with corrosion-resistance provisions in FM Approvals 4470, designed for fastening roof insulation to substrate, and acceptable to Roofing Manufacturer.
    - a. Installation Clips: Stainless steel clips for concealed securement of panels.
    - b. Clip Fasteners: Galvanized Steel or Stainless Steel.
  3. Fasteners Exposed to Weather:
    - a. Sealed or with sealed washers on exterior side of covering to waterproof fastener penetration.
    - b. Washer material compatible with screw head; minimum **3/8 inch (9.5 mm)** diameter washer for structural connections; gasket portion of fasteners or washers made of EPDM, neoprene, or other equally durable elastomeric material.
  4. Fasteners Exposed to View: Head of color matching panel or component in which installed.
- C. Molded Closure Strips: Metal pre-molded to match configuration of covering; configuration to prevent retention of water.
- D. Roof Jacks (Pipe Flashings):
1. Weathertight joint at projections through roof, designed for thermal movement and temperature of roof. Provide aluminum-flanged base ring.
- E. Sealant:
1. Elastomeric Joint Sealant:
    - a. Description:
      - 1) Premium-grade, high-performance, moisture-cured, 1-component, polyurethane-based, non-sag elastomeric sealant.
    - b. Design Criteria:
      - 1) Meet following standards for Sealant:
        - a) ASTM C920: Type S Grade NS, Class 35 Use T, NT, O, M, G, I.
        - b) Federal specification TT-S-00230C, Type II, Class A.
      - 2) Maximum depth of sealant will not exceed **1/2 inch (12.7 mm)**.
      - 3) Suitable for vertical and horizontal joints.
      - 4) Application temperature: **40 deg F (4.4 deg C)** to **100 deg F (37.8 deg C)**.
    - c. Category Four Approved Products. See Section 01 6200 for definitions of Categories:
      - 1) Sikaflex-1a by Sika Sarnafil, Canton, MA [www.sikacorp.com](http://www.sikacorp.com).
      - 2) Sonolastic NP1 by BASF, Shakopee, MN [www.buildingsystems.basf.com](http://www.buildingsystems.basf.com).
      - 3) Equal as approved by Roofing Manufacturer.
  2. Tape Sealant:
    - a. Pressure sensitive, one hundred (100) percent solid, sealing tape with release paper backing. Provide permanently elastic, non-sagging, non-toxic, non-staining tape sealant.
- F. Wood Nailers: PS 20 dimension lumber, Structural Grade No. 1 or better, Douglas Fir; pressure preservative treated:
1. Width: **3-1/2 inch (90 mm)**, nominal minimum, unless shown or noted otherwise.
  2. Thickness: Same thickness of roof insulation.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Verification Of Conditions:
1. Examine deck to determine if it is satisfactory for installation of roofing system:
    - a. Inspect for protruding deck fasteners and defects that will adversely affect quality of work and issuance of roofing warranty.
    - b. Verify that roof openings, curbs, pipes, sleeves, ducts, vents, and other penetrations through roof substrate are complete and properly located.

- c. Verify that wood blocking, curbs, and nailers are securely anchored to roof deck at penetrations and terminations and nailers match thicknesses of insulation to be installed.
  - d. Verify that surfaces and site conditions are ready to receive work. Correct defects in the substrate before commencing with roofing work.
  - e. Examine roof deck to determine that it is sufficiently rigid to support installers and their mechanical equipment and that deflection will not strain or rupture roof components or deform deck.
  - f. Verify that the substructure installation is in accordance with the approved shop drawings and Roofing Manufacturer's requirements, that the fasteners are correct for the substrate, and substrate is installed to accommodate and support appropriate clip spacing and attachment.
2. Notify Architect in writing of unsuitable conditions or in event of discrepancy.
    - a. Do not proceed with installation until unsuitable conditions or discrepancies have been resolved.
    - b. Commencement of Work by installer is considered acceptance of substrate.
    - c. Stop work immediately if any unusual or concealed condition is discovered and immediately notify Architect in writing, with letter copy to Roofing Manufacturer.

### 3.2 PREPARATION

#### A. General:

1. Do not start work until Pre-Installation Notice has been submitted to Roofing Manufacturer as notification that this project requires Roofing Manufacturer's warranty.
2. Obtain all relevant instructions and maintain copies at project site for duration of installation period.
3. Until ready for use, keep materials in their original containers as labeled by manufacturer.
4. Consult manufacturer's instructions, container labels, and Material Safety Data Sheets (MSDS) for specific safety instructions. Keep all sealants and cleaning materials away from all sources of ignition.

#### B. Surface Preparation:

1. Clean roof deck, including removal of dirt and debris:
2. Install roofing only when surfaces are clean, dry, smooth and free of moisture; do not apply roofing during inclement weather or when ambient conditions will not allow proper application; consult Roofing Manufacturer for recommended procedures during cold weather. Do not work with sealants and adhesives when material temperature is outside range of 60 deg F (16 deg C) to 80 deg F (27 deg C).
3. Following Manufacturer's recommendations for placing materials on roof:
  - a. Prevent material from sliding off roof.

### 3.1 INSTALLATION

#### A. Interface With Other Work:

1. Verify that installed work of other trades that such work is complete to point where roofing system installation may commence.

#### B. General:

1. Follow Manufacturer's published installation instructions and approved shop drawings.
2. Install roofing, valleys, coping, flashings, and accessories in accordance with Roofing Manufacturer's published instructions and recommendations for roofing system.
  - a. Where Roofing Manufacturer provides no instructions or recommendations, follow good roofing practices and industry standards.
  - b. Comply with federal, state, and local regulations and applicable codes.
  - c. Do not allow roof panels or trim to come into contact with dissimilar materials.
3. Install roof system to allow for thermal movements.

#### C. Board Insulation / Cover Board:



1. Install insulation over entire area to be roofed, mechanically fastened as required by Roofing Manufacturer.
  2. Provide wood nailers at all perimeters of insulation and at other locations where indicated on Contract Drawings, of total height matching total thickness of insulation being used.
    - a. Install with **1/8 inch (3 mm)** gap between each length and at each change of direction.
    - b. Mechanically fasten to deck to resist force of **200 lbf per linear foot (35 kN/m)**.
  3. Install cover board over entire area to be roofed, mechanically fastened as required by Roofing Manufacturer.
- D. Underlayment Installation:
1. General:
    - a. Follow Roofing Manufacturer's recommendations for installation of underlayment, particularly at eaves, rakes, and penetrations, unless specified installation procedures and Contract Drawing details are more stringent.
    - b. Weather conditions:
      - 1) Do not leave underlayment exposed to weather more than thirty (30) days after beginning of underlayment installation.
      - 2) If moisture is deposited on exposed underlayment, obtain written approval from Roofing Manufacturer's Representative before roofing.
    - c. Install valley underlayment and valley metal after installation of general underlayment.
  2. Underlayment:
    - a. Install underlayment in accordance with Underlayment Manufacturer's instructions and where noted on Contract Drawings.
    - b. Install self-adhered underlayment over entire roofing surface and apply additional layer at all curbs, eaves, valley hips and ridges.
    - c. Curbs:
      - 1) Run underlayment up curbs **8 inches (200 mm)** minimum and seal to roof curbs.
    - d. Eaves and Rakes:
      - 1) Apply continuous **12 inches (300 mm)** wide strip at edge of eaves and rakes before installing drip edge.
      - 2) Apply two (2) **36 inch (900 mm)** wide sheets along eaves and rakes as described in Contract Documents.
        - a) Lap end joints **6 inches (150 mm)** and side joints **3 inches (75 mm)**.
    - e. Valleys:
      - 1) Sweep surface to remove dirt and debris so secondary underlayment will seal to surface.
      - 2) Apply three (3) continuous **36 inch (900 mm)** wide sheets of underlayment in valley lapped so as to provide **102 inch (2 590 mm)** wide covered area centered over valley.
      - 3) Apply one (1) continuous **36 inch (300 mm)** wide strip of underlayment and centered over valley.
      - 4) Install formed valley metal over strip of underlayment:
        - a) Nail top of each section and lap **8 inches (200 mm)** in direction of flow.
        - b) Seal laps with continuous bead of elastomeric roofing sealant.
        - c) Secure edges of valley metal with fasteners spaced at **12 inches (300 mm)** maximum on center and approximately **1/2 inch (13 mm)** in from edge of metal.
      - 5) Install **12 inches (300 mm)** wide strips of underlayment lapping nailed edge of formed valley metal **3 inches (75 mm)**.
- E. Roof Panel Installation:
1. Install the metal roof panel system in accordance with Roofing Manufacturer's instructions, installation drawings, and approved shop drawings, so that it is weathertight and allows for thermal movement.
  2. Locate and space all fasteners in accordance with Roofing Manufacturer's recommendations. For required exposed fasteners, use proper torque settings to obtain controlled uniform compression for positive seal without rupturing sealing washers.
  3. Do not place utility penetrations through roof panel seams.
  4. Do not allow roof panels or trim to come into contact with dissimilar materials (i.e. copper, lead, graphite, treated lumber, mortar, etc). Protect from water run-off from these materials.
  5. Perform field cutting of panels and related sheet metal components by means of hand or electric shears. At no time shall hot/friction saw be used.

6. Remove protective film immediately after installation.
- F. Roof Vents:
1. Install Ridge Vent as specified in Section 07 7226 'Ridge Vents'.
- G. Roof Jacks (Pipe Flashings):
1. Install as recommended by Roofing Manufacturer.
  2. Install in accordance with IBC Section 1503.2 'Flashing'.
- H. Flashings And Accessories Installation:
1. Install flashings, including laps, splices, joints, bonding, adhesion, and attachment, as required by Roofing Manufacturer's recommendations and details.
  2. Install metal trim, accessories, and edgings in locations indicated on Contract Drawings.
    - a. Follow Roofing Manufacturer's instructions.
    - b. Remove protective plastic surface film immediately before installation.
  3. Flashing at Walls, Curbs, and Other Vertical and Sloped Surfaces: Install weathertight flashing at all walls, curbs, parapets, curbs, skylights, and other vertical and sloped surfaces that roofing membrane abuts to; extend flashing at least **8 inches (200 mm)** high above membrane surface.
    - a. Use longest practical flashing pieces.
  4. Flashing at Penetrations: Flash all penetrations passing through the membrane; make flashing seals directly to the penetration:
    - a. Pipes, Round Supports, and Similar Items: Flash with specified pre-molded pipe flashings wherever practical.
    - b. Where pre-molded pipe flashings are not practical, provide flashing detail as recommended by Roofing Manufacturer.
  5. Sealant / Roof Cement:
    - a. Install and at temperatures recommended by Sealant Manufacturer at locations recommended by Manufacturer.

### 3.2 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Field Inspection:
1. Interim Inspections by Roofing Manufacturer:
    - a. Provide interim (one every two weeks) of roofing system by Technical or Local Representative employed by Roofing Manufacturer specifically to inspect installation for warranty purposes.
  2. Final Inspection:
    - a. Mandatory inspection required for system warranty prior to acceptance of roof by Owner by Roofing Manufacturer with Installer, Architect, and Owner's Representative.
      - 1) Correct any problems identified by inspection before acceptance of roof by Owner.
      - 2) Perform all corrections necessary for issuance of warranty.
- B. Non-Conforming Work:
1. Correct any work found defective or not complying with Contract Document requirements at no additional cost to Owner:
    - a. Touch-up repair or replace damaged materials as per Roofing Manufacturer's specified procedures.
    - b. Repair panels having minor damage.
    - c. Remove panels damaged beyond repair and replace with new panels to match adjacent undamaged panels.
    - d. Repair or replace building components and finished surfaces damaged or defaced due to the work of this section; comply with recommendations of Roofing Manufacturer of components and surfaces.

### 3.3 CLEANING

- A. General:

1. All tools and unused materials must be collected at end of each workday and stored properly off finished roof surface and protected from exposure to elements.
2. Leave metals clean and free of defects, stains, and damaged finish.
  - a. Replace fascia metal that is scratched through finish to base metal.
3. Properly clean finished roof surface after completion.
4. Verify drains and gutters are not clogged.
5. Clean exposed roof panel surfaces promptly after installation in accordance with recommendations of roofing and coating manufacturer.
6. Clean all contaminants generated by roofing work from building and surrounding areas, including adhesives, sealants, and coatings.
7. Clean and restore all damaged surfaces to their original condition.

B. Waste Management:

1. Disposal:
  - a. All work areas are to be kept clean, clear and free of debris at all times.
  - b. Do not allow trash, waste, or debris to collect on roof. These items shall be removed from roof on daily basis.
  - c. Remove debris resulting from work of this Section from roof and site. Dispose of or recycle all trash and excess material in manner conforming to current EPA regulations and local laws.

### 3.4 PROTECTION

A. General Contractor's Responsibility:

1. Protect installed roof from damage.
2. Do not permit traffic over finished roof surface and traffic by other trades:
  - a. Where construction traffic must continue over finished roof panels, provide durable protection and replace or repair damaged roofing to original condition.

**END OF SECTION**

**SECTION 07 6210****GALVANIZED STEEL FLASHING AND TRIM****PART 1 - GENERAL****1.1 SUMMARY**

- A. Includes But Not Limited To:
  - 1. Furnish and install miscellaneous flashing, counterflashing, and hold-down clips as described in Contract Documents and not specified to be of other material.
- B. Products Furnished But Not Installed Under This Section:
  - 1. Gravel stops, copings, scuppers, and miscellaneous sheet metal specialties not specified to be of other materials.
- C. Related Requirements:
  - 1. Section 06 1100: 'Wood Framing' for wood base.
  - 2. Sections under 07 3000 heading: 'Steep Slope Roofing' for installation of gravel stops, copings, scuppers, and miscellaneous roofing related flashing.
  - 3. Sections under 07 5000 heading: 'Membrane Roofing' for installation of gravel stops, copings, scuppers, and miscellaneous roofing related flashing.
  - 4. Section 07 9213: 'Elastomeric Joint Sealant'.

**1.2 REFERENCES**

- A. Reference Standards:
  - 1. ASTM International:
    - a. ASTM A653/A653M-18, 'Standard Specification for Steel Sheet, Zinc-Coated (Galvanized) or Zinc-Iron Alloy-Coated (Galvannealed) by the Hot-Dip Process'.
    - b. ASTM A792/A792M-10(2015), 'Standard Specification for Steel Sheet, 55 % Aluminum-Zinc Alloy-Coated by the Hot-Dip Process'.
  - 2. Federal Specifications:
    - a. TT-S-00230C(2) Sealing Compound, Elastomeric Type, Single Component, (For Caulking, Sealing, and Glazing in Buildings and Other Structures).

**PART 2 - PRODUCTS****2.1 SYSTEM**

- A. Manufacturers:
  - 1. Type Two Acceptable Manufacturers Of Metal:
    - a. CMG – Coated Metals Group, Denver, CO [www.cmgmetals.com](http://www.cmgmetals.com).
    - b. Drexel Metals, LLC, Ivyland, PA [www.drexmet.com](http://www.drexmet.com).
    - c. Fabral, Lancaster, PA [www.fabral.com](http://www.fabral.com).
    - d. Firestone Metal Products, Anoka, MN [www.unaclad.com](http://www.unaclad.com).
    - e. MBCI, Houston, TX [www.mbc.com](http://www.mbc.com).
    - f. Metal Sales Manufacturing Corp, Sellersburg, IN [www.mtlsales.com](http://www.mtlsales.com).
    - g. O'Neal Flat Rolled Metals (member of O'Neal Industries), Brighton, CO [www.ofrmetals.com](http://www.ofrmetals.com).
    - h. Petersen Aluminum Corp, Elk Grove, IL [www.pac-clad.com](http://www.pac-clad.com).
    - i. Ryerson, Chicago, IL [www.ryerson.com](http://www.ryerson.com).
    - j. Equal as approved by Architect before installation. See Section 01 6200.
- B. Materials:

1. Sheet Metal:
  - a. Galvanized iron or steel meeting requirements of ASTM A653/A653M, G 90 or Galvalume steel meeting requirements of ASTM A792/A792M AZ50, 50 ksi.
    - 1) 22 ga (0.792 mm) for hold-down clips.
    - 2) 24 ga (0.635 mm) for all other.
- C. Fabrication:
  1. Form accurately to details.
  2. Profiles, bends, and intersections shall be even and true to line.
  3. Fold exposed edges 1/2 inch (12.7 mm) to provide stiffness.
- D. Finish:
  1. Exposed to view:
    - a. Provide face coating of polyvinylidene Fluoride (PVF<sub>2</sub>) Resin-base finish (Kynar 500 or Hylar 5000) containing seventy (70) percent minimum PVF<sub>2</sub> in resin portion of formula. Thermo-cured two coat system consisting of corrosion inhibiting epoxy primer and top coat factory applied over properly pre-treated metal.
    - b. Reverse side coating shall be thermo-cured system consisting of corrosion inhibiting epoxy primer applied over properly pre-treated metal.
  2. Color as selected by Architect from Manufacturer's standard colors.

## 2.2 ACCESSORIES

- A. Sealants: Rubber base type conforming to Fed Spec TT-S-00230C.
- B. Fasteners:
  1. Of strength and type consistent with function.
  2. Nails: Hot-dipped galvanized.
  3. Screws, Bolts, And Accessory Fasteners: Galvanized or other acceptable corrosion resistant treatment.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 INSTALLATION

- A. Install with small, watertight seams.
- B. Slope to provide positive drainage.
- C. Provide sufficient hold down clips to insure true alignment and security against wind.
- D. Provide 4 inch (100 mm) minimum overlap.
- E. Allow sufficient tolerance for expansion and contraction.
- F. Insulate work to prevent electrolytic action.

### 3.2 CLEANING

- A. Leave metals clean and free of defects, stains, and damaged finish.

END OF SECTION

**SECTION 07 6311****METAL SOFFIT PANELS****PART 1 - GENERAL****1.1 SUMMARY**

- A. Includes But Not Limited To:
  - 1. Furnish and install metal soffit panel system as described in Contract Documents.

**1.2 REFERENCES**

- A. Reference Standards:
  - 1. ASTM International:
    - a. ASTM A653/A653M-18, 'Standard Specification for Steel Sheet, Zinc-Coated (Galvanized) or Zinc-Iron Alloy-Coated (Galvannealed) by the Hot-Dip Process'.
    - b. ASTM A792/A792M-10(2015), 'Standard Specification for Steel Sheet, 55 % Aluminum-Zinc Alloy-Coated by the Hot-Dip Process'.
    - c. ASTM B209-14, 'Standard Specification for Aluminum and Aluminum-Alloy Sheet and Plate'.
    - d. ASTM E84-18b, 'Standard Test Method for Surface Burning Characteristics of Building Materials'.

**1.3 SUBMITTALS**

- A. Action Submittals:
  - 1. Product Data:
    - a. Manufacturer's literature or cut sheet for products furnished.
- B. Closeout Submittals:
  - 1. Include following in Operations And Maintenance Manual specified in Section 01 7800:
    - a. Warranty Documentation:
      - 1) Final, executed copy of Warranty.

**1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE**

- A. Regulatory Agency Sustainability Approvals:
  - 1. Fire Characteristics Performance Requirement:
    - a. Meet requirements of ASTM E84 Class A fire rating.
- B. Qualifications:
  - 1. Installer:
    - a. Minimum three (3) years experience with installations of comparable quality, scope, similar size, and complexity before bidding.

**1.5 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING**

- A. Delivery And Acceptance Requirements:
  - 1. Materials shall be delivered in original, unopened packages with labels intact.
  - 2. Inspect delivered material for damage.
- B. Storage And Handling Requirements:

1. Stack panels on pallets or above ground, covered with weathertight and ventilated covering. Prevent condensation build-up or moisture entrapment in materials.
2. Store panels not in contact with other materials that might cause staining, denting or other surface damage.

## 1.6 WARRANTY

- A. Manufacturer Warranty:
1. Manufacturer's standard warranty against manufacturer defects.
  2. Manufacturer's written thirty five (35) year warranty on paint finish against cracking, peeling, blistering, chalk, and color change.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 SYSTEMS

- A. Manufacturers:
1. Type One Acceptable Manufacturers Of Metal:
    - a. AEP / Span, Dallas, TX [www.aep-span.com](http://www.aep-span.com).
    - b. ATAS Aluminum Products, Allentown, PA [www.atas.com](http://www.atas.com).
    - c. Fabral, Lancaster, PA [www.fabral.com](http://www.fabral.com).
    - d. Fashion Inc, Ottawa, KS [www.fashioninc.com](http://www.fashioninc.com).
    - e. Firestone Metal Products, Anoka, MN [www.unaclad.com](http://www.unaclad.com).
    - f. MBCI, Houston, TX [www.mbc.com](http://www.mbc.com).
    - g. O'Neal Flat Rolled Metals (member of O'Neal Industries), Brighton, CO [www.ofrmetals.com](http://www.ofrmetals.com).
    - h. Petersen Aluminum Corp, Elk Grove, IL [www.pac-clad.com](http://www.pac-clad.com).
    - i. Ryerson, Chicago, IL [www.ryerson.com](http://www.ryerson.com).
    - j. Equal as approved by Architect before bidding. See Section 01 6200.
- B. Performance:
1. Design Criteria:
    - a. Flush panel design.
      - 1) Panels shall be interlocked full length of panel.
      - 2) Panel widths shall be Manufacturer's standard.
    - b. Performance Standard: ATAS Wind-LOK Soffit MPS120.
- C. Materials:
1. **0.032 inch (0.8 mm)** thick minimum 3105-H24 alloy aluminum meeting requirements of ASTM B209.
  2. **24 ga (0.0276 in) (0.7010 mm)** galvanized iron or steel meeting requirements of A653/A653M, G 90.
  3. **24 ga (0.0276 in) (0.7010 mm)** minimum 50 ksi galvalume steel meeting requirements of ASTM A792/A792M AZ-55.
- D. Fabrication:
1. Panels shall be uniformly dimensioned, roll formed to lengths to avoid trimming.
  2. Panel system shall be anchored as recommended by Manufacturer.
  3. Panels shall be continuous.
- E. Finish:
1. Polyvinylidene Fluoride (PVF<sub>2</sub>) Resin-base (Kynar 500 or Hylar 5000) finish for coil coating components containing 70 percent minimum PVF<sub>2</sub> in resin portion of formula. Thermo-cured two coat system consisting of corrosion inhibiting epoxy primer and top coat factory applied over properly pre-treated metal.
  2. Color as selected by Architect from Manufacturer's standard colors.

## 2.2 ACCESSORIES

- A. Fastening Devices: 1-1/2 inch (38 mm) cadmium or zinc plated ring shanked nails.
- B. Continuous Soffit Vent:
  - 1. Type Two Acceptable Products:
    - a. Aluminum 8.8 sq in (56.8 sq cm) net free ventilation per lineal foot (0.32 m). Width: 2 inches (50 mm). Color: white or brown.
      - 1) Mastic VAS70 Vent-A-Strip (Model 70) by Mastic Home Exteriors by Ply Gem Chicago, IL [www.mastic.com/](http://www.mastic.com/).
    - b. Aluminum 9.9 sq in (63.9 sq cm) net free ventilation per lineal foot (0.32 m). Width: 2-1/4 inches (57 mm). Color: white or brown.
      - 1) Mastic VAS79 Vent-A-Strip (Model 79) by Mastic Home Exteriors by Ply Gem Chicago, IL [www.mastic.com/](http://www.mastic.com/).
    - c. Equal as approved by Architect before installation. See Section 01 6200.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Verification Of Conditions:
  - 1. Examine substrate and verify framing is suitable for installation of soffit system.
  - 2. Notify Architect of unsuitable conditions in writing.
    - a. Do not install soffit over unsuitable conditions.
    - b. Commencement of Work by installer is considered acceptance of substrate.

### 3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. Conceal fasteners where possible. Paint heads of exposed fasteners to match background.
- B. Isolate from dissimilar metals to prevent electrolytic action.

### 3.3 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Non-Conforming Work: Non-conforming work as covered in the General Conditions applies, but is not limited to the following:
  - 1. Correct any work found defective or not complying with contract document requirements including buckling or bowing due to improper installation and touch up of minor scratches and spots at no additional cost to the Owner.

### 3.4 CLEANING

- A. General:
  - 1. Clean exposed panel surfaces promptly after installation in accordance with manufacturer's instructions.
- B. Waste Management:
  - 1. Dispose of waste in provided waste receptacles (dumpsters) as specified in Section 01 7400.

END OF SECTION



**SECTION 07 6322****STEEL FASCIA****PART 1 - GENERAL****1.1 SUMMARY**

- A. Includes But Not Limited To:
1. Furnish and install metal fascia as described in Contract Documents.

**1.2 REFERENCES**

- A. Reference Standards:
1. ASTM International:
    - a. ASTM A653/A653M-18, 'Standard Specification for Steel Sheet, Zinc-Coated (Galvanized) or Zinc-Iron Alloy-Coated (Galvannealed) by the Hot-Dip Process'.
    - b. ASTM A792/A792M-10(2015), 'Standard Specification for Steel Sheet, 55 % Aluminum-Zinc Alloy-Coated by the Hot-Dip Process'.
    - c. ASTM E84-18b, 'Standard Test Method for Surface Burning Characteristics of Building Materials'.

**1.3 SUBMITTALS**

- A. Action Submittals:
1. Product Data:
    - a. Manufacturer's literature or cut sheet for products furnished.
- B. Closeout Submittals:
1. Include following in Operations And Maintenance Manual specified in Section 01 7800:
    - a. Warranty Documentation:
      - 1) Final, executed copy of Warranty.

**1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE**

- A. Regulatory Agency Sustainability Approvals:
1. Fire Characteristics Performance Requirement:
    - a. Meet requirements of ASTM E84 Class A fire rating.
- B. Qualifications:
1. Installer:
    - a. Minimum three (3) years experience with installations of comparable quality, scope, similar size, and complexity before bidding.

**1.5 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING**

- A. Delivery And Acceptance Requirements:
1. Materials shall be delivered in original, unopened packages with labels intact.
  2. Inspect delivered material for damage.
- B. Storage And Handling Requirements:
1. Stack panels on pallets or above ground, covered with weathertight and ventilated covering. Prevent condensation build-up or moisture entrapment in materials.

2. Store panels not in contact with other materials that might cause staining, denting or other surface damage.

## 1.6 WARRANTY

- A. Manufacturer Warranty:
  1. Manufacturer's standard warranty against manufacturer defects.
  2. Manufacturer's written thirty five (35) year warranty on paint finish against cracking, peeling, blistering, chalk, and color change.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 ASSEMBLIES

- A. Manufacturers:
  1. Type One Acceptable Manufacturers Of Metal:
    - a. AEP / Span, Dallas, TX [www.aep-span.com](http://www.aep-span.com).
    - b. ATAS Aluminum Products, Allentown, PA [www.atas.com](http://www.atas.com).
    - c. CMG – Coated Metals Group, Denver, CO [www.cmgmetals.com](http://www.cmgmetals.com).
    - d. Drexel Metals, LLC, Ivyland, PA [www.drexmet.com](http://www.drexmet.com).
    - e. Fabral, Lancaster, PA [www.fabral.com](http://www.fabral.com).
    - f. Firestone Metal Products, Anoka, MN [www.unaclad.com](http://www.unaclad.com).
    - g. Hunter-Douglas Canada Ltd, Brampton, ON [www.hunterdouglasgroup.com](http://www.hunterdouglasgroup.com).
    - h. Kaycan Ltd, Montreal, PQ (514) 334-7550 [www.kaycan.com](http://www.kaycan.com).
    - i. MBCI, Houston, TX [www.mbc.com](http://www.mbc.com).
    - j. Metal Sales Manufacturing Corp, Sellersburg, IN [www.mtlsales.com](http://www.mtlsales.com).
    - k. O'Neal Flat Rolled Metals (member of O'Neal Industries), Brighton, CO [www.ofrmetals.com](http://www.ofrmetals.com).
    - l. Petersen Aluminum Corp, Elk Grove, IL [www.pac-clad.com](http://www.pac-clad.com)
    - m. Ryerson, Chicago, IL [www.ryerson.com](http://www.ryerson.com).
    - n. VicWest, Oakville, ON [www.vicwest.ca](http://www.vicwest.ca)
    - o. Equal as approved by Architect before bidding. See Section 01 6200.
- B. Materials: Minimum **24 ga (0.635 mm)**, hot-dipped galvanized to meet requirements of ASTM A653/A653M, 1.25 oz/sq ft or galvalume meeting requirements of ASTM A792/A792M AZ50, 50 ksi and complete with accessories recommended by Manufacturer for proper installation.
- C. Fabrication: Fascia may either be shop-fabricated using metal from a specified manufacturer, or a factory-fabricated standard system from a specified manufacturer.
- D. Finishes:
  1. Face coating polyvinylidene Fluoride (PVF<sub>2</sub>) Resin-base finish (Kynar 500 or Hylar 5000) for coil coating components containing 70 percent minimum PVF<sub>2</sub> in resin portion of formula. Thermo-cured two coat system consisting of corrosion inhibiting epoxy primer and top coat factory applied over properly pre-treated metal.
  2. Reverse side coating thermo-cured system consisting of corrosion inhibiting epoxy primer applied over properly pre-treated metal.
  3. Color as selected by Architect from Manufacturer's standard colors.

### 2.2 ACCESSORIES

- A. Fastening Devices: Galvanized steel screws.
- B. Continuous Soffit Vent:
  1. Type Two Acceptable Products:

- a. Aluminum **8.8 sq in (56.8 sq cm)** net free ventilation per **lineal foot (0.32 m)**. Width: **2 inches (50 mm)**. Color: white or brown.
  - 1) Mastic VAS70 Vent-A-Strip (Model 70) by Mastic Home Exteriors by Ply Gem Chicago, IL [www.mastic.com/](http://www.mastic.com/).
- b. Aluminum **9.9 sq in (63.9 sq cm)** net free ventilation per **lineal foot (0.32 m)**. Width: **2-1/4 inches (57 mm)**. Color: white or brown.
  - 1) Mastic VAS79 Vent-A-Strip (Model 79) by Mastic Home Exteriors by Ply Gem Chicago, IL [www.mastic.com/](http://www.mastic.com/).
- c. Equal as approved by Architect before installation. See Section 01 6200.

## **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

### **3.1 EXAMINATION**

- A. Verification Of Conditions:
  1. Examine substrate and verify framing is suitable for installation of fascia.
  2. Notify Architect of unsuitable conditions in writing.
    - a. Do not install fascia over unsuitable conditions.
    - b. Commencement of Work by installer is considered acceptance of substrate.

### **3.2 INSTALLATION**

- A. Conceal fasteners except where details might require a minimum number to be exposed. Paint heads of exposed fasteners to match background.
- B. Install with slip joints at each end. Screw to substrate through pre-drilled, over-size holes.
- C. Isolate from dissimilar metals not part of fascia system to prevent electrolytic action.

### **3.3 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL**

- A. Non-Conforming Work: Non-conforming work as covered in the General Conditions applies, but is not limited to the following:
  1. Correct any work found defective or not complying with contract document requirements including buckling or bowing due to improper installation and touch up of minor scratches and spots at no additional cost to the Owner.

### **3.4 CLEANING**

- A. General:
  1. Clean exposed panel surfaces promptly after installation in accordance with manufacturer's instructions.
- B. Waste Management:
  1. Dispose of waste in provided waste receptacles (dumpsters) as specified in Section 01 7400.

**END OF SECTION**

**SECTION 07 7123****MANUFACTURED GUTTERS AND DOWNSPOUTS****PART 1 - GENERAL****1.1 SUMMARY**

- A. Includes But Not Limited To:
  - 1. Furnish and install gutters and downspouts as described in Contract Documents.
- B. Related Requirements:
  - 1. Section 07 9213: 'Elastomeric Joint Sealant', for quality of sealants for joints.

**1.2 REFERENCES**

- A. Reference Standard:
  - 1. Sheet Metal & Air Conditioning Contractors National Association Inc:
    - a. SMACNA Architectural Sheet Metal Manual, (7th edition 2012).

**1.3 SUBMITTALS**

- A. Action Submittals:
  - 1. Shop Drawings: Show gutter cross-section, mounting method, gauge of metal, expansion joint design and locations, and downspout locations minimum.

**PART 2 - PRODUCTS****2.1 ASSEMBLIES**

- A. Manufacturers:
  - 1. Type Two Acceptable Manufacturers of Metal:
    - a. ATAS Aluminum Products, Allentown, PA [www.atas.com](http://www.atas.com).
    - b. CMG – Coated Metals Group, Denver, CO [www.cmgmetals.com](http://www.cmgmetals.com).
    - c. Fabral, Jackson, GA [www.fabral.com](http://www.fabral.com).
    - d. Firestone Metal Products, Anoka, MN [www.unaclad.com](http://www.unaclad.com).
    - e. MBCI, Houston, TX [www.mbc.com](http://www.mbc.com).
    - f. Metal Sales Manufacturing Corp, Sellersburg, IN [www.mtlsales.com](http://www.mtlsales.com).
    - g. O'Neal Flat Rolled Metals (member of O'Neal Industries), Brighton, CO [www.ofrmetals.com](http://www.ofrmetals.com).
    - h. Petersen Aluminum Corp, Elk Grove, IL [www.pac-clad.com](http://www.pac-clad.com).
    - i. Reynolds Metals Company, Richmond, VA [www.rmc.com](http://www.rmc.com).
    - j. Ryerson, Chicago, IL [www.ryerson.com](http://www.ryerson.com).
    - k. Equal as approved by Architect before installation. See Section 01 6200.
- B. Materials
  - 1. Steel:
    - a. Downspouts: Rectangular, 26 ga (0.0217 inches - 0.5512 mm) galvanized steel including necessary elbows.
    - b. Gutters: 24 ga (0.0276 inches - 0.7010 mm) galvanized steel.
    - c. Brackets: 22 ga (0.0336 inches - 0.8534 mm) galvanized steel or 26 ga (0.0217 inches - 0.478 mm) double-hemmed minimum.
  - 2. Screws, Bolts, Nails, And Accessory Fasteners: Non-corrosive and of strength and type consistent with function.

3. Downspouts, gutters, brackets, fasteners, and accessories shall be compatible material.
- C. Fabrication:
1. Fabricate in accordance with SMACNA Architectural Manual recommendations, where applicable.
  2. Cross-sectional configuration of gutter shall be Style A, (Page 1.13 6th Edition) of SMACNA Architectural Manual.
  3. Form accurately to details.
  4. Profiles, bends, and intersections shall be even and true to line.
- D. Finishes:
1. Metal exposed to view shall have face coating of polyvinylidene Fluoride (PVF<sub>2</sub>) Resin-base finish (Kynar 500 or Hylar 5000) containing seventy (70) percent minimum PVF<sub>2</sub> in resin portion of formula.
    - a. Thermo-cured two (2) coat system consisting of corrosion inhibiting epoxy primer and top coat factory applied over properly pre-treated metal.
    - b. Reverse side coating shall be thermo-cured system consisting of corrosion inhibiting epoxy primer applied over properly pre-treated metal.
  2. Color as selected by Architect from Manufacturer's standard colors.

## **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

### **3.1 PREPARATION**

- A. Protection Of In-Place Conditions:
1. Before starting work, verify governing dimensions at building. Inspect for conditions that would prevent installation of specified system. Do not install over improper conditions.
  2. Insulate work from fascia as necessary to prevent electrolytic action.

### **3.2 INSTALLATION**

- A. Allow no more than **40 feet (12 meters)** between downspouts. Lap joints in downspouts **1-1/2 inches (38 mm)** minimum in direction of water flow.
- B. Furnish and install outlet tubes and gutter ends where required. Furnish and install expansion joints in runs exceeding **50 feet (15 meters)** and in runs that are restrained at both ends. Lap other joints in gutter **one inch (25 mm)** minimum, apply sealant in lap, and stainless steel rivet **one inch (25 mm)** on center maximum.

### **3.3 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL**

- A. Field Tests:
1. At completion of this work, block downspouts and flood gutters.
  2. Notify Architect two (2) working days before testing.
  3. Repair leaks and adjust for proper drainage.

### **3.4 CLEANING**

- A. Leave metals clean and free of defects, stains, and damaged finish.

**END OF SECTION**

**SECTION 07 7233****ROOF HATCHES****PART 1 - GENERAL****1.1 SUMMARY**

- A. Products Supplied But Not Installed Under This Section:
  - 1. Roof hatches and scuttles indicated on Contract Drawings including:
    - a. Related hardware and attachments.
    - b. Safety post for fixed ladders in roof hatches.
- B. Related Requirements:
  - 1. Section 06 2001: 'Common Finish Carpentry Requirements' for installation of roof hatches and safety post in roof hatches.
  - 2. Sections Under 07 5000 Heading: Membrane Roofing.
  - 3. Sections Under 07 6000 Heading: Flashing and Sheet Metal.
  - 4. Section 07 9219: 'Elastomeric Joint Sealants' for sealant.

**1.2 REFERENCES**

- A. Association Publications:
  - 1. U.S. Department of Labor, Occupational Safety and Health Administration (OSHA):
    - a. 29 CFR 1910 Subpart D: Walking-Working Surfaces:
      - 1) 1910.23 (e) - Guarding floor and wall openings and holes.
      - 2) 1910.27 (c) - Hatch Covers.

**1.3 SUBMITTALS**

- A. Action Submittals:
  - 1. Product Data:
    - a. Roof Hatch:
      - 1) Manufacturer's technical data for each type of hatch assembly, including setting drawings, templates, finish requirements, and details of anchorage devices.
        - a) Include locations, construction details, finishes, latching or locking provisions, and other pertinent data.
  - 2. Shop Drawings:
    - a. Roof Hatch:
      - 1) Indicate configuration and dimension of components, adjacent construction, required clearances and tolerances, and other affected Work.
        - a) Hatch Units: Show types, elevations, thickness of metals, and full size profiles.
        - b) Hardware: Show materials, finishes, locations of fasteners, types of fasteners, locations and types of operating hardware, and details of installation.
- B. Informational Submittals:
  - 1. Manufacturers' Instructions:
    - a. Roof Hatch:
      - 1) Indicate installation requirements and rough-in dimensions.
- C. Closeout Submittals:
  - 1. Include following in Operations And Maintenance Manual specified in Section 01 7800:
    - a. Warranty Documentation:
      - 1) Roof Hatch:

- a) Final, executed copy of Warranty.
- 2) Roof Hatch Safety Railing:
  - a) Final, executed copy of Warranty.

#### 1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Regulatory Agency Sustainability Approvals:
  1. OSHA Compliance:
    - a. Provide safety post for fixed ladders as required by OSHA Standard 1910.27 and as specified in this Section.
      - 1) Meet minimum concentrated load of 200 lbs (90 kg) load.
- B. Qualifications:
  1. Manufacturer:
    - a. Company specializing in manufacturing and installation of components specified in this Section with minimum of five (5) years documented experience.

#### 1.5 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Delivery And Acceptance Requirements:
  1. Make no deliveries to Project until installation is about to commence, or until approved storage area is provided.
- B. Storage And Handling Requirements:
  1. Store materials under cover in dry and clean location off ground. Remove materials that are damaged or otherwise not suitable for installation from Project site and replace with acceptable materials at no additional cost to Owner.
  2. Exercise proper care in handling of Work so as not to injure finished surfaces. Protect Work from damage after it is in place.

#### 1.6 WARRANTY

- A. Roof Hatch:
  1. Provide Manufacturer's standard written warranty for materials and workmanship against defects.
- B. Roof Hatch Safety Railing:
  1. Provide Manufacturer's five (5) year minimum warranty.

### PART 2 - PRODUCTS

#### 2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Type One Acceptable Manufacturers:
  1. Babcock-Davis Hatchways Inc, Arlington, MA [www.babcock-davis.com](http://www.babcock-davis.com).
  2. The Bilco Company, New Haven, CT [www.bilco.com](http://www.bilco.com).
  3. Dur-Red Products, Cudahy, CA [www.dur-red.com](http://www.dur-red.com).
  4. Milcor, Bensenville, IL [www.milcorinc.com](http://www.milcorinc.com).
  5. Equal as approved by Architect before bidding. See Section 01 6200.

#### 2.2 MANUFACTURED UNITS

- A. Roof Hatch:
  1. Design Criteria:

- a. Provide **36 inch (915 mm) x 30 inch (762 mm)** for ladder access.
- b. Provide corrosion resistance finish.
- c.
2. Cover And Curb:
  - a. Cover: **11 ga (3.2 mm)** mill finish aluminum.
  - b. Cover Lining: **18 ga (1.3 mm)** mill finish aluminum cover liner.
  - c. Curb Height: **12 inches (300 mm)** with **3-1/2 inch (89 mm)** flange for mounting, with integral cap flashing.
  - d. Insulate curb and cover with **one inch (25 mm)** rigid fiberglass.
3. Performance Standard: Bilco S-50.

## 2.3 ACCESSORIES

### A. Roof Hatch Safety Railing:

1. Description:
  - a. OSHA compliant Safety Railing for new and retrofit applications.
  - b. Safety railing mounts to new or existing roof hatch curb counterflashing without penetrating membrane.
2. Design Criteria:
  - a. Compliance: OSHA 29 CFR1910.23 for guarding floor and wall openings and holes.
  - b. Self-Closing Gate.
  - c.
3. Basis of Design: Babcock-Davis model BSRCA 36x30 FG

### B. Safety Post For Fixed Ladders:

1. Description:
  - a. Safety post for fixed vertical ladders used with roof hatches.
  - b. Telescoping post permanently mounts to top two (2) rungs of fixed ladder providing positive hand-hold and enabling user to enter or exit roof hatch in upright and balanced position.
  - c. Post locks automatically when fully extended.
2. Comply with requirements of Regulatory Agency Sustainability Approvals as specified in Quality Assurance in Part 1 of this specification.
3. Finish: Hot dip galvanized or mill finish aluminum.
4. Type One Acceptable Manufacturers:
  - a. Safety Post by Babcock-Davis Hatchways Inc, Arlington, MA [www.babcock-davis.com](http://www.babcock-davis.com).
  - b. LadderUP Safety Post (Model LU-4) by The Bilco Company, New Haven, CT [www.bilco.com](http://www.bilco.com).
  - c. Extend-A-Rail (Model ER-1) by Precision Ladders, LLC, Morristown, TN [www.precisionladders.com](http://www.precisionladders.com).
  - d. Equal as approved by Architect before bidding. See Section 01 6200.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 EXAMINATION

#### A. Verification of Conditions:

1. Verify areas and conditions under which roof hatches is to be located and identify conditions detrimental to proper or timely completion.
2. Verify deck, cubs, roof membrane, base flashing and other items affecting Work of this section are in place and positioned correctly.
3. Verify dimensions and tolerances.
  - a. Report unsatisfactory conditions in writing to Architect.
  - b. Commencement of Work by installer is considered acceptance of substrate.



**3.2 INSTALLATION**

- A. Follow Manufacturer's instructions for installing Roof Hatch, Safety Post, and related accessories and attachments.

**3.3 ADJUSTING**

- A. Test-operate roof hatch with operable components. Clean and lubricate joints and hardware. Adjust for proper operation.

**3.4 CLEANING**

- A. General:
  - 1. Clean exposed surfaces per manufacture's written instructions. Touch up damaged metal coatings.
- B. Waste Management:
  - 1. Disposal:
    - a. Remove debris resulting from work of this Section from roof and site in approved waste receptacle.

**END OF SECTION**

**SECTION 07 9213****ELASTOMERIC JOINT SEALANTS****PART 1 - GENERAL****1.1 SUMMARY**

- A. Includes But Not Limited To:
  - 1. Furnish and install sealants not specified to be furnished and installed under other Sections.
  - 2. Quality of sealants to be used on Project not specified elsewhere, including submittal, material, and installation requirements.
- B. Related Requirements:
  - 1. Furnishing and installing of sealants is specified in Sections specifying work to receive new sealants.
- C. Products Furnished But not Installed Under This Section:
  - 1. Interior Ceramic Tile Joint Sealants:
- D. Related Requirements:
  - 1. Section 09 3013: 'Ceramic Tiling'.

**1.2 REFERENCES**

- A. Definitions:
  - 1. Sealant Types and Classifications:
    - a. ASTM Specifications:
      - 1) Type:
        - a) Type S: Single-component sealant.
        - b) Type M: Multi-component sealant.
      - 2) Grade:
        - a) Grade P: Pourable or self-leveling sealant used for horizontal traffic joints.
        - b) Grade NS: Non-sag or gunnable sealant used for vertical and non-traffic joints.
      - 3) Classes: Represent movement capability in percent of joint width.
        - a) Class 100/50: Sealant that, when tested for adhesion or cohesion under cyclic movement shall withstand of at least 100 percent increase and decrease of at least 50 percent of joint width as measured at time of application.
        - b) Class 50: Sealant that, when tested for adhesion or cohesion under cyclic movement shall withstand increase and decrease of at least 50 percent of joint width as measured at time of application.
        - c) Class 25: Sealant that, when tested for adhesion or cohesion under cyclic movement shall withstand increase and decrease of at least 25 percent of joint width as measured at time of application.
        - d) Class 12: Sealant that, when tested for adhesion and cohesion under cyclic movement shall withstand increase and decrease of at least 12 percent of joint width as measured at time of application.
      - 4) Use:
        - a) T (Traffic): Sealant designed for use in joints in pedestrian and vehicular traffic areas such as walkways, plazas, decks and parking garages.
        - b) NT (Non-Traffic): Sealant designed for use in joints in non-traffic areas.
        - c) I (Immersion): Sealant that meets bond requirements when tested by immersion (Immersion rated sealant applications require primer).
        - d) M (Mortar): Sealant that meets bond requirements when tested on mortar specimens.

- e) G (Glass): Sealant that meets bond requirements when tested on glass specimens.
  - f) A (Aluminum): Sealant that meets bond requirements when tested on aluminum specimens.
  - g) O (Other): Sealant that meets bond requirements when tested on substrates other than standard substrates, being glass, aluminum, mortar.
2. Silicone: Any member of family of polymeric products whose molecular backbone is made up of alternating silicon and oxygen atoms and which has pendant hydrocarbon groups attached to silicon atoms. Used primarily as a sealant. Offers excellent resistance to water and large variations in temperature (minus 100 deg F to + 600 deg F) (minus 73.3 deg C to + 316 deg C).

B. Reference Standards:

- 1. ASTM International:
  - a. ASTM C920-18, 'Standard Specification for Elastomeric Joint Sealants'.
  - b. ASTM C1193-16, 'Standard Guide for Use of Joint Sealants'.
  - c. ASTM C1330-18, 'Standard Specification for Cylindrical Sealant Backing for Use with Cold Liquid Applied Sealants'.
  - d. ASTM C1481-12(2017) 'Standard Guide for Use of Joint Sealants with Exterior Insulation & Finish Systems (EIFS)'.
  - e. ASTM D5893/D5893M-16, 'Standard Specification for Cold Applied, Single Component, Chemically Curing Silicone Joint Sealant for Portland Cement Concrete Pavements'.

### 1.3 ADMINISTRATIVE REQUIREMENTS

A. Scheduling:

- 1. Schedule work so waterproofing, water repellents and preservative finishes are installed after sealants, unless sealant manufacturer approves otherwise in writing.
- 2. Ensure sealants are cured before covering with other materials.

### 1.4 SUBMITTALS

A. Action Submittals:

- 1. Product Data:
  - a. Manufacturer's specifications and other data needed to prove compliance with the specified requirements.
  - b. Manufacturer's literature for each Product.
  - c. Schedule showing joints requiring sealants. Show also backing and primer to be used.

B. Informational Submittals:

- 1. Certificates:
  - a. Manufacturer's Certificate:
    - 1) Certify products are suitable for intended use and products meet or exceed specified requirements.
    - 2) Certificate from Manufacturer indicating date of manufacture.
- 2. Manufacturers' Instructions:
  - a. Manufacturer's installation recommendations for each Product.
  - b. Manufacturer's installation for completing sealant intersections when different materials are joined.

### 1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Qualifications:

- 1. Manufacturer: Company specializing in manufacturing products specified in this section with minimum ten (10) years documented experience.
- 2. Applicator Qualifications:
  - a. Company specializing in performing work of this section.

- b. Provide if requested, reference of projects with minimum three (3) years documented experience, minimum three (3) successfully completed projects of similar scope and complexity, and approved by manufacturer.
  - c. Designate one (1) individual as project foreman who shall be on site at all times during installation.
- B. Preconstruction Testing:
1. Pre-construction testing is not required when sealant manufacturer can furnish data acceptable to Architect based on previous testing for materials matching those of the Work.
- C. Mockups:
1. Provide mockups including sealant and joint accessories to illustrate installation quality and color if requested by Architect or Project Manager.
    - a. Incorporate accepted mockup as part of Work.

## 1.6 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Delivery and Acceptance Requirements:
1. Deliver and keep in original containers until ready for use.
  2. Inspect for damage or deteriorated materials.
- B. Storage and Handling Requirements:
1. Handle, store, and apply materials in compliance with applicable regulations and material safety data sheets (MSDS).
  2. Handle to prevent inclusion of foreign matter, damage by water, or breakage.
  3. Store in a cool dry location, but never under 40 deg F (4 deg C) or subjected to sustained temperatures exceeding 90 deg F (32 deg C) or as per Manufacturer's written recommendations.
  4. Do not use sealants that have exceeded shelf life of product.

## 1.7 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Ambient Conditions:
1. Do not install sealant during inclement weather or when such conditions are expected. Allow wet surfaces to dry.
  2. Follow Manufacturer's temperature recommendations for installing sealants.

## 1.8 WARRANTY

- A. Manufacturer Warranty:
1. Signed warranties against adhesive and cohesive failure of sealant and against infiltration of water and air through sealed joint for period of three (3) years from date of Substantial Completion.
    - a. Manufacturer's standard warranty covering sealant materials.
    - b. Applicator's standard warranty covering workmanship.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 SYSTEMS

- A. Manufacturers:
1. Manufacturer Contact List:
    - a. Dow Corning Corp., Midland, MI [www.dowcorning.com](http://www.dowcorning.com).
    - b. Franklin International, Inc. Columbus, OH [www.titebond.com](http://www.titebond.com).
    - c. GE Sealants & Adhesives (see Momentive Performance Materials Inc.).

- d. Laticrete International Inc., Bethany, CT [www.laticrete.com](http://www.laticrete.com).
- e. Momentive Performance Materials Inc. (formally GE Sealants & Adhesives), Huntersville, NC [www.ge.com/silicones](http://www.ge.com/silicones).
- f. Sherwin-Williams, Cleveland, OH [www.sherwin-williams.com](http://www.sherwin-williams.com).
- g. Sika Corporation, Lyndhurst, NJ [www.sikaconstruction.com](http://www.sikaconstruction.com) or Sika Canada Inc, Pointe Claire, QC [www.sika.ca](http://www.sika.ca).
- h. Tremco, Beachwood, OH [www.tremcosealants.com](http://www.tremcosealants.com) or Tremco Ltd, Toronto, ON (800) 363-3213.

**B. Materials:**

1. Design Criteria:

- a. Compliance: Meet or exceed requirements of these standards:
  - 1) ASTM C920: Elastomeric joint sealant performance standard.
  - 2) ASTM D5893/D5893M: Silicone Joint Sealant for Concrete Pavements.
- b. Comply with Manufacturer's ambient condition requirements.
- c. Sealants must meet Manufacturer's shelf-life requirements.
- d. Sealants must adhere to and be compatible with specified substrates.
- e. Sealants shall be stable when exposed to UV, joint movements, and environment prevailing at project location.
- f. Primers (Concrete, stone, masonry, and other nonporous surfaces typically do not require a primer. Aluminum and other nonporous surfaces except glass require use of a primer. Installer Option to use Adhesion Test to determine if primer is required or use primer called out in related sections):
  - 1) Adhesion Test:
    - a) Apply silicone sealant to small area and perform adhesion test to determine if primer is required to achieve adequate adhesion. If necessary, apply primer at rate and in accordance with Manufacturer's instructions. See 'Field Quality Control' in Part 3 of this specification for Adhesive Test.
  - 2) If Primer required, shall not stain and shall be compatible with substrates.
  - 3) Allow primer to dry before applying sealant.

2. Sealants At Exterior Building Elements:

- a. Description:
  - 1) Weathersealing expansion, contraction, perimeter, and other movement joints which may include all or part of the following for project:
    - a) Aluminum entrance perimeters and thresholds.
    - b) Columns.
    - c) Connections.
    - d) Curtainwalls.
    - e) Door frames.
    - f) EIFS to metal joints.
    - g) Joints and cracks around windows.
    - h) Louvers.
    - i) Masonry.
    - j) Parapet caps.
    - k) Wall penetrations.
    - l) Other joints necessary to seal off building from outside air and moisture.
- b. Design Criteria:
  - 1) Meet following standards for Sealant:
    - a) ASTM C920: Type S, Grade NS, Class 50 Use NT, M, G, A.
  - 2) Limitations:
    - a) Do not use below-grade applications.
    - b) Do not use on surfaces that are continuously immersed or in contact with water.
    - c) Do not use on wet, damp, frozen or contaminated surfaces.
    - d) Do not use on building materials that bleed oils, plasticizers or solvents, green or partially vulcanized rubber gaskets or tapes.
  - 3) Color:
    - a) Architect to select from Manufacturer's standard colors.
    - b) Match building elements instead of window (do not use white that shows dirt easily).
- c. Category Four Approved Products. See Section 01 6200 for definitions of Categories:

- 1) Dow Corning:
  - a) Primer: 1200 Prime Coat.
  - b) Sealant: 791 Silicone Weatherproofing Sealant.
- 2) Momentive Performance Materials (formerly, GE Sealants & Adhesives):
  - a) Primer: SS4044 Primer.
  - b) Sealant: GE SCS2000 SilPruf Silicone Sealant & Adhesive.
- 3) Tremco:
  - a) Primer:
    - (1) Metal surface: No. 20 primer.
    - (2) Porous surfaces: No. 23 primer.
  - b) Sealant: Spectrum 1 Silicone Sealant.
3. Sealants At Exterior Sheet Metal And Miscellaneous:
  - a. Description:
    - 1) Weathersealing expansion, contraction, perimeter, and other movement joints which may include all or part of the following for project:
      - a) Flashings.
      - b) Gutters.
      - c) Penetrations in soffits and fascias.
      - d) Roof vents and flues.
      - e) Lightning protection components.
  - b. Design Criteria:
    - 1) Meet following standards for Sealant:
      - a) ASTM C920: Type S Grade NS, Class 25 (min) Use NT, M, G, A and O.
    - 2) Limitations:
      - a) Do not use below-grade applications.
      - b) Do not use on surfaces that are continuously immersed or in contact with water.
      - c) Do not use on wet, damp, frozen or contaminated surfaces.
      - d) Do not use on building materials that bleed oils, plasticizers or solvents, green or partially vulcanized rubber gaskets or tapes.
  - c. Category Four Approved Products. See Section 01 6200 for definitions of Categories:
    - 1) Dow Corning: 790 Silicone Building Sealant.
    - 2) Momentive Performance Materials (formerly, GE Sealants & Adhesives): GE SCS2350 Silicone Elastomeric Sealant.
    - 3) Tremco: Tremsil 600 Silicone Sealant.
4. Sealants At Expansion Joints in Exterior Concrete (Aprons, Entryway Slabs, Mowstrips, Retaining Walls, Sidewalks):
  - a. Expansion Joints:
    - 1) Design Criteria:
      - a) Meet following standards for Sealant:
        - (1) ASTM C920: Type S, Grade NS, Class 100/50 Use T, NT, M, G, A, and O.
    - 2) Sealant required at expansion for following areas:
      - a) Between entryway slabs and building foundations.
      - b) Between sidewalks and building foundations.
      - c) Miscellaneous vertical applications.
    - 3) Sealant NOT required at expansion joints for following areas:
      - a) Within aprons and where aprons abut building foundations and sidewalks.
      - b) Within mowstrips and where mowstrips abut building foundations and sidewalks.
      - c) Within sidewalks.
    - 4) Category Four Approved Products. See Section 01 6200 for definitions of Categories:
      - a) Dow Corning:
        - (1) Primer: 1200 Prime Coat.
        - (2) Sealant: 790 Silicone Building Sealant.
      - b) Sika:
        - (1) Primer: Sikasil Primer-2100.
        - (2) Sealant: Sikasil-728 NS Non-Sag Silicone Sealant.
  - b. Penetrations thru Concrete Walls:
    - 1) Design Criteria:
      - a) Meet following standards for Sealant:
        - (1) ASTM C920: Type S, Grade NS, Class 100/50 Use T, NT, M, G, A, and O.
    - 2) Category Four Approved Products. See Section 01 6200 for definitions of Categories:

- a) Dow Corning:
    - (1) Primer: 1200 Prime Coat.
    - (2) Sealant: 790 Silicone Building Sealant.
  - b) Sika:
    - (1) Primer: Sikasil Primer-2100.
    - (2) Sealant: Sikasil-728 NS Non-Sag Silicone Sealant.
- 5. Sealants At Control Joints in Exterior Concrete (Aprons, Entryway Slabs, Mowstrips, Retaining Walls, Sidewalks):
  - a. Control Joints:
    - 1) Design Criteria:
      - a) Meet following standards for Sealant:
        - (1) ASTM C920, Type S, Grade P, Class 100/50; Use T, M, G, A, O.
    - 2) Sealant required at control joints in following areas:
      - a) Retaining walls.
      - b) Miscellaneous vertical applications.
    - 3) Sealant is NOT required at control joints, unless needed to protect moisture sensitive soils or by Contract Drawings, in following areas:
      - a) Within aprons.
      - b) Within mowstrips.
      - c) Within sidewalks.
      - d) Within entryway slabs.
    - 4) Category Four Approved Products. See Section 01 6200 for definitions of Categories:
      - a) Dow Corning:
        - (1) Primer: 1200 Prime Coat.
        - (2) Sealant: 890-SL Silicone Building Sealant.
      - b) Sika:
        - (1) Primer: Primer: Sikasil Primer-2100.
        - (2) Sealant: Sikasil-728 SL Self-leveling Silicone Sealant.
- 6. Sealants At Exterior Concrete Waterways – Flat Drainage Structures (Waterways):
  - a. Expansion Joints and Control Joints:
    - 1) Description:
      - a) One component (part) self-leveling silicon material that cures to ultra-low modulus silicone rubber upon exposure to atmospheric moisture.
      - b) Cured silicone rubber remains flexible over entire temperature range expected in pavement applications.
    - 2) Design Criteria:
      - a) Sealant is required at following areas:
        - (2) Within flat drainage structures and at joints between flat drainage structures and other concrete elements.
      - b) Meet following standards for Sealant: Self-leveling: ASTM D-5893; ASTM C920, Type S, Grade P, Class 100/50; Use T, M, G, A, O.
    - 3) Category Four Approved Products. See Section 01 6200 for definitions of Categories:
      - a) Dow Corning:
        - (1) Primer: 1200 Prime Coat.
        - (2) Sealant: 890-SL Silicone Building Sealant.
      - b) Sika:
        - (1) Primer: Primer: Sikasil Primer-2100.
        - (2) Sealant: Sikasil-728 SL Self-leveling Silicone Sealant.
- 7. Sealants At Curbs And Gutters:
  - a. Expansion Joints and Control Joints:
    - 1) Description:
      - a) Effective for sealing transverse contraction and expansion joints, longitudinal, center line and shoulder joints in Portland cement concrete.
      - b) One component (part) non-sag silicone material that cures to low modulus, silicone rubber upon exposure to atmospheric moisture. May be applied over wide temperature range.
    - 2) Design Criteria:
      - a) Expansion joint sealant is required in following areas:
        - (1) Within curbs and gutters at approved layout locations.

- b) Meet following standards for Sealant: Non-sag: ASTM C920: Type S, Grade NS, Class 100/50, Use T, NT.
    - 3) Category Four Approved Products. See Section 01 6200 for definitions of Categories:
      - a) Dow Corning:
        - (1) Primer: 1200 Prime Coat.
        - (2) Sealant: 888 Silicone Joint Sealant.
      - b) Sika:
        - (1) Primer: Primer: Sikasil Primer-2100.
        - (2) Sikasil-728 NS Non-Sag Silicone Sealant.
- 8. Sealants At Concrete Paving:
  - a. Expansion Joints and Control Joints (as required in Section 32 1313):
    - 1) Description:
      - a) One component (part) self-leveling silicon material that cures to ultra-low modulus silicone rubber upon exposure to atmospheric moisture.
      - b) Cured silicone rubber remains flexible over entire temperature range expected in pavement applications.
    - 2) Design Criteria:
      - a) Sealant is required at approved layout locations.
      - b) Meet following standards for Sealant: Self-leveling: ASTM C-920, Type S, Grade P, Class 100/50; Use T.
    - 3) Category Four Approved Products. See Section 01 6200 for definitions of Categories:
      - a) Dow Corning:
        - (1) Primer: 1200 Prime Coat.
        - (2) Sealant: 890-SL Silicone Building Sealant.
      - b) Sika:
        - (1) Primer: Primer: Sikasil Primer-2100.
        - (2) Sealant: Sikasil-728 SL Self-leveling Silicone Sealant.
- 9. Sealants At Precast Concrete Cap and Joint Covers (if Contractor Option ONE was selected in Section 03 4800):
  - a. Description:
    - 1) Soft lead strip, when set and bedded in sealant, form cap which assures permanent elastic seal for any masonry joint as specified in Section 03 4800.
  - b. Design Criteria:
    - 1) Meet following standards for Sealant:
      - a) ASTM C920: Type S, Grade NS, Class 50 Use A, G, M.
      - b) Strips should be of sufficient size to cover the joint width, plus percentage allowance for anticipated joint movement, plus **1/4 inch (6.4 mm)**.
  - c. Category Four Approved Products. See Section 01 6200 for definitions of Categories:
    - 1) Dow Corning:
      - a) Primer: 1200 Prime Coat.
      - b) Sealant: 791 Silicone Weatherproofing Sealant.
    - 2) Momentive Performance Materials (formerly, GE Sealants & Adhesives):
      - a) Primer: SS4044 Primer.
      - b) Sealant: GE SCS2000 SilPruf Silicone Sealant & Adhesive.
    - 3) Sika:
      - a) Primer: Sikasil Primer-2100.
      - b) Sealant: Sikasil-728 NS Non-Sag Silicone Sealant.
    - 4) Tremco:
      - a) Primer:
        - (1) Metal surface: No. 20 primer.
        - (2) Porous surfaces: No. 23 primer.
      - b) Sealant: Spectrum 1 Silicone Sealant.
- 10. General Interior Sealants:
  - a. General:
    - 1) Inside jambs and heads of exterior door frames.
    - 2) Both sides of interior door frames.
    - 3) Inside perimeters of windows.
    - 4) Miscellaneous gaps between substrates.
  - b. Design Criteria:
    - 1) Meet ASTM C920, Type S, Grade NS, NT, and Class 25 test requirements.



- 2) 100 percent silicone sealant.
  - c. Non-Paintable Sealant (Installer Option A):
    - 1) Category Four Approved Product. See Section 01 6200 for definitions of Categories:
      - a) Dow Corning: Tub, Tile, And Ceramic Silicone Sealant.
      - b) Laticrete: Latasil Silicone Sealant.
      - c) Momentive Performance Materials (formerly, GE Sealants & Adhesives): GE SCS2800 SilGlaze II Silicone Sealant.
      - d) Sherwin Williams: White Lightning Silicone Ultra Low Odor Window and Door Sealant.
      - e) Tremco: Tremsil 200 Silicone Sealant.
      - f) Franklin International: Titebond 2601 (White) 2611 (Clear) 100% Silicone Sealant.
  - d. Paintable Sealant (Installer Option B):
    - 1) Category Four Approved Product. See Section 01 6200 for definitions of Categories:
      - a) Momentive Performance Materials (formerly, GE Sealants & Adhesives): GE SCS7000 Paintable Silicone Sealant.
11. Sealants For Interior Joints:
- a. General:
    - 1) Countertops and backsplash to wall.
    - 2) Sinks and lavatories to countertops.
    - 3) Joints between plumbing fixtures and other substrates.
  - b. Interior Ceramic Tile Joints are furnished in Section 07 9213 and installed in Section 09 3013 'Ceramic Tiling' including the following:
    - 1) Ceramic tile inside corners.
    - 2) Ceramic tile and paver tile joints.
  - c. Description:
    - 1) One-part acetoxy cure silicone sealant with fungicides to resist mold and mildew.
  - d. Design Criteria:
    - 1) Meet ASTM C920, Type S, Grade NS, NT, and Class 25 test requirements.
    - 2) 100 percent silicone sealant.
  - e. Color: As selected by Architect from Manufacturer's standard colors.
  - f. Category Four Approved Products. See Section 01 6200 for definitions of Categories:
    - 1) Dow Corning: Tub, Tile, And Ceramic Silicone Sealant.
    - 2) Laticrete: Latasil Tile and Stone Silicone Sealant.
    - 3) Momentive Performance Materials (formerly, GE Sealants & Adhesives): GE SCS1700 Sanitary Silicone Sealant.
    - 4) Tremco: Tremsil 200 Silicone Sealant.

## 2.2 ACCESSORIES

- A. Bond Breaker Tape:
  - 1. Pressure sensitive tape as by Sealant Manufacturer to suit application.
  - 2. Provide tape to prevent adhesion to joint fillers or joint surfaces at back of joint and allow sealant movement.
- B. Joint Backing:
  - 1. Comply with ASTM C1330.
  - 2. Flexible closed cell, non-gassing polyurethane or polyolefin rod or bond breaker tape as recommended by Sealant Manufacturer for joints being sealed.
  - 3. Oversized 25 to 50 percent larger than joint width.
- C. Joint Cleaner:
  - 1. Non-corrosive and non-staining type as recommended by Sealant Manufacturer, compatible with joint forming materials.
- D. Masking Tape:
  - 1. Non-staining, non-absorbent tape product compatible with joint sealants and adjacent joint surfaces.

## **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

### **3.1 EXAMINATION**

- A. Verification Of Conditions:
1. Examine substrate surfaces and joint openings are ready to receive Work.
    - a. Verify each sealant is compatible for use with joint substrates.
    - b. Verify joint surfaces are clean and dry.
    - c. Ensure concrete surfaces are fully cured.
  2. Sealants provided shall meet Manufacturer's shelf-life requirements.
  3. Notify Architect of unsuitable conditions in writing.
    - a. Do not proceed until unsatisfactory conditions are corrected.
  4. Commencement of Work by installer is considered acceptance of substrate.

### **3.2 PREPARATION**

- A. Surface Preparation:
1. Surfaces shall be clean, dry, free of dust, oil, grease, dew, frost or incompatible sealers, paints or coatings that may interfere with adhesion. Prepare substrates in accordance with Manufacturer's instructions:
    - a. Porous surfaces: Clean by mechanical methods to expose sound surface free of contamination and laitance followed by blasting with oil-free compressed air.
    - b. Nonporous surfaces: Use two-cloth solvent wipe in accordance with ASTM C1193. Allow solvent to evaporate prior to sealant application.
    - c. High-pressure water cleaning: Exercise care that water does not enter through failed joints.
    - d. Primers:
      - 1) Primers enhance adhesion ability.
      - 2) Use of primers is not a substitution for poor joint preparation.
      - 3) Primers should be used always in horizontal application where there is ponding water.
  2. Field test joints in inconspicuous location.
    - a. Verify joint preparation and primer required to obtain optimum adhesion of sealants to joint substrate.
    - b. When test indicates sealant adhesion failure, modify joint preparation primer, or both and retest until joint passes sealant adhesion test.
  3. Masking: Apply masking tape as required to protect adjacent surfaces and to ensure straight bead line and facilitate cleaning.
- B. Joints:
1. Prepare joints in accordance with ASTM C1193.
    - a. Clean joint surfaces of contaminants capable of affecting sealant bond to joint surface using Manufacturer's recommended instructions for joint preparation methods.
    - b. Remove dirt, dust, oils, wax, paints, and contamination capable of affecting primer and sealant bond.
    - c. Clean concrete joint surfaces to remove curing agents and form release agents.
- C. Protection:
1. Protect elements surrounding the Work of this section from damage or disfiguration.

### **3.3 APPLICATION**

- A. General:
1. Apply silicone sealant in accordance with Manufacturer's instructions.
  2. Do not use damaged or deteriorated materials.
  3. Install primer and sealants in accordance with ASTM C1193 and Manufacturer's instructions.
  4. Apply primer where required for sealant adhesion.
  5. Install sealants immediately after joint preparation.

6. Do not use silicone sealant as per the following:
  - a. Apply caulking/sealant at temperatures below 40 deg F (4 deg C).
  - b. Below-grade applications.
  - c. Brass and copper surfaces.
  - d. Materials bleeding oils, plasticizers, and solvents.
  - e. Structural glazing and adhesive.
  - f. Surfaces to be immersed in water for prolonged time.
  
- B. Joint Backing:
  1. Install joint backing to maintain sealant joint ratios recommended by Manufacturer.
  2. Install without gaps, twisting, stretching, or puncturing backing material. Use gage to ensure uniform depth to achieve correct profile, coverage, and performance.
  3. Rod for open joints shall be at least 1-1/2 times width of open joint and of thickness to give solid backing. Backing shall fill up joint so depth of sealant bite is no more than 3/8 inch (9.5 mm) deep.
  
- C. Bond Breaker:
  1. Install bond breaker where joint backing is not used or where backing is not feasible.
    - a. Apply bond-breaker tape in shallow joints as recommended by Sealant Manufacturer.
  
- D. Sealant:
  1. Apply sealant with hand-caulking gun with nozzle of proper size to fit joints. Use sufficient pressure to insure full contact to both sides of joint to full depth of joint. Apply sealants in vertical joints from bottom to top.
  2. Fill joint opening to full and proper configuration.
  3. Apply in continuous operation.
  4. Tool joints immediately after application of sealant if required to achieve full bedding to substrate or to achieve smooth sealant surface. Tool joints in opposite direction from application direction, i.e., in vertical joints, from the top down. Do not 'wet tool' sealants.
  5. Depth of sealant bite shall be 1/4 inch (6 mm) minimum and 1/2 inch (12.7 mm) maximum, but never more than one half or less than one fourth joint width.
  
- E. Caulk gaps between painted or coated substrates and unfinished or pre-finished substrates. Caulk gaps larger than 3/16 inch (5 mm) between painted or coated substrates.

### 3.4 TOLERANCES

- A. Provide joint tolerances in accordance with Manufacturer's printed instructions.

### 3.5 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Adhesion Test (Installer Option to use adhesion test to determine if primer is required).
  1. Perform adhesion tests in accordance with Manufacturer's instructions and ASTM C1193, Method A, Field-Applied Sealant joint Hand-Pull Tab:
    - a. Perform five (5) tests for first 1,000 linear feet (300 meters) of applied silicone sealant and one (1) test for each 1,000 linear feet (300 meters) seal thereafter or perform one (1) test per floor per building elevation minimum.
    - b. For sealants applied between dissimilar materials, test both sides of joints.
  2. Sealants failing adhesion test shall be removed, substrates cleaned, sealants re-installed, and re-testing performed.
  3. Maintain test log and submit report to Architect indicating tests, locations, dates, results, and remedial actions.

### 3.6 CLEANING

- A. Remove masking tape and excess sealant.

- B. Clean adjacent materials, which have been soiled, immediately (before setting) as recommended by Manufacturer.
- C. Waste Management: Dispose of products in accordance with manufacturer's recommendation.

**END OF SECTION**

**SECTION 07 9219****ACOUSTICAL JOINT SEALANTS****PART 1 - GENERAL****1.1 SUMMARY**

- A. Includes But Not Limited To:
1. Quality of sealants to be used at perimeters of and penetrations through acoustically insulated walls and associated ceilings.
- B. Related Requirements:
1. Section 09 2900: Furnishing and installing of acoustical sealants.

**1.2 REFERENCES**

- A. Definitions:
1. Sealant. Sealants are generally used in applications where elastic properties are needed while adhesives are generally used in applications where bonding strength and rigidity are needed. With technology advancements both sealants and adhesives can be used interchangeably depending on the applications performance requirements.
  2. Sealant Types and Classes:
    - a. Federal Specifications:
      - 1) Type I: Self-leveling, pour grade.
      - 2) Type II: Non-sag, gun grade.
      - 3) Type NS: Non-sag, gun grade.
      - 4) Class A: +25 percent, -25 percent expansion – contraction.
    - b. ASTM Specifications:
      - 1) Type S: Single-component sealant.
      - 2) Type M: Multi-component sealant.
      - 3) Grade P: Pourable or self-leveling sealant for joints on horizontal surfaces.
      - 4) Grade NS: Non-sag or gunnable sealant for joints in vertical surfaces.
      - 5) Class 25: Sealant that, when tested for adhesion or cohesion under cyclic movement shall withstand increase and decrease of at least 25 percent of joint width as measured at time of application.
      - 6) Class 12: Sealant that, when tested for adhesion and cohesion under cyclic movement shall withstand increase and decrease of at least 12 percent of joint width as measured at time of application.
      - 7) T: Sealant designed for use in joints in pedestrian and vehicular traffic areas such as walkways, plazas, decks and parking garages.
      - 8) NT: Sealant designed for use in joints in non-traffic areas.
      - 9) M: Sealant will remain adhered to mortar.
      - 10) G: Sealant will remain adhered to glass.
      - 11) A: Sealant will remain adhered to aluminum.
      - 12) O: Sealant will remain adhered to substrates other than glass, aluminum, mortar.
- B. Reference Standards:
1. ASTM International:
    - a. ASTM C834-17, 'Standard Specification for Latex Sealants'.
    - b. ASTM C919-18, 'Standard Practice for Use of Sealants in Acoustical Applications'.
    - c. ASTM C1193-16, 'Standard Guide for Use of Joint Sealants'.
    - d. ASTM E84-18b, 'Standard Test Method for Surface Burning Characteristics of Building Materials'.
    - e. ASTM E90-09(2016), 'Standard Test Method for Laboratory Measurement of Airborne Sound Transmission Loss of Building Partitions and Elements'.

2. Underwriters Laboratories, Inc.:
  - a. UL 723: 'Standard for Safety Test for Surface Burning Characteristics of Building Materials'; (11th edition - 2018)'

### 1.3 SUBMITTALS

- A. Action Submittals:
  1. Product Data:
    - a. Manufacturer's literature for each Product.
- B. Informational Submittals:
  1. Certificates:
    - a. Manufacturer's Certificate:
      - 1) Certify products are suitable for intended use and products meet or exceed specified requirements.
      - 2) Certificate from Manufacturer indicating date of manufacture.
  2. Manufacturers' Instructions:
    - a. Manufacturer's installation recommendations for each Product.

### 1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Regulatory Agency Sustainability Approvals:
  1. Surface-Burning Characteristics:
    - a. Class A flame spread rating in accordance with ASTM E84 or UL 723 Type 1.
      - 1) Class A (Flame spread index 0-25; Smoke-developed index 0-450).

### 1.5 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Delivery And Acceptance Requirements:
  1. Deliver and keep in original containers until ready for use.
  2. Inspect for damage or deteriorated materials.
- B. Storage And Handling Requirements:
  1. Handle to prevent inclusion of foreign matter, damage by water, or breakage.
  2. Store in cool, dry location, and at temperatures never under 40 deg F (4 deg C) nor exceeding 80 deg F (26.7 C).

### 1.6 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Ambient Conditions:
  1. Do not apply caulking at temperatures below 40 deg F (4 deg C).

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Sealants:
  1. Design Criteria:
    - a. Meet requirements of ASTM C834.
    - b. Meet Class A flame spread rating.
  2. Category Four Approved Products. See Section 01 6200 for definitions of Categories:
    - a. OSI Pro-Series SC-175 Draft & Acoustical Sound Sealant by OSI Sealants Inc, Mentor, OH [www.osisealants.com](http://www.osisealants.com).

- b. QuietZone Acoustic Caulk by Owens Corning, Toledo, OH [www.owenscorning.com](http://www.owenscorning.com).
- c. Acoustical Sealant by Tremco, Beachwood, OH [www.tremcosealants.com](http://www.tremcosealants.com) or Toronto, ON (800) 363-3213.
- d. Acoustical Sound Sealant by Titebond.
- e. Acoustical Sealant by U S Gypsum, Chicago, IL [www.usg.com](http://www.usg.com).

## 2.2 ACCESSORIES

- A. Bond Breaker: Pressure sensitive tape recommended by Sealant Manufacturer to suit application.
- B. Joint Backing:
  - 1. Flexible closed cell polyurethane or polyolefin rod or bond breaker tape as recommended by Sealant Manufacturer for joints being sealed.
  - 2. Oversized 25 to 50 percent larger than joint width.
- C. Joint Cleaner: Non-corrosive and non-staining type, recommended by Sealant Manufacturer, compatible with joint forming materials.
- D. Masking Tape: Pressure sensitive tape recommended by Sealant Manufacturer to suit application.
- E. Primer: Non-staining type, type, recommended by Sealant Manufacturer to suit application.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Verification Of Conditions:
  - 1. Examine substrate surfaces and joint openings are ready to receive Work.
  - 2. Sealants provided shall meet Manufacturer's shelf-life requirements.
  - 3. Notify Architect of unsuitable conditions in writing.
    - a. Do not proceed until unsatisfactory conditions are corrected.
  - 4. Commencement of Work by installer is considered acceptance of substrate.

### 3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Surface Preparation:
  - 1. Prepare joints in accordance with ASTM C1193 and Manufacturer's instructions.
  - 2. Clean joint surfaces to remove dirt, dust, oils, wax, paints, and other contamination capable of affecting primer and sealant bond.
  - 3. Protect elements surrounding the Work of this section from damage or disfiguration. Apply masking tape to adjacent surfaces when required to prevent damage to finishes from sealant installation.
- B. Surface Preparation:
  - 1. Clean joint surfaces of residual sealant and other contaminates capable of affecting sealant bond to joint surface.
  - 2. Surfaces shall be clean, dry, and free of dust, oil, grease, dew, or frost.

### 3.3 INSTALLATION

- A. General:
  - 1. Do not use damaged or deteriorated materials.
  - 2. Install primer and sealants in accordance with ASTM C1193 and Manufacturer's instructions where required for sealant adhesion.

3. Install sealants immediately after joint preparation.
  4. Do not apply caulking/sealant at temperatures below 40 deg F (4 deg C).
- B. Joint Backing:
1. Rod for open joints shall be at least 1-1/2 times width of open joint and of thickness to give solid backing. Backing shall fill up joint so depth of sealant bite is no more than 3/8 inch (9.5 mm) deep.
  2. Apply bond-breaker tape in shallow joints as recommended by Sealant Manufacturer.
- C. Install at perimeter joints and mechanical and electrical penetrations in sound insulated rooms. Apply sealant with hand-caulking gun with nozzle of proper size to fit joints. Use sufficient pressure to insure full contact to both sides of joint to full depth of joint.
- D. Tool joints immediately after application of sealant if required to achieve full bedding to substrate or to achieve smooth sealant surface.
- E. Depth of sealant bite shall be 1/4 inch (6 mm) minimum and 1/2 inch (12.7 mm) maximum, but never more than one half or less than one fourth joint width.

### 3.4 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Inspection:
1. Examine sealant joints to verify compliance with Contract Document requirements.
- B. Non-Conforming Work. Non-conforming work as covered in the General Conditions applies, but is not limited to the following:
1. Sealant material found to be contaminated or damaged or inadequate preparation of substrate results in deficiencies in joint sealant adhesion is considered defective or not complying with Contract Document requirements.
  2. Correct any work found defective or not-complying with Contract Document requirements at no additional cost to Owner.

### 3.5 CLEANING

- A. General:
1. Remove sealant from adjacent surfaces in accordance with Sealant Manufacturer and Substrate Manufacturer recommendations as work progresses.
  2. Remove masking tape and any other foreign material.
  3. Clean adjacent materials that have been soiled immediately (before setting) as recommended by Manufacturer.
- B. Waste Management: Dispose of products in accordance with Sealant Manufacturer's recommendation.

**END OF SECTION**



**SECTION 08 0601****HARDWARE GROUP AND KEYING SCHEDULES****PART 1 - GENERAL****1.1 SUMMARY**

- A. Includes But Not Limited To:
1. Furnish and install door hardware and keying as described in Contract Documents.

**1.2 REFERENCES**

- A. Definitions:
1. Builders Hardware Manufacturer's Association (BHMA) Hardware Functions:
    - a. F75 Passage Latch: Latch bolt operated by lever from either side at all times.
    - b. F76 Privacy Lock: Latch bolt operated by lever from either side. Outside lever locked by push button inside and unlocked by emergency key from outside or rotating lever from inside.
    - c. F81 Office Door Lock: Dead locking latch bolt operated by lever from either side, except when outside lever is locked by turn button in inside lever. When outside lever is locked, latch bolt is operated by key in outside lever or by rotating inside lever. Turn button must be manually rotated to unlock outside lever.
    - d. F84 Classroom Deadlock: Dead locking latch bolt operated by lever from either side, except when outside lever is locked, latch bolt is operated by key in outside lever or by rotating inside lever.
    - e. F86 Utility Space Door Lock: Dead locking latch bolt operated by key in outside lever or by rotating inside lever. Outside lever is always fixed.
    - f. F91 Store Door Lock: Deadlocking latch operated by either lever. Key in either lever locks / unlocks both levers.
    - g. F109 Entrance Lock: Turn/push button locking: Pushing and turning button disengages outside lever, requiring using of key until button is manually unlocked. Push-button locking: Pushing button disengages outside lever until unlocked by key or by turning inside lever. Disengages outside spindle from latch when locked.
    - h. E2142 Deadbolt: Dead bolt operated by key from either side. Bolt automatically dead locks when fully thrown.
    - i. E2152 Deadbolt: Dead bolt operated by key from outside and turn unit from inside. Bolt automatically dead locks when fully thrown.

**1.3 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING**

- A. Delivery And Acceptance Requirements:
1. Materials shall be delivered in original, unopened packages with labels intact.

**PART 2 - HARDWARE GROUPS****2.1 STOREFRONT ENTRY DOORS**

- A. Single Doors:
1. **Group ST1:**
    - a. 1 set: Pivots.
    - b. 1 set: Weatherstrip.
    - c. 1 each: Closer.

- d. 1 each: Exit Door Exit Device.
- e. 1 each: Exit Device with dogging capability and locking cylinder.
- f. 1 each: Pull.
- g. 1 each: Stop.
- h. 1 each: Threshold.
- 2. **Group ST1A:**
  - a. 1 set: Pivots.
  - b. 1 set: Weatherstrip.
  - c. 1 each: Closer.
  - d. 1 each: Exit Door Exit Device.
  - e. 1 each: Kick Plate.
  - f. 1 each: Low-Energy Swing Door Operator.
  - g. 1 each: Pull.
  - h. 1 each: Stop.
  - i. 1 each: Threshold.
- 3. **Group ST2:**
  - a. 1 set: Pivots.
  - b. 1 set: Weatherstrip.
  - c. 1 each: Closer.
  - d. 1 each: Exit Device with dogging capability.
  - e. 1 each: Kick Plate.
  - f. 1 each: Pull.
  - g. 1 each: Stop.
  - h. 1 each: Threshold.
- 4. **Group ST3:**
  - a. 1 set: Pivots.
  - b. 1 set: Weatherstrip.
  - c. 1 each: Closer.
  - d. 1 each: Kick Plate.
  - e. 1 each: Pull.
  - f. 1 each: Push.
  - g. 1 each: Stop.
  - h. 1 each: Threshold.
- 5. **Group ST3A:**
  - a. 1 set: Pivots.
  - b. 1 set: Weatherstrip.
  - c. 1 each: Closer.
  - d. 1 each: Kick Plate.
  - e. 1 each: Low-Energy Swing Door Operator.
  - f. 1 each: Pull.
  - g. 1 each: Push.
  - h. 1 each: Stop.
  - i. 1 each: Threshold.
- 6. **Group ST4:**
  - a. 1 set: Pivots.
  - b. 1 set: Weatherstrip.
  - c. 1 each: Closer (Surface Mounted).
  - d. 1 each: Exit Only Exit Device with no dogging capability
  - e. 1 each: Kick Plate.
  - f. 1 each: Pull.
  - g. 1 each: Stop.
  - h. 1 each: Threshold.

## 2.2 EXTERIOR DOORS

- A. Single Exterior Doors:
  - 1. **Group 3:**
    - a. 1 set: Weatherstrip.
    - b. 1 each: Closer.

- c. 3 each: Hinges.
  - d. 1 each: Lockset Function F86.
  - e. 1 each: Stop.
  - f. 1 each: Threshold.
2. **Group 3A:**
- a. 1 set: Weatherstrip.
  - b. 1 each: Closer.
  - c. 3 each: Hinges.
  - d. 1 each: Lockset Function F81.
  - e. 1 each: Stop.
  - f. 1 each: Threshold.
- B. Exterior Double Doors:
1. **Group 10:**
- a. General:
    - 1) 1 each: Threshold.
    - 2) 1 set: Weatherstrip.
  - b. Active Leaf:
    - 1) 3 each: Hinges.
    - 2) 1 each: Lockset Function F86.
    - 3) 1 each: Stop and Holder.
  - c. Inactive Leaf:
    - 1) 1 each: Dust proof strike.
    - 2) 2 each: Flush Bolts (top and bottom).
    - 3) 3 each: Hinges.
    - 4) 1 each: Stop and Holder.

## 2.3 INTERIOR DOORS

- A. Single Interior Doors:
1. **Group 20C:**
- a. 1 set: Smoke Gaskets.
  - b. 1 each: Closer (required for all CES classrooms).
  - c. 3 each: Hinges.
  - d. 1 each: Lockset Function F109.
  - e. 1 each: Stop .
  - f. 1 each: Kick Plate.
2. **Group 20D:**
- a. 1 set: Smoke Gaskets.
  - b. 1 each: Closer (required for all CES classrooms).
  - c. 3 each: Hinges.
  - d. 1 each: Exit Device Keyed Lever Trim.
  - e. 1 each: Lockset Function F109.
  - f. 1 each: Stop.
  - g. 1 each: Kick Plate.
3. **Group 22:**
- a. 1 set: Smoke Gaskets.
  - b. 3 each: Hinges.
  - c. 1 each: Lockset Function F86.
  - d. 1 each: Stop.
4. **Group 24:**
- a. 1 set: Smoke Gaskets.
  - b. 3 each: Hinges.
  - c. 1 each: Lockset Function F81.
  - d. 1 each: Stop.
5. **Group 25:**
- a. 1 set: Smoke Gaskets.
  - b. 1 each: Closer.
  - c. 3 each: Hinges.

- d. 1 each: Lockset Function F81.
- e. 1 each: Stop.
- 6. **Group 26:**
  - a. 1 set: Smoke Gaskets.
  - b. 1 each: Acoustic Seal.
  - c. 3 each: Hinges.
  - d. 1 each: Lockset Function F81.
  - e. 1 each: Stop.
  - f. 1 each: Threshold.
- 7. **Group 27:**
  - a. 1 set: Smoke Gaskets.
  - b. 1 each: Acoustic Seal.
  - c. 1 each: Closer.
  - d. 3 each: Hinges.
  - e. 1 each: Lockset Function F81.
  - f. 1 each: Stop.
  - g. 1 each: Threshold.
- 8. **Group 28:**
  - a. 1 set: Smoke Gaskets.
  - b. 1 each: Closer.
  - c. 3 each: Hinges.
  - d. 1 each: Kick Plate.
  - e. 1 each: Pull.
  - f. 1 each: Push.
  - g. 1 each: Stop.
- 9. **Group 29:**
  - a. 1 set: Smoke Gaskets.
  - b. 1 each: Closer.
  - c. 3 each: Hinges.
  - d. 1 each: Kick Plate.
  - e. 1 each: Latchset Function F75.
  - f. 1 each: Stop.
- 10. **Group 31:**
  - a. 1 set: Smoke Gaskets.
  - b. 1 each: Closer.
  - c. 1 each: Cylinder.
  - d. 1 each: Exit Device.
  - e. 3 each: Hinges.
  - f. 1 each: Kick Plate.
  - g. 1 each: Stop and Holder.
- 11. **Group 37:**
  - a. 1 set: Smoke Gaskets.
  - b. 1 each: Acoustic Seal.
  - c. 1 each: Closer.
  - d. 3 each: Hinges.
  - e. 1 each: Lockset, Function F81.
  - f. 1 each: Stop.
  - g. 1 each: Threshold.
- 12. **Group 37A:**
  - a. 1 set: Smoke Gaskets.
  - b. 1 each: Acoustic Seal.
  - c. 1 each: Closer.
  - d. 3 each: Hinges.
  - e. 1 each: Lockset, Function F81.
  - f. 1 each: Stop.
  - g. 1 each: Threshold.

B. Double Interior Doors:

- 1. **Group 50:**
  - a. General:

- 1) 1 set: Smoke Gaskets.
  - b. Active Leaf:
    - 1) 3 each: Hinges.
    - 2) 1 each: Lockset Function F81.
    - 3) 1 each: Stop.
  - c. Inactive Leaf:
    - 1) 2 each: Flush Bolts.
    - 2) 3 each: Hinges.
    - 3) 1 each: Stop.
    - 4) Stop.
2. **Group 52:**
- a. General:
    - 1) 1 set: Smoke Gaskets.
  - b. Active Leaf:
    - 1) 1 each: Closer.
    - 2) 3 each: Hinges.
    - 3) 1 each: Kick Plate.
    - 4) 1 each: Pull.
    - 5) 1 each: Push.
    - 6) 1 each: Stop.
  - c. Inactive Leaf:
    - 1) 1 each: Closer.
    - 2) 3 each: Hinges.
    - 3) 1 each: Kick Plate.
    - 4) 1 each: Pull.
    - 5) 1 each: Push.
    - 6) 1 each: Stop.

**PART 3 - KEYING SCHEDULE for FINISH HARDWARE**

**3.1 KEYING SCHEDULE**

A. CES Keying Schedule:

- 1. General access Storage Rooms, general access Custodian Room, Classrooms, Offices, Mechanical and Utility Rooms, Serving Area (Institute), Secretary, and Workroom:

Key	Stamped	Amount	
XAA1	GEN	*Varies	

\*Varies with each different CES Standard Plan.

- 2. Padlock for Post Indicator Valve: Key so keys open padlock.
- 3. Provide interior keying system that includes Masterkey level only.

**END OF SECTION**

**SECTION 08 1213****HOLLOW METAL FRAMES****PART 1 - GENERAL****1.1 SUMMARY**

- A. Products Furnished But Not Installed Under This Section:
  - 1. Hollow metal frames.
- B. Related Requirements:
  - 1. Section 06 2024: 'Door, Frame, And Finish Hardware Installation' for installation.
  - 2. Section 06 4114: 'Wood-Veneer-Faced Architectural Cabinets' for pass-through window and hardware.
  - 3. Section 08 4113: 'Aluminum-Framed Entrances And Storefronts' for aluminum entry frames.

**1.2 REFERENCES**

- A. Reference Standards:
  - 1. American Architectural Manufacturers Association / Window & Door Manufacturers Association / CSA Group:
    - a. AAMA/WDMA/CSA 101/I.S.2/A440-17, 'North American Fenestration Standard/Specification for windows, doors, and skylights'.
  - 2. ASTM International:
    - a. ASTM A568/A568M-17a, 'Standard Specification for Steel, Sheet, Carbon, Structural, and High-Strength, Low-Alloy, Hot-Rolled and Cold-Rolled, General Requirements for.
    - b. ASTM A653/A653M-17, 'Standard Specification for Steel Sheet, Zinc-Coated (Galvanized) or Zinc-Iron Alloy-Coated (Galvannealed) by the Hot-Dip Process'.
  - 3. Steel Door Institute:
    - a. SDI A250.8-2017, 'Specifications for Standard Steel Doors and Frames'.
    - b. SDI A250.11-2012, 'Recommended Erection Instructions for Steel Frames'.

**1.3 SUBMITTALS**

- A. Informational Submittals:
  - 1. Copy of SDI A250.11.

**PART 2 - PRODUCTS****2.1 MANUFACTURED UNITS**

- A. Suppliers:
  - 1. Category Three Approved Suppliers. See Section 01 6200 for definitions of Categories and Section 01 4301 for Qualification Requirements:
    - a. Architectural Building Supply, Salt Lake City, UT [www.cookandboardman.com](http://www.cookandboardman.com):
      - 1) Contact Information: Russ Farley: phone (800) 574-4369, fax 801-484-6817, or e-mail [russf@absdoors.com](mailto:russf@absdoors.com).
    - b. Beacon Metals Inc, Salt Lake City, UT [www.beacon-metals.com](http://www.beacon-metals.com):
      - 1) Contact Information: Jared Butler: phone (801) 486-4884, cell (435) 216-2297, FAX 801-485-7647, or e-mail [Jared@beacon-metals.com](mailto:Jared@beacon-metals.com).
    - c. Midwest D-Vision Solutions, Salt Lake City, UT [www.mwdsutah.com](http://www.mwdsutah.com).

- 1) Contact Information: Dan Mercer, office (801) 377-4355, cell (801) 618-9456, e-mail [danm@mwdsutah.com](mailto:danm@mwdsutah.com).
- B. Manufacturers:
1. Category Four Approved Manufacturers. See Section 01 6200 for definitions of Categories:
    - a. Any current member of Steel Door Institute.
- C. Frames:
1. Cold rolled furniture steel:
    - a. Interior Frames: 16 ga. (1.6 mm).
    - b. Exterior Frames: 14 ga. (1.9 mm).
  2. Provide labeled frame to match fire rating of door.
  3. Finish:
    - a. Use one of following systems:
      - 1) Prime surfaces with rust inhibiting primer.
      - 2) Galvanize.
  4. Anchors: 16 US ga (1.6 mm) minimum meeting UL or other code acceptable requirements for door rating involved.
- D. Fabrication:
1. General Requirements:
    - a. Frames shall be welded units. Provide temporary spreader on each welded frame.
    - b. Provide Manufacturer's gauge label for each item.
    - c. Make breaks, arrises, and angles uniform, straight, and true. Accurately fit corners.
  2. Frame width dimension:
    - a. Fabricate frame 1/8 inch (3 mm) wider than finished wall thickness as described in Contract Documents.
  3. Provide mortar guards at strikes and hinges.
  4. Anchors:
    - a. Provide three jamb anchors minimum for each jamb. On hinge side, install one anchor at each hinge location. On strike side, install one anchor at strike level and anchors at same level as top and bottom hinges. Tack weld anchors on frames intended for installation in framed walls.
    - b. Frames installed before walls are constructed shall be provided with extended base anchors in addition to other specified anchors.
    - c. Anchor types and configurations shall meet wall conditions.

**PART 3 - EXECUTION: Not Used**

**END OF SECTION**

**SECTION 08 1313****HOLLOW METAL DOORS****PART 1 - GENERAL****1.1 SUMMARY**

- A. Products Furnished But Not Installed Under This Section:
  - 1. Hollow metal doors.
- B. Related Requirements:
  - 1. Section 06 2024: 'Door, Frame, And Finish Hardware Installation' for door installation.

**1.2 REFERENCES**

- A. Association Publications:
  - 1. National Association of Architectural Metal Manufacturers (NAAMM):
    - a. HMMA 810-09, 'Hollow Metal Doors'.
    - b. HMMA 860-13, 'Guide Specifications For Hollow Metal Door and Frames'.
  - 2. Steel Door Institute:
    - a. SDI-108, 'Recommended Selection and Usage Guide for Standard Steel Doors'.
- B. Reference Standards:
  - 1. American Architectural Manufacturers Association / Window & Door Manufacturers Association / CSA Group:
    - a. AAMA/WDMA/CSA 101/I.S.2/A440-17, 'North American Fenestration Standard/Specification for windows, doors, and skylights'.
  - 2. ASTM International:
    - a. ASTM A568/A568M-17a, 'Standard Specification for Steel, Sheet, Carbon, Structural, and High-Strength, Low-Alloy, Hot-Rolled and Cold-Rolled, General Requirements for'.
    - b. ASTM A653/A653M-17, 'Standard Specification for Steel Sheet, Zinc-Coated (Galvanized) or Zinc-Iron Alloy-Coated (Galvannealed) by the Hot-Dip Process'.
    - c. ASTM C1036-16, 'Standard Specification for Flat Glass'.
    - d. ASTM C1048-18, 'Standard Specification for Heat-Strengthened and Fully Tempered Flat Glass'.
  - 3. Steel Door Institute:
    - a. SDI A250.8-2017, 'Specifications for Standard Steel Doors and Frames'.

**PART 2 - PRODUCTS****2.1 MANUFACTURED UNITS**

- A. Suppliers:
  - 1. Category Three Approved Suppliers. See Section 01 6200 for definitions of Categories and Section 01 4301 for Qualification Requirements:
    - a. Architectural Building Supply, Salt Lake City, UT [www.cookandboardman.com](http://www.cookandboardman.com):
      - 1) Contact Information: Russ Farley: phone (800) 574-4369, fax 801-484-6817, or e-mail [russf@absdoors.com](mailto:russf@absdoors.com).
    - b. Beacon Metals Inc, Salt Lake City, UT [www.beacon-metals.com](http://www.beacon-metals.com):
      - 1) Contact Information: Jared Butler: phone (801) 486-4884, cell (435) 216-2297, FAX 801-485-7647, or e-mail [Jared@beacon-metals.com](mailto:Jared@beacon-metals.com).
    - c. Midwest D-Vision Solutions, Salt Lake City, UT [www.mwdsutah.com](http://www.mwdsutah.com).



- 1) Contact Information: Dan Mercer, office (801) 377-4355, cell (801) 618-9456, e-mail [danm@mwdsutah.com](mailto:danm@mwdsutah.com).
- B. Manufacturers:
1. Category Four Approved Manufacturers. See Section 01 6200 for definitions of Categories:
    - a. Any current member of Steel Door Institute.
- C. Doors:
1. Meet one of following requirements:
    - a. Meet requirements of Steel Door Institute ANSI / SDI A250.8.
    - b. Commercial grade steel meeting requirements of ASTM A568/A568M, Class 1:
      - 1) Grade I for interior doors, Grade II for exterior doors.
      - 2) Model 1 Full Flush or Model 2 Seamless designs at Manufacturer's option.
      - 3) Type F as required.
      - 4) Finish:
        - a) Interior doors primed or galvanized as per ASTM A653/A653M.
        - b) Exterior doors galvanized and primed as per ASTM A653/A653M.
  2. Insulation: Insulate doors at exterior of main building sufficient to provide U-value of 0.10 maximum.
  3. Factory Glazing:
    - a. Narrow Light:
      - 1) Glazing (non-fire-rated openings):
        - a) Tempered glazing meeting requirements of ASTM C1048, Kind FT, Condition A, Type I, Class I, Quality q3.
        - b) Thickness **1/4 inch (6 mm)**.
- D. Fabrication:
1. General:
    - a. Mortise and reinforce doors for hinges and locks.
    - b. Reinforce doors for closers and other surface applied hardware.
    - c. Drill and tap on job.
    - d. Seams along vertical edges of door need not be filled.
    - e. Do not extend hinge cut out full width of door unless fill strip is inserted, weld filled, and ground smooth so no seam appears on back face plate.
      - 1) Construct UL fire doors and frames to meet UL's specific approval according to current procedure for door rating involved, Procedure No. R-3791 and R-3821 as listed by UL.
        - a) Labeling shall be in accordance with NFPA 80, the listing authority's policies and label materials, and shall identify Manufacturer.

## 2.2 SOURCE QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Tests:
1. Verification of Performance:
    - a. Label each door as conforming to above required standards.

### PART 3 - EXECUTION: Not Used

**END OF SECTION**

**SECTION 08 1429****FLUSH WOOD DOORS: Factory-Finished, Clear****PART 1 - GENERAL****1.1 SUMMARY**

- A. Products Furnished But Not Installed Under This Section:
  - 1. Factory-finished flush wood doors.
- B. Related Requirements:
  - 1. Section 06 2024: 'Door, Frame, And Finish Hardware Installation' for installation.
  - 2. Section 06 4114: 'Wood-Veneer-Faced Architectural Cabinets' for cabinet doors.
  - 3. Section 09 9324: 'Interior Clear-Finished Hardwood'.

**1.2 REFERENCES**

- A. Abbreviations And Acronyms:
  - 1. AWS: Architectural Woodwork Standards (formerly AWI).
  - 2. FD: Fire-resistant core, fire-resistant materials assembled to stiles and rails according to methods prescribed by the testing agency to meet rigorous smoke, flame, and pressure tests.
  - 3. FD-5: Core with 2 layers on each side.
  - 4. ME: Matching edges, i.e., vertical edges same as decorative faces.
  - 5. PC: Particleboard core, solid core door with stiles and rails bonded to the core and abrasive planed flat prior to the application of the faces.
  - 6. PC-5: Core with 2 layers on each side.
- B. Association Publications:
  - 1. Architectural Woodwork Institute / Architectural Woodwork Manufacturers Association of Canada, 46179 Westlake Drive, Suite 120, Potomac Falls, VA [www.awinet.org](http://www.awinet.org).
    - a. Architectural Woodwork Standards (AWS), 2nd Edition, 2014.
- C. Definitions:
  - 1. Book-Match: Matching between adjacent veneer leaves on one panel face. Every other piece of veneer is turned over so that the adjacent leaves are "opened" as two pages in a book. The fibers of the wood, slanting in opposite directions in the adjacent leaves, create a characteristic light and dark effect when the surface is seen from an angle.
  - 2. Fire-rated: Fire-retardant particleboard with an Underwriters' Laboratory (UL) stamp for Class 1 fire rating (Flame Spread 20, Smoke Developed 25). Fire-rated doors are available with particleboard and mineral cores for ratings up to 1-1/2 hours.
  - 3. Fire-rated Door: A door made of fire-resistant material that can be closed to prevent the spread of fire and can be rated as resisting fire for 20 minutes (1/3 hour), 30 minutes (1/2 hour), 45 minutes (3/4 hour) (C), 1 hour (B), or 1-1/2 hours (B). The door must be tested and carry an identifying label from a qualified testing and inspection agency.
  - 4. Grade: Unless otherwise noted, this term means Grade rules for Economy, Custom, and/or Premium Grade.
    - a. Custom Grade: Typically specified for and adequately covers most high-quality architectural woodwork, providing a well-defined degree of control over a project's quality of materials, workmanship, or installation.
    - b. Premium Grade: The highest Grade available in both material and workmanship where the highest level of quality, materials, workmanship, and installation is required.
  - 5. Running Match: Each panel face is assembled from as many veneer leaves as necessary. Any portion left over from one panel may be used to start the next.
- D. Reference Standards:

1. American Architectural Manufacturers Association / Window & Door Manufacturers Association / CSA Group:
    - a. AAMA/WDMA/CSA 101/I.S.2/A440-17, 'North American Fenestration Standard/Specification for windows, doors, and skylights'
  2. ASTM International:
    - a. ASTM C1036-16, 'Standard Specification for Flat Glass'.
    - b. ASTM C1048-18, 'Standard Specification for Heat-Strengthened and Fully Tempered Flat Glass'.
  3. Hardwood, Plywood, and Veneer Association:
    - a. HPVA HP-1-2016 'Standard for Hardwood and Decorative Plywood'.
  4. National Particleboard Association / Composite Panel Association:
    - a. NPA A208.1-2009, 'Particleboard'.
- E. Action Submittals:
1. Shop Drawings:
    - a. Schedule showing type of door at each location. Included shall be size, veneer, core type, fire rating, hardware prep, openings, blocking, etc.
    - b. Indicate factory finish color and type.
  2. Samples:
    - a. Interior Hardwood for Transparent Finish:
      - 1) Approval subject to Annual Review:
        - a) Prepare sample to match Control Sample available from Owner to be used as finishing standard for interior clear finished hardwood as specified in Section 09 9324.
        - b) Approval of sample by Owner will establish performance standard of stain to be used until next annual review.
      - 2) Design Criteria:
        - a) Provide 8 inch by 10 inch (200 mm by 255 mm) sample of Red Oak to match stain Control Sample provided by Owner.
- F. Informational Submittals:
1. Source Quality Control Submittals:
    - a. Samples:
      - 1) Interior Hardwood for Transparent Finish:
        - a) Owner will provide Control Sample for finish.
- G. Closeout Submittals:
1. Include following information in Operations And Maintenance Manuals specified in Section 01 7800:
    - a. Record Documentation:
      - 1) Manufacturers Documentation:
        - a) Manufacturer's product literature on doors and factory finish.
        - b) Maintenance and repair instructions.

### 1.3 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Delivery And Acceptance Requirements:
1. Deliver in clean truck and, in wet weather, under cover.
  2. Deliver to building site only after plaster, cement, and taping compound are completed and dry and after interior painting operations have been completed.
  3. Individually wrap in polyethylene bags for shipment and storage.
- B. Storage And Handling Requirements:
1. Store doors in a space having controlled temperature and humidity range between 25 and 55 percent.
  2. Store flat on level surface in dry, well ventilated space.
  3. Cover to keep clean but allow air circulation.
  4. Do not subject doors to direct sunlight, abnormal heat, dryness, or humidity.

5. Handle with clean gloves and do not drag doors across one another or across other surfaces.
6. Leave shipping bag on door after installation until immediately before substantial completion inspection.
7. Doors have been acclimated to the field conditions for a minimum of 72 hours before installation is commenced.

## 1.4 WARRANTY

### A. Manufacturer Warranty:

1. Manufacturer's standard full door warranty for lifetime of original installation.
  - a. Warranty shall include finishing, hanging, and installing hardware if manufacturing defect was discovered after door was finished and installed.
  - b. Warranty to include defects in materials including following:
    - 1) Delaminating in any degree.
    - 2) Warp or twist of **1/4 inch (6 mm)** or more in door panel at time of one-year warranty inspection.
    - 3) Telegraphing of core assembly: Variation of **1/100 inch (0.25 mm)** or more in **3 inch (75 mm)** span.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 MANUFACTURED UNITS

#### A. Suppliers:

#### B. Suppliers:

1. Category Three Approved Suppliers. See Section 01 6200 for definitions of Categories and Section 01 4301 for Qualification Requirements:
  - a. Architectural Building Supply, Salt Lake City, UT [www.cookandboardman.com](http://www.cookandboardman.com):
    - 1) Contact Information: Russ Farley: phone (800) 574-4369, fax 801-484-6817, or e-mail [russf@absdoors.com](mailto:russf@absdoors.com).
  - b. Beacon Metals Inc, Salt Lake City, UT [www.beacon-metals.com](http://www.beacon-metals.com):
    - 1) Contact Information: Jared Butler: phone (801) 486-4884, cell (435) 216-2297, FAX 801-485-7647, or e-mail [Jared@beacon-metals.com](mailto:Jared@beacon-metals.com).
  - c. Midwest D-Vision Solutions, Salt Lake City, UT [www.mwdsutah.com](http://www.mwdsutah.com).
    - 1) Contact Information: Dan Mercer, office (801) 377-4355, cell (801) 618-9456, e-mail [danm@mwdsutah.com](mailto:danm@mwdsutah.com).

#### C. Manufacturers:

1. Category Four Approved Manufacturers. See Section 01 6200 for definitions of Categories:
  - a. Graham Wood Doors, Mason City, IA.
  - b. Marshfield Door Systems Inc, Marshfield, WI.
  - c. VT Industries, Holstein, IA.

#### D. Wood Doors:

1. Type: AWS PC-5ME or FD-5ME.
2. Grade: AWS Premium, except face veneer.
3. Fully Type I Construction: Adhere all glue lines with Type I adhesive, including veneer lay-up.
4. Face Veneer:
  - a. Plain sliced Maple meeting requirements of AWS Grade A, **1/50 inch (0.5 mm)** thick minimum immediately before finishing.
  - b. Face veneers shall be running book matched.
5. Core:
  - a. Fully bonded to stiles and rails and sanded as a unit before applying veneers.
  - b. Non-Rated:

- 1) 32 lb density meeting requirements of ANSI A208.1 Mat Formed Wood Particle Board, Grade 1-L-1 minimum.
  - 2) Stiles:
    - a) 1-3/8 inches (35 mm) deep minimum before fitting.
    - b) Stile face to be hardwood matching face veneer material, thickness manufacturer's standard.
  - 3) Rails:
    - a) 1-1/8 inches (28 mm).
    - b) Manufacturer's option.
6. Factory Glazing:
- a. Glazing (non-fire-rated and fire-rated openings): Wired glazing meeting requirements of ASTM C1036, Type II, Class I - Clear, Quality - q8 Glazing Select, Form I polished both sides, Mesh - m1 (diamond).
    - 1) Meet US Consumer Product Safety Commission safety rating (CPSC 16 CFR 1201).
    - 2) Thickness 1/4 inch (6 mm).
  - b. Glazing Kit:
    - 1) Design Criteria:
      - a) Pre-finished wood or wood veneer frames.
    - 2) Dimensions:
      - a) Refer to Construction Document Drawings.
    - 3) Category Four Approved Product. See Section 01 6200 for definitions of Categories:
      - a) Profile M6G by Graham.
      - b) Profile W6 by Marshfield.
      - c) Profile VT1 by VT Industries.
- E. Fabrication:
1. Doors shall be factory-machined. Coordinate with Section 08 1213 and Sections under 08 7000.
- F. Finishes:
1. Factory Finishing:
    - a. Applied by Door Manufacturer before leaving factory.
    - b. Performance / Design Criteria:
      - 1) Finish factory-finish to match Owner selected sample as specified in Section 09 9324.
    - c. Color:
      - 1) Maple.
    - d. Finish: AWS Finish System TR-6 Catalyzed Polyurethane Premium Grade for unfilled, open-grain woods.

## 2.2 SOURCE QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Inspections:
1. Verification of Performance:
    - a. Doors shall have following information permanently affixed on top of door:
      - 1) Manufacturer:
      - 2) Door designation or model.
      - 3) Veneer species.
      - 4) Factory finish.
  2. Clear Finished Hardwood:
    - a. Color matches Owner provided sample specified in Section 09 9324.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION: Not Used

END OF SECTION

**SECTION 08 4113****ALUMINUM-FRAMED ENTRANCES AND STOREFRONTS****PART 1 - GENERAL****1.1 SUMMARY**

- A. Includes But Not Limited To:
  - 1. Furnish and install aluminum storefront entry and window systems, including hardware, glazing, and caulking, as described in Contract Documents and including the following:
    - a. Low energy swinging operators for ADA compliance.
- B. Related Requirements:
  - 1. Section 01 1100: 'Summary Of Work' for cores for High Security Cylinders are excluded from Contract and provided by Owner. This specification establishes quality of materials and installation of those items for information of Contractor, Architect, and Owner's Representatives.
  - 2. Section 06 1100: 'Wood Framing':
    - a. Pre-installation conference held jointly with Section 08 4113.
  - 3. Section 07 9213: 'Elastomeric Joint Sealant' for quality of sealants.
  - 4. Section 08 8100: 'Glass Glazing' for quality of glass glazing.
  - 5. Section 28 1316: 'Access Control System':
    - a. Coordination and location of pull string inside storefront door mullion for electric strike and proximity reader.
  - 6. Division 26: 'Electrical' for power source, raceway, boxes, wiring for controls and operator.

**1.2 REFERENCES**

- A. Association Publications:
  - 1. American Architectural Manufacturers Association (AAMA):
    - a. AAMA 501-15, 'Methods of Test for Exterior Walls'.
    - b. AAMA 609 & 610-15, 'Cleaning and Maintenance Guide for Architecturally Finished Aluminum' (combined documents).
    - c. AAMA SFM 1-14, 'Aluminum Store Front and Entrance Manual'.
    - d. AAMA 2605-17a, 'Voluntary Specification, Performance Requirements and Test Procedures for Superior Performing Organic Coatings on Aluminum Extrusions and Panels'.
- B. Definitions:
  - 1. Glass Surface:
    - a. Insulated glass unit:
      - 1) Surface 1: Exterior surface of outer lite.
      - 2) Surface 2: Interspace-facing surface of outer lite.
      - 3) Surface 3: Interspace-facing surface of inner lite.
      - 4) Surface 4: Interior surface of inner lite.
    - b. Monolithic glass:
      - 1) Surface 1: Exterior surface.
      - 2) Surface 2: Interior surface.
- C. Reference Standards:
  - 1. American National Standards Institute / Builders Hardware Manufacturers Association:
    - a. ANSI/BHMA A156.19-2013, 'Power Assist & Low Energy Operated Doors'.
  - 2. ASTM International:
    - a. ASTM B221-14, 'Standard Specification for Aluminum and Aluminum-Alloy Extruded Bars, Rods, Wire, Profiles, and Tubes'.
    - b. ASTM B456-17, 'Standard Specification for Electrodeposited Coatings of Copper Plus Nickel Plus Chromium and Nickel Plus Chromium'.

- c. ASTM B633-15, 'Standard Specification for Electrodeposited Coatings of Zinc on Iron and Steel'.
- d. ASTM C920-18, 'Standard Specification for Elastomeric Joint Sealants'.
- e. ASTM C1184-18, 'Standard Specification for Structural Silicone Sealants'.
- f. ASTM E283-04(2012), 'Standard Test Method for Determining Rate of Air Leakage Through Exterior Windows, Curtain Walls, and Doors Under Specified Pressure Differences Across the Specimen'.
- g. ASTM E330/E330M-14, 'Standard Test Method for Structural Performance of Exterior Windows, Doors, Skylights and Curtain Walls by Uniform Static Air Pressure Difference'.
- h. ASTM E331-00(2016), 'Standard Test Method for Water Penetration of Exterior Windows, Skylights, Doors, and Curtain Walls by Uniform Static Air Pressure Difference'.
- 3. International Building Code (IBC) (2018 or most recent edition adopted by AHJ):
  - a. Chapter 10, 'Means of Egress'.
  - b. Chapter 16, 'Structural Design'.
    - 1) Section 1609 'Wind Loads'.
- 4. International Code Council / American National Standards Institute:
  - a. ICC / ANSI A117.1-2009, 'Accessible and Usable Buildings and Facilities'.
- 5. National Fenestration Rating Council (NFRC):
  - a. NFRC 100-2017, 'Procedure for Determining Fenestration Product U-factors'.

### 1.3 ADMINISTRATIVE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Pre-Installation Conference:
  - 1. Participate in MANDATORY pre-installation conference as specified in Section 06 1100.
    - a. Schedule pre-installation conference one (1) week before scheduled installation of storefront system.
    - b. In addition to requirements of Section 01 3100, review following:
      - 1) Review rough opening requirements:
        - a) Make certain rough openings are within tolerances required for installation of factory-fabricated frames.
        - b) These dimensions have been agreed upon between Owner and Manufacturer and are shown on Standard Plan Drawings.
      - 2) Review installation scheduling, coordination, placement of doors.
      - 3) Review low-energy door operator location and requirements.
      - 4) Review delivery, storage, and handling requirements.
      - 5) Review 'Examination' requirements before sliding door installation.
      - 6) Review 'Finish' door and hardware requirements.
      - 7) Review 'Protection' responsibilities.
      - 8) Review 'Cleaning' responsibilities.

### 1.4 SUBMITTALS

- A. Action Submittals:
  - 1. Product Data:
    - a. Manufacturer's literature.
      - 1) Storefront entry system.
      - 2) Low-energy door operator.
    - b. Color and finish.
  - 2. Shop Drawings:
    - a. Clearly mark components to identify their location in Project.
    - b. Show exact dimensions of factory-fabricated frames and required tolerances for rough openings. Submit shop drawings in time for Pre-Installation Conference specified in Section 06 1100.
    - c. Show locations, sizes, etc, of hardware reinforcing.
- B. Informational Submittals:
  - 1. Qualification Statement:

- a. Installer:
  - 1) Provide Qualification documentation if requested by Architect or Owner.
- C. Closeout Submittals:
  - 1. Include following in Operations And Maintenance Manual specified in Section 01 7800:
    - a. Operations and Maintenance Data:
      - 1) Maintenance, adjustment, and repair instructions.
    - b. Warranty Documentation:
      - 1) Final, executed copy of Warranty.
        - a) Storefront warranty.
        - b) Storefront closers.
        - c) Low-energy door operator.
    - c. Record Documentation:
      - 1) Manufacturers documentation:
        - a) Manufacturer's literature or cut sheets for storefront system and for each item of hardware.
        - b) Manufacturer's literature of cut sheets for low-energy door operators.
        - c) Color and finish selections.
        - d) Parts lists.

## 1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Regulatory Agency Sustainability Approvals:
  - 1. Storefront System Performance Requirements:
    - a. Provide test reports from AAMA accredited laboratories certifying performances if requested:
      - 1) Air Leakage: Meet requirements of ASTM E283.
      - 2) Limit air leakage through assembly to **0.06 CFM/min/sq ft (.00003 m3/sm2)** of wall area at **6.24 PSF (300 Pa)** as measured in accordance with ASTM E283.
      - 3) Water Resistance: No water leakage when measured in accordance with ASTM E331 with static test pressure of **8PSF (384 Pa)** as defined by AAMA 501.
      - 4) Dynamic Water Resistance: No water leakage, when measured in accordance with AAMA 501 with dynamic test pressure of **8 PSF (384 Pa)**.
      - 5) Limit mullion wind load deflection of L/175 with full recovery of glazing materials, when measured in accordance with ASTM E330/E330M.
      - 6) System shall not deflect more than **1/8 inch (3 mm)** at center point, or **1/16 inch (1.58 mm)** at enter point of horizontal member, once dead load points have been established.
      - 7) System shall accommodate expansion and contraction movement due to surface temperature differential of **180 deg F (82 deg C)**.
      - 8) Seismic testing shall conform to AAMA recommended static test method for evaluating performance of curtain walls and storefront wall systems due to horizontal displacements associated with seismic movements and building sway.
  - 2. Provide wind load and impact testing by testing laboratory when required by local codes and jurisdictions:
- B. Qualifications: Requirements of Section 01 4301 applies, but not limited to following:
  - 1. Manufacturer Qualifications:
    - a. Provide aluminum entrances and storefront systems produced by firm experienced in manufacturing systems that are similar to those indicated for this project and have record of successful in-service performance.
  - 2. Fabricator Qualifications:
    - a. Provide aluminum entrances and storefront systems fabricated by a firm experienced in producing systems that are similar to those indicated for this Project, and have record of successful in-service performance.
    - b. Fabricator shall have sufficient production capacity to produce components required without causing delay in progress of the Work.
  - 3. Installer Qualifications:
    - a. Minimum three (3) years experience in storefront installations.
    - b. Minimum five (5) satisfactorily completed projects of comparable quality, similar size, and complexity in past three (3) years before bidding.



- c. Upon request, submit documentation.

## 1.6 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Delivery And Acceptance Requirements:
  1. Deliver all parts of door, together with hardware, in original, unopened packages with labels intact to Project at same time.
- B. Storage And Handling Requirements:
  1. Store in clean, dry location, indoors in Manufacturer's unopened packaging until ready for installation and in accordance with Manufacturer's instructions.
  2. Stack framing components in a manner that will prevent bending and avoid significant or permanent damage.
  3. Protect materials and finish from damage during storage, handling and installation.

## 1.7 WARRANTY

- A. Manufacturer Warranty:
  1. Storefront Entrances:
    - a. Manufacturer's Warranty to be free of defects in material and workmanship.
    - b. Manufacturer's Warranty against deterioration or fading.
    - c. Manufacturer's Lifetime Warranty for Door Construction for normal use.
  2. Closers:
    - a. Closer Manufacturer's standard warranty, 10 years minimum.
  3. Low-Energy Door Operator:
    - a. Manufacturer's standard warranty.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 ASSEMBLIES

- A. Manufacturers:
  1. Category Three Approved Manufacturers. See Section 01 6200 for definitions of Categories:
    - a. Arcadia Inc., Vernon CA [www.arcadiainc.com](http://www.arcadiainc.com).
      - 1) Contact Information: Ken Martinek, (602) 734-5327 [kmartinek@arcadiainc.com](mailto:kmartinek@arcadiainc.com).
    - b. Kawneer North America, Norcross, GA, [www.kawneer.com/kawneer/north\\_america](http://www.kawneer.com/kawneer/north_america).
      - 1) Contact Information: Bart Daniels cell (385) 214-4650 [bart.daniels@alcoa.com](mailto:bart.daniels@alcoa.com).
- B. General:
  1. In addition to requirements shown or specified, comply with:
    - a. Applicable provisions of AAMA SFM 1, 'Aluminum Store Front and Entrance Manual' for design, materials, fabrication and installation of component parts.
- C. Design Criteria:
  1. Storefront System suitable for outside or inside glazing.
- D. Materials:
  1. Framing Components and Accessories:
    - a. Aluminum Extrusions:
      - 1) 6063-T6 aluminum alloy or meet requirements of ASTM B221, alloy GS 10a T6.
      - 2) Anchors, Clips, and Accessories:
        - a) Aluminum, nonmagnetic stainless steel, or zinc-coated steel or iron complying with ASTM B633 for SC 3 severe service conditions or other suitable zinc coating; provide sufficient strength to withstand design pressure indicated (properly isolated steel from aluminum).

- 3) Fasteners:
    - a) Aluminum, nonmagnetic stainless steel or other materials to be non-corrosive and compatible with aluminum window members, trim hardware, anchors, and other components.
  - 4) Glazing Gasket:
    - a) Compression-type design with replaceable extruded EPDM rubber.
  - 5) Reinforcing Members:
    - a) Aluminum, nonmagnetic stainless steel, or nickel/chrome-plated steel complying with ASTM B456 for Type SC 3 severe service conditions, or zinc-coated steel or iron complying with ASTM B633 for SC 3 severe service conditions or other suitable zinc coating; provide sufficient strength to withstand design pressure indicated.
    - b) Mullion:
      - (1) Steel reinforced or heavy duty as necessary to prevent lateral flexing of mullion.
  - 6) Sills:
    - a) Match height of door bottoms.
  - 7) Sealant:
    - a) Structural Sealant meeting requirements of ASTM C1184 for fabrication within storefront system:
      - (1) Permanently elastic, non-shrinking, and non-migrating type for joint size and movement.
      - (2) Single-component neutral-curing silicone formulation compatible with system components specifically formulated and tested for use as structural sealant and approved by structural-sealant manufacturer for use in aluminum-framed systems indicated.
      - (3) Color: Black.
    - b) Joint Sealants used at perimeter of storefront framing system: Elastomeric Sealant as specified in Section 07 9213.
    - c) Provide sealants for use inside of the weatherproofing system that have a VOC content of 250 g/L or less when required by local codes or AHJ.
  - 8) Tolerances:
    - a) Tolerances for wall thickness and other cross-sectional dimensions of storefront members in compliance with AA Aluminum Standards and Data.
  - b. Storefront Framing System:
    - 1) Brackets and Reinforcements:
      - a) Manufacturer's standard high-strength aluminum with non-staining, nonferrous shims for aligning system components.
    - 2) Fasteners and Accessories:
      - a) Manufacturer's standard corrosion-resistant, non-staining, non-bleeding fasteners and accessories compatible with adjacent materials.
    - 3) Perimeter Anchors:
      - a) When steel anchors are used, provide insulation between steel material and aluminum material to prevent galvanic action.
  - c. Finish:
    - 1) Match Doors
  - d. Category Four Approved Products. See Section 01 6200 for definitions of Categories:
    - 1) Non-Thermal, 2 inch (50 mm) Sightline:
      - a) Double Stack header at exterior doors only if shown on Contract Drawings.
      - b) Single Glazed:
        - (1) AR450 by Arcadia.
        - (2) Trifab VG 450 by Kawneer.
      - c) Double Glazed:
        - (1) AG451 by Arcadia.
        - (2) Trifab VG 451 by Kawneer.
2. Manually Operated Doors:
    - a. Aluminum:
      - 1) 6063-T6 aluminum alloy or meet requirements of ASTM B221, alloy GS 10a T6.
    - b. Stiles:

- 1) 3-1/2 inches by 1-3/4 inches by 0.125 inches (89 mm by 45 mm by 3.175 mm) thick nominal.
  - c. Top Rails:
    - 1) 3-1/2 inches minimum by 1-3/4 inches by 0.125 inches (89 mm minimum by 45 mm by 3.175 mm) thick nominal.
  - d. Bottom Rails:
    - 1) 10 inches minimum by 1-3/4 inches by 0.125 inches (254 mm minimum by 45 mm by 3.175 mm) thick nominal.
  - e. Construction:
    - 1) Manufacturer's standard.
  - f. Glazing Stops:
    - 1) Snap-in type with neoprene bulb-type glazing. Units shall be glazed from exterior side.
  - g. Weatherstripping:
    - 1) Neoprene bulb-type.
    - 2) Category Four Approved Products. See Section 01 6200 for definitions of Categories:
      - a) Peri-Plus Seal (PPS) by Arcadia.
      - b) Sealair by Kawneer.
  - h. Framing System Gaskets and Sealants:
    - 1) Manufacturer's standard, recommended by manufacturer for joint type:
    - 2) Sealants: As specified in Framing Components and Accessories.
  - i. Factory Finishing:
    - 1) Fluorocarbon Carbon: comply with AAMA 2605:
      - a) Polyvinylidene Fluoride (PVDF) Resin-base finish (Kynar 500 or Hylar 5000) containing seventy (70) percent minimum (PVDF) in resin portion of formula and providing pencil hardness of 3H. Thermo-cured two-coat system consisting of corrosion inhibiting epoxy primer and topcoat factory-applied over properly pre-treated metal.
      - b) Category Four Approved Colors:
        - (1) Black by Arcadia.
        - (2) Black by Kawneer.
      - c) Category Four Approved Manufacturers. See Section 01 6200 for definitions of Categories:
        - (1) BASF.
        - (2) PPG Industries, Inc.
        - (3) Valspar Corporation.
  - j. Category Four Approved Products. See Section 01 6200 for definitions of Categories:
    - 1) Non-Thermal:
      - a) MS362 Medium Stile by Arcadia.
      - b) 350 Medium Stile by Kawneer.
3. Glazing:
- a. Glazing as specified in Section 08 8100: 'Glass Glazing'.
  - b. Glazing Gaskets:
    - 1) Compression-type design with replaceable extruded EPDM rubber.
  - c. Spacers and Setting Blocks: Elastomeric.
  - d. Bond-Breaker (Sealer) Tape: Standard TFE-fluorocarbon or polyethylene material to which sealants will not develop adhesion.
  - e. Glazing Sealant:
    - 1) Structural Sealant meeting requirements of ASTM C1184:
      - a) Permanently elastic, non-shrinking, and non-migrating type for joint size and movement.
      - b) Single-component neutral-curing silicone formulation compatible with system components specifically formulated and tested for use as structural sealant and approved by structural-sealant manufacturer for use in aluminum-framed systems indicated.
      - c) Color: Black.
    - 2) Weather Sealant:
      - a) ASTM C 920 for Type S, Grade NS, Class 25, Uses NT, G, A, and O; single-component neutral-curing formulation that is compatible with structural sealant and other system components with which it comes in contact; recommended by

- structural-sealant, weather seal sealant, and aluminum-framed-system manufacturers for this use.
- b) Color: Match structural sealant.
  - 3) Provide sealants for use inside of the weatherproofing system that have a VOC content of 250 g/L or less when required by local codes or AHJ.
4. Hardware:
- a. Hinging:
    - 1) Top and bottom offset, ball bearing pivots per door leaf.
  - b. Overhead Door Closers:
    - 1) Provide parallel arms on closers unless door position requires otherwise.
    - 2) Where possible, closers shall allow for 180 degree opening and not be used as stop. Provide Cush-N-Stop or equivalent arm where wall stop cannot be used.
    - 3) Adjust closers to provide maximum opening force as required by governing code authority.
    - 4) Closers shall have following features:
      - a) Adjustable sweep speed.
      - b) Adjustable backcheck.
      - c) Non-handed, non-sized.
      - d) Cush arm by LCN or equal by Norton.
    - 5) Category Four Approved Products. See Section 01 6200 for definitions of Categories.
      - a) Surface mounted:
      - b) 4041 Series parallel arm by LCN.
      - c) 7500 Series Parallel arm by Norton.
  - c. Exit Devices:
    - 1) Entry Doors:
      - a) Operation:
        - (1) Entry shall be by key. Device shall be locked by cylinder from outside. Key shall be removable when cylinder is in locked or unlocked position.
        - (2) Dogging operation shall be by manufacturer's accessible thumbturn cylinder function.
        - (3) Exterior Trim: Lever Handle or Pull equal to Kawneer CO-9 or Arcadia OPR-9.
        - (4) Types: Rim Type. Provide type of strike that will allow installation of specified panic devices on storefront system specified.
    - 2) Access Doors:
      - a) Operation:
        - (1) Access accomplished by dogging device. Dogging operation shall be by accessible, permanent knob, not by removable allen wrench devices.
        - (2) Exterior Trim: Match Entry Doors.
        - (3) Types: Rim Type. Provide type of strike that will allow installation of specified panic devices on storefront system specified.
    - 3) Emergency Egress Exit Doors:
      - a) Operation:
        - (1) Exit only with no dogging.
        - (2) Exterior Trim: None.
        - (3) Type: Rim Type with type of strike that will allow installation of specified panic devices on storefront system specified.
    - 4) Color:
      - a) Equivalent to clear anodized.
    - 5) Category Four Approved Products. See Section 01 6200 for definitions of Categories:
      - a) Apex Series by Precision.
      - b) 80 Series by Sargent.
      - c) 98 or 99 Rim Series by Von Duprin.
  - d. Low-Energy Swing Door Operator:
    - 1) Meet requirements of ICC/ANSI 117.1 and BHMA A156.19.
    - 2) Wall-mounted push button operation.
    - 3) Solid state electronic control.
    - 4) Adjustable closing speed and hold-open range.
    - 5) Automatic and manual operating modes.
    - 6) Metal cover finished to match door.

- 7) Category Four Approved Products. See Section 01 6200 for definitions of Categories:
  - a) Besam SW100 by Besam (subsidiary of ASSA ABLOY) US-Monroe, NC  
[www.besam.us](http://www.besam.us).
  - b) Horton Series 7100 Low Energy by Horton Automatics (Division of Overhead Door Corp.), Corpus Christi, TX [www.hortondoors.com](http://www.hortondoors.com).
  - c) Record 6100 Series Low Energy Swing Door Operator by Record-USA, Monroe, NC [www.record-usa.com](http://www.record-usa.com).
  - d) Stanley Magic-Force by Stanley Access Technologies, Farmington, CT  
[www.stanleyaccesstechnologies.com](http://www.stanleyaccesstechnologies.com).
- e. Thresholds:
  - 1) Exterior:
    - a) Design Criteria: Meet handicap accessibility requirements.
    - b) Exterior to Carpet Tile: Similar to Pemko 273 Profile.
  - 2) Interior:
    - a) Design Criteria: Meet handicap accessibility requirements.
    - b) Carpet Tile / Carpet to Carpet: Similar to Pemko 236.
- f. Sweep Strips:
  - 1) Class Two Quality Standard:
    - a) Entrance Manufacturer's standard (cover cap with no exposed fasteners).
    - b) Pemko 293100 N8.
- g. Push / Pulls:
  - 1) Category Four Approved Products. See Section 01 6200 for definitions of Categories:
    - a) PBR and OPR-9 by Arcadia.
    - b) Kawneer CP and CO-9, clear anodized.
- h. High Security Cylinders And Cores:
  - 1) ASSA Instacores with ASSA Profile 62 key system:
    - a) Church And Factory Authorized Distributor:
      - (1) Clark Security Products, 135 West 2950 South, Salt Lake City, UT.
        - (a) Local: (801) 487-3227.
        - (b) Other: (800) 453-6430.
        - (c) FAX: (801) 487-3254.
  - 2) Medeco cores with Level Six HUK-IC keying system with special Church keyway:
    - a) Church And Factory Authorized Distributors:
      - (1) Intermountain Lock & Supply Co, 3106 South Main, Salt Lake City, UT:
        - (a) Utah: (801) 486-0079.
        - (b) Other: (800) 453-5386.
        - (c) FAX: (801) 485-7205.
      - (2) Clark Security Products, 135 West 2950 South, Salt Lake City, UT.
        - (a) Local: (801) 487-3227.
        - (b) Other: (800) 453-6430.
        - (c) FAX: (801) 487-3254.
  - 3) Schlage cores with Primus Level 4+ keying system with special Church side bit milling:
    - a) Church And Factory Authorized USA Distributors:
      - (1) Architectural Building Supply, P O Box 65678, Salt Lake City, UT 84165-0678 or 2965 South Main St, Salt Lake City, UT 84115.
        - (a) (801) 486-3481.
        - (b) FAX: (801) 484-6817.
- i. Kick Plates:
  - 1) Push side of Door only.
  - 2) 10 inches (254 mm) high by width of door less 3/4 inch (19 mm) on each side.
  - 3) Material: 0.050 inch (1.27 mm) thick Stainless Steel.
  - 4) Type Two Acceptable Manufacturers:
    - a) Glynn-Johnson, Indianapolis, IN [www.glynn-johnson.com](http://www.glynn-johnson.com).
    - b) Hager, St Louis, MO (800) 255-3590 or (314) 772-4400 [www.hagerhinge.com](http://www.hagerhinge.com).
    - c) Ives, Wallingford, CT [www.iveshardware.com](http://www.iveshardware.com).
    - d) Rockwood Manufacturing Co, Rockwood, PA [www.rockwoodmfg.com](http://www.rockwoodmfg.com).
    - e) Equal as approved by Architect before bidding. See Section 01 6200.

E. Fabrication:

1. Construction shall meet Manufacturer's recommendations.

2. Fabricate components that, when assembled, have following characteristics:
    - a. Profiles sharp, straight, and free of defects or deformations.
    - b. Accurately fit joints; make joints flush, hairline and weatherproof.
    - c. Means to drain water passing joints, condensation within framing members, and moisture migrating within system to exterior.
    - d. Physical and thermal isolation of glazing from framing members.
    - e. Accommodations for thermal and mechanical movements of glazing and framing to maintain required glazing edge clearances.
    - f. Provisions for field replacement of glazing.
    - g. Fasteners, anchors, and connection devices that are concealed from view to greatest extent possible.
    - h. Framing members shall be internally reinforced and secured at head and sill as necessary for structural performance requirements and for hardware attachment.
  3. Fabricate in factory to dimensions required to fit framed openings detailed on Contract Documents. Joints shall be tightly closed.
  4. Mortise in manner to give maximum hardware-door connection strength and neatness of appearance. Adequately reinforce with back plates or rivnuts to hold pivots and closers.
  5. Mechanically Glazed Framing Members: Fabricate for flush glazing without projecting stops.
  6. Structural-Sealant-Glazed Framing Members: Include accommodations for using temporary support device to retain glazing in place while structural sealant cures.
  7. Storefront Framing: Fabricate components for assembly using manufactures standard installation instructions.
  8. After fabrication, clearly mark components to identify their locations in Project according to Shop Drawings.
- F. Hardware Finishes:
1. Finishes for steel, brass, or bronze hardware items shall be satin chromium plated.
  2. Materials other than steel, brass, or bronze shall be finished to match the appearance of satin chromium plated.

## **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

### **3.1 INSTALLERS**

- A. Performance Standard Installers: See Section 01 6200 for definitions of Categories. See Section 01 4301 and 'Quality Assurance' in Part 1 'General' for Installer Qualifications of this specification:
1. General Contractor responsible for Installer(s), verification of qualifications, and performance. Contact Approved Manufacturer's Representative specified in Part 2 'Products' of this specification for potential installers if desired.

### **3.2 EXAMINATION**

- A. Verification Of Conditions:
1. Verify that framed openings will accommodate factory-fabricated storefront entry and window frames of dimensions agreed upon by Owner and Manufacturer and shown on Standard Plan documents.
  2. Verify floor is level across entire width of automatic door opening.
  3. Verify sill conditions are level and/or sloped away from openings as specified.
  4. Verify wall framing is dry, clean, sound, and free of voids and offsets, construction debris, sharp edges or anything that will prevent a successful installation of storefront system.
  5. Notify Architect and Owner in writing if framed openings are not as agreed upon.
    - a. Do not install storefront entry and window frames until deficiencies in framed openings have been corrected to allow installation of standard entries and windows.
    - b. Commencement of Work by installer is considered acceptance of substrate.

### 3.3 INSTALLATION

- A. General:
1. Installation shall meet or exceed all applicable federal, state and local requirements, referenced standards and conform to codes and ordinances of authorities having jurisdiction.
  2. All installation shall be in accordance with manufacturer's published recommendations and in accordance with approved shop drawings.
  3. Do not install damaged components. Fit frame joints tight, free of burrs and distortion. Rigidly secure non-movement joints.
  4. Isolate metal surfaces in contact with incompatible metal or corrosive substrates, including wood, by applying sealer tape to prevent electrolytic action.
- B. Set plumb, square, level, and in correct alignment and securely anchor to following tolerances:
1. Variation from plane: Limit to **1/8 inch (3 mm)** in **12 feet (3.6 meters)**; **1/4 inch (6 mm)** over total length.
  2. Offset from Alignment: For surfaces abutting in line, limit offset to **1/16 inch (1.6 mm)**.
  3. Offset at Corners: For surfaces meeting at corner, limit offset to **1/32 inch (0.8 mm)**.
  4. Diagonal measurements: Limit difference between diagonal measurements to **1/8 inch (3 mm)**.
  5. Sidelites: Line up horizontal rail in sidelight with door rail.
- C. Install doors without warp or rack. Adjust doors and hardware to provide ninety (90) degree operation, tight fit at contact points and smooth operation.
- D. Install exterior window units with through wall sill flashing.
- E. Thresholds:
1. Accurately cut thresholds to fit profile of storefront frame. Bed exterior thresholds in specified sealant at contact points with floor and make watertight.
- F. Sealants:
1. Apply in accordance with Section 07 9213 'Elastomeric Joint Sealant' requirements.
  2. Caulk joints between frames and walls, both interior and exterior to provide weather tight installation.
- G. Glazing Characteristics:
1. Interior Vestibule Glazing: Clear.
  2. Exterior Storefront Doors And Sidelights Opening Into Foyers And Corridors:
    - a. Clear interior pane and Clear exterior pane with Low E treatment on surface 2.

### 3.4 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Field Tests And Inspections:
1. Pull test doors, especially pairs of single doors separated by permanent mullions, to ensure security of opening.
  2. Make all necessary final adjustments to attain normal operation of each door and its mechanical hardware.
- B. Non-Conforming Work: Non-conforming work as covered in the General Conditions applies, but is not limited to the following:
1. Correct any work found defective or not complying with contract document requirements including removal and replacement of glass that has been broken, chipped, cracked, abraded, or damaged during construction period at no additional cost to the Owner.

### 3.5 ADJUSTING

- A. Adjust swing doors for proper operation after glazing entry. After repeated operation of completed installation, re-adjust door for optimum operating condition and safety if required.

### 3.6 PROTECTION

- A. During Installation:
  - 1. Installer's Responsibility:
    - a. During installation, all adjacent work shall be protected from damage.
- B. After Installation:
  - 1. General Contractor's Responsibility:
    - a. Institute protective measures required throughout remainder of construction period to ensure that aluminum entrances and storefronts will be without damage or deterioration, other than normal weathering, at time of acceptance.

### 3.7 CLEANING

- A. General:
  - 1. Installer's Responsibility:
    - a. Follow Manufacturer's written recommendations for cleaning and maintenance or guidelines of AAMA 609 & 610 'Cleaning and Maintenance Guide for Architecturally Finished Aluminum' (combined documents). Avoid damaging protective coatings and finishes.
    - b. Clean glass and aluminum surfaces, inside and out, promptly after installation. Remove excess glazing and sealant compounds, dirt, and other substances. Exercise care to avoid damage to coatings.
    - c. Remove nonpermanent labels, protective films, and clean surfaces following recommended procedures.
      - 1) Do NOT remove permanent AAMA/CSA or NFRC labels.
- B. Waste Management:
  - 1. Upon completion and verification of performance of installation, remove surplus materials, excess materials, rubbish, tools and equipment.

**END OF SECTION**



**SECTION 08 5113****ALUMINUM WINDOWS****PART 1 GENERAL****1.01 SECTION INCLUDES**

- A. Extruded aluminum windows with fixed sash, operating sash, and infill panels.
- B. Factory glazing.

**1.02 RELATED REQUIREMENTS**

- A. Section 07 2500 - Weather Barriers: Sealing frame to water-resistive barrier installed on adjacent construction.
- B. Section 07 9200 - Joint Sealants: Sealing joints between window frames and adjacent construction.
- C. Section 08 8000 - Glazing.

**1.03 REFERENCE STANDARDS**

- A. AAMA 711 - Voluntary Specification for Self-Adhering Flashing Used for Installation of Exterior Wall Fenestration Products 2013.
- B. AAMA 851 - Fenestration Sealants Guide for Windows, Window Walls and Curtain Walls 2009.
- C. AAMA 902 - Voluntary Specification for Sash Balances 2016.
- D. AAMA 910 - Life Cycle Specifications and Test Methods for AW Class Architectural Windows and Doors 2016.
- E. AAMA 1302.5-76 - Voluntary Specifications for Forced-Entry Resistant Aluminum Prime Windows Current Edition.
- F. AAMA/WDMA/CSA 101/I.S.2/A440 - North American Fenestration Standard/Specification for Windows, Doors, and Skylights 2017.
- G. AAMA CW-10 - Care and Handling of Architectural Aluminum from Shop to Site 2015.
- H. AAMA 609 & 610 - Cleaning and Maintenance Guide for Architecturally Finished Aluminum (Combined Document) 2015.
- I. AAMA 611 - Voluntary Specification for Anodized Architectural Aluminum 2020.
- J. AAMA 2605 - Voluntary Specification, Performance Requirements and Test Procedures for Superior Performing Organic Coatings on Aluminum Extrusions and Panels (with Coil Coating Appendix) 2022.
- K. ASTM E2190 - Standard Specification for Insulating Glass Unit Performance and Evaluation 2019.
- L. ASTM E90 - Standard Test Method for Laboratory Measurement of Airborne Sound Transmission Loss of Building Partitions and Elements 2009 (Reapproved 2016).
- M. ASTM E331 - Standard Test Method for Water Penetration of Exterior Windows, Skylights, Doors, and Curtain Walls by Uniform Static Air Pressure Difference 2000 (Reapproved 2016).
- N. ASTM E1886 - Standard Test Method for Performance of Exterior Windows, Curtain Walls, Doors, and Impact Protective Systems Impacted by Missile(s) and Exposed to Cyclic Pressure Differentials 2019.
- O. ASTM E1996 - Standard Specification for Performance of Exterior Windows, Curtain Walls, Doors, and Impact Protective Systems Impacted by Windborne Debris in Hurricanes 2020.
- P. ASTM E2112 - Standard Practice for Installation of Exterior Windows, Doors and Skylights 2019c.

- Q. ASTM F588 - Standard Test Methods for Measuring the Forced Entry Resistance of Window Assemblies, Excluding Glazing Impact 2017.
- R. NFRC 100 - Procedure for Determining Fenestration Product U-factors 2020.
- S. NFRC 200 - Procedure for Determining Fenestration Product Solar Heat Gain Coefficient and Visible Transmittance at Normal Incidence 2020.
- T. SSPC-Paint 20 - Zinc-Rich Coating (Type I - Inorganic, and Type II - Organic) 2019.

#### **1.04 ADMINISTRATIVE REQUIREMENTS**

- A. Preinstallation Meeting: Convene one week before starting work of this section.
- B. Participate in pre-installation conference.
- C. Schedule conference before scheduled installation of aluminum windows.
- D. In addition to agenda items specified in Section 01 3000, review following:
  - 1. Review Installation scheduling, coordination, and placement of windows.
  - 2. Review Manufacturer's installation requirements to assure issuance of Manufacturer's warranty.
  - 3. Before installing windows, review Manufacturer's submitted installation requirements and install first window, including flashing and sealant, to demonstrate standard for installation of remaining windows.

#### **1.05 SUBMITTALS**

- A. Action Submittals:
  - 1. Product Data:
    - a. Manufacturer's literature or cut sheet.
    - b. Literature on glazing.
    - c. Color and finish selection.
    - d. Window U and SHGC Factors, written certificate from window manufacture.
  - 2. Shop Drawings: Submit before beginning framing. Show rough opening requirements.
- B. Informational Submittals:
  - 1. Manufacturer Instructions:
    - a. Manufacturer's published installation instructions for windows, flashing, and sealants.
- C. Closeout Submittals:
  - 1. Include following in Operations And Maintenance Manual specified in Section 01 7800:
    - a. Warranty Documentation:
      - 1) Include copy of final, executed warranty.

#### **1.06 QUALITY ASSURANCE**

- A. Certifications:
  - 1. Confirmation of ICC report for flashing.

#### **1.07 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING**

- A. Delivery And Acceptance Requirements:
  - 1. Materials shall be delivered in original, unopened packages with labels intact.
  - 2. Examine and report damaged materials to Architect and/or Owner immediately.
- B. Storage And Handling Requirements:
  - 1. Provide secure location protected from the weather and other trades.
  - 2. Store window units in an upright position in clean and dry storage area above ground and protect from weather.
- C. Comply with requirements of AAMA CW-10.
- D. Protect finished surfaces with wrapping paper or strippable coating during installation. Do not use adhesive papers or sprayed coatings that bond to substrate when exposed to sunlight or weather.

**1.08 FIELD CONDITIONS**

- A. Do not install sealants when ambient temperature is less than 40 degrees F.
- B. Maintain this minimum temperature during and 24 hours after installation of sealants.

**1.09 WARRANTY**

- A. Special Warranty:
  - 1. Provide written non-prorated Manufacturer's warranty including:
    - a. Ten (10) years for seal failure.
    - b. Five (5) years for failure of operating hardware.
    - c. Five (5) years on stress cracks related to fabrication or installation problems.

**PART 2 PRODUCTS****2.01 MANUFACTURERS. SEE SECTION 01 6000.**

- A. Thermal Windows, Inc., Tulsa, Oklahoma:
  - 1. Contact Information:
    - a. General: Phone (918) 663-7580, [www.thermalwindows.com](http://www.thermalwindows.com).
    - b. Primary Contact: Seth Patterson (800) 259-7580 extension 1232, [spatterson@thermalwindows.com](mailto:spatterson@thermalwindows.com).

**2.02 MANUFACTURED WINDOW UNITS**

- A. Fixed Window:
  - 1. Fixed: Series 550.
  - 2. Fixed impact: TW4150HD.

**2.03 DESIGN CRITERIA (FIXED WINDOW)**

- A. Performance:
  - 1. Comply with minimum test requirements of AAMA/WDMA/CSA 101/I.S.2/A440 for classification of specified window in following:
    - a. Meet classification Class CW-PG35-FW for AAMA/WDMA/CSA 101/I.S.2/A440:
      - 1) Minimum Test Size: 60 inches (1 500 mm).
      - 2) Minimum Design Pressure: 35 lbf/sq ft (0.156 kn/sq ft).
      - 3) Deflection at Design Pressure: L/175.
      - 4) Minimum Structural Pressure: 52 lbf/sq ft (0.231 kn/sq ft).
      - 5) Minimum Water Pressure: 5.3 lbf/sq ft (0.024 kn/sq ft).
      - 6) Air Leakage Resistance: 0.3 cfm/sq ft (1.524 L/s/sq m) at 1.6 lbf/sq ft (0.007kn/sq ft).
  - 2. Structural:
    - a. Meet requirements of AAMA/WDMA/CSA 101/I.S.2/A440 H-C45 specification.
  - 3. NFRC: Meet requirements of ANSI/NFRC 100 and ANSI/NFRC 200.
  - 4. Sound Transmission Class:
    - a. Meet requirements of ASTM E90.
  - 5. Forced Entry:
    - a. Meet requirements for AAMA 1302.5 and ASTM F588 Load Identification Level 10.
- B. Material:
  - 1. Aluminum to be of proper alloy for commercial window construction.
  - 2. Extruded sections to be 6063-T5 aluminum alloy.
- C. Frame:
  - 1. Main frame members to be nominal thickness as required by AAMA/WDMA/CSA 101/I.S.2/A440.
    - a. Main frame to be 2-5/8 inch (67 mm) in depth.
  - 2. Main frames members to be extruded aluminum with a structural thermal barrier of high density low thermal conductivity polyurethane, poured and de-bridged.
- D. Assembly:

1. Main frame to be a mechanically joined construction.
  2. Corner joints to be "seam sealed" with quality grade of sealant meeting requirements of AAMA 851.
  3. All screws at joints of sash and main frame shall be secured into integral screw ports.
- E. Glazing:
1. Factory glazed with butyl glazing tape and snap in extruded aluminum glazing bead containing vinyl insert.
  2. Insulated glass units to be 1 inch (25 mm) overall thickness with two panes of double strength glass, separated by 3/4 inch (19 mm) air space.
  3. Insulated glass units shall meet requirements of ASTM E2190, Class "A".
- F. Finish:
1. Meet requirements of AAMA 2605 for Organic Coating on Extruded Aluminum.
- G. Approved Color:
1. Black.
- H. Muntin Pattern:
1. Determined by building style selection - See plans.

## 2.04 COMPONENTS

- A. Glazing Requirements:
1. Glazing Characteristics:
    - a. Obscure interior pane with pattern on surface 3 and Clear exterior pane with Low E treatment on surface 2.
  2. Glazing Beads: Manufacturer's standard.
- B. Glazing Requirements:
1. Glazing Characteristics:
    - a. Clear exterior pane and Clear interior pane with Low E treatment on surface 2 or 3.
  2. Glazing Beads: Manufacturer's standard.
- C. Flashing:
1. Self-adhesive rubberized asphalt with protective sheet.
  2. Acceptable Products:
    - a. Flexwrap by duPont Tyvek, Wilmington, DE [www.tyvek.com](http://www.tyvek.com).
    - b. Eternabond, Mundelein, IL [www.eternabond.com](http://www.eternabond.com).
    - c. FortiFlash 20 mil by Fortifiber, Reno, NV [www.fortifiber.com](http://www.fortifiber.com).
    - d. Vycor Self-Adhered Flashing by Grace Construction Products, Cambridge, MA [www.na.graceconstruction.com](http://www.na.graceconstruction.com).
    - e. Optiflash B-20 by Covalence Coated Products, Homer, LA [www.covalencecoatedproducts.com](http://www.covalencecoatedproducts.com).
    - f. BR20XL or Ice & Water Guard Window Sealing Tapes by Protecto Wrap, Denver, CO [www.protectowrap.com](http://www.protectowrap.com).
    - g. Rufco-Shield Window & Door Flashing by Raven Industries, Sioux Falls, SD [www.ravenind.com](http://www.ravenind.com).
    - h. Equal as approved by Architect before installation. See Section 01 6000.
- D. Anchoring Devices:
1. Aluminum or stainless steel.
  2. Other corrosion-resistant or insulated anchors as specifically approved by Architect in writing before use.
- E. Fasteners: Stainless steel.
- F. Glazing Materials: See Section 08 8000.
- G. Sealant for Setting Sills and Sill Flashing: Non-curing butyl type.
1. See Section 07 9200 for additional requirements.

## 2.05 SOURCE QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Identification:
  - 1. When delivered to Project site, windows shall bear permanent label stating model of window and Manufacturer's name, or AAMA label.

## 2.06 FINISHES

- A. Superior Performing Organic Coatings System: Manufacturer's standard multi-coat superior performing organic coatings system complying with AAMA 2605, including at least 70 percent polyvinylidene fluoride (PVDF) resin, and at least 80 percent of aluminum extrusion and panels surfaces having minimum total dry film thickness (DFT) of 1.2 mils, 0.0012 inch. Providing pencil hardness of 3H. Thermo-cured two-coat system consisting of corrosion inhibiting epoxy primer and topcoat factory-applied over properly pre-treated metal.
- B. Finish Color: Black.
- C. Approved Manufacturers. See Section 01 6200:
  - 1. BASF.
  - 2. PPG Industries, Inc.
  - 3. Valspar Corporation.
- D. Shop and Touch-Up Primer for Steel Components: Zinc oxide, alkyd, linseed oil primer appropriate for use over hand cleaned steel.
- E. Touch-Up Primer for Galvanized Steel Surfaces: SSPC-Paint 20, zinc rich.

## PART 3 EXECUTION

### 3.01 EXAMINATION

- A. Evaluation And Assessment:
  - 1. Openings:
    - a. Examine openings for adequacy in allowing successful installation and operation.
    - b. Verify openings are prepared to specified dimensions and are plumb and level.
  - 2. Notify Architect in writing of inadequate conditions.
    - a. Do not install windows until conditions have been corrected.
    - b. Commencement of Work by installer is considered acceptance of substrate.
- B. Verify that wall openings and adjoining water-resistive barrier materials are ready to receive aluminum windows; see Section 07 2500.

### 3.02 PRIME WINDOW INSTALLATION

- A. Install windows in accordance with manufacturer's instructions.
- B. Install window assembly in accordance with AAMA/WDMA/CSA 101/I.S.2/A440.
- C. Install windows in accordance with ASTM E2112.
- D. Attach window frame and shims to perimeter opening to accommodate construction tolerances and other irregularities.
- E. Align window plumb and level, free of warp or twist. Maintain dimensional tolerances and alignment with adjacent work.
- F. Install sill and sill end angles.
- G. Set sill members and sill flashing in continuous bead of sealant.
- H. Provide thermal isolation where components penetrate or disrupt building insulation. Pack fibrous insulation in shim spaces at perimeter of assembly to maintain continuity of thermal barrier.
- I. Install windows after installation of air infiltration barrier. Integrate air infiltration barrier, flashing, and sealants as required to provide weather tight installation and comply with Manufacturer's instructions.

- J. Avoid direct contact between aluminum and adjacent steel work by insulating with materials equal to 3M's EC 1202 tape if materials are in pressure contact or with bituminous paint if pressure between surfaces cannot be maintained.
- K. Install glass and infill panels in accordance with requirements; see Section 08 8000.

### **3.03 TOLERANCES**

- A. Maximum Variation from Level or Plumb: 1/16 inches every 3 ft non-cumulative or 1/8 inches per 10 ft, whichever is less.

### **3.04 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL**

- A. Provide services of aluminum window manufacturer's field representative to observe for proper installation of system and submit report.
- B. See Section 01 4000 - Quality Requirements for independent field testing and inspection requirements, and requirements for monitoring quality of specified product installations.
- C. Field Inspections:
  - 1. Notify Architect when windows are to be delivered to Project site to allow opportunity for Architect's inspection before installation.
  - 2. After installation of windows and before installation of exterior wall finish, inspect windows and compare to installation standard accepted at Pre-Installation Conference.
- D. Non-Conforming Work: Non-conforming work as covered in the General Conditions applies, but is not limited to the following:
  - 1. Correct any work found defective or not complying with contract document requirements at no additional cost to the Owner.

### **3.05 CLEANING**

- A. See Section 01 7419 - Construction Waste Management and Disposal for additional requirements.
- B. Remove protective material from factory finished aluminum surfaces.
- C. Wash surfaces by method recommended and acceptable to window manufacturer; rinse and wipe surfaces clean.
- D. Upon completion of installation, thoroughly clean aluminum surfaces in accordance with AAMA 609 & 610.
- E. Remove excess glazing sealant by moderate use of mineral spirits or other solvent acceptable to sealant and window manufacturer.

**END OF SECTION**

**SECTION 08 7101****COMMON FINISH HARDWARE REQUIREMENTS****PART 1 - GENERAL****1.1 SUMMARY**

- A. Includes But Not Limited To:
  - 1. General requirements for finish hardware related to architectural wood and hollow metal doors.
- B. Related Requirements:
  - 1. Section 06 2024: 'Door, Frame, And Finish Hardware Installation' for installation of hardware.
  - 2. Section 06 4114: 'Wood-Veneer-Faced Architectural Cabinets' for architectural woodwork hardware.
  - 3. Section 08 0601: 'Hardware Group and Keying Schedules'.
  - 4. Section 08 4113: 'Aluminum-Framed Entrances and Storefronts' for storefront hardware.

**1.2 REFERENCES**

- A. Association Publications:
  - 1. Builders Hardware Manufacturers Association (BHMA), 355 Lexington Avenue, 15th Floor, New York, NY 10017-6603, Tel: 212-297-2122 Fax: 212-370-9047, [www.buildershardware.com](http://www.buildershardware.com).
- B. Reference Standards:
  - 1. International Code Council / American National Standards Institute:
    - a. ICC / ANSI A117.1-2009, 'Accessible and Usable Buildings and Facilities'.
  - 2. Underwriters Laboratories (UL):
    - a. UL 10B, 'Fire Tests of Door Assemblies' (10th Edition).
    - b. UL 10C, 'Positive Pressure Fire Tests of Door Assemblies' (Third Edition).

**1.3 ADMINISTRATIVE REQUIREMENTS**

- A. Coordination:
  - 1. Hardware Templates:
    - a. Provide hardware templates to Sections 08 1213, 08 1313, and 08 1429 within fourteen (14) days after Architect approves hardware schedule.
    - b. Supply necessary hardware installation templates to Section 06 2024 before pre-installation conference.

**1.4 SUBMITTALS**

- A. Action Submittals:
  - 1. Product Data:
    - a. Manufacturer's cut sheets.
    - b. Two (2) copies of Manufacturer's installation, adjustment, and maintenance instructions for each piece of hardware. Include one (1) set in 'Operations And Maintenance Manual' and send one (1) set with hardware when delivered.
    - c. Copy of hardware schedule.
    - d. Written copy of keying system explanation.
  - 2. Shop Drawings:
    - a. Submit hardware schedule indicating hardware to be supplied.
    - b. Schedule shall indicate details such as proper type of strikeplates, spindle lengths, hand, backset, and bevel of locks, hand and degree opening of closer, length of kickplates, length

of rods and flushbolts, type of door stop, and other necessary information necessary to determine exact hardware requirements.

B. Closeout Submittals:

1. Include following in Operations And Maintenance Manual specified in Section 01 7800:
  - a. Operations and Maintenance Data:
    - 1) Manufacturer's installation, adjustment, and maintenance instructions for each piece of hardware.
  - b. Record Documentation:
    - 1) Manufacturers documentation:
      - a) Manufacturer's literature and/or cut sheets.
      - b) Include keying plan and bitting schedule.

## 1.5 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

A. Storage And Handling Requirements:

1. Neatly and securely package hardware items by hardware group and identify for individual door with specified group number and set number used on Supplier's hardware schedule.
2. Include fasteners and accessories necessary for installation and operation of finish hardware in same package.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 SUPPLIERS

A. Category Three Approved Suppliers. See Section 01 6200 for definitions of Categories:

1. Architectural Building Supply, Salt Lake City, UT [www.cookandboardman.com](http://www.cookandboardman.com):
  - a. Contact Information: Russ Farley, phone (800) 574-4369, fax 801-484-6817, or e-mail [russf@absdoors.com](mailto:russf@absdoors.com).
2. Beacon Metals Inc, Salt Lake City, UT [www.beacon-metals.com](http://www.beacon-metals.com):
  - a. Contact Information: Jared Butler, phone (801) 486-4884, cell (435) 216-2297, FAX 801-485-7647, or e-mail [Jared@beacon-metals.com](mailto:Jared@beacon-metals.com).
3. Midwest D-Vision Solutions, Salt Lake City, UT [www.mwdsutah.com](http://www.mwdsutah.com).
  - a. Contact Information: Dan Mercer, office (801) 377-4355, cell (801) 618-9456, e-mail [danm@mwdsutah.com](mailto:danm@mwdsutah.com).

### 2.2 FINISHES

A. Hardware Finishes:

1. Finishes for brass or bronze hardware items shall be:
  - a. ANSI / BHMA Finish Code 626.
    - 1) Description: Satin Chromium Plated.
    - 2) Base Metal: Brass. Bronze.
2. Finishes for flat goods items may be:
  - a. ANSI / BHMA Finish Code 630.
    - 1) Description: Satin Stainless Steel.
    - 2) Base Metal: Stainless Steel (300 Series).
3. Materials other than steel, brass, or bronze shall be finished to match appearance satin chromium plated, except flat goods which shall be satin stainless steel.



**2.3 FASTENERS**

- A. Fasteners shall be of suitable types, sizes and quantities to properly secure hardware. Fasteners shall be of same material and finish as hardware unless otherwise specified. Fasteners exposed to weather shall be non-ferrous or corrosion resisting steel.

**PART 3 - EXECUTION****3.1 PREPARATION**

- A. Before ordering materials, examine Contract Documents to be assured that material to be ordered is appropriate for thickness and substrate to which it is to be secured and will function as intended.

**END OF SECTION**

**SECTION 08 7102****HANGING DEVICES****PART 1 - GENERAL****1.1 SUMMARY**

- A. Products Furnished But Not Installed Under This Section:
  - 1. Hinges for flush wood and hollow metal doors.
- B. Related Requirements:
  - 1. Section 08 7101: 'Common Hardware Requirements'.

**PART 2 - PRODUCTS****2.1 MANUFACTURED UNITS**

- A. Manufacturers:
  - 1. Manufacturer Contact List:
    - a. Hager Companies, St Louis, MO [www.hagerhinge.com](http://www.hagerhinge.com).
    - b. Ives, New Haven, CT [www.iveshardware.com](http://www.iveshardware.com).
    - c. McKinney, Scranton, PA [www.mckinneyhinge.com](http://www.mckinneyhinge.com).
    - d. PBB, Ontario, CA [www.pbbinc.com](http://www.pbbinc.com).
    - e. Stanley (dormakaba Americas), Indianapolis IN [www.stanleyhardwarefordoors.com/products/](http://www.stanleyhardwarefordoors.com/products/).
- B. Hinges:
  - 1. Doors:
    - a. Sizes:
      - 1) Non-Fire-Rated Doors:
        - a) 1-3/4 inch 44.5 mm non-fire-rated wood doors in wood frames: 4 inches by 4 inches (100 mm by 100 mm).
        - b) 1-3/8 inch 35 mm wood or metal doors: 3-1/2 inches by 3-1/2 inches (89 mm by 89 mm).
  - 2. Use non-removable pins on exterior opening doors.
  - 3. Hinges on exterior doors shall be solid brass, plated to achieve specified finish.
  - 4. Category Four Approved Products. See Section 01 6200 for definitions of Categories:
    - a. Interior:
      - 1) Hager: BB 1279.
      - 2) Ives: 5BBI.
      - 3) McKinney: TA 2714.
      - 4) MacPro / McKinney: MPB79.
      - 5) PBB: BB81.
      - 6) Stanley: FBB 179.
    - b. Exterior:
      - 1) Hager: BB 1191.
      - 2) Ives: 5BBI.
      - 3) McKinney: TA 2314.
      - 4) PBB: BB21.
      - 5) Stanley: FBB 191.

**PART 3 - EXECUTION: Not Used**

**END OF SECTION**

**SECTION 08 7103****SECURING DEVICES****PART 1 - GENERAL****1.1 SUMMARY**

- A. Products Furnished But Not Installed Under This Section:
  - 1. Items for architectural wood or hollow metal doors:
    - a. Flush bolts.
    - b. Locksets and latchsets.
    - c. Deadbolts.
    - d. Cylinders.
- B. Related Requirements:
  - 1. Section 08 7101: Common Hardware Requirements.
  - 2. Miscellaneous padlocks by local Church FM Group.

**1.2 REFERENCES**

- A. Definitions:
  - 1. Grade 1 Heavy Duty Key-In Lever Cylindrical Lockset:
    - a. Performance Features:
      - 1) Exceeds 1,000,000 ANSI cycles.
      - 2) Clutching mechanism standard.
      - 3) Thru-bolt design and heavy-duty spring tension provides longer performance life and prevents lever sag.
      - 4) ADA-compliant thumbturn.
      - 5) Mortise case is easily field reversible.
      - 6) Pre-assembled trims with spring-loaded spindles automatically adjust to door thickness.
      - 7) Partial security separator prevents spindle manipulation.
      - 8) Anti-friction throwbolt.
  - 2. Grade 2 Standard Duty Key-In Lever Cylindrical Lockset:
    - a. Performance Features:
      - 1) Exceeds 400,000 ANSI cycles.
      - 2) Single motion egress provides easy emergency exit.
      - 3) Full 1 inch (25 mm) throwbolt with saw resistant hardened steel roller pin.
      - 4) Anti-drill design deadbolt. Two (2) ball bearings inserted to prevent drill attacks.
      - 5) ADA-compliant thumbturn.

**1.3 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING**

- A. Delivery And Acceptance Requirements:
  - 1. Standard Key Delivery:
    - a. Include change keys with hardware.

**PART 2 - PRODUCTS****2.1 MANUFACTURED UNITS**

- A. Manufacturers:
  - 1. Manufacturer List:

- a. Best Locks by Stanley, Indianapolis IN [www.stanleysecuritysolutions.com](http://www.stanleysecuritysolutions.com).
  - b. Hager, St Louis, MO [www.hagerhinge.com](http://www.hagerhinge.com).
  - c. Ives, New Haven, CT [www.iveshardware.com](http://www.iveshardware.com).
  - d. Marks USA, Amityville, NY [www.marksusa.com](http://www.marksusa.com).
  - e. Precision Hardware, Romulus, MI [www.precisionhardware.com](http://www.precisionhardware.com).
  - f. Rockwood, Manufacturing Co, Rockwood, PA [www.rockwoodmfg.com](http://www.rockwoodmfg.com).
  - g. Sargent, New Haven, CT [www.sargentlock.com](http://www.sargentlock.com).
  - h. Schlage, Colorado Springs, CO [www.schlage.com](http://www.schlage.com).
  - i. Von Duprin, Indianapolis, IN [www.vonduprin.com](http://www.vonduprin.com).
  - j. Yale Commercial Locks, Lenoir City, TN [www.yalecommercial.com](http://www.yalecommercial.com).
- B. General:
1. Backsets shall be **2-3/4 inches (70 mm)**.
  2. Furnish lead shields where required.
- C. Flush Bolts:
1. Rod length: **12 inch (300 mm)** minimum.
  2. Type Two Acceptable Products:
    - a. Manual Flush Bolts (Wood Doors):
      - 1) Hager 283D.
      - 2) Ives FB458.
      - 3) Rockwood 555.
    - b. Equal as approved by Architect before installation. See Section 01 6200.
  3. Dust Proof Strike:
    - a. Floor and/or threshold.
    - b. Type Two Acceptable Products:
      - 1) Hager: 280X.
      - 2) Ives: DP2.
      - 3) Rockwood 570.
      - 4) Equal as approved by Architect before installation. See Section 01 6200.
- D. Locksets And Latchsets:
1. Design Criteria:
    - a. Grade 1 Heavy Duty Key-In Lever Cylindrical Lockset:
      - 1) ANSI/BHMA A156.02 Series 4000 Grade 1.
      - 2) Meet UL 3 hour fire rating.
      - 3) Meet ADA Compliant ANSI A117.1 Accessibility Code.
      - 4) Door Lever:
        - a) Meet California code for **1/2 inch (12.7 mm)** or less return to door.
        - b) Vandal-Resistant Lever.
      - 5) Deadlocking Latchbolt.
  2. Lever Operated:
    - a. Category Four Approved Products. See Section 01 6200 for definitions of Categories:
      - 1) Grade 1 Heavy Duty Key-In Lever Cylindrical Locksets (Used only in Meetinghouse Module doors with CES Seminary and Institute additions:
        - a) 9K Series Best Lock with 15D Lever by Stanley standard cylinders - (I/C cores may be used when authorized by AEC).
        - b) 195 Series with American Lever by Marks USA.
        - c) 10 Line Series with L Lever by Sargent.
        - d) ND Series with Rhodes (RHO) Lever by Schlage.
        - e) 5400LN Series with Augusta (AU) Lever by Yale.
- E. Deadbolts:
1. Category Four Approved Products. See Section 01 6200 for definitions of Categories:
    - a. Match manufacturer of locksets.
- F. Standard Cylinders:
1. Provide cylinders for interior exit devices requiring cylinders.
  2. Category Four Approved Products. See Section 01 6200 for definitions of Categories.
    - a. Match Manufacturer of locksets.

- G. Exit Devices:
  - 1. Use operable lever trim.
  - 2. Provide labeled hardware where required by local code authority.
  - 3. Category Four Approved Products. See Section 01 6200 for definitions of Categories:
    - a. Apex Series by Precision.
    - b. 80 Series by Sargent.
    - c. 99 or 98 Series by Von Duprin.
    - d. 7100 Series by Yale.

### **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

#### **3.1 CLOSE-OUT ACTIVITIES**

- A. Owner's Instructions:
  - 1. Before Final Acceptance Meeting, send master keys to current Facilities Manager.

**END OF SECTION**

**SECTION 08 7104****OPERATING TRIM****PART 1 - GENERAL****1.1 SUMMARY**

- A. Products Furnished But Not Installed Under This Section:
  - 1. Interior push / pulls.
- B. Related Requirements:
  - 1. Section 08 7101: Common Hardware Requirements and VMR Suppliers.

**PART 2 - PRODUCTS****2.1 MANUFACTURED UNITS**

- A. Standard Door Push / Pulls:
  - 1. Size: **15 inches (380 mm)** by **3-1/2 inch (89 mm)**.
  - 2. Type Two Acceptable Products:
    - a. PS3515, PL3515 / 80301 by Glynn-Johnson, Indianapolis, IN [www.glynn-johnson.com](http://www.glynn-johnson.com).
    - b. 39E, 30S by Hager, St Louis, MO [www.hagerhinge.com](http://www.hagerhinge.com).
    - c. 8200, 8302 by Ives, Wallingford, CT [www.iveshardware.com](http://www.iveshardware.com).
    - d. 70B, 105x70B by Rockwood Manufacturing Co, Rockwood, PA [www.rockwoodmfg.com](http://www.rockwoodmfg.com).
    - e. Equal as approved by Architect before installation. See Section 01 6200.

**PART 3 - EXECUTION: Not Used****END OF SECTION**

**SECTION 08 7106****CLOSING DEVICES****PART 1 - GENERAL****1.1 SUMMARY**

- A. Products Furnished But Not Installed Under This Section:
  - 1. Closers for flush wood doors and hollow metal doors.
- B. Related Requirements:
  - 1. Section 08 7101: 'Common Finish Hardware Requirements'.
  - 2. Section 08 7108: 'Stops And Holders'.

**1.2 SUBMITTALS**

- A. Closeout Submittals:
  - 1. Include following in Operations And Maintenance Manual specified in Section 01 7800:
    - a. Warranty Documentation:
      - 1) Manufacturer's final executed copy of warranty.

**1.3 WARRANTY**

- A. Manufacturer Warranty:
  - 1. Manufacturer's Standard Warranty, five (5) years minimum.

**PART 2 - PRODUCTS****2.1 MANUFACTURED UNITS**

- A. Manufacturers:
  - 1. Category Four Approved Manufacturers. See Section 01 6200 for definitions of Categories:
    - a. 8900 Series by Dorma Architectural Hardware, Reamstown, PA [www.dorma.com/usa](http://www.dorma.com/usa).
    - b. 1461 Series by LCN Closers, Princeton, IL [www.lcnclosers.com](http://www.lcnclosers.com).
    - c. 8501 Series by Norton Door Controls, Charlotte, NC [www.nortondoorcontrols.com](http://www.nortondoorcontrols.com).
    - d. 1431 Series by Sargent, New Haven, CT [www.sargentlock.com](http://www.sargentlock.com).
    - e. D-3550/D-3551 Series by Stanley (dormakaba Americas), Indianapolis IN [www.stanleyhardwarefordoors.com/products/](http://www.stanleyhardwarefordoors.com/products/).
- B. Surface-Mounted Overhead Door Closers:
  - 1. Closers provided under this Section shall be from same Manufacturer.
  - 2. Provide parallel arms on closers unless door position in relation to adjacent wall requires otherwise. Provide covers.
  - 3. Door Closers on doors that swing 180 degree as shown on Contract Documents:
    - a. Closers shall allow for 180 degree opening without engaging stop function. Wall stop or Floor stop is specified in Door Schedule and Section 08 7108, 'Stops And Holders'.
    - b. Closers shall have following features:
      - 1) Adjustable sweep speed.
      - 2) Adjustable backcheck.
      - 3) Non-handed, non-sized.
      - 4) Hold open arm function (Friction Hold Open) (Non-Fire-Rated Corridors).
      - 5) Delayed action closing where noted on Door Schedule.



4. Door Closers on doors that swing 90 degree as shown on Contract Documents:
  - a. Closers shall allow for 100 degree opening with engaging stop function.
  - b. Closers shall have following features:
    - 1) Adjustable sweep speed.
    - 2) Adjustable backcheck.
    - 3) Non-handed, non-sized.
    - 4) Hold open arm function with thumb turn or handle control (Cush And Hold) (Non-Fire-Rated Corridors).

## **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

### **3.1 INSTALLATION**

- A. Mount closers on stop side of door wherever conditions permit.
- B. Through-bolt hardware-to-door connections.

### **3.2 ADJUSTING**

- A. Adjust closers to provide maximum opening force as required by governing code authority and proper backcheck and sweep speed.

**END OF SECTION**

**SECTION 08 7107****PROTECTIVE PLATES AND TRIM****PART 1 - GENERAL****1.1 SUMMARY**

- A. Products Furnished But Not Installed Under This Section:
  - 1. Kick plates.
- B. Related Requirements:
  - 1. Section 08 7101: Common Hardware Requirements and VMR Suppliers.

**PART 2 - PRODUCTS****2.1 MANUFACTURED UNITS**

- A. Manufacturers:
  - 1. Type Two Acceptable Manufacturers:
    - a. Glynn-Johnson, Indianapolis, IN [www.glynn-johnson.com](http://www.glynn-johnson.com).
    - b. Hager, St Louis, MO (800) 255-3590 or (314) 772-4400 [www.hagerhinge.com](http://www.hagerhinge.com).
    - c. Ives, Wallingford, CT [www.iveshardware.com](http://www.iveshardware.com).
    - d. Rockwood Manufacturing Co, Rockwood, PA [www.rockwoodmfg.com](http://www.rockwoodmfg.com).
    - e. Equal as approved by Architect before installation. See Section 01 6200.
- B. Protective Plates:
  - 1. Material: 0.050 inch (1.27) mm thick Stainless Steel.
  - 2. Sizes:
    - a. Kick Plates: 10 inches (255) mm high by width of door less 3/4 inch (19 mm) on each side.

**PART 3 - EXECUTION: Not Used****END OF SECTION**

**SECTION 08 7108**

**STOPS AND HOLDERS**

**PART 1 - GENERAL**

**1.1 SUMMARY**

- A. Products Supplied But Not Installed Under This Section:
  - 1. Door stops.
- B. Related Sections:
  - 1. Section 08 7101: Common Hardware Requirements.

**PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

**2.1 MANUFACTURED UNITS**

- A. Manufacturers:
  - 1. Manufacturer Contact List:
    - a. Glynn-Johnson, Indianapolis, IN [www.glynn-johnson.com](http://www.glynn-johnson.com).
    - b. Hager, St Louis, MO [www.hagerhinge.com](http://www.hagerhinge.com).
    - c. Ives, Wallingford, CT [www.iveshardware.com](http://www.iveshardware.com).
    - d. Rockwood Manufacturing Co, Rockwood, PA [www.rockwoodmfg.com](http://www.rockwoodmfg.com).
    - e. Sargent, New Haven, CT (800) 906-6606 or (203) 562-2151 [www.sargentlock.com](http://www.sargentlock.com).

- B. Stops:
  - 1. Use wall type stops unless indicated otherwise on Door Schedule.
  - 2. Provide model appropriate for substrate. Wall stops may be either cast or wrought.
  - 3. Type Two Acceptable Products:

	Interior Wall	Exterior Wall	Floor Mount	Overhead.
b. Hager	236W	255W	243F	---
c. Ives	WS407CCV	WS447	FS438	---
d. Rockwood	409	474 / 475	440 / 441	---
e. Glynn Johnson	---	---	---	GJ 90S
f. Sargent	---	---	---	590S Series
g.	Equal as approved by Architect before Installation. See Section 01 6200.			

**PART 3 - EXECUTION**

**3.1 INSTALLATION**

- A. Interface With Other Work: When using overhead stops, coordinate installation with door closer and other door hardware.

**END OF SECTION**

**SECTION 08 7109****ACCESSORIES****PART 1 - GENERAL****1.1 SUMMARY**

- A. Products Furnished But Not Installed Under This Section:
  - 1. Acoustical seals.
  - 2. Smoke Gaskets.
  - 3. Thresholds (metal) where required for wood doors and hollow metal doors.
  - 4. Weatherstripping for exterior hollow metal doors.
  - 5. Door bottoms/door sweeps.
  
- B. Related Requirements:
  - 1. Section 08 4113: 'Aluminum-Framed Entrances And Storefronts' for thresholds.
  - 2. Section 08 7101: 'Common Finish Hardware Requirements' for general finish hardware requirements and Approved Suppliers.
  - 3. Section 09 3013: 'Ceramic Tiling' for stone thresholds.

**1.2 REFERENCES**

- A. Association Publications:
  - 1. American Architectural Manufacturers Association (AAMA):
    - a. AAMA 609 & 609-09, 'Cleaning and Maintenance Guide for Architecturally Finished Aluminum' (combined document).
    - b. AAMA 611-12, 'Voluntary Standards for Anodized Architectural Aluminum'.
    - c. AAMA 701/702-11, 'Voluntary Specification for Pile Weatherstripping and Replaceable Fenestration Weatherseals'.
  - 2. National Association of Architectural Metal Manufacturers (NAAMM):
    - a. AMP 500-06, 'Metal Finishes Manual' for Architectural and Metal Products.
  
- B. Reference Standards:
  - 1. American National Standards Institute / Builders Hardware Manufacturers Association:
    - a. ANSI / BHMA A156.18-2012, 'Materials and Finishes'.
    - b. ANSI / BHMA A156.21-2014, 'American National Standard for Thresholds'.
  - 2. International Code Council / American National Standards Institute:
    - a. ICC / ANSI A117.1-2009, 'Accessible and Usable Buildings and Facilities'.

**PART 2 - PRODUCTS****2.1 MANUFACTURED UNITS**

- A. Manufacturers:
  - 1. Manufacturer Contact List:
    - a. Hager, St Louis, MO [www.hagerhinge.com](http://www.hagerhinge.com).
    - b. NGP - National Guard Products, Memphis, TN [www.ngpinc.com](http://www.ngpinc.com).
    - c. Pemko Manufacturing, Ventura, CA [www.pemko.com](http://www.pemko.com).
  
- B. Acoustical Seals:
  - 1. Color as selected by Architect.
  - 2. Type One Acceptable Products:
    - a. Door Bottom Shoe for Wood Door:

- 1) 13VDkB by NGP.
  - 2) 211DV by Pemko.
  - b. Door Bottom Shoe for Metal Door:
    - 1) 779S-A by Hager.
    - 2) 35EV by NGP.
    - 3) 217AV by Pemko.
  - c. Equal as approved by Architect before bidding. See Section 01 6200.
- C. Smoke Gaskets:
1. Color as selected by Architect.
  2. Type One Acceptable Products:
    - a. 726 by Hager.
    - b. 5050 by NGP.
    - c. PK 55 by Pemko.
    - d. Equal as approved by Architect before bidding. See Section 01 6200.
- D. Thresholds:
1. Type One Acceptable Products:
    - a. Design Criteria:
      - 1) Meet handicap accessibility requirements (ADA):
    - b. Interior Doors at Acoustic Seals, Approved Products:
      - 1) Carpet threshold (carpet to carpet):
        - a) 505S DBA by Hager.
        - b) 414 DKB by NGP.
        - c) 236 D by Pemko.
      - 2) Carpet threshold (carpet to concrete, wood, synthetic, or resilient flooring):
        - a) 417 DKB by NGP.
        - b) 174 D by Pemko.
      - 3) Saddle threshold:
        - a) 418S DBA by Hager.
        - b) 411 DKB by NGP.
        - c) 151 D by Pemko.
    - c. Out swinging metal exterior doors (exterior Utility Rooms only):
      - 1) 891 V by NGP.
      - 2) 185 V by Pemko.
    - d. Equals as approved by Architect before bidding. See Section 01 6200.
- E. Weatherstripping:
1. Type One Acceptable Products:
    - a. Finish: clear anodized aluminum.
    - b. Perimeter:
      - 1) 800S by Hager.
      - 2) A625 A by NGP.
      - 3) 35041 CP by Pemko.
    - c. Equal as approved by Architect before bidding. See Section 01 6200.
    - d. Bottom (see Sweepstrip):

## **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

### **3.1 INSTALLATION**

- A. Install smoke gaskets and acoustical seals in manner to give continuous air-tight fit.
1. Install smoke gaskets as per Manufacturer's installation requirements:
    - a. Hinge Jamb: Install smoke gaskets on jamb face of door frame so door will compress smoke gasket.
    - b. Header and Strike Jamb: Install smoke gaskets on face of stop of door frame so door will compress smoke gasket.

2. Install acoustical seal with seal under door.

**END OF SECTION**

**SECTION 08 7913****KEY STORAGE AND CONTROL EQUIPMENT****PART 1 - GENERAL****1.1 SUMMARY**

- A. Products Furnished But Not Installed Under This Section:
  - 1. Key cabinet.
- B. Related Requirements:
  - 1. Section 08 0601: Keying schedule.
  - 2. Section 08 7101: Common Hardware Requirements.

**PART 2 - PRODUCTS****2.1 MANUFACTURED UNITS**

- A. Key Cabinet:
  - 1. Provide cabinet with 20 hooks minimum.
  - 2. 20 ga (0.95 mm) steel with prime coat and provided with lock.

**PART 3 - EXECUTION****3.1 INSTALLATION**

- A. Turn key cabinet over to Owner's designated representative at Substantial Completion with all keys required for every locking device on Project identified by tags and on hooks. Owner will be responsible for installation.

**END OF SECTION**

**SECTION 08 8000  
GLAZING****PART 1 GENERAL****1.01 SECTION INCLUDES**

- A. Insulating glass units.
- B. Glazing units.
- C. Plastic films.
- D. Glazing compounds.

**1.02 RELATED REQUIREMENTS**

- A. Section 06 4100 - Architectural Wood Casework: Cabinets with requirements for glass shelves and [\_\_\_\_\_].

**1.03 REFERENCE STANDARDS**

- A. 16 CFR 1201 - Safety Standard for Architectural Glazing Materials Current Edition.
- B. ANSI Z97.1 - American National Standard for Safety Glazing Materials Used in Buildings - Safety Performance Specifications and Methods of Test 2015 (Reaffirmed 2020).
- C. ASTM C1036 - Standard Specification for Flat Glass 2021.
- D. ASTM C1048 - Standard Specification for Heat-Strengthened and Fully Tempered Flat Glass 2018.
- E. ASTM C1172 - Standard Specification for Laminated Architectural Flat Glass 2019.
- F. ASTM C1193 - Standard Guide for Use of Joint Sealants 2016.
- G. ASTM C1281 - Standard Specification for Preformed Tape Sealants for Glazing Applications 2016.
- H. ASTM C1376 - Standard Specification for Pyrolytic and Vacuum Deposition Coatings on Flat Glass 2021a.
- I. GANA (GM) - GANA Glazing Manual 2008.
- J. GANA (SM) - GANA Sealant Manual 2008.
- K. GANA (LGRM) - Laminated Glazing Reference Manual 2019.
- L. IGMA TM-3000 - North American Glazing Guidelines for Sealed Insulating Glass Units for Commercial & Residential Use 1990 (2016).

**1.04 SUBMITTALS**

- A. Product Data on Insulating Glass Unit, Glazing Unit, Plastic Sheet Glazing Unit, Plastic Film, and [\_\_\_\_\_] Glazing Types: Provide structural, physical and environmental characteristics, size limitations, special handling and installation requirements.
- B. Product Data on Glazing Compounds and Accessories: Provide chemical, functional, and environmental characteristics, limitations, special application requirements, and identify available colors.
- C. Samples: Submit two samples 12 by 12 inch in size of glass units.
- D. Installer's qualification statement.
- E. Warranty Documentation: Submit manufacturer warranty and ensure that forms have been completed in Owner's name and registered with manufacturer.

**1.05 QUALITY ASSURANCE**

- A. Perform Work in accordance with GANA (GM), GANA (SM), GANA (LGRM), IGMA TM-3000, and [\_\_\_\_\_] for glazing installation methods. Maintain one copy on site.
- B. Installer Qualifications:



1. Installer: Requirements of Section 01 4301 applies, but not limited to following:
  - a. Satisfactorily completed at least three (3) installations of similar size, scope, and complexity in each of past two (2) years and be approved by glass product Manufacturer before bidding.
  - b. Upon request, submit documentation.
- C. Certifications:
  1. Labels showing strength, grade, thickness, type, and quality are required on each piece of glass.
  2. Manufacturers/Fabricators certifying products furnished comply with project requirements.
  3. Insulating-Glass Certification Program: Indicate compliance with requirements of Insulating Glass Certification Council on applicable glazing products.

#### **1.06 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING**

- A. Delivery And Acceptance Requirements:
  1. Follow Manufacturer's instruction for receiving, handling, and protecting glass & glazing materials to prevent breakage scratching, damage to seals, or other visible damage.
  2. Deliver materials in manufacturer's original, unopened, undamaged containers with identification labels intact.
- B. Storage And Handling Requirements:
  1. Follow Manufacturer's instruction for storing and protecting glass & glazing materials.
  2. Store materials protected from exposure to harmful environmental conditions and at temperatures and humidity conditions recommended by Manufacturer.
  3. Protect edge damage to glass, and damage/deterioration to coating on glass.

#### **1.07 FIELD CONDITIONS**

- A. Do not install glazing when ambient temperature is less than 40 degrees F.
- B. Do not proceed with glazing when ambient and substrate temperature conditions are outside the limits permitted by glazing material manufacturer or when joint substrates are wet due to rain, frost, condensation or other causes.

#### **1.08 WARRANTY**

- A. Insulating Glass Units: Provide a ten (10) year manufacturer warranty, signed by insulating-glass Manufacturer/Fabricator, agreeing to replace insulating-glass units to include coverage for seal failure, moisture, interpane dusting or misting, including providing products to replace failed units from date of installation.
- B. Laminated Glass: Provide a ten (10) year manufacturer warranty to include coverage for delamination, including providing products to replace failed units from date of installation.
- C. Installer's Warranty:
  1. Form acceptable to Owner, signed by glass product Installer, agreeing to replace glass products that deteriorate, or that exhibit damage or deterioration of glass or glazing products due to faulty installation, for two (2) years from date of installation.
- D. Heat Soaked Tempered Glass: Provide a five (5) year manufacturer warranty to include coverage for spontaneous breakage of fully tempered glass caused by nickel sulfide (NiS) inclusions.

### **PART 2 PRODUCTS**

#### **2.01 MANUFACTURERS**

- A. Manufacturer Contact List for Low E Glazing:
  1. AGC Flat glass North America, Kingsport, TN [www.us.agc.com](http://www.us.agc.com).
  2. Carlex (subsidiary of Central Glass Co., Ltd., Nashville, TN [www.carlex.com](http://www.carlex.com)).
  3. Guardian Industries Corp., Auburn Hills, MI [www.guardian.com](http://www.guardian.com).
  4. Oldcastle Building Envelope, Santa Monica, CA [www.oldcastlebe.com](http://www.oldcastlebe.com)
  5. Pilkington North America Inc., Toledo, OH [www.pilkington.com](http://www.pilkington.com).

6. Vitro Architectural Glass (formerly PPG glass), Cheswick, PA [www.ppgglass.com](http://www.ppgglass.com) or PPG Canada Ltd, Glass Division, Toronto, ON (416) 789-3331.

## 2.02 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS - EXTERIOR GLAZING ASSEMBLIES

- A. Glass units for exterior fixed windows, monumental and vent sash window units shall have U Factor of 0.34 and SHGC of 0.33. Provide written Manufacturer's confirmation with glazing submittal.
- B. Exterior Window Glazing:
1. Thickness: 1/8 inch (3 mm) minimum, Double Strength (Insulated Glass).
  2. Glazing shall have following characteristics:
    - a. Low-Emissivity (or Low E):
      - 1) Design Criteria:
        - (a) Clear:
        - (b) Meet requirements of ASTM C1036, Type I, Class I, Quality Q3.
        - (c) Location: Surface 2.
      - 2) Low-Emissivity (or Low E) Acceptable Product:
        - (a) Performance Standard:
        - (b) 70 percent Visible Light Transmission (VLT).
        - (c) 0.29 U-value winter.
        - (d) 0.27 U-value summer.
        - (e) 0.38 Solar Heat Gain Coefficient (SHGC).
        - (f) 0.44 Shading Coefficient.
        - (g) 11 percent Visible Light Reflectance.
        - (h) Quality Standard:
        - (i) Cardinal LoE<sup>3</sup>-366.
        - (j) Solarban 70 XL.
        - (k) Other low E glazing system standard with window manufacturer that meets or exceeds performance characteristics of specified glazing is acceptable as approved by Architect before bidding. See Section 01 6000.
      - 3) Acceptable Manufacturers:
        - (a) AGC.
        - (b) Guardian.
        - (c) Vitro Architectural Glass.
        - (d) Equal as approved by Architect before bidding. See Section 01 6000.
    - b. Obscure:
      - 1) Design Criteria:
        - (a) Meet requirements of ASTM C1036, Type II, Class I, Form 3, Quality Q8, Pattern - #62.
    - c. Glazing in Windows within 24 inches (600 mm) of Exterior Doors:
      - 1) Design Criteria:
        - (a) Tempered.
        - (b) Meet requirements of ASTM C1048, Kind FT, Condition A, Type I, Class I, Quality Q3.
- C. Storefront Glazing:
1. Thickness: 1/4 inch (6 mm).
  2. Glazing shall have following characteristics:
    - a. Low-Emissivity (or Low E):
      - 1) Design Criteria:
        - (a) Clear.
        - (b) Insulated Glass: 1 inch (25 mm) units with 1/2 inch (13 mm) airspace and two (2) 1/4 inch (6 mm) lites.
        - (c) Meet requirements of ASTM C1036, Type I, Class I, Quality Q3.
        - (d) Location: Surface 2.

- 2) Low-Emissivity (or Low E) Acceptable Product:
  - (a) Performance Standard:
  - (b) 64 percent Visible Light Transmission (VLT).
  - (c) 0.28 U-value winter.
  - (d) 0.26 U-value summer.
  - (e) 0.27 Solar Heat Gain Coefficient (SHGC).
  - (f) 0.32 Shading Coefficient.
  - (g) 12 percent Visible Light Reflectance.
  - (h) Quality Standard:
  - (i) Cardinal LoE<sup>3</sup>-366.
  - (j) Solarban 70 XL.
  - (k) Equal product by Acceptable Manufacturer as approved by Architect before bidding. See Section 01 6000.
- 3) Acceptable Manufacturers:
  - (a) AGC.
  - (b) Guardian.
  - (c) Vitro Architectural Glass.
  - (d) Equal as approved by Architect before bidding. See Section 01 6000.
- b. Obscure:
  - 1) Design Criteria:
    - (a) Meet requirements of ASTM C1036, Type II, Class I, Form 3, Quality Q8, Pattern - #62.
- c. Glazing Below Door Height:
  - 1) Design Criteria:
    - (a) Tempered.
    - (b) Meet requirements of ASTM C1048, Kind FT, Condition A, Type I, Class I, Quality Q3.
- D. Fabrication:
  1. Except where glass exceeds 66 inches (1 675 mm) in width, cut clear glass so any wave will run horizontally when glazed.
  2. Install muntins for exterior aluminum entries and aluminum windows between panes of insulating glazing units. No muntins on interior Vestibule storefront entries.
  3. Sealed, Insulating Glazing Units:
    - a. Double pane, sealed insulating glass units. Install at exterior windows and exterior aluminum-framed storefront.
    - b. Unit Thickness: 5/8 inch (16 mm) minimum, one inch (25 mm) maximum.
    - c. Insulated obscure units shall consist of one pane of specified obscure glass and one pane of standard glass.
    - d. Type Seal:
      - 1) Metal-to-glass bond and separated by 1/2 inch (12.7 mm) dehydrated air space.
      - 2) Use non-hardening sealants.
    - e. Approved Fabricators. See Section 01 6000
      - 1) Members of the Insulating Glass Manufacturers Alliance (IGMA).

### 2.03 ACCESSORIES

- A. Cleaners, Primers, and Sealers: Types recommended by sealant or gasket manufacturer.
- B. Glazing Tape: Butyl-based elastomeric tape with integral resilient tube spacer, 10 to 15 Shore A durometer hardness, black color, coiled on release paper; widths required for specified installation, complying with ASTM C1281 and AAMA 800 for application
- C. 3M Sun Control Window Film Night Vision NV-25: -DI retail windows and vestibule windows only by Owner approval.

### PART 3 EXECUTION

**3.01 VERIFICATION OF CONDITIONS**

- A. Verify that openings for glazing are correctly sized and within tolerances, including those for size, squareness, and offsets at corners.
- B. Verify that the minimum required face and edge clearances are being provided.
- C. Verify that surfaces of glazing channels or recesses are clean, free of obstructions that may impede moisture movement, weeps are clear, and support framing is ready to receive glazing system.
- D. Verify that sealing between joints of glass framing members has been completed effectively.
- E. Proceed with glazing system installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

**3.02 PREPARATION**

- A. Clean contact surfaces with appropriate solvent and wipe dry within maximum of 24 hours before glazing. Remove coatings that are not tightly bonded to substrates.
- B. Seal porous glazing channels or recesses with substrate compatible primer or sealer.
- C. Prime surfaces scheduled to receive sealant where required for proper sealant adhesion.

**3.03 INSTALLATION, GENERAL**

- A. Install glazing in compliance with written instructions of glass, gaskets, and other glazing material manufacturers, unless more stringent requirements are indicated, including those in glazing referenced standards.
- B. Install glazing sealants in accordance with ASTM C1193, GANA (SM), and manufacturer's instructions.
- C. Do not exceed edge pressures around perimeter of glass lites as stipulated by glass manufacturer.
- D. Set glass lites of system with uniform pattern, draw, bow, and similar characteristics.
- E. Set glass lites in proper orientation so that coatings face exterior or interior as indicated.
- F. Prevent glass from contact with any contaminating substances that may be the result of construction operations such as, and not limited to the following; weld splatter, fire-safing, plastering, mortar droppings, etc.

**3.04 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL**

- A. See Section 01 4000 - Quality Requirements for additional requirements.
- B. Glass and Glazing product manufacturers to provide field surveillance of the installation of their products.
- C. Monitor and report installation procedures and unacceptable conditions.

**3.05 CLEANING**

- A. Remove excess glazing materials from finish surfaces immediately after application using solvents or cleaners recommended by manufacturers.
- B. Remove nonpermanent labels immediately after glazing installation is complete.
- C. Clean glass and adjacent surfaces after sealants are fully cured.

**3.06 PROTECTION**

- A. After installation, mark pane with an 'X' by using removable plastic tape or paste; do not mark heat absorbing or reflective glass units.
- B. Remove and replace glass that is damaged during construction period prior to Date of Substantial Completion.

**END OF SECTION**

BLANK PAGE

**SECTION 09 0503****FLOORING SUBSTRATE PREPARATION****PART 1 - GENERAL****1.1 SUMMARY**

- A. Includes But Not Limited To:
  - 1. Preparing floor substrate to receive flooring as described in Contract Documents.
- B. Related Requirements:
  - 1. Pre-Installation conferences held jointly with Section 09 0503 as described in Administrative Requirements on Part 1 of this specification section.
  - 2. Section 03 3111: 'Cast-In-Place Structural Concrete' for installation tolerances for concrete slabs.

**1.2 ADMINISTRATIVE REQUIREMENTS**

- A. Pre-Installation Conference:
  - 1. Participate in MANDATORY pre-installation conference held jointly if possible for all related Division 09 6000 'Flooring' used for Project.
  - 2. Schedule conference after substrate preparation and before installation of flooring system. (If more than one (1) flooring system is included for project, hold conference at same time if schedule permits).
  - 3. Conference may be held at project site or another convenient site. Participants may also attend by video or audio conference if approved by Project Manager.
  - 4. In addition to agenda items specified in Section 01 3100, review following:
    - a. Review condition of floor with regards to compliance with concrete installation tolerances and other work necessary to prepare floors for installation of flooring.
  - 5. Review condition of floor regarding compliance with concrete installation tolerances and other work necessary to prepare floors for installation of flooring.
  - 6. Review additional agenda items all related flooring sections.

**1.3 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING**

- A. Storage And Handling Requirements:
  - 1. Provide storage space and protection for flooring and installation accessories if materials are delivered before start of flooring installation.

**PART 2 - PRODUCTS Not Used****PART 3 - EXECUTION****3.1 PREPARATION**

- A. Flooring Preparation:
  - 1. General:
    - a. Prepare floor substrate in accordance with ASTM F710, 'Standard Practice for Preparing Concrete Floors to Receive Resilient Flooring' (This standard is used for preparing concrete floors for all flooring).
      - 1) Required RH test and alkalinity test of concrete slab has been performed.

- b. Concrete floor slab patching:
    - 1) Cracks, chips and joints must be properly patched or repaired.
  - c. Concrete surface cured, clean, dry, and free of dirt, dust, grease, wax, and other foreign substances that will compromise flooring installations.
    - 1) Removal of curing compounds.
    - 2) Remove paint, sealer, grease, oil, silicone sealants, and other materials incompatible with flooring adhesives.
    - 3) Removal of overspray from painted walls (essential so glue will stick).
  - d. Vacuum and damp mop floor areas to receive flooring before flooring installation.
2. Carpeted floor areas:
- a. Prepare floor substrate in accordance with Carpet And Rug Institute (CRI) best practices to receive carpet installation and to provide installation that meets Carpet Manufacturer's warranty requirements.
- B. Carpet Accessories:
- 1. Sundry items, such as adhesives, shall be conditioned to building ambient conditions before use.

**END OF SECTION**

**SECTION 09 2116****GYPSON BOARD ASSEMBLIES****PART 1 GENERAL****1.01 SECTION INCLUDES**

- A. Performance criteria for gypsum board assemblies.
- B. Metal stud wall framing.
- C. Metal channel ceiling framing.
- D. Resilient sound isolation clips.
- E. Acoustic insulation.
- F. Gypsum sheathing.
- G. Cementitious backing board.
- H. Gypsum wallboard.
- I. Joint treatment and accessories.
- J. Textured finish system.

**1.02 RELATED REQUIREMENTS**

- A. Section 06 1000 - Rough Carpentry: Building framing and sheathing.
- B. Section 06 1000 - Rough Carpentry: Wood blocking product and execution requirements.

**1.03 REFERENCE STANDARDS**

- A. ASTM C11 - Standard Terminology Relating to Gypsum and Related Building Materials and Systems 2018b.
- B. ASTM C475/C475M - Standard Specification for Joint Compound and Joint Tape for Finishing Gypsum Board 2017 (Reapproved 2022).
- C. ASTM C665 - Standard Specification for Mineral-Fiber Blanket Thermal Insulation for Light Frame Construction and Manufactured Housing 2017.
- D. ASTM C754 - Standard Specification for Installation of Steel Framing Members to Receive Screw-Attached Gypsum Panel Products 2020.
- E. ASTM C840 - Standard Specification for Application and Finishing of Gypsum Board 2020.
- F. ASTM C919 - Standard Practice for Use of Sealants in Acoustical Applications 2022.
- G. ASTM C954 - Standard Specification for Steel Drill Screws for the Application of Gypsum Panel Products or Metal Plaster Bases to Steel Studs from 0.033 in. (0.84 mm) to 0.112 in. (2.84 mm) in Thickness 2022.
- H. ASTM C1002 - Standard Specification for Steel Self-Piercing Tapping Screws for Application of Gypsum Panel Products or Metal Plaster Bases to Wood Studs or Steel Studs 2022.
- I. ASTM C1047 - Standard Specification for Accessories for Gypsum Wallboard and Gypsum Veneer Base 2019.
- J. ASTM C1178/C1178M - Standard Specification for Coated Glass Mat Water-Resistant Gypsum Backing Panel 2018.
- K. ASTM C1396/C1396M - Standard Specification for Gypsum Board 2017.
- L. ASTM E84 - Standard Test Method for Surface Burning Characteristics of Building Materials 2022.
- M. ASTM E90 - Standard Test Method for Laboratory Measurement of Airborne Sound Transmission Loss of Building Partitions and Elements 2009 (Reapproved 2016).



- N. ASTM E119 - Standard Test Methods for Fire Tests of Building Construction and Materials 2022.
- O. ASTM E413 - Classification for Rating Sound Insulation 2022.
- P. GA-214 - Levels of Finish for Gypsum Panel Products 2021.
- Q. GA-216 - Application and Finishing of Gypsum Panel Products 2021.
- R. GA-600 - Fire Resistance and Sound Control Design Manual 2021.
- S. GA-801 - Handling and Storage of Gypsum Panel Products: A Guide for Distributors, Retailers, and Contractors 2017.
- T. UL 263 - Standard for Fire Tests of Building Construction and Materials Current Edition, Including All Revisions.
- U. UL 723 - Standard for Test for Surface Burning Characteristics of Building Materials Current Edition, Including All Revisions.

#### **1.04 ADMINISTRATIVE REQUIREMENTS**

- A. Preinstallation Meeting: Convene a preinstallation meeting one week before starting work of this section; require attendance by all affected installers.
  - 1. Schedule MANDATORY pre-installation conference immediately before installation of gypsum wallboard.
  - 2. In addition to agenda items specified in Section 01 3000, review following:
    - a. Finish requirements necessary for installation of finish materials over gypsum wallboard, and location and installation of ceramic tile backerboard.

#### **1.05 SUBMITTALS**

- A. Product Data:
- B. Test Reports: For stud framing products that do not comply with ASTM C645 or ASTM C754, provide independent laboratory reports showing maximum stud heights at required spacings and deflections. Also provide fire test results or assembly diagrams and numbers confirming products used will provide required fire ratings with installation configurations used.
- C. Samples: Submit two samples of pre-decorated gypsum board, 12 by 12 inches in size, illustrating finish color and texture.
  - 1. Light Orange Peel Texture:
    - a. Provide minimum of three (3) 24 inch (600 mm) square control samples on primed gypsum wallboard of 'light orange peel' texture to show possible variations.
  - 2. Light Skip Trowel Texture:
    - a. Provide minimum of three (3) 24 inch (600 mm) square control samples on primed gypsum wallboard of 'light orange peel' texture to show possible variations.
  - 3. Hawk and Trowel, Multi-Directional (lightly sanded) Texture:
    - a. Provide minimum of three (3) 24 inch (600 mm) square control samples on primed gypsum wallboard of 'multi-directional' texture (70/30, 80/20, and 90/10) to show possible variations.
- D. Field Samples:
  - 1. Before performing work of this Section, prepare control samples.
  - 2. Architect will inspect control sample at pre-installation conference following preparation of control sample. When sample is approved, work of this Section may proceed. Approved samples will be kept at site at all times work of this section is being performed.

#### **1.06 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING**

- A. Deliver materials to project site in unopened containers clearly labeled with manufacturer's name and identification of contents.
- B. Follow recommendations of GA-801 Guide for Handling and Storage of Gypsum Panel Products unless local, state or federal laws or agency rules differing from the recommendations shall take precedence.

- C. Store materials in dry and clean location until needed for installation. During installation, handle in a manner that will prevent marring and soiling of finished surfaces.
- D. Store material under roof and keep dry and protected against damage from weather, condensation, direct sunlight, construction traffic, and other causes. Stack gypsum board flat to prevent sagging.

### 1.07 FIELD CONDITIONS

#### A. Ambient Conditions:

- 1. Comply with ASTM C840 or GA-216 requirements, whichever are more stringent:
  - a. Do not install interior products until installation areas are enclosed and conditioned.
    - 1) Temperature shall be 50 deg F (10 deg C) and 95 deg F (35 deg C) maximum day and night during entire joint operation and until execution of Certificate of Substantial Completion.
    - 2) Provide ventilation to eliminate excessive moisture.
    - 3) Avoid hot air drafts that will cause too rapid drying.
  - b. Do not install panels that are wet, those that are moisture damaged, and those that are mold damaged.

## PART 2 PRODUCTS

### 2.01 GYPSUM BOARD ASSEMBLIES

- A. Provide completed assemblies complying with ASTM C840 and GA-216.
  - 1. See PART 3 for finishing requirements.

### 2.02 BOARD MATERIALS

#### A. Manufacturers - Gypsum-Based Board:

- 1. American Gypsum Company: [www.americangypsum.com/#sle](http://www.americangypsum.com/#sle).
- 2. CertainTeed Corporation: [www.certainteed.com/#sle](http://www.certainteed.com/#sle).
- 3. Georgia-Pacific Gypsum: [www.gpgypsum.com/#sle](http://www.gpgypsum.com/#sle).
- 4. National Gypsum Company: [www.nationalgypsum.com/#sle](http://www.nationalgypsum.com/#sle).
- 5. PABCO Gypsum: [www.pabco gypsum.com/#sle](http://www.pabco gypsum.com/#sle).
- 6. USG Corporation: [www.usg.com/#sle](http://www.usg.com/#sle).

#### B. Gypsum Wallboard: Paper-faced gypsum panels as defined in ASTM C1396/C1396M; sizes to minimize joints in place; ends square cut, long edges tapered.

- 1. General:
  - a. Size:
    - 1) Provide maximum lengths and widths available that will minimize joints in each area and that correspond with support system indicated.
  - b. Quality Standard:
    - 1) Core: Fire-resistant rated gypsum core.
    - 2) Complies with Type X requirements of ASTM C1396/C1396M (Section 5).
    - 3) Surface paper: Face paper suitable for painting.
    - 4) Long edges: Tapered edge.
- 2. Application: Use for vertical surfaces and ceilings, unless otherwise indicated.
- 3. At Assemblies Indicated with Fire-Resistance Rating: Use type required by indicated tested assembly; if no tested assembly is indicated, use Type X board, UL or WH listed.
- 4. Thickness:
  - a. Vertical Surfaces: 5/8 inch.
  - b. Ceilings: 5/8 inch.
- 5. Paper-Faced Products:
  - a. American Gypsum Company; LightRoc Gypsum Wallboard: [www.americangypsum.com/#sle](http://www.americangypsum.com/#sle).
  - b. American Gypsum Company; FireBloc Type X Gypsum Wallboard: [www.americangypsum.com/#sle](http://www.americangypsum.com/#sle).
  - c. CertainTeed Corporation; Type X Drywall: [www.certainteed.com/#sle](http://www.certainteed.com/#sle).

- d. Georgia-Pacific Gypsum; ToughRock: [www.gpgypsum.com/#sle](http://www.gpgypsum.com/#sle).
  - e. Georgia-Pacific Gypsum; ToughRock Fireguard X: [www.gpgypsum.com/#sle](http://www.gpgypsum.com/#sle).
  - f. Gold Bond Building Products, LLC provided by National Gypsum Company; Gold Bond Fire-Shield Gypsum Board: [www.goldbondbuilding.com/#sle](http://www.goldbondbuilding.com/#sle).
- C. Impact Resistant Wallboard:
- 1. Type: Fire-resistance-rated Type X, UL or WH listed.
  - 2. Thickness: 5/8 inch.
  - 3. Edges: Tapered.
  - 4. Paper-Faced Products:
    - a. Gold Bond Building Products, LLC provided by National Gypsum Company; Gold Bond XP Hi-Impact Gypsum Board: [www.goldbondbuilding.com/#sle](http://www.goldbondbuilding.com/#sle).
    - b. USG; Fiberrock VHI (Very High Impact) Abuse-Resistant Board.
- D. Backing Board for Wet Areas:
- 1. Glass Mat Faced Board: Coated glass mat water-resistant gypsum backing panel.
    - a. Fire-Resistance-Rated Type: Type X core, thickness 5/8 inch.
    - b. Square edges.
    - c. Products:
      - 1) DensShield Fireguard Type X by Georgia Pacific.
      - 2) GlasRoc Tilebacker Type X by CertainTeed.

### 2.03 GYPSUM BOARD ACCESSORIES

- A. Manufacturers:
- 1. Manufacturer Contact List:
    - a. Kinetics Noise Control, Dublin, OH [www.kineticsnoise.com](http://www.kineticsnoise.com).
    - b. Magnum Products, Lenaxa, KS [www.levelcoat.com](http://www.levelcoat.com).
    - c. National Gypsum, Charlotte, NC [www.nationalgypsum.com](http://www.nationalgypsum.com).
    - d. Soundproofing Co, San Marcos, CA [www.soundproofing.org](http://www.soundproofing.org).
    - e. United States Gypsum Co, Chicago, IL [www.usg.com](http://www.usg.com).
    - f. Westpac Materials Inc, Orange, CA [www.westpacmaterials.com](http://www.westpacmaterials.com).
    - g. Wm. Zinsser & Co, Somerset, NJ [www.zinsser.com](http://www.zinsser.com).
- B. Corner And Edge Trim:
- 1. Metal, paper-faced metal, paper-faced plastic, or solid vinyl meeting requirements of ASTM C1047. Surfaces to receive bedding cement treated for maximum bonding.
- C. Control Joint:
- 1. Bent zinc sheet with V-shaped slot, perforated flanges, covered with plastic tape meeting requirements of ASTM C1047.
- D. Furring Channels:
- 1. Quality Standards:
    - a. Walls: Galvanized DWFC-25.
    - b. Ceilings: Galvanized DWFC-20.
  - 2. Accessories as required by Manufacturer's fire tests to provide necessary fire ratings.
- E. Acoustic Insulation: ASTM C665; preformed glass fiber, friction fit type, unfaced. Thickness: 2 inch.
- F. Acoustic Sealant: Acrylic emulsion latex or water-based elastomeric sealant. Supplied and installed in accordance with ASTM Standards. Including but not limited to ASTM C919-19; do not use solvent-based non-curing butyl sealant.
- G. Finishing Accessories: ASTM C1047, extruded aluminum alloy (6063 T5) or galvanized steel sheet ASTM A924/A924M G90, unless noted otherwise.
- 1. Types: As detailed or required for finished appearance.
  - 2. Special Shapes: In addition to conventional corner bead and control joints, provide U-bead at exposed panel edges.

- H. Beads, Joint Accessories, and Other Trim: ASTM C1047, rigid plastic, galvanized steel, or rolled zinc, unless noted otherwise.
  - 1. Expansion Joints:
    - a. Type: V-shaped metal with factory-installed protective tape.
- I. Joint Materials: Best grade or ASTM C475/C475M and as recommended by gypsum board manufacturer for project conditions.
  - 1. Paper Tape: 2 inch wide, creased paper tape for joints and corners, except as otherwise indicated.
  - 2. Joint Reinforcing:
    - a. Paper reinforcing tape acceptable to Gypsum Board Manufacturer.
  - 3. Joint Compound: Drying type, vinyl-based, ready-mixed. Best grade or type recommended by Board Manufacturer and meeting requirements of ASTM C475/C475M.
    - a. Use Taping Compound for first coat to embed tape and accessories.
    - b. Use Taping Compound or All-Purpose Compound for subsequent coats except final coat.
    - c. Use Finishing Compound for final coat and for skim coat.
- J. Finishing Compound: Surface coat and primer, takes the place of skim coating.
- K. High Build Drywall Surfer: Vinyl acrylic latex-based coating for spray application, designed to take the place of skim coating and separate paint primer in achieving Level 5 finish.
  - 1. Products:
    - a. Sheetrock First Coat by USG.
    - b. Prep Coat by Westpac Materials.
    - c. Level Coat by Magnum Products.
    - d. Equal as approved by Architect before bidding. See Section 01 6200.
- L. Primer On Surfaces to Receive Wallcovering:
  - 1. White, self-sizing, water based, all-purpose wallcovering primer.
  - 2. Acceptable Products:
    - a. Shieldz Universal Pre-Wallcovering Primer by Wm. Zinsser and Company.
- M. Primer / Surfer on Surfaces To Receive Texturing:
  - 1. Acceptable Products:
    - a. Sheetrock First Coat by USG.
    - b. Prep Coat by Westpac Materials.
    - c. Level Coat by Magnum Products.
    - d. Equal as approved by Architect before bidding. See Section 01 6200.
- N. Textured Finish Materials: Latex-based compound; plain.
  - 1. Products:
    - a. ProForm Perfect Spray EM/HF by National Gypsum.
    - b. Sheetrock Wall & Ceiling Texture by US Gypsum.
- O. Fasteners:
  - 1. Bugle head screws meeting requirements of ASTM C1002:
    - a. Gypsum Board:
      - 1) Type W: For fastening gypsum board to wood members, of length to penetrate wood framing 5/8 inch (15.9 mm) minimum.
      - 2) Type S: For fastening gypsum board to steel framing and ceiling suspension members, of length to penetrate steel framing 3/8 inch (9.5 mm) minimum.
    - b. Glass Mat Gypsum Tile Backer:
      - 1) Wood Framing: 11 ga (0.1233 in) (3.1318 mm), galvanized with 7/16 inch (11 mm) head, hot dipped. Screws: Type W or Type S Hi-Lo, bugle head, rust resistant.
      - 2) Light-gauge metal framing: Type S Hi-Lo, bugle or wafer head, self-tapping, rust resistant. Hi-Lo screws.

- 3) Heavy-gauge metal framing: Type S-12 Hi-Lo, bugle or wafer head, rust resistant.
- P. Screws for Fastening of Gypsum Panel Products to Cold-Formed Steel Studs Less than 0.033 inches in Thickness and Wood Members: ASTM C1002; self-piercing tapping screws, corrosion-resistant.
- Q. Screws for Fastening of Gypsum Panel Products to Steel Members from 0.033 to 0.112 inch in Thickness: ASTM C954; steel drill screws, corrosion-resistant.
- R. Screws for Fastening Gypsum Sheathing: Bugle head screws as recommended by Sheathing Manufacturer and meeting requirements of ASTM C1002, corrosion resistant treated.

## **PART 3 EXECUTION**

### **3.01 EXAMINATION**

- A. Verify that project conditions are appropriate for work of this section to commence.
- B. Examine gypsum board before installation. Reject panels that are wet, moisture damaged, and mold damaged.
- C. Notify Architect of unsuitable conditions in writing.
  1. Do not install board over unsuitable conditions.
- D. Commencement of Work by installer is considered acceptance of substrate.

### **3.02 ACOUSTIC ACCESSORIES INSTALLATION**

- A. Acoustic Insulation: Place tightly within spaces, around cut openings, behind and around electrical and mechanical items within partitions, and tight to items passing through partitions.
- B. Sound Isolation Tape: Apply to vertical studs and top and bottom tracks/runners in accordance with manufacturer's instructions.
- C. Acoustic Sealant: Install in accordance with manufacturer's instructions.
  1. Place one bead continuously on substrate before installation of perimeter framing members.
  2. Place continuous bead at perimeter of each layer of gypsum board.
  3. Seal around all penetrations by conduit, pipe, ducts, and rough-in boxes, except where firestopping is provided.
- D. Acoustical Shielding: Install in accordance with manufacturer's instructions for application between studs and gypsum board.
- E. Installation shall comply with ASTM C919-19

### **3.03 BOARD INSTALLATION**

- A. Interface With Other Work:
  1. Coordinate with Division 06 for location of backblocking for edges and ends of gypsum board and for blocking required for installation of equipment and building specialties.
  2. Do not install gypsum board until required blocking is in place.
- B. General: Install and finish as recommended in ASTM C840 or GA-216 unless specified otherwise in this Section.
- C. Mounting Accessories:
  1. Furring Channels: Apply with screws through flanges into each framing member.
- D. Comply with ASTM C840, GA-216, and manufacturer's instructions. Install to minimize butt end joints, especially in highly visible locations.
- E. Single-Layer Nonrated: Install gypsum board in most economical direction, with ends and edges occurring over firm bearing.
  1. Exception: Tapered edges to receive joint treatment at right angles to framing.
- F. Fire-Resistance-Rated Construction: Install gypsum board in strict compliance with requirements of assembly listing.

- G. Exposed Gypsum Board in Interior Wet Areas: Seal joints, cut edges, and holes with water-resistant sealant.
- H. Interior Gypsum Board:
1. General:
    - a. Install so trim and reinforcing tape are fully backed by gypsum board. No hollow spaces between pieces of gypsum board over 1/8 inch (3 mm) wide before taping are acceptable.
    - b. Rout out backside of gypsum board to accommodate items that extend beyond face of framing, but do not penetrate face of gypsum board, such as metal door frame mounting brackets, etc.
    - c. On walls over 108 inches (2 700 mm) high, apply board perpendicular to support.
    - d. Butt edges in moderate contact. Do not force in place. Shim to level.
    - e. Leave facings true with joint, finishing flush. Vertical work shall be plumb and ceiling surfaces level.
    - f. Scribe work closely:
      - 1) Keep joints as far from openings as possible.
      - 2) If joints occur near an opening, apply board so vertical joints are centered over openings.
      - 3) No vertical joints shall occur within 8 inches (200 mm) of external corners or openings.
    - g. Install board tight against support with joints even and true. Tighten loose screws.
    - h. Caulk perimeter joints in sound insulated rooms with specified acoustical sealant.
  2. Ceilings:
    - a. Apply ceilings first using minimum of two (2) men.
    - b. Use board of length to give minimum number of joints.
    - c. Apply board perpendicular to support.
    - d. Chapel and Cultural Hall:
      - 1) Single Layer Application:
        - (a) Stagger end joints:
          - (1) End and edge joints of board applied on ceilings shall occur over framing members or be back blocked with 2x4 (38 mm by 89 mm) blocking.
          - (2) Edge joints of board vertically applied on walls shall occur over framing members.
          - (3) 2x4 (38 mm by 89 mm) blocking is required at wall to ceiling transitions and at top of ceiling vault transitions.
  3. Fastening:
    - a. Apply from center of board towards ends and edges.
    - b. Apply screws 3/8 inch (9.5 mm) minimum from ends and edges, one inch (25 mm) maximum from edges, and 1/2 inch (13 mm) maximum from ends.
    - c. Spacing:
      - 1) Ends: Screws not over 7 inches (175 mm) on center at edges where blocking or framing occurs.
      - 2) Wood Framed Walls And Ceilings: Screws 7 inches (175 mm) on center in panel field.
      - 3) Metal Framed Walls: Screws 12 inches (300 mm) on center in panel field.
    - d. Set screw heads 1/32 inch (0.8 mm) below plane of board, but do not break face paper. If face is accidentally broken, apply additional screw 2 inches (50 mm) away.
    - e. Screws on adjacent ends or edges shall be opposite each other.
    - f. Drive screws with shank perpendicular to face of board.
  4. Trim:
    - a. Corner Beads:
      - 1) Attach corner beads to outside corners.

- (a) Attach metal corner bead with staples spaced 4 inches (100 mm) on center maximum and flat taped over edges of corner bead. Also, apply screw through edge of corner bead where wood trim will overlay corner bead.
  - (b) Set paper-faced trim in solid bed of taping compound.
- b. Edge Trim: Apply where gypsum board abuts dissimilar material. Hold channel and 'L' trim back from exterior window and door frames 1/8 inch (3 mm) to allow for caulking.
- I. Glass Mat Gypsum Tile Backer:
  - 1. Apply glass mat gypsum tile backer to framing. Attach using specified fasteners spaced 6 inches (150 mm) on center on edges and into all framing members. Drive screws flush with surface of board.
  - 2. Shim board to be plumb and flat or level and flat, depending on location.
  - 3. Apply reinforcing only at joints where abutting different materials.
- J. Installation on Metal Framing: Use screws for attachment of gypsum board except face layer of nonrated double-layer assemblies, which may be installed by means of adhesive lamination.
- K. Installation on Wood Framing: For rated assemblies, comply with requirements of listing authority. For nonrated assemblies, install as follows:
  - 1. Single-Layer Applications: Screw attachment.

### 3.04 INSTALLATION OF TRIM AND ACCESSORIES

- A. Control Joints: Place control joints consistent with lines of building spaces and as indicated.
  - 1. Not more than 30 feet apart on walls and ceilings over 50 feet long.
  - 2. At exterior soffits, not more than 30 feet apart in both directions.
- B. Corner Beads: Install at external corners, using longest practical lengths.
- C. Edge Trim: Install at locations where gypsum board abuts dissimilar materials.
- D. Decorative Trim: Install at locations shown on drawings and in accordance with manufacturer's instructions.
- E. Moisture Guard Trim: Install on bottom edge of gypsum board according to manufacturer's instructions and in locations indicated on drawings.
- F. Exterior Soffit Vents: Install according to manufacturer's written instructions and in locations indicated on drawings. Provide vent area specified.

### 3.05 JOINT TREATMENT

- A. Glass Mat Faced Gypsum Board and Exterior Glass Mat Faced Sheathing: Use fiberglass joint tape, embed and finish with setting type joint compound.
- B. Paper Faced Gypsum Board: Use paper joint tape, embed with drying type joint compound and finish with drying type joint compound.
- C. Finish gypsum board in accordance with levels defined in ASTM C840, as follows:
  - 1. Gypsum Board Surfaces not painted or finished:
    - a. GA-214 Level 1: 'All joints and interior angles shall have tape set in joint compound. Surface shall be free of excess joint compound. Tool marks and ridges are acceptable'.
  - 2. Gypsum Board Surfaces Under Acoustical Tile:
    - a. GA-214 Level 2: 'All joints and interior angles shall have tape embedded in joint compound and wiped with a joint knife leaving a thin coating of joint compound over all joints and interior angles. Fastener heads and accessories shall be covered with a coat of joint compound. Surface shall be free of excess joint compound. Tool marks and ridges are acceptable. Joint compound applied over the body of the tape at the time of tape embedment shall be considered a separate coat of joint compound and shall satisfy the conditions of this level.
    - b. Note: It is critical that gypsum board ceiling be smooth before installing ceiling tile.
  - 3. Gypsum Board Surfaces to Receive: Wall Covering Type A - Section 09 7226: 'Sisal Wall Covering':

- a. GA-214 Level 3: 'All joints and interior angles shall have tape embedded in joint compound and one additional coat of joint compound applied over all joints and interior angles. Fastener heads and accessories shall be covered with two separate coats of joint compound. All joint compound shall be smooth and free of tool marks and ridges. Coat prepared surface with specified wall covering primer'.
  4. Gypsum Board Surfaces to Receive: Acoustic Wall Fabric Type B - Section 09 7216, 'Vinyl-Coated Fabric Wall Covering':
    - a. GA-214 Level 4: 'All and interior angles shall have tape embedded in joint compound and two separate coats of joint compound applied over all flat joints and one separate coat of joint compound applied over interior angles. Fastener heads and accessories shall be covered with three separate coats of joint compound. All joint compound shall be smooth and free of tool marks and ridges. Coat prepared surface with specified primer'.
  5. Gypsum Board Surfaces to Receive: Painted Texturing - Section 09 9413: 'Interior Textured Finishing':
    - a. GA-214 Level 4: 'All and interior angles shall have tape embedded in joint compound and two separate coats of joint compound applied over all flat joints and one separate coat of joint compound applied over interior angles. Fastener heads and accessories shall be covered with three separate coats of joint compound. All joint compound shall be smooth and free of tool marks and ridges. Coat prepared surface with specified primer'.
  6. Gypsum Board Surfaces to Receive: Smooth Gypsum Board Surfaces:
    - a. GA-214 Level 4: 'All and interior angles shall have tape embedded in joint compound and two separate coats of joint compound applied over all flat joints and one separate coat of joint compound applied over interior angles. Fastener heads and accessories shall be covered with three separate coats of joint compound. All joint compound shall be smooth and free of tool marks and ridges. Coat prepared surface with specified primer'.
- D. Finishing:
1. General:
    - a. Tape and finish joints and corners throughout building as specified below to correspond with final finish material to be applied to gypsum board. When sanding, do not raise nap of gypsum board face paper or paper-faced trim.
    - b. First Coat:
      - 1) Apply tape over center of joint in complete, uniform bed of specified taping compound and wipe with a joint knife leaving a thin coating of joint compound. If metal corner bead is used, apply reinforcing tape over flange of metal corner bead and trim so half of tape width is on flange and half is on gypsum board.
      - 2) Completely fill gouges, dents, and fastener dimples.
      - 3) Allow to dry and sand lightly if necessary to eliminate high spots or excessive compound.
    - c. Second Coat:
      - 1) Apply coat of specified joint compound over embedded tape extending 3-1/2 inches (88 mm) on both sides of joint center. Use finishing compound only if applied coat is intended as final coat.
      - 2) Re-coat gouges, dents, and fastener dimples.
      - 3) Allow to dry and sand lightly to eliminate high spots or excessive compound.
    - d. Third Coat: Apply same as second coat except extend application 6 inches (150 mm) on both sides of joint center. Allow to dry and sand with fine sandpaper or wipe with damp sponge.
    - e. Fourth Coat: Apply same as second coat except extend application 9 inches (425 mm) on both sides of joint center. Allow to dry and sand with fine sandpaper or wipe with damp sponge.

### 3.06 TEXTURE FINISH



- A. Apply finish texture coating in accordance with manufacturer's instructions and to match approved sample.
- B. Location:
  - 1. Walls:
    - a. Light Orange Peel Texture (or as approved by architect):
      - 1) All areas except those listed in following paragraph.
    - b. Smooth:
      - 1) Mechanical Rooms, Storage Rooms, and other Utility Areas.
  - 2. Ceilings:
    - a. Light Orange Peel Texture (or as approved by architect):
      - 1) Bishop's Waiting Areas and corridor transition into Foyers (sides and bottoms of headers).
      - 2) Chapel (Includes soffit and fascia of light cove).
      - 3) High Council Rooms Areas where there is exposed gypsum board (includes soffit and fascia of coffered area at perimeter).
      - 4) Relief Society and Primary Rooms Areas where there is exposed gypsum board (includes soffit and fascia of coffered area at perimeter).
    - b. Smooth Finish (no applied texture) to be applied to the following ceilings:
      - 1) Font.
      - 2) Mechanical Rooms, Storage Rooms, and other Utility Areas.
      - 3) Restrooms.
      - 4) Serving Area.
- C. Finishing:
  - 1. Texture:
    - a. After gypsum board is taped, sanded, and primed, apply texture. Closely match samples accepted by Architect.
      - 1) 1) After wall has been textured, apply priming and paint as specified in Section 09 9123.
  - 2. 3. Smooth:
    - a. a. No applied texture is required. Apply priming and paint as specified in Section 09 9123.

### 3.07 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Non-Conforming Work:
  - 1. Remove and replace panels that are wet, moisture damaged, and mold damaged.
    - a. Indications that panels are wet or moisture damaged include, but are not limited to, discoloration, sagging, or irregular shape.
    - b. Indications that panels are mold damaged include, but are not limited to, fuzzy or splotchy surface contamination and discoloration.

### 3.08 TOLERANCES

- A. Maximum Variation of Finished Gypsum Board Surface from True Flatness: 1/8 inch in 10 feet in any direction.

### 3.09 CLEANING

- A. Remove from site debris resulting from work of this Section including taping compound spills.

**END OF SECTION**

**SECTION 09 2226****METAL SUSPENSION SYSTEM: Gypsum Board****PART 1 - GENERAL****1.1 SUMMARY**

## A. Includes But Not Limited To:

1. Furnish and install metal suspension system for supporting gypsum drywall in typical ceiling and soffit areas and to support items penetrating ceiling as described in Contract Documents including:
  - a. Hanger wires, fasteners, main runners/tees, cross runners/tees, and wall molding/track.

## B. Related Requirements:

1. Section 09 2900: 'Gypsum Board'.
2. Section 09 5116: 'Acoustical Tile Ceilings'.
3. Section 26 5100: 'Interior Lighting' for electrical fixtures installed in ceiling.
4. Division 21: 'Fire Suppression' for sprinklers installed in ceiling.
5. Division 23: 'Mechanical' for related sections for HVAC installed in ceiling.
6. Division 26: 'Electrical' for related electrical work.
7. Division 27: 'Communications' for related sound and video work.

**1.2 REFERENCES**

## A. Association Publications:

1. The Ceilings & Interior Systems Construction Association (CISCA), 405 Illinois Avenue, 2B, St Charles IL. [www.cisca.org](http://www.cisca.org).
  - a. '*Ceiling Systems Handbook*': Recommendations for direct hung acoustical tile and lay-in panel ceiling installation.
  - b. CISCA 0-2, '*Guidelines for Seismic Restraint for Direct-hung Suspended Ceiling Assemblies (zones 0-2)*' Covers Seismic Design Category C.
  - c. CISCA 3-4, '*Guidelines for Seismic Restraint for Direct-hung Suspended Ceiling Assemblies (zones 3-4)*' Covers Seismic Design Category D, E, and F.
  - d. '*Production Guide*': Practical reference for ceiling systems and estimating costs.

## B. Definitions:

1. Ceiling Suspension System: System of metal members, designed to support a suspended ceiling. May accommodate lighting fixtures or air diffusers.
2. Clips: Designs to suit applications such as fire resistance, wind uplift and impact.
3. Compression Post (Vertical Strut, Seismic Struts): Rigid member used to provide lateral force bracing of suspension system.
4. Cross Runner, Cross Tee: Cross runner is secondary or cross beams of mechanical ceiling suspension system, usually supporting only acoustical tile. Cross tee is inserted into main runner to form different module sizes. In some suspension systems, however, cross runners also provide support for lighting fixtures, air diffusers and other cross runners.
5. Hanger Wires: Wire employed to suspend acoustical ceiling from existing structure. Standard material is 12 gauge (0.105 inch - 2.70 mm) galvanized, soft annealed steel wire, conforming to ASTM A641/A641M. Heavier gauge wire is available for higher load carrying installations, or situations where hanger wire spacing exceeds 4 feet (1.20 m) on center. Seismic designs or exterior installations subject to wind uplift may require supplemental bracing or substantial hanger devices such as metal straps, rods or structural angles.
6. Heavy-Duty Systems: Primarily used for installations in which the quantities and weights of ceiling fixtures (lights, air diffusers, etc.) are greater than those for ordinary commercial structure.
7. Main Beam, Main Runner, Main Tee: Primary or main beams of type of ceiling suspension system in which structural members are mechanically locked together. Provide direct support for

- cross runners and may support lighting fixtures and air diffusers, as well as acoustical tile. Supported by hanger wires attached directly to existing structure; or installed perpendicular to carrying channels and supported by specially designed sheet metal or wire clips attached to carrying channels.
8. Splay Wires: Wires installed at angle rather than perpendicular to grid.
  9. Stiffening Brace: Used to prevent uplift of grid caused by wind pressure in exterior applications.

C. Reference Standards:

1. American Society of Civil Engineers/Structural Engineering Institute:
  - a. ASCE/SEI 7-10, 'Minimum Design Loads for Buildings and Other Structures'.
2. ASTM International:
  - a. ASTM A641/A641M-09a(2014), 'Standard Specification for Zinc-Coated (Galvanized) Carbon Steel Wire'.
  - b. ASTM A653/A653M-18, 'Standard Specification for Steel Sheet, Zinc-Coated (Galvanized) or Zinc-Iron Alloy-Coated (Galvannealed) by the Hot-Dip Process'.
  - c. ASTM A1008/A1008M-18, 'Standard Specification for Steel, Sheet, Cold-Rolled, Carbon, Structural, High-Strength Low-Alloy, High-Strength Low-Alloy with Improved Formability, Solution Hardened, and Bake Hardenable'.
  - d. ASTM C635/C635M-17, 'Standard Specification for the Manufacture, Performance, and Testing of Metal Suspension Systems for Acoustical Tile and Lay-in Panel Ceilings'.
  - e. ASTM C636/C636M-13, 'Standard Practice for Installation of Metal Ceiling Suspension Systems for Acoustical Tile and Lay-In Panels'.
  - f. ASTM C645-18, 'Standard Specification for Nonstructural Steel Framing Members'.
  - g. ASTM C754-18, 'Standard Specification for Installation of Steel Framing Members to Receive Screw-Attached Gypsum Panel Products'.
  - h. ASTM C841-03(2018), 'Standard Specification for Installation of Interior Lathing and Furring'.
  - i. ASTM D610-08(2012), 'Standard Practice for Evaluating Degree of Rusting on Painted Steel Surfaces'.
  - j. ASTM E119-18, 'Standard Test Methods for Fire Tests of Building Construction and Materials'.
  - k. ASTM E580/E580M-17, 'Standard Practice for Installation of Ceiling Suspension Systems for Acoustical Tile and Lay-in Panels in Areas Subject to Earthquake Ground Motions'.
3. International Building Code (IBC) (2018 or most recent edition adopted by AHJ):
  - a. IBC 808.1.1.1, 'Suspended Acoustical Ceiling'.
4. Underwriters Laboratories (UL):
  - a. UL 263: 'Standard for Fire Test of Building Construction and Materials' (14th Edition).
  - b. UL 723, 'Standard for Safety Test for Surface Burning Characteristics of Building Materials' (11th Edition).

### 1.3 ADMINISTRATIVE REQUIREMENTS

A. Coordination:

1. Coordinate layout of suspension system with other construction that penetrates ceilings or is supported by them, including drywall furring, light fixtures, HVAC equipment, and fire-suppression systems.
2. All work above ceiling should be completed prior to installing suspended system. There should be no materials resting against or wrapped around suspension system, hanger wires or ties.

### 1.4 SUBMITTALS

A. Action Submittals:

1. Product Data:
  - a. Provide Manufacturer's technical literature on suspension system including listing dimensions, load carrying capacity and standard compliance.
2. Samples:
  - a. Minimum 8 inch (200 mm) long samples of suspension system components, including main runner/tee and cross runner/tee with couplings.

- B. Informational Submittals:
  - 1. Certificates:
    - a. Manufacturer's certifications that products comply with specified requirements, including laboratory reports showing compliance with specified tests and standards.
    - b. Installer's certificates of training.
  - 2. Manufacturer's Instructions:
    - a. Seismic Design Categories D, E and F:
      - 1) Manufacturer's details and installation instructions for seismic bracing. If requested, provide copy of code requirements applicable to Project.

## 1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Regulatory Agency Sustainability Approvals:
  - 1. All system components conform to ASTM standards.
  - 2. Fire-Resistance Rating: UL approved metal suspension system.
  - 3. Seismic Standard: Acoustical ceilings shall be designed and installed to withstand effects of earthquake motions according to following requirements:
    - a. CISCA's Recommendations for Acoustical Ceilings: Comply with CISCA's *'Recommendations for Direct-Hung Acoustical Tile and Lay-in Panel Ceilings-Seismic Zones 0-2'* (Apply to Seismic Categories A & B).
    - b. CISCA's Guidelines for Systems Requiring Seismic Restraint: Comply with CISCA's *'Guidelines for Seismic Restraint of Direct-Hung Suspended Ceiling Assemblies-Seismic Zones 3 & 4'* (Apply to Seismic Categories C, D, E & F).
    - c. Seismic Design Categories D, E and F:
      - 1) Standard for Ceiling Suspension Systems Requiring Seismic Restraint: Comply with ASTM E580/E580M.
      - 2) Meet seismic bracing requirements of ASCE 7, ASTM C635/C635M and ASTM C636/C636M or equivalent governing standard for project site.
- B. Qualifications. Requirements of Section 01 4301 applies, but not limited to following:
  - 1. Installer:
    - a. Installer training ('Ceiling Masters' training course or equivalent).
  - 2. Manufacturer:
    - a. Manufacturer in good standing of CISCA (Ceiling and Interior Systems Construction Association).

## 1.6 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Delivery And Acceptance Requirements:
  - 1. Materials shall be delivered in original, unopened packages with labels intact.
- B. Storage And Handling Requirements:
  - 1. Materials shall be delivered in original, unopened packages with labels intact.
  - 2. Store material in fully enclosed space protected against damage from moisture, direct sunlight, surface contamination, and general damage.

## 1.7 WARRANTY

- A. Manufacturer Warranty:
  - 1. Manufacturer standard ten (10) years warranty on suspension system including repair or replacement of rusting as defined by ASTM D610.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 SYSTEMS

#### A. Manufacturers:

1. Type One Acceptable Systems:
  - a. Drywall Grid by Armstrong World Industries, Lancaster, PA [www.armstrongceilings.com](http://www.armstrongceilings.com).
  - b. Drywall Grid System by Chicago Metallic Corporation, Chicago, IL [www.chicagometallic.com](http://www.chicagometallic.com).
  - c. Drywall Suspension System - Flat Ceilings by USG, Chicago, IL [www.usg.com](http://www.usg.com).
  - d. Equal as approved by Architect before bidding. See Section 01 6200.

#### B. Components:

1. Main Runners/Tee and Cross Runners/Tee:
  - a. Heavy-duty in accordance with ASTM C635/C635M.
  - b. Cold-formed from ASTM A653/A653M, CS Type B steel and hot dipped galvanized G-40 coating for interior ceilings.
  - c. Double-Web construction.
2. Wall Track/Molding.
3. Fasteners:
  - a. Nails are not permitted when subjected to direct tension such as installed vertically into bottom of structural member.
  - b. Metal attachment:
    - 1) Acoustical Eye Lag Screws:
      - a) **1/4 inch (6.4 mm)** screws zinc coated with self-drilling or self-piercing sharp point.
    - c. Wood attachment:
      - 1) Acoustical Eye Lag Screws:
        - a) **3 inch (76 mm) x 1/4 inch (6.4 mm)** screws zinc coated for wood joists with Type 17 self-drilling point.
    - d. Wire Tie to Metal Structural Member attachment:
      - 1) Wire wrapped to structural member with pigtail knot with three (3) tight wraps within **3 inch (76 mm)** length at top connection.
  4. Hanger Wires, Braces, and Ties:
    - a. Zinc-Coated, carbon-steel wire meeting requirements of ASTM A641/A641M, Class 1 zinc coating, soft temper.
    - b. Size:
      - 1) Standard size: **12 gauge (0.105 inch) (2.70 mm)** galvanized, soft annealed steel wire.
      - 2) Select wire diameter so its stress is less than yield when loaded at three (3) times hanger design load (ASTM C635/C635M), Table 1, 'Direct Hung') will be less than yield stress of wire, but provide not less than **12 gauge (0.105 inch) (2.70 mm)**.
    - c. Protect with rust inhibitive paint.
  5. Seismic Joint Clip:
    - a. Required for Seismic Design Categories D, E and F.
      - 1) Quality Standard Product:
        - a) SJCG by Armstrong.
        - b) Equal as approved by Architect before bidding. See Section 01 6200.
  6. Compression Posts/Struts:
    - a. Required for Seismic Design Categories D, E and F.
      - 1) Meet seismic requirements for Project.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 EXAMINATION

#### A. Verification Of Conditions:

1. Inspect area receiving suspension system to identify conditions which will adversely affect installation.
  - a. Work trades work to be thoroughly dry and complete prior to installation.
  - b. Verify weather tightness of area to receive suspension system prior to installation.
2. Notify Architect of unsuitable conditions in writing.
  - a. Do not install suspension system until adverse conditions have been remedied.

### 3.2 INSTALLATION

#### A. Interface With Other Work:

1. All work above ceiling should be completed prior to installing suspended ceiling system including related work including: drywall furring work, acoustical tile, light fixtures, mechanical systems, electrical systems, and sprinklers.

#### B. General:

1. Install suspension system in accordance with Manufacturer's written instructions, and in compliance with ASTM installation standard, and applicable codes as required by AHJ with modifications listed below except where Manufacturer's instructions are more stringent:
  - a. Main runners/tees hanger wires **48 inches (1 200 mm)** on center maximum.
  - b. Cross runners/tees hanger wires **24 inches (600 mm)** on center maximum.
  - c. Do not kink, twist, or bend hanger wires as a means of leveling assembly.
2. Hanger Wires:
  - a. Install hanger wire to structure as required with necessary on center spacing to support expected ceiling load requirements, following local practices, codes and regulations. Attach with pigtail knot with three (3) tight wraps within **3 inch (76 mm)** length at each end.
  - b. Provide additional wires at light fixtures, grilles, and access doors where necessary by appropriate method in accordance with industry accepted practice.
  - c. Additional Hanger Wires: Wrapped tightly three (3) full turns within **3 inch (76 mm)** length to structure and component at locations where imposed loads could cause deflection exceeding 1/360 span.

#### C. Seismic:

1. Required for Seismic Design Categories D, E and F:
  - a. Installation must be in accordance with ASCE 7.

#### D. Tolerances:

1. Main Runners/Tees:
  - a. Installed and leveled to meet IBC requirements to within **1/4 inch (6.4 mm)** in **10 foot (3.05 m)** with supporting wire taut to prevent any subsequent downward movement of main runners when ceiling loads are imposed.
2. Cross Runners/Tees:
  - a. Main runners, or other cross runners, must support cross runners to within **1/32 inch (0.8 mm)** of required center-to-center spacing. This tolerance must be noncumulative beyond **12 feet (3.60 m)**.
  - b. Intersecting runners must be installed to form right angle to supporting members.

### 3.3 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

#### A. Field Inspections:

1. Inspect:
  - a. Suspended ceiling system.
  - b. Hanger wires, braces, ties, anchors and fasteners.

#### B. Non-Conforming Work:

1. Remove and replace defective materials at no additional cost to Owner.

**END OF SECTION**

**SECTION 09 3000  
TILING****PART 1 GENERAL****1.01 SECTION INCLUDES**

- A. Tile for floor applications.
- B. Tile for wall applications.

**1.02 REFERENCE STANDARDS**

- A. ANSI A108.4 - American National Standard Specifications for Installation of Ceramic Tile with Organic Adhesive or Water Cleanable Tile-Setting Epoxy Adhesive 2019.
- B. ANSI A108.5 - American National Standard Specifications for Installation of Ceramic Tile with Dry-Set Portland Cement Mortar or Latex-Portland Cement Mortar 2021.
- C. ANSI A108.6 - American National Standard Specifications for Installation of Ceramic Tile with Chemical Resistant, Water Cleanable Tile-Setting and -Grout Epoxy 1999 (Reaffirmed 2019).
- D. ANSI A108.10 - American National Standard Specifications for Installation of Grout in Tilework 2017.
- E. ANSI A108.11 - American National Standard Specifications for Interior Installation of Cementitious Backer Units 2018.
- F. ANSI A118.3 - American National Standard Specifications for Chemical Resistant, Water Cleanable Tile-Setting and -Grouting Epoxy and Water Cleanable Tile-Setting Epoxy Adhesive 2021.
- G. ANSI A118.4 - American National Standard Specifications for Modified Dry-Set Cement Mortar 2019.
- H. ANSI A118.6 - American National Standard Specifications for Standard Cement Grouts for Tile Installation 2019.
- I. ANSI A118.7 - American National Standard Specifications for High Performance Cement Grouts for Tile Installation 2019.
- J. ANSI A118.11 - American National Standard Specifications for EGP (Exterior Glue Plywood) Latex-Portland Cement Mortar 2017.
- K. ANSI A118.12 - American National Standard Specifications for Crack Isolation Membranes for Thin-Set Ceramic Tile and Dimension Stone Installation 2014 (Reaffirmed 2019).
- L. ANSI A118.15 - American National Standard Specifications for Improved Modified Dry-Set Cement Mortar 2019.
- M. ANSI A137.1 - American National Standard Specifications for Ceramic Tile 2022.
- N. ASTM C144 - Standard Specification for Aggregate for Masonry Mortar 2018.
- O. ASTM C150/C150M - Standard Specification for Portland Cement 2022.
- P. ASTM C206 - Standard Specification for Finishing Hydrated Lime 2014 (Reapproved 2022).
- Q. ASTM C207 - Standard Specification for Hydrated Lime for Masonry Purposes 2018.
- R. ASTM C373 - Standard Test Methods for Determination of Water Absorption and Associated Properties by Vacuum Method for Pressed Ceramic Tiles and Glass Tiles and Boil Method for Extruded Ceramic Tiles and Non-tile Fired Ceramic Whiteware Products 2018.
- S. ASTM C482 - Standard Test Method for Bond Strength of Ceramic Tile to Portland Cement Paste 2020.
- T. ASTM C501 - Standard Test Method for Relative Resistance to Wear of Unglazed Ceramic Tile by the Taber Abraser 2021.
- U. TCNA (HB) - Handbook for Ceramic, Glass, and Stone Tile Installation 2022.



**1.03 ADMINISTRATIVE REQUIREMENTS**

- A. Preinstallation Meeting: Convene a preinstallation meeting one week before starting work of this section; require attendance by affected installers.
- B. In addition to agenda items specified in Section 01 3000, review following:
  - 1. Review installation scheduling, coordination with related work, and placement of tile.
  - 2. Review Manufacturer's installation requirements, submittals, and Installers requirements to assure issuance of Manufacturer's system warranty.
  - 3. Review surface preparation.
  - 4. Review water-proofing and crack isolation membrane requirements.
  - 5. Review tile base installation requirements.
  - 6. Review floor tile grout thickness requirements.

**1.04 SUBMITTALS**

- A. Product Data: Provide manufacturers' data sheets on tile, mortar, grout, and accessories. Include instructions for using grouts and adhesives.
- B. Shop Drawings: Indicate tile layout, patterns, color arrangement, perimeter conditions, junctions with dissimilar materials, control and expansion joints, thresholds, ceramic accessories, and setting details.
- C. Samples: Mount tile and apply grout on two plywood panels, minimum 24 x 24 inches in size illustrating pattern, color variations, and grout joint size variations.
  - 1. One sample of each type of base tile and trim piece to be used on Project.
- D. Maintenance Data: Include recommended cleaning methods, cleaning materials, and stain removal methods.
- E. Source Quality Control Submittals:
  - 1. Provide Manufacturer documentation indicating proposed materials will satisfy requirements for Manufacturer's Warranty.
- F. Closeout Submittals:
  - 1. Include following in Operations And Maintenance Manual specified in Section 01 7800:
    - a. Operations and Maintenance Data:
      - 1) Cleaning and maintenance instructions.
    - b. Warranty Documentation:
      - 1) Include copy of final, executed warranty.
    - c. Record Documentation:
      - 1) Manufacturers Documentation:
        - (a) Source Quality Control Submittal documentation showing materials will satisfy requirements for Manufacturer's Warranty.
        - (b) Manufacturer's cut sheets of materials used in installed system.
        - (c) Tile color and pattern selections.

**1.05 QUALITY ASSURANCE**

- A. Source Of Materials:
  - 1. Provide materials obtained from one (1) source for each type and color of tile, grout, and setting materials for Manufacturer's system warranty.
- B. Installer Qualifications:
  - 1. Company specializing in performing tile installation, with minimum of five years of documented experience.

**1.06 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING**

- A. Protect adhesives from freezing or overheating in accordance with manufacturer's instructions.

**1.07 FIELD CONDITIONS**

- A. Do not install solvent-based products in an unventilated environment.

- B. Maintain ambient and substrate temperature above 50 degrees F and below 100 degrees F during installation and curing of setting materials.

## PART 2 PRODUCTS

### 2.01 TILE

- A. National Contract Suppliers. See Section 01 6000:
1. Contact following suppliers to procure components of tile assembly:
    - a. Daltile And Stone, Salt Lake City, UT:
      - 1) Project Coordinators:
        - (a) Russ Green and Larry McCleary, (801) 487-9901, cell (801) 301 1461, fax (801) 487-0345 larry.mccleary@daltile.com - www.daltileproducts.com or www.daltilegreenworks.com.
      - b. Interceramic:
        - 1) Project Coordinators:
          - (a) First Contact: Diego Chavez, phone (214) 503-5433, fax (877) 551-1979 dichavez@interceramic.com.
          - (b) Second Contact: Jose Valdez, phone (214) 503-5507, fax (877) 551-1979 jvaldez@interceramic.com.
  - B. Design Criteria:
    1. General:
      - a. Porcelain Tile:
        - 1) Tile shall be standard quality, solid color throughout, graded in accordance with ANSI A137.1:
        - 2) Cove Base with external and internal corner pieces shall be standard grade.
      - b. Ceramic Tile:
        - 1) Tile shall be standard quality, white or off-white body, square or cushion edge, graded in accordance with ANSI A137.1.
        - 2) Square edge, white body, lug type wall tile. Field wall tile shall have two lugs on each edge to assure uniform joint, approximately 0.040 inch (one mm).
        - 3) External and internal corner pieces shall be standard grade.
      - c. Font Floor And Font Stair Treads: Porcelain mosaic tile with non-slip, non-abrasive surface.
    2. Capabilities:
      - a. Porcelain Tile:
        - 1) Water Absorption when tested in accordance with ASTM C373: 0.1 to 0.5 percent.
        - 2) Abrasive Wear Resistance when tested in accordance with ASTM C501: 275 minimum.
        - 3) Breaking Strength when tested in accordance with ASTM C648: 300 lbs minimum.
        - 4) Bond Strength when tested in accordance with ASTM C482: 200 psi minimum.
        - 5) Coefficient of Friction: 0.42 minimum as measured by DCOF (Dynamic Coefficient of Friction) AcuTest method and requirements as per ANSI A137.1.
  - C. Description:
    1. Porcelain Tile:
      - a. Finished floor with no slope shown on Contract Documents: 12 inches (300 mm) square minimum:
        - 1) Cove Base: External and internal corner pieces to match with bull-nosed top:
          - (a) 6 inches by 12 inches (150 mm by 300 mm) with bull-nosed top by Daltile.
          - (b) 6 inches by 8 inches (150 mm by 200 mm) with bull-nosed top by Interceramic.
        - 2) Approved Products. See Section 01 6000:
          - (a) Harmonist Colorbody Porcelain by Daltile.

- (b) Intertech Unglazed Porcelain by Interceramic.
    - 3) Approved Colors:
      - (a) Submit color options for Owner's selection.
  - b.
  - c. Finished floor with slope shown on Contract Documents: 2 inches (50 mm) square:
    - 1) Cove Base: External and internal corner pieces to match with bull-nosed top:
      - (a) 5-6 inches by 12 inches (125-150 mm by 300 mm) with bull-nosed top or flat top.
    - 2) Approved Products. See Section 01 6000:
      - (a) Keystones Colorbody Porcelain by Daltile (lead time 6 weeks).
        - (1) MD-5A Built Up Base Square Top.
        - (2) MD-5B Built Up Base Round Bullnose Top.
      - (b) Intertech Unglazed Porcelain by Interceramic.
    - 3) Approved Colors. See Section 01 6000:
      - (a) Dove Grey PF04 by Daltile.
2. Ceramic Tile:
  - a. Wall Tile:
    - 1) Walls: 4 inch by 12 inch (150 mm by 150 mm).
    - 2) Approved Products. See Section 01 6200:
      - (a) Color Wheel Collection - Classic: Semi-Gloss or Matte by Daltile.
      - (b) IC Brites or Mattes or Bold Tones Series by Interceramic.
    - 3) Approved Colors. See Section 01 6000:
      - (a) Restrooms (Stacked vertical pattern):
        - (1) Arctic White 0190 by Daltile.
        - (2) White by Interceramic.
      - (b) Restrooms (Herringbone pattern):
        - (1) Arctic White 0190 by Daltile.
        - (2) White by Interceramic.
      - (c) Drinking Fountain (Stacked vertical pattern):
        - (1) Arctic White 0190 by Daltile.
        - (2) White by Interceramic.
3. Ceramic Tile:
  - a. Custodial:
    - 1) Walls: 6 inch by 6 inch (150 mm by 150 mm).
    - 2) Approved Products. See Section 01 6200:
      - (a) Color Wheel Collection - Classic: Semi-Gloss or Matte by Daltile.
      - (b) IC Brites or Mattes or Bold Tones Series by Interceramic.
    - 3) Approved Colors. See Section 01 6000:
      - (a) Custodial:
        - (1) Arctic White 0190 by Daltile.
        - (2) White by Interceramic.

## 2.02 SETTING MATERIALS

- A. Manufacturer's Contact List:
  - 1. Ardex Engineered Cements, Aliquippa, PA [www.ArdexAmericas.com](http://www.ArdexAmericas.com).
    - a. Contact Information: Don Richards (206) 979-0401  
[www.Don.richards@ArdexAmericas.com](mailto:www.Don.richards@ArdexAmericas.com).
  - 2. Custom Building Products, Seal Beach, CA [www.custombuildingproducts.com](http://www.custombuildingproducts.com).
    - a. Contact Information: John Gallup (206) 718-6024 [johng@cbpmail.net](mailto:johng@cbpmail.net).
  - 3. Dal-Tile Corp., Div. of Mohawk Industries, Dallas, TX [www.daltile.com](http://www.daltile.com).
  - 4. Interceramic Inc., Garland, TX [www.interceramic.com](http://www.interceramic.com).
  - 5. Laticrete International Inc., Bethany, CT [www.laticrete.com](http://www.laticrete.com).
  - 6. Mapei Americas Headquarters, Deerfield Beach, FL [www.mapei.com](http://www.mapei.com).

- a. Contact Information: Bart A. Wilde (801) 467-2060 www.bwilde@mapei.com.
  7. Merkrete, by Parex USA, Inc., Anaheim, CA www.merkrete.com.
    - a. Contact Information: Andy Townes (505) 873-1181 andy.townes@parexusa.com.
  8. Schluter Systems L.P., Plattsburgh, NY www.schluter.com.
- B. Materials:
1. Mortar Bed:
    - a. Portland Cement: Meet requirements of ASTM C150/C150M, Type 1, designation shall appear on bag.
    - b. Hydrated Lime:
      - 1) Meet Requirements of one of following:
        - (a) ASTM C206.
        - (b) ASTM C207, Type S (designation shall appear on bag).
    - c. Sand: Clean, washed, well-graded, meeting requirements of ASTM C144 with gradation of 100 percent passing No. 8 sieve with not over five (5) percent passing No. 100 sieve.
    - d. Latex Additive; in lieu of all water:
      - 1) Design Criteria:
        - (a) Meet material specification requirements of ANSI A118.4 or ANSI A118.11.
        - (b) Meet ANSI installation specification requirements of ANSI A108.5.
        - (c) Expansion joints complies with TCA method EJ171.
      - 2) Acceptable Products:
        - (a) ARDEX: Ardex E 90 Mortar Admix.
        - (b) CUSTOM: Thin-Set Mortar Admix.
        - (c) LATICRETE: 4237 Latex Additive with 211 Powder.
        - (d) MAPEI: Planicrete AC.
        - (e) MERKRETE: 150 Latex Admixture.
  2. Metal Trim:
    - a. Approved Products. See Section 01 6200:
      - 1) Tile / Carpet Junction: Schluter-RENO-AETK.
      - 2) Font Stair Nosing: Schluter-TREP-B, one inch (25 mm), color G or HB as selected by Architect.
      - 3) Over Expansion Joints In Slabs: Schluter DILEX-BWS, color G, PG, or HB as selected by Architect.
  3. Joint Sealants:
    - a. Interior Ceramic Tile Joints are furnished in Section 07 9213 and installed in Section 09 3013 'Ceramic Tiling' including the following:
      - 1) Ceramic and paver cove base inside corners.
      - 2) Ceramic and paver tile joints.
      - 3) Termination joints in showers and fonts.
  4. Backer Board Joint Reinforcing: 2 inch (50 mm) wide glass fiber mesh tape.
  5. Tile Setting Products:
    - a. Use only products of same Manufacturer to validate warranty, unless otherwise acceptable to Ceramic Tile Supplier.
    - b. Use only products that meet Mortar Manufacturer's twenty five (25) year system warranty requirements.
    - c. Latex-Portland Cement Mortar For Floors:
      - 1) Design Criteria:
        - (a) Meet ANSI material specification requirements of ANSI A118.4, ANSI A118.11, or ANSI A118.15.
        - (b) Meet ANSI installation specification requirements of ANSI A108.4 or ISO material specification ISO13007 installation material specification and C2ES1P2 performance requirements for adhesive.
      - 2) Approved Products. See Section 01 6000:

- (a) ARDEX: Ardex X77.
  - (b) CUSTOM: Megalite Crack Prevention Mortar or FlexBond Premium Crack Prevention Thin-set Mortar (no additives needed).
  - (c) LATICRETE: 254 Platinum Thinset.
  - (d) MAPEI: Ultraflex 3.
  - (e) MERKRETE: 735 Premium Flex.
- d. Latex/Polymer Modified Portland Cement Mortar For Walls:
- 1) Design Criteria:
    - (a) Meet ANSI material specification requirements of ANSI A118.4, ANSI A118.11, or ANSI A118.15.
    - (b) Meet ANSI installation specification requirements of ANSI A108.4 or ISO material specification ISO13007 installation material specification and C2ES1P2 performance requirements for adhesive.
  - 2) Approved Products. See Section 01 6000:
    - (a) ARDEX: Ardex X77.
    - (b) CUSTOM: Megalite Thin-Set Mortar or FlexBond Fortified Thin-Set Mortar.
    - (c) LATICRETE: 254 Platinum Thinset.
    - (d) MAPEI: Ultraflex 3.
    - (e) MERKRETE: 735 Premium Flex.
- e. Floor Grout (Epoxy):
- 1) Design Criteria:
    - (a) Meet ANSI material specification requirements of ANSI A118.3.
    - (b) Meet ANSI installation specification requirements of ANSI A108.6 and ISO material specification ISO13007 RG.
  - 2) Approved Color:
    - (a) ARDEX: Architect to select color from manufacturer's color wheel.
    - (b) CUSTOM: Architect to select color from manufacturer's color wheel..
    - (c) LATICRETE: Architect to select color from manufacturer's color wheel..
    - (d) MAPEI: Architect to select color from manufacturer's color wheel..
    - (e) MERKRETE: Architect to select color from manufacturer's color wheel..
  - 3) Approved Products. See Section 01 6000:
    - (a) ARDEX: Ardex WA.
    - (b) CUSTOM: CEG-Lite 100% Solids Commercial Epoxy Grout.
    - (c) LATICRETE: SpectraLOCK PRO.
    - (d) MAPEI: Kerapoxy (sanded).
    - (e) MERKRETE: Pro Epoxy.
- f. Wall Grout (Modified Polymer):
- 1) Design Criteria:
    - (a) Meet ANSI material specification requirements of ANSI A118.6 or ANSI A118.7.
    - (b) Meet ANSI installation specification requirements of ANSI A108.10 or ISO material specification ISO13007 C2ES1P2.
  - 2) Color:
    - (a) ARDEX: Architect to select color from manufacturer's color wheel..
    - (b) CUSTOM: Architect to select color from manufacturer's color wheel..
    - (c) LATICRETE: Architect to select color from manufacturer's color wheel..
    - (d) MAPEI: Architect to select color from manufacturer's color wheel..
    - (e) MERKRETE: Architect to select color from manufacturer's color wheel..
  - 3) Approved Products. See Section 01 6000:
    - (a) ARDEX: Ardex FH.
    - (b) CUSTOM: PolyBlend Non-Sanded Grout or Prism Color Consistent Grout.
    - (c) LATICRETE: 1600 Series Unsanded Dry Set Wall Grout with 1776 Grout Admix Plus additive.

- (d) MAPEI: Keracolor-U Unsanded Polymer-Modified Grout.
    - (e) MERKRETE: Non-Sanded ColorGrout, latex modified.
  - g. Waterproofing Membrane:
    - 1) Design Criteria:
      - (a) Meet ANSI installation specification requirements of ANSI A108.10.
      - (b) ANSI installation specification requirements not required.
    - 2) Approved Products. See Section 01 6000:
      - (a) Troweled applied, cement based:
      - (b) ARDEX: Ardex 8+9.
      - (c) MAPEI: Mapelastc 315.
      - (d) Liquid applied, latex based:
      - (e) CUSTOM: RedGuard Waterproofing or Crack Prevention Membrane or FractureFree Crack Prevention Membrane.
      - (f) LATICRETE: Hydro Ban.
      - (g) MAPEI: Mapelastc AquaDefense.
      - (h) MERKRETE: Hydro-Guard SP-1.
  - h. Crack Isolation Membrane:
    - 1) Design Criteria:
      - (a) Meet ANSI installation specification requirements of ANSI A118.12.
      - (b) ANSI installation specification requirements not required.
    - 2) Approved Products. See Section 01 6000:
      - (a) Flexible, thin, load-bearing, fabric-reinforced:
      - (b) ARDEX: Ardex 8+9 with SK Mesh Tape.
      - (c) CUSTOM: Crack Buster Pro Crack Prevention Mat Underlayment, with Peel & Stick Primer.
      - (d) LATICRETE: Blue 92 Anti-Fracture Membrane.
      - (e) MAPEI: Mapeguard 2, and Primer SM.
      - (f) MERKRETE: Hydro-Guard SP-1.
      - (g) Liquid applied, latex based:
      - (h) CUSTOM: RedGuard Waterproofing and Crack Prevention Membrane or FractureFree Crack Prevention Membrane.
      - (i) LATICRETE: Hydro Ban.
      - (j) MAPEI: Mapelastc AquaDefense.
      - (k) MERKRETE: Fracture Guard 5000.
  - i. Stone Thresholds:
    - 1) Texture and color variation shall be within limits established by Architect's approved sample.
    - 2) Free of defects that would materially impair strength, durability, and appearance.
    - 3) Finish: 80 grit exterior hone.
    - 4) White marble, one (1) piece, 7/8 inch (22 mm) thick by 2 1/2 inches (64 mm) by door opening width. Cross-section to meet handicap accessibility requirements.
- C. Mixes:
  - 1. Mortar Beds:
    - a. Floor Mix: One Part Portland Cement, 5 Parts Dry Sand, 4 Part Damp Sand, 1/10 Part hydrated Lime optional.
    - b. Wall Mix: One Part portland cement, 5-1/2 to 7 Parts damp sand, 1/2 Part hydrated lime optional.
    - c. Font One Part portland cement, 4 Parts damp sand. Use waterproofing admixture. Mix dry then add minimum amount of water.

## **PART 3 EXECUTION**

### **3.01 INSTALLERS**

- A. Acceptable Installers:

1. Meet Quality Assurance Installer Qualifications as specified in Part 1 of this specification.

### 3.02 EXAMINATION

- A. Verify that subfloor surfaces are smooth and flat within the tolerances specified for that type of work and are ready to receive tile.
- B. Verify that wall surfaces are smooth and flat within the tolerances specified for that type of work, are dust-free, and are ready to receive tile.
- C. Verify that subfloor surfaces are dust free and free of substances that could impair bonding of setting materials to subfloor surfaces.
- D. Verify that concrete sub-floor surfaces are ready for tile installation by testing for moisture emission rate and alkalinity; obtain instructions if test results are not within limits recommended by tile manufacturer and setting materials manufacturer.
- E. Verify that required floor-mounted utilities are in correct location.
- F. Notify Architect in writing if surfaces are not acceptable to install tile:
  1. Do not lay tile over unsuitable surface.
  2. Commencing installation constitutes acceptance of surfaces and approval of existing conditions.

### 3.03 PREPARATION

- A. Allow concrete to cure for twenty-eight (28) days minimum before application of mortar bed.
- B. Protect surrounding work from damage.
- C. Vacuum clean surfaces and damp clean.
- D. Seal substrate surface cracks with filler. Level existing substrate surfaces to acceptable flatness tolerances.
- E. Install backer board in accordance with ANSI A108.11 and board manufacturer's instructions. Tape joints and corners, cover with skim coat of setting material to a feather edge.
- F. Prepare substrate surfaces for adhesive installation in accordance with adhesive manufacturer's instructions.

### 3.04 INSTALLATION - GENERAL

- A. Interface with Other Work:
  1. Grounds, anchors, plugs, hangers, door frames, electrical, mechanical, and other work in or behind tile shall be installed before tile work is started.
- B. Special Techniques:
  1. Install in accordance with following latest TCNA (HB) installation methods:
    - a. Flush Concrete Slabs with crack isolation membrane: TCNA F115.
    - b. Mortar Bed on Concrete Slab: TCNA F111 with reinforcing.
- C. Tolerances:
  1. Plane of Vertical Surfaces:
    - a. 1/8 inch in 8 feet (3 mm in 2.450 meters) from required plane shall be plumb and true with square corners.
  2. Variation in Slab Grade:
    - a. Plus or minus 1/8 inch (3 mm) in any 10 feet (3.050 m) of floor slab and distance between high point and low point of slab of 1/2 inch (12.7 mm).
    - b. Slab Testing Procedure:
      - 1) Place ends of straightedge on 3/8 inch (10 mm) high shims.
      - 2) Floor is satisfactory if 1/4 inch (6 mm) diameter steel rod rolled under straightedge will not touch anywhere along 10 foot (3.050 m) length and 1/2 inch (12.7 mm) diameter steel rod will not fit under straightedge anywhere along 10 foot (3.050 m) length.
- D. General:

1. Install tile in pattern indicated:
    - a. Align joints when adjoining tiles on floor, base, walls, and trim are same size.
    - b. Adjust to minimize tile cutting and to avoid tile less than half size.
    - c. Center and balance areas of tile if possible.
  2. Extend tile into recesses and under equipment and fixtures to form a complete covering without interruption:
  3. Maintain heights of tilework in full courses to nearest obtainable dimension where heights are given in feet and inches (meters and millimeters) and are not required to fill vertical spaces exactly.
  4. Install cut tile with cuts on outer edges of field:
    - a. Provide straight cuts that align with adjacent materials.
    - b. When possible, smooth cut edges of tile or use appropriate cutter or wet saw to produce smooth cuts.
    - c. Do not install tile with jagged or flaked edges.
  5. Terminate tile neatly at obstructions, edges, and corners, without disruption of pattern or joint alignment:
    - a. Fit tile closely where edges are to be covered by trim, escutcheons, or similar devices.
  6. Provide straight tile joints of uniform width, subject to variance in tolerance allowed in tile size:
    - a. Make joints smooth and even, without voids, cracks, or excess mortar or grout.
  7. Use a beating block and hammer or rubber mallet so faces and edges of individual tiles are flush and level with faces and edges of adjacent tiles, and to reduce lippage.
  8. Accessories in tilework shall be evenly spaced, properly centered with tile joints, and level, plumb, and true to correct projection.
  9. Leave finished installation clean and free of cracked, chipped, broken, unbonded, and otherwise defective tile work.
- E. Application on Concrete Floor:
1. On Mortar Bed:
    - a. Apply mortar bed to depth equal to depression in slab minus 1/2 inch (12.7 mm).
    - b. Properly cure before installing tile.
  2. Clean substrate surface thoroughly.
    - a. Dampen if very dry, but do not saturate.
  3. Install tile with 100 percent contact with mortar bed.
    - a. Obtaining 100 percent contact may require troweling mortar layer on back of each tile before placing on mortar bed.
  4. Install base by flush method (square or thin-lip method is not acceptable):
    - a. Allow for expansion joint directly above any expansion or control joints in slab.
  5. Insert temporary filler in expansion joints.
- F. Application of Mortar:
1. Do not spread more mortar than can be covered within ten (10) to fifteen (15) minutes:
    - a. If 'skinning' occurs, remove mortar and spread fresh material.
    - b. Spread mortar with notches running in one (1) direction, perpendicular to pressing, pushing and pulling of tile during placement.
  2. Install tile before mortar has started initial cure:
    - a. For thin set mortar application, use notch trowel that will achieve the recommended coverage of mortar after tiles have been installed.
  3. Place tile in fresh mortar, press, push and pull tile slightly to achieve as near 100 percent coverage and contact of tile with setting material and substrate as possible:
    - a. Average contact area shall be not less than eighty (80) percent except on exterior or shower installations where contact area shall be ninety-five (95) percent when not less than three (3) tiles or tile assemblies are removed for inspection. The eighty (80)



- percent or ninety-five (95) percent coverage shall be sufficiently distributed to give full support of the tile.
- b. Support corners and edges with mortar leaving no hollow corners or edges.
4. Install so there is 1/8 inch (3 mm) of mortar between tile and substrate after proper bedding:
    - a. Periodically remove sheets or individual tiles to assure proper bond coverage consistent with industry specifications.
    - b. If coverage is found to be insufficient, use a larger size notch trowel.
- G. Application of Grout:
1. Firmly set tile before applying grout:
    - a. This requires forty-eight (48) hours minimum.
  2. Before grouting:
    - a. Remove all paper and glue from face of mounted tile.
    - b. Remove spacers or ropes before applying grouting:
  3. Mixing Grout:
    - a. Use clean buckets and mixing tools:
      - 1) Use sufficient pressure and flow grout in progressively to avoid air pockets and voids.
    - b. Machine mixing of grout is preferred to assure uniform blend. To prevent trapping air bubbles into prepared grout, use slow speed mixer.
    - c. Slake for fifteen (15) minutes.
    - d. Water or latex additives used for mixing with dry grout shall be measured accurately.
  4. Before grouting entire area, do a test area to assure there will be no permanent staining or discoloration of tile and to verify that excess grout can be easily removed from tile surface:
    - a. If necessary, pre-coat exposed surfaces of tile with a grout release recommended by Grout Manufacturer to facilitate removal of excess grout.
  5. Installing Grout:
    - a. Use caution, when grouting glazed ceramic tiles to prevent scratching or damaging surface of tile.
    - b. Dampen dry joints prior to grouting with sand-portland cement grout, standard sanded cement grout, standard unsanded cement grout, polymer modified sanded tile grout, and polymer modified unsanded tile grout. Do not leave puddles of water in joints before grouting.
    - c. Keep an adequate joint depth open for grouting. Force maximum amount of grout into joints.
    - d. Apply grout to produce full, smooth grout joints of uniform width, and free of voids and gaps
      - 1) Fill joints of cushion edge tile to depth of cushion.
      - 2) Fill joints of square edge tile flush with surface.
      - 3) Fill joint between wall tile and bull-nosed paver tile base with floor grout.
    - e. Install floor tile with grout thickness of 3/16 inch (4.76 mm) maximum.
    - f. Remove excess grout from surface of tile before it loses its plasticity or begins to set.
    - g. Finished grout shall be uniform in color, smooth, and without voids, pin holes, or low spots.
- H. Curing:
1. Keep installation at 65 to 85 deg F (18 to 30 deg C) during first eight (8) hours of cure. Shade area completely from sun during this period.
- I. Application of Joint Sealants:
1. Apply joint sealants after grout has cured:
    - a. This requires forty-eight (48) hours minimum.
  2. Before applying sealant:
    - a. Remove spacers or ropes before applying joint sealants.
    - b. Apply backer rod and joint sealants at expansion joints.

**3.05 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL**

- A. Non-Conforming Work:
  - 1. Correct any work found cracked, chipped, broken, unbounded and otherwise defective or not complying with contract document requirements at no additional cost to the Owner.

**3.06 CLEANING**

- A. Clean tile and grout surfaces.
- B. If one has been used, remove grout release and clean tile surfaces so they are free of grout residue and foreign matter:
  - 1. If a grout haze or residue remains, use a suitable grout haze remover or cleaner.
  - 2. Flush surface with clean water before and after cleaning.

**3.07 PROTECTION**

- A. Do not permit traffic over finished floor surface for 4 days after installation.
- B. Close to traffic areas where tile is being set and other tile work being done:
  - 1. Keep closed until tile is firmly set.
  - 2. Before, during, and after grouting, keep area clean, dry, and free from foreign materials and airflow that will interfere with setting and curing of grout.
- C. Newly tiled floors shall not be walked on nor worked on without using kneeling boards or equivalent protection of tiled surface.
- D. After cleaning, provide protective covering and maintain conditions protecting tile work from damage and deterioration:
  - 1. Where tiled surfaces will be subject to equipment or wheel traffic or heavy construction traffic, cover protective covering with 1/4 inch (6 mm) hardboard, plywood, or similar material.

**END OF SECTION**

BLANK PAGE

**SECTION 09 5113****ACOUSTICAL PANEL CEILINGS****PART 1 - GENERAL****1.1 SUMMARY**

- A. Includes But Not Limited To:
1. Furnish and install acoustical ceiling panels for suspended acoustical ceilings as described in Contract Documents.
- B. Related Requirements:
1. Section 09 5323: 'Metal Acoustical Suspension Assemblies'.
  2. Section 26 5100: 'Interior Lighting' for light fixtures.
  3. Division 23: Related sections for HVAC installed in ceiling.

**1.2 REFERENCES**

- A. Association Publications:
1. The Ceilings & Interior Systems Construction Association (CISCA), *Ceiling Systems Handbook*. 405 Illinois Avenue, 2B, St Charles IL. [www.cisca.org](http://www.cisca.org).
    - a. Recommendations for direct hung acoustical tile and lay-in panel ceilings.
- B. Definitions:
1. Acoustical Panel: Form of a prefabricated sound absorbing ceiling element used with exposed suspension systems.
  2. Absorption: Materials that have capacity to absorb sound. Absorption is the opposite of reflection.
  3. Ceiling Attenuation Class (CAC): Rates ceiling's efficiency as barrier to airborne sound transmission between adjacent closed offices. Shown as minimum value, previously expressed as CSTC (Ceiling Sound Transmission Class). Single-figure rating derived from normalized ceiling attenuation values in accordance with classification ASTM E413, except that resultant rating shall be designated ceiling attenuation class. (Defined in ASTM E1414.) Acoustical unit with high CAC may have low NRC.
  4. Center Line: Line indicating midpoint of surface in either direction. Used as guide in starting ceiling.
  5. Class A: Fire classification for product with flame spread rating of no more than 25 and smoke developed rating not exceeding 50, when tested in accordance with ASTM E84 or UL 723.
  6. Flame Spread Index: Comparative measure, expressed as a dimensionless number, derived from visual measurements of the spread of flame versus time for a material tested in accordance with ASTM E84 or UL 723.
  7. Interior Finish: Interior finish includes interior wall and ceiling finish and interior floor finish.
  8. Mineral Base: Ceilings composed principally of mineral materials such as fibers manufactured from rock or slab, with or without binders.
  9. Noise Reduction Coefficient (NRC): Average sound absorption coefficient measured at four frequencies: 250, 500, 1,000 and 2,000 Hertz expressed to the nearest integral multiple of 0.05. Rates ability of ceiling or wall panel or other construction to absorb sound. NRC is fraction of sound energy, averaged over all angles of direction and from low to high sound frequencies that is absorbed and not reflected.
  10. Reflection Factor: Percentage of light a surface reflects.
  11. Reveal Edge: Acoustical lay-in panels with step-down edge are intended for use in direct hung exposed suspension systems.
  12. Smoke-Developed Index: The numerical value assigned to a material tested in accordance with ASTM E84 or UL 723.

13. Sound Absorption: Property possessed by materials and objects, including air, of converting sound energy into heat energy. Sound wave reflected by surface always loses part of its energy. Fraction of energy that is not reflected is called sound absorption coefficient of reflecting surface. For instance, if material reflects 80 percent of sound energy, then sound absorption coefficient would be 20 percent (0.20).
14. Surface Burning Characteristic: Rating of interior and surface finish material providing indexes for flame spread and smoke developed, based on testing conducted according to ASTM Standard E84 or UL 723.
15. Textured Pattern: Granular or raised (fine, coarse, or a blend), felted or matted surface as an integral part of the basic product or superimposed on the product surface.

C. Reference Standards:

1. American Society of Heating, Refrigerating and Air-Conditioning Engineers, Inc. (ASHRA):
  - a. ASHRAE Standard 62.1-2016, 'Ventilation for Acceptable Indoor Air Quality'.
2. ASTM International:
  - a. ASTM C423-17, 'Standard Test Method for Sound Absorption and Sound Absorption Coefficients by the Reverberation Room Method'.
  - b. ASTM D3273-16, 'Standard Test Method for Resistance to Growth of Mold on the Surface of Interior Coatings in an Environmental Chamber'.
  - c. ASTM E84-18b, 'Standard Test Method for Surface Burning Characteristics of Building Materials'.
  - d. ASTM E119-18c, 'Standard Test Methods for Fire Tests of Building Construction and Materials'.
  - e. ASTM E1111/E1111M-14, 'Standard Test Method for Measuring the Interzone Attenuation of Open Office Components'.
  - f. ASTM E1264-14, 'Standard Classification for Acoustical Ceiling Products'.
  - g. ASTM E1414/E1414M-16, 'Standard Test Method for Airborne Sound Attenuation Between Rooms Sharing a Common Ceiling Plenum'.
  - h. ASTM E1477 - 98a(2017), 'Standard Test Method for Luminous Reflectance Factor of Acoustical Materials by Use of Integrating-Sphere Reflectometers'.
3. International Building Code (IBC) (2018 or most recent edition adopted by AHJ):
  - a. Chapter 8, 'Interior Finishes':
    - 1) Section 803, 'Wall And Ceiling Finishes':
      - a) 803.1.1, 'Interior Wall and Ceiling Finish Materials'.
      - b) 803.1.2, 'Room Corner Test for Interior Wall or Ceiling Finish Materials'.
4. National Fire Protection Association:
  - a. NFPA 101: 'Life Safety Code' (2018 or most recent edition adopted by AHJ).
  - b. NFPA 265: 'Standard Methods of Fire Tests for Evaluating Room Fire Growth Contribution of Textile Coverings on Full Height Panels and Walls', (2015 or most recent edition adopted by AHJ).
5. Underwriters Laboratories Inc.:
  - a. UL 723: 'Standard for Safety Test for Surface Burning Characteristics of Building Materials'; (11th Edition - 2018).

### 1.3 SUBMITTALS

A. Action Submittals:

1. Produce Data: Technical data for each type of acoustical ceiling unit required.
2. Sample: Minimum **6 inch (150 mm) x 6 inch (150 mm)** samples of specified acoustical panel.

B. Informational Submittals:

1. Certificates:
  - a. Manufacturer's certifications that products comply with specified requirements including laboratory reports showing compliance with specified tests and standards. For acoustical performance, each carton of material must carry approved independent laboratory classification of NRC, CAC, and AC.
2. Test And Evaluation Reports:
  - a. If requested by Owner, provide copies of Quality Assurance requirements for 'Class A' flame spread rating and 'Room-Corner Test'.

- C. Closeout Submittals:
  - 1. Include following in Operations And Maintenance Manual specified in Section 01 7800:
    - a. Warranty Documentation:
      - 1) Final, executed copy of Warranty.
    - b. Record Documentation:
      - 1) Manufacturers Documentation:
        - a) Manufacturer's literature.
        - b) Color and pattern selection.
- D. Maintenance Material Submittals:
  - 1. Extra Stock Materials:
    - a. Provide Owner with one (1) carton of each type of tile for future use.
      - 1) Packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with appropriate labels.

#### 1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Regulatory Agency Sustainability Approvals:
  - 1. Fire-Test-Response Characteristics: As determined by testing identical ceiling tile applied with identical adhesives to substrates according to test method indicated below by qualified testing agency. Identify products with appropriate markings of applicable testing agency.
    - a. Surface-Burning Characteristics:
      - 1) Ceiling tile shall have Class A flame spread rating in accordance with ASTM E84 or UL 723 Type 1.
        - a) Class A (Flame spread index 0-25; Smoke-developed index 0-450).
        - b) Flash point: None.
  - 2. Passage of 'Room-Corner Test' as recognized by AHJ, is required for system. Adhesive cited in test literature is required for installation of ceiling tile on Project.
    - a. Room Corner Tests:
      - 1) ASTM E84, 'Standard Test Method for Surface Burning Characteristics of Building Materials'.
      - 2) IBC 803.2.1, 'Room Corner Test for Interior Wall or Ceiling Finish Materials'.
      - 3) NFPA 265: 'Room Corner Test for Interior Wall or Ceiling Finish Materials'.
      - 4) UL 723, 'Standard for Safety Test for Surface Burning Characteristics of Building Materials'.

#### 1.5 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Delivery and Acceptance Requirements:
  - 1. Materials shall be delivered in original, unopened packages with labels intact.
- B. Storage And Handling Requirements:
  - 1. Store materials where protected from moisture, direct sunlight, surface contamination, and damage.
  - 2. Store in cool, dry location, out of direct sunlight and weather, and at temperatures between **32 deg F (0 deg C)** and **86 deg F (30 deg C)**.
  - 3. Handle acoustical ceiling panels carefully to avoid chipping edges or damage. Use no soiled, scratched, or broken material in the Work.

#### 1.6 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Ambient Conditions:
  - 1. Building shall be enclosed, mechanical system operating with proper filters in place, and temperature and humidity conditions stabilized within limits under which Project will operate before, during, and after installation until Substantial Completion.
  - 2. Installation shall be at temperatures between **32 deg F (0 deg C)** and **86 deg F (30 deg C)** or as per Manufacturer recommendations.

## 1.7 WARRANTY

- A. Manufacturer's Warranty:
  - 1. Acoustical ceiling panels:
    - a. Manufacturer's warranty to be free from defects in materials and factory workmanship.
    - b. Manufacturer's warranty against sagging and warping.
    - c. Manufacturer's warranty against mold/mildew, and bacterial growth.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Manufacturers Contact List:
  - 1. Armstrong World Industries, Lancaster, PA [www.ceiling.com](http://www.ceiling.com).
    - a. Contact Information:
      - 1) For pricing and ordering of tile, contact Sherry Brunt / Phyllis Miller at (800) 442-4212, FAX 800-233-5598, or [bpo\\_strategic\\_accounts@armstrong.com](mailto:bpo_strategic_accounts@armstrong.com).
      - 2) For Strategic Account information, contact Randy Lay at (303) 775-1409 [ralay@armstrong.com](mailto:ralay@armstrong.com).
  - 2. USG Interiors Inc, Chicago, IL [www.usg.com](http://www.usg.com).

### 2.2 MATERIALS

- A. Acoustic Ceiling Panels:
  - 1. Description:
    - a. Color: White (surface factory-applied).
    - b. Composition: Wet-formed mineral fiber.
  - 2. Design Criteria:
    - a. Acoustics:
      - 1) Noise Reduction Coefficient (NRC): ASTM C423; 0.70 minimum.
      - 2) Ceiling Attenuation Class (CAC): ASTM E1414/E1414M; 35 minimum.
    - b. Antimicrobial Protection: Resistance against growth of mold/mildew.
    - c. Classification:
      - 1) Meet requirements of ASTM E1264, Type III (mineral base with painted finish), Form 1 (nodular) or Form 4 (cast or molded), Pattern E1 (lightly textured).
    - d. Fire Performance: As specified in Quality Assurance in Part 1 of this specification.
    - e. Light Reflectance (LR): ASTM E1477; 0.83 minimum.
    - f. Sag Resistance: Resistance to sagging in high humidity conditions.
    - g. VOC: Low.
  - 3. Narrow Face Design:
    - a. Category Four Product: See Section 01 6200 for definitions of Categories:
      - 1) Design Criteria:
        - a) Grid Face: **9/16 inch (14 mm)**.
        - b) Size: 24 inch x 24 inch x 3/4" (**610 mm x 610 mm x 19 mm**).
      - 2) Calla, Item 2822 by Armstrong:
        - a) Grid System: Silhouette XL 9/16 inch Bolt Slot - 1/8 inch Reveal.
        - b) Edge profile: Square Tegular.
      - 3) Mars High NRC, Item 80/35 by USG.
        - a) Grid System: DONN Fineline DXF - 1/4 inch Reveal.
        - b) Edge profile: FLB.

**PART 3 - EXECUTION****3.1 EXAMINATION**

- A. Verification Of Conditions:
  - 1. Inspect for defects in support that are not acceptable.
    - a. All wet work (concrete, painting, and etc.) must be completed and dry.
    - b. Temperature conditions within Manufacturer's written recommendation.
  - 2. Notify Architect of unsuitable conditions in writing.
    - a. Do not install acoustical ceiling panels until defects in support or environmental conditions are corrected.

**3.2 PREPARATION**

- A. Materials shall be dry and clean at time of application.
- B. Measure each ceiling area and establish layout of acoustical units to balance border widths at opposite edges of each ceiling. Avoid use of less than half width units at borders and comply with reflected ceiling plans. Coordinate panel layout with mechanical and electrical fixtures.

**3.3 INSTALLATION**

- A. Install acoustical panels in coordination with suspended system, with edges resting on flanges of main runner and cross tees. Cut and fit panels neatly against abutting surfaces. Support edges by wall moldings.
- B. Special Techniques:
  - 1. If recommended by Manufacturer, use tile one at a time from at least four (4) open boxes to avoid creating any pattern due to slight variations from box to box. Use tile from same color run in individual rooms to assure color match.
  - 2. Leave tile in true plane with straight, even joints.

**3.4 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL**

- A. Non-Conforming Work:
  - 1. Remove and replace defective materials at no additional cost to Owner including, but not limited to following:
    - a. Remove and replace damaged or broken acoustical ceiling panels.
    - b. Remove and replace discolored acoustical ceiling panels to match adjacent.
    - c. Remove and replace work that cannot be successfully cleaned and repaired to permanently eliminate evidence of damage.

**3.5 CLEANING**

- A. Clean exposed surfaces of acoustical ceiling panels, including trim, edge moldings, and suspension members.
  - 1. Comply with Manufacturer's written instructions for cleaning and touch up of minor finish damage.
- B. Waste Management:
  - 1. Remove from site all debris connected with work of this Section.

**END OF SECTION**



**SECTION 09 5323****METAL ACOUSTICAL SUSPENSION ASSEMBLIES****PART 1 - GENERAL****1.1 SUMMARY**

- A. Includes But Not Limited To:
1. Furnish and install metal acoustical suspension system as described in Contract Documents including:
    - a. Suspension system framing.
    - b. Wire hangers, fasteners, main runners, cross tees, and wall angle moldings.
- B. Related Requirements:
1. Section 09 5113: 'Acoustical Panel Ceiling'.
  2. Section 26 5100: 'Interior Lighting' for electrical fixtures installed in ceiling.
  3. Division 21: 'Fire Suppression' for sprinklers installed in ceiling.
  4. Division 23: 'Mechanical' for related sections for HVAC installed in ceiling.
  5. Division 26: 'Electrical' for related electrical work.
  6. Division 27: 'Communications' for related sound and video work.

**1.2 REFERENCES**

- A. Association Publications:
1. The Ceilings & Interior Systems Construction Association (CISCA), 405 Illinois Avenue, 2B, St Charles IL. [www.cisca.org](http://www.cisca.org).
    - a. '*Ceiling Systems Handbook*': Recommendations for direct hung acoustical tile and lay-in panel ceiling installation.
    - b. CISCA 0-2, '*Guidelines for Seismic Restraint for Direct-hung Suspended Ceiling Assemblies (zones 0-2)*' Covers Seismic Design Category C.
    - c. CISCA 3-4, '*Guidelines for Seismic Restraint for Direct-hung Suspended Ceiling Assemblies (zones 3-4)*' Covers Seismic Design Category D, E, and F.
    - d. '*Production Guide*': Practical reference for ceiling systems and estimating costs.
- B. Definitions:
1. Ceiling Suspension System: System of metal members, designed to support a suspended ceiling, typically acoustical ceiling. My also be designed to accommodate lighting fixtures or air diffusers.
  2. Clips: Several clip designs are available to suit applications such as fire resistance, wind uplift and impact. Fire-resistance rated designs have exact requirements, including mandatory use of hold down clips for acoustical panels or tiles weighing less than **1 lb per sq ft (4.9 kg per sq m)**. For rooms with significant air pressure differential from adjacent spaces, retention clips may be necessary to retain panels in place. Maintaining air pressure values may also require perimeter panel seals, typically closed cell foam gasket with adhesive on one side.
  3. Compression Post (Vertical Strut, Seismic Struts): Rigid member used to provide lateral force bracing of suspension system.
  4. Cross Runner, Cross Tee: Cross runner is secondary or cross beams of mechanical ceiling suspension system, usually supporting only acoustical tile. Cross tee is inserted into main runner to form different module sizes. In some suspension systems, however, cross runners also provide support for lighting fixtures, air diffusers and other cross runners.
  5. Exposed Grid System: Structural suspension system for lay-in ceiling panels. Factory-painted supporting members are exposed to view. Exposed tee surfaces may be continuous or have integral reveal. Reveals are typically formed as channel or rail profiles extending down from tee leg.

6. Flange: Horizontal surface on face of tee, visible from below ceiling. Part of grid to which color cap is applied. Most grid system flanges are either **15/16 inch (24 mm)** or **9/16 inch (14 mm)**.
7. Hanger Wires: Wire employed to suspend acoustical ceiling from existing structure. Standard material is **12 gauge (0.105 inch - 2.70 mm)** galvanized, soft annealed steel wire, conforming to ASTM A641/A641M. Heavier gauge wire is available for higher load carrying installations, or situations where hanger wire spacing exceeds **4 feet (1.20 m)** on center. Seismic designs or exterior installations subject to wind uplift may require supplemental bracing or substantial hanger devices such as metal straps, rods or structural angles.
8. Heavy-Duty Systems: Primarily used for installations in which the quantities and weights of ceiling fixtures (lights, air diffusers, etc.) are greater than those for ordinary commercial structure.
9. Hold Down Clip: Mechanical fastener that snaps over bulb of grid system to hold ceiling panels in place.
10. Main Beam, Main Runner, Main Tee: Primary or main beams of type of ceiling suspension system in which structural members are mechanically locked together. Provide direct support for cross runners and may support lighting fixtures and air diffusers, as well as acoustical tile. Supported by hanger wires attached directly to existing structure; or installed perpendicular to carrying channels and supported by specially designed sheet metal or wire clips attached to carrying channels.
11. Splay Wires: Wires installed at angle rather than perpendicular to grid.
12. Stiffening Brace: Used to prevent uplift of grid caused by wind pressure in exterior applications.
13. Suspension System: Metal grid suspended from hanger rods or wires, consisting of main beams and cross tees, clips, splines and other hardware which supports lay-in acoustical panels or tiles. Completed ceiling forms barrier to sound, heat and fire. It also absorbs in-room sound and hides ductwork and wiring in plenum.
14. T-Bar: Any metal member of "T" cross section used in ceiling suspension systems.

C. Reference Standards:

1. American Society of Civil Engineers/Structural Engineering Institute:
  - a. ASCE/SEI 7-16, 'Minimum Design Loads for Buildings and Other Structures' (Section 9, 'Earthquake Loads).
2. ASTM International:
  - a. ASTM A568/A568M-17a, 'Standard Specification for Steel, Sheet, Carbon, Structural, and High-Strength, Low-Alloy, Hot-Rolled and Cold-Rolled, General Requirements for'.
  - b. ASTM A641/A641M-09a(2014), 'Standard Specification for Zinc-Coated (Galvanized) Carbon Steel Wire'.
  - c. ASTM B117-18, 'Standard Practice for Operating Salt Spray (Fog) Apparatus'.
  - d. ASTM C635/C635M-15, 'Standard Specification for the Manufacture, Performance, and Testing of Metal Suspension Systems for Acoustical Tile and Lay-in Panel Ceilings'.
  - e. ASTM C636/C636M-13, 'Standard Practice for Installation of Metal Ceiling Suspension Systems for Acoustical Tile and Lay-In Panels'.
  - f. ASTM D610-08(2019), 'Standard Practice for Evaluating Degree of Rusting on Painted Steel Surfaces'.
  - g. ASTM E580/E580M-17, 'Standard Practice for Installation of Ceiling Suspension Systems for Acoustical Tile and Lay-in Panels in Areas Subject to Earthquake Ground Motions'.
3. International Building Code (IBC) ((2018 or most recent edition adopted by AHJ):
  - a. IBC 808.1.1.1, 'Suspended Acoustical Ceilings'.
4. Underwriters Laboratories / American National Standards Institute:
  - a. UL 263: 'Standard for Fire Test of Building Construction and Materials' (14th Edition).
  - b. UL 723, 'Standard for Safety Test for Surface Burning Characteristics of Building Materials' (11th Edition).

### 1.3 ADMINISTRATIVE REQUIREMENTS

A. Coordination:

1. Coordinate layout of suspension system with other construction that penetrates ceilings or is supported by them, including light fixtures, HVAC equipment, and fire-suppression systems.
2. All work above ceiling should be completed prior to installing suspended system. There should be no materials resting against or wrapped around suspension system, hanger wires or ties.

## 1.4 SUBMITTALS

- A. Action Submittals:
  - 1. Product Data:
    - a. Provide Manufacturer's technical literature on suspension system including listing dimensions, load carrying capacity and standard compliance.
  - 2. Samples:
    - a. Minimum **8 inch (200 mm)** long samples of exposed wall molding and suspension system, including main runner/tee and cross runner/tee with couplings.
- B. Informational Submittals:
  - 1. Certificates:
    - a. Manufacturer's certifications that products comply with specified requirements, including laboratory reports showing compliance with specified tests and standards.
    - b. Installer's certificates of training.
  - 2. Manufacturer's Instructions:
    - a. Manufacturer's details and installation instructions for seismic bracing. If requested, provide copy of code requirements applicable to Project.

## 1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Regulatory Agency Sustainability Approvals:
  - 1. All system components conform to ASTM standards.
  - 2. Fire-Resistance Rating: UL approved metal suspension system.
  - 3. Meet seismic bracing requirements of ASCE 7, ASTM C635/C635M and ASTM C636/C636M or equivalent governing standard for project site.
  - 4. Seismic Standard: Acoustical ceilings shall be designed and installed to withstand the effects of earthquake motions according to the following:
    - a. Standard for Ceiling Suspension Systems Requiring Seismic Restraint: Comply with ASTM E580/E580M.
    - b. CISCA's Recommendations for Acoustical Ceilings: Comply with CISCA's *'Recommendations for Direct-Hung Acoustical Tile and Lay-in Panel Ceilings-Seismic Zones 0-2'* (Apply to Seismic Categories A & B).
    - c. CISCA's Guidelines for Systems Requiring Seismic Restraint: Comply with CISCA's *'Guidelines for Seismic Restraint of Direct-Hung Suspended Ceiling Assemblies-Seismic Zones 3 & 4'* (Apply to Seismic Categories C, D, E & F).
- B. Qualifications. Requirements of Section 01 4301 applies, but not limited to following:
  - 1. Installer:
    - a. Installer training (Ceiling Masters training course or equivalent).
  - 2. Manufacturer:
    - a. Manufacturer in good standing of CISCA (Ceiling and Interior Systems Construction Association).

## 1.6 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Delivery And Acceptance Requirements:
  - 1. Materials shall be delivered in original, unopened packages with labels intact.
- B. Storage And Handling Requirements:
  - 1. Materials shall be delivered in original, unopened packages with labels intact.
  - 2. Store material in fully enclosed space protected against damage from moisture, direct sunlight, surface contamination, and general damage.

## 1.7 WARRANTY

- A. Manufacturer Warranty:
1. Suspension system: Manufacturer warranty including repair or replacement of rusting as defined by ASTM D610 and defects in material or factory workmanship.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 SYSTEM

- A. Manufacturers:
1. Category Four Acceptable Manufacturers. See Section 01 6200 for definition of Categories:
    - a. Grid Face: **9/16 inch (14 mm)**.
      - 1) Armstrong World Industries, Lancaster, PA [www.ceiling.com](http://www.ceiling.com).
      - 2) USG Interiors Inc, Chicago, IL [www.usg.com](http://www.usg.com).
- B. Materials:
1. Grid:
    - a. Systems shall meet requirements of ASTM C635/C635M, Heavy Duty suspension system required for Seismic Design Categories D, E, or F.
    - b. Exposed surfaces shall be finished with factory-applied white baked enamel.
    - c. Meet requirements of ASTM D610 for red rust.
    - d. Main runners and cross tees:
      - 1) All main beams and cross tees shall be commercial quality hot-dipped galvanized (galvanized steel, aluminum, or stainless steel) as per ASTM A653/A653M. Main beams and cross tees are double-web steel construction with type exposed flange design.
      - 2) Narrow-face design - main runners and cross tees shall have **9/16 inch (14 mm)** exposed face in narrow revealed edge.
  2. Performance Standards:
    - a. DXL Systems by USG Interiors required for Seismic Design Categories D, E, or F.
  3. Wire Hangers, Braces, and Ties:
    - a. Zinc-Coated, carbon-steel wire meeting requirements of ASTM A641/A641M, Class 1 zinc coating, soft temper.
    - b. Size:
      - 1) Standard size: **12 gauge (0.105 inch) (2.70 mm)** galvanized, soft annealed steel wire.
      - 2) Select wire diameter so its stress is less than yield when loaded at three (3) times hanger design load (ASTM C635/C635M), Table 1, 'Direct Hung') will be less than yield stress of wire but provide not less than **12 gauge (0.105 inch) (2.70 mm)**.
    - c. Protect with rust inhibitive paint.
  4. Wall Molding: Channel section of cold-rolled electro-galvanized steel.
  5. Edge Moldings and Trim: Metal or extruded aluminum of types and profiles indicated or, if not indicated, manufacturer's standard moldings for edges and penetrations, including light fixtures, that fit type of edge detail and suspension system indicated. Provide moldings with exposed flange of same width as exposed runner.
  6. Hold-down Clips: As required by UL to prevent lifting of panels under unusual draft conditions.
  7. Seismic Joint Clip:
    - a. Required for Seismic Design Categories D, E, or F.
    - b. Quality Standard Product:
      - 1) SJCG by Armstrong World Industries, Lancaster, PA [www.armstrong.com](http://www.armstrong.com).
      - 2) Equal as approved by Architect before bidding. See Section 01 6200.
  8. Seismic Suspension System:
    - a. Required for Seismic Design Categories A, B, C, D, E, or F:
    - b. Design Criteria:
      - 1) Installation of ceiling system must be as prescribed by ICC-ES Evaluation Reports ESR-1222 or ESR-1308 and applicable code.
      - 2) Meet requirements of ASTM A568/A568M for hot-dipped galvanized, cold-rolled steel.

- 3) Attach cross runners to wall with seismic clips.
- c. Wall Molding Size: **7/8 inch (22 mm)** for all seismic design categories (code approved).
- d. Category Four Acceptable Products. See Section 01 6200 for definition of Categories.
  - 1) ACM7 Clip by USG Inc, Chicago, IL [www.usg.com](http://www.usg.com).
  - 2) BERC-2 Clip by Armstrong World Industries, Lancaster, PA [www.ceiling.com](http://www.ceiling.com).
9. Compression Posts/Struts:
  - a. Required for Seismic Design Categories D, E, or F.
  - b. Meet seismic requirements for Project.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Verification Of Conditions:
  1. Inspect area receiving suspension system to identify conditions which will adversely affect installation.
    - a. Work trades work to be thoroughly dry and complete prior to installation.
    - b. Verify weather tightness of area to receive suspension system prior to installation.
  2. Notify Architect of unsuitable conditions in writing.
    - a. Do not install ceiling panels until adverse conditions have been remedied.

### 3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. Interface With Other Work:
  1. All work above ceiling should be completed prior to installing suspended ceiling system including related work including drywall furring work, acoustical tile, light fixtures, mechanical systems, electrical systems, and sprinklers.
- B. General:
  1. Install suspension system and panels in accordance with Manufacturer's written instructions, and in compliance with ASTM C636/C636M, and with authorities having jurisdiction (AHJ).
- C. Lay out suspension system symmetrically about center lines of room unless shown otherwise by Contract Drawings. Lay out system so use of tiles less than 1/2 size is minimized.
- D. Suspend main runner/tee from overhead construction with hanger wires spaced **4 feet (1.20 m)** on center along length of main runner/tee. Install hanger wires plumb and straight. Hanger wires shall not be installed in convenience holes.
- E. Maintain suspension system in true plane with straight, even joints.
- F. Suspension system joints shall be straight and in alignment, and exposed surface flush and level. Wherever system abuts walls, columns, and other vertical surfaces, furnish and install appropriate molding.
- G. Install wall moldings at intersection of suspended ceiling and vertical surfaces. Miter corners where wall moldings intersect or install corner caps.
- H. Support edges with wall moldings.
- I. Locate light fixtures, speakers, and mechanical diffusers and grilles symmetrically in room insofar as possible (unless shown otherwise). Locate fixtures, speakers, diffusers, and grilles within suspension grid spaces and centered at least one (1) direction within grid. Installed fixtures shall not compromise ceiling performance.

- J. Pay attention to required hanger wire placement and fixture protection. Individual component deflection not to exceed 1/360 of span.
- K. Nails installed vertically into bottom of structural members, which are subject to pullout, shall not be used to support metal acoustical suspended assemblies:
  - 1. Nails may be used when installed horizontally into sides of structural members.
  - 2. Embedment must be at least **5/8 inch (15.9 mm)**.
- L. Screws, eyebolts or lag bolts used to support metal acoustical suspended assemblies must have minimum embedment of **5/8 inch (15.9 mm)** when installed into structural members.

### **3.3 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL**

- A. Field Inspections:
  - 1. Inspect:
    - a. Suspended ceiling system.
    - b. Hangers, anchors and fasteners.
- B. Non-Conforming Work:
  - 1. Correct any work found defective or not complying with contract document requirements at no additional cost to Owner.

**END OF SECTION**

**SECTION 09 6816****SHEET CARPETING: Back Cushion, Direct Glue****PART 1 - GENERAL****1.1 SUMMARY**

- A. Section Includes But Is Not Limited To:
1. Coordination, sequencing, and scheduling installation of Owner-Furnished carpet, carpet base, carpet accessories, leveling compounds as described in Contract Documents and including following:
    - a. Maintain Building Ambient Conditions including normal levels of humidity, lighting, heating, and air conditioning for acceptability for beginning floor preparation and carpet installation.
    - b. Protection of carpet after installation of carpeting as required.
- B. Related Requirements:
1. Section 01 1200: 'Multiple Contract Summary' for carpet and carpet base excluded from Contract and furnished and installed by Owner. This Section establishes quality of materials and installation for information of Contractor, Architect, and Owner's Representatives.
  2. Section 09 0503: 'Flooring Substrate Preparation' for:
    - a. Floor substrate preparation.
    - b. Pre-installation conference for Sections under 09 6000 heading 'Flooring'.

**1.2 REFERENCES**

- A. Association Publications:
1. The Carpet and Rug Institute (CRI), Dalton, GA [www.carpet-rug.org](http://www.carpet-rug.org). Standard for Installation Specification of Commercial Carpet:
    - a. CRI Indoor Air Quality (IAQ):
      - 1) CRI Green Label Plus Certification.
- B. Reference Standards:
1. The Carpet and Rug Institute (CRI):
    - a. CRI 104, 'Standard For Installation of Commercial Carpet' (Sept 2015).
    - b. CRI TM-102, 'School Carpet Minimum Average Specifications'.

**1.3 ADMINISTRATIVE REQUIREMENTS**

- A. Coordination:
1. Coordinate completion of carpet installation with other trades.
- B. Pre-Installation Conference:
1. Participate in MANDATORY pre-installation conference as specified in Section 09 0503.
  2. Schedule pre-installation conference before installation of flooring system.
  3. Conference may be held at project site or another convenient site. Participants may also attend by video or audio conference if approved by Project Manager.
  4. Schedule conference after substrate preparation and ONE (1) week before installation of flooring system.
  5. In addition to agenda items specified Section 01 3100 and Section 09 0503, review following:
    - a. Review Owner's Representative schedule for furnishing and installation carpet.
    - b. Review Flooring Manufacturer's installation conditions verification procedure and requirements.

- c. Review Building Ambient Conditions including normal levels of humidity, lighting, heating, and air conditioning for acceptability for beginning floor preparation and carpet installation.
  - d. Review cleaning and disposal requirements.
  - e. Review protection requirements of carpet after installation of carpeting.
- C. Scheduling:
- 1. Notify Flooring Installer when Building Ambient Conditions requirements are met before installation of flooring system.
  - 2. Notify Owner's Representative to coordinate installation of carpet.

#### 1.4 SUBMITTALS

- A. Closeout Submittals:
- 1. Include following in Operations And Maintenance Manual specified in Section 01 7800:
    - a. Warranty Documentation:
      - 1) Copy of Warranty.
    - b. Record Documentation:
      - 1) Owner will provide Project Carpet Request Documentation forms in both hard copy and digital format:
        - a) Carpet Request Information Sheet.
        - b) Carpet Vendor Quotation.
        - c) Carpet Preinstallation Meeting Agenda.
        - d) Carpet Installation Notice to Proceed or Cancel.
        - e) Carpet Inspection and Completion.
        - f) Carpet Overage Report and Completion.
        - g) Carpet Quotation Change Request.
- B. Maintenance Material Submittals:
- 1. Extra Stock Materials:
    - a. Leave excess pieces of carpet, **6 feet square (1 800 sq mm)** or larger and **25 lineal feet (7.620 m)** minimum of carpet cove base.
    - b. Roll up and tie securely.

#### 1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Regulatory Agency Sustainability Approvals:
- 1. All products provided will meet requirements of all federal, state, and local codes having jurisdiction.
  - 2. Label meeting Federal Labeling Requirements, as stated in Textile Products Identification Act under Federal Trade Commission, shall be attached to certification samples and products delivered.
- B. Qualifications: Section 01 4301 applies, but is not limited to following:
- 1. Carpet Installer Qualifications:
    - a. Certified CFI Master or Contract II grade installer or FCIB certified.
    - b. Not less than five (5) years of experience in installation of commercial carpet tile of type, quantity and installation methods similar to work of this section.
    - c. Qualified and approved by Carpet Manufacturer.
  - 2. Carpet Manufacturer Qualifications:
    - a. Not less than five (5) years of production experience, whose published literature clearly indicates general compliance of products with requirements of this section.
    - b. Category One Approved Carpet Manufacturers:
      - 1) Approval subject to agreement process approval.



## 1.6 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. General:
  - 1. Comply with instructions and recommendations of Manufacturer for special delivery, storage, and handling requirements.
- B. Delivery And Acceptance Requirements:
  - 1. Deliver materials and accessories necessary for completion of carpet installation to site before beginning installation of carpet.
  - 2. Do not deliver materials before date scheduled for installation.
  - 3. Transport carpet in manner that prevents damage and distortion. Bending or folding individual carpet rolls or cuts from rolls is not recommended. When bending or folding is unavoidable for delivery purposes, carpet is required to be unrolled and allowed to lie flat immediately upon arrival at installation site.
- C. Storage And Handling Requirements:
  - 1. Store carpet and related materials in a climate-controlled, dry space.
  - 2. Protect carpet from soil, dust, moisture and other contaminants and store on a flat surface.
  - 3. Stacking heavy objects on top of carpet rolls or stacking more than three rolls is prohibited.

## 1.7 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Ambient Conditions:
  - 1. Building Conditions:
    - a. Conditions inside building shall be brought to levels to be normal at occupancy of building. Conditions include normal levels of humidity, lighting, heating, and air conditioning. (HVAC must be in operation thru out carpet installation):
      - 1) Carpet installation is not to begin until HVAC system is operational and following conditions are maintained for at least forty-eight (48) hours before, during and seventy-two (72) hours after completion:
        - a) Carpet is to be installed when indoor temperature is between 65° - 95° F (18° - 35° C) with maximum relative humidity of 65%.
        - b) Substrate surface temperature should not be less than 65° F (18° C) at time of installation.
        - c) Do not allow temperature of indoor carpeted areas to fall below 50° F (10° C), regardless of age of installation.
      - 2) Maintain fresh air ventilation after installation for seventy-two (72) hours minimum or until lingering odors are gone.
  - 2. Concrete Slab:
    - a. General:
      - 1) Do not install carpet over concrete slabs until slabs have cured and are sufficiently dry to bond with adhesive.

## 1.8 WARRANTY

- A. Manufacturer Warranty:
  - 1. Provide Carpet Manufacturer's standard Warranty which includes following:
    - a. Warranty shall cover defects in installation, workmanship, and installation materials.
    - b. Warranty includes specific workmanship warranties for delamination, edge raveling, fuzzing, pilling, and other textural changes which can be controlled through proper manufacturing (no fraying, zippering, delamination, edge raveling, fuzzing, pilling in carpet is acceptable for any reason).
    - c. Warranty terms will include inspection of defective area within fifteen (15) days of receipt of written notice from Owner and completion of corrective work within forty-five (45) days, unless other arrangements are made in writing with Owner on case-by-case basis.
    - d. Carpet defect or installation defect:

- 1) Carpet Manufacturer may use any reasonable means to cure first three (3) breaches of warranty affecting an area of carpeting bounded by natural breaks such as doorways, ('affected carpet area'). Such cure must preserve as uniform a blended appearance, acceptable to Carpet Manufacturer and Owner, as exists throughout Installation Site at time of breach.
- 2) If carpet defect or installation defect continues to appear after three (3) separate notices for correction from Owner, replace carpet where defects have occurred.
- e. If Carpet Manufacturer follows installation requirements of Section 09 0503 'Floor Substrate Preparation' Carpet Manufacture accepts liability of carpet installation for said given time as outlined in Special Warranty regardless of any climate or condition changes affecting RH levels of floor substrate.
2. Special Warranty:
  - a. Sheet Carpeting:
    - 1) General:
      - a) Appearance Retention to be provided with Special Warranty requirements if not already included in Standard Warranty.
    - 2) CES, S&I Module, and O&M / R&I:
      - a) Institute:
        - (1) Owner Carpet Program Product: Provide twenty-five (25) year minimum or Carpet Manufacturer's better Warranty on carpet system.
      - b) Seminary:
        - (1) Owner Carpet Program Product: Provide twenty-five (25) year minimum or Carpet Manufacturer's better Warranty on carpet system.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 OWNER-FURNISHED PRODUCTS

- A. Category One Approved Manufacturers. See Section 01 6200 for definitions of Categories:
  1. Materials supplied for carpet installation shall be complete package from specified Carpet Manufacturer:
    - a. Tarkett: Dalton, GA [www.commercial.tarkett.com](http://www.commercial.tarkett.com).
      - 1) Contact Information: Tracy Riddle - cell (801) 580-5147 fax (866) 861-7522  
[Tracy.Riddle@Tarkett.com](mailto:Tracy.Riddle@Tarkett.com).
- B. Materials:
  1. Carpet:
    - a. Category One Approved Manufacturer and Color / Patterns. See Section 01 6200 for definitions of Categories:
      - 1) Carpet Throughout:
        - a) Tarkett: 11689 Celtic Knots (Broadloom), Color: 14301 Herbal Tea.
  2. Carpet Base:
    - a. **4-1/2 inch (115 mm)** wide base without cushion backing:
      - 1) Top edge of base serged with **1-1/4 inch (32 mm)** polyester binding fabric.
      - 2) Roll edges of binding fabric under and sew along top edge of carpet cove base.
    - b. Carpet Walk Off:
      - 1) Category One Approved Products. See Section 01 6200 for definitions of Categories:
        - a) Tarkett: 05837 Abrasive Action, Color: 26201 Chromium.

### 2.2 ACCESSORIES

- A. Carpet Accessories: Snap-in vinyl reducer strips and vinyl track.
- B. Floor Leveling Compound, Floor Patching Compound, And Latex Underlayment: As recommended and approved by Carpet Manufacturer.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Verification of Conditions:
  - 1. Verify required ambient conditions inside building for required normal levels of humidity, lighting, heating, and air conditioning have been maintained for at least forty-eight (48) hours before and during carpet installation and seventy-two (72) after installation of carpet.
- B. Evaluation And Assessment:
  - 1. Carpet Areas:
    - a. Variation In Grade:
      - 1) Plus or minus **1/8 inch (3 mm)** in any **10 foot (3 meter)** of floor slab and distance between high point and low point of slab of **1/2 inch (13 mm)**.
    - b. Testing Procedure:
      - 1) Place ends of straightedge on **3/8 inch (10 mm)** high shims.
      - 2) Floor is satisfactory if **1/4 inch (6 mm)** diameter steel rod rolled under straightedge will not touch anywhere along **10 foot (3 meter)** length and **1/2 inch (13 mm)** diameter steel rod will not fit under straightedge anywhere along **10 foot (3 meter)** length.
    - c. Notify Owner's Representative in writing if floor surface is not acceptable to install carpet:
      - 1) Do not lay carpet over unsuitable surface. Commencing installation constitutes acceptance of floor and approval of existing conditions.

### 3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Carpet Areas:
  - 1. Flooring Preparation:
    - a. Owner-Furnished Product Supplier's Responsibility:
      - 1) Prepare floor substrate in accordance with 'CRI Carpet Installation Standard' best practices to receive carpet installation and to provide installation that meets warranty requirements.
      - 2) Verify concrete surface cured, clean, dry, and free of foreign substances that will compromise carpet and/or installation.
    - b. Concrete floor slab patching:
      - 1) Cracks, chips and joints must be properly patched or repaired.
    - c. Concrete surface cured, clean, dry, and free of foreign substances that will compromise carpet and/or other flooring installations:
      - 1) Removal of curing compounds.
      - 2) Remove paint, sealer, grease, oil, silicone sealants, and other materials incompatible with flooring adhesives.
      - 3) Removal of overspray from painted walls (essential so glue will stick).
    - d. Vacuum and damp mop floor areas to receive flooring before flooring installation.
  - 2. Relaxing / Conditioning Carpet:
    - a. Highly recommended that carpet be unrolled and allowed to relax in installation area for time period that conforms to requirements of manufacturer of product being installed:
    - b. Protect carpet adequately from soil, dust, moisture and other contaminants.
    - c. Sundry items, such as adhesives, should also be conditioned.
  - 3. Carpet Accessories:
    - a. Owner-Furnished Product's Responsibility:
      - 1) Sundry items, such as adhesives, shall be conditioned to building ambient conditions before use.

### 3.3 INSTALLATION

- A. Carpet:
  - 1. General:

- a. Install carpet and carpet base in accordance with 'CRI Carpet Installation Standard' and Manufacturer's written instructions supplied with product.
  - b. Adhesion of carpet cushion (or secondary backing) to floor substrate and adhesion of carpet primary and secondary backings shall be continuous on floor surface so there are no bubble, ridges, or any separation of carpet from backings or backing from floor substrate caused by failure of carpet, backings or cushion, and adhesives as a system.
  - c. Install carpet under edge of metal thresholds where possible. Use specified carpet accessories at exposed edges.
2. Seaming Requirements:
- a. Seal seams in accordance with Carpet Manufacturer's instructions and according to CRI Carpet Installation Standard (2009) as applicable. Seam carpet base only at inside corners.
  - b. No seam separation in carpet and no more observable seams from any standing position than that which is unavoidable using best seaming materials and practices available at time of installation.
  - c. Lay rooms parallel to respective Corridors. Seam to permit best use of available carpet.
  - d. Quarter turning allowed only at cross-Corridors longer than **24 feet (7.315 m)**.
  - e. Use single or double seams at doorways (single seams preferred). Run nap of pieced carpet in same direction.

B. Carpet Base:

1. Precut base so seams occur only at inside corners.
2. Scribe base to floor.
3. Spread adhesive over back side of base up to bottom of serging on edge or apply three **3/16 inch (4.76 mm)** minimum diameter beads of adhesive placed one inch apart on back of base with top bead placed **2 inch (50 mm)** down from serged edge of base and spread adhesive over back surface of base up to bottom edge of serging.
  - a. Bird's mouth finish should only be required when door frame is flush with wall.
  - b. If bird's mouth is required, terminate at door frames or vertical trim with 45 degree angle, bird mouth cut so serged edge turns down to contact frame or trim.
4. Do not allow adhesive beyond edge of base. Remove excess adhesive.
5. Do not use staples, nails, screws or other mechanical fasteners.

### 3.4 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Field Inspections:

1. Carpeting:
  - a. Unacceptable carpet after installation shall include but not be limited to:
    - 1) Delaminating carpet from backings.
    - 2) Fiber loss less than specified.
    - 3) Edge raveling.
    - 4) Fuzzing of carpet fibers.
    - 5) Pilling of carpet fibers.
    - 6) Appearance retention less than control samples attached to Agreement.
    - 7) Dye bleeding.
    - 8) Zippering fibers in carpet.
    - 9) Color streaking.
    - 10) Irregular tufts of fiber.
  - b. Unacceptable workmanship shall include but not be limited to:
    - 1) Improper floor preparation before installation.
    - 2) Failure of adhesive to completely adhere carpet to floor resulting in bubbles, ridges, or ripples where carpet has separated from floor.
    - 3) Seams that do not comply with specified requirements:
      - a) Raveled or untrimmed seams.
      - b) Seams not sealed, level, straight, or even.
      - c) Open seams.
      - d) Seams visibly open when viewed by Project Manager from standing position.
    - 4) Sequence rolls, commercial match issues created by rolls being installed out of sequence will require correction or replacement.

- 5) Failure to properly install carpet next to walls and door frames to eliminate gaps or puckering of carpet.
- 6) Use of unspecified carpet.
- 7) Carpet base ends not finished to terminate at door frames or vertical trim shall have 45 degree angle 'birdsmouth' finish.
- 8) Adhesive exposed on carpet, on carpet base, beyond edges of carpet base, and on other surfaces of building.
- 9) Carpet base that is not scribed to fit against floor with no gaps.
- 10) Carpet base attached by means other than acceptable carpet base adhesive.

B. Non-Conforming Work:

1. Carpeting:

a. Basis of Acceptable Carpeting: Source Quality Control Testing:

- 1) Carpet products not meeting Design Criteria and Source Quality Control Testing of this specification will be considered unacceptable carpeting.

b. Unacceptable Carpeting:

- 1) Unacceptable carpeting will be rejected and shall be repaired or replaced at no additional cost to Owner. Owner's Representative will determine reasonable location of acceptable transition points for removal of unacceptable carpet. Minimum replacement size shall be:
  - a) Between nearest existing seams.
  - b) Between natural transition points or **12 feet (3.6 meters)** of running length.

### 3.5 CLEANING

A. General:

1. Carpeting:

a. Carpet Installer's Responsibility:

- 1) Remove any soiling and/or staining from carpet.
- 2) Remove excessive adhesive with manufacturer recommended adhesive removers.

B. Damage to building:

1. Carpeting:

a. Carpet Installer's Responsibility:

- 1) Carpet Installer responsible for cleaning and repair of all damaged surfaces to their original condition from carpet installation.

C. Waste Management:

1. Contractor's Responsibility:

- a. Provide adequate waste receptacles (dumpsters) and dispose of Owner Furnished materials from building and property as specified in Section 01 7400.

2. Carpet Installer's Responsibility:

- a. All work areas are to be kept clean, clear and free of debris at all times.
- b. Disposal of rubbish, wrapping paper, scraps, and trimmings in provided dumpster(s).

### 3.6 PROTECTION

A. Protection of Carpeting:

1. Contractor's Responsibility:

- a. No traffic of any kind on newly installed carpet for minimum of twenty-four (24) hours after installation is completed.
- b. No wheeled traffic of any kind placement of furniture or equipment on carpet for minimum of forty-eight (48) hours after completion of carpet installation.
- c. Protect carpet adequately from soil, dust, moisture and other contaminants after carpet installation.
- d. Protect carpet from abuse, vandalism, or damage occurring after installation is complete.

**END OF SECTION**

**SECTION 09 9001**

**COMMON PAINTING AND COATING REQUIREMENTS**

**PART 1 - GENERAL**

**1.1 SUMMARY**

- A. Includes But Not Limited To:
  - 1. Common procedures and requirements for field-applied painting and coating.
- B. Related Requirements:
  - 1. Section 05 0503: 'Shop-Applied Metal Coatings' for quality of shop priming of steel and iron.
  - 2. Section 07 9213: 'Elastomeric Joint Sealants' for quality of Elastomeric Joint Sealants.
  - 3. Sections under 09 9000 heading 'Paints and Coatings'.
    - a. Pre-Installation conferences held jointly with Section 09 9001.
  - 4. Divisions 22 and 23: Painting of plumbing and HVAC identification, refrigerant line insulation, and duct interiors.
  - 5. Section 32 1723: 'Pavement Marking'.

**1.2 REFERENCES**

- A. Definitions:
  - 1. Damage Caused By Others: Damage caused by individuals other than those under direct control of Painting Applicator (MPI(a), PDCA P1.92).
  - 2. Gloss Levels:
    - a. Specified paint gloss level shall be defined as sheen rating of applied paint, in accordance with following terms and values, unless specified otherwise for a specific paint system.

Gloss Level '1'	Traditional matte finish - flat	0 to 5 units at 60 degrees to 10 units maximum at 85 degrees.
Gloss Level '2'	High side sheen flat - 'velvet-like' finish	10 units maximum at 60 degrees and 10 to 35 units at 85 degrees.
Gloss Level '3'	Traditional 'eggshell-like' finish	10 to 25 units at 60 degrees and 10 to 35 units at 85 degrees.
Gloss Level '4'	'Satin-like' finish	20 to 35 units at 60 degrees and 35 units minimum at 85 degrees.
Gloss Level '5'	Traditional semi-gloss	35 to 70 units at 60 degrees.
Gloss Level '6'	Traditional gloss	70 to 85 units at 60 degrees.
Gloss Level '7'	High gloss	More than 85 units at 60 degrees.

- 3. Properly Painted Surface:
  - a. Surface that is uniform in appearance, color, and sheen and free of foreign material, lumps, skins, runs, sags, holidays, misses, strike-through, and insufficient coverage. Surface free of drips, spatters, spills, and overspray caused by Paint Applicator. Compliance will be determined when viewed without magnification at a distance of 5 feet (1.50 m) minimum under normal lighting conditions and from normal viewing position (MPI(a), PDCA P1.92).
- 4. Latent Damage: Damage or conditions beyond control of Painting Applicator caused by conditions not apparent at time of initial painting or coating work.

- B. Reference Standards:
  - 1. The latest edition of the following reference standard shall govern all painting work:

- a. MPI(a), 'Architectural Painting Specification Manual' by Master Painters Institute (MPI), as issued by local MPI Accredited Quality Assurance Association having jurisdiction.

### 1.3 ADMINISTRATIVE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Pre-Installation Conferences:
  1. Schedule painting pre-installation conference after delivery of paint or coatings and before or at same time as application of field samples.
    - a. Coordinate pre-installation conferences of all related painting and coating Sections under 09 9000 heading 'Paints and Coatings'.
    - b. Schedule conference before preparation of control samples as specified in Sections under 09 9000 heading 'Paints and Coatings'.
    - c. Conference to be held at same time as Section 09 2900 to review gypsum board finish preparation.
  2. In addition to agenda items specified in Section 01 3100, review following:
    - a. Review Quality Assurance for Approval requirements.
    - b. Review Quality Assurance Field Sample requirements.
    - c. Review Submittal requirements for compliance for MPI Approved Products.
    - d. Review Design Criteria requirements.
    - e. Review Cleaning requirements.
    - f. Review painting schedule.
    - g. Review safety issues.
  3. Review additional agenda items from Sections under 09 9000 heading 'Paints and Coatings'.

### 1.4 SUBMITTALS

- A. Action Submittals:
  1. Product Data:
    - a. Include following information for each painting product, arranged in same order as in Project Manual.
      - 1) Manufacturer's cut sheet for each product indicating ingredients and percentages by weight and by volume, environmental restrictions for application, and film thicknesses and spread rates.
      - 2) Provide one (1) copy of 'MPI Approved Products List' showing compliance for each MPI product specified.
        - a) MPI Information is available from MPI Approved Products List using the following link: <http://www.paintinfo.com/mpi/approved/index.shtml>.
      - 3) Confirmation of colors selected and that each area to be painted or coated has color selected for it.
  2. Samples: Provide two **4 inch by 6 inch (100 mm by 150 mm)** minimum draw-down cards for each paint or coating color selected for this Project.
- B. Informational Submittals:
  1. Manufacturer Instructions:
    - a. Manufacturer's substrate preparation instructions and application instruction for each painting system used on Project.
  2. Qualification Statement:
    - a. Applicator:
      - 1) Provide Qualification documentation if requested by Architect or Owner.
- C. Closeout Submittals:
  1. Include following in Operations And Maintenance Manual specified in Section 01 7800:
    - a. Record Documentation:
      - 1) Manufacturer's documentation:
        - a) Manufacturer's cut sheet for each component of each system.
        - b) Schedule showing rooms and surfaces where each system was used.



## 1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Regulatory Agency Sustainability Approval:
1. Conform to work place safety regulations and requirements of those authorities having jurisdiction for storage, mixing, application and disposal of all paint and related hazardous materials.
  2. Paint and painting materials shall be free of lead and mercury, and have VOC levels acceptable to local jurisdiction.
  3. Master Painters Institute (MPI) Standards:
    - a. Products: Comply with MPI standards indicated and listed in 'MPI Approved Products List'.
    - b. Preparation and Workmanship: Comply with requirements in 'MPI Architectural Painting Specification Manual' for products and coatings indicated.
- B. Qualifications:
1. Applicator: Requirements of Section 01 4301 applies, but not limited to following:
    - a. Minimum five (5) years experience in painting installations.
    - b. Minimum five (5) satisfactorily completed projects of comparable quality, similar size, and complexity in past three (3) years before bidding.
    - c. Maintain qualified crew of painters throughout duration of the Work.
    - d. Upon request, submit documentation.
- C. Field Samples:
1. Before application of any paint system, meet on Project site with Architect, Owner's representative, and Manufacturer's representative. Architect may select one (1) surface for application of each paint system specified. This process will include establishing acceptable substrate conditions required for Project before application of paints and coatings.
  2. Apply paint systems to surfaces indicated by Architect following procedures outlined in Contract Documents and Product Data submission specified above.
  3. After approval of samples, proceed with application of paint system throughout Project. Approved samples will serve as standard of acceptability.

## 1.6 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Delivery And Acceptance Requirements:
1. Deliver specified products in sealed, original containers with Manufacturer's original labels intact on each container.
  2. Deliver amount of materials necessary to meet Project requirements in single shipment.
  3. Notify Architect two working days before delivery of coatings.
- B. Storage And Handling Requirements:
1. Store materials in single place.
  2. Keep storage area clean and rectify any damage to area at completion of work of this Section.
  3. Maintain storage area at **55 deg F (13 deg C)** minimum.

## 1.7 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Ambient Conditions:
1. Perform painting operations at temperature and humidity conditions recommended by Manufacturer for each operation and for each product for both interior and exterior work.
  2. Apply painting systems at lighting level of 540 Lux (50 foot candles) minimum on surfaces to be painted.
    - a. Inspection of painting work shall take place under same lighting conditions as application.
    - b. If painting and coating work is applied under temporary lighting, deficiencies discovered upon installation of permanent lighting will be considered latent damage as defined in MPI Manual, PDCA P1-92.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 SYSTEMS

#### A. Performance:

##### 1. Design Criteria:

- a. Provide materials for use within each coating system that are compatible with one another and substrates indicated, under conditions of service and application as demonstrated by manufacturer, based on testing and field experience.
- b. All materials, preparation and workmanship shall conform to requirements of 'Architectural Painting Specification Manual' by Master Painters Institute (MPI).
- c. All paint manufacturers and products used shall be as listed under Approved Product List section of MPI Painting Manual.
- d. Provide Premium Grade systems (2 top coats) as defined in MPI Architectural Painting Specification Manual, except as otherwise indicated.
- e. Where specified paint system does not have Premium Grade, provide Budget Grade.
- f. Provide products of same manufacturer for each coat in coating system.
- g. Where required to meet LEED (Leadership in Energy and Environmental Design) program requirements, use only MPI listed materials having an "L" rating designation.
- h. Color Levels:
  - 1) Color Level II:
    - a) Number and placement of interior and exterior paint colors and gloss levels shall be as defined by Color Level II from MPI Manual, PDCA P3-93 as modified in following paragraph.
    - b) No more than one paint color or gloss level will be selected for same substrate within designated interior rooms or exterior areas.
  - 2) Color Level III:
    - a) Number and placement of interior and exterior paint colors and gloss levels shall be Color Level III from MPI Manual, PDCA P3-93 as modified in following paragraph.
    - b) Several paint colors or gloss levels will be selected for same substrate within designated interior rooms or exterior areas.

#### B. Materials:

1. Materials used for any painting system shall be from single manufacturer unless approved otherwise in writing by painting system manufacturers and by Architect. Include manufacturer approvals in Product Data submittal.
2. Linseed oil, shellac, turpentine, and other painting materials shall be pure, be compatible with other coating materials, bear identifying labels on containers, and be of highest quality of an approved manufacturer listed in MPI manuals. Tinting color shall be best grade of type recommended by Manufacturer of paint or stain used on Project.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 APPLICATORS

#### A. Acceptable Applicators. See Section 01 4301:

1. Meet Quality Assurance Applicator Qualifications as specified in Part 1 of this specification.

### 3.2 EXAMINATION

#### A. Verification Of Conditions:

1. Directing applicator to begin painting and coating work will indicate that substrates to receive painting and coating materials have been previously inspected as part of work of other Sections

and are complete and ready for application of painting and coating systems as specified in those Sections.

B. Pre-Installation Testing:

1. Before beginning work of this Section, examine, and test surfaces to be painted or coated for adhesion of painting and coating systems.
2. Report in writing to Architect of conditions that will adversely affect adhesion of painting and coating work.
3. Do not apply painting and coating systems until party responsible for adverse condition has corrected adverse condition.

C. Evaluation And Assessment:

1. Report defects in substrates that become apparent after application of primer or first finish coat to Architect in writing and do not proceed with further work on defective substrate until such defects are corrected by party responsible for defect.

### 3.3 PREPARATION

A. Protection Of In-Place Conditions:

1. Protect other finish work and adjacent materials during painting. Do not splatter, drip, or paint surfaces not intended to be painted. These items will not be spelled out in detail but pay special attention to the following:
  - a. Do not paint finish copper, bronze, chromium plate, nickel, stainless steel, anodized aluminum, or monel metal except as explicitly specified.
  - b. Keep cones of ceiling speakers completely free of paint. In all cases where painting of metal speaker grilles is required, paint without grilles mounted to speakers and without grilles on ceiling.

B. Surface Preparation:

1. Prepare surfaces in accordance with MPI requirements and requirements of Manufacturer for each painting system specified, unless instructed differently in Contract Documents. Bring conflicts to attention of Architect in writing.
2. Fill minor holes and cracks in wood surfaces to receive paint or stain.
3. Surfaces to be painted shall be clean and free of loose dirt. Clean and dust surfaces before painting or finishing.
4. Do no exterior painting while surface is damp, unless recommended by Manufacturer, nor during rainy or frosty weather. Interior surfaces shall be dry before painting. Moisture content of materials to be painted shall be within tolerances acceptable to Paint Manufacturer.
5. Sand woodwork smooth in direction of grain leaving no sanding marks. Clean surfaces before proceeding with stain or first coat application.

### 3.4 APPLICATION

A. Interface With Other Work:

1. Coordinate with other trades for materials and systems that require painting before installation.
2. Schedule painting and coating work to begin when work upon which painting and coating work is dependent has been completed. Schedule installation of pre-finished and non-painted items, which are to be installed on painted surfaces, after application of final finishes.

B. Paint or finish complete all surfaces to be painted or coated as described in Contract Documents, including but not limited to following items.

1. Finish casework and wood trims that are specified to be installed under Section 06 2001 and that are not called out to be factory-or shop-finished. Back prime wood elements to be installed against concrete or masonry or that may be subjected to moisture.
2. Paint mechanical, electrical, and audio/visual items that require field painting as indicated in Contract Documents. These include but are not limited to:
  - a. Gas pipe from gas meter into building.

- b. Mechanical flues and pipes penetrating roof.
  - c. Electrical panel and disconnect enclosures.
  - d. Metal protective structures for refrigerant lines.
3. Metal reveals at ceiling access doors.
  4. Paint inside of chases in occupied spaces flat black for **18 inches (450 mm)** or beyond sightline, whichever is greater.
- C. Apply sealant in gaps **3/16 inch (5 mm)** and smaller between two substrates that are both to be painted or coated. Sealants in other gaps furnished and installed under Section 07 9213.
- D. On wood to receive a transparent finish, putty nail holes in wood after application of stain using natural colored type to match wood stain color. Bring putty flush with adjoining surfaces.
- E. In multiple coat paint work, tint each succeeding coat with slightly lighter color, but approximating shade of final coat, so it is possible to check application of specified number of coats. Tint final coat to required color.
- F. Spread materials smoothly and evenly. Apply coats to not less than wet and dry film thicknesses and at spreading rates for specified products as recommended by Manufacturer.
- G. Touch up suction spots after application of first finish coat.
- H. Paint shall be thoroughly dry and surfaces clean before applying succeeding coats.
- I. Use fine sandpaper between coats as necessary to produce even, smooth surfaces.
- J. Make edges of paint adjoining other materials or colors clean, sharp, and without overlapping.
- K. Finished work shall be a 'Properly Painted Surface' as defined in this Section.

### 3.5 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Non-Conforming Work:
1. Correct deficiencies in workmanship as required to leave surfaces in conformance with 'Properly Painted Surface,' as defined in this Section.
  2. Correction of 'Latent Damage' and 'Damage Caused By Others,' as defined in this Section, is not included in work of this Section.

### 3.6 CLEANING

- A. General:
1. As work proceeds and upon completion of work of any painting Section, remove paint spots from floors, walls, glass, or other surfaces and leave work clean, orderly, and in acceptable condition.
- B. Waste Management:
1. Remove rags and waste used in painting operations from building each night. Take every precaution to avoid danger of fire.
  2. Paint, stain and wood preservative finishes and related materials (thinners, solvents, caulking, empty paint cans, cleaning rags, etc.) shall be disposed of subject to regulations of applicable authorities having jurisdiction.
  3. Remove debris caused by work of paint Sections from premises and properly dispose.
  4. Retain cleaning water and filter out and properly dispose of sediments.

**END OF SECTION**

**SECTION 09 9112****EXTERIOR PAINTED FERROUS METAL****PART 1 - GENERAL****1.1 SUMMARY**

- A. Includes But Not Limited To:
  - 1. Preparing and painting new exterior ungalvanized iron and steel surfaces as described in Contract Documents.
- B. Related Requirements:
  - 1. Section 09 9001: 'Common Painting And Coating Requirements':
    - a. Pre-installation conference for Sections under 09 9000 heading 'Paints and Coatings'.
    - b. 'Attachment: Paint Color Schedule' for CES Projects.

**1.2 ADMINISTRATIVE REQUIREMENTS**

- A. Pre-Installation Conferences:
  - 1. Participate in pre-installation conference as specified in Section 09 9001.

**PART 2 - PRODUCTS****2.1 SYSTEM**

- A. Manufacturers:
  - 1. Category Four Approved Products and Manufacturers. See Section 01 6200 for definitions of Categories:
    - a. Products listed in edition of MPI Approved Product List current at time of bidding and later are approved.
- B. Description:
  - 1. New Surfaces: Use MPI(a) EXT 5.1M Waterborne Light Industrial Coating system .
- C. Design Criteria:
  - 1. Systems specified are in addition to prime coats provided under other Sections of Project Manual.
  - 2. Finish Requirements: Use MPI Premium Grade finish requirements for work of this Section.
  - 3. Gloss / Sheen Level Required: Gloss Level 5.
- D. Materials:
  - 1. All paints and coatings.
    - a. Primer Coat: MPI Product 107, 'Primer, Rust-Inhibitive, Water Based'.
    - b. Finish Coats: MPI Product 163, 'Light Industrial Coating, Exterior, Water Based, Semi-Gloss (MPI Gloss Level 5).

**PART 3 - EXECUTION****3.1 APPLICATION**

- A. General: See appropriate paragraphs of Section 09 9001.

- B. New Surfaces: Clean metal to be painted of rust, mill scale, grease, oil, and welding spatters, burrs, flux, slag, and fume. If all traces of rust cannot be removed, apply rust blocker recommended by Paint Manufacturer before applying primer coat.

**END OF SECTION**

**SECTION 09 9113****EXTERIOR PAINTED GALVANIZED METAL****PART 1 - GENERAL****1.1 SUMMARY**

- A. Includes But Not Limited To:
  - 1. Preparing and painting new exterior exposed galvanized metal surfaces as Described in Contract Documents.
- B. Related Requirements:
  - 1. Section 09 9001: 'Common Painting And Coating Requirements':
    - a. Pre-installation conference for Sections under 09 9000 heading 'Paints and Coatings'.

**1.2 ADMINISTRATIVE REQUIREMENTS**

- A. Pre-Installation Conferences:
  - 1. Participate in pre-installation conference as specified in Section 09 9001.

**PART 2 - PRODUCTS****2.1 SYSTEM**

- A. Manufacturers:
  - 1. Category Four Approved Products and Manufacturers. See Section 01 6200 for definitions of Categories.
    - a. Products listed in edition of MPI Approved Product List current at time of bidding and later are approved, providing they meet VOC requirements in force where Project is located.
- B. Description:
  - 1. Handrails And Exposed Miscellaneous Structural Steel:
    - a. New Surfaces: Use MPI(a) EXT 5.3D Pigmented Polyurethane Finish system.
  - 2. All Other:
    - a. New Surfaces: Use MPI(a) EXT 5.3H Latex Finish system.
- C. Performance:
  - 1. Design Criteria:
    - a. New Surfaces: MPI Premium Grade finish requirements.
    - b. Gloss / Sheen Level Required: Gloss Level 5.
- D. Materials:
  - Polyurethane:
    - a. Vinyl Wash Primer Coat: MPI Product 80: 'Primer, Vinyl Wash'.
    - b. Finish Coats:
      - 1) Epoxy MPI Product 101: 'Primer, Epoxy, Anti-Corrosive, for Metal'.
      - 2) Polyurethane MPI Product 72: 'Polyurethane, Two-Component, Pigmented, Gloss (MPI Gloss Level 6-7)'.
  - 2. Latex:
    - a. Waterborne Primer Coat: MPI Product 134: 'Primer, Galvanized, Water Based'.
    - b. Finish Coats: MPI Product 11: 'Latex, Exterior Semi-Gloss (MPI Gloss Level 5)'.

**PART 3 - EXECUTION****3.1 APPLICATION**

- A. General: See appropriate paragraphs of Section 09 9001.
- B. New Surfaces:
  - 1. Clean 'passivated' or 'stabilized' galvanized steel as specified in SSPC-SP1.
  - 2. After removal of 'passivated' or 'stabilized' coating or for surfaces without coating, clean surfaces to be painted with mineral spirits or product recommended by Paint Manufacturer. Change to clean rags or wiping cloths regularly to reduce possibility of re-contamination of surface.
  - 3. Apply prime coat.
  - 4. Apply finish coats.

**END OF SECTION**



**SECTION 09 9121****INTERIOR PAINTED POURED CONCRETE****PART 1 - GENERAL****1.1 SUMMARY**

- A. Includes But Not Limited To:
  - 1. Preparing and painting of new concrete floors to be left exposed in finished building, as described in Contract Documents.
- B. Related Requirements:
  - 1. Section 09 9001: 'Common Painting And Coating Requirements':
    - a. Pre-installation conference for Sections under 09 9000 heading 'Paints and Coatings'.
    - b. 'Attachment: Paint Color Schedule' for CES Projects.

**1.2 ADMINISTRATIVE REQUIREMENTS**

- A. Pre-Installation Conferences:
  - 1. Participate in pre-installation conference as specified in Section 09 9001.

**PART 2 - PRODUCTS****2.1 SYSTEM**

- A. Manufacturers:
  - 1. Category Four Approved Products and Manufacturers. See Section 01 6200 for definitions of Categories.
    - a. Products listed in edition of MPI Approved Product List current at time of bidding and later are approved, providing they meet VOC requirements in force where Project is located.
- B. Description:
  - 1. New Surfaces: Use MPI(a) INT 3.2A Latex Finish system
  - 2. Finish Requirements: Use MPI Custom Grade finish requirements.
- C. Performance:
  - 1. Design Criteria:
    - a. Gloss / Sheen Level Required: Semi-Gloss.
- D. Materials:
  - 1. MPI Product 60: 'Floor Paint, Latex, Low Gloss'.

**PART 3 - EXECUTION****3.1 APPLICATION**

- A. General: See appropriate paragraphs of Section 09 9001.

**END OF SECTION**

**SECTION 09 9123****INTERIOR PAINTED GYPSUM BOARD, PLASTER****PART 1 - GENERAL****1.1 SUMMARY**

- A. Includes But Not Limited To:
  - 1. Preparing, priming, and finish painting new interior gypsum board and plaster surfaces as described in Contract Documents.
- B. Related Requirements:
  - 1. Section 09 2900: 'Gypsum Board' for:
    - a. Priming new interior gypsum board surfaces to receive sheet wall covering system or texturing.
    - b. Pre-installation conference.
  - 2. Section 09 9001: 'Common Painting And Coating Requirements':
    - a. Pre-installation conference for Sections under 09 9000 heading 'Paints and Coatings'.
    - b. 'Attachment: Paint Color Schedule' for CES Projects.
  - 3. Section 09 9413: 'Interior Textured Finishing' for textured finishes.

**1.2 ADMINISTRATIVE REQUIREMENTS**

- A. Pre-Installation Conferences:
  - 1. Participate in pre-installation conference as specified in Section 09 2900.
    - a. In addition to agenda items specified in Section 01 3100 and Section 09 2900, review following:
      - 1) Review finish level requirements of gypsum wallboard as specified in Section 09 2900.
  - 2. Participate in pre-installation conference as specified in Section 09 9001.

**PART 2 - PRODUCTS****2.1 SYSTEM**

- A. Manufacturers:
  - 1. Category Four Approved Manufacturers and Products. See Section 01 6200 for definitions of Categories.
    - a. Products listed in edition of MPI Approved Product List current at time of bidding and later are approved, providing they meet VOC requirements in force where Project is located.
- B. Description:
  - 1. Rest Rooms And Custodial Rooms:
    - a. New Surfaces: Use MPI(a) INT 9.2F Waterborne Epoxy Finish system.
  - 2. All Other:
    - a. New Surfaces: Use MPI(a) INT 9.2B Latex Finish system.
- C. Performance:
  - 1. Design Criteria:
    - a. New Surfaces: MPI Premium Grade finish requirements.
    - b. Gloss / Sheen Required:
      - 1) Rest Rooms And Custodial Rooms: Gloss Level 6.

## 2) Remaining Painted Surfaces: Gloss Level 5.

## D. Materials:

1. Primers:
  - a. MPI Product 50, 'Primer Sealer, Latex, Interior'.
2. Finish Coats:
  - a. Rest Rooms And Custodial Rooms:
    - 1) Buildings with only Gypsum Board surfaces in rooms:
      - a) MPI Product 115, 'Epoxy-Modified Latex, Interior, Gloss (MPI Gloss Level 6)'.
  - b. Remaining Painted Surfaces:
    - 1) MPI Product 141, 'Latex, Interior, High Performance Architectural, Semi-Gloss (MPI Gloss Level 5)'.

**PART 3 - EXECUTION****3.1 APPLICATION**

- A. General: See appropriate paragraphs of Section 09 9001.
- B. New Surfaces:
  1. Primer: Apply primer to be covered with other paint coats with roller only, or with spray gun and back-rolled.

**END OF SECTION**

**SECTION 09 9124****INTERIOR PAINTED METAL****PART 1 - GENERAL****1.1 SUMMARY**

- A. Includes But Not Limited To:
  - 1. Preparing and painting new interior metal surfaces as described in Contract Documents.
- B. Related Requirements:
  - 1. Section 05 5871: 'Metal Brackets'.
  - 2. Section 09 9001: 'Common Painting And Coating Requirements':
    - a. Pre-installation conference for Sections under 09 9000 heading 'Paints and Coatings'.
    - b. 'Attachment: Paint Color Schedule' for CES Projects.
  - 3. Section 23 0553: 'I. D. For HVAC Piping And Equipment' for field painting requirements of HVAC piping and equipment.

**1.2 ADMINISTRATIVE REQUIREMENTS**

- A. Pre-Installation Conferences:
  - 1. Participate in pre-installation conference as specified in Section 09 9001.
- B. Sequencing:
  - 1. Paint brackets furnished under Section 05 5871 before installation of bracket.

**PART 2 - PRODUCTS****2.1 SYSTEM**

- A. Manufacturers:
  - 1. Category Four Approved Products and Manufacturers. See Section 01 6200 for definitions of Categories.
    - a. Products listed in edition of MPI Approved Product List current at time of bidding and later are approved, providing they meet VOC requirements in force where Project is located.
- B. Description:
  - 1. Ferrous Metal:
    - a. New Surfaces: Use MPI(a) INT 5.1B Waterborne Light Industrial Finish system.
  - 2. Galvanized Metal:
    - a. New Surfaces: Use MPI(a) INT 5.3J Latex Finish system
  - 3. Aluminum:
    - a. New Surfaces: Use MPI(a) INT 5.4E Waterborne Light Industrial Finish system.
- C. Performance:
  - 1. Design Requirements:
    - a. New Surfaces: MPI Premium Grade finish requirements.
    - b. Gloss / Sheen Level Required: Gloss Level 5.
- D. Materials:
  - 1. Primers:
    - a. Ferrous Metal: MPI Product 107, 'Primer, Rust-Inhibitive, Water Based'.
    - b. Galvanized Metal: MPI Product 134: 'Primer, Galvanized, Water Based'.

- c. Aluminum: MPI Product 95: 'Primer, Quick Dry, for Aluminum'.
2. Finish Coats: MPI Product 153: 'Light Industrial Coating, Interior, Water Based, Semi-Gloss (MPI Gloss Level 5)'.

### **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

#### **3.1 APPLICATION**

- A. General:
  1. See appropriate paragraphs of Section 09 9001.
  2. Systems specified are in addition to prime coats furnished under other Sections.
- B. New Surfaces: Remove rust spots by sanding and immediately spot prime. If all traces of rust cannot be removed, apply rust blocker recommended by Paint Manufacturer before applying full primer coat.

**END OF SECTION**

**SECTION 09 9125****INTERIOR PAINTED WOOD****PART 1 - GENERAL****1.1 SUMMARY**

- A. Includes But Not Limited To:
  - 1. Preparing and painting new woodwork and wood floors not requiring transparent finish, as described in Contract Documents.
- B. Related Requirements:
  - 1. Section 09 9001: 'Common Painting And Coating Requirements':
    - a. Pre-installation conference for Sections under 09 9000 heading 'Paints and Coatings'.
    - b. 'Attachment: Paint Color Schedule' for CES Projects.

**1.2 ADMINISTRATIVE REQUIREMENTS**

- A. Pre-Installation Conferences:
  - 1. Participate in pre-installation conference as specified in Section 09 9001.

**PART 2 - PRODUCTS****2.1 SYSTEM**

- A. Manufacturers:
  - 1. Category Four Approved Products and Manufacturers. See Section 01 6200 for definitions of Categories:
    - a. Products listed in edition of MPI Approved Product List current at time of bidding and later are approved, providing they meet VOC requirements in force where Project is located.
- B. Description:
  - 1. Systems:
    - a. Floors:
      - 1) New Surfaces: Use MPI(a) INT 6.5H Waterborne Epoxy Finish system.
    - b. All Other:
      - 1) New Surfaces: Use MPI(a) INT 6.3T or U Latex Finish system.
- C. Performance:
  - 1. Design Criteria:
    - a. New Surfaces: MPI Premium Grade finish requirements.
    - b. Gloss / Sheen Level Required: Gloss Level 5.
- D. Materials:
  - 1. Wood Floors:
    - a. Low to medium traffic: MPI Product 60, 'Floor Paint, Latex, Low Gloss'.
  - 2. Woodwork:
    - a. Primer Coat: MPI Product 39, 'Primer, Latex, for Interior Wood' or MPI Product 45, 'Primer Sealer, Alkyd, Interior'.
    - b. Finish Coats: MPI Product 153, 'Light Industrial Coating, Interior, Water Based, Semi-Gloss (MPI Gloss Level 5)'.

**PART 3 - EXECUTION****3.1 APPLICATION**

- A. General: See appropriate paragraphs of Section 09 9001.
- B. Interface With Other Work:
  - 1. Properly clean and paint light cove interiors before installation of light fixtures.
  - 2. Where back-priming is required, apply one (1) coat of primer.
- C. New Surfaces:
  - 1. Spot prime nail holes, cracks, and blemishes before and after puttying.
  - 2. Apply stain blocker or other product recommended by Paint Manufacturer to knots before applying primer coat.

**END OF SECTION**

**SECTION 09 9324****INTERIOR CLEAR-FINISHED HARDWOOD****PART 1 - GENERAL****1.1 SUMMARY**

- A. Includes But Not Limited To:
  - 1. Preparing and finishing of new interior clear finished hardwood as described in Contract Documents.
- B. Related Requirements:
  - 1. Section 06 2210: 'Miscellaneous Wood Trim'.
  - 2. Section 06 4114: 'Wood-Veneer-Faced Architectural Cabinets'.
  - 3. Section 06 4512: 'Architectural Woodwork Wood Trim'.
  - 4. Section 08 1429: 'Interior Flush Wood Doors'.
  - 5. Section 09 9001: 'Common Painting And Coating Requirements':
    - a. Pre-installation conference for Sections under 09 9000 heading 'Paints and Coatings'.
  - 6. Section 09 9001: 'Common Painting And Coating Requirements':
    - a. Pre-installation conference for Sections under 09 9000 heading 'Paints and Coatings'.
    - b. 'Attachment': Paint Color Schedule' for CES Projects.

**1.2 REFERENCES**

- A. Reference Standards:
  - 1. Kitchen Cabinet Manufacturers Association / American National Standards Institute:
    - a. ANSI/KCMA A161.1-2000 (R2005) 23-Jan-2001 'Recommended Performance and Construction Standards for Kitchen and Vanity Cabinets.'

**1.3 ADMINISTRATIVE REQUIREMENTS**

- A. Pre-Installation Conferences:
  - 1. Participate in pre-installation conference as specified in Section 09 9001.
  - 2. In addition to agenda items specified in Section 01 3100 and Section 09 9001, review following:
    - a. Review control sample(s).

**1.4 SUBMITTALS**

- A. Action Submittals:
  - 1. Samples:
    - a. Interior Hardwood for Transparent Finish:
      - 1) Requirements for samples are specified in Related Requirement Sections listed above.
    - b. Design Criteria:
      - 1) Sample will be used as performance standard for evaluating finish provided.
- B. Informational Submittals:
  - 1. Test And Evaluation Reports:
    - a. Before beginning finish work, submit Finish Manufacturer's literature or certification that finish material meets requirements of ANSI / KCMA A161.1.



**PART 2 - PRODUCTS****2.1 SYSTEM**

- A. Materials:
1. Design Criteria:
    - a. See appropriate paragraphs of Section 09 9001.
  2. Stain: MPI 90, 'Stain, Semi-Transparent, for Interior Wood'.
  3. Clear Finish Coats:
    - a. Field Finished:
      - 1) Chemcraft International Inc:
        - a) First, Second, And Third Coats: 20 Sheen Opticlear Pre-Catalyzed Lacquer.
      - 2) ICI Dulux / Trinity:
        - a) First Coat: ICE Vinyl Sanding Sealer.
        - b) Second And Third Coats: ICI Pre-Catalyzed Lacquer.
      - 3) Lilly / Valspar:
        - a) First, Second, And Third Coats: 20 Sheen Pre-Catalyzed Lacquer 587E208.
      - 4) Sherwin-Williams:
        - a) First Coat: T67F3 Vinyl Sealer.
        - b) Second And Third Coats: T77F38 Sherwood Pre-Catalyzed Lacquer DRE.
    - b. Mill Finished: Architectural Woodwork finished in a mill may use one (1) coat of Vinyl Sealer and two (2) coats of Conversion Varnish or three (3) coats of Conversion Varnish from one (1) of the approved Finish Manufacturers, as recommended by Finish Manufacturer.
    - c. Products meeting testing requirements for finishes of ANSI / KCMA A161.1 may be used upon approval of submission by Architect before use. See Section 01 6200.
  4. Color:
    - a. Design Criteria:
      - 1) Finish to match Owner selected sample.

**PART 3 - EXECUTION****3.1 APPLICATION**

- A. General:
1. See appropriate paragraphs of Section 09 9001.
  2. Sand entire exposed surface of item to be finished lightly with 120 to 150 non-stearated sandpaper and clean before applying dye or stain.
  3. Apply stain in accordance with Manufacturer's recommendations and as necessary to attain correct color.
  4. Scuff sand with 220 non-stearated sandpaper between application of application stain and first finish coat.
  5. If wood is finished before installation, finish cut ends and other unfinished, exposed surfaces same as previously finished surfaces after installation of wood.
- B. Where back-priming is required, apply one coat of finish material.
- C. Architectural Woodwork Door Surfaces (cabinetry doors only):
1. Finish tops, bottoms, and edges before faces.
  2. Finish architectural woodwork doors with no hardware applied to doors.

**END OF SECTION**

**SECTION 09 9413****INTERIOR TEXTURED FINISHING****PART 1 - GENERAL****1.1 SUMMARY**

- A. Includes But Not Limited To:
  - 1. Furnish and apply texturing on walls and ceilings as described in Contract Documents.
- B. Related Requirements:
  - 1. Section 09 2900: 'Gypsum Board' for priming.
  - 2. Section 09 9001: 'Common Painting And Coating Requirements' for:
    - a. Pre-installation conference for Sections under 09 9000 heading 'Paints and Coatings'.
  - 3. Section 09 9123: 'Interior Painted Gypsum Board, Plaster' for finish painting.

**1.2 REFERENCES**

- A. Definitions:
  - 1. Drywall Texture: Compound rolled, sprayed, or troweled onto sheetrock after taping and floating of joints is complete. Uses same material as joint compound, but thinned down with water and applied to wall surface:
    - a. Light Orange Peel: Sprayed texture leaves light splatter on walls. Resembles peel of orange. If done with fine spray, can be one of the lightest, least noticeable of the texture styles.
    - b. Light Skip Trowel - Texture is applied to ceilings with trowel. Trowel marks may be left on surface to give a rustic, hand crafted look.
    - c. Smooth - Smooth application of texture over sheetrock wall that feathers out sheetrock joints, and creates even, non-textured wall.

**1.3 ADMINISTRATIVE REQUIREMENTS**

- A. Pre-Installation Conferences:
  - 1. Participate in pre-installation conference as specified in Section 09 9001.
  - 2. In addition to agenda items specified in Section 01 3100 and Section 09 9001, review following:
    - a. Review control samples.

**1.4 SUBMITTALS**

- A. Action Submittals:
  - 1. Samples:
    - a. Light Orange Peel Texture:
      - 1) Provide minimum of three (3) **24 inch (600 mm)** square control samples on primed gypsum wallboard of 'light orange peel' texture to show possible variations.
    - b. Light Skip Trowel Texture:
      - 1) Provide minimum of three (3) **24 inch (600 mm)** square control samples on primed gypsum wallboard of 'light orange peel' texture to show possible variations.

**1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE**

- A. Field Samples:
  - 1. Before performing work of this Section, prepare control samples.

2. Architect will inspect control sample at pre-installation conference following preparation of control sample. When sample is approved, work of this Section may proceed. Approved samples will be kept at site at all times work of this section is being performed.

## **PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

### **2.1 SYSTEM**

- A. Manufacturers:
  1. Manufacturer Contact List:
    - a. National Gypsum, Charlotte, NC [www.nationalgypsum.com](http://www.nationalgypsum.com).
    - b. U S Gypsum Co, Chicago, IL [www.usg.com](http://www.usg.com).
- B. Materials:
  1. Class Two Quality Standards: See Section 01 6200.
    - a. ProForm Perfect Spray EM/HF by National Gypsum.
    - b. Sheetrock Wall & Ceiling Texture by U S Gypsum.

## **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

### **3.1 APPLICATION**

- A. Location:
  1. Walls:
    - a. Light Orange Peel Texture:
      - 1) All areas except those listed in following paragraph.
    - b. Smooth:
      - 1) Mechanical Rooms, Storage Rooms, and other Utility Areas.
  2. Ceilings:
    - a. Light Orange Peel Texture.
      - 1) All areas except those listed in following paragraph:
    - b. Smooth Finish (no applied texture) to be applied to the following ceilings:
      - 1) Mechanical Rooms, Storage Rooms, and other Utility Areas.
      - 2) Restrooms.
- B. Finishing:
  1. Light Orange Peel Texture:
    - a. After gypsum board is taped and sanded, apply texture. Closely match samples accepted by Architect.
      - 1) After wall has been textured, apply priming and finish paint as specified in Section 09 9123.
  2. Skip Trowel Texture:
    - a. After gypsum board is taped and sanded, apply texture. Closely match samples accepted by Architect.
      - 1) After wall has been textured, apply priming and paint as specified in Section 09 9123.
  3. Smooth:
    - a. No applied texture is required. Apply priming and paint as specified in Section 09 9123.

**END OF SECTION**

**SECTION 10 1424****ENGRAVED STONE PANEL SIGNAGE****PART 1 - GENERAL****1.1 SUMMARY**

- A. Products Furnished But Not Installed Under This Section:
  - 1. Stone Seminary building sign with Church logo and 'SEMINARY'.
- B. Related Requirements:
  - 1. Section 04 2113: 'Brick Veneer Masonry' for installation and cleaning.

**1.2 SUBMITTALS**

- A. Action Submittals:
  - 1. Shop Drawings:
    - a. Show details of attachment system.
  - 2. Samples:
    - a. Submit stone sample of approved stone type specified by Architect.
- B. Informational Submittals:
  - 1. Approved Stone Type:
    - a. Notify Sign Fabricator of approved stone ten (10) week minimum before installation of sign(s).
  - 2. Stone building address sign:
    - a. Notify Sign Fabricator of correct address that will be used in address ten (10) week minimum before installation of sign.

**1.3 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING**

- A. Delivery And Acceptance Requirements:
  - 1. Sign Fabricator Responsibility:
    - a. Deliver material to site, carefully unload, and check in such manner as to avoid soiling, damaging, or chipping.
    - b. Protect material from damage while in transit to job site.
- B. Storage And Handling Requirements:
  - 1. General Contractor Responsibility:
    - a. Store material on planks clear of ground.
    - b. Protect material from damage, dirt, or disfigurement until installation.

**PART 2 - PRODUCTS****2.1 MATERIAL**

- A. Fabricators:
  - 1. Category Four Approved Sign Fabricators. See Section 01 6200 for definitions of Categories:
    - a. Hans Monument Co, Salt Lake City, UT [www.hansmonuments.com](http://www.hansmonuments.com).
      - 1) Contact Information: Debbie Christensen (801) 484-1594 or fax (801) 467-8308.
    - b. Mark H. Bott Co., Ogden, UT [www.markbottco.com](http://www.markbottco.com).
      - 1) Contact Information: David E. Bott (801) 393-8087 or fax (801) 393-8080.

- B. Stone:
  - 1. Description:
    - a. Stone building sign(s).
  - 2. Design Criteria:
    - a. Texture and color variation shall be within limits established by Architect's approved sample.
    - b. Monument quality, free of defects that would materially impair strength, durability, and appearance.
  - 3. Dimensions:
    - a. Stone Seminary building sign with Church logo and 'SEMINARY':
      - 1) Approved sign dimension: 34-1/4 inches (870 mm) high by 55-5/8 inches (1 413 mm) wide by 1-1/4 inch (32 mm) thick as shown on Contract Drawings.
  - 4. Category Four Approved Stone Type. See Section 01 6200 for definitions of Categories:
    - a. Bethel White Granite.
    - b. Elberton Sunset Granite.
    - c. Morning Rose Granite.
    - d. Medium Barre Granite.
- C. Finish: Low pressure, 30 lb (13.6 kg), steeled finish on 80 grit honed surface.

## 2.2 ACCESSORIES

- A. Fasteners And Anchors:
  - 1. Provided by Sign Fabricator for method shown on Contract Documents:
    - a. 'J' bolt system for mounting sign recessed in masonry veneer on framing or CMU.  
or
    - b. 'Z' bracket system for surface mounting sign on concrete or existing masonry.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 INSTALLATION

- A. General:
  - 1. Set stone sign using mechanical fasteners provided by Sign Fabricator.
  - 2. Joints shall be 3/8 inch (9.5 mm) wide. Use plastic spacers in wall joints.
- B. Stone Damage:
  - 1. Installer responsible for repair of damaged surface during installation.

### 3.2 CLEANING

- A. General:
  - 1. After stone sign installation is completed, clean using non-metallic fiber brushes and clean water.

### 3.3 PROTECTION

- A. General Contractor Responsibility:
  - 1. Provide protection for stone sign(s) from masonry cleaning chemicals and other damaging materials until Substantial Completion.

**END OF SECTION**

**SECTION 10 1453****TRAFFIC SIGNAGE****PART 1 - GENERAL****1.1 SUMMARY**

- A. Includes But Not Limited To:
  - 1. Furnishing and installing of exterior post-mounted site signage as described in Contract Documents.
- B. Related Requirements:
  - 1. Section 03 3111: 'Cast-In-Place Structural Concrete' for quality requirements of concrete used for parking sign posts.
  - 2. Section 09 9112: 'Exterior Painted Ferrous Metal' for painting steel signage post.
  - 3. Section 09 9113: 'Exterior Painted Galvanized Metal' for painting galvanized signage post.

**1.2 REFERENCES**

- A. Reference Standards:
  - 1. International Code Council / American National Standards Institute:
    - a. ICC/ANSI A117.1-2010, 'Accessible and Usable Buildings and Facilities'.
  - 2. U.S. Department of Justice:
    - a. 2010 'ADA Standards for Accessible Design'.

**1.3 QUALITY ASSURANCE**

- A. Regulatory Agency Sustainability Approvals:
  - 1. Sign shall meet ANSI A117.1 accessibility code and ADA standards for accessible design and local and state authorities having jurisdiction (AHJ) requirements.

**PART 2 - PRODUCTS****2.1 ASSEMBLIES**

- A. Permanently Mounted:
  - 1. Post Foundation Concrete: One cu ft cement, **2 cu ft (0.0566 cu m)** sand, **4 cu ft (0.1132 cu m)** gravel, and **5 gallons (18.93 liters)** minimum to **6 gallons (22.71 liters)** maximum of water.
  - 2. Accessible Parking Signs:
    - a. Design Criteria:
      - 1) Meet regulatory agency requirements for accessibility.
      - 2) Sign graphics and lettering shall be minimum required by agency having jurisdiction:
        - a) International symbol of accessibility should be posted on all accessible parking spaces.
        - b) Letters must contain visual characters and high dark to light contrast between characters and background as per ADA requirements:
        - c) Provide reflective background.
        - d) Van-accessible parking spaces to have additional 'text' or 'sign' below the accessibility symbol to mark the van-accessible area specifically:
    - 3) Size: **12 inches (305 mm)** x **18 inches (457 mm)** aluminum sign.

- 4) Sign shall have rounded corners.
- b. Type Two Acceptable Products:
  - 1) Parking signs by My Parking Sign, Brooklyn, NY [www.MyParkingSign.com](http://www.MyParkingSign.com).
  - 2) Equal as approved by Architect before use. See Section 01 6200.
3. Posts:
  - a. Handicap Accessible Parking Signage:
    - 1) Provide galvanized post as shown on Contract Drawings.

## **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

### **3.1 INSTALLATION**

- A. Permanently Mounted:
  1. Locate as shown on Site Plan.
    - a. Follow ADA guidelines and local and state authorities having jurisdiction (AHJ) for placement of sign requirements:
      - 1) Van accessible sign should be placed so that it is not obscured by anything including a standing van, vehicle or other obtrusive objects.
      - 2) Signs should be placed at such a height (at least **60 inches (1 500 mm)** above surface) that they do not get obscured by any parked vehicles or other obstructions. Signs must be viewable from drivers' seat of vehicle and located right in view of parking spaces.
  2. Install signs square and plumb.
  3. Post Foundations:
    - a. Follow requirements of Section 03 3053: 'Miscellaneous Exterior Cast-In-Place Concrete' for post foundation:
      - 1) Mix concrete components thoroughly, place in post foundation holes sized as shown on Contract Drawings.
    - b. Mow Strips:
      - 1) At mow strips where shown on Site Plan, set top of post foundation below grade sufficient to allow for placing of mow strip.
    - c. Placement Before Installation of Slabs:
      - 1) Measure post foundation depth from top of slab. Extend bottom of slab footing sufficient to allow specified amount of concrete around post.
    - d. Placement After Installation of Slabs:
      - 1) Where posts are installed after installation of slabs, core slab width of foundation diameter as shown on Contract Documents to accommodate post foundation.
  4. Handicap Accessible Parking Signage:
    - 1) Attach sign to galvanized steel posts as shown on Contract Drawings with stainless steel self tapping screws.
    - 2) Isolate dissimilar materials (steel tube and aluminum sign).

**END OF SECTION**

**SECTION 10 1495****MISCELLANEOUS INTERIOR SIGNAGE****PART 1 - GENERAL****1.1 SUMMARY**

- A. Products Installed But Not Furnished Under This Section:
  - 1. Owner-furnished interior signs.
- B. Related Requirements:
  - 1. Section 01 6400: Owner will furnish designated interior signs. This Section establishes quality of materials and installation for information of Contractor, Architect, and Owner's Representatives.

**PART 2 - PRODUCTS****2.1 OWNER FURNISHED PRODUCTS**

- A. Category Two Approved Distributors. See Section 01 6200 for definitions of Categories:
  - 1. Standard Interior Signs:
    - a. Visual Identity Office:
      - 1) Contact Information:
        - a) 50 E. North Temple St. Rm. 2350, Salt Lake City, UT 84150-3232.
        - b) Phone: 1-801-240-1302.
        - c) Fax: 1-801-240-5997.
        - d) [vidoffice@ldschurch.org](mailto:vidoffice@ldschurch.org).
    - b. Room Signs: Molded clear acrylic sub-surface graphics sign with set-screw to attach to included mounting bracket.
      - 1) Provide tactile / braille features in signage.
    - c. Cabinet Door Signs: Flat clear acrylic sub-surface graphics sign with mounting adhesive in position.
    - d. Color:
      - 1) Background: Blue.
      - 2) Lettering: White.

**PART 3 - EXECUTION****3.1 INSTALLATION**

- A. Install interior signs square and plumb:
  - 1. Room Signs:
    - a. Install bracket using two screws. Use proper anchor for substrate.
    - b. Attach sign to bracket using set-screw.
    - c. Mount signs as described in Contract Drawings.
  - 2. Cabinet Signs:
    - a. Remove adhesive protective layer.
    - b. Position sign correctly and apply to door.
    - c. Roll sign to secure to door, taking care not to damage sign.
    - d. Mount signs as described in Contract Drawings.

**END OF SECTION**



**SECTION 10 2600****RUB RAILS****PART 1 – GENERAL****1.01 SUMMARY**

- A. Rubrails for wall protection and decoration

**1.02 REFERENCES**

- A. American Society for Testing and Materials (ASTM)
- B. National Building Code of Canada (NBC)
- C. National Fire Protection Association (NFPA)
- D. Society of Automotive Engineers (SAE)
- E. Underwriters Laboratory (UL)
- F. Underwriters Laboratory of Canada (ULC)
- G. Uniform Building Code (UBC)

**1.03 SYSTEM DESCRIPTION**

- A. Performance Requirements: Provide Palladium® Rigid Vinyl Rubrails that conform to the following requirements of regulatory agencies and the quality control of IPC Door and Wall Protection Systems, InPro Corporation.
  - 1. Fire Performance Characteristics: Provide UL Classified Palladium® Rigid Vinyl Rubrails conforming with the NFPA Class A fire rating. Surface burning characteristics as determined by UL-723 (ASTM E-84), for Rubrails installed with 3M Fastbond 30, InPro Bond Adhesive, or Formulated Solutions, LLC "XT-2000+" Adhesive shall be a maximum flame spread of 20 and a maximum smoke developed of 350 for .060" (1.5mm) thick material. Provide ULC (Canada) listed rubrails conforming to the requirements of the National Building Code of Canada 2010, Subsection 3.1.13. Surface burning characteristics, as determined by CAN/ULC-S102.2, shall be flame spread of 15 and smoke developed of 30.
  - 2. Self Extinguishing: Provide rubrails with a CC1 classification, as tested in accordance with the procedures specified in ASTM D-635-74, Standard Test Method for Rate of Burning and/or Extent and Time of Burning of Self-Supporting Plastics in a Horizontal Position, as referenced in UBC 52-4-1988.
  - 3. Provide sheet materials that have been tested and results filed in compliance with article 15, part 1120 of the New York State uniform fire prevention and building code. DOS # 09960-930504-4001.
  - 4. Impact Strength: Provide rigid vinyl sheet materials that have an Impact Strength of 30.4 ft-lbs/inch of thickness as tested in accordance with the procedures specified in ASTM D-256-90b, Impact Resistance of Plastics.
  - 5. Chemical and Stain Resistance: Provide rubrails that show resistance to stain when tested in accordance with applicable provisions of ASTM D-543.
  - 6. GREENGUARD Certified: Provide GREENGUARD Certified material. Profiles shall meet the requirements of GREENGUARD Certification Standards for Low-Emitting Products and GREENGUARD Product Emission Standard for Children & Schools.
  - 7. Fungal and Bacterial Resistance: Provide rigid vinyl that does not support fungal or bacterial growth as tested in accordance with ASTM G-21 and ASTM G-22.
  - 8. Color Consistency: Provide components matched in accordance with SAE J-1545 - (Delta E) with a color difference no greater than 1.0 units using CIE Lab, CIE CMC, CIE LCh, Hunter Lab or similar color space scale systems.

**1.04 SUBMITTALS**

- A. Product Data: Manufacturer's printed product data for each type of Palladium® Rigid Vinyl Rubrails specified.
- B. Detail Drawings: Mounting details with the appropriate adhesives for specific project substrates.
- C. Samples: Verification samples of Palladium® Rigid Vinyl Rubrails, 8" (203mm) piece, of each type and color indicated.

- D. Manufacturer's Installation Instruction: Printed installation instructions for Palladium® Rigid Vinyl Rubrails.

### **1.05 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING**

- A. Deliver materials in unopened factory packaging to the jobsite
- B. Inspect materials at delivery to assure that specified products have been received.
- A. Store in original packaging in a climate controlled location away from direct sunlight

### **1.06 PROJECT CONDITIONS**

- A. Environmental Requirements: Products must be installed in an interior climate controlled environment.

### **1.07 WARRANTY**

- A. Standard IPC Limited Lifetime Warranty against material and manufacturing defects.

## **PART 2 – PRODUCTS**

### **2.01 MANUFACTURERS**

- A. Acceptable Manufacturer: IPC Door and Wall Protection Systems  
InPro Corporation, PO Box 406 Muskego, WI 53150 USA;  
Telephone: 800-222-5556, Fax: 888-715-8407,  
Internet address: <http://www.inprocorp.com>
- B. Substitutions: Submit to Architect for Approval.
- C. Provide all Palladium® Rigid Vinyl Rubrails and wall protection from a single source.

### **2.02 MANUFACTURED UNITS**

- A. Rubrails
  - 1. Palladium® Rigid Vinyl Rubrails Options  
Thickness:  
R4 .040" = 3/64" (1mm)-standard  
R6 .060" = 1/16" (1.5mm)-standard  
R8 .080" = 5/64" (2mm)-available  
Backing: Unbacked  
Height: Maximum 24" (610mm)  
Length: 8' (2.44m)

### **2.03 MATERIALS**

- A. Vinyl: Palladium® Rigid Vinyl Rubrails shall be manufactured from chemical and stain resistant unplasticized polyvinyl chloride (uPVC) with the addition of impact modifiers. No plasticizers shall be added (plasticizers may aid in bacterial growth). Accent strips when used shall be of polyvinyl chloride (PVC).

### **2.04 ACCESSORIES**

- A. Adhesives
  - 1. 1. 3M Fastbond Contact Cement, a water dispersed contact cement
  - 2. 2. InPro Bond Adhesive, a freeze-thaw stable trowelable adhesive
  - 3. 3. XT-2000+ Adhesive, a freeze-thaw stable trowelable adhesive

### **2.05 FINISHES**

- A. Color or pattern of Palladium® Rigid Vinyl Rubrails to be selected by the architect from the IPC finish selection. Surface shall have a velvet texture.

## **PART 3 – EXECUTION**

### **3.01 EXAMINATION**

- A. Examine areas and conditions in which the Palladium® Rigid Vinyl Rubrails systems will be installed.
  - 1. Complete all finishing operations, including painting, before beginning installation of Palladium® Rigid Vinyl Rubrails system materials.
- B. Wall surface shall be dry and free from dirt, grease and loose paint.

### **3.02 PREPARATION**

- A. General: Prior to installation, clean substrate to remove dust, debris and loose particles. Paint substrate with a paint or primer that does not contain polyvinyl acetate (PVA).

### **3.03 INSTALLATION**

- A. General: Locate the Palladium® Rigid Vinyl Rubrails as indicated on the approved detail drawing for the appropriate substrate and in compliance with the IPC installation instructions. Install rubrail level and plumb at the height indicated on the drawings.
- B. Installation of Palladium® Rigid Vinyl Rubrails
  - 1. Adhere to substrate with InPro Bond, a freeze-thaw stable, nonflammable, high strength, water based adhesive that trowels on and allows approximately 20 minutes working time before firming.
  - 2. Adhere to substrate with XT-2000+ Adhesive, a freeze-thaw stable, nonflammable, high strength, water based adhesive that trowels on and allows approximately 20 minutes working time before firming.
  - 3. Adhere to substrate with Fastbond 30, a nonflammable, high strength, water-dispersed contact adhesive, with very little odor. Smooth roll surface.

### **3.04 CLEANING**

- A. At completion of the installation, clean surfaces in accordance with the IPC clean-up and maintenance instructions

**END OF SECTION**

**SECTION 10 2613****CORNER GUARDS****PART 1 - GENERAL****1.1 SUMMARY**

- A. Includes But Not Limited To:
1. Furnish and install corner guards as described in Contract Documents.

**1.2 REFERENCES**

- A. Definitions:
1. Flame Spread: The propagation of flame over a surface.
  2. Flame Spread Index: The numerical value assigned to a material tested in accordance with ASTM E84.
  3. Smoke-Developed Index: The numerical value assigned to a material tested in accordance with ASTM E84.
- B. Reference Standards:
1. ASTM International:
    - a. ASTM D256-10(2018), 'Standard Test Methods for Determining the Izod Pendulum Impact Resistance of Plastics'.
    - b. ASTM D543-14, 'Standard Practices for Evaluating the Resistance of Plastics to Chemical Reagents'.
    - c. ASTM E84-18b, 'Standard Test Method for Surface Burning Characteristics of Building Materials'.
  2. Underwriters Laboratories / American National Standards Institute:
    - a. UL/ANSI 723, 'Standard for Safety Test for Surface Burning Characteristics of Building Materials' 11th Edition).

**1.3 SUBMITTALS**

- A. Action Submittals:
1. Product Data: Color selections.
  2. Shop Drawings:
    - a. Show locations, extent and installation details.
    - b. Show method of attachment.
  3. Sample:
    - a. Provide **12 inches (305 mm)** sample show color, texture, pattern, and guard.
- B. Informational Submittals:
1. Test And Evaluation Reports:
    - a. Copies of Quality Assurance requirements for 'Class A' flame spread rating.
  2. Qualification Statement:
    - a. Installer:
      - 1) Provide Qualification documentation if requested by Architect or Owner.
- C. Closeout Submittals:
1. Include following in Operations And Maintenance Manual specified in Section 01 7800:
    - a. Operations and Maintenance Data:
      - 1) Maintenance, and cleaning instructions.
    - b. Record Documentation:
      - 1) Manufacturers documentation:

- a) Manufacturer's literature.
- b) Color selection.

## 1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Regulatory Requirements:
  1. System shall be recognized for intended use by applicable building codes.
  2. Fire Test Response Characteristics:
    - a. UL classified conforming to NFPA Class A fire rating with surface burning characteristics as tested materials in accordance with UL 723 (ASTM E84).
      - 1) Flame Spread: 10.
      - 2) Smoke Developed: 350 to 450.
    - b. 20 ft/lbs/ per square inch as tested in accordance with ASTM D256, Notched Izod Test.
- B. Qualifications:
  1. Installers:
    - a. Installer shall have performed at least three (3) installations of similar size, scope, and complexity in each of the past two (2) years.
    - b. Provide documentation if requested.

## 1.5 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Delivery And Acceptance Requirements:
  1. Deliver materials in sealed containers with Manufacturer's labels intact.
- B. Storage And Handling Requirements:
  1. Store materials in protected area in original, undamaged packaging in a cool, dry place out of direct sunlight and exposure to elements. Minimum room temperature of 40 deg F (4.4 deg C) and a maximum of 100 deg F (37.8 deg C) should be maintained.
  2. Material must be stored flat.

## 1.6 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Ambient Conditions:
  1. Material must be acclimated in an environment of 65 deg F to 75 deg F (18 deg C to 24 deg C) for at least twenty-four (24) hours prior to beginning installation.
  2. Installation areas must be enclosed and weatherproofed before installation commences.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 MANUFACTURED UNITS

- A. Manufacturers:
  1. Vinyl Corner Guards:
    - a. Category Four Approved Manufacturers. See Section 01 6200 for definition of Categories.
      - 1) Acrovyn, Div Construction Specialties Group, Muncie, PA [www.c-sgroup.com](http://www.c-sgroup.com).
      - 2) American Floor Products Co, Rockville, MD [www.afco-usa.com](http://www.afco-usa.com).
      - 3) IPC Door and Wall Protection Systems, Muskego, WI [www.inprocorp.com](http://www.inprocorp.com).
      - 4) Koroseal Wall Protection Systems, Fairlawn, OH [www.korogard.com](http://www.korogard.com).
      - 5) Pawling Corp, Pawling, NY [www.pawling.com](http://www.pawling.com).
- B. Materials:
  1. Vinyl Corner Guards:
    - a. Design Criteria:

- 1) Surface mounted, **0.078 inch (2 mm)** minimum thick, nominal high-impact vinyl / acrylic or polyvinyl chloride (PVC) extrusions designed to absorb and resist abrasions under impact.
  - 2) Chemical and stain resistance: Provide wall protection system components with chemical and stain resistance in accordance with ASTM D543.
  - b. Color and Texture: As selected by Architect from Manufacturer's premium colors.
  - c. Design Standard: Acrovyn VA Series, **1-1/2 inches (38 mm) by 1-1/2 inches (38 mm)**.
- C. Fabrication:
1. Fabricate wall protection systems to comply with requirements indicated for design, dimensions, details, finish, and member sizes.

## 2.2 ACCESSORIES

- A. Adhesive: As supplied or recommended by Corner Guard Manufacturer.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Verification Of Conditions:
1. Examine substrate and conditions under which Work is to be performed and identify conditions detrimental to proper or timely completion.
  2. Notify Architect of unsuitable conditions in writing.
  3. Do not proceed until unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

### 3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Surface Preparation:
1. Prior to installation, clean substrate to remove dirt, debris and loose particles. Perform additional preparation procedures as required by manufacturer's instructions.
- B. Protection:
1. Take all necessary steps to prevent damage to material during installation as required in manufacturer's installation instructions.

### 3.3 INSTALLATION

- A. Acceptable Installers:
1. Meet Quality Assurance Installer Qualifications as specified in Part 1 of this specification.
- B. Install the Work of this section in strict accordance with manufacturer's recommendations, using only approved mounting hardware, and locating all components firmly into position, level and plumb.
- C. Maintain ambient conditions for at least forth eight (48) hours.
- D. Install corner guards at exterior wall corners of Foyers, Corridors, Work Rooms, and Offices. Install corner guards from top of chair rail to ceiling.
- E. Apply adhesive carefully to insure continuous contact between wall and guard. Take care to avoid soiling or leaving visible adhesive on wall or base.

**3.4 CLEANING**

## A. General:

1. Immediately upon completion of installation, clean guards and accessories in accordance with manufacturer's recommended cleaning method.
2. Remove surplus materials, rubbish and debris resulting from installation as work progresses and upon completion of work.

**3.5 PROTECTION**

- A. Protect installed materials to prevent damage by other trades. Use materials that may be easily removed without leaving residue or permanent stains.

**END OF SECTION**

**SECTION 10 2813****COMMERCIAL TOILET ACCESSORIES****PART 1 - GENERAL****1.1 SUMMARY**

- A. Included But Is Not Limited To:
  - 1. Selected accessories for Rest Rooms:
    - a. Grab Bars.
    - b. Mirrors.
    - c. Sanitary Napkin Disposal Container.
    - d. Single Robe Hook.
  - 2. Custodial Room accessories:
    - a. Utility Shelf.
- B. Related Requirements:
  - 1. Section 06 1100: 'Wood Framing' for blocking.
  - 2. Section 06 2001: 'Common Finish Carpentry Requirements' for installation.
- C. Products Furnished But Not Installed Under This Section:
  - 1. Selected accessories for Rest Rooms:
    - a. Automatic touchless towel dispensers.
    - b. Soap dispensers.
    - c. Toilet tissue dispensers.
- D. Related Requirements:
  - 1. Section 01 1200: 'Multiple Contract Summary' soap dispensers, paper towel dispensers, and toilet tissue dispensers furnished and installed by Owner (FM Group).

**1.2 REFERENCES**

- A. Association Publications:
  - 1. United States Access Board:
    - a. Americans with Disabilities Act (ADA):
      - 1) ADA Standards:
        - a) ADA Accessibility Guidelines (ADAAG) (2004 or latest version).
- B. Reference Standards:
  - 1. ASTM International:
    - a. A153/A153M-16a, 'Standard Specification for Zinc Coating (Hot-Dip) on Iron and Steel Hardware'.
    - b. ASTM A653/A653M-17, 'Standard Specification for Steel Sheet, Zinc-Coated (Galvanized) or Zinc-Iron Alloy-Coated (Galvannealed) by the Hot-Dip Process'.
    - c. ASTM A666-15, 'Standard Specification for Annealed or Cold-Worked Austenitic Stainless Steel Sheet, Strip, Plate, and Flat Bar'.
    - d. ASTM C1036-18, 'Standard Specification for Flat Glass'.
    - e. ASTM F446-85(2009), 'Standard Consumer Safety Specification for Grab Bars and Accessories Installed in the Bathing Area'.
  - 2. International Code Council / American National Standards Institute:
    - a. ICC/ANSI A117.1-2017, 'Accessible and Usable Buildings and Facilities'.
  - 3. International Standard Organization:
    - a. ISO 25537:2008, 'Glass in Building - Silvered Flat Glass Mirror'.



### 1.3 SUBMITTALS

- A. Action Submittals:
  - 1. Product Data:
    - a. Manufacturer's product data sheets indicating operating characteristics, materials and finishes.
    - b. Mounting requirements and rough-in dimensions.
  - 2. Shop Drawings:
    - a. Schedule showing items used, location where installed, and proper attaching devices for substrate.
- B. Informational Submittals:
  - 1. Manufacturers' Instructions:
    - a. Provide operation, care and cleaning instructions.
- C. Closeout Submittals:
  - 1. Include following in Operations And Maintenance Manual specified in Section 01 7800:
    - a. Warranty Documentation:
      - 1) Final, executed copy of Warranty for each product.
    - b. Record Documentation:
      - 1) Manufacturers documentation:
        - a) Manufacturer's literature or cut sheets.

### 1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Source Limitations:
  - 1. For products listed together in same Part 2 articles, obtain products from single source from single manufacturer.

### 1.5 WARRANTY

- A. Manufacturer Warranty:
  - 1. Manufacturer's standard warranty.
- B. Special Mirror Warranty:
  - 1. Manufacturer's standard form in which manufacturer agrees to replace mirrors that develop visible silver spoilage or frame corrosion defects within specified warranty period:
    - a. Warranty Period: fifteen (15) years from date of Substantial Completion.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 OWNER FINISHED PRODUCTS

- A. Category One Approved Products (Furnished and Installed by Owner):
  - 1. Automatic Touchless Towel Dispensers:
    - a. Mount Towel Dispenser in 'Recessed Waste Receptacle Cabinet'.
    - b. Category One Approved Products. See Section 01 6200 for definitions of Categories:  
Georgia-Pacific enMotion model no. 59460:
      - 1) Size: 14.8 inches (376 mm) wide x 9.75 inches (248 mm) deep x 16.75 inches (425 mm) high.
      - 2) Power source: battery.
      - 3) Color: splash blue.
  - 2. Soap dispensers.
  - 3. Toilet tissue dispensers.

## 2.2 MANUFACTURED UNITS

### A. Manufacturers:

1. Manufacturer Contact List:
  - a. AJW Architectural Products, A&J Washroom Accessories, Inc., New Windsor, NY [www.ajwashroom.com](http://www.ajwashroom.com).
  - b. American Specialties Inc (ASI), Yonkers, NY [www.americanspecialties.com](http://www.americanspecialties.com).
  - c. Bobrick Washroom Equipment Inc, North Hollywood, CA [www.bobrick.com](http://www.bobrick.com) or Bobrick Washroom Equipment of Canada Ltd, Scarborough, ON (416) 298-1611.
  - d. Bradley Corp, Menomonee Falls, WI [www.bradleycorp.com](http://www.bradleycorp.com).
  - e. General Accessory Manufacturing Co (GAMCO), Durant, OK [www.gamcousa.com](http://www.gamcousa.com).

### B. Materials:

1. Design Criteria:
  - a. Stainless Steel: ASTM A666 Type 304 (18-8); satin finish exposed surfaces unless otherwise indicated.
  - b. Galvanized-Steel Mounting Devices: ASTM A153/A153M, hot-dip galvanized after fabrication.
  - c. Fasteners:
    - 1) Exposed: Screws, bolts, and other devices of same material as accessory unit and tamper-and-theft resistant.
    - 2) Concealed: Galvanized Steel.
2. Rest Rooms:
  - a. Mirrors:
    - 1) Channel-Frame Mirror:
      - a) Frame: Type 304 or Type 430, 20 gauge stainless steel channel frame.
      - b) Roll-formed one piece construction.
      - c) Exposed surfaces have #4 satin finish.
      - d) Edges and corners are burr free.
      - e) Glass: **1/4 inch (6.4 mm)** silver coated and hermetically sealed. Guaranteed for 15 years against silver spoilage. Mirrors meet ASTM C1036 requirements.
      - f) Concealed surface mounted wall hanger.
    - 2) Category Four Approved Products. See Section 01 6200 for definitions of Categories:
      - a) AJW Architectural Products: Model U711.
      - b) American Specialties (ASI): Model 0620.
      - c) Bobrick: Model B-165.
      - d) Bradley: Model 781.
      - e) General Accessory (GAMCO): Model C Series.
  - b. Sanitary Napkin Disposal Container:
    - 1) Design Criteria:
      - a) Surface mounted type 304, 22 gauge stainless steel with #4 satin finish. Seamless construction with radius and hemmed edges.
      - b) Stainless steel piano hinge.
    - 2) Category Four Approved Products. See Section 01 6200 for definitions of Categories:
      - a) AJW Architectural Products: Model U590.
      - b) American Specialties (ASI): Model 0852.
      - c) Bobrick: Model B-270.
      - d) Bradley: Model 4781-15.
      - e) General Accessory (GAMCO): Model ND-1.
  - c. Single Robe Hook:
    - 1) Surface mounted type 304, 22 gauge stainless steel with #4 satin finish.
    - 2) Concealed mounting bracket.
    - 3) Stainless steel locking setscrew on bottom.
    - 4) Category Four Approved Products. See Section 01 6200 for definitions of Categories:
      - a) AJW Architectural Products: Model UX110SF.
      - b) American Specialties (ASI): Model 7340-S.
      - c) Bobrick: Model B6717.
      - d) Bradley: Model 9114.
      - e) General Accessory (GAMCO): Model 76717.
  - d. Grab Bars:

- 1) Configuration shown on Contract Drawings. Include center support for longer lengths when required:
  - 2) Design Criteria:
    - a) Comply with ADA guidelines and ADAAG accessible design for structural strength and local and state codes.
    - b) Concealed mount.
    - c) 18 ga (1.27 mm), type 304 stainless steel tubing.
    - d) 1-1/2 inch (38 mm) diameter.
    - e) Provide center support when required.
    - f) Snap-on flange covers.
    - g) Peened (non-slip) finish.
    - h) Sustain loads in excess of 900 lbs (408 kg).
  - 3) Category Four Approved Products. See Section 01 6200 for definitions of Categories:
    - a) AJW Architectural Products: Model UG3 Series.
    - b) American Specialties (ASI): Model 3800 Series.
    - c) Bobrick: Model B-6806 Series.
    - d) Bradley: Model 812 Series.
    - e) General Accessory (GAMCO): Model 150 Series.
3. Custodial Rooms:
- a. Utility Shelf:
    - 1) Provide mop / broom hangers, shelf, and rod for hanging rags.
    - 2) Size as shown on Contract Drawings.
    - 3) Category Four Approved Products. See Section 01 6200 for definitions of Categories:
      - a) AJW Architectural Products: Model UJ41.
      - b) American Specialties (ASI): Model 1300 Series.
      - c) Bobrick: Model B-224 Series.
      - d) Bradley: Model 9933 Series.
      - e) General Accessory (GAMCO): Model US Series.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 INSTALLATION

- A. Comply with ADA Accessibility Guidelines and installation heights as shown on Contract Drawings.
- B. Assemble fixtures and associated fittings and trim in accordance with manufacturer's instructions.
- C. Install using mounting devices proper for base structure.
- D. Install equipment level, plumb, and firmly in place in accordance with manufacturer's rough-in drawings.
- E. Where possible, mount like items in adjoining compartments back-to-back on same partition.
- F. Grab Bars:
  1. Install as per Manufacturers written installation instructions.
  2. Install grab bars to withstand downward force of not less than 250 lbf (1112 N) per ASTM F446.

### 3.2 REPAIR

- A. Repair or replace defective work, including damaged equipment and components.
- B. Repair or replace malfunctioning equipment, or equipment with parts that bind or are misaligned.

**3.3 CLEANING**

- A. Clean unit surfaces, and leave in ready-to-use condition.

**3.4 ADJUSTING**

- A. Test each piece of equipment provided with moving parts to assure proper operation, freedom of movement, and alignment. Install new batteries in battery-powered items.

**3.5 CLOSEOUT ACTIVITIES**

- A. Turn over keys, tools, maintenance instructions, and maintenance stock to Owner.

**END OF SECTION**

**SECTION 10 4400****FIRE PROTECTION SPECIALTIES****PART 1 - GENERAL****1.1 SUMMARY**

- A. Products Furnished But Not Installed Under This Section:
  - 1. Extinguishers with cabinets.
- B. Related Requirements:
  - 1. Section 06 1100: 'Wood Framing' for blocking in wood-framed walls.
  - 2. Section 06 2001: 'Common Finish Carpentry Requirements' for installation.
  - 3. Section 09 2216: 'Non-Structural Metal Framing' for blocking in metal-framed walls.

**1.2 SUBMITTALS**

- A. Action Submittals:
  - 1. Product Data:
    - a. Manufacturer's literature or cut sheets for cabinets and extinguishers.
- B. Closeout Submittals:
  - 1. Include following in Operations And Maintenance Manual specified in Section 01 7800:
    - a. Warranty Documentation:
      - 1) Include copy of final, executed warranty.
    - b. Record Documentation:
      - 1) Testing and Inspection Reports:
        - a) Testing Agency Inspecting Reports of Drilled-In Mechanical Anchors / Adhesive Anchors / Screw Anchors.

**1.3 QUALITY ASSURANCE**

- A. Regulatory Agency Sustainability Approvals:
  - 1. Fire extinguishers shall be inspected and have annual inspection tag attached before Substantial Completion.

**1.4 WARRANTY**

- A. Manufacturer Warranty:
  - 1. Manufacturer's standard, written warranty on fire extinguisher.

**PART 2 - PRODUCTS****2.1 EQUIPMENT**

- A. Manufacturers:
  - 1. Fire Extinguishers:
    - a. Category Four Approved Manufacturers. See Section 01 6200 for definitions of Categories.
      - 1) Amerex Corp, Trussville, AL [www.amerex-fire.com](http://www.amerex-fire.com).
      - 2) Ansul Incorporated, Marinette, WI [www.ansul.com](http://www.ansul.com).
      - 3) Buckeye Fire Equipment, Kings Mountain, NC [www.buckeyef.com](http://www.buckeyef.com).

- 4) Extinguishers private-labeled by manufacturers approved above are approved, with appropriate documentation.
2. Cabinets And Brackets:
  - a. Type One Acceptable Manufacturers:
    - 1) J L Industries, Bloomington, MN [www.jlindustries.com](http://www.jlindustries.com).
    - 2) Larsen's Manufacturing Co, Minneapolis, MN [www.larsensmfg.com](http://www.larsensmfg.com).
    - 3) Modern Metal Products / Technico, Owatonna, MN [www.modern-metal.com](http://www.modern-metal.com).
    - 4) National Fire Equipment Ltd, Scarborough, ON [www.nationalfire.com](http://www.nationalfire.com).
    - 5) Potter-Roemer, Cerritos, CA [www.potterroemer.com](http://www.potterroemer.com).
    - 6) Samson Products Inc, City of Commerce, CA [www.samsonproducts.com](http://www.samsonproducts.com).
    - 7) Seton Inc, Richmond Hill, ON (905) 764-1122.
    - 8) Equal as approved by Architect before bidding. See Section 01 6200.
- B. Type One Acceptable Distributors:
  1. W.W. Grainger, Inc., Lake Forest, IL [www.grainger.com](http://www.grainger.com).
  2. Equal as approved by Architect before bidding. See Section 01 6200.
- C. Fire Extinguishers:
  1. Design Criteria:
    - a. Ten pound dry chemical ABC stored pressurized type equipped with pressure gauge and which does not need recharging except after use.
    - b. Instructions for repairs, maintenance, and recharging shall be attached.
    - c. Unit shall be tested and approved by UL and have minimum 4A:60-B:C UL rating. UL rating shall appear on extinguisher labels and be attached to and a part of fire extinguisher units.
- D. Fire Extinguisher Cabinets:
  1. Design Criteria:
    - a. Two-piece, semi-recessed or flush type depending on wall thickness, and have white baked enameled steel tubs with white baked enamel return trim and doors, clear acrylic glazing, 'Safe-T-Lock,' and cylinder locks.
    - b. Supply each cabinet with one specified fire extinguisher.
  2. Type One Acceptable Manufacturers:
    - a. Basis of Design Product: Ambassador 1017 G10 by J L Industries.
    - b. Equal as approved by Architect before bidding from Acceptable Manufacturer's equivalent product. See Section 01 6200.
- E. Wall-Mounted Brackets:
  1. Design Criteria:
    - a. Heavy duty with minimum of double strap/bracket.
  2. Category Four Approved Bracket. See Section 01 6200 for definitions of Categories:
    - a. Basis of Design Product: No. 846 by Larsen's.
    - b. Equal as approved by Architect before bidding from Approved Manufacturer's equivalent product.

## **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

### **3.1 INSTALLATION**

- A. Special Techniques:
  1. Securely mount cabinets and hangers plumb with wall surfaces.
  2. Trim for cabinets shall be neat in appearance.

**END OF SECTION**

**SECTION 10 5516****MAIL COLLECTION BOXES****PART 1 - GENERAL****1.1 SUMMARY**

- A. Products Furnished But Not Installed Under This Section:
  - 1. Locking Security Mailbox and post as described in Contract Documents.
- B. Related Requirements:
  - 1. Section 03 3053: Mounting of ground post.
  - 2. Section 06 2001: Installation.

**1.2 SUBMITTALS**

- A. Action Submittals:
  - 1. Product Data:
    - a. Manufacturer's literature or cut sheets and installation instructions.
- B. Closeout Submittals:
  - 1. Include following in Operations And Maintenance Manual specified in Section 01 7800:
    - a. Warranty Documentation:
      - 1) Final, executed copy of Warranty.
    - b. Record Documentation:
      - 1) Manufacturers documentation:
        - a) Manufacturer's literature.

**1.3 QUALITY ASSURANCE**

- A. Regulatory Agency Sustainability Approvals:
  - 1. Approved by United States Postmaster General for curbside delivery (USPS Std 7B).

**1.4 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING**

- A. Delivery And Acceptance Requirements:
  - 1. Materials shall be delivered in original, unopened packages with labels intact.
- B. Storage And Handling Requirements:
  - 1. Protect from damage.

**PART 2 - PRODUCTS****2.1 MANUFACTURED UNITS**

- A. Manufacturers:
  - 1. Type One Acceptable Manufacturers.
    - a. Quality Standard:
      - 1) Mailbox: Oasis Jr. Model AM6200.
      - 2) Ground post: Oasis Jr. Model AM 5105.
      - 3) Any authorized dealer for Architectural Mailboxes.

- b. Equal as approved by Architect before bidding. See Section 01 6200.

B. Description:

1. Mailbox:

- a. Large incoming hopper style door to allow delivery of small to medium sized parcels with internal security baffle, and locking lower compartment.
- b. Size: 11-1/2 inch (292 mm) wide x 15 inches (380 mm) high with a depth of 18 inches (457 mm) at the top and 15 inches (380 mm) at bottom.
- c. Body: 16 gage (1.5 mm) steel sheet.
- d. Doors: 14 gage (2.0 mm) steel sheet.
- e. Assembly Hardware:
  - 1) Stainless steel rivets and hinges.
  - 2) Zinc plated assembly screws.
- f. Lock: Zinc plated cam lock with zinc die cast cylinder.
- g. Door seals.

2. Ground Post:

- a. Size: 4 inch (100 mm) wide x 4 inch (100 mm) deep x 46-1/2 inches (1 181 mm) high.
- b. Steel tube: 16 gage (1.5 mm) galvanized.
- c. Mounting plate: 12 inches (305 mm) wide x 6 inch (150 mm) deep.
- d. Mounting hardware.

C. Finishes:

- 1. Powder Coating:
  - a. Durable, uniform, smooth protective finish.
- 2. Color:
  - a. Black.

## 2.2 ACCESSORIES

- A. Street Address numbers on front access door.
  - 1. Verify size with Owner.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 INSTALLATION

- A. Follow Manufacturer's installation instructions.
- B. Contact local Postal authorities for mounting height and set-back distance from road.
- C. Mount ground post in concrete.

**END OF SECTION**



**SECTION 10 8200****LOUVERED ROOFTOP EQUIPMENT SCREENS****GENERAL****1.1 SUMMARY**

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. Fixed, extruded-aluminum louvered roof top equipment screens
- B. See Division 5 Section "Structural Metal Framing" for structural framing supporting louver sections.

**1.2 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS**

- A. Design: Design louvers, including comprehensive engineering analysis by a qualified engineer, using structural performance requirements and design criteria indicated.
- B. Structural Performance: Louvers shall withstand the effects of gravity loads and the following loads and stresses within limits and under conditions indicated without permanent deformation of louver components, noise or metal fatigue caused by louver blade rattle or flutter, or permanent damage to fasteners and anchors.
  - 1. Wind Loads: Determine loads based on a uniform pressure of 30 lb./sq. ft. (1435 Pa), acting inward or outward.

**1.3 SUBMITTALS**

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.
- B. Shop Drawings: For equipment screens and accessories. Include plans, elevations, sections, details, and attachments to other work. Show frame profiles and blade profiles, angles, and spacing.
- C. Samples: For each type of metal finish required.
- D. Submittal: For louvers indicated to comply with structural performance requirements and design criteria indicated.

**PRODUCTS****1.4 MATERIALS**

- A. Aluminum Extrusions: ASTM B 221M, Alloy 6063-T5.
- B. Aluminum Sheet: ASTM B 209M, Alloy 3003 with temper as required for forming.
- C. Fasteners: Use types and sizes to suit unit installation conditions.
  - 1. For fastening aluminum, use aluminum or 300 series stainless-steel fasteners.

**1.5 FABRICATION, GENERAL**

- A. Join concealed frame members to each other and to fixed louver blades with fillet welds concealed from view welds, threaded fasteners, or both, as standard with louver manufacturer unless otherwise indicated or size of louver assembly makes bolted connections between frame members necessary.

**1.6 EXTRUDED-ALUMINUM ROOF TOP EQUIPMENT SCREEN**

- A. Horizontal Blade Louvered Roof Top Equipment Screen
1. Basis-of-Design Product: Architectural Louvers Co. (Harray, LLC); Model V4JS. Subject to compliance with requirements, provide the specified product or comparable product by one of the following:
    - a. Manufacturers of equivalent products.
  2. Louver Blade Depth: 4 inches (100 mm)
  3. Blade Profile: Plain blade without center baffle.
  4. Blade Nominal Thickness: Not less than 0.080 inch (2.03 mm).
  5. Framing Support Nominal Thickness: Not less than 0.125 inch (3.2 mm)
  6. Louver Performance Requirements:
    - a. Free Area: Not less than 8.0 sq. ft. (0.74 sq. m) for 48-inch- (1220-mm-) wide by 48-inch- (1220-mm-) high louver assembly.
    - b. Horizontal Drag Coefficient: Not greater than 0.63 on a cross sectional profile, allowing for a 37% reduction in wind load imposed horizontally upon supporting structural framing.

**1.7 ALUMINUM FINISHES**

- A. High-Performance Organic Finish: 3-coat fluoropolymer finish complying with AAMA 2605 and containing not less than 70 percent PVDF resin by weight in color coat. Prepare, pre-treat, and apply coating to exposed metal surfaces to comply with coating and resin manufacturers' written instructions.
1. Color: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.

**EXECUTION****1.8 INSTALLATION**

- A. Locate and place equipment screens level, plumb, and at indicated alignment with adjacent work.
- B. Use concealed anchorages where possible. Provide brass or lead washers fitted to screws where required to protect metal surfaces and to make a weather-tight connection.
- C. Provide perimeter reveals and openings of uniform width to allow for thermal expansion, as indicated.
- D. Repair damaged finishes so no evidence remains of corrective work. Return items that cannot be refinished in the field to the factory and refinish entire unit or provide new units.

**END OF SECTION**

**SECTION 12 2123****ROLL-DOWN BLINDS****PART 1 - GENERAL****1.1 SUMMARY****A. Includes But Not Limited To:**

1. Furnish and install interior roller shade on storefront exit door only when building elevation faces South or West as described in Contract Documents.

**1.2 REFERENCES****A. Definitions:**

1. Anti-Microbial: Capable of destroying or inhibiting the growth of disease-causing microorganisms.
2. Inherently Flame Resistant: Material that meets requirements set forth in NFPA 701. Inherently flame-resistant fabric is woven from fibers that are non-combustible for life of material.
3. Shade Cloth: Fabric designed to provide specified amount of shade.

**B. Reference Standards:**

1. ASTM International:
  - a. ASTM G21 15: 'Standard Practice for Determining Resistance of Synthetic Polymeric Materials to Fungi'.
2. National Fire Protection Association:
  - a. NFPA 701, 'Standard Methods of Fire Tests for Flame Propagation of Textiles and Films, (2019 or most recent edition adopted by AHJ).

**1.3 SUBMITTALS****A. Action Submittals:**

1. Product Data:
  - a. Styles, material descriptions, dimensions of components, profiles, features, and finishes.
2. Shop Drawings:
  - a. Plans, elevations, sections, product details, installation details, operational clearances, and relationship to adjacent work.
3. Samples:
  - a. One (1) set of shade cloth options and aluminum finish samples representing Manufacturer's full range of available colors.
  - b. Shadecloth sample and aluminum finish sample as selected. Mark face of material to indicate interior faces.

**B. Informational Submittals:**

1. Manufacturer Instructions:
  - a. Storage and handling requirements and recommendations.
  - b. Preparation instructions and recommendations.
  - c. Mounting details and installation methods.
2. Qualification Statement:
  - a. Installers:
    - 1) Provide Qualification documentation if requested by Architect or Owner.

**C. Closeout Submittals:**

1. Include following in Operations And Maintenance Manual specified in Section 01 7800:
  - a. Operations and Maintenance Data:

- 1) Operating and maintenance instructions.
- b. Warranty Documentation:
  - 1) Final, executed copy of Warranty.
- c. Record Documentation:
  - 1) Manufacturers documentation:
    - a) Fabric Supplier's literature or cut sheets on fabric.
    - b) Shade Manufacturer's literature or cut sheets.
    - c) Color and style selection.

#### 1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Regulatory Agency Sustainability Approvals:
  - 1. Material Characteristics:
    - a. Material used shall be inherently flame retardant with a flame spread rating meeting code requirements when tested in accordance with NFPA 701.
  - 2. Anti-Microbial Characteristics:
    - a. 'No Growth' in accordance with ASTM G21 results for fungi ATCC9642, ATCC 9644, and ATCC9645.
- B. Qualifications:
  - 1. Installers: Requirements of Section 01 4301 applies, but not limited to following:
    - a. Installer trained and certified by Manufacturer in installing specified products.
    - b. Minimum three (3) satisfactorily completed installations of comparable quality, scope, similar size, and complexity in past two (2) years before bidding.
    - c. Upon request, submit documentation.

#### 1.5 WARRANTY

- A. Manufacturer Warranty:
  - 1. Manufacturer's standard warranty.

### PART 2 - PRODUCTS

#### 2.1 MANUFACTURED UNITS

- A. Manufacturer:
  - 1. Type One Acceptable Products and Manufacturers:
    - a. RB-500 by Hunter Douglas Contract, Poway, CA [www.hunterdouglascontract.com](http://www.hunterdouglascontract.com).
    - b. SilverScreen by Verosol, Louisville, CO [www.verosol.com](http://www.verosol.com).
    - c. Equal meeting design criteria requirements as approved by Architect before bid. See Section 01 6200.
- B. Materials:
  - 1. Design Criteria:
    - a. R-24 Clutch by RollEase.
  - 2. Fabric:
    - a. Room darkening single-fabric shade cloth:
      - 1) Design Criteria:
        - a) Fiberglass with vinyl.
        - b) Openness: 4 percent to 10 percent.
        - c) Washable.
        - d) 11 oz per sq yd (373 g per sq m).
        - e) Meet Quality Assurance requirements in Part 1 of this specification for material characteristics.
    - b. Color quality standard:

- 1) Brown, Gray, White or off white. Submit available color options for Architect's selection.
3. Drive Chain:
  - a. Design Criteria:
    - 1) Chain:
      - a) #10 qualified stainless-steel chain.
      - b) Chain rated to 90 lb (40.8 kg) minimum breaking strength.
      - c) Nickel plate chain shall not be accepted because of rusting.
- C. Fabrication:
  1. Shade Bands:
    - a. Description:
      - 1) Construction of shade band includes fabric, hem weight, hem-pocket, shade roller tube, and attachment of shade band to roller tube.
    - b. Hem Pockets and Hem Weights:
      - 1) Design Criteria:
        - a) Fabric hem pocket with RF-welded seams (including welded ends) and concealed hem weights.
        - b) Hem weights shall be of appropriate size and weight for shade band.
        - c) Hem weight shall be continuous inside sealed hem pocket.
        - d) Hem pocket construction and hem weights shall be similar, for shades within one (1) room.
    - c. Shade Band And Shade Roller Attachment:
      - 1) Design Criteria:
        - a) Shade Roller Tube:
          - (1) Use extruded aluminum shade roller tube of diameter and wall thickness required to support shade fabric without excessive deflection.
          - (2) Roller tubes less than 1.5 inch (38 mm) in diameter for manual shades are not acceptable.
        - b) Provide for positive mechanical engagement with drive / brake mechanism.
        - c) Provide for positive attachment of shade band to roller tube.
        - d) Mounting spline shall not require use of adhesives, adhesive tapes, staples, and/or rivets.
  2. Shades:
    - a. Design Criteria:
      - 1) Shadecloth:
        - a) Fabricate shadecloth to hang flat without buckling or distortion.
        - b) Fabricate with heat-sealed trimmed edges to hang straight without curling or raveling.
        - c) Fabricate unguided shadecloth to roll true and straight without shifting sideways more than 1/8 inch (3 mm) in either direction per 8 feet (2.45 m) of shade height due to warp distortion or weave design.
        - d) Fabricate hem with bottom hem weights.
      - 2) Provide battens in standard shades as required to assure proper tracking and uniform rolling of shadebands.
        - a) Assure that width-to-height (W:H) ratios shall not exceed Manufacturer's standards or, in absence of such standards, shall be responsible for establishing appropriate standards to assure proper tracking and rolling of the shadecloth within specified standards.
        - b) Battens shall be roll-formed stainless steel or tempered steel, as required.
      - 3) Provide battens for railroaded shades when width-to-height (W:H) ratios meet or exceed Manufacturer's standards.
        - a) In absence of Manufacturer's standards, be responsible for proper use and placement of battens to assure proper tracking and roll of shadebands.
      - 4) Battens shall be roll formed of stainless steel or tempered steel and concave to match roller tube contour.
      - 5) Batten Pockets:
        - a) Batten pockets shall be self-colored fabric front and back RF welded into shadecloth.

- b) Provide self-color opaque liner front and back to eliminate any see through of batten pocket that shall not exceed 1-1/2 inches (38.1 mm) high and be totally opaque.

### **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

#### **3.1 INSTALLATION**

- A. Install roller shade in accordance with manufacturer's instructions including recommended support brackets and fasteners on inside of storefront exit door.
- B. Install roller shade with adequate clearance to permit smooth operation of blinds:
  - 1. Demonstrate blinds to be in smooth, uniform working order.
- C. Attach roller shade on exit door in classroom above panic device.

#### **3.2 ADJUSTING**

- A. Adjust and balance roller shades to operate smoothly, easily, safely, and free from binding or malfunction throughout operational range.

#### **3.3 CLEANING**

- A. Clean roller shade surfaces after installation.

#### **3.4 CLOSE-OUT ACTIVITIES**

- A. Training:
  - 1. Installer shall train Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain roller shade systems.

**END OF SECTION**

**SECTION 22 0501****COMMON PLUMBING REQUIREMENTS****PART 1 - GENERAL****1.1 SUMMARY**

- A. Includes But Not Limited To:
  - 1. Common requirements and procedures for plumbing systems.
  - 2. Responsibility for proper operation of electrically powered equipment furnished under this Division.
  - 3. Furnish and install sealants relating to installation of systems installed under this Division.
  - 4. Furnish and install Firestop Penetration Systems for plumbing systems penetrations as described in Contract Documents.
- B. Products Furnished But Not Installed Under This Section:
  - 1. Sleeves, inserts, supports, and equipment for plumbing systems installed under other Sections.
- C. Related Requirements:
  - 1. Section 03 3111: 'Cast-In-Place Structural Concrete' for exterior concrete pads and bases for mechanical equipment.
  - 2. Section 05 0523: 'Metal Fastening' for quality and requirements for welding.
  - 3. Section 07 8400: 'Firestopping' for quality of penetration firestop systems to be used on Project and submittal requirements.
  - 4. Section 07 9213: 'Elastomeric Joint Sealant' for quality at building exterior.
  - 5. Sections Under 09 9000 Heading: 'Paints And Coatings' for painting of plumbing items requiring field painting.
  - 6. Section 22 0548: 'Vibration And Seismic Control for Plumbing Piping and Equipment'.
  - 7. Division 26: 'Electrical' for raceway and conduit, unless specified otherwise, and line voltage wiring.
  - 8. Division 33: 'Utilities' for piped utilities.
  - 9. Slots and openings through floors, walls, ceilings, and roofs provided under other Divisions in their respective materials.

**1.2 SUBMITTALS**

- A. Action Submittals:
  - 1. Product Data:
    - a. Manufacturer's catalog data for each manufactured item.
      - 1) Provide section in submittal for each type of item of equipment. Include Manufacturer's catalog data of each manufactured item and enough information to show compliance with Contract Document requirements. Literature shall show capacities and size of equipment used and be marked indicating each specific item with applicable data underlined.
      - 2) Include name, address, and phone number of each supplier.
- B. Informational Submittals:
  - 1. Qualification Statement:
    - a. Plumbing Subcontractor:
      - 1) Provide Qualification documentation if requested by Architect or Owner.
    - b. Installer:
      - 1) Provide Qualification documentation if requested by Architect or Owner.
- C. Closeout Submittals:

1. Include following in Operations And Maintenance Manual specified in Section 01 7800:
  - a. Operations and Maintenance Data (Modify and add to requirements of Section 01 7800):
    - 1) At beginning of PLUMBING section of Operations And Maintenance Manual, provide master index showing items included:
      - a) Provide name, address, and phone number of Architect, Architect's Mechanical Engineer, General Contractor, and Plumbing subcontractor.
      - b) Identify maintenance instructions by using same equipment identification used in Contract Drawings. Maintenance instructions shall include:
        - (1) List of plumbing equipment used indicating name, model, serial number, and nameplate data of each item together with number and name associated with each system item.
        - (2) Manufacturer's maintenance instructions for each piece of plumbing equipment installed in Project. Instructions shall include name of vendor, installation instructions, parts numbers and lists, operation instructions of equipment, and maintenance instructions.
      - c) Provide operating instructions to include:
        - (1) General description of fire protection system.
        - (2) Step by step procedure to follow for shutting down system or putting system into operation.
    - b. Warranty Documentation:
      - 1) Include copies of warranties required in individual Sections of Division 22.

### 1.3 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Regulatory Agency Sustainability Approvals:
  1. Perform work in accordance with applicable provisions of Plumbing Codes applicable to Project. Provide materials and labor necessary to comply with rules, regulations, and ordinances.
  2. In case of differences between building codes, laws, local ordinances, utility company regulations, and Contract Documents, the most stringent shall govern. Notify Architect in writing of such differences before performing work affected by such differences.
  3. Identification:
    - a. Motor and equipment name plates as well as applicable UL / ULC and AGA / CGA labels shall be in place when Project is turned over to Owner.
- B. Qualifications. Requirements of Section 01 4301 applies, but not limited to following:
  1. Plumbing Subcontractor:
    - a. Company specializing in performing work of this section.
      - 1) Minimum five (5) years experience in plumbing installations.
      - 2) Minimum five (5) satisfactorily completed installations in past three (3) years of projects similar in size, scope, and complexity required for this project before bidding.
    - b. Upon request, submit documentation.
  2. Installer:
    - a. Licensed for area of Project.
    - b. Designate one (1) individual as project foremen who shall be on site at all times during installation and experienced with installation procedures required for this project.
    - c. Upon request, submit documentation.

### 1.4 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Delivery And Acceptance Requirements:
  1. Accept valves on site in shipping containers with labeling in place.
  2. Provide temporary protective coating on cast iron and steel valves.
  3. Provide temporary end caps and closures on piping and fittings. Maintain in place until installation.
- B. Storage And Handling Requirements:



1. In addition to requirements specified in Division 01, stored material shall be readily accessible for inspection by Architect until installed.
2. Store items subject to moisture damage in dry, heated spaces.

## 1.5 WARRANTY

### A. Manufacturer Warranty:

1. Provide certificates of warranty for each piece of equipment made out in favor of Owner.

### B. Special Warranty:

1. Guarantee plumbing systems to be free from noise in operation that may develop from failure to construct system in accordance with Contract Documents.
2. If plumbing sub-contractor with offices located more than 150 miles (240 km) from Project site is used, provide service / warranty work agreement for warranty period with local plumbing sub-contractor approved by Architect. Include copy of service / warranty agreement in warranty section of Operation And Maintenance Manual.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 COMPONENTS

- A. Components shall bear Manufacturer's name and trade name. Equipment and materials of same general type shall be of same make throughout work to provide uniform appearance, operation, and maintenance.
- B. Pipe And Pipe Fittings:
  1. Weld-O-Let and Screw-O-Let fittings are acceptable.
- C. Sleeves:
  1. General:
    - a. Two sizes larger than bare pipe or insulation on insulated pipe.
  2. In Concrete And Masonry:
    - a. Sleeves through outside walls, interior shear walls, and footings shall be schedule 80 black steel pipe with welded plate.
  3. In Framing And Suspended Floor Slabs:
    - a. Standard weight galvanized iron pipe, Schedule 40 PVC, or 14 ga (2 mm) galvanized sheet metal.
- D. Valves:
  1. Valves of same type shall be of same manufacturer.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 INSTALLERS

- A. Acceptable Installers. See Section 01 4301:
  1. Meet Quality Assurance Installer Qualifications as specified in Part 1 of this specification.

### 3.2 EXAMINATION

- A. Drawings:
  1. Plumbing Drawings show general arrangement of piping, equipment, etc. Follow as closely as actual building construction and work of other trades will permit.

2. Consider Architectural and Structural Drawings part of this work insofar as these drawings furnish information relating to design and construction of building. These drawings take precedence over Plumbing Drawings.
3. Because of small scale of Drawings, it is not possible to indicate all offsets, fittings, and accessories that may be required. Investigate structural and finish conditions affecting this work and arrange work accordingly, providing such fittings, valves, and accessories required to meet conditions.

B. Verification Of Conditions:

1. Examine premises to understand conditions that may affect performance of work of this Division before submitting proposals for this work. Examine adjoining work on which plumbing work is dependent for efficiency and report work that requires correction.
2. Ensure that items to be furnished fit space available. Make necessary field measurements to ascertain space requirements including those for connections and furnish and install equipment of size and shape so final installation shall suit true intent and meaning of Contract Documents. If approval is received by Addendum or Change Order to use other than originally specified items, be responsible for specified capacities and for ensuring that items to be furnished will fit space available.
3. Check that slots and openings provided under other Divisions through floors, walls, ceilings, and roofs are properly located. Perform cutting and patching caused by neglecting to coordinate with Divisions providing slots and openings at no additional cost to Owner.
4. No subsequent allowance for time or money will be considered for any consequence related to failure to examine site conditions.

### 3.3 PREPARATION

A. Changes Due To Equipment Selection:

1. Where equipment specified or otherwise approved requires different arrangement or connections from that shown in Contract Documents, submit drawings showing proposed installations.
2. If proposed changes are approved, install equipment to operate properly and in harmony with intent of Contract Documents. Make incidental changes in piping, ductwork, supports, installation, wiring, heaters, panelboards, and as otherwise necessary.
3. Provide additional motors, valves, controllers, fittings, and other equipment required for proper operation of systems resulting from selection of equipment.
4. Be responsible for proper location of rough-in and connections provided under other Divisions.

### 3.4 INSTALLATION

A. Interface With Other Work:

1. Furnish exact location of electrical connections and complete information on motor controls to installer of electrical system.
2. Furnish sleeves, inserts, supports, and equipment that are to be installed by others in sufficient time to be incorporated into construction as work proceeds. Locate these items and confirm that they are properly installed.

B. Cut carefully to minimize necessity for repairs to previously installed or existing work. Do not cut beams, columns, or trusses.

C. Locating Equipment:

1. Arrange pipes and equipment to permit ready access to valves, cocks, unions, traps, and to clear openings of doors and access panels.
2. Adjust locations of pipes, equipment, and fixtures to accommodate work to interferences anticipated and encountered.
3. Install plumbing work to permit removal of equipment and parts of equipment requiring periodic replacement or maintenance without damage to or interference with other parts of equipment or structure.
4. Determine exact route and location of each pipe before fabrication.

- a. Right-Of-Way:
    - 1) Lines that pitch shall have right-of-way over those that do not pitch. For example, plumbing drains shall normally have right-of-way.
    - 2) Lines whose elevations cannot be changed shall have right-of-way over lines whose elevations can be changed.
  - b. Offsets, Transitions, and Changes in Direction:
    - 1) Make offsets, transitions, and changes in direction in pipes as required to maintain proper head room and pitch of sloping lines whether or not indicated on Drawings.
    - 2) Furnish and install all traps, air vents, sanitary vents, and devices as required to effect these offsets, transitions, and changes in direction.
- D. Penetration Firestops:
1. Install Penetration Firestop System appropriate for penetration at plumbing systems penetrations through walls, ceilings, roofs, and top plates of walls.
- E. Sealants:
1. Seal openings through building exterior caused by penetrations of elements of plumbing systems.
  2. Furnish and install acoustical sealant to seal penetrations through acoustically insulated walls and ceilings.
- F. Furnish and install complete system of piping, valved as indicated or as necessary to completely control entire apparatus:
1. Pipe drawings are diagrammatic and indicate general location and connections. Piping may have to be offset, lowered, or raised as required or directed at site. This does not relieve this Division from responsibility for proper installation of plumbing systems.
  2. Arrange piping to not interfere with removal of other equipment, ducts, or devices, or block access to doors, windows, or access openings:
    - a. Arrange so as to facilitate removal of tube bundles.
    - b. Provide accessible flanges or ground joint unions, as applicable for type of piping specified, at connections to equipment and on bypasses.
      - 1) Make connections of dissimilar metals with di-electric unions.
      - 2) Install valves and unions ahead of traps and strainers. Provide unions on both sides of traps.
    - c. Do not use reducing bushings, bull head tees, close nipples, or running couplings. Street elbows are allowed only on potable water pipe **3/4 inch (19 mm)** in diameter and smaller.
    - d. Install piping systems so they may be easily drained
    - e. Install piping to insure noiseless circulation.
    - f. Place valves and specialties to permit easy operation and access. Valves shall be regulated, packed, and glands adjusted at completion of work before final acceptance.
  3. Do not install piping in shear walls.
  4. Cut piping accurately to measurements established at site. Remove burr and cutting slag from pipes.
  5. Work piping into place without springing or forcing. Make piping connections to pumps and other equipment without strain at piping connection. Remove bolts in flanged connections or disconnect piping to demonstrate that piping has been so connected, if requested.
  6. Make changes in direction with proper fittings.
  7. Expansion of Thermoplastic Pipe:
    - a. Provide for expansion in every **30 feet (9 meters)** of straight run.
    - b. Provide **12 inch (300 mm)** offset below roof line in each vent line penetrating roof.
  8. Expansion of PEX Pipe: Allow for expansion and contraction of PEX pipe as recommended by Pipe Manufacturer.
- G. Sleeves:
1. Do not place sleeves around soil, waste, vent, or roof drain lines passing through concrete slabs on grade.
  2. Provide sleeves around pipes passing through concrete or masonry floors, walls, partitions, or structural members. Seal sleeves with specified sealants. Follow Pipe Manufacturer's recommendations for PEX pipe penetrations through studs and floor slabs.
  3. Sleeves through floors shall extend **1/4 inch (6 mm)** above floor finish in mechanical equipment rooms above basement floor. In other rooms, sleeves shall be flush with floor.

4. Sleeves through floors and foundation walls shall be watertight.

H. Escutcheons:

1. Provide spring clamp plates where pipes run through walls, floors, or ceilings and are exposed in finished locations of building. Plates shall be chrome plated heavy brass of plain pattern and shall be set tight on pipe and to building surface.

### 3.5 REPAIR / RESTORATION

- A. Each Section of this Division shall bear expense of cutting, patching, repairing, and replacing of work of other Sections required because of its fault, error, tardiness, or because of damage done by it:
1. Patch and repair walls, floors, ceilings, and roofs with materials of same quality and appearance as adjacent surfaces unless otherwise shown.
  2. Surface finishes shall exactly match existing finishes of same materials.

### 3.6 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Field Tests:

1. Perform tests on plumbing piping systems. Furnish devices required for testing purposes.

B. Non-Conforming Work:

1. Replace material or workmanship proven defective with sound material at no additional cost to Owner.
2. Repeat tests on new material, if requested.

### 3.7 CLEANING

A. Remove dirt, grease, and other foreign matter from each length of piping before installation:

1. After each section of piping used for movement of water or steam is installed, flush with clean water, except where specified otherwise.
2. Arrange temporary flushing connections for each section of piping and arrange for flushing total piping system.
3. Provide temporary cross connections and water supply for flushing and drainage and remove after completion of work.

- B. Clean exposed piping, equipment, and fixtures. Remove stickers from fixtures and adjust flush valves.

### 3.8 CLOSEOUT ACTIVITIES

A. Instruction of Owner:

1. Instruct building maintenance personnel and Stake Physical Facilities Representative in operation and maintenance of plumbing systems utilizing Operation And Maintenance Manual when so doing.
2. Conduct instruction period after Substantial Completion inspection when systems are properly working and before final payment is made.

### 3.9 PROTECTION

- A. Protect piping systems from entry of foreign materials by temporary covers, completing sections of the work, and isolating parts of completed system. Cap or plug open ends of pipes and equipment to keep dirt and other foreign materials out of system. Do not use plugs of rags, wool, cotton waste, or similar materials.

**END OF SECTION**

**SECTION 22 0529****HANGERS AND SUPPORTS FOR PLUMBING PIPING AND EQUIPMENT****PART 1 - GENERAL****1.1 SUMMARY**

- A. Includes But Not Limited To:
  - 1. Common hanger and support requirements and procedures for plumbing systems.
- B. Products Installed But Not Furnished Under This Section:
  - 1. Paint identification for gas piping used in HVAC equipment.
- C. Related Requirements:
  - 1. Section 05 0523: 'Metal Fastening' for quality and requirements for welding.
  - 2. Section 07 8400: 'Firestopping' for quality of Penetration Firestop Systems to be used on Project and submittal requirements.
  - 3. Sections Under 09 9000 Heading: Painting of mechanical items requiring field painting.
  - 4. Slots and openings through floors, walls, ceilings, and roofs provided under other Divisions in their respective materials.
  - 5. Section 23 0529: 'Hangers And Supports For HVAC Piping And Equipment' for gas piping used with HVAC equipment.
  - 6. Section 23 0553: 'Identification For HVAC Piping And Equipment' for paint identification of gas piping used with HVAC equipment.

**1.2 SUBMITTALS**

- A. Action Submittals:
  - 1. Product Data:
    - a. Manufacturer's catalog data for each manufactured item.

**PART 2 - PRODUCTS****2.1 ASSEMBLIES**

- A. Manufacturers:
  - 1. Manufacturer Contact List:
    - a. Anvil International, Portsmouth, NH [www.anvilintl.com](http://www.anvilintl.com).
    - b. Cooper B-Line, Highland, IL [www.b-line.com](http://www.b-line.com).
    - c. Unistrut, Wayne, MI [www.tyco-unistrut.com](http://www.tyco-unistrut.com).
- B. Materials:
  - 1. Hangers, Rods, And Inserts
    - a. Galvanized and UL approved for service intended.
    - b. Support horizontal piping from hangers or on roller assemblies with channel supports, except where trapeze type hangers are explicitly shown on Drawings. Hangers shall have double nuts.
      - 1) Support insulated pipes **2 inches (50 mm)** in diameter and smaller with adjustable swivel ring hanger with insulation protection shield. Gauge and length of shield shall be in accordance with Anvil design data.
        - a) Type Two Acceptable Products:
          - (1) Swivel Ring Hanger: Anvil Fig. 69.
          - (2) Insulation Protection Shield: Anvil Fig. 167.

- (3) Equals by Cooper B-Line.
- 2) Support insulated pipes **2-1/2 inches (64 mm)** in diameter and larger with clevis hanger or roller assembly with an insulation protection shield. Gauge and length of shield shall be according to Anvil design data.
  - a) Type Two Acceptable Products:
    - (1) Clevis Hanger: Anvil Fig. 260.
    - (2) Roller Assembly: Anvil Fig. 171.
    - (3) Insulation Protection Shield: Anvil Fig. 167.
    - (4) Equals by Cooper B-Line.
- 3) Support uninsulated copper pipe **2 inches (50 mm)** in diameter and smaller from swivel ring hanger, copper plated and otherwise fully suitable for use with copper tubing. Support non-copper uninsulated pipes from swivel ring hanger.
  - a) Type Two Acceptable Products:
    - (1) Swivel Ring Hanger For Copper Pipe: Anvil Fig. CT-69.
    - (2) Swivel Ring Hanger For Other Pipe: Anvil Fig. 69.
    - (3) Equals by Cooper B-Line.
- 4) Support uninsulated copper pipe **2-1/2 inches (64 mm)** in diameter and larger from clevis hanger, copper plated hangers and otherwise fully suitable for use with copper tubing. Support non-copper uninsulated pipes from clevis hanger.
  - a) Type Two Acceptable Products:
    - (1) Clevis Hanger For Copper Pipe: Anvil Fig. CT-65.
    - (2) Clevis Hanger For Other Pipe: Anvil Fig. 260.
    - (3) Equals by Cooper B-Line.
- c. Support rods for single pipe shall be in accordance with following table:

Rod Diameter	Pipe Size	Rod Diameter	Pipe Size
3/8 inch	2 inches and smaller	10 mm	50 mm and smaller
1/2 inch	2-1/2 to 3-1/2 inches	13 mm	64 mm to 88 mm
5/8 inch	4 to 5 inches	16 mm	100 mm to 125 mm
3/4 inch	6 inches	19 mm	150 mm
7/8 inch	8 to 12 inches	22 mm	200 mm to 300 mm

- d. Support rods for multiple pipe supported on steel angle trapeze hangers shall be in accordance with following table:

Rods		Number of Pipes per Hanger for Each Pipe Size						
Number	Diameter	2 Inch	2.5 Inch	3 Inch	4 Inch	5 Inch	6 Inch	8 Inch
2	3/8 Inch	Two	0	0	0	0	0	0
2	1/2 Inch	Three	Three	Two	0	0	0	0
2	5/8 Inch	Six	Four	Three	Two	0	0	0
2	5/8 Inch	Nine	Seven	Five	Three	Two	Two	0
2	5/8 Inch	Twelve	Nine	Seven	Five	Three	Two	Two

Rods		Number of Pipes per Hanger for Each Pipe Size						
Number	Diameter	50mm	64mm	75mm	100mm	125mm	150mm	200mm
2	10 mm	Two	0	0	0	0	0	0
2	13 mm	Three	Three	Two	0	0	0	0
2	16 mm	Six	Four	Three	Two	0	0	0
2	19 mm	Nine	Seven	Five	Three	Two	Two	0
2	22 mm	Twelve	Nine	Seven	Five	Three	Two	Two

- 1) Size trapeze angles so bending stress is less than **10,000 psi (69 MPa)**.
- e. Riser Clamps For Vertical Piping:
  - 1) Type Two Acceptable Products:
    - a) Anvil Fig. 261.
    - b) Equals by Cooper B-Line.
- f. Concrete Inserts:
  - 1) Individual Inserts:

- a) Suitable for special nuts size **3/8 inch (9.5 mm)** through **7/8 inch (22 mm)** with yoke to receive concrete reinforcing rods, and with malleable iron lugs for attaching to forms.
- b) Type Two Acceptable Products:
  - (1) Anvil Fig. 282.
  - (2) Equals by Cooper B-Line.
- 2) Continuous Inserts:
  - a) Class Two Quality Standard: Equal to Unistrut P-3200 series.
- g. Steel Deck Bracket:
  - 1) Class Two Quality Standard: Equal to Unistrut P1000 with clamp nut, minimum **6 inch (150 mm)** length.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 INSTALLATION

- A. Piping:
  - 1. Properly support piping and make adequate provisions for expansion, contraction, slope, and anchorage.
    - a. Except for underground pipe, suspend piping from roof trusses or clamp to vertical walls using Unistrut and clamps. Do not hang pipe from other pipe, equipment, or ductwork. Laying of piping on any building element is not allowed.
    - b. Supports For Horizontal Piping:
      - 1) Support metal piping at **96 inches (2 400 mm)** on center maximum for pipe **1-1/4 inches (32 mm)** or larger and **72 inches (1 800 mm)** on center maximum for pipe **1-1/8 inch (29 mm)** or less.
      - 2) Support thermoplastic pipe at **48 inches (1 200 mm)** on center maximum.
      - 3) Support PEX pipe at **32 inches (800 mm)** minimum on center.
      - 4) Provide support at each elbow. Install additional support as required.
    - c. Supports for Vertical Piping:
      - 1) Place riser clamps at each floor or ceiling level.
      - 2) Securely support clamps by structural members, which in turn are supported directly from building structure.
      - 3) Provide clamps as necessary to brace pipe to wall.
    - d. Insulate hangers for copper pipe from piping by means of at least two layers of Scotch 33 plastic tape.
  - 2. Gas piping Identification:
    - a. Apply paint identification for gas piping used with HVAC equipment as specified in Section 23 0553.

**END OF SECTION**



**SECTION 22 0548****VIBRATION AND SEISMIC CONTROL FOR PLUMBING PIPING AND EQUIPMENT****PART 1 - GENERAL****1.1 SUMMARY**

- A. Includes But Not Limited To:
  - 1. Quality of and requirements for anchorage and seismic restraint systems and vibration isolation systems for plumbing piping and equipment.
- B. Related Requirements:
  - 1. Section 03 3053: 'Miscellaneous Exterior Cast-In-Place Concrete'.
  - 2. Section 22 3423: 'Gas Domestic Water Heaters'.
  - 3. Furnishing and installing of seismic restraint and vibration isolation systems is by installer of equipment requiring such systems.
    - a. Manufacturers of equipment specified to receive seismic restraint shall provide product data needed for calculation of seismic restraint needs. This information shall include, but not be limited to, equipment dimensions, dimensioned anchor points, operating weight, and center of gravity dimension.

**1.2 REFERENCES**

- A. Association Publications:
  - 1. Federal Emergency Management Agency (FEMA) / Vibration Isolation and Seismic Control Manufacturers Association (VISCMA) / American Society of Civil Engineers (ASCE):
    - a. FEMA 412, 'Installing Seismic Restraints For Mechanical Equipment' (December 2002).
  - 2. Vibration Isolation and Seismic Control Manufacturers Association (VISCMA):
    - a. VISCMA 101-12, 'Seismic Restraint Specification Guidelines for Mechanical, Electrical, and Plumbing Systems'.
    - b. VISCMA 102-12, 'Vibration Isolation Specification Guidelines for Mechanical, Electrical, and Plumbing Systems'.
- B. Definitions:
  - 1. Vibration Isolation: Vibration reduction in which an isolation system is placed between the source of unwanted vibration and an item which needs to be shielded from the vibration.
- C. Reference Standards:
  - 1. American National Standards Institute / Sheet Metal And Air Conditioning Contractors' National Association:
    - a. ANSI/SMACNA 001-2008, 'Seismic Restraint Manual: Guidelines For Mechanical Systems' (3rd Edition).
  - 2. American Society of Civil Engineers / Structural Engineering Institute:
    - a. ASCE/SEI 7-16, 'Minimum Design Loads for Buildings and Other Structures'.
      - 1) Chapter 13, 'Seismic Design Requirements For Nonstructural Components'.
  - 3. American Society of Heating, Refrigerating and Air-Conditioning Engineers (ASHRAE):
    - a. 2015 ASHRAE Handbook - HVAC Applications.
      - 1) Chapter 48, 'Noise and Vibration Control'.
      - 2) Chapter 55, 'Seismic- and Wind-Resistant Design'.
  - 4. ASTM International:
    - a. ASTM A615/A615M-18, 'Standard Specification for Deformed & Plain Billet-Steel Bars for Concrete Reinforcement'.

### 1.3 SUBMITTALS

- A. Action Submittals:
1. Product Data:
    - a. Restraint system and anchorage method to be used for each piece of equipment.
    - b. Seismic restraints and calculations for all flexible mounted equipment.
    - c. Vibration isolators and flexible couplings.
    - d. Clearly outlined procedures for installing and adjusting isolators, seismic bracing anchors, and snubbers.
  2. Shop Drawings:
    - a. Show size, hanger length, and location of seismic restraints for piping and ductwork.
    - b. Show details for each isolator and seismic brace with snubbers proposed for specified equipment.
    - c. Show details for proposed structural steel frames and rails and for anchors to be used in conjunction with isolation of equipment.
    - d. Show locations of piping and ductwork restraints on installation and fabrication floor plans (not bid set of documents of floor plans), noting size and type of restraint to be used.
    - e. Show details of supports, hangers, anchorage, and bracing for isolated equipment as designed or proposed by professional engineer employed by Restraint Manufacturer and qualified with seismic experience in bracing for mechanical equipment. Shop drawings submitted for seismic bracing and anchors shall bear engineer's signed professional seal.
    - f. Include anchor bolt calculations, signed and stamped by registered engineer, showing adequacy of bolt sizing and type.
      - 1) Calculations shall include anchor embedment, minimum edge distance and minimum center distance.
      - 2) Design lateral forces shall be distributed in proportion to mass distribution of equipment.
      - 3) Furnish calculations for anchors on restraint devices, cable, isolators, and on rigidly mounted equipment.

### 1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Regulatory Agency Sustainability Approvals:
1. System design and installation shall meet seismic requirements as defined in ASCE/SEI 7-10, 'Minimum Design Loads for Buildings and Other Structures' and applicable state and local codes in accordance with minimum restraint capability of 1.0 g.
  2. All products must be California certified/approved and labeled:

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 SYSTEMS

- A. Manufacturers:
1. Type One Acceptable Manufacturers:
    - a. Amber / Booth Company, Houston, TX [www.amberbooth.com](http://www.amberbooth.com).
    - b. Mason Industries Inc, Hauppauge, NY [www.mason-ind.com](http://www.mason-ind.com).
    - c. Vibration Mountings and Control Inc, Bloomington, NJ (201) 838-1780.
    - d. Equal as approved by Architect before bidding. See Section 01 6200.
- B. Performance:
1. Design Criteria:
    - a. Seismic Requirements: Mechanical equipment, piping, and ductwork shall be braced, snubbed, or supported to withstand seismic disturbances and remain operational.
    - b. Vibration Isolation Requirements: Isolate equipment from structure by means of resilient vibration and noise isolators.
- C. Materials:

1. Isolation And Seismic Equipment:
  - a. Piping:
    - 1) Restrain piping in accordance with ANSI/SMACNA 001 Seismic Restraint Manual, Chapter 4, Figures 4.11 to 4.19.
  - b. Equipment with Fixed Anchor or Support:
    - 1) Restraint designed according to ASCE/SEI 7-10, Chapter 13, 'Seismic Design Requirements For Nonstructural Components'.
    - 2) Horizontal force factor for elements of structures:
      - a) In addition, vertical force restraint requirement shall be computed at 1/2 value of horizontal forces.
      - b) Restrain equipment not anchored directly to floors by cable system designed and furnished by Restraint Manufacturer.
2. Vibration Isolation Requirements:
  - a. Unless otherwise noted, isolate plumbing equipment one horsepower and over from structure by means of resilient vibration and noise isolators in accordance with ASHRAE 'Handbook - HVAC Applications', Chapter 48, Table 47, 'Selection Guide for Vibration Isolation'.
  - b. Design and install isolation equipment, hangers, connections, and other isolating devices to prevent transmission of vibration to structure from equipment and associated piping and ductwork.
  - c. For floor-mounted equipment, use recommendations of Chapter 48, Table 47, 'Selection Guide for Vibration Isolation'.
  - d. For roofs and floors constructed with open web joints, thin long span slabs, wooden construction and unusual light weight construction, evaluate equipment weighing more than **300 lbs (136 kg)** to determine additional deflection of structure caused by equipment weight. Isolator deflection shall be 15 times additional deflection or deflection shown in Chapter 48, Table 47, 'Selection Guide for Vibration Isolation', whichever is greater.
  - e. Under-Equipment Spring Isolators:
    - 1) Equal to Mason SSLFH earthquake motion restrained spring mounts with freestanding stable steel springs, leveling bolts, corrosion resistant finish, motion limiting design, uplift restraining bolts, and **1/4 inch (6 mm)** ribbed neoprene noise stop pad.
    - 2) Isolators shall accept force in any direction up to 1.0 g without failure, and shall limit movement to **3/4 inch (19 mm)** in any direction.
    - 3) Springs shall have 50 percent overload capacity.
    - 4) Size as required to achieve specified static deflection.
    - 5) Outer diameter of spring proper shall not be less than **0.08 inch (2.032 mm)** of spring height when in loaded position.
  - f. Overhead Support Spring And Rubber Hangers:
    - 1) Combination spring and neoprene hangers.
    - 2) Hanger bracket shall have 500 percent overload capability and shall allow up to 15 degree hanger rod misalignment without short-circuiting.
    - 3) Springs shall have 50 percent overload capacity.
    - 4) Provide seismic bracing as required.
  - g. Isolate piping and ductwork in mechanical equipment room and piping and ductwork three supports away or **50 feet (15 meters)** from other mechanical equipment, whichever is greater, from structure by means of vibration and noise isolators:
    - 1) Isolate suspended piping with combination spring and fiberglass hangers in supporting rods.
    - 2) Support floor-mounted piping directly on spring mounts.
  - h. Isolate vertical pipe risers from structure using vibration and noise isolating expansion hangers having minimum rated deflection of four times anticipated pipe movement. Enclose in housing for fail-safe equipment.
  - i. Incorporate flexible connectors in piping adjacent to reciprocating equipment.
  - j. Incorporate flexible connections in ductwork adjacent to air-moving units.
  - k. Elastomeric Isolator: Neoprene or high quality synthetic rubber with anti-ozone and anti-oxidant additives.
  - l. Nuts, Bolts, And Washers: Electroplated zinc.
  - m. Isolators Exposed To Weather: Cadmium plated and neoprene coated springs.
3. Seismic restraint equipment and resilient isolation devices shall be designed and furnished by single Manufacturer.

- D. Finishes:
  - 1. Clean and paint steel components:
    - a. Thoroughly clean structural steel bases of welding slag and prime with zinc-chromate or metal etching primer.
    - b. Etch and paint hot dipped galvanized steel components.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 INSTALLATION

- A. Isolation Equipment:
  - 1. Mount vibration isolated equipment on rigid steel frames or concrete bases unless Equipment Manufacturer certifies direct attachment capability.
  - 2. Install snubbers with factory set clearances.
  - 3. Piping:
    - a. Protect isolated and non-isolated piping **2-1/2 inches (64 mm)** inside diameter and larger in all planes by restraints to accommodate thermal movement as well as restrain seismic motions.
    - b. Locations shall be as scheduled and include, but not be limited to:
      - 1) At drops to equipment and at flexible connections.
      - 2) At 45 degree or greater changes in direction of pipe.
      - 3) At horizontal runs of pipe **30 feet (9.15 m)** maximum on center spacing.
      - 4) Gas piping shall have additional restraints as scheduled.
  - 4. Ductwork:
    - a. Protect isolated and non-isolated rectangular ductwork **4 sq ft (0.372 sq m)** in cross-sectional area and larger in all planes by restraints to accommodate thermal movement as well as restrain seismic motion.
    - b. Locations shall be determined by Seismic Restraint Manufacturer and include, but not be limited to:
      - 1) Horizontal runs of ductwork **30 feet (9.15 m)** maximum on center spacing.
      - 2) 45 degree or greater changes in direction of ductwork.
      - 3) Each end of duct runs and drops of equipment.
      - 4) Each flexible connection.
- B. Vibration Isolation:
  - 1. Install piping and ductwork to prevent transmission of noise and vibration into structure.

**END OF SECTION**

**SECTION 22 0719****PLUMBING PIPING INSULATION****PART 1 - GENERAL****1.1 SUMMARY**

- A. Includes But Not Limited To:
1. Furnish and install insulation on hot and cold water lines, fittings, valves, and accessories as described in Contract Documents.
  2. Furnish and install insulation on roof drain piping as described in Contract Documents.
- B. Related Requirements:
1. Section 22 1116: 'Domestic Water Piping'.

**PART 2 - PRODUCTS****2.1 COMPONENTS**

- A. Manufacturers:
1. Manufacturer Contact List:
    - a. Armacell, Mebane, NC [www.armacell.com](http://www.armacell.com).
    - b. Childers Products Co, Eastlake, OH [www.fosterproducts.com](http://www.fosterproducts.com).
    - c. IMCOA, Youngsville, NC [www.nomacokflex.com](http://www.nomacokflex.com).
    - d. Johns-Manville, Denver, CO [www.jm.com](http://www.jm.com).
    - e. Knauf, Shelbyville, IN [www.knauffiberglass.com](http://www.knauffiberglass.com).
    - f. Manson, Brossard, PQ, Canada [www.isolationmanson.com](http://www.isolationmanson.com).
    - g. Nomaco Inc, Yopungsville, NC [www.nomacokflex.com](http://www.nomacokflex.com).
    - h. Owens-Corning, Toledo, OH [www.owenscorning.com](http://www.owenscorning.com).
    - i. Speedline Corp, Solon, OH [www.speedlinepvc.com](http://www.speedlinepvc.com).
- B. Materials:
1. Above Grade Metal Piping:
    - a. Insulation For Piping:
      - 1) Snap-on glass fiber or melamine foam pipe insulation, or heavy density pipe insulation with factory vapor jacket.
      - 2) Insulation Thickness:

Service Water Temperature	Pipe Sizes		
	Up to 1-1/4 In	1-1/2 to 2 In	Over 2 In
170 - 180 Deg F	One In	1-1/2 In	2 In
140 - 160 Deg F	1/2 In	One In	1-1/2 In
45 - 130 Deg F	1/2 In	1/2 In	One In

Service Water Temperature	Pipe Sizes		
	Up to 32 mm	38 to 50 mm	Over 50 mm
77 - 82 Deg C	25 mm	38 mm	50 mm
60 - 71 Deg C	13 mm	25 mm	38 mm
7 - 54 Deg C	13 mm	13 mm	25 mm

- 3) Performance Standards: Fiberglas ASJ by Owens-Corning.
- 4) Type One Acceptable Manufacturers:
  - a) Childers Products.

- b) Knauf.
- c) Manson.
- d) Owens-Corning.
- e) Johns-Manville.
- f) Equal as approved by Architect before bidding. See Section 01 6200.
- b. Fitting, Valve, And Accessory Covers:
  - 1) PVC.
  - 2) Performance Standard: Zeston by Johns-Manville.
  - 3) Type One Acceptable Manufacturers:
    - a) Knauf.
    - b) Speedline.
    - c) Johns-Manville.
    - d) Equal as approved by Architect before bidding. See Section 01 6200.
- 2. Below Grade Metal Piping:
  - a. Insulation:
    - 1) **1/2 inch (13 mm)** thick.
    - 2) Category Four Acceptable Products. See Section 01 6200 for definition of Categories:
      - a) SS Tubolit by Armacell.
      - b) ImcoLock by Imcoa.
      - c) Nomalock or Therma-Cel by Nomaco.
  - b. Joint Sealant:
    - 1) Category Four Acceptable Products. See Section 01 6200 for definition of Categories:
      - a) Armacell 520.
      - b) Nomaco K-Flex R-373.
- 3. Pex Piping, Above And Below Grade:
  - a. Insulation:
    - 1) **1/2 inch (13 mm)** thick.
    - 2) Category Four Acceptable Products. See Section 01 6200 for definition of Categories:
      - a) SS Tubolit by Armacell.
      - b) ImcoLock by Imcoa.
      - c) Nomalock or Therma-Cel by Nomaco.
  - b. Joint Sealant:
    - 1) Category Four Acceptable Products. See Section 01 6200 for definition of Categories:
      - a) Armacell 520.
      - b) Nomaco K-Flex R-373.
      - c)
- 4. PP-R Piping, Above And Below Grade:
  - a. Insulation:
    - 1) **1/2 inch (13 mm)** thick.
    - 2) Category Four Acceptable Products. See Section 01 6200 for definition of Categories:
      - a) SS Tubolit by Armacell.
      - b) ImcoLock by Imcoa.
      - c) Nomalock or Therma-Cel by Nomaco.
  - b. Joint Sealant:
    - 1) Category Four Acceptable Products. See Section 01 6200 for definition of Categories:
      - a) Armacell 520.
      - b) Nomaco K-Flex R-373.
      - c)
- 5. PVC or ABS Piping, Above And Below Grade - Facility Storm Drain:
  - a. Insulation:
    - 1) **1/2 inch (13 mm)** thick.
    - 2) Category Four Acceptable Products. See Section 01 6200 for definition of Categories:
      - a) SS Tubolit by Armacell.
      - b) ImcoLock by Imcoa.
      - c) Nomalock or Therma-Cel by Nomaco.
  - b. Joint Sealant:
    - 1) Category Four Acceptable Products. See Section 01 6200 for definition of Categories:
      - a) Armacell 520.
      - b) Nomaco K-Flex R-373.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 APPLICATION

- A. Above Grade Piping:
1. Apply insulation to clean, dry piping with joints tightly butted.
  2. Install insulation in manner to facilitate removal for repairs. Place sections or blocks so least possible damage to insulation will result from inspection or repairs of piping or equipment.
  3. Piping up to **1-1/4 inch (32 mm)** Diameter:
    - a. Adhere 'factory applied vapor barrier jacket lap' smoothly and securely at longitudinal laps with white vapor barrier adhesive.
    - b. Adhere **3 inch (76 mm)** wide self-sealing butt joint strips over end joints.
  4. Piping **1-1/2 inches (38 mm)** Diameter And Larger:
    - a. Use broken-joint construction in application of two-layer covering.
    - b. Fill cracks and depressions with insulating cement mixed to thick plastic paste.
      - 1) Apply by hand in several layers to make up total specified thickness.
      - 2) Final layer shall have smooth uniform finish before application of covering.
  5. Fittings, Valves, And Accessories:
    - a. Do not apply insulation over flanged joints or victaulic couplings until piping has been brought up to operating temperature and flange bolts have been fully tightened. Insulate valves so wheel, stem, and packing nut are exposed.
    - b. Insulate with same type and thickness of insulation as pipe, with ends of insulation tucked snugly into throat of fitting and edges adjacent to pipe insulation tufted and tucked in.
    - c. Piping Up To **1-1/4 Inch (32 mm)** Diameter:
      - 1) Cover insulation with one piece fitting cover secured by stapling or taping ends to adjacent pipe covering.
      - 2) Alternate Method:
        - a) Insulate fittings, valves, and accessories with one inch of insulating cement and vapor seal with two **1/8 inch (3 mm)** wet coats of vapor barrier mastic reinforced with glass fabric extending **2 inches (50 mm)** onto adjacent insulation.
    - d. Piping **1-1/2 inches (38 mm)** To **2 Inches (50 mm)**:
      - 1) Insulate with hydraulic setting insulating cement or equal, to thickness equal to adjoining pipe insulation.
      - 2) Apply final coat of fitting mastic over insulating cement.
    - e. Piping **2-1/2 inch (64 mm)** And Larger:
      - 1) Insulate with segments of molded insulation securely wired in place and coated with skim coat of insulating cement.
      - 2) Apply fitting mastic, fitting tape and finish with final coat of fitting mastic.
  6. Pipe Hangers:
    - a. Do not allow pipes to come in contact with hangers.
    - b. Pipe Shield:
      - 1) Provide schedule 40 PVC by **6 inch (150 mm)** long at each clevis and/or unistrut type hanger.
      - 2) Provide **16 ga (1.64 mm)** by **6 inch (150 mm)** long galvanized shields at each pipe hanger to protect pipe insulation from crushing by clevis hanger.
      - 3) Provide **22 ga (0.85 mm)** by **6 inch (150 mm)** long galvanized shield at each pipe hanger to protect insulation from crushing by Unistrut type hanger.
    - c. At Pipe Hangers:
      - 1) Provide rigid calcium silicate insulation (**100 psi (690 kPA)** compressive strength) at least **2 inches (50 mm)** beyond shield.
  7. Protect insulation wherever leak from valve stem or other source might drip on insulated surface, with aluminum cover or shield rolled up at edges and sufficiently large in area and of shape that dripping will not splash on surrounding insulation.
- B. Below Grade Piping:
1. Slip underground pipe insulation onto pipe and seal butt joints.
  2. Where slip-on technique is not possible, slit insulation, apply to pipe, and seal seams and joints.

**END OF SECTION**



**SECTION 22 1116****DOMESTIC WATER PIPING****PART 1 - GENERAL****1.1 SUMMARY**

- A. Includes But Not Limited To:
1. Perform excavating and backfilling required by work of this Section.
  2. Furnish and install potable water piping complete with necessary valves, connections, and accessories inside building and connect with outside utility lines **5 feet (1 50 m)** from building perimeter as described in Contract Documents.
- B. Related Requirements:
1. Section 03 3111: 'Cast-In-Place Structural Concrete'.
    - a. Pre-installation conference held jointly with other concrete related sections.
  2. Section 22 0501: 'Common Piping Requirements'.
  3. Section 22 0719: 'Plumbing Piping Insulation'.
  4. Section 31 2316: 'Excavation' for criteria for performance of excavation.
  5. Section 31 2323: 'Fill' for criteria for performance of backfill.
  6. Section 33 1116: 'Site Water Utility Distribution Piping' for domestic water piping from **5 feet (1 50 m)** from building perimeter to main.

**1.2 REFERENCES**

- A. Reference Standards:
1. American National Standards Institute / American Society of Sanitary Engineers:
    - a. ANSI/ASSE 1003-2009, 'Performance Requirements for Water Pressure Reducing Valves for Domestic Water Distribution Systems'.
    - b. ANSI/ASSE 1017-2009, 'Performance Requirements for Temperature Actuated Mixing Valves for Hot Water Distribution Systems'.
    - c. ANSI/ASSE 1070-2015, 'Performance Requirements for Water Temperature Limiting Devices'.
  2. American Water Works Association:
    - a. AWWA C904-16, 'Cross-Linked Polyethylene (PEX) Pressure Pipe, 1/2 inch (12 mm) Through 3 inch (76 mm) for Water Service'.
  3. ASTM International:
    - a. ASTM B88-16, 'Standard Specification for Seamless Copper Water Tube'.
    - b. ASTM E84-18b, 'Standard Test Method for Surface Burning Characteristics of Building Materials'.
    - c. ASTM F876-17, 'Standard Specification for Crosslinked Polyethylene (PEX) Tubing'.
    - d. ASTM F877-18a, 'Standard Specification for Crosslinked Polyethylene (PEX) Hot- and Cold-Water Distribution Systems'.
    - e. ASTM F1807-18a, 'Standard Specification for Metal Insert Fittings Utilizing a Copper Crimp Ring for SDR9 Cross-linked Polyethylene (PEX) Tubing and SDR9 Polyethylene of Raised Temperature (PE-RT) Tubing'.
    - f. ASTM F2023-15, 'Standard Test Method for Evaluating the Oxidative Resistance of Crosslinked Polyethylene (PEX) Tubing and Systems to Hot Chlorinated Water'.
    - g. ASTM F2389-17a, 'Standard Specification for Pressure-rated Polypropylene (PP) Piping Systems'.
  4. NSF International Standard:
    - a. NSF P171, 'Protocol for Chlorine Resistance of Plastic Piping Materials' (1999).
  5. NSF International Standard / American National Standards Institute:
    - a. NSF/ANSI 14-2018, 'Plastic Piping System Components and Related Materials'.

- b. NSF/ANSI 61-2017, 'Drinking Water System Components - Health Effects'.
- c. NSF/ANSI 372-2016, 'Drinking Water System Components - Lead Content'.

### 1.3 ADMINISTRATIVE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Qualifications:
  1. Manufacturer Qualifications:
    - a. PP-R pipe and PP-RCT pipe:
      - 1) Certified by NSF International.
  2. Installers Qualifications:
    - a. PP-R pipe and PP-RCT pipe:
      - 1) Certified by Manufacturer.
- B. Pre-Installation Conference:
  1. Participate in pre-installation conference as specified in Section 03 3111.

### 1.4 SUBMITTALS

- A. Action Submittals:
  1. Product Data:
    - a. Manufacturer's Literature:
      - 1) PEX pipe and PEX pipe fittings.
      - 2) PP-R pipe and PP-R pipe fittings.
      - 3) PP-RCT pipe and PP-RCT pipe fittings.
  2. Samples:
    - a. PEX pipe fitting.
- B. Informational Submittals:
  1. Test And Evaluation Reports:
    - a. Written report of sterilization test.

### 1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Regulatory Agency Sustainability Approvals:
  1. Meet NSF International Standards for materials or products that come into contact with drinking water, drinking water treatment chemicals, or both for chemical contaminants and impurities that are indirectly imparted to drinking water from products, components, and materials used in drinking water systems.
  2. California only: California Assembly Bill 1953 (AB1953) Compliant for Lead Free

### 1.6 WARRANTY

- A. Manufacturer Warranty:
  1. Manufacturer's Warranty covering property damage caused by defective product including renovation costs or replacement costs.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 SYSTEMS

- A. Manufacturers:
  1. Manufacturer Contact List:
    - a. Aquatherm, Inc., Lindon, UT [www.aquathermpipe.com](http://www.aquathermpipe.com).

- b. Acorn Controls, City of Industry, CA [www.acorneng.com](http://www.acorneng.com)
- c. Cash Acme, Cullman, AL [www.cashacme.com](http://www.cashacme.com)
- d. Chicago Faucets, Des Plaines, IL, [www.chicagofaucets.com](http://www.chicagofaucets.com).
- e. Cla-Val Company, Costa Mesa, CA or Cla-Val Canada Ltd, Beamsville, ON [www.cla-val.com](http://www.cla-val.com).
- f. Conbraco Industries Inc, Matthews, NC [www.conbraco.com](http://www.conbraco.com) or Conbraco (Honeywell Ltd), Scarborough, ON (416) 293-8111.
- g. Hammond Valve, New Berlin, WI [www.hammondvalve.com](http://www.hammondvalve.com).
- h. Handy & Harmon Products Div, Fairfield, CT [www.handyharmon.com](http://www.handyharmon.com) or Handy and Harmon of Canada Ltd, Rexdale, ON (800) 463-1465 or (416) 675-1860.
- i. Harris Products Group, Cincinnati, OH [www.harrisproductsgroup.com](http://www.harrisproductsgroup.com).
- j. Honeywell Inc, Minneapolis, MN [www.honeywell.com](http://www.honeywell.com).
- k. Milwaukee Valve Co, New Berlin, WI [www.milwaukeevalve.com](http://www.milwaukeevalve.com).
- l. Nibco Inc, Elkhart, IN [www.nibco.com](http://www.nibco.com).
- m. Nupi Americas, Early Branch, SC [www.nupiamericas.com](http://www.nupiamericas.com).
- n. Rehau, Leesburg, VA [www.rehau-na.com](http://www.rehau-na.com).
- o. Spence Engineering Co, Walden, NY [www.spenceengineering.com](http://www.spenceengineering.com).
- p. Symmons Industries, Braintree, MA [www.symmons.com](http://www.symmons.com).
- q. Uponor Inc, Apple Valley, MN [www.uponor-usa.com](http://www.uponor-usa.com).
- r. Viega ProPress, Wichita, KS [www.viega-na.com](http://www.viega-na.com).
- s. Watts Regulator Co, Andover, MA [www.wattsreg.com](http://www.wattsreg.com).
- t. Wilkins (Zurn Wilkins), Paso Robles, CA [www.zurn.com](http://www.zurn.com).
- u. Zurn PEX, Inc., Commerce, TX [www.zurnpex.com](http://www.zurnpex.com).

B. Materials:

1. Design Criteria:
  - a. All drinking water products, components, and materials above and below grade used in drinking water systems must meet NSF International Standards for Lead Free.
  - b. No CPVC allowed.
2. Pipe:
  - a. Copper:
    - 1) Above-Grade:
      - a) Meet requirements of ASTM B88, Type L.
    - 2) Below-Grade:
      - a) Meet requirements of ASTM B88, Type K. **3/4 inch (19 mm)** minimum under slabs.
      - b) **2 inches (50 mm)** And Smaller: Annealed soft drawn.
      - c) **2-1/2 inches (64 mm)** And Larger: Hard Drawn.
  - b. Cross-Linked Polyethylene (PEX):
    - 1) Certified with NSF International against NSF Standards NSF/ANSI 14, NSF/ANSI 61, NSF/ANSI 372, and NSF P171 Protocol.
    - 2) Copper tube size (CTS) outside dimensions and Standard Dimension Ratio (SDR) of 9.
    - 3) Pressure rated for **160 psi (1.10 MPa)** at **73 deg F (22.8 deg C)**, **100 psi (0.69 MPa)** at **180 deg F (82 deg C)**, and **80 psi (0.552 MPa)** at **200 deg F (93 deg C)**.
    - 4) Marked with Manufacturer's name, design pressure and temperature ratings, and third party certification stamp for NSF-PW.
    - 5) Manufactured by Engel or peroxide method (PEX-A) or by silane method (PEX-B).
    - 6) Category Four Approved Products. See Section 01 6200 for definitions of Categories:
      - a) `Raupex by Rehau.
      - b) Wirsbo Aquapex by Uponor.
      - c) ViegaPEX by Viega.
      - d) Zurn PEX by Zurn PEX.
  - c. Polypropylene-Random (PP-R):
    - 1) Above-Grade:
      - a) Meet requirements of ASTM F2389 and be certified by NSF International per ASTM F2389, NSF/ANSI 14, and NSF/ANSI 61.
      - b) Aquatherm: SDR 7.4 Greenpipe faser for domestic hot water and SDR 7.4 or SDR 11 greenpipe for domestic cold water. Aquatherm Lilac SDR 11 purple piping for recycled/reclaimed water systems.
      - c) Nupi Americas: Clima pipe for domestic Hot water SDR-7.3 or cold water SDR 11 Nupi Niron Monolayer purple pipe for recycled/ reclaimed water Systems.

- 2) Below-Grade:
  - a) Meet requirements of ASTM F2389 and be certified by NSF International per ASTM F2389, NSF/ANSI 14, and NSF/ANSI 61.
  - b) Aquatherm: SDR 7.4 Greenpipe faser for domestic hot water and SDR 7.4 or SDR 11 greenpipe for domestic cold water. Aquatherm Lilac SDR 11 purple piping for recycled/reclaimed water systems.
  - c) Nupi Americas: Clima pipe for domestic Hot water SDR-7.3 or cold water SDR 11 Nupi Niron Monolayer purple pipe for recycled/ reclaimed water Systems.
- 3) Category Four Approved Products. See Section 01 6200 for definitions of Categories:
  - a) Aquatherm Greenpipe, Greenpipe faser, and Lilac by Aquatherm.
  - b) Nupi Americas Clima pipe, and Nupi Niron.
3. Fittings:
  - a. For Copper Pipe: Wrought copper.
  - b. For PEX Pipe:
    - 1) Category Four Approved Products. See Section 01 6200 for definitions of Categories:
      - a) Everloc by Rehau.
      - b) Viega PEX Press Zero Lead Fittings with attached stainless steel sleeves or Viega PEX Press Radel-R Polymer with attached stainless steel sleeves by Viega.
      - c) ProPEX fittings by Uponor including EP flow-through multiport tees.
      - d) Zurn PEX XL, DZR and CR fittings.
  - c. For PP-R Pipe:
    - 1) Category Four Approved Products. See Section 01 6200 for definitions of Categories:
      - a) Greenpipe by Aquatherm.
      - b) Niron Clima by Nupi Americas.
4. Connections For Copper Pipe:
  - a. Above-Grade:
    - 1) Sweat copper type with 95/5 or 96/4 Tin-Antimony solder, Bridgit solder, or Silvabrite 100 solder. Use only lead-free solder.
    - 2) Viega ProPress System
  - b. Below Grade:
    - 1) Brazed using following type rods:
      - a) Copper to Copper Connections:
        - (1) AWS Classification BCuP-4 Copper Phosphorus (6 percent silver).
        - (2) AWS Classification BCuP-5 Copper Phosphorus (15 percent silver).
    - 2) Copper to Brass or Copper to Steel Connections: AWS Classification BAg-5 Silver (45 percent silver).
    - 3) Do not use rods containing Cadmium.
    - 4) Brazing Flux:
      - a) Approved Products:
        - (1) Stay-Silv white brazing flux by Harris Product Group.
        - (2) High quality silver solder flux by Handy & Harmon.
    - 5) Joints under slabs acceptable only if allowed by local codes.
5. Connections For PP-R Pipe:
  - a. Above-Grade:
    - 1) Socket-fusion, fusion-outlet, electrofusion, butt welding, and mechanical transition fittings including threaded adapters, groove adapters, and flanges.
  - b. Below-Grade:
    - 1) All joints shall be fusion-welded or electro-fusion welded PP-RCT except that flanges may be used when connecting to other piping systems. Mechanical fittings shall not be used below grade.
    - 2) Joints under slabs acceptable only if allowed by local codes.
6. Ball Valves:
  - a. Use ball valves exclusively unless otherwise specified. Ball valves shall be by single manufacturer from approved list below.
  - b. Valves shall be two-piece, full port for 150 psi (1.03 MPa) SWP.
    - 1) Operate with flow in either direction, suitable for throttling and tight shut-off.
    - 2) Body: Bronze, 150 psig (1.03 MPa) wsp at 350 deg F (177 deg C) and 400 psig (2.76 MPa) wog.
    - 3) Seat: Bubble tight at 100 psig (0.69 MPa) under water.
  - c. Class One Quality Standard: Nibco T585 or S585.

- 1) Equal by Conbraco 'Apollo,' Hammond, Milwaukee, or Watts.
- d. PP-R piping if used:
  - 1) Category Four Approved Products. See Section 01 6200 for definitions of Categories:
    - a) PP-R fusion-weld ball valves by Aquatherm.
    - b) PP-RCT Fusion by Nupi Americas.
7. Combination Pressure Reducing Valve / Strainer:
  - a. Integral stainless steel strainer, or separate 'Y' strainer installed upstream of pressure reducing valve.
  - b. Meet ANSI/ASSE 1003 or CSA B356 requirements.
  - c. Built-in thermal expansion bypass check valve.
  - d. Class One Quality Standard: Watts LFU5B:
    - 1) Equal by Cash Acme, Cla-Val Hi Capacity, Conbraco 36C, Honeywell-Braukmann, Spence Hi Capacity, Watts, or Wilkins. See Section 01 6200.
8. Mixing Valve For Lavatories:
  - a. Solid brass construction and CSA B125 certified.
  - b. Includes integral check valves and inlet screen. Features advanced paraffin-based actuation technology.
  - c. Flow of **5.7 GPM (21.58 LPM)** with maximum **10 psi (69 kPa)** pressure drop. Perform to minimum flow of **0.5 GPM (1.89 LPM)** in accordance with ASSE 1070.
  - d. Set for **110 deg F (43 deg C)** Service.
  - e. Match Construction Drawings for connection sizes.
  - f. Class One Quality Standard: Powers LFLM495. See Section 01 6200.
  - g. Acceptable Manufacturers: Acorn, Chicago Faucets, Leonard, Powers, Sloan, Symmons and Watts.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 INSTALLATION

- A. Locate cold water lines a minimum of **6 inches (150 mm)** from hot water line.

### 3.2 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Field Tests:
  1. Before pipes are covered, test systems in presence of Architect/Engineer at **125 psig (0.86 MPa)** hydrostatic pressure for four (4) hours and show no leaks.
  2. Disconnect equipment not suitable for **125 psig (0.86 MPa)** pressure from piping system during test period.
  3. PP-R Piping:
    - a. Test in accordance with Manufacturer's instructions prior to covering.
      - 1) Provide documentation.

### 3.3 CLEANING

- A. Sterilize potable water system with solution containing 200 parts per million minimum of available chlorine and maintaining pH of 7.5 minimum. Introduce chlorinating materials into system in manner approved by Architect/Engineer. Allow sterilization solution to remain for twenty-four (24) hours and open and close valves and faucets several times during that time.
- B. After sterilization, flush solution from system with clean water until residual chlorine content is less than 0.2 parts per million.
- C. Water system will not be accepted until negative bacteriological test is made on water taken from system. Repeat dosing as necessary until such negative test is accomplished.

**END OF SECTION**

**SECTION 22 1119****DOMESTIC WATER PIPING SPECIALTIES****PART 1 - GENERAL****1.1 SUMMARY**

- A. Includes But Not Limited To:
  - 1. Furnish and install miscellaneous potable water piping specialties as described in Contract Documents.
- B. Related Requirements:
  - 1. Section 22 0501: 'Common Plumbing Requirements'.

**1.2 REFERENCES**

- A. Reference Standards:
  - 1. NSF International Standard / American National Standards Institute:
    - a. NSF/ANSI 61-2014a, 'Drinking Water System Components - Health Effects'.
    - b. NSF/ANSI 372-2011, 'Drinking Water System Components - Lead Content'.

**1.3 QUALITY ASSURANCE**

- A. Regulatory Agency Sustainability Approvals:
  - 1. Meet NSF International Standards for materials or products that come into contact with drinking water, drinking water treatment chemicals, or both for chemical contaminants and impurities that are indirectly imparted to drinking water from products, components, and materials used in drinking water systems.

**PART 2 - PRODUCTS****2.1 ACCESSORIES**

- A. Manufacturers:
  - 1. Manufacturer Contact List:
    - a. Ashcroft, Stratford, CT [www.ashcroftinc.com](http://www.ashcroftinc.com).
    - b. H O Trerice, Oak Park, MI [www.hotco.com](http://www.hotco.com).
    - c. IPS Corporation, Compton, CA [www.ipscorp.com](http://www.ipscorp.com).
    - d. Josam Co, Michigan City, IN [www.josam.com](http://www.josam.com).
    - e. Jay R. Smith Manufacturing Co, Montgomery, AL [www.jrsmith.com](http://www.jrsmith.com).
    - f. Prier Products, Inc., Grandview, MD [www.prier.com](http://www.prier.com).
    - g. Proset Systems Inc., Lawrenceville, GA [www.prosetsystems.com](http://www.prosetsystems.com).
    - h. Sioux Chief Manufacturing Co, Peculiar, MO [www.siouxchief.com](http://www.siouxchief.com).
    - i. Sure Seal, Tacoma, WA [www.thesureseal.com](http://www.thesureseal.com).
    - j. Wade (Division of Tyler Pipe), Tyler, TX [www.wadedrains.com](http://www.wadedrains.com).
    - k. Watts Drainage, Spindale, NC [www.watts.com](http://www.watts.com) or Watts Industries, Burlington, ON, Canada [www.wattscda.com](http://www.wattscda.com).
    - l. Weiss Instruments, Inc., Holtsville, NY [www.weissinstruments.com](http://www.weissinstruments.com).
    - m. Woodford Manufacturing, Colorado Springs, CO [www.woodfordmfg.com](http://www.woodfordmfg.com).
    - n. Zurn Cast Metals, Erie, PA or Zurn Industries Limited, Mississauga, ON [www.zurn.com](http://www.zurn.com).

- B. Materials:
1. Trap Guard Trap Seal:
    - a. Design Criteria:
      - 1) Not required to meet NSF International Standards for Lead Free.
    - b. Category Four Approved Products. See Section 01 6200 for definitions of Categories:
      - 1) Trap Guard by Proset:
        - a) Install per Manufacturer's recommendations.
      - 2) Sure Seal by Sure Seal:
        - a) Install per Manufacturer's recommendation.
  2. Pressure Reducing Station:
    - a. Design Criteria:
      - 1) Meet NSF International Standards for Lead Free.
    - b. Pressure Gauges:
      - 1) Gauges shall have following features:
        - a) Cast aluminum case.
        - b) Chrome plated ring.
        - c) Impact resistant window.
        - d) Phosphor bronze alloy steel bourdon tube.
        - e) 1/2 percent scale range accuracy.
        - f) 4-1/2 inch (115 mm) diameter dial face.
        - g) Range 0 to 100 psig.
      - 2) Class One Quality Standard: 500X by H O Terrice.
        - a) Equal by Ashcroft or Weiss. See Section 01 6200.
    - c. Brass Gauge Cocks:
      - 1) Category Four Approved Products. See Section 01 6200 for definitions of Categories:
        - a) 1092 by Ashcroft.
        - b) 865 by H O Terrice.
  3. Water Hammer Arrestors:
    - a. Design Criteria:
      - 1) Meet NSF International Standards for Lead Free.
      - 2) Nesting type, air pre-charged bellows with casing.
      - 3) Bellows constructed of stabilized 18-8 stainless steel.
    - b. Category Four Approved Products. See Section 01 6200 for definitions of Categories:
      - 1) Josam: 75003.
      - 2) Jay R. Smith: 5020.
      - 3) Sioux Chief: 650 Series.
      - 4) Wade: 20.
  4. Double Check Valve Backflow Preventer:
    - a. Design Criteria:
      - 1) Meet NSF International Standards for Lead Free.
      - 2) 175 psi (1 207 kPa) maximum working water pressure.
      - 3) 180 deg F (82 deg C) maximum working water temperature.
      - 4) Provide ball valves.
      - 5) Provide inlet strainer.
    - b. Category Four Approved Products. See Section 01 6200 for definitions of Categories:
      - 1) ConBraco: DCLF4A.
      - 2) Watts: LF007.
      - 3) Zurn: 375XLVSR.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 INSTALLATION

- A. Gauges: Connect to pipe with 1/4 inch (6 mm) connections utilizing gauge cocks.

**END OF SECTION**



**SECTION 22 1313****FACILITY SANITARY SEWERS****PART 1 - GENERAL****1.1 SUMMARY**

- A. Includes But Not Limited To:
  - 1. Furnish and install soil, waste, and vent piping systems within building and connect with outside utility lines **5 feet (1.5 m)** out from building where applicable.
  - 2. Perform excavation and backfill required by work of this Section.
- B. Related Requirements:
  - 1. Sections Under 07 3000 Heading: Furnishing and installing of roof jacks and pipe flashing at roof.
  - 2. Section 07 8400: 'Firestopping' for quality of firestopping material.
  - 3. Section 22 0501: 'Common Plumbing Requirements'.
  - 4. Section 22 1319: 'Facility Sanitary Sewer Specialties' for furnishing of sewer specialties.
  - 5. Section 31 2316: 'Excavation' for criteria for performance of excavation.
  - 6. Section 31 2323: 'Fill' for criteria for performance of backfill and compaction.
  - 7. Section 33 3313: 'Sanitary Utility Sewerage' for sewage piping from **5 feet (1.5 m)** out from building to main.

**1.2 ADMINISTRATIVE REQUIREMENTS**

- A. Pre-Installation Conference: Participate in pre-installation conference specified in Section 03 3111.

**1.3 REFERENCES**

- A. Reference Standards:
  - a. ASTM D2235-04(2016), 'Standard Specification for Solvent Cement for Acrylonitrile-Butadiene-Styrene (ABS) Plastic Pipe and Fittings'.
  - b. ASTM D2321-18, 'Standard Practice for Underground Installation of Thermoplastic Pipe for Sewers and Other Gravity-Flow Applications'.
  - c. ASTM D2564-12(2018), 'Standard Specification for Solvent Cements for Poly (Vinyl Chloride) (PVC) Plastic Piping Systems'.
  - d. ASTM D3034-16, 'Standard Specification for Type PSM Poly (Vinyl Chloride) (PVC) Sewer Pipe and Fittings'.
  - e. ASTM F628-12, 'Standard Specification for Acrylonitrile-Butadiene-Styrene (ABS) Schedule 40 Plastic Drain, Waste, and Vent Pipe With a Cellular Core'.
  - f. ASTM F656-15, 'Standard Specification for Primers for Use in Solvent Cement Joints of Poly (Vinyl Chloride) (PVC) Plastic Pipe and Fittings'.
  - g. ASTM F891-16, 'Standard Specification for Coextruded Poly(Vinyl Chloride) (PVC) Plastic Pipe With a Cellular Core'.
- 2. International Code Council:
  - a. ICC IPC-2021, 'International Plumbing Code'.

**PART 2 - PRODUCTS****2.1 SYSTEMS**

- A. Performance:

1. Design Criteria:
  - a. Minimum size of waste piping installed under floor slab on grade shall be **2 inches (50 mm)**.
- B. Materials:
  1. Piping And Fittings: PVC Schedule 40 cellular core plastic pipe and pipe fittings meeting requirements of ASTM F891, joined using cement primer meeting requirements of ASTM F656 and pipe cement meeting requirements of ASTM D2564.
    - a. Furnish wall cleanouts with chrome wall cover and screw.
  2. Piping And Fittings: ABS Schedule 40 cellular core plastic pipe and pipe fittings meeting requirements of ASTM F628, joined with pipe cement meeting requirements of ASTM D2235.
    - a. Furnish wall cleanouts with chrome wall cover and screw.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 INSTALLATION

- A. Excavate and backfill as specified in Sections 31 2316 and 31 2323 with following additional requirements:
  1. Runs shall be as close as possible to those shown on Drawings.
  2. Excavate to required depth and grade to obtain fall required. Grade soil and waste lines within building perimeter **1/4 inch (6 mm)** fall in **one foot (300 mm)** in direction of flow.
  3. Bottom of trenches shall be hard. Tamp as required.
  4. Remove debris from trench before laying of pipe.
  5. Do not cut trenches near footings without consulting Architect.
- B. Thermoplastic Pipe And Fittings:
  1. General: Piping and joints shall be clean and installed according to Manufacturer's recommendations. Break down contaminated joints, clean seats and gaskets and reinstall.
  2. Above Grade: Locate pipe hangers every **4 feet (1.2 m)** on center maximum and at elbows.
  3. Below Grade:
    - a. Install in accordance with Manufacturer's recommendations and ASTM D2321.
    - b. Stabilize unstable trench bottoms.
    - c. Bed pipe true to line and grade with continuous support from firm base.
      - 1) Bedding depth: **4 to 6 inches (100 to 150 mm)**.
      - 2) Material and compaction to meet ASTM standard noted above.
    - d. Excavate bell holes into bedding material so pipe is uniformly supported along its entire length. Blocking to grade pipe is forbidden.
    - e. Trench width at top of pipe:
      - 1) Minimum: **18 inches (450 mm)** or diameter of pipe plus **12 inches (300 mm)**, whichever is greater.
      - 2) Maximum: Outside diameter of pipe plus **24 inches (600 mm)**.
    - f. Do not use backhoe or power equipment to assemble pipe.
    - g. Initial backfill shall be **12 inches (300 mm)** above top of pipe with material specified in referenced ASTM standard.
    - h. Minimum cover over top of pipe not under building slab:
      - 1) **36 inches (900 mm)** before wheel loading.
      - 2) **48 inches (1 200 mm)** before compaction.
- C. Install piping so cleanouts may be installed as follows:
  1. At every 135 degrees of accumulative change in direction for horizontal lines.
  2. Every **100 feet (30 meters)** of horizontal run.
  3. Extend piping to accessible surface. Do not install piping so cleanouts must be installed in carpeted floors. In such locations, configure piping so wall type cleanouts may be used.
- D. Each fixture and appliance discharging water into sanitary sewer or building sewer lines shall have seal trap in connection with complete venting system so gasses pass freely to atmosphere with no pressure or siphon condition on water seal.

- E. Vent entire waste system to atmosphere. Join lines together in fewest practicable numbers before projecting above roof. Set back vent lines so they will not pierce roof near edge or valley. Vent line terminations shall be:
  - 1. 6 inches (150 mm) minimum above roof and 12 inches (300 mm) minimum from any vertical surface.
  - 2. Same size as vent pipe.
  - 3. In areas where minimum design temperature is below 0 deg F (minus 18 deg C) or where frost or snow closure may be possible:
    - a. Vent line terminations shall be same size as vent pipe, except no smaller than 2 inches (50 mm) in diameter.
    - b. Vents shall terminate 10 inches (250 mm) minimum above roof or higher if required by local codes.
- F. Furnish and install firestopping at penetrations of fire-rated structures as required under Sections 07 8400 and 22 0501.
- G. If test Tees are used for testing, plug Tees so wall finish can be installed. Do not leave as exposed cleanouts.

### 3.2 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Field Tests:
  - 1. Conduct tests for leaks and defective work. Notify Architect before testing.
  - 2. Thermoplastic Pipe System:
    - a. Before backfilling and compacting of trenches, Fill waste and vent system with water to roof level or 10 feet (3 meters) minimum, and show no leaks for two hours. Correct leaks and defective work.
    - b. After backfilling and compacting of trenches is complete but before placing floor slab, re-test as specified above. Uncover pipe and correct leaks and defective work. Re-backfill and compact and re-test.

**END OF SECTION**

**SECTION 22 1319****FACILITY SANITARY SEWER SPECIALTIES****PART 1 - GENERAL****1.1 SUMMARY**

- A. Products Furnished But Not Installed Under this Section as described in Contract Documents.
- B. Related Requirements:
  - 1. Section 09 3013: 'Ceramic Tile' for floor drains in ceramic tile floors.
  - 2. Section 22 0501: 'Common Plumbing Requirements'.
  - 3. Section 22 1119: 'Domestic Water Piping Specialties'.
  - 4. Section 22 1313: 'Facility Sanitary Sewers' for installation of miscellaneous sanitary sewer specialties.

**PART 2 - PRODUCTS****2.1 SYSTEMS**

- A. Manufacturers:
  - 1. Manufacturer Contact List:
    - a. Josam Co, Michigan City, IN [www.josam.com](http://www.josam.com).
    - b. Jay R. Smith Manufacturing Co, Montgomery, AL [www.jrsmith.com](http://www.jrsmith.com).
    - c. Mifab Manufacturing Inc, Chicago, IL [www.mifab.com](http://www.mifab.com).
    - d. Proset Systems, Lawrenceville, GA [www.prosetsystems.com](http://www.prosetsystems.com).
    - e. Sioux Chief Manufacturing Co, Peculiar, MO [www.siouxchief.com](http://www.siouxchief.com).
    - f. Sureseal Manufacturing, Tacoma WA [www.thesureseal.com](http://www.thesureseal.com).
      - 1) Contact Information:
        - a) All Areas except Idaho and Utah: Rick Ensley (253) 564-0624, [rick@thesureseal.com](mailto:rick@thesureseal.com).
        - b) Idaho and Utah Areas: Mark Evans, phone (801) 748-1222, [mark@franklinjames.com](mailto:mark@franklinjames.com).
    - g. Wade Div Tyler Pipe, Tyler, TX [www.wadedrains.com](http://www.wadedrains.com).
    - h. Watts Drainage, Spindale, NC [www.watts.com](http://www.watts.com) or Watts Industries, Burlington, ON, Canada [www.wattscda.com](http://www.wattscda.com).
    - i. Zurn Industries, LLC, Erie PA [www.zurn.com](http://www.zurn.com). or Zurn Industries Ltd, Mississauga, ON (905) 795-8844.
- B. Performance:
  - 1. Design Criteria:
    - a. All materials NOT required to be low lead compliant.
- C. Components:
  - 1. Drains And Drain Accessories:
    - a. Floor Drain FD:
      - 1) Approved types with deep seal trap and chrome plated strainer.
      - 2) Category Four Approved Products. See Section 01 6200 for definitions of Categories:
        - a) Josam: 30000-50-Z-5A.
        - b) J. R. Smith: 2010-A.
        - c) Mifab: F-1100-C.
        - d) Sioux Chief: 832.
        - e) Wade: 1100.
        - f) Watts: FD-200-A.

g) Zurn: Z-415.

D. Accessories:

1. Drain Accessories:

a. Floor Drains:

- 1) Category Four Approved Products. See Section 01 6200 for definitions of Categories:
  - a) Trap guard by Proset Systems. Provide model number to match floor drain.
  - b) Trap seal by Sureseal. Provide model number to match floor drain.

**PART 3 - EXECUTION: Not Used**

**END OF SECTION**

**SECTION 22 3305****ELECTRIC DOMESTIC WATER HEATERS****PART 1 - GENERAL****1.1 SUMMARY**

- A. Includes But Not Limited To:
  - 1. Furnish and install electric water heater as specified in Contract Documents.
- B. Related Requirements:
  - 1. Section 22 0501: 'Common Plumbing Requirements'.
  - 2. Section 22 1116: 'Domestic Water Piping'.

**1.2 REFERENCES**

- A. Reference Standard:
  - 1. NSF International Standard / American National Standards Institute:
    - a. NSF/ANSI 61-2017, 'Drinking Water System Components - Health Effects'.
    - b. NSF/ANSI 372-2016, 'Drinking Water System Components - Lead Content'.

**1.3 SUBMITTALS**

- A. Closeout Submittals:
  - 1. Include following in Operations And Maintenance Manual specified in Section 01 7800:
    - a. Operations and Maintenance Data:
      - 1) Maintenance and operational instructions.
    - b. Warranty Documentation:
      - 1) Final, executed copy of Warranty.
    - c. Record Documentation:
      - 1) Manufacturers documentation:
        - a) Manufacturer's literature or cut sheet.

**1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE**

- A. Regulatory Agency Sustainability Approvals:
  - 1. Meet NSF International Standards for materials or products that come in contact with drinking water, drinking water treatment chemicals, or both for chemical contaminants and impurities that are indirectly imparted to drinking water from products, components, and materials used in drinking water systems.

**1.5 WARRANTY**

- A. Special Warranty:
  - 1. Three-year non-prorated warranty on water heaters of 20 gallon (76 liters) capacity and larger.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 ASSEMBLIES

#### A. Manufacturers:

1. Manufacturer Contact List:
  - a. American Water Heater Co, Johnson City, TN [www.americanwaterheater.com](http://www.americanwaterheater.com).
  - b. A. O. Smith Water Products Co, Ashland City, TN [www.hotwater.com](http://www.hotwater.com) or A. O. Smith Ltd, Stratford, ON (800) 265-8520 or (519) 271-5800.
  - c. Bradford-White Corp, Ambler, PA [www.bradfordwhite.com](http://www.bradfordwhite.com).
  - d. Lochinvar, Lebanon, TN [www.lochinvar.com](http://www.lochinvar.com).
  - e. Rheem / Ruud Water Heater Div Rheem Manufacturing, Atlanta, GA [www.rheem.com](http://www.rheem.com) or Rheem Canada Inc Water Heater Division, Hamilton, ON (800) 268-6966 or (905) 527-9194.
  - f. State Industries Inc, Ashland City, TN [www.stateind.com](http://www.stateind.com).

#### B. Materials:

1. Design Criteria:
  - a. All (wetted) drinking water products, components, and materials used in drinking water systems must meet NSF International Standards for Lead Free.
  - b. All water heaters require 'Tempered Water Temperature Control' (mixing valves) as specified in Section 22 1116.
2. **19 / 20 Gallon (72 / 76 Liter):**
  - a. Glass lined storage tank pressure tested and rated for **125 psi (862 kPa)** working pressure.
  - b. 110-120 V, single phase, 1500 - 1650 watts maximum heating capacity.
  - c. Water heaters shall each have ASME rated temperature-pressure relief valve rated at MBH input of heater minimum set to relieve at **120 psi (827 kPa)**.
  - d. Complete with thermostat, high limit control, and anode rod.
  - e. Category Four Approved Products. See Section 01 6200 for definitions of Categories:
    - 1) American: LDCE31-20L.
    - 2) AO Smith: DEL-20.
    - 3) Bradford White: LE120L3-3 or LE120U3-1.
    - 4) Lochinvar: JRC020DS or JTC020DS (both 1650 watts).
    - 5) Rheem: 81VP20S or EGSP20.
    - 6) State Industries: PCE-20.

### 2.2 ACCESSORIES

#### A. Anchoring Components:

1. **One inch (25 mm)** by **18 ga (1.2 mm)** galvanized steel straps.
2. No. 10 by **2-1/2 inch (64 mm)** screws.

#### B. Thermal Expansion Absorbers:

1. Bladder type for use with potable water systems.
2. Type One Acceptable Products.
  - a. Therm-X-Trol ST-12-C by Amtrol Inc, West Warwick, RI [www.amtrol.com](http://www.amtrol.com).
  - b. Equal as approved by Architect before bidding. See Section 01 6200.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 INSTALLATION

- A. Install temperature-pressure relief valve on hot water heater and pipe discharge to directly above mop sink.

- B. Anchor 20 gallon (76 liter) and larger water heaters to wall using anchoring straps and specified screws.

### 3.2 ADJUSTING

- A. Set discharge water temperature at 140 deg F (60 deg C). Final hot water temperature shall be 110 deg F (43 deg C) after thermostatic mixing valve. If no mixing valve set discharge temperature at 110 deg F (43 deg C).

**END OF SECTION**



**SECTION 22 4126**  
**RESIDENTIAL DISPOSERS**

**PART 1 - GENERAL**

**1.1 SUMMARY**

- A. Includes But Not Limited To:
  - 1. Furnish and install disposers as described in Contract Documents.
- B. Related Requirements:
  - 1. Section 22 0501: 'Common Plumbing Requirements'.

**PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

**2.1 MANUFACTURED UNITS**

- A. Manufacturers:
  - 1. Manufacturer Contact List:
    - a. Anaheim Manufacturing, Anaheim, CA [www.anaheimmfg.com](http://www.anaheimmfg.com).
    - b. In-Sink-Erator, Racine, WI [www.insinkerator.com](http://www.insinkerator.com).
- B. Disposer:
  - 1. Heavy-duty residential continuous feed type with adaptor assembly for direct sink mounting.
  - 2. Stainless steel grinding chamber.
  - 3. Motor: 3/4 hp, single phase, 115 volts, totally enclosed, fan cooled.
  - 4. Category Four Approved Products. See Section 01 6200 for definitions of Categories.
    - a. CNTR 333 by In-Sink-Erator.
    - b. Waste King 9950 by Anaheim Manufacturing.

**PART 3 - EXECUTION: Not Used**

**END OF SECTION**

**SECTION 22 4213****COMMERCIAL WATER CLOSETS AND URINALS****PART 1 - GENERAL****1.1 SUMMARY**

- A. Includes But Not Limited To:
  - 1. Furnish and install plumbing fixtures as described in Contract Documents.
- B. Related Requirements:
  - 1. Section 07 9213: 'Elastomeric Joint Sealants' for sealants used between fixtures and other substrates.
  - 2. Section 22 0501: 'Common Plumbing Requirements'.
  - 3. Section 22 1116: 'Domestic Water Piping'.

**1.2 REFERENCES**

- A. Definitions:
  - 1. High-Efficiency Toilet (HET): Toilets with effective flush volume of 1.28 gallons (4.8 liters) or less.
  - 2. Maximum Performance (MaP): Toilet testing that rates toilet efficiency and flush performance by measuring number of grams of solid waste (soybean paste and toilet paper) that a toilet can flush and remove completely from fixture in single flush represented as a scale or score. 1000 grams is highest score possible ([www.map-testing.com](http://www.map-testing.com)).
- B. Reference Standards:
  - 1. American Society of Mechanical Engineers / CSA Group (Canadian Standards Association):
    - a. ASME A112.19.2-2018/CSA B45.1-18, 'Ceramic Plumbing Fixtures'.

**1.3 SUBMITTALS**

- A. Closeout Submittals:
  - 1. Include following in Operations And Maintenance Manual specified in Section 01 7800:
    - a. Operation and Maintenance Data:
      - 1) Sensor Operated operation and maintenance manuals.

**PART 2 - PRODUCTS****2.1 ASSEMBLIES**

- A. Manufacturers:
  - 1. Manufacturer Contact List:
    - a. American Standard Brands, Piscataway, NJ [www.americanstandard-us.com](http://www.americanstandard-us.com) or American Standard Canada, Mississauga, ON [www.americanstandard.ca](http://www.americanstandard.ca).
    - b. AMTC - Advanced Modern Technologies Corp, Woodland Hills, CA [www.amtcorporation.com](http://www.amtcorporation.com).
    - c. Bemis Manufacturing Co, Sheboygan Falls, WI [www.bemismfg.com](http://www.bemismfg.com).
    - d. Beneke by Sanderson Plumbing Products, Columbus, MS [www.sppi.com](http://www.sppi.com).
    - e. Church Seat Co, Sheboygan Falls WI [www.churchseats.com](http://www.churchseats.com).
    - f. Delany Flush Valves, Charlottesville, VA [www.delanyproduct.com](http://www.delanyproduct.com).

- g. Delta Faucet Co, Indianapolis, IN [www.deltafaucet.com](http://www.deltafaucet.com) or Delta Faucet Canada, London, ON (519) 659-3626.
  - h. Dearborn Brass, Cleveland, OH [www.dearbornbrass.com](http://www.dearbornbrass.com).
  - i. Gerber Plumbing Fixtures LLC, Woodridge, IL [www.gerberonline.com](http://www.gerberonline.com).
  - j. Josam Co, Michigan City, IN [www.josam.com](http://www.josam.com).
  - k. Jay R. Smith Mfg. Co, Montgomery, AL [www.jrsmith.com](http://www.jrsmith.com).
  - l. Kohler Co Plumbing Div, Kohler, WI [www.us.kohler.com](http://www.us.kohler.com).
  - m. McGuire Manufacturing Co, Cheshire, CT [www.mcguiremfg.com](http://www.mcguiremfg.com).
  - n. Mifab Manufacturing Inc, Amherst, NY [www.mifab.com](http://www.mifab.com).
  - o. Moen Incorporated, North Olmsted, OH, or Moen Canada, Oakville, ON [www.moen.com](http://www.moen.com).
  - p. Olsonite Corp, Newnan, GA [www.olsonite.net](http://www.olsonite.net) or Olsonite Co Ltd, Tilbury, ON (519) 682-1240.
  - q. Sloan Valve Co, Franklin Park, IL [www.sloanvalve.com](http://www.sloanvalve.com).
  - r. South Fork Manufacturing, Coalville, UT (801) 953-3001 [www.dirt-grabber.com](http://www.dirt-grabber.com).
  - s. Toto U.S.A., Inc., Morrow, GA [www.totousa.com](http://www.totousa.com)
  - t. Wade Div Tyler Pipe, Tyler, TX [www.wadedrains.com](http://www.wadedrains.com).
  - u. Watts Drainage, Spindale, NC [www.wattsdrainage.com](http://www.wattsdrainage.com) or Watts Industries, Burlington, ON, Canada [www.wattscda.com](http://www.wattscda.com).
  - v. Zurn Industries, LLC, Erie PA [www.zurn.com](http://www.zurn.com). or Zurn Industries Ltd, Mississauga, ON (905) 795-8844.
- B. Performance:
- 1. Design Criteria:
    - a. Meet or exceed ASME A112.19.2/CSA B45.1 for Vitreous China Plumbing Fixtures.
    - b. Interior exposed pipe, valves, and fixture trim, including trim behind custom casework doors, shall be chrome plated.
    - c. All materials NOT required to be low lead compliant.
    - d. Do not use toilets with effective flush volume of less than **1.28 gallons (4.8 liters)**.
- C. Materials:
- 1. Water Closets:
    - a. Floor Mounted With Tank:
      - 1) HET (High-Efficiency Toilet) - Handicap Accessible Fixture:
        - a) Water usage of **1.28 gallons (4.8 liters)** per flush.
        - b) **18 inch (450 mm)** maximum rim height.
        - c) Required HET fixtures for all California Projects.
        - d) MaP Score of 1000 grams.
        - e) Category Four Approved Products. See Section 01 6200 for definitions of Categories:
          - (1) American Standard: Cadet Pro Right Height Elongated 215AA.104.
          - (2) Gerber: Avalanche WS-21-818.
          - (3) Kohler: Highline K-3949.
          - (4) Toto: 'ADA Drake' CST744EL.
  - 2. Water Closet Accessories:
    - a. Seats:
      - 1) Provide split front type with check hinge.
      - 2) Category Four Approved Products. See Section 01 6200 for definitions of Categories:
        - a) Standard And Handicap Accessible Fixtures:
          - (1) American Standard: 5905.100SS.
          - (2) Bemis: 1655SSC.
          - (3) Beneke: 527 SS.
          - (4) Church: 9500SSC.
          - (5) Kohler: K-4731-C.
          - (6) Olsonite: 95SSC.
          - (7) Toto SC534.
  - 3. Urinals:
    - a. HEU (High-Efficiency Urinal) - Standard Fixture:
      - 1) Water usage of **0.5 gallons (1.9 liters)** per flush.
      - 2) Category Four Approved Products. See Section 01 6200 for definitions of Categories:
        - a) American Standard: Washbrook FloWise 6590.001.

- b) Gerber: Monitor 27-730.
  - c) Kohler: Bardon K-4904-ET.
  - d) Sloan SU-1009.
  - e) Toto: UT447E.
4. Urinal Accessories:
- a. Carrier / Support:
    - 1) Category Four Approved Products. See Section 01 6200 for definitions of Categories:
      - a) Josam.
      - b) Jay R. Smith.
      - c) Mifab.
      - d) Wade.
      - e) Zurn.
  - b. Flush Valve:
    - 1) HEU (High-Efficiency Urinal) - Standard:
      - a) Proximity sensor type with battery.
      - b) Low flow, 0.5 gallon (1.9 liters) per flush maximum.
      - c) Category Four Approved Products. See Section 01 6200 for definitions of Categories:
        - (1) American Standard 6063.051.
        - (2) Delany: PL 1451-0.5.
        - (3) Delta: 81T231BTA factory set to 0.5 gallons per flush.
        - (4) Moen: 8315.
        - (5) Sloan: 8186-0.5.
        - (6) Zurn: ZER6003AV-EWS with maintenance override button.
  - c. Flush Valve Filter:
    - 1) Required in following flush valves:
      - a) Sloan.
      - b) Zurn.
    - 2) Category Four Approved Products. See Section 01 6200 for definitions of Categories:
      - a) SFDG1 'Dirt Grabber' by South Fork Manufacturing.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 INSTALLATION

- A. Install each fixture with separate vent line. Do not circuit vent.
- B. Ensure provisions are made for proper support of fixtures and that rough-in piping is accurately set and protected from movement and damage.
  - 1. Seal wall-mounted fixtures around edges to wall with sealant specified in Section 07 9213 'Elastomeric Joint Sealants'.
  - 2. Attach wall-hung fixtures to carriers.
  - 3. Support fixture hanger or arm free of finished wall.
- C. Adjust flush valves for proper flow.
- D. Provide each individual fixture supply with accessible chrome-plated stop valve with hand wheel.
- E. Urinals: Install with accessible stop or control valve in each branch supply line.
- F. Mounting:
  - 1. Urinals:
    - a. Standard: 24 inches (610 mm) from floor to bottom lip.
    - b. Handicap Accessible: 17 inches (432 mm) maximum from floor to bottom lip.
- G. Water Closets:
  - 1. Floor or Wall Fixtures:

- a. Make fixture connections with approved brand of cast iron flange, soldered or caulked securely to waste pipe. Make joints between fixtures and flanges tight with approved fixture setting compound or gaskets. Caulk between fixtures with sealant specified in Section 07 9213. Point edges.
- H. Flush Valve Filters:
1. Install in Sloan and Zurn only flush valves.
  2. Install after water lines have been flushed out, but before turning water into flush valve.

### **3.2 CLEANING**

- A. Polish chrome finish at completion of Project.

**END OF SECTION**

**SECTION 22 4216****COMMERCIAL LAVATORIES AND SINKS****PART 1 - GENERAL****1.1 SUMMARY**

- A. Includes But Not Limited To:
  - 1. Furnish and install plumbing fixtures as described in Contract Documents.
- B. Related Requirements:
  - 1. Section 07 9213: 'Elastomeric Joint Sealants' for sealants used between fixtures and other substrates.
  - 2. Section 22 0501: 'Common Plumbing Requirements'.
  - 3. Section 22 1116: 'Domestic Water Piping'.

**1.2 REFERENCES**

- A. Reference Standard:
  - 1. American National Standards Institute / International Code Council:
    - a. ANSI/ICC A117.1-2017, 'Standard for Accessible and Usable Buildings and Facilities'.
  - 2. American Society of Mechanical Engineers / Canadian Standards Association (CSA Group):
    - a. ASME A112.18.1-2018/CSA B125.1-18, 'Plumbing Supply Fittings'.
    - b. ASME A112.19.1-2018/CSA B45.2-18, 'Enamelled Cast Iron and Enamelled Steel Plumbing Fixtures'.
    - c. ASME A112.19.3-2017/CSA B45.4-17, 'Stainless steel plumbing fixtures'.
  - 3. NSF International Standard / American National Standards Institute:
    - a. NSF/ANSI 61-2017, 'Drinking Water System Components - Health Effects'.
    - b. NSF/ANSI 372-2016, 'Drinking Water System Components - Lead Content'.

**1.3 QUALITY ASSURANCE**

- A. Regulatory Agency Sustainability Approvals:
  - 1. Meet NSF International Standards for materials or products that come into contact with drinking water, drinking water treatment chemicals, or both for chemical contaminants and impurities that are indirectly imparted to drinking water from products, components, and materials used in drinking water systems.
  - 2. California only: California Assembly Bill 1953 (AB1953) Compliant for Lead Free.

**1.4 SUBMITTALS**

- A. Closeout Submittals:
  - 1. Include following in Operations And Maintenance Manual specified in Section 01 7800:
    - a. Warranty Documentation:
      - 1) Final, executed copy of Warranty.

**1.5 WARRANTY**

- A. Manufacturer Warranty:
  - 1. Manufacturer's standard Warranty against material or Manufacturing defects.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 ASSEMBLIES

#### A. Manufacturers:

1. Manufacturer Contact List:
  - a. American Standard Brands, Piscataway, NJ [www.americanstandard-us.com](http://www.americanstandard-us.com) or American Standard Canada, Mississauga, ON [www.americanstandard.ca](http://www.americanstandard.ca).
  - b. Brocar Products Inc, Cincinnati, OH [www.brocar.com](http://www.brocar.com).
  - c. CECO, Huntington Park, CA [www.cecosinks.com](http://www.cecosinks.com).
  - d. Chicago Faucet Co, Des Plaines, IL [www.chicagofaucets.com](http://www.chicagofaucets.com).
  - e. Dearborn Brass, Tyler, TX [www.dearbornbrass.com](http://www.dearbornbrass.com).
  - f. Delta Faucet Co, Indianapolis, IN [www.deltafaucet.com](http://www.deltafaucet.com) or Delta Faucet Canada, London, ON (519) 659-3626.
  - g. Engineered Brass Co. (EBC) (Just Manufacturing Co.), Franklin Park, IL [www.justmfg.com](http://www.justmfg.com).
  - h. Elkay Manufacturing Co, Oak Brook, IL [www.elkay.com](http://www.elkay.com).
  - i. Gerber Plumbing Fixtures LLC, Woodridge, IL [www.gerberonline.com](http://www.gerberonline.com).
  - j. Josam Co, Michigan City, IN [www.josam.com](http://www.josam.com).
  - k. Jay R. Smith Manufacturing Co, Montgomery, AL [www.jrsmith.com](http://www.jrsmith.com).
  - l. Just Manufacturing Co, Franklin Park, IL [www.justsinks.com](http://www.justsinks.com).
  - m. Keeney Manufacturing Co, Newington, CT [www.keeneymfg.com](http://www.keeneymfg.com).
  - n. Kindred USA, Midland, ON [www.kindred-sinkware.com](http://www.kindred-sinkware.com).
  - o. Kohler Co Plumbing Div, Kohler, WI [www.us.kohler.com](http://www.us.kohler.com).
  - p. McGuire Manufacturing Co, Cheshire, CT [www.mcguiremfg.com](http://www.mcguiremfg.com).
  - q. Mifab Manufacturing Inc, Amherst, NY [www.mifab.com](http://www.mifab.com).
  - r. Moen Incorporated, North Olmsted, OH, or Moen Canada, Oakville, ON [www.moen.com](http://www.moen.com).
  - s. Omni Flow Controls, Harbor City, CA [www.chronomite.com](http://www.chronomite.com) or [www.omniflowcontrols.com](http://www.omniflowcontrols.com).
  - t. Plumberex Specialty Products, Palm Springs, CA [www.plumberex.com](http://www.plumberex.com).
  - u. Sloan Valve Co, Franklin Park, IL [www.sloanvalve.com](http://www.sloanvalve.com).
  - v. Speakman Company, New Castle, DE [www.speakmancompany.com](http://www.speakmancompany.com).
  - w. Symmons, Braintree, MA [www.symmons.com](http://www.symmons.com).
  - x. T & S Brass & Bronze Works Inc, Travelers Rest, SC [www.tsbrass.com](http://www.tsbrass.com).
  - y. TrueBro Inc, Collierville, TN [www.truebro.com](http://www.truebro.com).
  - z. Wade Div Tyler Pipe, Tyler, TX [www.wadedrains.com](http://www.wadedrains.com).
  - aa. Watts Drainage, Spindale, NC [www.wattsdrainage.com](http://www.wattsdrainage.com) or Watts Industries, Burlington, ON, Canada [www.wattscda.com](http://www.wattscda.com).
  - bb. Zurn Commercial Brass, Sanford, NC [www.zurn.com](http://www.zurn.com) or Zurn Industries Ltd, Mississauga, ON (905) 795-8844.
  - cc. Zurn Cast Metal, Erie, PA [www.zurn.com](http://www.zurn.com).

#### B. Performance:

1. Design Criteria:
  - a. Interior exposed pipe, valves, and fixture trim, including trim behind custom casework doors, shall be chrome plated.
  - b. Faucets and other fixture fittings shall conform to requirements of ASME A112.18.1/CSA B125.1.
  - c. Lavatories shall conform to requirements of:
    - 1) Enamelled cast iron and enamelled steel fixtures.
      - a) ASME A112.19.1/CSA B45.2.
      - b) CSA B45.2/ASME A112.19.1.
    - 2) Stainless steel plumbing fixtures:
      - a) ASME A112.19.3/CSA B45.4.
      - b) CSA B45.4/ASME A112.19.3.

#### C. Components:

1. Lavatories And Fittings:
  - a. Standard and Handicap Accessible Self Supporting Lavatories:
    - 1) Size: **20 by 18 inches** (500 by 450 mm) nominal.
    - 2) Category Four Approved Products. See Section 01 6200 for definitions of Categories:

- a) American Standard: Lucern 0355.012.
- b) Kohler: Greenwich K-2032.
- 3) Carrier / Support:
  - a) Category Four Approved Products. See Section 01 6200 for definitions of Categories:
    - (1) Josam: 17100.
    - (2) Jay R. Smith: 0700.
    - (3) Mifab: MC-41.
    - (4) Wade: 520-M36.
- b. Lavatory Fittings:
  - 1) Faucet and Drain:
    - a) Design Criteria:
      - (1) Meet NSF International Standards for Lead Free.
    - b) Accessories:
      - (1) Cast brass spout.
      - (2) Hard-wired automatic faucet.
      - (3) Cast brass spout with chrome finish.
      - (4) 4 inches (100 mm) cover plate.
      - (5) Single supply configuration.
      - (6) Solenoid valve.
      - (7) Control module and transformer.
      - (8) Hermetically sealed electronics.
      - (9) In-line filter.
    - c) Category Four Approved Product. See Section 01 6200 for definitions of Categories:
      - (1) Chicago: 116.306.21.1 with 4" CC E-tronic and 327A strainer.
      - (2) Delta: 591T0250 WITH 33T260 grid strainer.
      - (3) Gerber: 44-801-4 with 43-970 grid strainer.
      - (4) Moen: 8306 with McGuire 155A grid strainer.
      - (5) Speakman: S-8810 with S-3440 grid drain.
      - (6) Symmons: S6080-AC-G with grid strainer.
      - (7) Zurn: Z6913-CWB-SSH with grid strainer.
  - 2) Flow Control Fitting:
    - a) Design Criteria:
      - (1) Meet NSF International Standards for Lead Free.
    - b) Accessories:
      - (1) Provide vandal-proof type in place of aerator. Flow shall be 0.5 gpm.
    - c) Category Four Approved Product. See Section 01 6200 for definitions of Categories:
      - (1) Omni L-200 Series by Chronomite Laboratories.
  - 3) Supply pipes with stops:
    - a) Design Criteria:
      - (1) Meet NSF International Standards for Lead Free.
    - b) Accessories:
      - (1) Provide chrome plated quarter-turn brass ball valve, 12 inches (305 mm) long braided stainless steel riser, and chrome-plated steel flange.
    - c) Category Four Approved Products. See Section 01 6200 for definitions of Categories:
      - (1) McGuire: BV2165CC.
      - (2) Zurn: Z8804 LRQ-PC.
  - 4) Trap:
    - a) Description:
      - (1) 17 gauge (1.4 mm) tube 'P' trap, chrome plated.
    - b) Design Criteria:
      - (1) Not required to meet NSF International Standards for Lead Free.
    - c) Category Four Approved Products. See Section 01 6200 for definitions of Categories:
      - (1) Dearborn.
      - (2) Engineered Brass Company (EBC).
      - (3) Keeney Manufacturing.



- (4) McGuire.
- (5) Zurn.
- 5) Safety Covers for Handicap Accessible Lavatories:
  - a) Description:
    - (1) Provide protection on water supply pipes and on trap.
  - b) Design Criteria:
    - (1) Not required to meet NSF International Standards for Lead Free.
  - c) Category Four Approved Products. See Section 01 6200 for definitions of Categories:
    - (1) Trapwrap by Brocar Products Inc.
    - (2) Pro Wrap by McGuire Products.
    - (3) Lav Guard 2 by TrueBro.
    - (4) Pro Extreme by Plumberex.
- 2. Stainless Steel Sinks And Fittings:
  - a. Design Criteria:
    - 1) Not required to meet NSF International Standards for Lead Free.
    - 2) Self-rimming, 18 gauge (1.2 mm) stainless steel, satin finish.
  - b. Double Compartment Sinks:
    - 1) Design Criteria:
      - a) Not required to meet NSF International Standards for Lead Free.
    - 2) Category Four Approved Products. See Section 01 6200 for definitions of Categories:
      - a) Elkay: LR 3319.
      - b) Just: DL-1933-A-GR.
      - c) Kindred: LBT 4408P-1.
      - d) Elkay: LRAD 3319.
      - e) Just: DL-ADA-1933-A-GR.
      - f) Kindred: ALBD 4405P-1.
  - c. Stainless Steel Sink Fittings:
    - 1) Faucets for Standard Double Compartment Sinks:
      - a) Design Criteria:
        - (1) Meet NSF International Standards for Lead Free.
      - b) Category Four Approved Products. See Section 01 6200 for definitions of Categories:
        - (1) American Standard: Heritage/Amarilis Two-Handle Bottom-Mount Kitchen Faucet with Swivel spout 7270.
        - (2) Chicago: 1888CP.
        - (3) Delta: 27C2243-S5.
        - (4) Gerber: CO-44-002.
        - (5) Kohler: K-7761-K with handles K-16012-5.
        - (6) Zurn Commercial Brass: Z-831J3.
    - 2) Supply pipes with stops:
      - a) Design Criteria:
        - (1) Meet NSF International Standards for Lead Free.
      - b) Accessories:
        - (1) Provide chrome plated quarter-turn brass ball valve, 12 inches (300 mm) long braided stainless steel riser, and chrome-plated steel flange.
      - c) Category Four Approved Products. See Section 01 6200 for definitions of Categories:
        - (1) McGuire: BV2165CC.
        - (2) Zurn: Z8804 LRQ-PC.
    - 3) Flow Control Fitting:
      - a) Design Criteria:
        - (1) Meet NSF International Standards for Lead Free.
      - b) Accessories:
        - (1) Provide vandal-proof type in place of aerator. Flow shall be 1.5 gpm.
      - c) Category Four Approved Product. See Section 01 6200 for definitions of Categories:
        - (1) Omni A-200 Series by Chromomite Laboratories.
    - 4) Waste For Standard Stainless Steel Sinks:
      - a) Design Criteria:

- (1) Not required to meet NSF International Standards for Lead Free.
- b) Category Four Approved Products. See Section 01 6200 for definitions of Categories:
  - (1) Elkay: LK-99.
  - (2) Kindred: 1130.
  - (3) Kohler: K8801.
  - (4) McGuire: 151.
  - (5) Zurn Z-8740-PC.
- 5) Trap:
  - a) Description:
    - (1) 17 gauge (1.4 mm) tube 'P' trap, chrome plated.
  - b) Design Criteria:
    - (1) Not required to meet NSF International Standards for Lead Free.
  - c) Category Four Approved Products. See Section 01 6200 for definitions of Categories:
    - (1) Dearborn.
    - (2) Engineered Brass Company (EBC).
    - (3) Keeney Manufacturing.
    - (4) McGuire: MCT150075NCZN.
    - (5) Zurn.
- 3. Miscellaneous Sinks And Fittings:
  - a. Service Sink:
    - 1) Description:
      - a) Floor Type, enameled cast iron, 28 inches (711 mm) square with vinyl coated rim guard or 24 inches (610 mm) square with Stainless Steel rim guard.
    - 2) Design Criteria:
      - a) Not required to meet NSF International Standards for Lead Free.
    - 3) Category Four Approved Products. See Section 01 6200 for definitions of Categories:
      - a) American Standard: Florwell Enameled Cast Iron 7741.000 with vinyl rim guard 7745.811.
      - b) CECO: 871.
      - c) Kohler: Whitby K-6710.
      - d) Zurn: 5850.
    - 4) Service Sink Fittings:
      - a) Design Criteria:
        - (1) Not required to meet NSF International Standards for Lead Free.
      - b) Supply:
        - (1) Mounting height of 42 inches (1 050 mm).
        - (2) Provide 48 inch (1 200 mm) hose and clamp unless spout is threaded.
        - (3) Category Four Approved Products. See Section 01 6200 for definitions of Categories:
          - (a) American Standard: Exposed Yoke Wall-Mount Utility Faucet with top brace 8344.112 with threaded spout.
          - (b) Chicago: 897 CP.
          - (c) Delta: 28T9 with 28T911 hose and bracket.
          - (d) Gerber: C4-44-654.
          - (d) Kohler: K-8928.
          - (e) Moen: 8124.
          - (f) Speakman: SC-5812.
          - (g) T&S: B-0665-BSTP.
          - (h) Zurn: Z-843M1.
      - c) Drain and Strainer:
        - (1) Category Four Approved Products. See Section 01 6200 for definitions of Categories:
          - (a) American Standard: Grid strainer 7721.038.
          - (b) Kohler: K-9146, 3 inch IPS.
    - d) Trap: Cast iron, PVC, or ABS to match piping.

**PART 3 - EXECUTION****3.1 INSTALLATION**

- A. Install each fixture with separate vent line. Do not circuit vent.
- B. Ensure provisions are made for proper support of fixtures and that rough-in piping is accurately set and protected from movement and damage.
- C. Seal wall-mounted fixtures around edges to wall and counter top fixtures to countertop with sealant specified in Section 07 9213.
- D. Unless otherwise noted, provide each individual fixture supply with chrome-plated stop valve with hand wheel.
- E. Install fixtures with accessible stop or control valve in each hot and cold water branch supply line.
- F. Self-Supporting Lavatories: Install using carriers. Support carrier free of finished wall.
- G. Install Safety Covers on all under sink / lavatories with exposed water supply pipes and traps.
- H. Install Handicap Accessible Lavatories as per ADA height mounting requirements.

**3.2 CLEANING**

- A. Polish chrome finish at completion of Project.

**END OF SECTION**

**SECTION 22 4700****DRINKING FOUNTAINS AND WATER COOLERS****PART 1 - GENERAL****1.1 SUMMARY**

- A. Includes But Not Limited To:
  - 1. Furnish and install drinking water cooling system units as described in Contract Documents.
- B. Related Requirements:
  - 1. Section 22 0501: 'Common Plumbing Requirements'.
  - 2. Section 22 1116: 'Domestic Water Piping'.

**1.2 REFERENCES**

- A. Reference Standard:
  - 1. American National Standards Institute / International Code Council:
    - a. ANSI/ICC A117.1-2017, 'Standard for Accessible and Usable Buildings and Facilities'.
  - 2. NSF International Standard / American National Standards Institute:
    - a. Bottle Filling Station:
      - 1) NSF/ANSI 42-2017, 'Drinking Water Treatments Units – Aesthetic Effects'.
      - 2) NSF/ANSI 53-2017, 'Drinking Water Treatments Units – Health Effects'.
    - b. Water Cooler:
      - 1) NSF/ANSI 61-2017, 'Drinking Water System Components - Health Effects'.
      - 2) NSF/ANSI 372-2016, 'Drinking Water System Components - Lead Content'.
  - 3. Underwriters Laboratories (UL):
    - a. UL 399: 'Drinking-Water Coolers'.

**1.3 SUBMITTALS**

- A. Closeout Submittals:
  - 1. Warranty Documentation:
    - a. Provide Manufacturer Warranty.

**1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE**

- A. Regulatory Agency Sustainability Approvals:
  - 1. Handicap Accessible Products to meet ANSI/ICC A117 Accessible requirements.
  - 2. Meet NSF International Standards for materials or products that come into contact with drinking water, drinking water treatment chemicals, or both for chemical contaminants and impurities that are indirectly imparted to drinking water from products, components, and materials used in drinking water systems.

**1.5 WARRANTY**

- A. Manufacturer standard limited warranty on refrigeration system of unit.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 MANUFACTURED UNITS

- A. Manufacturers:
  - 1. Manufacturer Contact List:
    - a. Elkay Manufacturing Co, Oak Brook, IL [www.elkay.com](http://www.elkay.com).
    - b. Halsey Taylor, Oak Brook, IL [www.halseytaylor.com](http://www.halseytaylor.com).
    - c. Murdock Manufacturing (Acorn), City of Industry, CA [www.murdockmfg.com](http://www.murdockmfg.com).
    - d. Oasis, Tri Palm International, Columbus OH [www.oasiswatercoolers.com](http://www.oasiswatercoolers.com).
- B. Design Criteria:
  - 1. All drinking water products, components, and materials above and below grade used in drinking water systems must meet NSF International Standards for Lead Free.
  - 2. Interior exposed pipe, valves, and fixture trim shall be chrome plated.
- C. Materials:
  - 1. Handicap Accessible Bi-Level Cooler and Bottle Filling Station:
    - a. Design Criteria:
      - 1) Vandal proof operating bar on front and both sides.
      - 2) 8 GPH (30.3 LPH) water at 50 deg F (10 deg C) water cooled from 80°F (26.7°C) inlet water and 90°F (32.2°C) ambient per ASHRAE testing.
      - 3) 115-120 V, 60 Hz, single phase.
      - 4) Flexible bubbler.
      - 5) Build-In strainer.
      - 6) Meets state and federal requirements for both children or adults as defined by the Americans with Disabilities Act.
    - b. Category Four Approved Products. See Section 01 6200 for definitions of Categories:
      - 1) Elkay: Model LZSTL8WSLK.
      - 2) Halsey Taylor: Model HTHB-HACG8BLPV-WF.
      - 3) Murdock Manufacturing: Model A172.8UBL-BF12.
      - 4) Oasis: Model PGEBFSL

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 INSTALLATION

- A. Install fixtures with accessible stop or control valve.
- B. Mounting:
  - 1. General:
    - a. Coordinate location of fountain with location and height of electrical outlet to ensure concealment of outlet by fountain.
    - b. Anchor bottom of fountain to wall.
    - c. Install 3/8 inch (9.5 mm) IPS union connection and Chicago No. 441 stop to building supply line.
    - d. Install 1-1/4 inch (32 mm) IPS slip cast brass 'P' trap. Install trap so it is concealed.
  - 2. Accessible Drinking Fountains:
    - a. Spout outlets of wheelchair accessible drinking fountains shall be 36 inches (915 mm) maximum above floor.
    - b. Spout outlets of drinking fountains for standing persons shall be 38 inches (965 mm) and 43 inches (1090 mm) maximum above floor.

**3.2 CLEANING**

- A. Polish chrome finish at completion of Project.

**END OF SECTION**

**SECTION 23 0501****COMMON HVAC REQUIREMENTS****PART 1 - GENERAL****1.1 SUMMARY**

- A. Includes But Not Limited To:
1. Common requirements and procedures for HVAC systems.
  2. Responsibility for proper operation of electrically powered equipment furnished under this Division.
  3. Interface with Testing And Balancing Agency.
  4. Furnish and install sealants relating to installation of systems installed under this Division.
  5. Furnish and install Firestop Penetration Systems for HVAC system penetrations as described in Contract Documents.
  6. Furnish and install sound, vibration, and seismic control elements.
- B. Products Furnished But Not Installed Under This Section:
1. Sleeves, inserts, and equipment for mechanical systems installed under other Sections.
- C. Related Requirements:
1. Section 03 3111: 'Cast-In-Place Structural Concrete' for exterior concrete pads and bases for mechanical equipment.
  2. Section 05 0523: 'Metal Fastening' for quality and requirements for welding.
  3. Section 07 8400: 'Firestopping' for quality of Penetration Firestop Systems to be used on Project and submittal requirements.
  4. Section 07 9213: 'Elastometric Joint Sealant' for quality of sealants used at building exterior.
  5. Section 07 9219: 'Acoustical Joint Sealants' for quality of acoustical sealants.
  6. Sections Under 09 9000 Heading: Painting of mechanical items requiring field painting.
  7. Division 26: Raceway and conduit, unless specified otherwise, line voltage wiring, outlets, and disconnect switches.
  8. Slots and openings through floors, walls, ceilings, and roofs provided under other Divisions in their respective materials.
  9. Sections Under 33 5000 Heading: Fuel Distribution Utilities.

**1.2 SUBMITTALS**

- A. Action Submittals:
1. Product Data:
    - a. Manufacturer's catalog data for each manufactured item.
      - 1) Provide section in submittal for each type of item of equipment. Include Manufacturer's catalog data of each manufactured item and enough information to show compliance with Contract Document requirements. Literature shall show capacities and size of equipment used and be marked indicating each specific item with applicable data underlined.
      - 2) Include name, address, and phone number of each supplier.
  2. Shop Drawings:
    - a. Schematic control diagrams for each separate fan system, heating system, control panel, etc. Each diagram shall show locations of all control and operational components and devices. Mark correct operating settings for each control device on these diagrams.
    - b. Diagram for electrical control system showing wiring of related electrical control items such as firestats, fuses, interlocks, electrical switches, and relays. Include drawings showing electrical power requirements and connection locations.
    - c. Drawing of each temperature control panel identifying components in panels and their function.

- d. Other shop drawings required by Division 23 trade Sections.
  - 1) Provide Qualification documentation if requested by Architect or Owner.
- B. Closeout Submittals:
  1. Include following in Operations And Maintenance Manual specified in Section 01 7800:
    - a. Operations and Maintenance Data (Modify and add to requirements of Section 01 7800):
      - 1) At beginning of HVAC section of Operations And Maintenance Manual, provide master index showing items included.
        - a) Provide name, address, and phone number of Architect, Architect's Mechanical Engineer, General Contractor, and HVAC, Sheet Metal, Refrigeration, and Temperature Control subcontractors.
        - b) Identify maintenance instructions by using same equipment identification used in Contract Drawings. Maintenance instructions shall include:
          - (1) List of HVAC equipment used indicating name, model, serial number, and nameplate data of each item together with number and name associated with each system item.
          - (2) Manufacturer's maintenance instructions for each piece of HVAC equipment installed in Project. Instructions shall include name of vendor, installation instructions, parts numbers and lists, operation instructions of equipment, and maintenance and lubrication instructions.
          - (3) Summary list of mechanical equipment requiring lubrication showing name of equipment, location, and type and frequency of lubrication.
          - (4) Manual for Honeywell T7350 thermostat published by Honeywell.
        - c) Provide operating instructions to include:
          - (1) General description of each HVAC system.
          - (2) Step by step procedure to follow in putting each piece of HVAC equipment into operation.
          - (3) Provide diagrams for electrical control system showing wiring of items such as smoke detectors, fuses, interlocks, electrical switches, and relays.
      - b. Warranty Documentation:
        - 1) Include copies of warranties required in individual Sections of Division 23.
      - c. Record Documentation:
        - 1) Manufacturers documentation:
          - a) Copies of approved shop drawings.

### 1.3 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Regulatory Agency Sustainability Approvals:
  1. Perform work in accordance with applicable provisions of Gas Ordinances applicable to Project. Provide materials and labor necessary to comply with rules, regulations, and ordinances.
  2. In case of differences between building codes, laws, local ordinances, utility company regulations, and Contract Documents, the most stringent shall govern. Notify Architect in writing of such differences before performing work affected by such differences.
  3. Identification:
    - a. Motor and equipment name plates as well as applicable UL / ULC and AGA / CGA labels shall be in place when Project is turned over to Owner.
- B. Qualifications: Requirements of Section 01 4301 applies, but not limited to following:
  1. Company:
    - a. Company specializing in performing work of this section.
      - 1) Minimum five (5) years experience in HVAC installations.
      - 2) Minimum five (5) satisfactorily completed installations in past three (3) years of projects similar in size, scope, and complexity required for this project before bidding.
    - b. Upon request, submit documentation.
  2. Installer:
    - a. Licensed for area of Project.
    - b. Designate one (1) individual as project foremen who shall be on site at all times during installation and experienced with installation procedures required for this project.
    - c. Upon request, submit documentation.



## 1.4 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Delivery And Acceptance Requirements:
  - 1. Accept valves on site in shipping containers with labeling in place.
- B. Storage And Handling Requirements:
  - 1. In addition to requirements specified in Division 01:
    - a. Stored material shall be readily accessible for inspection by Architect until installed.
    - b. Store items subject to moisture damage, such as controls, in dry, heated spaces.
    - c. Provide temporary protective coating on cast iron and steel valves.
    - d. Provide temporary end caps and closures on piping and fittings. Maintain in place until installation.
  - 2. Protect bearings during installation. Thoroughly grease steel shafts to prevent corrosion.

## 1.5 WARRANTY

- A. Manufacturer Warranty:
  - 1. Provide certificates of warranty for each piece of equipment made out in favor of Owner. Clearly record 'start-up' date of each piece of equipment on certificate.
- B. Special Warranty:
  - 1. Guarantee HVAC systems to be free from noise in operation that may develop from failure to construct system in accordance with Contract Documents.
  - 2. If HVAC sub-contractor with offices located more than 150 miles (240 km) from Project site is used, provide service / warranty work agreement for warranty period with local HVAC sub-contractor approved by Architect. Include copy of service / warranty agreement in warranty section of Operation And Maintenance Manual.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 COMPONENTS

- A. Components shall bear Manufacturer's name and trade name. Equipment and materials of same general type shall be of same make throughout work to provide uniform appearance, operation, and maintenance.
- B. Pipe And Pipe Fittings:
  - 1. Use domestic made pipe and pipe fittings on Project.
  - 2. Weld-O-Let and Screw-O-Let fittings are acceptable.
- C. Sleeves:
  - 1. In Framing: Standard weight galvanized iron pipe, Schedule 40 PVC, or 14 ga (2 mm) galvanized sheet metal two sizes larger than bare pipe or insulation on insulated pipe.
  - 2. In Concrete And Masonry: Sleeves through outside walls, interior shear walls, and footings shall be schedule 80 black steel pipe with welded plate.
- D. Valves:
  - 1. Valves of same type shall be of same manufacturer.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 INSTALLERS

- A. Approved Installers. See Section 01 6200 for definitions of Categories:

- B. Acceptable Installers. See Section 01 4301:
  - 1. Meet Quality Assurance Installer Qualifications as specified in Part 1 of this specification.

### 3.2 EXAMINATION

- A. Drawings:
  - 1. HVAC Drawings show general arrangement of piping, ductwork, equipment, etc. Follow as closely as actual building construction and work of other trades will permit.
  - 2. Consider Architectural and Structural Drawings part of this work insofar as these drawings furnish information relating to design and construction of building. These drawings take precedence over HVAC Drawings.
  - 3. Because of small scale of Drawings, it is not possible to indicate all offsets, fittings, and accessories that may be required. Investigate structural and finish conditions affecting this work and arrange work accordingly, providing such fittings, valves, and accessories required to meet conditions.
- B. Verification Of Conditions:
  - 1. Examine premises to understand conditions that may affect performance of work of this Division before submitting proposals for this work. Examine adjoining work on which mechanical work is dependent for efficiency and report work that requires correction.
  - 2. No subsequent allowance for time or money will be considered for any consequence related to failure to examine site conditions.
  - 3. Ensure that items to be furnished fit space available. Make necessary field measurements to ascertain space requirements including those for connections and furnish and install equipment of size and shape so final installation shall suit true intent and meaning of Contract Documents. If approval is received by Addendum or Change Order to use other than originally specified items, be responsible for specified capacities and for ensuring that items to be furnished will fit space available.
  - 4. Check that slots and openings provided under other Divisions through floors, walls, ceilings, and roofs are properly located. Perform cutting and patching caused by neglecting to coordinate with Divisions providing slots and openings at no additional cost to Owner.

### 3.3 PREPARATION

- A. Changes Due To Equipment Selection:
  - 1. Where equipment specified or otherwise approved requires different arrangement or connections from that shown in Contract Documents, submit drawings, if requested by Architect, showing proposed installations.
  - 2. If proposed changes are approved, install equipment to operate properly and in harmony with intent of Contract Documents. Make incidental changes in piping, ductwork, supports, installation, wiring, heaters, panelboards, and as otherwise necessary.
  - 3. Provide any additional motors, valves, controllers, fittings, and other additional equipment required for proper operation of system resulting from selection of equipment.
  - 4. Be responsible for the proper location of roughing-in and connections provided under other Divisions.

### 3.4 INSTALLATION

- A. Interface With Other Work:
  - 1. Furnish sleeves, inserts, supports, and equipment that are to be installed by others in sufficient time to be incorporated into construction as work proceeds. Locate these items and see they are properly installed.
  - 2. Electrical: Furnish exact location of electrical connections and complete information on motor controls to installer of electrical system.
  - 3. Testing And Balancing:

- a. Put HVAC systems into full operation and continue their operation during each working day of testing and balancing.
  - b. Make changes in pulleys, belts, fan speeds, and dampers or add dampers as required for correct balance as recommended by Testing And Balancing Agency and at no additional cost to Owner.
- B. Cut carefully to minimize necessity for repairs to previously installed or existing work. Do not cut beams, columns, or trusses.
- C. Locating Equipment:
1. Arrange pipes, ducts, and equipment to permit ready access to valves, cocks, unions, traps, filters, starters, motors, control components, and to clear openings of doors and access panels.
  2. Adjust locations of pipes, ducts, switches, panels, and equipment to accommodate work to interferences anticipated and encountered.
  3. Install HVAC work to permit removal of equipment and parts of equipment requiring periodic replacement or maintenance without damage to or interference with other parts of equipment or structure.
  4. Determine exact route and location of each pipe and duct before fabrication.
    - a. Right-Of-Way:
      - 1) Lines that pitch shall have right-of-way over those that do not pitch. For example, steam, steam condensate, and drains shall normally have right-of-way.
      - 2) Lines whose elevations cannot be changed shall have right-of-way over lines whose elevations can be changed.
    - b. Offsets, Transitions, and Changes in Direction:
      - 1) Make offsets, transitions, and changes in direction in pipes and ducts as required to maintain proper head room and pitch of sloping lines whether or not indicated on Drawings.
      - 2) Furnish and install all traps, air vents, sanitary vents, and devices as required to effect these offsets, transitions, and changes in direction.
- D. Piping:
1. Furnish and install complete system of piping, valved as indicated or as necessary to completely control entire apparatus.
    - a. Pipe drawings are diagrammatic and indicate general location and connections. Piping may have to be offset, lowered, or raised as required or directed at site. This does not relieve this Division from responsibility for proper erection of systems of piping in every respect.
    - b. Arrange piping to not interfere with removal of other equipment, ducts, or devices, or block access to doors, windows, or access openings.
      - 1) Arrange so as to facilitate removal of tube bundles.
      - 2) Provide accessible flanges or ground joint unions, as applicable for type of piping specified, at connections to equipment and on bypasses.
        - a) Make connections of dissimilar metals with di-electric unions.
        - b) Install valves and unions ahead of traps and strainers. Provide unions on both sides of traps.
      - 3) Do not use reducing bushings, street elbows, bull head tees, close nipples, or running couplings.
      - 4) Install piping systems so they may be easily drained. Provide drain valves at low points and manual air vents at high points in hot water heating and cooling water piping.
      - 5) Install piping to insure noiseless circulation.
      - 6) Place valves and specialties to permit easy operation and access. Valves shall be regulated, packed, and glands adjusted at completion of work before final acceptance.
    - c. Do not install piping in shear walls.
  2. Properly make adequate provisions for expansion, contraction, slope, and anchorage.
    - a. Cut piping accurately for fabrication to measurements established at site. Remove burr and cutting slag from pipes.
    - b. Work piping into place without springing or forcing. Make piping connections to pumps and other equipment without strain at piping connection. Remove bolts in flanged connections or disconnect piping to demonstrate that piping has been so connected, if requested.
    - c. Make changes in direction with proper fittings.
    - d. Expansion of Thermoplastic Pipe:

- 1) Provide for expansion in every **30 feet (9 meters)** of straight run.
  - 2) Provide **12 inch (300 mm)** offset below roof line in each vent line penetrating roof.
  3. Provide sleeves around pipes passing through concrete or masonry floors, walls, partitions, or structural members. Do not place sleeves around soil, waste, vent, or roof drain lines passing through concrete floors on grade. Seal sleeves with specified sealants.
    - a. Sleeves through floors shall extend **1/4 inch (6 mm)** above floor finish in mechanical equipment rooms above basement floor. In other rooms, sleeves shall be flush with floor.
    - b. Sleeves through floors and foundation walls shall be watertight.
  4. Provide spring clamp plates (escutcheons) where pipes run through walls, floors, or ceilings and are exposed in finished locations of building. Plates shall be chrome plated heavy brass of plain pattern and shall be set tight on pipe and to building surface.
  5. Remove dirt, grease, and other foreign matter from each length of piping before installation.
    - a. After each section of piping used for movement of water or steam is installed, flush with clean water, except where specified otherwise.
    - b. Arrange temporary flushing connections for each section of piping and arrange for flushing total piping system.
    - c. Provide temporary cross connections and water supply for flushing and drainage and remove after completion of work.
- E. Penetration Firestops: Install Penetration Firestop System appropriate for penetration at HVAC system penetrations through walls, ceilings, roofs, and top plates of walls.
- F. Sealants:
1. Seal openings through building exterior caused by penetrations of elements of HVAC systems.
  2. Furnish and install acoustical sealant to seal penetrations through acoustically insulated walls and ceilings.

### 3.5 REPAIR / RESTORATION

- A. Each Section of this Division shall bear expense of cutting, patching, repairing, and replacing of work of other Sections required because of its fault, error, tardiness, or because of damage done by it.
1. Patch and repair walls, floors, ceilings, and roofs with materials of same quality and appearance as adjacent surfaces unless otherwise shown.
  2. Surface finishes shall exactly match existing finishes of same materials.

### 3.6 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Field Tests:
1. Perform tests on HVAC piping systems. Furnish devices required for testing purposes.
- B. Non-Conforming Work:
1. Replace material or workmanship proven defective with sound material at no additional cost to Owner.
  2. Repeat tests on new material, if requested.

### 3.7 SYSTEM START-UP

- A. Off-Season Start-up:
1. If Substantial Completion inspection occurs during heating season, schedule spring start-up of cooling systems. If inspection occurs during cooling season, schedule autumn start-up for heating systems.
  2. Notify Owner seven days minimum before scheduled start-up.
  3. Time will be allowed to completely service, test, check, and off-season start systems. During allowed time, train Owner's representatives in operation and maintenance of system.
  4. At end of off-season start-up, furnish Owner with letter confirming that above work has been satisfactorily completed.

- B. Preparations that are to be completed before start up and operation include, but are not limited to, following:
  - 1. Dry out electric motors and other equipment to develop and properly maintain constant insulation resistance.
  - 2. Make adjustments to insure that:
    - a. Equipment alignments and clearances are adjusted to allowable tolerances.
    - b. Nuts and bolts and other types of anchors and fasteners are properly and securely fastened.
    - c. Packed, gasketed, and other types of joints are properly made up and are tight and free from leakage.
    - d. Miscellaneous alignments, tightenings, and adjustments are completed so systems are tight and free from leakage and equipment performs as intended.
  - 3. Motors and accessories are completely operable.
  - 4. Inspect and test electrical circuitry, connections, and voltages to be properly connected and free from shorts.
  - 5. Adjust drives for proper alignment and tension.
  - 6. Make certain filters in equipment for moving air are new and of specified type.
  - 7. Properly lubricate and run-in bearings in accordance with Manufacturer's directions and recommendations.

### 3.8 CLEANING

- A. Clean exposed piping, ductwork, and equipment.
- B. No more than one week before Final Inspection, flush out bearings and clean other lubricated surfaces with flushing oil. Provide best quality and grade of lubricant specified by Equipment Manufacturer.
- C. Replace filters in equipment for moving air with new filters of specified type no more than one week before Final Inspection.

### 3.9 CLOSEOUT ACTIVITIES

- A. Instruction Of Owner:
  - 1. Instruct building maintenance personnel and Stake Physical Facilities Representative in operation and maintenance of mechanical systems utilizing Operation And Maintenance Manual when so doing:
    - a. Minimum Instruction Periods:
      - 1) HVAC: Eight (8) hours.
      - 2) Temperature Control: Six (6) hours.
      - 3) Refrigeration: Four (4) hours.
    - b. Conduct instruction periods after Substantial Completion inspection when systems are properly working and before final payment is made. None of these instructional periods shall overlap another.

### 3.10 PROTECTION

- A. Protect piping systems from entry of foreign materials by temporary covers, completing sections of the work, and isolating parts of completed system. Cap or plug open ends of pipes and equipment to keep dirt and other foreign materials out of system. Do not use plugs of rags, wool, cotton waste, or similar materials.
- B. Do not operate pieces of equipment used for moving supply air without proper air filters installed properly in system.
- C. After start-up, continue necessary lubrication and be responsible for damage to bearings while equipment is being operated up to Substantial Completion.

**END OF SECTION**

**SECTION 23 0529****HANGERS AND SUPPORTS FOR HVAC PIPING AND EQUIPMENT****PART 1 - GENERAL****1.1 SUMMARY**

- A. Includes But Not Limited To:
  - 1. Common hanger and support requirements and procedures for HVAC systems.
- B. Related Requirements:
  - 1. Section 05 0523: 'Metal Fastening' for quality and requirements for welding.
  - 2. Section 07 8400: 'Firestopping' for quality of Penetration Firestop Systems to be used on Project and submittal requirements.
  - 3. Slots and openings through floors, walls, ceilings, and roofs provided under other Divisions in their respective materials.
- C. Products Installed But Not Furnished Under This Section:
  - 1. Stencils and band colors of gas piping used in HVAC equipment.
- D. Related Requirements:
  - 1. Section 09 9124: 'Interior Painted Metal' for providing field painting of identification of piping used with HVAC equipment.
  - 2. Section 23 0553: 'Identification For HVAC Piping And Equipment' for HVAC piping and equipment identification signage requirements.
  - 3. Sections Under 09 9000 Heading: Painting of mechanical items requiring field painting.

**1.2 ADMINISTRATIVE REQUIREMENTS**

- A. Coordination:
  - 1. Section 09 9124 to coordinate with Section 23 0529 for location of identification of HVAC piping and equipment to be field painted and Section 23 0553 for painting requirements of HVAC piping and equipment.
  - 2. Section 23 0529 to coordinate with Section 23 0553 for stencil and band color locations and identification requirements of HVAC piping and equipment for field application.

**1.3 SUBMITTALS**

- A. Action Submittals:
  - 1. Product Data:
    - a. Manufacturer's catalog data for each manufactured item.

**PART 2 - PRODUCTS****2.1 ASSEMBLIES**

- A. Manufacturers:
  - 1. Class Two Quality Standard Approved Manufacturers. See Section 01 6200:
    - a. Anvil International, Portsmouth, NH [www.anvilintl.com](http://www.anvilintl.com).
    - b. Cooper B-Line, Highland, IL [www.cooperblineline.com](http://www.cooperblineline.com).
    - c. Erico International, Solon, OH [www.erico.com](http://www.erico.com).
    - d. Hilti Inc, Tulsa, OK [www.hilti.com](http://www.hilti.com).

- e. Minerallac, Hampshire, IL [www.minerallac.com](http://www.minerallac.com).
- f. Thomas & Betts, Memphis, TN [www.superstrut.com](http://www.superstrut.com).
- g. Unistrut, Wayne, MI [www.unistrut.com](http://www.unistrut.com).

B. Performance:

1. Design Criteria:

- a. Support rods for single pipe shall be in accordance with following table:

Rod Diameter	Pipe Size	Rod Diameter	Pipe Size
3/8 inch	2 inches and smaller	10 mm	50 mm and smaller
1/2 inch	2-1/2 to 3-1/2 inches	13 mm	63 mm to 88 mm
5/8 inch	4 to 5 inches	16 mm	100 mm to 125 mm
3/4 inch	6 inches	19 mm	150 mm
7/8 inch	8 to 12 inches	22 mm	200 mm to 300 mm

- b. Support rods for multiple pipes supported on steel angle trapeze hangers shall be in accordance with following table:

Rods		Number of Pipes per Hanger for Each Pipe Size						
No.	Diameter	2 Inch	2.5 Inch	3 Inch	4 Inch	5 Inch	6 Inch	8 Inch
2	3/8 Inch	Two	0	0	0	0	0	0
2	1/2 Inch	Three	Three	Two	0	0	0	0
2	5/8 Inch	Six	Four	Three	Two	0	0	0
2	5/8 Inch	Nine	Seven	Five	Three	Two	Two	0
2	5/8 Inch	Twelve	Nine	Seven	Five	Three	Two	Two

Rods		Number of Pipes per Hanger for Each Pipe Size						
No.	Diameter	50mm	63mm	75mm	100mm	125mm	150mm	200mm
2	10 mm	Two	0	0	0	0	0	0
2	13 mm	Three	Three	Two	0	0	0	0
2	16 mm	Six	Four	Three	Two	0	0	0
2	19 mm	Nine	Seven	Five	Three	Two	Two	0
2	22 mm	Twelve	Nine	Seven	Five	Three	Two	Two

- 1) Size trapeze angles so bending stress is less than 10,000 psi (69 Mpa).

C. Materials:

1. Hangers, Rods, Channels, Attachments, And Inserts:

- a. Galvanized and UL approved for service intended.
- b. Support horizontal piping from clevis hangers or on roller assemblies with channel supports, except where trapeze type hangers are explicitly shown on Drawings. Hangers shall have double nuts.
- c. Class Two Quality Standards:
  - 1) Support insulated pipes with clevis hanger equal to Anvil Fig 260 or roller assembly equal to Anvil Fig 171 with an insulation protection shield equal to Anvil Fig 167. Gauge and length of shield shall be in accordance with Anvil design data.
  - 2) Except uninsulated copper pipes, support uninsulated pipes from clevis hanger equal to Anvil Fig 260. Support uninsulated copper pipe from hanger equal to Anvil Fig CT-65 copper plated hangers and otherwise fully suitable for use with copper tubing.
- d. Riser Clamps For Vertical Piping:
  - 1) Class Two Quality Standard: Anvil Figure 261.
- e. Furnace / Fan Coil Support Channel:
  - 1) Class One Quality Standard: Unistrut P1000.
  - 2) Acceptable Manufacturers: Hilti, Thomas & Betts.
  - 3) Equal as approved by Architect before installation. See Section 01 6200.
- f. Swivel Attachment:
  - 1) Class One Quality Standard: Unistrut EM3127.
  - 2) Acceptable Manufacturers: Hilti, Thomas & Betts.
  - 3) Equal as approved by Architect before installation. See Section 01 6200.



## EXECUTION

### 2.2 INSTALLATION

#### A. Piping:

1. Properly support piping and make adequate provisions for expansion, contraction, slope, and anchorage.
  - a. Except for underground pipe, suspend piping from roof trusses or clamp to vertical walls using support channels and clamps. Do not hang pipe from other pipe, equipment, or ductwork. Laying of piping on any building element is not allowed.
  - b. Supports For Horizontal Piping:
    - 1) Support metal piping at **96 inches (2 400)** mm on center maximum for pipe **1-1/4 inches (32 mm)** or larger and **72 inches (1 800 mm)** on center maximum for pipe **1-1/8 inch (28 mm)** or less.
    - 2) Support thermoplastic pipe at **48 inches (1 200 mm)** on center maximum.
    - 3) Provide support at each elbow. Install additional support as required.
  - c. Supports for Vertical Piping:
    - 1) Place riser clamps at each floor or ceiling level.
    - 2) Securely support clamps by structural members, which in turn are supported directly from building structure.
    - 3) Provide clamps as necessary to brace pipe to wall.
  - d. Insulate hangers for copper pipe from piping by means of at least two layers of Scotch 33 plastic tape.
  - e. Expansion of Thermoplastic Pipe:
    - 1) Provide for expansion in every **30 feet (9 meters)** of straight run.
    - 2) Provide **12 inch (300 mm)** offset below roof line in each vent line penetrating roof.

**END OF SECTION**

**SECTION 23 0548****VIBRATION AND SEISMIC CONTROL FOR HVAC PIPING AND EQUIPMENT****PART 1 - GENERAL****1.1 SUMMARY**

- A. Includes But Not Limited To:
  - 1. Quality of and requirements for anchorage and seismic restraint systems and vibration isolation systems for HVAC piping and equipment.
- B. Related Requirements:
  - 1. Section 03 3053: 'Miscellaneous Exterior Cast-In-Place Concrete'.
  - 2. Furnishing and installing of seismic restraint and vibration isolation systems is by installer of equipment requiring such systems. Manufacturers of equipment specified for seismic restraint shall provide product data needed for calculation of seismic restraint needs. This information shall include, but not be limited to, equipment dimensions, dimensioned anchor points, operating weight, and center of gravity dimension.

**1.2 REFERENCES**

- A. Association Publications:
  - 1. Federal Emergency Management Agency (FEMA) / Vibration Isolation and Seismic Control Manufacturers Association (VISCMA) / American Society of Civil Engineers (ASCE):
    - a. FEMA 412, 'Installing Seismic Restraints For Mechanical Equipment' (December 2002).
  - 2. Vibration Isolation and Seismic Control Manufacturers Association (VISCMA):
    - a. VISCMA 101-12, 'Seismic Restraint Specification Guidelines for Mechanical, Electrical, and Plumbing Systems'.
    - b. VISCMA 102-12, 'Vibration Isolation Specification Guidelines for Mechanical, Electrical, and Plumbing Systems'.
- B. Definitions:
  - 1. Vibration Isolation: Vibration reduction in which an isolation system is placed between the source of unwanted vibration and an item which needs to be shielded from the vibration.
- C. Reference Standards:
  - 1. American National Standards Institute / Sheet Metal And Air Conditioning Contractors' National Association:
    - a. ANSI/SMACNA 001-2008, 'Seismic Restraint Manual: Guidelines For Mechanical Systems' (3rd Edition).
  - 2. American Society of Civil Engineers / Structural Engineering Institute:
    - a. ASCE/SEI 7-16, 'Minimum Design Loads for Buildings and Other Structures'.
      - 1) Chapter 13, 'Seismic Design Requirements For Nonstructural Components'.
  - 3. American Society of Heating, Refrigerating and Air-Conditioning Engineers (ASHRAE):
    - a. 2015 ASHRAE Handbook - HVAC Applications.
      - 1) Chapter 48, 'Noise and Vibration Control'.
      - 2) Chapter 55, 'Seismic- and Wind-Resistant Design'.
  - 4. ASTM International:
    - a. ASTM A615/A615M-18, 'Standard Specification for Deformed and Plain Carbon Steel Bars for Concrete Reinforcement'.

**1.3 SUBMITTALS**

- A. Action Submittals:

1. Product Data:
  - a. Restraint system and anchorage method to be used for each piece of equipment.
  - b. Seismic restraints and calculations for all flexible mounted equipment.
  - c. Vibration isolators and flexible couplings.
  - d. Clearly outlined procedures for installing and adjusting isolators, seismic bracing anchors, and snubbers.
2. Shop Drawings:
  - a. Show size, hanger length, and location of seismic restraints for piping and ductwork.
  - b. Show details for each isolator and seismic brace with snubbers proposed for specified equipment.
  - c. Show details for proposed structural steel frames and rails and for anchors to be used in conjunction with isolation of equipment.
  - d. Show locations of piping and ductwork restraints on installation and fabrication floor plans (not bid set of documents of floor plans), noting size and type of restraint to be used.
  - e. Show details of supports, hangers, anchorage, and bracing for isolated equipment as designed or proposed by professional engineer employed by Restraint Manufacturer and qualified with seismic experience in bracing for mechanical equipment. Shop drawings submitted for seismic bracing and anchors shall bear engineer's signed professional seal.
  - f. Include anchor bolt calculations, signed and stamped by registered engineer, showing adequacy of bolt sizing and type.
    - 1) Calculations shall include anchor embedment, minimum edge distance and minimum center distance.
    - 2) Design lateral forces shall be distributed in proportion to mass distribution of equipment.
    - 3) Furnish calculations for anchors on restraint devices, cable, isolators, and on rigidly mounted equipment.

#### 1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Regulatory Agency Sustainability Approvals:
  1. System design and installation shall meet seismic requirements as defined in ASCE/SEI 7-10, 'Minimum Design Loads for Buildings and Other Structures' and applicable state and local codes in accordance with minimum restraint capability of 1.0 g.

### PART 2 - PRODUCTS

#### 2.1 ASSEMBLIES

- A. Manufacturers:
  1. Type One Acceptable Manufacturers:
    - a. Amber / Booth Company, Houston, TX [www.amberbooth.com](http://www.amberbooth.com).
    - b. Mason Industries Inc, Hauppauge, NY [www.mason-ind.com](http://www.mason-ind.com).
    - c. Vibration Mountings and Control Inc, Bloomington, NJ (201) 838-1780.
    - d. Equal as approved by Architect before bidding. See Section 01 6200.
- B. Performance:
  1. Design Criteria:
    - a. Isolation And Seismic Equipment:
      - 1) Piping: Restrain piping in accordance with ANSI/SMACNA 001 Seismic Restraint Manual, Chapter 4, Figures 4.11 to 4.19.
      - 2) Equipment with Fixed Anchor or Support:
        - a) Restraint designed according to ASCE/SEI 7-10, Chapter 13, 'Seismic Design Requirements For Nonstructural Components'.
        - b) Horizontal force factor for elements of structures:
          - (1) In addition, vertical force restraint requirement shall be computed at 1/2 value of horizontal forces.

- (2) Restrain equipment not anchored directly to floors by cable system designed and furnished by Restraint Manufacturer.
- 3) Ductwork: Restrain ductwork in accordance with ANSI/SMACNA 001 Seismic Restraint Manual, Chapter 4, Figures 4.2 to 4.10 as appropriate.
- b. Vibration Isolation Requirements:
  - 1) Isolate equipment from structure by means of resilient vibration and noise isolators.
  - 2) Unless otherwise noted, isolate HVAC equipment one horsepower and over from structure by means of resilient vibration and noise isolators in accordance with ASHRAE 'Handbook - HVAC Applications', Chapter 48, Table 1, 'Design Guidelines for HVAC-Related Background Sound in Rooms'.
  - 3) Design and install isolation equipment, hangers, connections, and other isolating devices to prevent transmission of vibration to structure from equipment and associated piping and ductwork.
  - 4) For floor-mounted equipment, use recommendations with ASHRAE 'Handbook - HVAC Applications', Chapter 48, Table 1, 'Design Guidelines for HVAC-Related Background Sound in Rooms'.
  - 5) For roofs and floors constructed with open web joints, thin long span slabs, wooden construction and unusual light weight construction, evaluate equipment weighing more than 300 pounds to determine additional deflection of structure caused by equipment weight. Isolator deflection shall be 15 times additional deflection or deflection shown in ASHRAE 'Handbook - HVAC Applications', Chapter 48, Table 1, 'Design Guidelines for HVAC-Related Background Sound in Rooms', whichever is greater.
  - 6) Under-Equipment Spring Isolators:
    - a) Equal to Mason SSLFH earthquake motion restrained spring mounts with freestanding stable steel springs, leveling bolts, corrosion resistant finish, motion limiting design, uplift restraining bolts, and **1/4 inch (6 mm)** ribbed neoprene noise stop pad.
    - b) Isolators shall accept force in any direction up to 1.0 g without failure, and shall limit movement to **3/4 inch (19 mm)** in any direction.
    - c) Springs shall have 50 percent overload capacity.
    - d) Size as required to achieve specified static deflection.
    - e) Outer diameter of spring proper shall not be less than 0.8 of spring height when in loaded position.
  - 7) Overhead Support Spring And Rubber Hangers:
    - a) Combination spring and neoprene hangers.
    - b) Hanger bracket shall have 500 percent overload capability and shall allow up to 15 degree hanger rod misalignment without short-circuiting.
    - c) Springs shall have 50 percent overload capacity.
    - d) Provide seismic bracing as required.
  - 8) Isolate piping and ductwork in mechanical equipment room and piping and ductwork three supports away or **50 feet (15 meters)** from other mechanical equipment, whichever is greater, from structure by means of vibration and noise isolators.
    - a) Isolate suspended piping with combination spring and fiberglass hangers in supporting rods.
    - b) Support floor-mounted piping directly on spring mounts.
  - 9) Isolate vertical pipe risers from structure using vibration and noise isolating expansion hangers having minimum rated deflection of four times anticipated pipe movement. Enclose in housing for fail-safe equipment.
  - 10) Incorporate flexible connectors in piping adjacent to reciprocating equipment.
  - 11) Incorporate flexible connections in ductwork adjacent to air-moving units.
  - 12) Elastomeric Isolator: Neoprene or high quality synthetic rubber with anti-ozone and anti-oxidant additives.
  - 13) Nuts, Bolts, And Washers: Electroplated zinc.
  - 14) Isolators Exposed To Weather: Cadmium plated and neoprene coated springs.
- c. Seismic Requirements:
  - 1) Mechanical equipment, piping, and ductwork shall be braced, snubbed, or supported to withstand seismic disturbances and remain operational.
  - 2) Seismic restraint equipment and resilient isolation devices shall be designed and furnished by single Manufacturer:

- C. Finishes:
  - 1. Clean and paint steel components. Thoroughly clean structural steel bases of welding slag and prime with zinc-chromate or metal etching primer. Etch and paint hot dipped galvanized steel components.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 INSTALLATION

- A. Isolation Equipment:
  - 1. Mount vibration isolated equipment on rigid steel frames or concrete bases unless Equipment Manufacturer certifies direct attachment capability.
  - 2. Install snubbers with factory set clearances.
  - 3. Piping:
    - a. Protect isolated and non-isolated piping **2-1/2 inches (64 mm)** inside diameter and larger in all planes by restraints to accommodate thermal movement as well as restrain seismic motions.
    - b. Locations shall be as scheduled and include, but not be limited to:
      - 1) At drops to equipment and at flexible connections.
      - 2) At 45 degree or greater changes in direction of pipe.
      - 3) At horizontal runs of pipe **30 feet (9.15 m)** maximum on center spacing.
      - 4) Gas piping shall have additional restraints as scheduled.
  - 4. Ductwork:
    - a. Protect isolated and non-isolated rectangular ductwork **4 feet square (0.372 sq m)** in cross-sectional area and larger in all planes by restraints to accommodate thermal movement as well as restrain seismic motion.
    - b. Locations shall be determined by Seismic Restraint Manufacturer and include, but not be limited to:
      - 1) Horizontal runs of ductwork **30 feet (9.15 m)** maximum on center spacing.
      - 2) 45 degree or greater changes in direction of ductwork.
      - 3) Each end of duct runs and drops of equipment.
      - 4) Each flexible connection.
- B. Vibration Isolation: Install piping and ductwork to prevent transmission of noise and vibration into structure.

**END OF SECTION**

**SECTION 23 0553****IDENTIFICATION FOR HVAC PIPING AND EQUIPMENT****PART 1 - GENERAL****1.1 SUMMARY**

- A. Products Furnished But not Installed Under This Section:
1. Identification of HVAC piping and equipment as described in Contract Documents including:
    - a. Paint identification for gas piping used in HVAC equipment.
    - b. Stencils and band colors for gas piping used in HVAC equipment.
- B. Related Requirements:
1. Section 09 9124: 'Interior Painted Metal' for providing field painting of identification of piping used with HVAC equipment.
  2. Section 22 0529: 'Hangers And Supports For Plumbing' for field installation of pipe stencils and band colors for identification for piping used with HVAC equipment.

**PART 2 - PRODUCTS****2.1 SYSTEMS**

- A. Description:
1. Abbreviations for Pipe Stencils and Equipment Identification and Band Colors for Pipe Identification:
    - a. Apply stenciled symbols and continuous painting as follows:
 

Pipe Type	Pipe Color	Symbol
Gas	Yellow	GAS
- B. Materials:
1. Category Four Approved Products and Manufacturers. See Section 01 6200 for definitions of Categories:
    - a. Products listed in edition of MPI Approved Product List current at time of bidding and later are approved, providing they meet VOC requirements in force where Project is located.
  2. Description:
    - a. Ferrous Metal:
      - 1) New Surfaces: Use MPI(a) INT 5.1B Waterborne Light Industrial Finish system.
  3. Performance Requirements:
    - a. New Surfaces: MPI Premium Grade finish requirements.
    - b. Maintain specified colors, shades, and contrasts.
  4. Paint (one coat):
    - a. Primer:
      - 1) Ferrous Metal:
        - a) MPI 107, 'Primer, Rust-Inhibitive, Water Based'.  
(1) Color: white.
    - b. Finish Coat (two coats):
      - 1) Ferrous Metal:
        - a) MPI 153, 'Light Industrial Coating, Interior, Water Based, Semi-Gloss (MPI Gloss Level 5)'.
  5. Labels:
    - a. Equipment Identification:
      - 1) Black formica, with white reveal when engraved.
      - 2) Lettering to be **3/16 inch (5 mm)** high minimum.

**PART 3 - EXECUTION****3.1 APPLICATION****A. Labels:**

1. Identify following items with specified labels fastened to equipment with screws (unless noted otherwise):
  - a. Thermostats and control panels in mechanical spaces (attach label to wall directly above or below thermostats).
  - b. Rooftop Units.
  - c. Accessible exhaust fans.

**B. Painting:**

1. New Surfaces:
  - a. Remove rust spots by sanding and immediately spot prime. If all traces of rust cannot be removed, apply rust blocker recommended by Paint Manufacturer before applying full primer coat.
2. Leave equipment in like-new appearance.
3. Only painted legends, directional arrows, and color bands are acceptable.
4. Locate identifying legends, directional arrows, and color bands at following points on exposed piping of each piping system:
  - a. Adjacent to each item of equipment.
  - b. At point of entry and exit where piping goes through wall.
  - c. On each riser and junction.
  - d. Every **25 feet (7.620 m)** on long continuous lines.
  - e. Stenciled symbols shall be **one inch (25 mm)** high and black.

**END OF SECTION**

**SECTION 23 0713****DUCT INSULATION****PART 1 - GENERAL****1.1 SUMMARY**

- A. Includes But Not Limited To:
  - 1. Furnish and install thermal wrap duct insulation as described in Contract Documents.
- B. Related Requirements:
  - 1. Section 23 3114: 'Low-Pressure Metal Ducts'.
  - 2. Section 23 3300: 'Acoustic Duct Accessories' for duct liner.

**PART 2 - PRODUCTS****2.1 MANUFACTURERS**

- A. Manufacturer Contact List:
  - 1. Certainteed St Gobain, Valley Forge, PA [www.certainteed.com](http://www.certainteed.com).
  - 2. Johns-Manville, Denver, CO [www.jm.com](http://www.jm.com).
  - 3. Knauf Fiber Glass, Shelbyville, IN [www.knauffiberglass.com](http://www.knauffiberglass.com) or Toronto, ON (416) 593-4322.
  - 4. Manson Insulation Inc, Brossard, QB [www.isolationmanson.com](http://www.isolationmanson.com).
  - 5. Owens-Corning, Toledo, OH or Owens-Corning Canada Inc, Willowdale, ON [www.owenscorning.com](http://www.owenscorning.com).

**2.2 MATERIALS**

- A. Thermal Wrap Duct Insulation:
  - 1. 1-1/2 inch (38 mm) or 3 inch (76 mm) thick fiberglass with factory-laminated, reinforced aluminum foil scrim kraft facing and density of 0.75 lb / per cu ft (12 kg / per cu m).
  - 2. Thermal Conductivity: 0.27 BTU in/HR SF deg F at 75 deg F (24 deg C) maximum.
  - 3. Type One Acceptable Products:
    - a. Type 75 standard duct insulation by Certainteed St Gobain.
    - b. Microlite FSK by Johns-Manville.
    - c. Duct Wrap FSK by Knauf Fiber Glass.
    - d. Alley Wrap FSK by Manson Insulation Inc.
    - e. FRK by Owens-Corning.
    - f. Equal as approved by Architect before bidding. See Section 01 6200.

**PART 3 - EXECUTION****3.1 INSTALLATION**

- A. Thermal Wrap Duct Insulation:
  - 1. Install insulation as follows:
    - a. Within Building Insulation Envelope:
      - 1) 1-1/2 inches (38 mm) thick on rectangular outside air ducts and combustion air ducts.
      - 2) 1-1/2 inches (38 mm) thick on all round ducts.
    - b. Outside Building Insulation Envelope:
      - 1) 3 inch (76 mm) thick on round supply and return air ducts.



- 2) 1-1/2 inch (38 mm) thick on rectangular, acoustically lined, supply and return air ducts.
2. Wrap insulation tightly on ductwork with circumferential joints butted and longitudinal joints overlapped minimum 2 inches (50 mm).
  - a. Do not compress insulation except in areas of structural interference. Minimum thickness at corners shall be one inch (25 mm) thick.
  - b. Remove insulation from lap before stapling.
  - c. Staple seams at approximately 16 inches (400 mm) on center with outward clenching staples.
  - d. Seal seams with foil vapor barrier tape or vapor barrier mastic. Seal penetrations of facing to provide vapor tight system.
- B. Insulate outside of ceiling diffusers, diffuser drops, and duct silencers same as ductwork.

**END OF SECTION**

**SECTION 23 0719****HVAC PIPING INSULATION****PART 1 - GENERAL****1.1 SUMMARY**

- A. Includes But Not Limited To:
1. Furnish and install insulation on above ground refrigerant piping and fittings as described in Contract Documents.
- B. Related Requirements:
1. Section 23 0501: 'General HVAC Requirements'.
  2. Section 23 2300: 'Refrigerant Piping'.

**1.2 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING**

- A. Storage And Handling Requirements:
1. Keep materials and work dry and free from damage.
  2. Replace wet or damaged materials at no additional cost to Owner.

**PART 2 - PRODUCTS****2.1 ASSEMBLIES**

- A. Manufacturers:
1. Manufacturer Contact List:
    - a. Armacell, Mebane, NC [www.armacell.com](http://www.armacell.com).
    - b. Childers Products Co, Eastlake, OH [www.fosterproducts.com](http://www.fosterproducts.com).
    - c. Foster Products Corp, Oakdale, MN [www.fosterproducts.com](http://www.fosterproducts.com).
    - d. Johns-Manville, Denver, CO [www.jm.com](http://www.jm.com).
    - e. Knauf, Shelbyville, IN [www.knauffiberglass.com](http://www.knauffiberglass.com).
    - f. Manson, Brossard, BC, Canada [www.isolationmanson.com](http://www.isolationmanson.com).
    - g. Nitron Industries, Thousand Oaks, CA [www.nitronindustries.com](http://www.nitronindustries.com).
    - h. Owens-Corning, Toledo, OH [www.owenscorning.com](http://www.owenscorning.com) or Owens-Corning Canada Inc, Willowdale, ON (416) 733-1600.
    - i. Ramco, Lawrenceville, NJ [www.ramco.com](http://www.ramco.com).
    - j. Nomac, Zebulon, NC [www.nomaco.com](http://www.nomaco.com).
    - k. Speedline Corp, Solon, OH [www.speedlinepvc.com](http://www.speedlinepvc.com).
- B. Materials:
1. Refrigeration Piping System:
    - a. Thickness:

Pipe Size, Outside Diameter	Insulation Thickness
One inch and smaller	1/2 Inch
1-1/8 to 2 inch	3/4 Inch

- 1) **One inch** sheet for fittings as recommended by Manufacturer.
- 2) Category Four Approved Products. See Section 01 6200 for definitions of Categories:
  - a) AP Armaflex 25/50 by Armacell.
  - b) Nitrolite by Nitron Industries. White only for exterior.
  - c) Nomaco K-Flex.

- b. Joint Sealer:
  - 1) Category Four Approved Products. See Section 01 6200 for definitions of Categories:
    - a) Armacell 520 by Armacell.
    - b) Namaco K-Flex R-373.
- c. Insulation Tape:
  - 1) Category Four Approved Products. See Section 01 6200 for definitions of Categories:
    - a) Armaflex AP Insul Tape by Armacell.
    - b) FT182 Tape by Nitron Industries.
    - c) Elastomeric Foamtape by Nomac K-Flex.
- d. Exterior Finish:
  - 1) For application to non-white, exterior insulation.
  - 2) Category Four Approved Products. See Section 01 6200 for definitions of Categories:
    - a) WB Armaflex Finish by Armacell.
    - b) R-374 Protective Coating by Nomaco K-Flex.

## **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

### **3.1 PREPARATION**

- A. Before application of insulating materials, brush clean surfaces to be insulated and make free from rust, scale, grease, dirt, moisture, and any other deleterious materials.
- B. Use drop cloths over equipment and structure to prevent adhesives and other materials spotting the work.

### **3.2 INSTALLATION**

- A. Refrigeration System Piping System:
  - 1. General:
    - a. Install insulation in snug contact with pipe.
      - 1) Insulate flexible pipe connectors.
      - 2) Insulate thermal expansion valves with insulating tape.
      - 3) Insulate fittings with sheet insulation and as recommended by Manufacturer.
    - b. Slip insulation on tubing before tubing sections and fittings are assembled keeping slitting of insulation to a minimum.
    - c. Do not install insulation on lines through clamp assembly of pipe support. Butt insulation up against sides of clamp assembly.
    - d. Stagger joints on layered insulation. Seal joints in insulation.
    - e. Install insulation exposed outside building so 'slit' joint seams are placed on bottom of pipe.
    - f. Paint exterior exposed, non-white insulation with two coats of specified exterior finish.
  - 2. System Requirements:
    - a. Condensing Units: Install insulation on above ground refrigerant suction piping and fittings, including thermal bulb, from thermal expansion valve.

### **3.3 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL**

- A. Non-Conforming Work:
  - 1. Method of installing insulation shall be subject to approval of Architect. Sloppy or unworkmanlike installations are not acceptable.

### **3.4 CLEANING**

- A. Leave premises thoroughly clean and free from insulating debris.

**3.5 PROTECTION**

- A. Protect insulation wherever leak from valve stem or other source might drip on insulated surface, with aluminum cover or shield rolled up at edges and sufficiently large in area and of shape that dripping will not splash on surrounding insulation.

**END OF SECTION**

**SECTION 23 0933****ELECTRIC AND ELECTRONIC CONTROL SYSTEM FOR HVAC****PART 1 - GENERAL****1.1 SUMMARY**

## A. Includes But Not Limited To:

1. Furnish and install automatic temperature control system as described in Contract Documents.
2. Furnish and install conductors and make connections to control devices, motors, and associated equipment.
3. Assist in air test and balance procedure.

## B. Related Requirements:

1. Section 01 4546: Duct testing, adjusting, and balancing of ductwork.
2. Section 23 0501: Common HVAC Requirements.
3. Section 23 3300: Furnishing and installing of temperature control dampers.
4. Division 26:
  - a. Furnishing and installing of raceway, conduit, and junction boxes, including pull wires, for temperature control system except as noted above.
  - b. Power wiring to magnetic starters, disconnect switches, and motors.
  - c. Motor starters and disconnect switches, unless integral with packaged equipment.

**1.2 SUBMITTALS**

## C. Action Submittals:

1. Product Data:
  - a. Installer to provide product literature or cut sheets for all products specified in Project.
  - b. Installer to provide questions of control equipment locations to Mechanical Engineer prior to installation.

## D. Informational Submittals:

1. Certificates:
  - a. Installer must provide 'Certificate of Sponsorship' signed from Approved Distributor with bid confirming Installer sponsorship.

## E. Closeout Submittals:

1. Include following in Operations And Maintenance Manual specified in Section 01 7800:
  - a. Operations and Maintenance Data:
    - 1) Leave with O&M Manual specified in Section 23 0501.
  - b. Record Documentation:
    - 1) Installer's 'Certificate of Sponsorship'.

**1.3 QUALITY ASSURANCE**

## F. Qualifications: Requirements of Section 01 4301 applies, but is not limited to the following:

1. Installer:
  - a. Before bidding, obtain sponsorship from a local, Approved Distributor specified under PART 2 PRODUCTS of this specification. Initial requirements for sponsorship are:
    - 1) Receive LCBS Connect product training from Approved Distributor.
    - 2) Installer to provide Distributor sponsorship by submitting 'Certificate of Sponsorship' as Informational Submittal with bid. Certificate available as Attachment in this Specification.

**PART 2 - PRODUCTS****2.1 SYSTEMS****G. Manufacturers:**

1. Manufacturer Contact List:
  - a. Air Products & Controls Ltd, Pontiac, MI [www.ap-c.com](http://www.ap-c.com).
  - b. Fire-Lite Alarms, Northford, CT [www.firelite.com](http://www.firelite.com).
  - c. Honeywell Inc, Minneapolis, MN [www.honeywell.com](http://www.honeywell.com).
    - 1) Primary Contact: Chris Brinkerhoff, (801) 550-3344, [chris.brinkerhoff@honeywell.com](mailto:chris.brinkerhoff@honeywell.com).
  - d. ICCA Firex, Carol Stream, IL [www.icca.invensys.com](http://www.icca.invensys.com).
  - e. Insul\_Guard, Salt Lake City, UT:
    - 1) Primary Contact: Dan Craner, (801) 518-3733, [insul\\_guard@comcast.net](mailto:insul_guard@comcast.net).
  - f. System Sensor, St Charles, IL [www.systemsensor.com](http://www.systemsensor.com).
  - g. Zimmerman Technologies, Renton, WA:
    - 1) Primary Contact: Tracy Zimmerman, (425) 255-1906, [zimmtech@yahoo.com](mailto:zimmtech@yahoo.com).

**H. Distributors: Obtain LCBS Connect control devices, RP panels, sensors, actuators and other control equipment from following Sponsoring Approved Distributors. See Section 01 4301:**

1. Colorado:
  - a. CD Jones: (720) 943 1495 [Mglaub@cdjones.com](mailto:Mglaub@cdjones.com) Mark Glaub
2. Idaho:
  - a. MI Controls: (503) 233-5501 [dave@micontrols.com](mailto:dave@micontrols.com) Dave Innocenti.
  - b. Building Controls & Solutions (801) 214-3313 [Kathy.Wright@Building-Controls.com](mailto:Kathy.Wright@Building-Controls.com) Kathy Wright .
3. Nevada:
  - a. Building Controls & Solutions (801) 214-3313 [Kathy.Wright@Building-Controls.com](mailto:Kathy.Wright@Building-Controls.com) Kathy Wright
4. Utah:
  - a. Control Equipment Co: (800) 452-1457 [rhowe@controlequiputah.com](mailto:rhowe@controlequiputah.com) Ray Howe.
  - b. Building Controls & Solutions (801) 214-3313 [Kathy.Wright@Building-Controls.com](mailto:Kathy.Wright@Building-Controls.com) Kathy Wright.
5. Wyoming:
  - a. CD Jones: (720) 943 1495 [Mglaub@cdjones.com](mailto:Mglaub@cdjones.com) Mark Glaub
  - b. Control Equipment Co: (800) 452-1457 [rhowe@controlequiputah.com](mailto:rhowe@controlequiputah.com) Ray Howe.
  - c. Building Controls & Solutions (801) 214-3313 [Kathy.Wright@Building-Controls.com](mailto:Kathy.Wright@Building-Controls.com) Kathy Wright.

**I. Performance:**

1. Design Criteria:
  - a. Honeywell LCBS Connect control system with cloud based gateway:
    - 1) General Requirements:
      - a) Controls multistage equipment, dehumidification and ventilation with 2 wire connection to controller interface location in occupied space.
      - b) Adjustable backlight to controller interface module from 15%-100%en after 30 seconds of setting adjustments.
      - c) System controllers can be programmed from the interface module or from the cloud service.
      - d) LCBS Connect controller utilizes echelon communication network with the controller located near the mechanical equipment and the system interface located in the occupied space.
      - e) System shall control outdoor ventilation air based upon system occupancy of electric / electronic actuation of dampers.
      - f) CO2 (Carbon Dioxide) sensors will open ventilation dampers only when CO2 exceeds 1000 ppm.
      - g) LCBS Connect devices access via internet Chrome browser via gateway.
      - h) Wired room temperature sensors may be added as specified.
    - 2) System Requirements:
      - a) Up to 3 Heat/2 Cool Heat Pumps; Up to 3 Heat/2 Cool Conventional Systems.

- b) Tri-Lingual display (Selectable for English, Spanish, or French).
- c) 18 to 30 Vac.
- d) 50 Hz; 60 Hz.
- e) System switch to include Auto changeover for Heat-Cool.
- f) 7-Day Programming.
- g) 365-Day Event Scheduling.
- h) Display Security Lockout options.
- i) Minimum/ Maximum Temperature Range Stops.
- j) Configurable over-ride option.
- k) Remote Access via internet.
- l) Dehumidification setting range 40 to 80% RH.

J. Components:

1. Controller, Wall Module:
  - a. Controller and Display Kit:
    - 1) Category Four Approved Product. See Section 01 6200 for definitions of Categories:
      - a) Part Number Honeywell YCRL6438SR1000 consisting of following:
        - (1) Unitary Controller: Honeywell CRL6438SR1000
        - (2) Wall Module: Honeywell TS120
      - b) Wall Cover Plate: Honeywell. 50002883-001.
      - c) Discharge Air / Return Air Sensors: Honeywell C7041B2005 20k ohms.
      - d) Outdoor Air Sensor: Honeywell C7041F2006.
      - e) Indoor Air Sensor: Sylk bus network; Honeywell TR40
      - f) Averaging sensor: Sylk bus network; Honeywell TR40
    - b. Internet Gateway Module(s): One (1) module per thirty (30) controllers.
      - 1) Category Four Approved Product. See Section 01 6200 for definitions of Categories:
        - a) LCBS Connect Gateway Module: Honeywell LGW1000.
2. Sealant Compound:
  - a. Description:
    - 1) Non hardening waterproof, vapor proof, self-adhesive for hot or cold application for sealing conduit openings against drafts, dust moisture and noise.
  - b. Category Four Approved Product. See Section 01 6200 for definitions of Categories:
    - 1) Duct Seal Compound No. DS-130 by Gardner Bender, Menomonee Falls , WI.  
[www.gardnerbender.com](http://www.gardnerbender.com).
    - 2) Thumb-Tite Sealing Compound No. 4216-92 by Nu-Calgon, St. Louis, MO  
[www.nucalgon.com](http://www.nucalgon.com).
3. Duct Smoke Detectors:
  - a. Duct mounted smoke detector in systems with airflow greater than 2000 CFM.
  - b. Intelligent low flow photoelectric duct smoke detector with flash scan.
  - c. Category Four Approved Product. See Section 01 6200 for definitions of Categories:
    - 1) System Sensor Model D4120.
4. Transformer:
  - a. 120 / 24 V, 50VA Honeywell AT150F.
  - b. 120 / 24 V, 75VA Honeywell AT175F.
5. Damper Actuators:
  - a. Electric type equipped for Class I wiring.
  - b. Shall not consume power during Unoccupied cycle or use chemicals or expandable media.
  - c. Have built in spring return.
  - d. Category Four Approved Product. See Section 01 6200 for definitions of Categories:
    - 1) Honeywell MS8105A1030/U.
    - 2) Honeywell MS8105A1130 w/ End switch.
6. Conductors:
  - a. Color-coded and No. 16 and No. 12 AWG Type TWN, TFN, or THHN, stranded.
  - b. Controller Cable: 12, 8, or 4 conductor, 18AWG solid copper wire, insulated with high-density polyethylene. Conductors parallel enclosed in brown PVC jacket (22 AWG cable not allowed).
  - c. Echelon Network Ebus Communicating Cable:
    - 1) Class Two Quality Standard. See Section 01 6200:
      - a) CAT 4, **22 gauge (0.025 in) (0.645 mm)**, twisted pair, non-plenum and non-shielded cable.

7. CO<sub>2</sub> (Carbon Dioxide) Return Air Sensor:
    - a. Duct mount with display.
    - b. Category Four Approved Product. See Section 01 6200 for definitions of Categories:
      - 1) Honeywell: C7232B1006.
  8. Control for Electric Wall Heater:
    - a. Electric Heater Control:
      - 1) Category Four Approved Product. See Section 01 6200 for definitions of Categories:
        - a) Switching Relay: Part Number Functional Devices: Relay RIB2401B 20 amp rating.
        - b) Disconnect Heater Overload: FMS-TAX5, 2-Pole 1 HP starter switch.
  9. Combination Equipment and Thermal Overload Switch Panel:
    - a. CEO panel must be provided by approved panel builder. See Section 01 6200 for definitions of Categories:
- K. Operation Sequences:
1. Programmable controller shall control Unoccupied and Occupied status of fan system based on adjustable seven-day program. Fan shall run continuously in Occupied Mode and cycle in Unoccupied Mode.
  2. Adjustable heating and cooling set points shall control space temperature by activating either heating or cooling equipment. Programmable controller provides automatic change over between heating and cooling.
  3. Controller provides optional override by allowing timed override of program by pushing override on controller touch screen. This shall activate controller to Occupied Mode and system shall control to Occupied set point.
  4. Minimum outdoor ventilation air damper, spring return type, shall open in controller Occupied Mode and remain closed in Unoccupied Mode.
  5. Systems with CO<sub>2</sub> (Carbon Dioxide) sensor to control minimum, spring return type, outdoor ventilation air damper:
    - a. Damper shall open in controller Occupied Mode only when CO<sub>2</sub> sensor setpoint of 1000 ppm is reached. Damper shall close if CO<sub>2</sub> level drops below 900 ppm.
    - b. Damper shall remain closed in controller Unoccupied Mode.
  6. Systems with Energy Recovery Ventilator (ERV):
    - a. ERV shall activate in controller Occupied Mode and remain inactive in Unoccupied Mode.
    - b. Systems with CO<sub>2</sub> sensor to control outdoor ventilation air damper, ERV in controller shall activate ONLY when TWO conditions are present:
      - 1) Controller is in Occupied Mode.
      - 2) CO<sub>2</sub> sensor setpoint of 1000 ppm is reached.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 INSTALLERS

- L. Acceptable Installers. See Section 01 4301:
1. Approved HVAC Sub-Contractors shall be pre-approved and included in Construction Documents by Addendum.

### 3.2 INSTALLATION

- M. Interface With Other Work:
1. Calibrate room controllers as required during air test and balance. Insulate sensor J-box with fiberglass insulation; expandable/ foam insulation is NOT acceptable.
  2. Instruct air test and balance personnel in proper use and setting of control system components.
  3. Install low voltage electrical wiring in accordance with Division 26 of these Specifications.
- N. Echelon Communication: Ebus
1. Ebus cable needs to be installed at least **12 inches (300 mm)** from **lighting, motors, or low voltage switching cables**



- O. Control for Electric Wall Heater.
  - 1. Install according to local code the electric heater RIB with overload disconnect into electric heater unit.
  - 2. Commission controller to be seen by gateway and webpage.
- P. Safety Controls: Interlock duct smoke detectors to keep heating, cooling, and system fan from operating when detector is energized.
- Q. Mount damper actuators and actuator linkages external of airflow. Make certain dampers operate freely without binding or with actuator housing moving.
- R. Paste copy of record control wiring diagram on back of relay panel door cover for each multiple furnace system.

**3.3 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL**

- S. Field Tests:
  - 1. Calibrate, adjust, and set controls for proper operation, operate systems, and be prepared to prove operation of any part of control system. This work is to be completed before pre-substantial completion inspection.
  - 2. Test each individual heating, cooling, and damper control for proper operation using control system.

**3.4 SYSTEM STARTUP**

- T. For systems with LCBS Controller.
  - 1. Contractor is responsible for a fully functioning control system accessible via internet web browser. Contractor is responsible to coordinate Network start up with assistance from local IT technician. Local IT technician shall provide available ports on network switch for LCBS gateway.
  - 2. Contractor is responsible configuring all controllers with proper zone names, zone scheduling, proper Church conference / holiday scheduling, all to be coordinated with local FM manager. Set proper clock setting including day/month/year.
  - 3. Set Heating / Cooling to proper stages
  - 4. Set heat cycle rates to 9 cph and cooling to 4 cph.
  - 5. Set DO1 relay to "Occupancy".
  - 6. Set System switch operation to "Automatic" changeover.
  - 7. Set fan switch operation to "ON".
  - 8. Set minimum UnOcc start time for all days. No days shall be scheduled Unconfigured.
  - 9. Set Occupied start times to match meeting start times; provided by local FM manager.
  - 10. Place all zone over-ride durations to one (1) hour except for Bishop and Stake area which shall be set to two (2) hours.
  - 11. Set Occupied default heating setpoints to 70 degrees, cooling setpoints to 74 degrees.
  - 12. Set Unoccupied default heating setpoint to 60 degrees, cooling setpoints to 90 degrees.
  - 13. Set each zone to applicable Holiday scheduling for General & Stake Conferences.

**3.5 ADJUSTING**

- U. LCBS controller configuration settings; the following are configuration guidelines for consistent installations:
  - 1. Temperature Units                      Fahrenheit/ Celsius
  - 2. Equipment Type                         Conventional/heat pump.
    - a. Stages of Heat                         1,2
    - b. Stages of Cool                         1,2
    - c. Fan operation in heat mode         Enable Fan w/ Heat
  - 3. Equipment Options
    - a. Leave at Default
    - b. Heating Cycles per Hour             6-9 cph

- c. Cooling Cycles per Hour 3-4 cph
- 4. Recovery
  - a. Leave at Default
- 5. Economizer / DLC
  - a. Configure as required by control equipment.
- 6. Sensor Selection
  - a. Set according to averaging sensors
  - b. Set to multi sensor "Smart" when averaging.
  - c. Set Occupancy Sensor to "Disable".
- 7. Terminal Assignment
  - a. Set according to equipment
  - b. Set Terminal DO1 to Occupancy to control fresh air damper based upon scheduled occupancy or over-ride.
- 8. Dehumidification
  - a. Leave at default
  - b. See Accessory Loops
- 9. Miscellaneous
  - a. Leave at default
- 10. Sensor setting
  - a. Leave at default
  - b. Set as Required
- 11. Accessory Loops – Set as required
  - a. Hot water valve
  - b. Dehumidification
  - c. Other
- 12. Configure Zone Name (display on Home Screen).
- 13. Set Password to ABCD.
- 14. Set Occupied Setpoint
- 15. Set Unoccupied Setpoint
- 16. Set Schedule
- 17. MENU/ Holiday-Event Scheduler / Custom Events/ Create new event.
  - a. Mountain Time Zone:
    - 1) First Sunday in April: Unoccupied all zones for all day / every year.
    - 2) First Sunday in April: Unoccupied all zones for all day / every year.
    - 3) First Sunday in October: Unoccupied all zones for all day / every year.
    - 4) First Sunday in October: Unoccupied all zones for all day / every year.

### 3.6 CLOSEOUT ACTIVITIES

#### V. Instruction Of Owner:

- 1. Include as part of training required in Section 23 0501, following training:
  - a. Training shall be by personnel of installing company and utilize operator's manuals and as-built documentation.
  - b. Provide training in (2) two sessions including LCBS Connect sight & smart Apps for up to six (6) hours total:
    - 1) First session will occur between system completion and Substantial Completion.
    - 2) Second session will occur within forty-five (45) days of Substantial Completion when agreed upon by Owner.
  - c. Training shall include sequence of operation review, selection of displays, modification of schedules and setpoints, troubleshooting of sensors, etc, as follows:
    - 1) Control System Overview:
      - a) Show access to system through both individual controllers and Internet browser and how network works. Scheduling building at minimum for Stake and General Conference, special events.
    - 2) Controller Programming from Keypad: Instructions on developing setpoints and schedules and adjusting local zone temperatures.
    - 3) Web Internet training with local Facilities Manager during two (2) sessions.
      - a) Review all features accessible from the 'Settings' tab including Alarm points, user access, scheduling and humidity setpoints (where applied).

**END OF SECTION**

**ATTACHMENTS**

**CERTIFICATE OF SPONSORSHIP**  
**Electric and Electronic Control System for HVAC Installer**

**PROJECT INFORMATION** (To be filled out by Installer - available from project specification):

Project Name: \_\_\_\_\_  
Project Number: \_\_\_\_\_  
Project Address: \_\_\_\_\_

**INSTALLER INFORMATION** (To be filled out by Installer):

Installer Name: \_\_\_\_\_  
Installer Firm: \_\_\_\_\_  
Installer Address: \_\_\_\_\_

I acknowledge and confirm the above listed Installer has received training and exhibit LCBS Connect System skills and is qualified to install the automation control system as specified for Project identified above. Our company will stand behind the Installer meeting the legal specified performance requirements.

Sponsoring Approved Honeywell Distributor Name: \_\_\_\_\_

Signature: \_\_\_\_\_ Printed Signature: \_\_\_\_\_

Date: \_\_\_\_\_

**SECTION 23 1123****FACILITY NATURAL-GAS PIPING****PART 1 - GENERAL****1.1 SUMMARY**

- A. Includes But Not Limited To:
  - 1. Perform excavation and backfill required for work of this Section.
  - 2. Furnish and install gas piping and fittings within building and from building to meter including connection to meter as described in Contract Documents.
  
- B. Related Requirements:
  - 1. Sections Under 09 9000 Heading: 'Paints And Coatings' for painting of exterior piping.
  - 2. Section 23 0501: 'Common HVAC Requirements'.
  - 3. Section 23 0553: 'Identification for HVAC Piping and Equipment'.
  - 4. Section 31 2316: 'Excavation' for procedure and quality of excavation.
  - 5. Section 31 2323: 'Fill' for procedure and quality of backfill and compaction.
  - 6. Section 33 5100: 'Natural-Gas Distribution' for gas line from meter to main.

**1.2 REFERENCES**

- A. Reference Standards:
  - 1. American National Standards Institute / CSA Group:
    - a. ANSI LC 4-2012 (2017) / CSA 6.32-2012 (R2016), 'Press-Connect Metallic Fittings for Use in Fuel Gas Distribution Systems'.
  - 2. ASTM International:
    - a. ASTM A53/A53M-12, 'Standard Specification for Pipe, Steel, Black and Hot-Dipped, Zinc-Coated, Welded and Seamless'.
    - b. ASTM A234/A234M-16, 'Standard Specification for Piping Fittings of Wrought Carbon Steel and Alloy Steel for Moderate and High Temperature Service'.
    - c. ASTM D2513-16a, 'Standard Specification for Polyethylene (PE) Gas Pressure Pipe, Tubing, and Fittings'.
  - 3. International Code Council (ICC):
    - a. ICC IFGC-2021: 'International Fuel Gas Code'.

**1.3 QUALITY ASSURANCE**

- A. Regulatory Agency Sustainability Approvals:
  - 1. Conform to requirements of requirements of IFGC International Fuel Gas Code.
  - 2. Viega MegaPressG fittings:
    - a. Conform to requirements of Canadian Standards Association CSA B149.1 and to requirements of IFGC International Fuel Gas Code.
  
- B. Qualifications:
  - 1. Welders:
    - a. Welders shall be certified and bear evidence of certification thirty (30) days before commencing work on project.
    - b. If there is doubt as to proficiency of welder, Owner's Representative may require welder to take another test. This shall be done at no cost to Owner. Certification shall be by Pittsburgh Testing Laboratories or other approved authority.
  - 2. Pipe Installers:
    - a. Polyethylene pipe installers shall be properly trained and certified in procedure for joining polyethylene pipe.

## 1.4 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Storage And Handling Requirements:
1. Do not store polyethylene pipe so it is exposed to sunlight.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 SYSTEM

- A. Manufacturers:
1. Manufacturer Contact List:
    - a. BrassCraft, Novi, MI [www.brasscraft.com](http://www.brasscraft.com).
    - b. Cimberio Valve Co Inc, Malvern, PA [www.cimberio.com](http://www.cimberio.com).
    - c. ConBraCo Industries, Inc, Matthews, NC [www.conbraco.com](http://www.conbraco.com) or ConBraCo / Honeywell Ltd, Scarborough, ON (416) 293-8111.
    - d. Dormont Manufacturing Company, Export, PA [www.dormont.com](http://www.dormont.com).
    - e. Jenkins-NH-Canada, Brantford, ON [www.jenkins-nh-canada.com](http://www.jenkins-nh-canada.com).
    - f. Jomar International, Madison Heights, MI [www.jomar.com](http://www.jomar.com).
    - g. California Valves (formally KOSO) by Pacific Seismic Products Inc, Lancaster, CA, Distributed by Strand Earthquake Consultants [www.strandearthquake.net](http://www.strandearthquake.net).
    - h. Viega LLC, Broomfield, CO [www.viega.com](http://www.viega.com).
    - i. Watts Regulator Co, North Andover, MA [www.wattsreg.com](http://www.wattsreg.com) or Watts Industries (Canada) Inc, Burlington, ON (888) 208-8927.
- B. Materials:
1. Above-Ground Pipe:
    - a. Black carbon steel, butt welded, Schedule 40 pipe meeting requirements of A53/A53M.
  2. Above-Ground Pipe Fittings:
    - a. Welded forged steel fittings meeting requirements of ASTM A234/A234M.
    - b. Standard weight malleable iron screwed.
    - c. Viega MegaPressG fittings.
  3. Below-Ground Pipe And Fittings: Polyethylene pipe and fittings meeting requirements of ASTM D2513 with No. 14 coated copper trace wire.
  4. Valves:
    - a. 125 psi (862 kPa) bronze body ball valve, UL listed.
    - b. Category Four Approved Products. See Section 01 6200 for definitions of Categories:
      - 1) CIM 102.1 by Cimbrio Valve.
      - 2) Apollo Series 80-100 by ConBraCo.
      - 3) 'Red Cap' R602 by Jenkins NH Canada.
      - 4) Model T-204 by Jomar International.
      - 5) Model B-6000-UL by Watts Regulator.
  5. Cocks:
    - a. Gauge Cocks: Conbraco Series 50-56 bronze gauge cock.
  6. Flexible Connector:
    - a. Type 304 stainless steel corrugated tube coated for corrosion protection.
    - b. Category Four Approved Products. See Section 01 6200 for definitions of Categories:
      - 1) Dormont Supr-Safe.
      - 2) BrassCraft Procoat.
  7. Seismic Valves:
    - a. Natural gas seismic shut-off valves.
      - 1) Rate at maximum 20 psi (138 kPa) pressure with positive seating from minus 40 deg F to plus 150 deg F (minus 40 deg C to plus 66 deg C) for exterior mounting near gas meter.
      - 2) UL listed valve, factory set for IBC Seismic Design Category D, E, or F.
      - 3) Size to be determined by total cu ft (0.028 cu m) per hour gas flow requirement of building and following conditions: 0.1 inch (2.54 mm) water column maximum allowable pressure-drop through valve with available pressure of 4 oz (113 grams).

- 4) Category Four Approved Product. See Section 01 6200 for definitions of Categories:
  - a) California Seismic Gas Shutoff Valve (formally KOSO):
    - (1) Horizontal installation: Model 314F or 315F.
    - (2) Vertical installation with bottom inlet: Model VB314F or VB315F.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 INSTALLATION

- A. Steel pipe installed through air plenums, in walls:
  1. Pipes **2-1/2 inches (64 mm)** and larger shall have welded fittings and joints.
  2. Other steel pipe may have screwed or welded fittings.
  3. Viega MegaPressG:
    - a. Install MegaPressG fittings according to Manufacture's recommendations and with Manufacture's recommended tools.
- B. Lay underground pipe in accordance with Manufacturer's recommendations and local gas utility company regulations and specifications.
  1. Provide **24 inch (610 mm)** minimum steel pipe between vertical rise of riser and end of polyethylene line if anode-less riser is not used. Use plastic-to-steel transition or compression fitting between end of polyethylene line and steel meter riser. Provide cathodic protection for steel riser or use anode-less riser.
  2. Place tracer wire along side of polyethylene pipe from meter to point where pipe rises inside building.
  3. Place **4 inches (100 mm)** of sand around gas line buried underground.
  4. Do not install gas piping under building floor slabs-on-grade.
- C. After gas meter, valves, seismic valve and etc, gas piping should rise inside outside wall and not be visible to public.
- D. On lines serving gas-fired equipment, install gas cocks adjacent to equipment outside of equipment cabinet and easily accessible.
- E. Install **6 inch (150 mm)** long minimum dirt leg, with pipe cap, on vertical gas drop serving each gas-fired equipment unit.
- F. Use fittings for changes of direction in pipe and for branch runouts.
- G. Visible gas piping inside building shall be painted yellow and labeled.
- H. Install seismic valve in **24 inch (610 mm)** long pipe section anchored to building wall at each end.

### 3.2 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Field tests:
  1. Subject all portions of gas piping system, in sections or in entirety, to air pressure of **75 psig (0.52 MPa)** and prove airtight for four (4) hours.
  2. Disconnect equipment not suitable for **75 psig (0.52 MPa)** pressure from piping system during test period.

**END OF SECTION**

**SECTION 23 2300****REFRIGERANT PIPING****PART 1 - GENERAL****1.1 SUMMARY**

- A. Includes But Not Limited To:
  - 1. Furnish and install piping and specialties for refrigeration systems as described in Contract Documents.
- B. Related Requirements:
  - 1. Section 23 0501: 'Common HVAC Requirements'.
  - 2. Section 23 0719: 'Refrigerant Piping Insulation'.

**1.2 REFERENCES**

- A. Association Publications:
  - 1. Federal Emergency Management Agency (FEMA) / Vibration Isolation and Seismic Control Manufacturers Association (VISCMA) / American Society of Civil Engineers (ASCE):
    - a. FEMA 412, 'Installing Seismic Restraints For Mechanical Equipment' (December 2002).
  - 2. Vibration Isolation and Seismic Control Manufacturers Association (VISCMA):
    - a. VISCMA 101-15, 'Seismic Restraint Specification Guidelines for Mechanical, Electrical, and Plumbing Systems'.
    - b. VISCMA 102-12, 'Vibration Isolation Specification Guidelines for Mechanical, Electrical, and Plumbing Systems'.
- B. Definitions:
  - 1. Refrigerant: Absorbs heat by a change of state (evaporation) from liquid to a gas, and releases heat by a change of state (condenses) from gas back to a liquid.
  - 2. Vibration Isolation: Vibration reduction in which an isolation system is placed between the source of unwanted vibration and an item which needs to be shielded from the vibration.
- C. Reference Standards:
  - 1. American National Standards Institute (ANSI) / American Society of Heating, Refrigerating and Air-Conditioning Engineers (ASHRAE):
    - a. ANSI/ASHRAE 15-2016 and 34-2016, 'Safety Standard and Designation and Classification of Refrigerants'.
  - 2. American National Standards Institute / American Welding Society:
    - a. ANSI/AWS A5.8M/A5.8-2011, 'Specification for Filler Metals for Brazing and Braze Welding'.
  - 3. American Society of Heating, Refrigerating and Air-Conditioning Engineers (ASHRAE):
    - a. 2011 ASHRAE Handbook - HVAC Applications.
      - 1) Chapter 48, 'Noise and Vibration Control'.
  - 4. ASTM International:
    - a. ASTM A36/A36M-14, 'Standard Specification for Carbon Structural Steel'.
    - b. ASTM B280-18, 'Standard Specification for Seamless Copper Tube for Air Conditioning and Refrigeration Field Service'.
  - 5. National Fire Protection Association / American National Standards Institute:
    - a. NFPA 90A: 'Installation of Air-Conditioning and Ventilating Systems' (2018 or most recent edition adopted by AHJ).
  - 6. Underwriters Laboratories:
    - a. UL 2182, 'Refrigerants' (April 2006).



### 1.3 SUBMITTALS

- A. Action Submittals:
  - 1. Shop Drawings: Show each individual equipment and piping support.
- B. Informational Submittals:
  - 1. Qualification Statements: Technician certificate for use of HFC and HCFC refrigerants.

### 1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Regulatory Agency Sustainability Approvals:
  - 1. Refrigerants:
    - a. Underwriters Laboratories / Underwriters Laboratories of Canada:
      - 1) Comply with requirements of UL 2182.
- B. Qualifications. Section 01 4301 applies, but is not limited to the following:
  - 1. Installer: Refrigerant piping shall be installed by refrigeration contractor licensed by State and by technicians certified in use of HFC and HCFC refrigerants.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 COMPONENTS

- A. Manufacturers:
  - 1. Manufacturer Contact List:
    - a. Airtec, Fall River, MA, [www.noventcaps.com](http://www.noventcaps.com).
    - b. Cooper Industries, Houston, TX [www.cooperindustries.com](http://www.cooperindustries.com).
    - c. Cush-A-Clamp by ZSI Manufacturing, Canton, MI [www.cushaclamp.com](http://www.cushaclamp.com).
    - d. Elkhart Products Corp, Elkhart, IN [www.elkhartproducts.com](http://www.elkhartproducts.com).
    - e. Emerson Climate Technologies, St Louis, MO [www.emersonflowcontrols.com](http://www.emersonflowcontrols.com).
    - f. Handy & Harman Products Division, Fairfield, CT [www.handy-1.com](http://www.handy-1.com).
    - g. Harris Products Group, Cincinnati, OH [www.harrisproductsgroup.com](http://www.harrisproductsgroup.com).
    - h. Henry Valve Co, Melrose Park, IL [www.henrytech.com](http://www.henrytech.com).
    - i. Hilti Inc, Tulsa, OK [www.hilti.com](http://www.hilti.com).
    - j. Hydra-Zorb Co, Auburn Hills, MI [www.hydra-zorb.com](http://www.hydra-zorb.com).
    - k. JB Industries, Aurora, IL [www.jbind.com](http://www.jbind.com).
    - l. Mason Industries, inc, [www.Mason-ind.com](http://www.Mason-ind.com)
    - m. Mueller Steam Specialty, St Pauls, NC [www.muellersteam.com](http://www.muellersteam.com).
    - n. Nibco Inc, Elkhart, IN [www.nibco.com](http://www.nibco.com).
    - o. Packless Industries, Waco, TX [www.packless.com](http://www.packless.com).
    - p. Parker Corp, Cleveland, OH [www.parker.com](http://www.parker.com).
    - q. Sporlan Valve Co, Washington, MO [www.sporlan.com](http://www.sporlan.com). (also ZoomLock)
    - r. Sherwood Valves, Washington, PA [www.sherwoodvalve.com](http://www.sherwoodvalve.com).
    - s. Thomas & Betts, Memphis, TN [www.superstrut.com](http://www.superstrut.com).
    - t. Unistrut, Div of Atkore International, Inc., Harvey, IL [www.unistrut.com](http://www.unistrut.com).
    - u. Universal Metal Hose, Chicago, IL [www.universalmetalhose.com](http://www.universalmetalhose.com).
    - v. Vibration Mountings & Controls, Bloomingdale, NJ [www.vmc-kdc.com](http://www.vmc-kdc.com).
    - w. Virginia KMP Corp, Dallas, TX [www.virginiakmp.com](http://www.virginiakmp.com).
- B. Materials:
  - 1. Refrigerant Piping:
    - a. Meet requirements of ASTM B280, hard drawn straight lengths. Soft copper tubing not permitted.
    - b. Do not use pre-charged refrigerant lines.
  - 2. Refrigerant Fittings:
    - a. Wrought copper with long radius elbows.

- b. Category Four Approved Manufacturers. See Section 01 6200 for definitions of Categories:
  - 1) Mueller Streamline.
  - 2) Nibco Inc.
  - 3) Elkhart.
  - 4) Sporlan - ZoomLock [Flame-Free Refrigerant Fittings]
3. Suction Line Traps:
  - a. Manufactured standard one-piece traps.
  - b. Category Four Approved Manufacturers. See Section 01 6200 for definitions of Categories:
    - 1) Mueller Streamline.
    - 2) Nibco Inc.
    - 3) Elkhart.
    - 4) Sporlan - ZoomLock [Flame-Free Refrigerant Fittings]
4. Tee Access:
  - a. Brass:
    - 1) Category Four Approved Manufacturers. See Section 01 6200 for definitions of Categories:
      - a) JB Industries: Part #A3 Series with Factory Cap and Valve Core.
5. Connection Material:
  - a. Sporlan - ZoomLock Flame-Free Refrigerant Fittings with factory approved tools
  - b. Brazing Rods in accordance with ANSI/AWS A5.8M/A5.8:
    - 1) Copper to Copper Connections:
      - a) Classification BCuP-4 Copper Phosphorus (6 percent silver).
      - b) Classification BCuP-5 Copper Phosphorus (15 percent silver).
    - 2) Copper to Brass or Copper to Steel Connections: Classification BAg-5 Silver (45 percent silver).
    - 3) Do not use rods containing Cadmium.
  - c. Flux:
    - 1) Type Two Acceptable Products:
      - a) Stay-Silv White Brazing Flux by Harris Products Group.
      - b) High quality silver solder flux by Handy & Harmon.
      - c) Equal as approved by Architect before use. See Section 01 6200.
6. Valves:
  - a. Manual Refrigerant Shut-Off Valves:
    - 1) Ball valves designed for refrigeration service and full line size.
    - 2) Valve shall have cap seals.
    - 3) Valves with hand wheels are not acceptable.
    - 4) Provide service valve on each liquid and suction line at compressor.
    - 5) If service valves come as integral part of condensing unit, additional service valves shall not be required.
    - 6) Category Four Approved Manufacturers. See Section 01 6200 for definitions of Categories:
      - a) Henry.
      - b) Mueller.
      - c) Sherwood.
      - d) Virginia.
7. Filter-Drier:
  - a. On lines **3/4 inch (19 mm)** outside diameter and larger, filter-drier shall be replaceable core type with Schrader type valve.
  - b. On lines smaller than **3/4 inch (19 mm)** outside diameter, filter-drier shall be sealed type with brazed end connections.
  - c. Size shall be full line size.
  - d. Category Four Approved Manufacturers. See Section 01 6200 for definitions of Categories:
    - 1) Emerson Climate Technologies.
    - 2) Mueller.
    - 3) Parker.
    - 4) Sporlan.
    - 5) Virginia.
8. Sight Glass:
  - a. Combination moisture and liquid indicator with protection cap.
  - b. Sight glass shall be full line size.

- c. Sight glass connections and sight glass body shall be solid copper or brass, no copper-coated steel sight glasses allowed.
- d. Category Four Approved Product. See Section 01 6200 for definitions of Categories:
  - 1) HMI by Emerson Climate Technologies.
- 9. Flexible Connectors:
  - a. Designed for refrigerant service with bronze seamless corrugated hose and bronze braiding.
  - b. Category Four Approved Products. See Section 01 6200 for definitions of Categories:
    - 1) Vibration Absorber Model VAF by Packless Industries.
    - 2) Vibration Absorbers by Virginia KMP Corp.
    - 3) Anaconda 'Vibration Eliminators' by Universal Metal Hose.
    - 4) Style 'BF' Spring-flex freon connectors by Vibration Mountings.
    - 5) ULCPS by Mason
- 10. Refrigerant Piping Supports:
  - a. Base, Angles, And Uprights: Steel meeting requirements of ASTM A36.
  - b. Securing Channels:
    - 1) At Free-Standing Pipe Support:
      - a) Class One Quality Standard: P-1000 channels by Unistrut.
      - b) Acceptable Manufacturers: Hilti, Thomas & Betts.
      - c) Equal as approved by Architect before installation. See Section 01 6200.
    - 2) At Wall Support:
      - a) Class One Quality Standard: P-3300 channels by Unistrut.
      - b) Acceptable Manufacturers: Hilti, Thomas & Betts.
      - c) Equal as approved by Architect before installation. See Section 01 6200.
    - 3) At Suspended Support:
      - a) Class One Quality Standard: P-1001 channels by Unistrut.
      - b) Acceptable Manufacturers: Hilti, Thomas & Betts.
      - c) Equal as approved by Architect before installation. See Section 01 6200.
    - 4) Angle Fittings:
      - a) Class One Quality Standard: P-2626 90 degree angle by Unistrut.
      - b) Acceptable Manufacturers: Hilti, Thomas & Betts.
      - c) Equal as approved by Architect before installation. See Section 01 6200.
    - 5) Low-Slope Roof Base Support:
      - a) Class One Quality Standard: Dura-Blok DBE or DB-DS by Cooper B-Line.
      - b) Acceptable Manufacturers: Unistrut, Mirror, and Mifab.
      - c) Equal as approved by Architect before installation. See Section 01 6200.
  - c. Pipe Clamps:
    - 1) Type Two Acceptable Manufacturers:
      - a) Hydra-Zorb.
      - b) ZSI Cush-A-Clamp.
      - c) Hilti Cush-A-Clamp.
      - d) Equal as approved by Architect before installation. See Section 01 6200.
  - d. Protective Cover: 18 ga (1.2 mm) steel, hot-dipped galvanized.
- 11. Locking Refrigerant Cap:
  - a. Provide and install on charging valves:
    - 1) Class One Quality Standard: 'No Vent' locking refrigerant cap.
    - 2) Acceptable Manufacturers: Airtec.
    - 3) Equal as approved by Architect before installation. See Section 01 6200.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 INSTALLATION

- A. Refrigerant Lines:
  - 1. Install as high in upper mechanical areas as possible. Do not install underground or in tunnels.
  - 2. Slope suction lines down toward compressor one inch/10 feet (25 mm in 3 meters). Locate traps at vertical rises against flow in suction lines.
- B. Connections:

1. Refrigeration system connections shall be copper-to-copper, copper-to-brass, or copper-to-steel type properly cleaned and brazed with specified rods. Use flux only where necessary. No soft solder (tin, lead, antimony) connections will be allowed in system.
  2. Braze manual refrigerant shut-off valve, sight glass, and flexible connections.
  3. Circulate dry nitrogen through tubes being brazed to eliminate formation of copper oxide during brazing operation.
- C. Specialties:
1. Install valves and specialties in accessible locations. Install refrigeration distributors and suction outlet at same end of coil.
  2. Install thermostatic bulb as close to cooling coil as possible. Do not install on vertical lines.
  3. Install equalizing line in straight section of suction line, downstream of and reasonably close to thermostatic bulb. Do not install on vertical lines.
  4. Provide flexible connectors in each liquid line and suction line at both condensing unit and evaporator on systems larger than five tons. Anchor pipe near each flexible connector.
- D. Refrigerant Supports:
1. Support Spacing:
    - a. Piping 1-1/4 inch (32 mm) And Larger: 8 feet (2.450 m) on center maximum.
    - b. Piping 1-1/8 inch (28.5 mm) And Smaller: 6 feet (1.80 m) on center maximum.
    - c. Support each elbow.
  2. Isolate pipe from supports and clamps with Hydrozorb or Cush-A-Clamp systems.
  3. Run protective cover continuous from condensing units to risers or penetrations at building wall.

### 3.2 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Field Tests:
1. Make evacuation and leak tests in presence of Architect's Engineer after completing refrigeration piping systems. Positive pressure test will not suffice for procedure outlined below.
    - a. Draw vacuum on each entire system with two stage vacuum pump. Draw vacuum to 300 microns using micron vacuum gauge capable of reading from atmosphere to 10 microns. Do not use cooling compressor to evacuate system nor operate it while system is under high vacuum.
    - b. Break vacuum with nitrogen and re-establish vacuum test. Vacuum shall hold for 30 minutes at 300 microns without vacuum pump running.
    - c. Conduct tests at 70 deg F (21 deg C) ambient temperature minimum.
    - d. Do not run systems until above tests have been made and systems started up as specified. Inform Owner's Representative of status of systems at time of final inspection and schedule start-up and testing if prevented by outdoor conditions before this time.
    - e. After testing, fully charge system with refrigerant and conduct test with Halide Leak Detector.
    - f. Recover all refrigerant in accordance with applicable codes. Do not allow any refrigerant to escape to atmosphere.
- B. Non-Conforming Work:
1. If it is observed that refrigerant lines are being or have been brazed without proper circulation of nitrogen through lines, all refrigerant lines installed up to that point in time shall be removed and replaced at no additional cost to Owner.

**END OF SECTION**

**SECTION 23 2600****CONDENSATE DRAIN PIPING****PART 1 - GENERAL****1.1 SUMMARY**

- A. Includes But Not Limited To:
  - 1. Coordinate installation of condensate drain piping with Section 22 0501 as described in Contract Documents.
- B. Related Requirements:
  - 1. Section 22 0501: 'Common Plumbing Requirements'.
  - 2. Section 23 0501: 'Common HVAC Requirements'.

**1.2 REFERENCES**

- A. Reference Standards:
  - 1. ASTM International:

**PART 2 - PRODUCTS****2.1 SYSTEMS**

- A. Materials:
  - 1. Condensate Drains:
    - a. Schedule 40 PVC for condensate drains from furnace combustion chambers and furnace cooling coils.
  - 2. Solvent Cement and Adhesive Primer:
    - a. Use PVC solvent cement that has a VOC content of 510 g/L or less if required by local AHJ if required.
    - b. Use adhesive primer that has a VOC content of 550 g/L or less if required by local AHJ if required.

**PART 3 - EXECUTION****3.1 INSTALLATION**

- A. Condensate Drains:
  - 1. Support piping and protect from damage.
  - 2. Do not combine PVC condensate drain piping from furnace combustion chamber with copper condensate drain piping from cooling coil.

**END OF SECTION**

**SECTION 23 3001****COMMON DUCT REQUIREMENTS****PART 1 - GENERAL****1.1 SUMMARY**

- A. Includes But Not Limited To:
  - 1. General procedures and requirements for ductwork.
  - 2. Repair leaks in ductwork, as identified by duct testing, at no additional cost to Owner.
- B. Related Requirements:
  - 1. Section 01 4546: 'Duct Testing, Adjusting, and Balancing' for ductwork.
  - 2. Section 07 9219: 'Acoustical Joint Sealants' for quality of acoustic sealant.
  - 3. Section 23 0501: 'Common HVAC Requirements'.

**1.2 REFERENCES**

- A. Reference Standards:
  - 1. Sheet Metal And Air Conditioning Contractors' National Association / American National Standards Institute:
    - a. SMACNA, 'HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible' (4th Edition).

**1.3 ADMINISTRATIVE REQUIREMENTS**

- A. Pre-Installation Conference: Schedule conference immediately before installation of ductwork.

**1.4 SUBMITTALS**

- A. Action Submittals:
  - 1. Product Data: Specification data on sealer and gauze proposed for sealing ductwork.
  - 2. Samples: Sealer and gauze proposed for sealing ductwork.
- B. Informational Submittals:
  - 1. Manufacturer Instructions:
    - a. Installation manuals providing detailed instructions on assembly, joint sealing, and system pressure testing for leaks.

**PART 2 - PRODUCTS****2.1 ASSEMBLIES**

- A. Performance:
  - 1. Design Criteria:
    - a. Standard Ducts: Construction details not specifically called out in Contract Documents shall conform to applicable requirements of SMACNA, 'HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible'.
- B. Materials:
  - 1. Duct Hangers:

- a. **One inch (25 mm)** by **18 ga (1.27 mm)** galvanized steel straps or steel rods as shown on Drawings, and spaced not more than **96 inches (2 400 mm)** apart. Do not use wire hangers.
- b. Attaching screws at trusses shall be **2 inch (50 mm)** No. 10 round head wood screws. Nails not allowed.

## **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

### **3.1 INSTALLATION**

- A. During installation, protect open ends of ducts by covering with plastic sheet tied in place to prevent entrance of debris and dirt.
- B. Make necessary allowances and provisions in installation of sheet metal ducts for structural conditions of building. Revisions in layout and configuration may be allowed, with prior written approval of Architect. Maintain required airflows in suggesting revisions.
- C. Hangers And Supports:
  1. Install pair of hangers as required by spacing indicated in table on Drawings.
  2. Install upper ends of hanger securely to floor or roof construction above by method shown on Drawings.
  3. Attach strap hangers to ducts with cadmium-plated screws. Use of pop rivets or other means will not be accepted.
  4. Secure vertical ducts passing through floors by extending bracing angles to rest firmly on floors without loose blocking or shimming. Support vertical ducts, which do not pass through floors, by using bands bolted to walls, columns, etc. Size, spacing, and method of attachment to vertical ducts shall be same as specified for hanger bands on horizontal ducts.

### **3.2 CLEANING**

- A. Clean interior of duct systems before final completion.

**END OF SECTION**

**SECTION 23 3114****LOW-PRESSURE METAL DUCTS****PART 1 - GENERAL****1.1 SUMMARY**

- A. Includes But Not Limited To:
  - 1. Furnish and install above-grade low-pressure steel ducts and related items as described in Contract Documents.
- B. Products Installed But Not Furnished Under This Section:
  - 1. Duct smoke detectors.
- C. Related Requirements:
  - 1. Section 01 4546: 'Duct Testing, Adjusting, And Balancing' for duct test, balance, and adjust air duct systems services provided by Owner.
  - 2. Section 23 0713: 'Duct Insulation' for thermal insulation for ducts, plenum chambers, and casings.
  - 3. Section 23 3001: 'Common Duct Requirements'.
  - 4. Section 23 0933: 'Electric And Electronic Control System For HVAC':
    - a. Temperature control damper actuators and actuator linkages.
    - b. Furnishing of duct smoke detectors.

**1.2 REFERENCES**

- A. Association Publications:
  - 1. Sheet Metal And Air Conditioning Contractors' National Association / American National Standards Institute:
  - 2. SMACNA, 'HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible' (4th edition).
- B. Reference Standards:
  - 1. ASTM International:
    - a. ASTM A653/A653M-18, 'Standard Specification for Steel Sheet, Zinc-Coated (Galvanized) or Zinc-Iron Alloy-Coated (Galvannealed) by the Hot-Dip Process'.
    - b. ASTM E84-18b, 'Standard Test Method for Surface Burning Characteristics of Building Materials'.
  - 2. Underwriters Laboratories, Inc.:
    - a. UL 723: 'Standard for Safety Test for Surface Burning Characteristics of Building Materials'; (11th Edition - 2018).

**1.3 QUALITY ASSURANCE**

- A. Regulatory Agency Sustainability Approvals:
  - 1. Duct Sealer:
    - a. Meet Class A flame spread rating in accordance with ASTM E84 or UL 723.
    - b. Handle, store, and apply materials in compliance with applicable regulations and material safety data sheets (MSDS).

**1.4 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING**

- A. Storage and Handling Requirements:
  - 1. Duct Sealer:



- a. Handle, store, and apply materials in compliance with applicable regulations and material safety data sheets (MSDS).
- b. Handle to prevent inclusion of foreign matter, damage by water, or breakage.
- c. Store in a cool dry location, but never under **35 deg F (1.7 deg C)** or subjected to sustained temperatures exceeding **110 deg F (43 deg C)** or as per Manufacturer's written recommendations.
- d. Do use sealants that have exceeded shelf life of product.

## 1.5 FIELD CONDITIONS

### A. Ambient Conditions:

1. Duct Sealer:
  - a. Do not apply under **35 deg F (1.7 deg C)** or subjected to sustained temperatures exceeding **110 deg F (43 deg C)** or as per Manufacturer's written recommendations.
  - b. Do not apply when rain or freezing temperatures will occur within seventy two (72) hours.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 SYSTEM

#### A. Materials:

1. Sheet Metal:
  - a. Fabricate ducts, plenum chambers and casings of zinc-coated, lock-forming quality steel sheets meeting requirements A653/A653M, with G 60 coating.
2. Duct Sealer For Interior Ducts:
  - a. Category Four Approved Products. See Section 01 6200 for definitions of Categories:
    - 1) Duct Butter or ButterTak by Cain Manufacturing Co Inc, Pelham, AL  
[www.cainmfg.com](http://www.cainmfg.com).
    - 2) DP 1010, DP 1030 or DP 1015 by Design Polymeric, Fountain Valley, CA  
[www.designpoly.com](http://www.designpoly.com).
    - 3) PROseal, FIBERseal, EVERseal, or EZ-seal by Ductmate Industries, Inc., Charleroi, PA  
[www.ductmate.com](http://www.ductmate.com).
    - 4) SAS by Duro Dyne, Bay Shore, NY or Duro Dyne Canada, Lachine, QB  
[www.durodyne.com](http://www.durodyne.com).
    - 5) Iron Grip 601 by Hardcast Inc, Wylie, TX [www.hardcast.com](http://www.hardcast.com).
    - 6) MTS100 or MTS 200 by Hercules Mighty Tough, Denver CO,  
[www.herculesindustries.com](http://www.herculesindustries.com).
    - 7) 15-325 by Miracle / Kingco, Div ITW TACC, Rockland, MA [www.taccint.com](http://www.taccint.com).
    - 8) 44-39 by Mon-Eco Industries Inc, East Brunswick, NJ [www.mon-ecoindustries.com](http://www.mon-ecoindustries.com).
    - 9) Airseal Zero by Polymer Adhesive Sealant Systems Inc, Weatherford, TX  
[www.polymeradhesives.com](http://www.polymeradhesives.com).
    - 10) Airseal #22 Water Base Duct Sealer by Polymer Adhesive Sealant Systems Inc, Weatherford, TX [www.polymeradhesives.com](http://www.polymeradhesives.com).
3. Duct Sealer For Exterior Ducts:
  - a. Category Four Approved Products. See Section 01 6200 for definitions of Categories:
    - 1) Two Part II Sealing System including RTA-50 liquid adhesive and DT-5300 for **3 inch (76 mm)** and DT 5400 for **4 inch (100 mm)** tape by Hardcast Inc, Wylie, TX  
[www.carlislehvac.com](http://www.carlislehvac.com).

#### B. Fabrication:

1. General:
  - a. Straight and smooth on inside with joints neatly finished.
  - b. Duct drops to diffusers shall be round, square, or rectangular to accommodate diffuser neck. Drops shall be same gauge as branch duct. Seal joints air tight.
2. Standard Ducts:
  - a. General:

- 1) Ducts shall be large enough to accommodate inside acoustic duct liner. Dimensions shown on Drawings are net clear inside dimensions after duct liner has been installed.
- b. Round Duct:
  - 1) Spiral Seam:
    - a) 28 ga (0.38 mm) minimum for ducts up to and including 14 inches (355 mm) in diameter.
    - b) 26 ga (0.46 mm) minimum for ducts over 14 inches (355 mm) and up to and including 26 inches (660 mm) in diameter.
  - 2) Longitudinal Seam:
    - a) 28 ga (0.38 mm) minimum for ducts up to and including 8 inches (200 mm) in diameter.
    - b) 26 ga (0.46 mm) minimum for ducts over 8 inches (200 mm) and up to 14 inches (355 mm) in diameter.
    - c) 24 ga (0.61 mm) minimum for ducts over 14 inches (355 mm) up to and including 26 inches (660 mm) in diameter.

## **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

### **3.1 PREPARATION**

- A. Metal duct surface must be clean and free of moisture, contamination and foreign matter before applying duct sealer for interior and exterior ducts.

### **3.2 INSTALLATION**

- A. Install internal ends of slip joints in direction of flow. Seal transverse and longitudinal joints air tight using specified duct sealer as per Manufacturer's written instructions. Cover horizontal and longitudinal joints on exterior ducts with two layers of specified tape installed with specified adhesive.
- B. Securely anchor ducts and plenums to building structure with specified duct hangers attached with screws. Do not hang more than one duct from a duct hanger. Brace and install ducts so they shall be free of vibration under all conditions of operation.
- C. Ducts shall not bear on top of structural members.
- D. Paint ductwork visible through registers, grilles, and diffusers flat black.
- E. Properly flash where ducts protrude above roof.
- F. Under no conditions will pipes, rods, or wires be allowed to penetrate ducts.

### **3.3 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL**

- A. Field Tests:
  1. Air Test and Balance Testing as specified in Section 01 4546: 'Duct Testing, Adjusting, and Balancing'.
- B. Non-Conforming Work:
  1. Reseal transverse joint duct leaks and seal longitudinal duct joint leaks discovered during air test and balance procedures at no additional cost to Owner.

**END OF SECTION**

**SECTION 23 3300****AIR DUCT ACCESSORIES****PART 1 - GENERAL****1.1 SUMMARY**

- A. Includes But Not Limited To:
  - 1. Furnish and install duct accessories in specified ductwork as described in Contract Documents.
- B. Related Requirements:
  - 1. Section 23 0933: 'Electric And Electronic Control System For HVAC' for temperature control damper actuators and actuator linkages.
  - 2. Section 23 3001: 'Common Duct Requirements'.

**1.2 REFERENCES**

- A. Reference Standards:
  - 1. ASTM International:
    - a. ASTM A653/A653M-18, 'Standard Specification for Steel Sheet, Zinc-Coated (Galvanized) or Zinc-Iron Alloy-Coated (Galvannealed) by the Hot-Dip Process'.
    - b. ASTM C1071-16, 'Standard Specification for Fibrous Glass Duct Lining Insulation (Thermal and Sound Absorbing Material)'.
    - c. ASTM C1338-14, 'Standard Test Method for Determining Fungi Resistance of Insulation Materials and Facings'.

**PART 2 - PRODUCTS****2.1 ACCESSORIES**

- A. Manufacturers:
  - 1. Manufacturer Contact List:
    - a. AGM Industries, Brockton, MA [www.agmind.com](http://www.agmind.com).
    - b. Air Balance Inc, Holland, OH [www.airbalance.com](http://www.airbalance.com).
    - c. Air Filters Inc, Baltimore, MD [www.afinc.com](http://www.afinc.com).
    - d. Air-Rite Manufacturing, Bountiful, UT (801) 295-2529.
    - e. American Warming & Ventilating, Holland, OH [www.american-warming.com](http://www.american-warming.com).
    - f. Arrow United Industries, Wyalusing, PA [www.arrowunited.com](http://www.arrowunited.com).
    - g. Cain Manufacturing Company Inc, Pelham, AL [www.cainmfg.com](http://www.cainmfg.com).
    - h. C & S Air Products, Fort Worth, TX [www.csairproducts.com](http://www.csairproducts.com).
    - i. CertainTeed Corp, Valley Forge, PA [www.certainteed.com](http://www.certainteed.com).
    - j. Cesco Products, Florence, KY [www.cescoproducts.com](http://www.cescoproducts.com).
    - k. Daniel Manufacturing, Ogden, UT (801) 622-5924.
    - l. Design Polymerics, Fountain Valley, CA [www.designpoly.com](http://www.designpoly.com).
    - m. Ductmate Industries Inc, East Charleroi, PA [www.ductmate.com](http://www.ductmate.com).
    - n. Duro Dyne, Bay Shore, NY [www.durodyne.com](http://www.durodyne.com).
    - o. Dyn Air Inc. Lachine, QB [www.dynair.ca](http://www.dynair.ca)
    - p. Elgen Manufacturing Company, Inc. East Rutherford, NJ [www.elgenmfg.com](http://www.elgenmfg.com)
    - q. Flexmaster USA Inc, Houston, TX [www.flexmasterusa.com](http://www.flexmasterusa.com).
    - r. Greenheck Corp, Schofield, WI [www.greenheck.com](http://www.greenheck.com).
    - s. Gripnail Corp, East Providence, RI [www.gripnail.com](http://www.gripnail.com).
    - t. Hardcast Inc, Wylie, TX [www.hardcast.com](http://www.hardcast.com).

- u. Hercules Industries, Denver, CO, [www.herculesindustries.com](http://www.herculesindustries.com).
- v. Honeywell Inc, Minneapolis, MN [www.honeywell.com](http://www.honeywell.com).
- w. Industrial Acoustics Co, Bronx, NY [www.industrialacoustics.com](http://www.industrialacoustics.com).
- x. Johns-Manville, Denver, CO [www.jm.com](http://www.jm.com).
- y. Kees Inc, Elkhart Lake, WI [www.kees.com](http://www.kees.com).
- z. Knauf Fiber Glass, Shelbyville, IN [www.knauffiberglass.com](http://www.knauffiberglass.com).
- aa. Manson Insulation Inc, Brossard, QB [www.isolationmanson.com](http://www.isolationmanson.com).
- bb. Metco Inc, Salt Lake City, UT (801) 467-1572 [www.metcospiral.com](http://www.metcospiral.com).
- cc. Miracle / Kingco, Rockland, MA [www.taccint.com](http://www.taccint.com).
- dd. Mon-Eco Industries Inc, East Brunswick, NJ [www.mon-ecoindustries.com](http://www.mon-ecoindustries.com).
- ee. Nailor Industries Inc, Houston, TX [www.nailor.com](http://www.nailor.com).
- ff. Owens Corning, Toledo, OH [www.owenscorning.com](http://www.owenscorning.com).
- gg. Polymer Adhesive Sealant Systems Inc, Irving, TX [www.polymeradhesives.com](http://www.polymeradhesives.com).
- hh. Pottorff Company, Fort Worth, TX [www.pottorff.com](http://www.pottorff.com).
- ii. Ruskin Manufacturing, Kansas City, MO [www.ruskin.com](http://www.ruskin.com).
- jj. Sheet Metal Connectors Inc, Minneapolis, MN [www.smconnectors.com](http://www.smconnectors.com).
- kk. Tamco, Stittsville, ON [www.tamco.ca](http://www.tamco.ca).
- ll. Techno Adhesive, Cincinnati, OH [www.technoadhesives.com](http://www.technoadhesives.com).
- mm. Titus, Richardson, TX (972) 699-1030. [www.titus-hvac.com](http://www.titus-hvac.com)
- nn. McGill AirSeal, Columbus, OH [www.mcgillairseal.com](http://www.mcgillairseal.com).
- oo. United Enertech Corp, Chattanooga, TN [www.unitedenertech.com](http://www.unitedenertech.com).
- pp. Utemp Inc, Salt Lake City, UT (801) 978-9265.
- qq. Ventfabrics Inc, Chicago, IL [www.ventfabrics.com](http://www.ventfabrics.com).
- rr. Ward Industries, Grand Rapids MI [www.wardind.com](http://www.wardind.com).
- ss. Young Regulator Co, Cleveland, OH [www.youngregulator.com](http://www.youngregulator.com).

## B. Materials:

### 1. Acoustical Liner System:

#### a. Duct Liner:

- 1) **One inch (25 mm)** thick, **1-1/2 lb (0.68 kg)** density fiberglass conforming to requirements of ASTM C1071. Liner will not support microbial growth when tested in accordance with ASTM C1338.
- 2) Category Four Approved Products. See Section 01 6200 for definitions of Categories:
  - a) ToughGard by CertainTeed.
  - b) Duct Liner E-M by Knauf Fiber Glass.
  - c) Akousti-Liner by Manson Insulation.
  - d) Quiet R by Owens Corning.
  - e) Linacoustic RC by Johns-Manville.

#### b. Adhesive:

- 1) Category Four Approved Water-Based Products. See Section 01 6200 for definitions of Categories:
  - a) Cain: Hydrotak.
  - b) Design Polymerics: DP2501 or DP2502 (CMCL-2501).
  - c) Duro Dyne: WSA.
  - d) Elgen: A-410-WB.
  - e) Hardcast: Coil-Tack.
  - f) Hercules: Mighty Tough Adhesives MTA500 or MTA600.
  - g) Miracle / Kingco: PF-101.
  - h) Mon-Eco: 22-67 or 22-76.
  - i) Polymer Adhesive: Glasstack #35.
  - j) Techno Adhesive: 133.
  - k) McGill AirSeal: Uni-tack.
- 2) Category Four Approved Solvent-Based (non-flammable) Products. See Section 01 6200 for definitions of Categories:
  - a) Cain: Safetak.
  - b) Duro Dyne: FPG.
  - c) Hardcast: Glas-Grip 648-NFSE.
  - d) Miracle / Kingco: PF-91.
  - e) Mon-Eco: 22-24.
  - f) Polymer Adhesive: Q-Tack.

- g) Techno Adhesive: 'Non-Flam' 106.
- 3) Category Four Approved Solvent-Based (flammable) Products. See Section 01 6200 for definitions of Categories:
  - a) Cain: HV200.
  - b) Duro Dyne: MPG.
  - c) Hardcast: Glas-Grip 636-SE.
  - d) Miracle / Kingco: PF-96.
  - e) Mon-Eco: 22-22.
  - f) Polymer Adhesive: R-Tack.
  - g) Techno Adhesive: 'Flammable' 106.
- c. Fasteners:
  - 1) Adhesively secured fasteners not allowed.
  - 2) Category Four Approved Products. See Section 01 6200 for definitions of Categories:
    - a) AGM Industries: 'DynaPoint' Series RP-9 pin.
    - b) Cain.
    - c) Duro Dyne.
    - d) Gripnail: May be used if each nail is installed by 'Grip Nail Air Hammer' or by 'Automatic Fastener Equipment' in accordance with Manufacturer's recommendations.
- 2. Flexible Equipment Connections:
  - a. 30 oz closely woven UL approved glass fabric double coated with neoprene.
  - b. Fire retardant, waterproof, air-tight, resistant to acids and grease, and withstand constant temperatures of **200 deg F (93 deg C)**.
  - c. Category Four Approved Products. See Section 01 6200 for definitions of Categories:
    - 1) Cain: N-100.
    - 2) Duro Dyne: MFN.
    - 3) Dyn Air: CPN with G-90 galvanized off-set seam.
    - 4) Elgen: ZLN / SDN.
    - 5) Ventfabrics: Ventglas.
    - 6) Ductmate: ProFlex.
- 3. Duct Access Doors:
  - a. General:
    - 1) Factory built insulated access door with hinges and sash locks, as necessary. Construction shall be galvanized sheet metal, **24 ga (0.635 mm)** minimum.
    - 2) Fire and smoke damper access doors shall have minimum clear opening of **12 inches (300 mm)** square or larger as shown on Drawings.
  - b. Rectangular Ducts:
    - 1) Category Four Approved Products. See Section 01 6200 for definitions of Categories:
      - a) Air Balance: Fire/Seal FSA 100.
      - b) Air-Rite: Model HAD-2.
      - c) Cesco: HDD.
      - d) Elgen: TAB Type / Hinge and Cam.
      - e) Flexmaster: Spin Door.
      - f) Kees: ADH-D.
      - g) Nailor: 08SH.
      - h) Pottorff: 60-HAD.
      - i) Ruskin: ADH-24.
      - j) United Enertech: L-95.
  - c. Round Ducts:
    - 1) Category Four Approved Products. See Section 01 6200 for definitions of Categories:
      - a) Ductmate: 'Sandwich' Access Door.
      - b) Elgen: Sandwich Access Door.
      - c) Kees: ADL-R.
      - d) Nailor: 0809.
      - e) Pottorff: RAD.
      - f) Ruskin: ADR.
      - g) Ward: DSA.
- 4. Dampers And Damper Accessories:
  - a. Locking Quadrant Damper Regulators:
    - 1) Category Four Approved Products. See Section 01 6200 for definitions of Categories:

- a) Duro Dyne: KS-385.
  - b) Dyn Air: QPS-385.
  - c) Elgen: EQR-4.
  - d) Ventfabrics: Ventline 555.
  - e) Young: No. 1.
- b. Concealed Ceiling Damper Regulators:
- 1) Category Four Approved Products. See Section 01 6200 for definitions of Categories:
    - a) Cain.
    - b) Duro Dyne.
    - c) Elgen.
    - d) Metco Inc.
    - e) Ventfabrics: 666 Ventlok.
    - f) Young: 301.
- c. Volume Dampers:
- 1) Rectangular Duct:
    - a) Factory-manufactured 16 ga (1.6 mm) galvanized steel, single blade and opposed blade type with 3/8 inch (9.5 mm) axles and end bearings. Blade width 8 inches (200 mm) maximum. Blades shall have 1/8 inch (3 mm) clearance all around.
    - b) Damper shall operate within acoustical duct liner.
    - c) Provide channel spacer equal to thickness of duct liner.
    - d) Dampers above removable ceiling and in Mechanical Rooms shall have locking quadrant on bottom or side of duct. Otherwise, furnish with concealed ceiling damper regulator and cover plate.
    - e) Category Four Approved Products. See Section 01 6200 for definitions of Categories:
      - (1) Air-Rite: Model CD-2.
      - (2) American Warming: VC-2-AA.
      - (3) Arrow: OBDAF-207.
      - (4) C & S: AC40.
      - (5) Cesco: AGO.
      - (6) Daniel: CD-OB.
      - (7) Greenheck: VCD-20.
      - (8) Nailor: 1810 or 1820.
      - (9) Pottorff: CD-42.
      - (10) Ruskin: MD-35.
      - (11) United Enertech: MD-115.
      - (12) Utemp: CD-OB.
  - 2) Round Duct:
    - a) Factory-manufactured 20 ga (1.0 mm) galvanized steel, single blade with 3/8 inch (9.5 mm) axles and end bearings.
    - b) For use in outside air ducts.
    - c) Category Four Approved Products. See Section 01 6200 for definitions of Categories:
      - (1) Air Balance: Model AC-22.
      - (2) Air-Rite: Model CD-8.
      - (3) American Warming: V-22.
      - (4) Arrow: Type-70.
      - (5) C & S: AC21R.
      - (6) Cesco: MGG.
      - (7) Nailor: 1890.
      - (8) Pottorff: CD-21R.
      - (9) Ruskin: MDRS-25.
      - (10) United Enertech: RD.
- d. Motorized Outside Air Dampers:
- 1) General:
    - a) Low leakage type. AMCA certified.
    - b) Make provision for damper actuators and actuator linkages to be mounted external of air flow.
  - 2) Rectangular Ducts:
    - a) Damper Blades:

- (1) Steel or aluminum airfoil type with mechanically locked blade seals, 8 inch (200 mm) blade width maximum measured perpendicular to axis of damper.
- (2) Jamb seals shall be flexible metal compression type.
- (3) Opposed or single blade type.
- b) Category Four Approved Products. See Section 01 6200 for definitions of Categories:
  - (1) Air Balance: AC 526.
  - (2) American Warming: AC526.
  - (3) Arrow: AFD-20.
  - (4) C & S: AC50.
  - (5) Cesco: AGO3.
  - (6) Nailor: 2020.
  - (7) Pottorff: CD-52.
  - (8) Ruskin: CD-60.
  - (9) Tamco: Series 1000.
  - (10) United Enertech: CD-150 or CD-160.
- 3) Round Ducts:
  - a) Damper Blades:
    - (1) Steel with mechanically locked blade seals.
    - (2) Blade seals shall be neoprene or polyethylene.
    - (3) Single blade type.
  - b) Category Four Approved Products. See Section 01 6200 for definitions of Categories:
    - (1) Air Balance: AC 25.
    - (2) American Warming: VC25.
    - (3) Arrow: Type 70 or 75.
    - (4) C & S: AC25R.
    - (5) Cesco: AGG.
    - (6) Nailor: 1090.
    - (7) Pottorff: CD-25R.
    - (8) Ruskin: CD25.
    - (9) Tamco: Square-to-Round Series 1000.
    - (10) United Enertech: RI.
- e. Bypass Damper:
  - 1) Category Four Approved Product. See Section 01 6200 for definitions of Categories:
    - a) Honeywell CPRD (size) from 8 inch to 14 inch.
- f. Backdraft Dampers:
  - 1) Backdraft blades shall be nonmetallic neoprene coated fiberglass type.
  - 2) Stop shall be galvanized steel screen or expanded metal, 1/2 inch (13 mm) mesh.
  - 3) Frame shall be galvanized steel or extruded aluminum alloy.
  - 4) Category Four Approved Products. See Section 01 6200 for definitions of Categories:
    - a) Air-Rite: Model BDD-3.
    - b) American Warming: BD-15.
    - c) C & S: BD30.
    - d) Pottorff: BD-51.
    - e) Ruskin: NMS2.
    - f) Utemp: BFEA.
5. Duct Silencers:
  - a. Category Four Approved Products. See Section 01 6200 for definitions of Categories:
    - 1) Air Filters: AIRSAN.
    - 2) Industrial Acoustic.
    - 3) Titus.
    - 4) McGill AirSeal.
6. Air Turns:
  - a. Single thickness vanes. Double thickness vanes not acceptable.
  - b. 4-1/2 inch (115 mm) wide vane rail. Junior vane rail not acceptable.
7. Branch Tap for Flexible Ductwork:
  - a. Factory-manufactured rectangular-to-round 45 degree leading tap fabricated of 24 ga (0.635 mm) zinc-coated lock-forming quality steel sheets meeting requirements of ASTM A653, with G-90 coating.

- b. One inch wide mounting flange with die formed corner clips, pre-punched mounting holes, and adhesive coated gasket.
  - c. Manual Volume Damper:
    - 1) Single blade, 22 ga (0.79 mm) minimum
    - 2) 3/8 inch (9.5 mm) minimum square rod with brass damper bearings at each end.
    - 3) Heavy-duty locking quadrant on 1-1/2 inch (38 mm) high stand-off mounting bracket attached to side of round duct.
  - d. Category Four Approved Products. See Section 01 6200 for definitions of Categories:
    - 1) ST-1HD by Air-Rite:
      - a) Nylon damper bearings approved for Air-Rite.
    - 2) STO by Flexmaster.
    - 3) HET by Sheet Metal Connectors.
- C. Fabrication:
- 1. Duct Liner:
    - a. Install mat finish surface on airstream side. Secure insulation to cleaned sheet metal duct with continuous 100 percent coat of adhesive and with 3/4 inch (19 mm) long mechanical fasteners 12 inches (300 mm) on center maximum unless detailed otherwise on Drawings. Pin all duct liner.
    - b. Accurately cut liner and thoroughly coat ends with adhesive. Butt joints tightly. Top and bottom sections of insulation shall overlap sides. If liner is all one piece, folded corners shall be tight against metal. Ends shall butt tightly together.
    - c. Coat longitudinal and transverse edges of liner with adhesive.
  - 2. Air Turns:
    - a. Permanently install vanes arranged to permit air to make abrupt turn without appreciable turbulence, in 90 degree elbows of above ground supply and return ductwork.
    - b. Quiet and free from vibration when system is in operation.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 INSTALLATION

- A. Duct Liner:
  - 1. Furnish and install acoustic lining in following types of rectangular ducts unless noted otherwise on Contract Documents:
    - a. Supply air.
    - b. Return air.
    - c. Exhaust air.
    - d. Elbows, fittings, and diffuser drops greater than 12 inches (300 mm) in length.
  - 2. Do not install acoustic lining in round ducts.
- B. Flexible Connections: Install flexible inlet and outlet duct connections to each furnace.
- C. Access Doors In Ducts:
  - 1. Install at each manual outside air damper and at each motorized damper. Locate doors within 6 inches (150 mm) of installed dampers.
  - 2. Install within 6 inches (150 mm) of fire dampers and in Mechanical Room if possible. Install on side of duct that allows easiest access to damper.
- D. Dampers And Damper Accessories:
  - 1. Install concealed ceiling damper regulators.
    - a. Paint cover plates to match ceiling tile.
    - b. Do not install damper regulators for dampers located directly above removable ceilings or in Mechanical Rooms.
  - 2. Provide each take-off with an adjustable volume damper to balance that branch.
    - a. Anchor dampers securely to duct.
    - b. Install dampers in main ducts within insulation.



- c. Dampers in branch ducts shall fit against sheet metal walls, bottom and top of duct, and be securely fastened. Cut duct liner to allow damper to fit against sheet metal.
  - d. Where concealed ceiling damper regulators are installed, provide cover plate.
3. Install motorized dampers.

**END OF SECTION**

**SECTION 23 3316****FIRE AND SMOKE DAMPERS****PART 1 - GENERAL****1.1 SUMMARY**

- A. Includes But Not Limited To:
  - 1. Furnish and install fire and smoke dampers described in Contract Documents.
- B. Related Requirements:
  - 1. Section 15 3001: 'Common Duct Requirements'.

**1.2 REFERENCES**

- A. Reference Standards:
  - 1. Underwriters Laboratories (UL):
    - a. UL 555: 'Fire Dampers' (7th Edition).
    - b. UL 555C, 'Ceiling Dampers' (3rd Edition).
    - c. UL 555S, 'Smoke Dampers' (4th Edition).

**1.3 QUALITY ASSURANCE**

- A. Regulatory Agency Sustainability Approvals:
  - 1. Dampers shall conform to NFPA and SMACNA requirements and bear UL label.
  - 2. Dampers shall be approved by fire authorities having jurisdiction where so required.
  - 3. Wall and floor fire dampers shall conform to UL 555 Fire Damper Test Standard.
  - 4. Ceiling fire dampers shall conform to UL 555C Ceiling Damper Test Standard.
  - 5. Smoke Dampers shall conform to UL 555S Leakage Rated Damper Test Standard.
  - 6. Combination fire / smoke dampers shall conform to UL 555 Fire Damper Test Standard and to UL 555S Leakage Rated Damper Test Standard.

**1.4 SUBMITTALS**

- A. Maintenance Material Submittals:
  - 1. Extra Stock Materials:
    - a. Leave six (6) fusible links of each rating type used on Project with Owner.

**PART 2 - PRODUCTS****2.1 ASSEMBLIES**

- A. Manufacturers:
  - 1. Manufacturer Contact List:
    - a. Air Balance Inc, Holland, OH [www.airbalance.com](http://www.airbalance.com).
    - b. Cesco Products, Florence, KY [www.cescoproducts.com](http://www.cescoproducts.com).
    - c. Greenheck Corp, Schofield, WI [www.greenheck.com](http://www.greenheck.com) or Greenheck Corp/ E H Price Ltd, Winnipeg, MB (204) 669-4220.
    - d. Honeywell Inc, Minneapolis, MN [www.honeywell.com](http://www.honeywell.com).
    - e. Nailor Industries, Houston, TX [www.nailor.com](http://www.nailor.com).
    - f. Pottorff, Fort Worth, TN [www.pottorff-hvac.com](http://www.pottorff-hvac.com).

- g. Prefco Products Inc, Buckingham, PA [www.prefco-hvac.com](http://www.prefco-hvac.com).
  - h. Ruskin Manufacturing, Kansas City, MO [www.ruskin.com](http://www.ruskin.com).
  - i. Safe-Air / Dowco, Cicero, IL [www.safeair-dowco.com](http://www.safeair-dowco.com).
  - j. United Enertech Corp, Chattanooga, TN [www.unitedenertech.com](http://www.unitedenertech.com).
- B. Manufactured Units:
- 1. Fire Dampers:
    - a. Walls And Floors (Type 1):
      - 1) Type 'B.'
      - 2) Category Four Approved Products. See Section 01 6200 for definitions of Categories:
        - a) Air Balance: Model 119B.
        - b) Cesco: Model 15SB.
        - c) Greenheck: Model FD150XB.
        - d) Nailor: Model 0120H.
        - e) Pottorff: Model VFD-10.
        - f) Ruskin: Model DIBD20.
        - g) Safe-Air: Model 150B Sleeved.
        - h) United Enertech: FDD-SB.
    - b. Ceilings (Type 2):
      - 1) Radiation type ceiling fire damper.
      - 2) Category Four Approved Products. See Section 01 6200 for definitions of Categories:
        - a) Air Balance: Model 289.
        - b) Cesco: Model RCI.
        - c) Greenheck: Model CRD-60B.
        - d) Nailor: Model 0716 or 0722.
        - e) Pottorff: Model CFD-20.
        - f) Ruskin: Model CFD-LDS Series.
        - g) Safe-Air: Model 410A.
        - h) United Enertech: C-S/R.
  - 2. Smoke Dampers (Type 3):
    - a. Rated Class II **350 deg F (177 deg C)** minimum.
    - b. Power open-fail close non-stall type motorized damper operating at 115 V and drawing 0.2 AMP maximum.
    - c. Category Four Approved Products. See Section 01 6200 for definitions of Categories:
      - 1) Air Balance: Model S2.
      - 2) Cesco: Model S2.
      - 3) Greenheck: Model SMD202.
      - 4) Nailor: Model 1260.
      - 5) Pottorff: SD-142.
      - 6) Ruskin: Model SD36.
      - 7) United Enertech: S-3V-II.
      - 8) Equal by Prefco as approved by Architect before bidding. See Section 01 6200.
  - 3. Standard Combination Fire / Smoke Dampers (Type 4):
    - a. 1-1/2 hour rated and Class II **250 deg F (121 deg C)** leakage rated minimum.
    - b. Power-open, fail-close non-stall type motorized damper operating at 115 V and drawing 0.2 AMP maximum.
    - c. Category Four Approved Products. See Section 01 6200 for definitions of Categories:
      - 1) Air Balance: Model FS2.
      - 2) CESCO: Model CG2.
      - 3) Greenheck: Model FSD212.
      - 4) Nailor: Model 1270 or 1290FS.
      - 5) Pottorff: Model FSD-142.
      - 6) Ruskin: Model FSD36.
      - 7) Safe-Air: Model 772.
      - 8) United Enertech: S-3V-II.
      - 9) Equal by Prefco as approved by Architect before bidding. See Section 01 6200.
  - 4. Corridor Combination Fire / Smoke Dampers (Type 5):
    - a. One hour rated and Class II **250 deg F (121 deg C)** leakage rated minimum for protection of tunnel type corridor ceilings with horizontal walls.

- b. Power-open, fail-close non-stall type motorized damper operating at 115 V and drawing 0.2 AMP maximum.
  - c. Category Four Approved Products. See Section 01 6200 for definitions of Categories:
    - 1) Air Balance: Model FS2C.
    - 2) CESCO: Model TG2C.
    - 3) Greenheck: Model CFSD212.
    - 4) Nailor: Model 1271C-1.
    - 5) Pottorff: FSD-172.
    - 6) Prefco: 5050TC.
    - 7) Ruskin: Model FSD36C.
    - 8) United Enertech: F/S-3V-CR-II.
- C. Fabrication:
- 1. General:
    - a. 16 ga frames.
    - b. Integral sleeves, except for Type 2 Fire Dampers.
  - 2. Type 1 Dampers: Fabricate with blades out of airstream.
  - 3. Type 3, 4, And 5 Dampers:
    - a. Seals:
      - 1) Blade seals shall be mechanically locked into blade edge. Clip-on and adhesive type seals are not acceptable.
      - 2) Jamb seals shall be flexible metal compression type.
    - b. Blades:
      - 1) Type 3: 16 ga (1.59 mm) minimum steel.
      - 2) Type 4 And 5: 22 ga (0.79 mm) minimum steel.
- D. Operation Sequences:
- 1. Types 1 And 2: Dampers shall close when temperatures at damper exceed 165 deg F (74 deg C) link unless indicated otherwise on Drawings.
  - 2. Type 3: Dampers shall close on signal from smoke detectors and on power failure.
  - 3. Types 4 And 5: Dampers shall close on signal from smoke detectors, on power failure, or when temperatures at damper exceed 165 deg F (74 deg C).

## 2.2 ACCESSORIES

- A. Damper Actuators:
- 1. For Type 3, 4, and 5 dampers.
  - 2. Category Four Approved Product. See Section 01 6200 for definitions of Categories:
    - a. Honeywell: ML 4115.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 INSTALLATION

- A. Placement:
- 1. Fire Dampers (Types 1 and 2): Install in ducts where ducts penetrate fire-rated walls and floors and at registers, grilles, and diffusers penetrating fire rated assemblies.
  - 2. Smoke Dampers (Type 3): Install smoke dampers in ducts within 24 inches (600 mm) of where ducts penetrate smoke barriers.
  - 3. Standard Combination Fire / Smoke Dampers (Type 4): Install in ducts where ducts penetrate fire-rated smoke barriers.
  - 4. Corridor Combination Fire / Smoke Dampers (Type 5): Install in ducts where ducts penetrate fire-rated corridor ceilings.

**END OF SECTION**

**SECTION 23 3346****FLEXIBLE DUCTS****PART 1 - GENERAL****1.1 SUMMARY**

- A. Includes But Not Limited To:
  - 1. Furnish and install supply air branch duct runouts to diffusers as described in Contract Documents.
- B. Related Requirements:
  - 1. Section 23 3001: Common Duct Requirements.

**1.2 REFERENCES**

- A. Reference Standards:
  - 1. National Fire Protection Association / American National Standards Institute:
    - a. NFPA 90A: 'Installation of Air-Conditioning and Ventilating Systems' (2018 or most recent edition adopted by AHJ).
  - 2. Underwriters Laboratories:
    - a. UL 181, 'Factory-Made Ducts and Air Connectors' (11th Edition).
    - b. UL 181B, 'Closure Systems for Use With Flexible Air Ducts and Air Connectors' (3rd Edition).

**PART 2 - PRODUCTS****2.1 SYSTEM**

- A. Manufacturers:
  - 1. Manufacturer Contact List:
    - a. JP Lamborn Co., Fresno CA [www.jpflex.com](http://www.jpflex.com).
    - b. Flexmaster USA Inc, Houston, TX [www.flexmasterusa.com](http://www.flexmasterusa.com) or Flexmaster Canada Ltd, Richmond Hill, ON (905) 731-9411.
    - c. Thermaflex by Flexible Technologies, Abbeville, SC or Mississauga, ON [www.thermaflex.net](http://www.thermaflex.net).
- B. Materials:
  - 1. Ducts:
    - a. Formable, flexible, circular duct which shall retain its cross-section, shape, rigidity, and shall not restrict airflow after bending.
    - b. Insulation:
      - 1) Nominal 1-1/2 inches (38 mm), 3/4 lb per cu ft (12 kg per cu m) density fiberglass insulation with air-tight, polyethylene or polyester core, sheathed in seamless vapor barrier jacket factory installed over flexible assembly.
    - c. Assembly, including insulation and vapor barrier, shall meet Class I requirement of NFPA 90A and be UL 181 rated, with flame spread of 25 or less and smoke developed rating of 50 or under.
    - d. Category Four Approved Products. See Section 01 6200 for definitions of Categories:
      - 1) PR-25 by JP Lambornes.
      - 2) Flex-Vent KP by Thermaflex by Flexible Technologies.
      - 3) Type 1B Insulated by Flexmaster.
  - 2. Cinch Bands: Nylon, 3/8 inch (9.5 mm) removable and reusable type.

- a. Listed and labeled in accordance with Standard UL 181B and labeled 'UL 181 B-C'.

### **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

#### **3.1 INSTALLATION**

- A. Install duct in fully extended condition free of sags and kinks, using **72 inch (1 800 mm)** maximum lengths.
- B. Make duct connections by coating exterior of duct collar for **3 inches (75 mm)** with duct sealer and securing duct in place over sheet metal collar with specified cinch bands.

**END OF SECTION**

**SECTION 23 3401****EXHAUST FANS****PART 1 - GENERAL****1.1 SUMMARY**

- A. Includes But Not Limited To:
  - 1. Furnish and install exhaust fans as described in Contract Documents.
- B. Related Requirements:
  - 1. Section 23 3001: 'Common Duct Requirements'.
  - 2. Division 26: Control device and electrical connection.

**1.2 QUALITY ASSURANCE**

- A. Regulatory Agency Sustainability Approvals:
  - 1. Bear AMCA seal and UL label.

**PART 2 - PRODUCTS****2.1 MANUFACTURERS**

- A. Manufacturer Contact List:
  - 1. Acme Engineering & Manufacturing Corp, Muskogee, OK [www.acmefan.com](http://www.acmefan.com).
  - 2. Broan-Nu Tone LLC, Harford, WI [www.broan.com](http://www.broan.com).
  - 3. Carnes Co., Verona, MI [www.carnes.com](http://www.carnes.com).
  - 4. Loren Cook Co., Springfield, MO [www.lorencook.com](http://www.lorencook.com).
  - 5. Soler & Palau (S&P USA Ventilation Systems, LLC), Jacksonville FL [www.solerpalau-usa.com](http://www.solerpalau-usa.com).

**2.2 MANUFACTURED UNITS**

- A. Ceiling Mounted Exhaust Fans:
  - 1. Acoustically insulated housings. Sound level rating of 5.0 sones maximum for CFM and static pressure listed on Contract Drawings.
  - 2. Include chatterproof integral back-draft damper with no metal-to-metal contact.
  - 3. True centrifugal wheels.
  - 4. Entire fan, motor, and wheel assembly shall be easily removable without disturbing housing.
  - 5. Suitably ground motors and mount on rubber-in shear vibration isolators.
  - 6. Provide wall or roof cap, as required.
  - 7. Category Four Approved Products. See Section 01 6200 for definitions of Categories:
    - a. Acme: VQ.
    - b. Broan: LoSone.
    - c. Carnes: VCD.
    - d. Cook: Gemini.
    - e. Soler & Palau: FF.

**PART 3 - EXECUTION**

**3.1 INSTALLATION**

- A. Anchor fan units securely to structure or to curb.

**END OF SECTION**



**SECTION 23 3713****DIFFUSERS, REGISTERS, AND GRILLES****PART 1 - GENERAL****1.1 SUMMARY**

- A. Includes But Not Limited To:
  - 1. Furnish and install diffusers, registers, and grilles connected to ductwork as described in Contract Documents.
- B. Related Requirements:
  - 1. Section 23 3001: 'General Duct Requirements'.

**1.2 SUBMITTALS**

- A. Maintenance Material Submittals:
  - 1. Tools: Leave tool for removing core of each different type of grille for building custodian.

**PART 2 - PRODUCTS****2.1 MANUFACTURERS**

- A. Manufacturer Contact List:
  - 1. Carnes Co, Verona, MI [www.carnes.com](http://www.carnes.com).
  - 2. J & J Register, Grand Rapids, MI [www.jandjreg.com](http://www.jandjreg.com).
  - 3. Krueger Air System Components, Richardson, TX [www.krueger-hvac.com](http://www.krueger-hvac.com).
  - 4. Metal\*Aire by Metal Industries Inc, Clearwater, FL [www.metalaire.com](http://www.metalaire.com).
  - 5. Nailor Industries Inc, Houston, TX or Weston, ON [www.nailor.com](http://www.nailor.com).
  - 6. Price Industries Inc, Suwanee, GA [www.price-hvac.com](http://www.price-hvac.com) or E H Price Ltd, Winnipeg, MB (204) 669-4220.
  - 7. Titus, Richardson, TX [www.titus-hvac.com](http://www.titus-hvac.com).
  - 8. Tuttle & Bailey, Richardson, TX [www.tuttleandbailey.com](http://www.tuttleandbailey.com).

**2.2 MANUFACTURED UNITS**

- A. Ceiling Return And Transfer Grilles:
  - 1. Finish: Off-white baked enamel.
  - 2. **1/2 inch (12.7 mm)** spacing.
  - 3. See Contract Documents for location of filter grilles.
  - 4. Category Four Approved Products. See Section 01 6200 for definitions of Categories:
    - a. Carnes: RSLA.
    - b. J & J: S90H.
    - c. Krueger: S85H.
    - d. Metal\*Aire: SRH.
    - e. Nailor: 6155H.
    - f. Price: 535.
    - g. Titus: 355RL or 355 RS.
    - h. Tuttle & Bailey: T75D.
- B. Ceiling Diffusers:
  - 1. Finish: Off-white baked enamel.

2. Category Four Approved Products. See Section 01 6200 for definitions of Categories:
  - a. Carnes: SKSA.
  - b. J & J: R-1400.
  - c. Krueger: SH.
  - d. Metal\*Aire: 5500S.
  - e. Nailor: 65OOB.
  - f. Price: SMD-6.
  - g. Titus: TDC-6.
  - h. Tuttle & Bailey: M.
  
- C. Ceiling Supply And Return Linear Slot Diffusers:
  1. Finish: Off-white baked enamel.
  2. Number of slots: 4.
  3. Slot width: See drawings.
  4. Category Four Approved Products. See Section 01 6200 for definitions of Categories:
    - a. Krueger: 1900.
    - b. Metal\*Aire: 6600 / 6600R.
    - c. Nailor: 5000 / 5000R.
    - d. Price: SDS / SDR.
    - e. Tuttle & Bailey: 6000.

## **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

### **3.1 INSTALLATION**

- A. Anchor securely into openings. Secure frames to ductwork by using four sheet metal screws, one per side. Level floor registers and anchor securely into floor.

**END OF SECTION**

**SECTION 23 3714****LOUVERS AND VENTS****PART 1 - GENERAL****1.1 SUMMARY**

- A. Includes But Not Limited To:
  - 1. Furnish and install louvers connected to ductwork as described in Contract Documents.
- B. Related Requirements:
  - 1. Section 23 3001: 'General Duct Requirements'.

**PART 2 - PRODUCTS****2.1 MANUFACTURERS**

- A. Manufacturer Contact List:
  - 1. Airolite Co, Marietta, OH [www.airolite.com](http://www.airolite.com).
  - 2. Air-Rite Manufacturing, Bountiful, UT [www.air-ritemfg.com](http://www.air-ritemfg.com).
  - 3. American Warming & Ventilating, Holland, OH [www.awv.com](http://www.awv.com).
  - 4. Arrow United Industries, Wyalusing, PA [www.arrowunited.com](http://www.arrowunited.com).
  - 5. Carnes Co, Verona, WI [www.carnes.com](http://www.carnes.com) or Energy Technology Products LTD, Edmonton, AB (780) 468-1110.
  - 6. Industrial Louvers Inc, Delano, MN [www.industriallouvers.com](http://www.industriallouvers.com) or DKG Construction, LTD., Waterdown, ON 289-895-9729.
  - 7. Pottorff, Fort Worth, TX [www.pottorff.com](http://www.pottorff.com).
  - 8. Ruskin Manufacturing, Kansas City, MO [www.ruskin.com](http://www.ruskin.com).
  - 9. United Enertech Corporation, Chattanooga, TN [www.unitedenertech.com](http://www.unitedenertech.com).
  - 10. Vent Products Co Inc, Chicago, IL [www.ventprod.com](http://www.ventprod.com).
  - 11. SF435 by Western Ventilation Products Ltd, Calgary, AB [www.westvent.com](http://www.westvent.com).
  - 12. Wonder Metals Corp, Redding, CA [www.wondermetals.com](http://www.wondermetals.com).

**2.2 MANUFACTURED UNITS**

- A. Louvers:
  - 1. General:
    - a. Extruded aluminum, with blades welded or screwed into frames.
    - b. Frames shall have mitered corners.
    - c. Louvers shall be recessed, flanged, stationary, or removable as noted on Contract Documents.
    - d. Finish:
      - 1) Polyvinylidene Fluoride (PVF<sub>2</sub>) Resin-base finish (Kynar 500 or Hylar 5000) containing 70 percent minimum PVF<sub>2</sub> in resin portion of formula. Thermo-cured two coat system consisting of corrosion inhibiting epoxy primer and top coat factory applied over properly pre-treated metal.
      - 2) Color as selected by Architect from Manufacturer's standard colors.
  - 2. Louvers Connected To Ductwork:
    - a. **1/2 inch (13 mm)** mesh **16 ga (1.59 mm)** aluminum bird screen.
    - b. Category Four Approved Products. See Section 01 6200 for definitions of Categories:
      - 1) K638 by Airolite.
      - 2) LE-1 by Air-Rite Manufacturing.
      - 3) LE48 by American Warming & Ventilating.

- 4) EA-405 by Arrow United Industries.
- 5) FKDA by Carnes.
- 6) 455-XP by Industrial Louvers.
- 7) EFK-445 by Pottorff.
- 8) ELF81S30 by Ruskin.
- 9) EL-4 by United Eneritech.
- 10) 2740-31 by Vent Products.
- 11) EX by Wonder Metals.

### **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

#### **3.1 INSTALLATION**

- A. Anchor securely into openings.
- B. Where louvers touch masonry or dissimilar metals, protect with heavy coat of asphaltum paint.

**END OF SECTION**

**SECTION 23 7416.11****PACKAGED, SMALL-CAPACITY, ROOFTOP AIR-CONDITIONING UNITS****PART 1 - GENERAL****1.1 SUMMARY**

- A. Section includes packaged, small-capacity, rooftop air-conditioning units (RTUs) with the following components and accessories:
  - 1. Unit Casing.
  - 2. Air Filters.
  - 3. Fans & Motors.
  - 4. Gas Fired Heating Section.
  - 5. Evaporator Coil.
  - 6. Condenser Section.
  - 7. Refrigerant system.
  - 8. Outdoor Air Section.
  - 9. Operating Controls.
  - 10. Roof curbs.

**1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS**

- A. Product Data: For each RTU.
- B. Shop Drawings:
  - 1. Include details of equipment assemblies. Indicate dimensions, weights, loads, required clearances, method of field assembly, components, and location and size of each field connection.
  - 2. Include diagrams for power, signal, and control wiring.
- C. Delegated-Design Submittal: For RTU supports indicated to comply with performance requirements and design criteria, including analysis data signed and sealed by the qualified professional engineer responsible for their preparation.

**1.3 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS**

- A. Coordination Drawings: Plans and other details, drawn to scale and coordinated with each other, using input from installers of the items involved.
- B. Seismic Qualification Certificates: For RTUs, accessories, and components, from manufacturer.
- C. Product Certificates: Submit certification that specified equipment will withstand wind forces identified in "Performance Requirements" Article and in Section 23 0548 "Vibration and Seismic Controls for HVAC."
- D. Field quality-control reports.
- E. Sample warranty.

**1.4 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS**

- A. Operation and maintenance data.

**1.5 WARRANTY**

- A. Provide parts warranty (excluding refrigerant) for one year from start-up or 18 months from shipment, whichever occurs first.
- B. Provide three-year extended warranty for compressors.
- C. Provide five-year heat exchanger limited warranty.

**1.6 MAINTENANCE SERVICE**

- A. Contractor to furnish complete parts and labor service and maintenance of packaged roof top units for one year from Date of Substantial Completion.
- B. Provide maintenance service with a two-month interval as maximum time period between calls. Provide 24 hour emergency service on breakdowns and malfunctions.
- C. Include maintenance items as outlined in manufacturer's operating and maintenance data.
- D. Submit copies of service call work order or report and include description of work performed.

**1.7 REGULATORY REQUIREMENTS**

- A. Unit shall conform to ANSI Z21.47/UL1995 for construction of packaged air conditioner.
- B. In the event the unit is not UL approved, the manufacturer must, at his expense, provide for a field inspection by a UL representative to verify conformance to UL standards. If necessary, contractor shall perform modifications to the unit to comply with UL, as directed by the UL representative, at no additional expense to the Owner.

**1.8 EXTRA MATERIALS**

- A. Contractor to provide one set of filters.
- B. Contractor to furnish a complete set of fan motor drive belts.

**PART 2 - PRODUCTS****2.1 DESCRIPTION**

- A. Unit(s) furnished and installed shall be DX Cooling and Gas Heat packaged rooftop(s) or heat pump heating as scheduled on contract documents and these specifications. Cooling capacity ratings shall be based on AHRI Standards. Unit(s) shall consist of insulated weather-tight casing with compressor(s), air-cooled condenser coil, condenser fans, evaporator coil, return-air filters, supply motors and unit controls.

- B. Unit(s) shall be 100% factory run tested and fully charged with code compliant refrigerant.
- C. Unit(s) shall have labels, decals, and/or tags to aid in the service of the unit and indicate caution areas.
- D. Units shall be convertible airflow design as manufactured.
- E. Wiring internal to the unit shall be colored and numbered for identification.
- F. ASHRAE/IES Compliance: Comply with applicable requirements in ASHRAE/IES 90.1, Section 6 - "Heating, Ventilating, and Air-Conditioning."
- G. NFPA Compliance: Comply with NFPA 90A or NFPA 90B.
- H. UL Compliance: Comply with UL 1995.
- I. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.

## **2.2 MANUFACTURERS**

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - 1. AAON.
  - 2. Carrier Corporation; a unit of United Technologies Corp.
  - 3. Daikin Applied.
  - 4. Trane.

## **2.3 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS**

- A. Delegated Design: Engage a qualified professional engineer, as defined in Section 01 40 00 "Quality Requirements," to design mounting and restraints for RTUs, including comprehensive engineering analysis.
  - 1. Design RTU supports to comply with wind and seismic performance requirements.
- A. Wind-Restraint Loading:
  - 1. Ultimate Design Wind Speed: 115 MPH
  - 2. Building Classification Category: II.
  - 3. Minimum 10 lb/sq. ft. multiplied by maximum area of HVAC component projected on vertical plane normal to wind direction, and 45 degrees either side of normal.
- B. Seismic Performance: RTUs, accessories, and components shall withstand the effects of earthquake motions determined according to ASCE/SEI 7.
  - 1. The term "withstand" means "the unit will remain in place without separation of any parts when subjected to the seismic forces specified."

## **2.4 CAPACITIES AND CHARACTERISTICS: See Drawings**

## **2.5 AIR FILTERS**

- A. Air Filters: Factory installed filters shall mount integral within the unit and shall be accessible through access panels. One-inch thick glass fiber disposable media filters shall be provided with the provisions within the unit for 2 inch thick filters to be field- provided and installed

**2.6 CASINGS**

- A. Cabinet: Galvanized steel, phosphatized, and finished with an air-dry paint coating with removable access panels. Structural members shall be 18 gauge.
- B. Unit's cabinet surface shall be tested 1000 hours in salt spray test in compliance with ASTM B117.
- C. Cabinet construction shall allow for all service/ maintenance from one side of the unit.
- D. Cabinet top cover shall be one piece construction or where seams exists, it shall be double-hemmed and gasket-sealed.
- E. Access Panels: Water- and air-tight panels with handles shall provide access to filters, heating section, return air fan section, supply air fan section, evaporator coil section, and unit control section.
- F. Unit's base pan shall have a raised 1 1/8 inch high lip around the supply and return openings for water integrity.
- G. Insulation: Provide 1/2 inch thick fiberglass insulation with foil face on all exterior panels in contact with the return and conditioned air stream. All edges must be captured so that there is no insulation exposed in the air stream.
- H. Provide openings either on side of unit or through the base for power, control, condensate, and gas connections.
- I. The base of the unit shall have 3 sides for forklift provisions. The base of the units shall have rigging/lifting holes for crane maneuvering.
- J. Airstream Surfaces: Surfaces in contact with the airstream shall comply with requirements in ASHRAE 62.1.

**2.7 FANS AND MOTORS**

- A. Provide self-aligning, grease lubricated, ball or sleeve bearings with permanent lubrication fittings.
- B. Provide units 5 tons and below with direct drive, multiple speed, dynamically balanced supply fans.
- C. Outdoor and Indoor Fan motors shall be permanently lubricated and have internal thermal overload protection.
- D. Outdoor fans shall be direct drive, statically and dynamically balanced, draw through in the vertical discharge position.
- E. Provide shafts constructed of solid hot rolled steel, ground and polished, with key-way, and protectively coated with lubricating oil.

**2.8 GAS FIRED HEATING SECTION**

- A. Completely assembled and factory installed heating system shall be integral to unit, UL or CSA approved specifically for outdoor applications for use downstream from refrigerant cooling coils. Threaded connection with plug or cap provided.
- B. Heating section shall be factory run tested prior to shipment.



- C. Induced draft combustion type with direct spark ignition system, redundant main gas valve, and 2-staged heat.
- D. Gas Burner Safety Controls: Provide safety controls for the proving of combustion air prior to ignition, and continuous flame supervision. Provide flame rollout switches.
- E. Induced draft blower shall have combustion air proving switches and built-in thermal overload protection on fan motor.
- F. Heat Exchanger:
  - 1. When outside air is less than 50% airflow: Provide tubular section type constructed from 18-gauge aluminized steel.
  - 2. When outside air is greater than 50% airflow: Provide tubular section type constructed from 18-gauge stainless steel.
- G. Burners: Burners shall be of the in-shot type constructed of stainless steel.
- H. Limit controls: High temperature limit controls will shut off gas flow in the event of excessive temperatures resulting from restricted indoor airflow or loss of indoor airflow.

## **2.9 EVAPORATOR COIL**

- A. Provide configured aluminum fin surface mechanically bonded to copper tubing coil.
- B. Provide an independent expansion device for each refrigeration circuit. Factory pressure tested at 450 psig and leak tested at 200 psig.
- C. Provide a removable, reversible, cleanable double sloped drain pan for base of evaporator coil constructed of stainless steel.

## **2.10 CONDENSER SECTION**

- A. Provide vertical discharge, direct drive fans with aluminum blades. Fans shall be statically balanced. Motors shall be permanently lubricated, with integral thermal overload protection in a weather tight casing.

## **2.11 REFRIGERATION SYSTEM**

- A. Compressor(s): Provide scroll compressor with direct drive operating at 3600 rpm. Integral centrifugal oil pump. Provide suction gas cooled motor with winding temperature limits and compressor overloads.
- B. Units shall have cooling capabilities down to 40 degree F as standard. For field-installed low ambient accessory, the manufacturer shall provide a factory-authorized service technician that will assure proper installation and operation.
- C. Provide each unit with refrigerant circuit(s) factory-supplied completely piped with liquid line filter-drier, suction and liquid line pressure ports.

## **2.12 OUTDOOR AIR SECTION**

- A. Provide 100% economizer with barometric relief for units under 4 tons, and 100% economizer with 100% modulating powered exhaust on all units 4 tons and over.

- B. Provide adjustable minimum position control located in the economizer section of the unit.
- C. Provide spring return motor for outside air damper closure during unit shutdown or power interruption.

### **2.13 OPERATING CONTROLS**

- A. Provide factory-wired roof top units with 24-volt electro-mechanical control circuit with control transformers, contactors pressure lugs or terminal block for power wiring. Units shall have single point power connection as standard. Field wiring of zone controls to be NEC Class II.

### **2.14 ROOF CURB**

- A. Contractor shall provide seismically calculated sloped roof curb, 16 gauge perimeter made of zinc coated steel with supply and return air gasketing and wood nailer strips. Ship knocked down and provided with instructions for easy assembly.
- B. Curb shall be manufactured in accordance with the National Roofing Contractors Association guidelines

## **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

### **3.1 INSTALLATION**

- A. Roof Curb: Install on roof structure or concrete base, level and secure, according to AHRI Guideline B. Install RTUs on curbs and coordinate roof penetrations and flashing with roof construction specified in Section 07 72 00 "Roof Accessories." Secure RTUs to upper curb rail, and secure curb base to roof framing with anchor bolts.
- B. Unit Support: Install unit level on structural curbs. Coordinate wall penetrations and flashing with wall construction. Secure RTUs to structural support with anchor bolts.

### **3.2 CONNECTIONS**

- A. Comply with duct installation requirements specified in other HVAC Sections. Drawings indicate general arrangement of ducts. The following are specific connection requirements:
  - 1. Install ducts to termination at top of roof curb.
  - 2. Remove roof decking only as required for passage of ducts. Do not cut out decking under entire roof curb.
  - 3. Connect supply ducts to RTUs with flexible duct connectors specified in Section 23 33 00 "Air Duct Accessories."
  - 4. Install return-air duct continuously through roof structure.
  - 5. Install normal-weight, 3000-psi, compressive strength (28-day) concrete mix inside roof curb, 4 inches thick. Concrete, formwork, and reinforcement are specified with concrete.
- B. Install condensate drain, minimum connection size, with trap and indirect connection to nearest roof drain or area drain.
- C. Where installing piping adjacent to RTUs, allow space for service and maintenance.
  - 1. Gas Piping: Comply with applicable requirements in Section 23 11 23 "Facility Natural-Gas Piping." Connect gas piping to burner, full size of gas train inlet, and connect with union and shutoff valve with sufficient clearance for burner removal and service.

**3.3 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL**

- A. Perform tests and inspections with the assistance of a factory-authorized service representative.
- B. Tests and Inspections:
  - 1. After installing RTUs and after electrical circuitry has been energized, test units for compliance with requirements.
  - 2. Inspect for and remove shipping bolts, blocks, and tie-down straps.
  - 3. Operational Test: After electrical circuitry has been energized, start units to confirm proper motor rotation and unit operation.
  - 4. Test and adjust controls and safeties. Replace damaged and malfunctioning controls and equipment.
- C. RTU will be considered defective if it does not pass tests and inspections.
- D. Prepare test and inspection reports.

**3.4 CLEANING AND ADJUSTING**

- A. Occupancy Adjustments: When requested within 12 months from date of Substantial Completion, provide on-site assistance in adjusting system to suit actual occupied conditions. Provide up to two visits to Project during other-than-normal occupancy hours for this purpose.
- B. After completing system installation and testing, adjusting, and balancing RTU and air-distribution systems, clean filter housings and install new filters.

**3.5 DEMONSTRATION**

- A. Engage a factory-authorized service representative to train Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain RTUs.

**END OF SECTION**

**SECTION 26 0501****COMMON ELECTRICAL REQUIREMENTS****PART 1 - GENERAL****1.1 SUMMARY**

- A. Includes But Not Limited To:
  - 1. General electrical system requirements and procedures.
  - 2. Perform excavating and backfilling work required by work of this Division as described in Contract Documents.
  - 3. Make electrical connections to equipment provided under other Sections. Furnish and install Penetration Firestop Systems at electrical system penetrations as described in Contract Documents.
- B. Products Furnished But Not Installed Under This Section:
  - 1. Anchor bolts and templates for exterior lighting equipment bases.
- C. Related Requirements:
  - 1. Section 07 8400: 'Firestopping' for quality of Penetration Firestop Systems to be used on Project and submittal requirements.
  - 2. Section 31 2316: 'Excavation' for criteria for performance of excavating.
  - 3. Section 31 2323: 'Fill' for criteria for performance of backfilling.

**1.2 REFERENCES**

- A. Reference Standards:
  - 1. National Fire Protection Association / American National Standards Institute:
    - a. NFPA 70, 'National Electrical Code (NEC)' (2017 or most recent edition adopted by AHJ).
  - 2. National Electrical Manufacturing Association Standards (NEMA):
    - a. NEMA 250-2018, 'Enclosure for Electrical Equipment (1000 Volts Maximum)'.

**1.3 SUBMITTALS**

- A. Action Submittals:
  - 1. Product Data:
    - a. Provide following information for each item of equipment:
      - 1) Catalog Sheets.
      - 2) Assembly details or dimension drawings.
      - 3) Installation instructions.
      - 4) Manufacturer's name and catalog number.
      - 5) Name of local supplier. Furnish such information for following equipment:
        - 1) Section 26 2417: 'Circuit-Breaker Panelboards'.
        - 2) Section 26 2726: 'Wiring Devices' for lighting control equipment.
        - 3) Section 26 2773: 'Chime systems'.
        - 4) Section 26 2816: 'Enclosed Switches And Circuit Breakers'.
        - 5) Section 26 5100: 'Interior Lighting Fixtures'.
        - 6) Section 26 5200: 'Emergency Lighting' for battery units.
        - 7) Section 26 5600: 'Exterior Lighting' for fixtures, poles, and associated control equipment.
    - c. Do not purchase equipment before approval of product data.
  - 2. Shop Drawings:
    - a. Submit on Panelboards:

- b. Indicate precise equipment to be used, including all options specified. Indicate wording and format of nameplates where applicable. Submit in three-ring binder with hard cover.
- B. Informational Submittals:
1. Test And Evaluation Reports:
    - a. Report of site tests, before Substantial Completion.
  2. Qualification Statement:
    - a. Electrical Subcontractor:
      - 1) Provide Qualification documentation if requested by Architect or Owner.
    - b. Installer:
      - 1) Provide Qualification documentation if requested by Architect or Owner.
- C. Closeout Submittals:
1. Include following in Operations And Maintenance Manual specified in Section 01 7800:
    - a. Operations and Maintenance Data:
      - 1) Provide operating and maintenance instructions for each item of equipment submitted under Product Data.
    - b. Record Documentation:
      - 1) Manufacturers documentation:
        - a) Manufacturer's literature.
        - b) Include copy of approved shop drawings.

## 1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Regulatory Agency Sustainability Approvals:
1. NEC and local ordinances and regulations shall govern unless more stringent requirements are specified.
  2. Material and equipment provided shall meet standards of NEMA or UL and bear their label wherever standards have been established and label service is available.
- B. Qualifications: Requirements of Section 01 4301 applies, but not limited to following:
1. Electrical Subcontractor:
    - a. Company specializing in performing work of this section.
      - 1) Minimum five (5) years experience in electrical installations.
      - 2) Minimum five (5) satisfactorily completed installations in past three (3) years of projects similar in size, scope, and complexity required for this project before bidding.
    - b. Upon request, submit documentation.
  2. Installer:
    - a. Licensed for area of Project.
    - b. Designate one (1) individual as project foremen who shall be on site at all times during installation and experienced with installation procedures required for this project.
    - c. Upon request, submit documentation.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 SYSTEMS

- A. Performance:
1. Design Criteria:
    - a. Materials and equipment provided under following Sections shall be by same Manufacturer:
      - 1) Section 26 2417: Panelboards.
      - 2) Section 26 2816: Enclosed Switches And Circuit Breakers.

**PART 3 - EXECUTION****3.1 INSTALLERS**

- A. Acceptable Installers. See Section 01 4301:
1. Meet Quality Assurance Installer Qualifications as specified in Part 1 of this specification.

**3.2 EXAMINATION**

- A. Verification Of Conditions:
1. Confirm dimensions, ratings, and specifications of equipment to be installed and coordinate these with site dimensions and with other Sections.

**3.3 INSTALLATION**

- A. General:
1. Locations of electrical equipment shown on Drawings are approximate only. Field verify actual locations for proper installation.
  2. Coordinate electrical equipment locations and conduit runs with those providing equipment to be served before installation or rough in.
    - a. Notify Architect of conflicts before beginning work.
    - b. Coordinate locations of power and lighting outlets in mechanical rooms and other areas with mechanical equipment, piping, ductwork, cabinets, etc, so they will be readily accessible and functional.
  3. Work related to other trades which is required under this Division, such as cutting and patching, trenching, and backfilling, shall be performed according to standards specified in applicable Sections.
- B. Install Penetration Firestop System appropriate for penetration at electrical system penetrations through walls, ceilings, and top plates of walls.

**3.4 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL**

- A. Field Tests:
1. Test systems and demonstrate equipment as working and operating properly. Notify Architect before test. Rectify defects at no additional cost to Owner.
  2. Measure current for each phase of each motor under actual final load operation, i.e. after air balance is completed for fan units, etc. Record this information along with full-load nameplate current rating and size of thermal overload unit installed for each motor.

**3.5 CLOSEOUT ACTIVITIES**

- A. Training:
1. Provide competent instructor for three (3) days to train Owner's maintenance personnel in operation and maintenance of electrical equipment and systems. Factory representatives shall assist this instruction as necessary. Schedule instruction period at time of final inspection.

**END OF SECTION**

**SECTION 26 0503****ELECTRICAL UTILITY SERVICES****PART 1 - GENERAL****1.1 SUMMARY**

- A. Includes But Not Limited To:
  - 1. Furnish and install service as described in Contract Documents and as required by local serving agency.
  - 2. Complete cost of service.
  
- B. Related Requirements:
  - 1. Section 03 3053: Transformer pad.
  - 2. Section 26 0501: Common Electrical Requirements.
  - 3. Local utility shall furnish and install primary underground service including transformer, conductors, current transformers, metering conductors, and meter.

**PART 2 - PRODUCTS: Not Used****PART 3 - EXECUTION****3.1 INSTALLATION**

- A. Interface With Other Work: Coordinate with serving agency on all items, especially service entrance fittings, meter sockets, and current transformer (C/T) boxes where required.

**END OF SECTION**

**SECTION 26 0519****LINE-VOLTAGE ELECTRICAL POWER CONDUCTORS AND CABLES****PART 1 - GENERAL****1.1 SUMMARY**

- A. Includes But Not Limited To:
  - 1. Quality of conductors used on Project except as excluded below.
- B. Related Requirements:
  - 1. Section 23 0933: 'Electric and Electronic Control System for HVAC' for conductors and cables for temperature control system.
  - 2. Section 26 0501: 'Common Electrical Requirements'.

**1.2 REFERENCES**

- A. Definitions:
  - 1. Line Voltage: Over 70 Volts.
- B. Reference Standards:
  - 1. National Fire Protection Association:
    - a. NFPA 70, 'National Electric Code (NEC)' (2017 or most recent edition adopted by AHJ including all applicable amendments and supplements).
      - 1) Article 334, "Nonmetallic-Sheathed Cable, Types NM, NMC And NMS".

**PART 2 - PRODUCTS****2.1 SYSTEMS**

- A. Line Voltage Conductors:
  - 1. Copper with AWG sizes as shown:
    - a. Minimum size shall be No. 12 except where specified otherwise.
    - b. Conductor size No. 8 and larger shall be stranded.
  - 2. Insulation:
    - a. Standard Conductor Size No. 10 And Smaller: 600V type THWN or XHHW (75 deg F (24 deg C)).
    - b. Standard Conductor Size No. 8 And Larger: 600V Type THW, THWN, or XHHW (75 deg F (24 deg C)).
    - c. Higher temperature insulation as required by NFPA 70 or local codes.
  - 3. Colors:
    - a. 208Y / 120 V System:
      - 1) Black: Phase A.
      - 2) Red: Phase B.
      - 3) Blue: Phase C.
      - 4) Green: Ground.
      - 5) White: Neutral.
    - b. Conductors size No. 10 and smaller shall be colored full length. Tagging or other methods for coding of conductors size No. 10 and smaller not allowed.
    - c. For feeder conductors larger than No. 10 at pull boxes, gutters, and panels, use painted or taped band or color tag color-coded as specified above.
- B. Line Voltage Cables:



1. Non-Metallic Sheathed Cable (NM) and Metal Clad Cable (MC) may be used as restricted below:
    - a. Copper conductors.
    - b. Sizes #12 through #8.
    - c. Use only in indoor dry locations where:
      - 1) Not subject to damage.
      - 2) Not in contact with earth.
    - d. Not in concrete.
    - e. Not where exposed, visible, accessible or not concealed inside a 15 minute fire barrier (such as sheet rocked walls).
    - f. Not over suspended ceilings.
    - g. As restricted by NFPA 70 Article 334.
  2. Metal Clad Cable (MC) may be used as restricted below:
    - a. Copper conductors.
    - b. Sizes #12 through #8.
    - c. Use only in indoor dry locations where:
      - 1) Not subject to damage.
      - 2) Not in contact with earth.
      - 3) Not in concrete.
- C. Cord Sets For Ranges: Three pole, 4 wire grounding, 125/250V, NEMA 14-50P plug, 48 inch (1 200 mm) cord length minimum.
- D. Standard Connectors:
1. Conductors No. 8 And Smaller: Steel spring wire connectors.
  2. Conductors Larger Than No. 8: Pressure type terminal lugs.
  3. Connections Outside Building: Watertight steel spring wire connections with waterproof, non-hardening sealant.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 INSTALLATION

- A. General:
1. Conductors and cables shall be continuous from outlet to outlet.
  2. Do not use direct burial cable.
- B. Line Voltage Conductors:
1. Install conductors in raceway where indicated on Contract Drawings. Run conductors of different voltage systems in separate conduits.
  2. Route circuits at own discretion, however, circuiting shall be as shown in Panel Schedules. Group circuit homeruns to panels as shown on Contract Drawings.
  3. Neutrals:
    - a. On three-phase, 4-wire systems, do not use common neutral for more than three circuits.
    - b. On single-phase, 3-wire systems, do not use common neutral for more than two circuits.
    - c. Run separate neutrals for each circuit where specifically noted on Contract Drawings.
    - d. Where common neutral is run for two or three home run circuits, connect phase conductors to breakers in panel which are attached to separate phase legs:
      - 1) Provide breaker tie so that all circuits that share common neutral are simultaneously disconnected.
      - 2) Neutral conductors shall be of same size as phase conductors unless specifically noted otherwise.
  4. Pulling Conductors:
    - a. Do not pull conductors into conduit until raceway system is complete and cabinets and outlet boxes are free of foreign matter and moisture.
    - b. Do not use heavy mechanical means for pulling conductors.
    - c. Use only listed wire pulling lubricants.

- C. Line Voltage Cables:
1. Route circuits at own discretion, however, circuiting and numbering shall be as shown in Panel Schedules.
  2. Support cables using approved staples, cable ties, straps, hangers, or similar fittings, spaced as required.
  3. Where installing in framing, do not bore holes in joists or beams outside center 1/3 of member depth or within 24 inches (600 mm) of bearing points. Do not bore holes in vertical framing members outside center 1/3 of member width. Holes shall be one inch diameter maximum.
  4. Conceal cables within ceilings and walls of finished areas. Cables may be exposed in unfinished areas but not run on floors of mechanical equipment spaces or in such a way that they obstruct access to, operation of, or servicing of equipment.
  5. Install exposed cables parallel to or at right angles to building structure lines.
  6. Keep cables 6 inches (150 mm) minimum from hot water pipes.
  7. Do not support cables from mechanical ducts or duct supports without Architect's written approval.
  8. Prohibited procedures:
    - a. Boring holes for installation of cables in vertical truss members.
    - b. Notching of structural members for installation of cables.

**END OF SECTION**

**SECTION 26 0523****CONTROL-VOLTAGE ELECTRICAL CABLES****PART 1 - GENERAL****1.1 SUMMARY**

- A. Includes But Not Limited To:
  - 1. Furnish and install control-voltage electrical cables as described in Contract Documents.
- B. Related Requirements:
  - 1. Section 23 0933: 'Electric And Electronic Control System For HVAC' for cables for Temperature Control System cables.
  - 2. Section 26 0501: 'Common Electrical Requirements'.
  - 3. Section 26 0924: 'Lighting Control System'.
  - 4. Section 27 1501: 'Communications Horizontal Cabling' for voice and data system cables.
  - 5. Section 27 4117: 'Video Systems' for cables.
  - 6. Section 27 5117: 'Audio Systems' for cables.
  - 7. Section 28 3101: 'Fire Detection And Alarm System' for cables.

**1.2 REFERENCES**

- A. Definitions:
  - 1. Control Voltage: 70 Volts and under.

**PART 2 - PRODUCTS****2.1 SYSTEM**

- A. Manufacturers:
  - 1. Category Four Approved Cable Manufacturers. See Section 01 6200 for definitions of Categories:
    - a. Alpha Wire Co, Elizabeth, NJ [www.alphawire.com](http://www.alphawire.com).
    - b. Belden Wire & Cable Co, Richmond, IN [www.belden.com](http://www.belden.com).
    - c. Liberty Wire & Cable, Colorado Springs, CO [www.libertycable.com](http://www.libertycable.com).
    - d. West Penn Wire Corp, Washington, PA [www.westpenn-cdt.com](http://www.westpenn-cdt.com).
- B. Components:
  - 1. Building Control System Cables.
    - a. CAT 5E, 24 AWG, solid bare copper, four pair, UTP, white cable jacket.
    - b. Sheath Colors:
      - 1) Lighting Control: Yellow.
    - c. Meet requirements of EIA / TIA 568 Standard.
  - 2. Lighting Control Cables and Conductors:
    - a. Provide cable per Lighting Control Panel Manufacturer's recommendations and requirements.
    - b. Lighting Control Cables ran in same raceway as line voltage cables shall have same insulation voltage rating as line voltage conductors.
    - c. Cable Jacket shall be yellow.

**PART 3 - EXECUTION****3.1 INSTALLATION****A. General:**

1. Cables shall be continuous and without splices from source to outlet.
2. Run cables in raceway as indicated on Contract Drawings.
3. Run exposed cables parallel to or at right angles to building structure lines.
4. Keep cables **6 inch (150 mm)** minimum from hot water pipes.
5. Support cables using approved staples, cable ties, straps, hangers, or similar fittings spaced every **3 feet (900 mm)**.
6. Where installing in framing, do not bore holes in joists or beams outside center 1/3 of member depth or within **24 inches (600 mm)** of bearing points. Do not bore holes in vertical framing members outside center 1/3 of member width. Holes shall be **1/2 inch (13 mm)** diameter maximum.
7. Bundle only cables of same systems together.
8. Do not run cables within **10 inches (255 mm)** of line voltage conductors/raceways.
9. Extend cables **18 inches (450 mm)** from wall or ceiling at all outlet locations. Extend cables to twice vertical length of cabinet at each cabinet location.
10. Pulling cables into conduit:
  - a. Do not pull cables until raceway system is complete and cabinets and outlet boxes are free of foreign matter and moisture.
  - b. Do not use heavy mechanical means for pulling cables.
  - c. Use only listed wire pulling lubricants.
11. Prohibited procedures:
  - a. Boring holes for installation of cables in vertical truss members.
  - b. Notching of structural members for installation of cables.

**B. Control Cables:**

1. For cables not installed in raceway, do not run cables within **10 inches (255 mm)** of line voltage conductors / raceways. Also, maintain **10 inches (255 mm)** minimum between following exposed cable groups:
  - a. Microphone cables.
  - b. CAT-6, sound system control, telephone, video, or ATC cables.
  - c. Loudspeaker cables.

**END OF SECTION**

**SECTION 26 0526****GROUNDING AND BONDING FOR ELECTRICAL SYSTEMS****PART 1 - GENERAL****1.1 SUMMARY**

- A. Includes But Not Limited To:
  - 1. Furnish and install grounding for electrical installation as described in Contract Documents except as excluded below.
- B. Related Requirements:
  - 1. Section 03 3111: 'Cast-In-Place Structural Concrete'.
    - a. Pre-installation conference held jointly with other concrete related sections.
  - 2. Section 26 0501: 'Common Electrical Requirements'.
  - 3. Section 26 4301: 'Surge Protection Devices'.

**1.2 REFERENCES**

- A. Reference Standards:
  - 1. Institute of Electrical and. Electronics Engineers (IEEE):
    - a. IEEE 837-2014, 'Standard for Qualifying Permanent Connections Used in Substation Grounding'.
  - 2. National Fire Protection Association:
    - a. NFPA 70, 'National Electric Code (NEC)' (2017 or most recent edition adopted by AHJ including all applicable amendments and supplements).
    - b. NFPA 780, 'Standard for the Installation of Lightning Protection Systems' (2014 or latest approved edition).
  - 3. Telecommunications Industry Association:
    - a. TIA-942 A, 'Telecommunications Infrastructure Standard for Data Centers' (2014).
  - 4. Section 27 1116: 'Communications Cabinets, Racks, Frames, and Enclosures'.
  - 5. Section 27 1501: 'Communications Horizontal Cabling' for cables for Telephone and Data Systems.

**1.3 ADMINISTRATIVE REQUIREMENTS**

- A. Pre-Installation Conference:
  - 1. Participate in pre-installation conference as specified in Section 03 3111.
  - 2. In addition to agenda items specified in Section 01 3100 and 31 3111, review following:
    - a. Review Architect's inspection of grounding conductor installation before placement of concrete.

**1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE**

- A. Regulatory Agency Sustainability Approvals:
  - 1. Requirements of Section 27 1501 applies, but is not limited to following:
    - a. Cable assemblies shall be UL / CE Listed and CSA Certified. Cables shall be a distinctive green or green/yellow in color, and all jackets shall be UL, VW-1 flame rated.
    - b. Grounding shall conform to all required Commercial Building Grounding and Bonding Requirements for Telecommunications, Electrical Codes, and Manufacturer's grounding requirements.
  - 2. Systems shall be installed per NFPA 780 and NFPA 70.
  - 3. All Bonds shall comply with most current version of IEEE 837 Standard.

- B. Qualifications: Requirements of Section 01 4301 applies, but is not limited to following:
  - 1. Installers Qualifications:
    - a. Grounding and Bonding:
      - 1) Licensed electrical contractor shall perform installation and termination of main bonding conductor to building service entrance ground.
      - 2) Licensed in State that Work is to be performed.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 SYSTEM

- A. Manufacturers:
  - 1. Type One Acceptable Products:
    - a. 'Cadweld' by Erico International, Solon, OH [www.erico.com](http://www.erico.com).
    - b. 'ThermOweld' by Continental Industries, Tulsa, NE [www.conind.com](http://www.conind.com).
    - c. Equal as approved by Architect before bidding. See Section 01 6200.
- B. Performance:
  - 1. Design Criteria:
    - a. Size materials as shown on Drawings and in accordance with applicable codes.
    - b. Bonding System Workmanship:
      - 1) The ground/earthing system shall be designed for high reliability and shall meet following criteria:
        - a) Local electrical codes shall be adhered to.
        - b) All grounding/earthing conductors shall be copper.
        - c) Regulatory Agency Sustainability Approvals requirements are required.
    - c. Rack and Cabinet Grounding/Earthing:
      - 1) Equipment and racks shall be bonded in accordance with methods prescribed in TIA-942.
      - 2) All grounding backbone should be #6 AWG copper cable.
      - 3) In telecommunications spaces with small number of racks or cabinets, rack/cabinet grounding/earthing jumper cable directly to telecommunications ground bus is permitted. Large spaces shall utilize mesh Common Bonding network, or overhead grounding backbone.
      - 4) Equipment racks, housings, messenger cables, and raceways:
        - a) Connect cabinets, racks, frames and terminal boards to single-point ground which is connected to building ground system proper sized, bonded and tested green insulated copper grounding conductor.
- C. Materials:
  - 1. Grounding And Bonding Jumper Conductors: Bare copper or with green insulation.
  - 2. Make grounding conductor connections to ground rods and foundation ground loop using approved bolted clamps listed for such use.
  - 3. Service Grounding Connections And Cable Splices: Make by exothermic process.
  - 4. Telecommunications ground bus bar (TGB): copper.
    - a. Grounding bus bar:
      - 1) Technology Room shall be provided with telecommunications ground bus bar (TGB).
      - 2) Ground loop current potential is minimized between telecommunications equipment and electrical system to which it is attached.
    - b. All racks, metallic backboards, cable sheaths, metallic strength members, splice cases, cable trays, etc. entering or residing in Technology Room shall be grounded to respective TGB using minimum #6 AWG stranded copper bonding conductor and compression connectors.

**PART 3 - EXECUTION****3.1 INSTALLATION**

- A. Interface With Other Work: Coordinate with Section 03 3111 in installing grounding conductor and placing concrete. Do not allow placement of concrete before Architect's inspection of grounding conductor installation.
- B. Grounding conductors and bonding jumper conductors shall be continuous from terminal to terminal without splice. Provide grounding for following.
  - 1. Electrical service, its equipment and enclosures.
  - 2. Conduits and other conductor enclosures.
  - 3. Neutral or identified conductor of interior wiring system.
  - 4. Main panelboard, power and lighting panelboards.
  - 5. Non-current-carrying metal parts of fixed equipment such as motors, starter and controller cabinets, instrument cases, and lighting fixtures.
  - 6. Lightning protection down conductors.
- C. Provide concrete-encased electrode system by embedding **20 feet (6.10 m)** minimum of No. 2/0 bare copper conductor in concrete footing that is in direct contact with the earth, **2 inches (50 mm)** minimum below concrete surface. Extend No. 2/0 copper conductor to main panel as shown on Drawings.
- D. Ground identified common conductor of electrical system at secondary side of main transformer supplying building. Ground identified grounded (neutral) conductor of electrical system on supply side of main service disconnect.
- E. Pull grounding conductors in non-metallic raceways, in flexible steel conduit exceeding **72 inches (1 800 mm)** in length, and in flexible conduit connecting to mechanical equipment.
- F. Provide grounding bushings on all feeder conduit entrances into panelboards and equipment enclosures.
- G. Bond conduit grounding bushings to enclosures with minimum #10 AWG conductor.
- H. Connect equipment grounds to building system ground.
  - 1. Use same size equipment grounding conductors as Phased conductors up through #10 AWG.
  - 2. Use NEC Table 250-95 for others unless noted otherwise in Drawings.
- I. Run separate insulated grounding cable from each equipment cabinet to electrical panel. Do not use intermediate connections or splices. Affix directly to cabinet.
- J. On motors, connect ground conductors to conduit with approved grounding bushing and to metal frame with bolted solderless lug.
- K. Ground cabinet of transformers to conduit and ground wires, if installed. Bond transformer secondary neutral conductor to cabinet.
- L. TGB shall be **1/4 inch (6.4 mm)** thick x **2 inches (50 mm)** high x **12 inches (305 mm)** long installed with insulated standoffs at location directed.
- M. Ground rack to TGB using #6 copper conductor and compression connector.
  - 1. Equipment bonding for Baptismal Fonts:
    - a. Copper Lug Mechanical Connector:
      - 1) Connect all metallic elements of baptismal font as shown in Contract Drawings.
    - b. Grounding Clamps and Connectors:
      - 1) Connect to structural reinforcing bars as per NFPA 70 Article 680 and as shown in Contract Drawings.

**3.2 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL**

- A. Field Inspections:
1. Notify Architect for inspection two (2) days minimum before placing concrete over grounding conductor.
  2. Grounding Well integrity shall be tested separately and together with Lightning Protection System integrity.

**END OF SECTION**



**SECTION 26 0533****RACEWAY AND BOXES FOR ELECTRICAL SYSTEMS****PART 1 - GENERAL****1.1 SUMMARY**

- A. Includes But Not Limited To:
1. Quality of material and installation procedures for raceway, boxes, and fittings used on Project but furnished under other Divisions.
  2. Furnish and install raceway, conduit, and boxes used on Project not specified to be installed under other Divisions.
  3. Furnish and install air-vapor barrier boxes as described in Contract Documents.
  4. Furnish and install main electrical service raceway as described in Contract Documents and comply with electrical utility company requirements.
  5. Furnish and install main telephone service raceway as described in Contract Documents and comply with telephone company requirements.
- B. Related Requirements:
1. See Section 07 8400: 'Firestopping' for raceways penetrating fire rated walls, ceilings, and barriers'.
  2. Section 23 0933: 'Electric and Electronic Control System for HVAC' for concealed raceway and extensions for temperature control system.
  3. Section 26 0501: 'Common Electrical Requirements' for general electrical requirements'.
  4. Section 26 0503: 'Electrical Utility Services' for electrical primary underground service requirements.
  5. Section 27 1501: 'Communications Horizontal Cabling' for raceway for telephone and data systems.
  6. Section 27 4117: 'Video Systems' for system wiring.
  7. Section 27 5117: 'Audio Systems' for sound system wiring.

**1.2 REFERENCES**

- A. Reference Standards:
1. National Fire Protection Association:
    - a. NFPA 70, 'National Electric Code (NEC)' (2017 or most recent edition adopted by AHJ including all applicable amendments and supplements).

**PART 2 - PRODUCTS****2.1 SYSTEM**

- A. Manufacturers:
1. Manufacturer Contact List:
    - a. Cooper B-Line, Highland, IL [www.b-line.com](http://www.b-line.com).
    - b. Hubbell Incorporated, Milford, CT [www.hubbell-wiring.com](http://www.hubbell-wiring.com) or Hubbell Canada Inc, Pickering, ON (905) 839-4332.
    - c. Square D, Palatine, IL [www.squared.com](http://www.squared.com).
    - d. Thomas & Betts, Memphis, TN [www.tnb.com](http://www.tnb.com) or Thomas & Betts Ltd, Iberville, PQ (450) 347-5318.
    - e. Walker Systems Inc, Williamstown, WV (800) 240-2601 or Walker Systems Inc / Wiremold Canada Inc, Fergus, ON (519) 843-4332.

- f. Wiremold Co, West Hartford, CT [www.wiremold.com](http://www.wiremold.com).
- B. Materials:
1. Raceway And Conduit:
    - a. Sizes:
      - 1) **3/4 inch (19 mm)** for exterior use, unless indicated otherwise.
      - 2) **1/2 inch (13 mm)** for interior use, unless indicated otherwise.
    - b. Types: Usage of each type is restricted as specified below by product.
      - 1) Galvanized rigid steel or galvanized intermediate metal conduit (IMC) is allowed for use in all areas. Where in contact with earth or concrete, wrap buried galvanized rigid steel and galvanized IMC conduit and fittings completely with vinyl tape.
      - 2) Galvanized Electrical Metallic Tubing (EMT), Flexible Steel Conduit, and Electrical Non-Metallic Tubing (ENT):
        - a) Allowed for use only in indoor dry locations where it is:
          - (1) Not subject to damage.
          - (2) Not in contact with earth.
          - (3) Not in concrete.
        - b) For metal conduit systems, flexible steel conduit is required for final connections to indoor mechanical equipment.
      - 3) Schedule 40 Polyvinyl Chloride (PVC) Conduit:
        - a) Allowed for use only underground or below concrete with galvanized rigid steel or IMC elbows and risers.
      - 4) Listed, Liquid-Tight Flexible Metal Conduit:
        - a) Use in outdoor final connections to mechanical equipment, length not to exceed **36 inches (900 mm)**.
      - 5) Pre-wired **3/8 Inch (9.5 mm)** Flexible Fixture Whips: Allowed only for connection to recessed lighting fixtures, lengths not to exceed **72 inches (1 800 mm)**.
    - c. Prohibited Raceway Materials:
      - 1) Aluminum conduit.
      - 2) Armored cable type AC (BX) cable.
      - 3) Armored cable type AC (BX) cable.
  2. Raceway And Conduit Fittings:
    - a. Rigid Steel Conduit And IMC: Threaded and designed for conduit use.
    - b. EMT:
      - 1) Compression type.
      - 2) Steel set screw housing type.
    - c. PVC Conduit:
      - 1) PVC type. Use PVC adapters at all boxes.
      - 2) PVC components, (conduit, fittings, cement) shall be from same Manufacturer.
    - d. Flexible Steel Conduit: Screw-in type.
    - e. Liquid-tight Flexible Metal Conduit: Sealtite type.
    - f. Expansion fittings shall be equal to OZ Type AX sized to raceway and including bonding jumper.
    - g. Prohibited Fitting Materials:
      - 1) Crimp-on, tap-on, indenter type fittings.
      - 2) Cast set-screw fittings for EMT.
      - 3) Spray (aerosol) PVC cement.
  3. Outlet Boxes:
    - a. Galvanized steel of proper size and shape are acceptable for all systems. Where metal boxes are used, provide following:
      - 1) Provide metal supports and other accessories for installation of each box.
      - 2) Equip ceiling and bracket fixture boxes with fixture studs where required.
      - 3) Equip outlets in plastered, paneled, and furred finishes with plaster rings and extensions to bring box flush with finish surface.
    - b. Non-metallic boxes may be used only for control voltage wiring systems.
    - c. Telephone / data outlet boxes shall be single device outlet boxes.
    - d. HVAC Instrumentation And Control:
      - 1) Junction boxes in mechanical equipment areas shall be **4 inches (100 mm)** square.
      - 2) Boxes for remote temperature sensor devices shall be recessed single device.

- 3) Boxes for thermostats shall be 4 inches (100 mm) square with raised single device cover.
4. Power Floor Boxes:
  - a. Type Two Acceptable Products:
    - 1) 887 cast iron box 885 brass duplex cover plate for carpet by Walker Systems.
    - 2) B-2537 cast iron box with SF3925 brass duplex cover plate for carpet by Hubbell.
    - 3) Equal as approved by Architect before installation. See Section 01 6200.
  5. Air-Vapor Barrier Boxes:
    - a. Pre-molded polyethylene box installed in all exterior framing walls (thermal envelope) around recessed outlet boxes.
    - b. Class Two Quality Standard:
      - 1) Approved Manufacturer. See Section 01 6200 for definitions of Classes.
        - a) Lessco Low Energy Systems Supply Company, Inc., Campbellsport, WI  
[www.lessco-airtight.com](http://www.lessco-airtight.com).

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Verification Of Conditions:
  1. Confirm dimensions, ratings, and specifications of materials to be installed and coordinate these with site dimensions and with other Sections.

### 3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. Interface With Other Work:
  1. Coordinate with Divisions 22 and 23 for installation of raceway for control of plumbing and HVAC equipment.
  2. Before rough-in, verify locations of boxes with work of other trades to insure that they are properly located for purpose intended.
    - a. Coordinate location of outlet for water coolers with Division 22.
    - b. Coordinate location of outlets adjacent to or in millwork with Division 06 before rough-in. Refer conflicts to Architect and locate outlets under his direction.
  3. Coordinate installation of floor boxes in carpeted areas with carpet installer to obtain carpet for box covers.
  4. Install pull wires in raceways installed under this Section where conductors or cables are to be installed under other Divisions.
- B. General:
  1. Sound and video system electrical components furnished and installed under this Section include following items:
    - a. Metal equipment cabinet and control cabinets.
    - b. Factory-fabricated speaker enclosures.
    - c. Fittings.
- C. Conduit And Raceway:
  1. Conceal raceways within ceilings, walls, and floors, except at Contractor's option, conduit may be exposed on walls or ceilings of mechanical equipment areas and above acoustical panel suspension ceiling systems. Install exposed raceway runs parallel to or at right angles to building structure lines.
  2. Seal all raceways penetrating fire rated walls, ceilings and barriers. See Section 07 8400.
  3. Keep raceway runs 6 inches (150 mm) minimum from hot water pipes.
  4. Make no more than four quarter bends, 360 degrees total, in any conduit run between outlet and outlet, fitting and fitting, or outlet and fitting.

- a. Make bends and offsets so conduit is not injured and internal diameter of conduit is not effectively reduced.
  - b. Radius of curve shall be at least minimum indicated by NFPA 70.
  5. Cut conduit smooth and square with run and ream to remove rough edges. Cap raceway ends during construction. Clean or replace raceway in which water or foreign matter have accumulated.
  6. Run two spare conduits from each new panelboard to ceiling access area or other acceptable accessible area and cap for future use.
  7. Bend PVC conduit by hot box bender and, for PVC 2 inches (50 mm) in diameter and larger, expanding plugs. Apply PVC adhesive only by brush.
  8. Installation In Framing:
    - a. Do not bore holes in joists or beams outside center 1/3 of member depth or within 24 inches (600 mm) of bearing points. Do not bore holes in vertical framing members outside center 1/3 of member width.
    - b. Holes shall be one inch (25 mm) diameter maximum.
  9. Underground Raceway And Conduit:
    - a. Bury underground raceway installed outside building 24 inches (600 mm) deep minimum.
    - b. Bury underground conduit in planting areas 24 inches (600 mm) deep minimum. It is permissible to install conduit 6 inch (150 mm) below concrete sidewalks, however, conduit must be buried 24 inches (600 mm) deep at point of exit from planting areas.
  10. Conduit And Raceway Support:
    - a. Securely support raceway with approved straps, clamps, or hangers, spaced as required.
    - b. Do not support from mechanical ducts or duct supports without Architect's written approval. Securely mount raceway supports, boxes, and cabinets in an approved manner by:
      - 1) Expansion shields in concrete or solid masonry.
      - 2) Toggle bolts on hollow masonry units.
      - 3) Wood screws on wood.
      - 4) Metal screws on metal.
  11. Prohibited Procedures:
    - a. Use of wooden plugs inserted in concrete or masonry units for mounting raceway, supports, boxes, cabinets, or other equipment.
    - b. Installation of raceway that has been crushed or deformed.
    - c. Use of torches for bending PVC.
    - d. Spray applied PVC cement.
    - e. Boring holes in truss members.
    - f. Notching of structural members.
    - g. Supporting raceway from ceiling system support wires.
    - h. Nail drive straps or tie wire for supporting raceway.
- D. Telephone / Data Systems:
1. Install raceway from terminal board to each telephone and data outlet as indicated on Contract Drawings.
- E. Boxes:
1. Boxes shall be accessible and installed with approved cover.
  2. Do not locate device boxes that are on opposite sides of framed walls in the same stud space. In other wall construction, do not install boxes back to back.
  3. Locate boxes so pipes, ducts, or other items do not obstruct outlets.
  4. Install outlets flush with finished surface and level and plumb.
  5. Support switch boxes larger than two-gang with side brackets and steel bar hangers in framed walls.
  6. At time of substantial completion, install blank plates on uncovered outlet boxes that are for future use.
  7. Install air-vapor barrier boxes.
    - a. Follow Manufacturer's installation instructions.
    - b. Care should be taken to cut above grade vapor barrier and seal around recessed outlet boxes to minimize air infiltration.
  8. Location:

- a. Install boxes at door locations on latch side of door, unless explicitly shown otherwise on Contract Drawings. Verify door swings shown on electrical drawings with architectural drawings, and report discrepancies to Architect before rough-in. Distance of box from jamb shall be 6 inches (150 mm) from door jamb.
  - b. Properly center boxes located in walls with respect to doors, panels, furring, trim and consistent with architectural details. Where two or more outlets occur, space them uniformly and in straight lines with each other, if possible.
  - c. Center ceramic tile boxes in tile.
- F. Support factory-fabricated speaker enclosures from structure or ceiling suspension system.

**END OF SECTION**

**SECTION 26 0613****ELECTRICAL EQUIPMENT MOUNTING HEIGHT SCHEDULE****PART 1 - GENERAL: Not Used****PART 2 - PRODUCTS: Not Used****PART 3 - EXECUTION****3.1 INSTALLATION**

- A. Unless otherwise indicated, mount center of outlets or boxes at following heights above finish floor. Refer special conditions to Architect before rough-in and locate outlet under his direction.
- B. Mounting Heights:
1. HVAC:
    - a. Temperature Control Junction Boxes: As indicated on Drawings.
    - b. Thermostats not mounted in occupied space: As indicated on Drawings.
    - c. Remote Temperature Sensors and thermostats mounted in occupied space:
      - 1) Wall-Mounted 50 inches (1 270 mm) to top.
    - d. Indoor Motor Disconnects: 60 inches (1 525 mm).
    - e. Outdoor Motor Disconnects: As indicated on Drawings.
    - f. Motor Controls: 60 inches (1 525 mm).
  2. Plumbing:
    - a. Electric Water Cooler Outlets: Mount so outlet and cord are hidden by water cooler and outlet is accessible for resetting for GFCI trip.
  3. Electrical:
    - a. Distribution Panels: 72 inches (1 830 mm) to top.
    - b. Receptacles: 18 inches (450 mm).
    - c. Wall Switches: 42 inches (1 065 mm).
    - d. Wall-Mounted Exit Lights: 90 inches (2 285 mm).
    - e. Emergency Lighting Units: 60 inches (1 525 mm).
  4. Communications
    - a. Sound Distribution System Components: As indicated on Drawings.
    - b. Satellite Distribution System Components: As indicated on Drawings.
    - c. TV Distribution System Components: As indicated on Drawings.
    - d. Computer and TV: 18 inches (450 mm).
    - e. Telephone / Data Terminal Boards: 72 inches (1 800 mm) to top.
    - f. Telephones (wall type): 60 inches (1 500 mm).
    - g. Telephones (desk type): 18 inches (450 mm).
    - h. Telephone / Data (desk type): 18 inches (450 mm).
    - i. Data (desk type): 18 inches (450 mm).
    - j. Signal Chimes: 84 inches (2 100 mm).

**END OF SECTION**

**SECTION 26 0924****LIGHTING CONTROL SYSTEM****PART 1 - GENERAL****1.1 SUMMARY**

- A. Includes But Not Limited To:
  - 1. Furnish and install complete lighting control system as described in Contract Documents consisting of the following:
    - a. Lighting Control Panel.
    - b. Programmable Digital Control Switches.
    - c. Photocells.
- B. Related Requirements:
  - 1. Section 26 0501: 'Common Electrical Requirements'.
  - 2. Section 26 0523: 'Control-Voltage Electrical Cables'.

**1.2 REFERENCES**

- A. Definitions:
  - 1. Class A: Equipment has been tested and found to comply with limits for Class A digital device, pursuant to part 15 of FCC Rules. These limits provide reasonable protection against harmful interference when equipment is operated in commercial environment.
- B. Reference Standards:
  - 1. Federal Communications Commission (FCC):
    - a. Emission requirements for Class A applications.
  - 2. Underwriters Laboratories:
    - a. UL 916, 'Energy Management Equipment' (2015).

**1.3 SUBMITTALS**

- A. Informational Submittals:
  - 1. Certifications:
    - a. Technician Certification that equipment has been installed, adjusted and tested in accordance with Manufacturer's recommendations.
- B. Closeout Submittals:
  - 1. Include following in Operations And Maintenance Manual specified in Section 01 7800:
    - a. Operations and Maintenance Data:
      - 1) Equipment operation and maintenance manual(s).

**1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE**

- A. Regulatory Agency Sustainability Approvals:
  - 1. All control equipment shall be in compliance with FCC emissions' standards in Part 15 Subpart J for Class A application.
  - 2. Programmable panelboards shall be UL listed under UL 916 Energy Management Equipment.
- B. Qualifications:
  - 1. Manufacturer Qualifications:
    - a. Manufacturer of assembly shall be manufacturer of major components with assembly.

- b. Manufacturer of this equipment shall have minimum of five (5) years manufacturing experience.
  2. Technician Qualifications:
    - a. Authorized by Manufacturer and trained.
    - b. Have thorough knowledge of software, hardware and system programming.
- C. Certifications:
  1. Provide Technician Certification that equipment has been installed, adjusted and tested in accordance with Manufacturer's recommendations.

## 1.5 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Delivery And Acceptance Requirements:
  1. Equipment shall be delivered, handled and stored in accordance with manufacturer's instructions.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 ASSEMBLIES

- A. Manufacturers:
  1. Type One Acceptable Manufacturer:
    - a. Acuity Brands Inc., Atlanta, GA [www.acuitybrands.com](http://www.acuitybrands.com).
    - b. Douglas Lighting Controls, Burnaby, BC [www.douglaslightingcontrols.com](http://www.douglaslightingcontrols.com).
    - c. Hubbell Building Automation, Austin, TX [www.hubbell-automation.com](http://www.hubbell-automation.com).
    - d. Leviton Manufacturing Co, Little Neck, NY [www.leviton.com](http://www.leviton.com) or Leviton Manufacturing of Canada Ltd, Pointe-Claire, QB (800) 461-2002 or (514) 954-1840.
    - e. Lutron Electronics Co Inc, Coopersburg, PA [www.lutron.com](http://www.lutron.com).
    - f. Watt Stopper Inc., Santa Clara, CA [www.wattstopper.com](http://www.wattstopper.com).
    - g. Equal as approved by Architect before bidding. See Section 01 6200.
- B. Design Criteria:
  1. Lighting Control System shall meet or exceed following capabilities:
    - a. Capable of switching for specific lighting zone for following:
      - 1) Time-of-day scheduling
      - 2) Daylight savings time adjustments.
      - 3) Light level sensors.
- C. Components:
  1. Light Control Panel:
    - a. Enclosure/tub shall be NEMA 1 unless indicated otherwise on Drawings, sized to accommodate required components.
    - b. Cover shall have hinged and lockable door and be configured for flush mounting of panel.
    - c. Panel shall include power supply and interior assembly with motherboard and control electronics.
      - 1) Interior construction shall provide isolation between line voltage and low voltage (class 2) wiring.
    - d. Panel shall be factory assembled and designed for disassembly for mounting enclosure first and reassembly after conduit installation.
    - e. Panel shall utilize mechanically held latching relays rated for 30A ballast load at 120/277VAC with 10,000A short circuit current rating and shall include contactor for exterior lighting control.
      - 1) Visual LED status and manual override for each relay shall be included.
    - f. Panel shall contain network clock/programmer and photocell control module for interface with interior and exterior photocell controls.
      - 1) Network clock shall provide menu driven control for seven (7) day repeating schedules and holiday provisions.



- 2) Clock shall provide user selectable pre-programmed scenarios for: Scheduled on/off, Manual on/off, Scheduled off, and on/off when used with photocell control module.
- g. Panel shall contain automation intelligence card for program, monitor, and control functions and group cards as required for control of groups of relays.
2. Programmable Digital Control Switches:
  - a. Programmable digital control switches shall be provided with number of control buttons as indicated on Contract Drawings.
    - 1) Each button shall be capable of individual programming without use of computer or other programming device.
    - 2) Each button shall be able to control individual relay or group of relays.
    - 3) Individual buttons shall allow for permanent labeling.
  - b. Switches shall be illuminated for ease of location in dark.
3. Photocells:
  - a. Weatherproof Class 2 photocell shall be provided for exterior light levels.
  - b. Adjustable interior photo cell shall be provided for day-lighting control.
    - 1) Photocell shall provide output suitable for controlling continuously dimming loads.
    - 2) Refer to Contract Drawings for fixtures to be controlled.

## **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

### **3.1 INSTALLATION**

- A. General:
  1. Install switches flush with wall, straight and level.
  2. Permanently label switches as shown on drawing schedule in Contract Drawings.
- B. Interface With Other Work:
  1. Coordinate with appropriate Sections of Divisions 26.
  2. Program system to meet the local energy code.
- C. Space Control Requirements:
  1. Unless relevant provisions of applicable local Energy codes are more stringent, provide minimum application of lighting controls as follows:
    - a. Provide occupancy/vacancy sensors with Manual-ON/OFF functionality in all.
    - b. Provide Manual-ON occupancy/vacancy sensors for any enclosed office, conference room, meeting room or classroom. For spaces with multiple occupants, or where line-of-sight may be obscured, provide ceiling-mounted sensors and Manual-ON switches, if necessary.

### **3.2 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL**

- A. Field Testing:
  1. Manufacturer shall provide Manufacturer's authorized Technician to adequately test supplied equipment and software to ensure system performs as intended including the following:
    - a. Test start-up system and confirm proper installation, operation, and adjustment of all system components.
  2. Submit Certification in writing that equipment has been installed, adjusted and tested in accordance with Manufacturer's recommendations.
- B. Non-Conforming Work: Non-conforming work as covered in the General Conditions applies, but is not limited to following:
  1. Correct any work found defective or not complying with Contract Document requirements at no additional cost to the Owner.

**3.3 CLOSE-OUT ACTIVITIES**

- A. Instruction of Owner:
1. Provide Manufacturer's authorized Technician training session for Owner's Representative(s) for demonstrating operation and programming of completed system.
    - a. Training program shall include instructions on control system, programming, and other major components. Provide Manufacturer Manual(s) to be submitted to Owner to assist training.
    - b. Training program shall include:
      - 1) System review of all system components and their function.
      - 2) System review of all management software and its function.
      - 3) Operator training to develop experience with control applications.

**END OF SECTION**

**SECTION 26 2417****CIRCUIT-BREAKER PANELBOARDS****PART 1 - GENERAL****1.1 SUMMARY**

- A. Includes But Not Limited To:
  - 1. Furnish and install circuit-breaker panelboards as described in Contract Documents.
- B. Related Requirements:
  - 1. Section 26 0501: 'Common Electrical Requirements'.
  - 2. Section 26 4301: 'Surge Protection Devices'.

**1.2 REFERENCES**

- A. Reference Standards:
  - 1. National Fire Protection Association:
    - a. NFPA 70E: 'Standard for Electrical Safety in the Workplace' (2018 or most recent edition adopted by AHJ).

**PART 2 - PRODUCTS****2.1 EQUIPMENT**

- A. Manufacturers:
  - 1. Manufacturer Contact List:
    - a. Cutler-Hammer Inc, Pittsburgh, PA [www.eatonelectric.com](http://www.eatonelectric.com).
    - b. General Electric Industrial Systems, Charlotte, NC [www.geindustrial.com](http://www.geindustrial.com).
    - c. Siemens Energy & Automation, Alphrata, GA [www.sea.siemens.com](http://www.sea.siemens.com).
    - d. Square D Co, Palatine, IL [www.us.squared.com](http://www.us.squared.com).
- B. Performance:
  - 1. Capacities:
    - a. Panelboard:
      - 1) Minimum integrated equipment short circuit rating of 22,000 amperes for 120 / 208 Volts.
      - 2) Rated for use as service entrance equipment.
    - b. Lighting And Appliance Panelboards:
      - 1) Minimum integrated equipment short circuit rating of 10,000 amperes for 120 / 208 Volts.
    - c. Load Centers:
      - 1) 125 Amp main lugs, 120 / 208 Volt, three-phase.
      - 2) Minimum integrated equipment short circuit rating of 10,000 Amps.
- C. Material:
  - 1. Circuit-breaker type.
  - 2. Galvanized steel cabinets
  - 3. Bussing and lugs arranged as required.
  - 4. Multi-pole circuit-breakers shall be common trip.
  - 5. Circuit-breakers shall be molded case thermal magnetic type with inverse time characteristics.
  - 6. Main Panelboard:
    - a. Surface-mounted and front accessible.

- b. Enclosures:
    - 1) Exterior of Building:
      - a) NEMA / CEMA Type 3R with locking door.
    - 2) Interior of Building:
      - a) NEMA / CEMA Type 1.
  - c. Minimum dimensions of 32 inches (800 mm) wide by 8 inches (200 mm) deep.
  - d. Space designation on Drawings indicates bus hardware and panelboard capacity for future acceptance of one 100 Amp, three-pole circuit-breaker.
  - e. Category Four Approved Products. See Section 01 6200 for definitions of Categories:
    - 1) Type PRL4B by Cutler-Hammer.
    - 2) Spectra Series by General Electric.
    - 3) Type P4 by Siemens.
    - 4) I-Line by Square D.
7. Lighting And Appliance Panelboards:
- a. Plug-on or bolt-on breakers. Multi-pole breakers shall be common trip.
  - b. Factory installed or provided circuit number identification for each breaker and space.
  - c. Cabinets shall be locking type with no exposed latches or screws when door is closed. Key panels alike and provide minimum of three keys.
  - d. Minimum dimensions of 20 inches (500 mm) wide by 5-3/4 inches (146 mm) deep.
  - e. Space designation on Drawings indicates bus hardware and panelboard capacity for future acceptance of one 20 Amp, single-pole circuit-breaker.
  - f. Breakers specified to be shunt trip and shall include shunt trip accessories to remotely trip breaker using separate 120 V power source. Trip coil shall include coil-clearing contact to break coil current when breaker opens.
  - g. Use equipment from same manufacturer as main panelboard.
  - h. Category Four Approved Products. See Section 01 6200 for definitions of Categories:
    - 1) Type PRL1a by Cutler-Hammer.
    - 2) Type AL or AQ by General Electric.
    - 3) Type P1 by Siemens.
    - 4) Type NQOD by Square D.
8. Load Centers:
- a. Surface-mounted, outdoor NEMA Type 3R enclosure with padlocking provisions. 12-1/2 inches (318 mm) wide by 4-1/2 inch (115 mm) deep minimum.
  - b. HACR type circuit breakers.
  - c. Use equipment from same manufacturer as main panelboard.
  - d. Category Four Approved Products. See Section 01 6200 for definitions of Categories:
    - 1) Type CH by Eaton.
    - 2) Type PowerMark Plus by General Electric.
    - 3) Type PL by Siemens.
    - 4) Type QO by Square D.
9. Labels:
- a. All Switchboards shall be labeled with Arc-Flash Hazard Information per NFPA 70E 130.5 including:
    - 1) Nominal system voltage.
    - 2) Arc flash boundary.
    - 3) Available incident energy.
    - 4) Working distance.
    - 5) Minimum arc rating of clothing.
    - 6) Level of PPE.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Verification Of Conditions:
  - 1. Examine wall framing and verify framing for proper spacing for installation of panelboard(s).
    - a. Notify Architect of improper spacing in writing.

- B. Contractor shall be responsible for performing required calculations to determine ARC Flash Hazards and providing all appropriate labeling per NFPA 70E.

### 3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. Label panelboards, load centers, and each breaker in main panelboard with **1/16 inch (1.6 mm)** thick laminated plastic composition material with contrasting color core. Engraved letters shall be **1/4 inch (6 mm)** high.
- B. Provide typewritten circuit schedules in lighting and distribution panelboards and load centers to identify panelboard and load served by each branch breaker.
- C. Arrange conductors neatly within panelboards and load centers.
- D. Secure to structure in accordance with requirements of Project seismic design category.

### 3.3 PROTECTION

- A. Protect panelboards, load centers, and interior components from paint, gypsum board compound, dirt, dust, and other foreign matter during construction.

**END OF SECTION**

**SECTION 26 2726****WIRING DEVICES****PART 1 - GENERAL****1.1 SUMMARY**

- A. Includes But Not Limited To:
  - 1. Furnish and install wiring devices complete with plates as described in Contract Documents.
- B. Related Requirements:
  - 1. Section 26 0501: 'Common Electrical Requirements'.
  - 2. Section 27 1116: 'Communications Cabinets, Racks, Frames, and Enclosures'.
  - 3. Section 27 1501: 'Communications Horizontal Cabling' for cables for telephone and data systems.

**PART 2 - PRODUCTS****2.1 COMPONENTS**

- A. Manufacturers:
  - 1. Manufacturer Contact List:
    - a. Cooper Wiring Devices, Peachtree City, GA [www.cooperwiringdevices.com](http://www.cooperwiringdevices.com).
    - b. General Electric Industrial Systems, Charlotte, NC [www.geindustrial.com](http://www.geindustrial.com).
    - c. Hubbell Building Automation, Austin, TX [www.hubbell-automation.com](http://www.hubbell-automation.com).
    - d. Hubbell Inc, Milford, CT [www.hubbell-wiring.com](http://www.hubbell-wiring.com) or Hubbell Canada Inc, Pickering, ON (800) 263-4622 or (905) 839-4332.
    - e. Hunt Control Systems Inc, Fort Collins, CO [www.huntdimming.com](http://www.huntdimming.com).
    - f. Intermatic Inc, Spring Grove, IL [www.intermatic.com](http://www.intermatic.com).
    - g. IR-TEC America, Inc., Brea, CA [www.irtec.com/en-ira/](http://www.irtec.com/en-ira/).
    - h. Leviton Manufacturing Co, Little Neck, NY [www.leviton.com](http://www.leviton.com) or Leviton Manufacturing of Canada Ltd, Pointe-Claire, QB (800) 461-2002 or (514) 954-1840.
    - i. Legrand, West Hartford, CT [www.legrand.us.com](http://www.legrand.us.com) or Vaughan, ON [www.legrand.ca.com](http://www.legrand.ca.com).
    - j. Lutron Electronics Co Inc, Coopersburg, PA [www.lutron.com](http://www.lutron.com).
    - k. Ortronics, New London, CT [www.ortronics.com](http://www.ortronics.com).
    - l. Paragon Electric Co Inc, Carol Stream, IL [www.icca.invensys.com/paragon](http://www.icca.invensys.com/paragon) or Paragon Electric, Mississauga, ON (800) 951-5526 or (905) 890-5956.
    - m. Pass & Seymour, Syracuse, NY [www.passandseymour.com](http://www.passandseymour.com) or Pass & Seymour Canada Inc, Concord, ON (905) 738-9195.
    - n. Philips Lighting Co, Somerset, NJ [www.lighting.philips.com/nam](http://www.lighting.philips.com/nam) or Philips Lighting Canada, Scarborough, ON (416) 292-3000.
    - o. Red Dot div of Thomas & Betts, Memphis, TN [www.tnbcom](http://www.tnbcom).
    - p. Schneider Electric North America, Palatine, IL [www.schneider-electric.com](http://www.schneider-electric.com) (847) 397-2600.
    - q. Sensorswitch, Wallingford, CT [www.sensorswitch.com](http://www.sensorswitch.com).
    - r. Siemon Company, Watertown, CT [www.siemon.com](http://www.siemon.com).
    - s. Square D Co, Palatine, IL [www.squared.com](http://www.squared.com).
    - t. Suttle, Hector, MN [www.suttleonline.com](http://www.suttleonline.com).
    - u. Tork Inc, Mount Vernon, NY [www.tork.com](http://www.tork.com).
    - v. Watt Stopper Inc, Santa Clara, CA [www.wattstopper.com](http://www.wattstopper.com).
  - 2. Product Options:
    - a. Faces shall be nylon where available.
    - b. Devices of single type shall be from same Manufacturer.

- c. Devices are listed as white. Use white devices on light colored walls, brown on dark colored walls, and black on black walls.

B. Switches:

1. Furnace Disconnect:

- a. Category Four Approved Products. See Section 01 6200 for definitions of Categories:

- 1) 20 AMP, single pole:
  - a) Cooper: 2221V.
  - b) Hubbell: HBL1221-I.
  - c) Pass & Seymour: 20AC1-I.
  - d) Leviton: 1221-2I.

2. Standard Style:

- a. Category Four Approved Products. See Section 01 6200 for definitions of Categories:

- 1) 20 AMP, single pole:
  - a) Cooper: 2221V.
  - b) Hubbell: HBL1221-I.
  - c) Pass & Seymour: 20AC1-I.
  - d) Leviton: 1221-2I.
- 2) Two Pole:
  - a) Cooper: 2222V.
  - b) Hubbell: HBL1222-I.
  - c) Pass & Seymour: 20AC2-I.
  - d) Leviton: 1222-2I.
- 3) Three Way:
  - a) Cooper: 2223V.
  - b) Hubbell: HBL1223-I.
  - c) Pass & Seymour: 20AC3-I.
  - d) Leviton: 1223-2I.
- 4) Four Way:
  - a) Cooper: 2224V.
  - b) Hubbell: HBL1224-I.
  - c) Pass & Seymour: 20AC4-I.
  - d) Leviton: 1224-2I.
- 5) Pilot Switch:
  - a) Hubbell: HBL1221-PL.
  - b) Pass & Seymour: 20AC1-RPL.
  - c) Leviton: 1221-PLR.
- 6) Lighted Toggle Switch:
  - a) Single Pole:
    - (1) Cooper: 2221-LTV.
    - (2) Hubbell: HBL1221-IL.
    - (3) Pass & Seymour: 20AC1-ISL.
    - (4) Leviton: 1221-LHI.
  - b) Three Way:
    - (1) Cooper: 2223-LTV.
    - (2) Hubbell: HBL1223-IL.
    - (3) Pass & Seymour: 20AC3-ISL.
    - (4) Leviton: 1223-7LC.

3. Exhaust Fan Timer Switches:

- a. Serving Area:

- 1) 0-60 minute, no hold position.
- 2) Category Four Approved Products. See Section 01 6200 for definitions of Categories:
  - a) Intermatic: FD60MWC.
  - b) Paragon: SWPD60M-W.
  - c) Tork: A560MW.

4. Digital Time/Timer Switch:

- a. As shown in small Storage, Mechanical and Electrical Rooms.
- b. Automatic countdown type:
  - 1) Category Four Approved Products. See Section 01 6200 for definitions of Categories:

- a) Leviton: LTT60-1L.
  - b) Hubbell: TD200.
  - c) Pass & Seymour: RT1W.
  - d) Tork: SSA100.
  - e) Watt Stopper: TS-400-W.
5. Dimmer Switches:
- a. Vertical slide control with faceplate.
  - b. Preset, ON-OFF switch, 1000VA.
  - c. Category Four Approved Products. See Section 01 6200 for definitions of Categories:
    - 1) Hubbell: AS101/AS11.
    - 2) Hunt: DAP-10-IV.
    - 3) Leviton: IPI10-I.
    - 4) Lutron: N-1003P-IV.
    - 5) Pass & Seymour: 91180-I.
    - 6) Phillips: MP1000-I.
    - 7) Watt Stopper: AD-1103-I.
6. Momentary Switches:
- a. 15 AMP, specification grade.
  - b. Category Four Approved Products. See Section 01 6200 for definitions of Categories:
    - 1) Cooper: 1895W.
    - 2) Hubbell: HBL1556W.
    - 3) Legrand: 1250W.
- C. Receptacles:
1. Rectangular Face Designer Style:
- a. 15 AMP, specification grade, back and side wired, self grounding.
  - b. Category Four Approved Products. See Section 01 6200 for definitions of Categories:
    - 1) Cooper: 6262W.
    - 2) Hubbell: HBL2152WA.
    - 3) Leviton: 16252-W.
    - 4) Pass & Seymour: 26252-W.
2. Range Receptacle:
- a. Three pole, four wire grounding, 125 / 250 V, NEMA 14-50R, 50 AMP complete with plate.
  - b. Category Four Approved Products. See Section 01 6200 for definitions of Categories:
    - 1) Cooper: 1258.
    - 2) Hubbell: HBL9450A.
    - 3) Leviton: 279.
    - 4) Pass & Seymour: 3894.
3. Ground Fault Circuit Interrupter (GFCI):
- a. 15 AMP, specification grade.
  - b. Category Four Approved Products. See Section 01 6200 for definitions of Categories:
    - 1) Cooper: GF15W.
    - 2) Hubbell: GF5252WA.
    - 3) Leviton: 8599-W.
    - 4) Pass & Seymour: 1594-W.
4. Basketball Standard Receptacle:
- a. Three pole, four wire grounding, 125 / 250V, locking type, NEMA L14-20R, 20 AMP, complete with plate.
  - b. Category Four Approved Products. See Section 01 6200 for definitions of Categories:
    - 1) Cooper: CWL1420R.
    - 2) Hubbell: HBL2410.
    - 3) Leviton: 2410.
    - 4) Pass & Seymour: L1420-R.
- D. Plates:
1. Standard Cover Plates:
- a. Office / Occupied Areas:
    - 1) Nylon or high impact resistant thermoplastic.
    - 2) Color shall match wiring device.



- b. All Other: Steel.
  - c. Ganged switches shall have gang plates.
  - d. Category Four Approved Manufacturers. See Section 01 6200 for definitions of Categories:
    - 1) Cooper.
    - 2) Hubbell.
    - 3) Leviton.
    - 4) Pass & Seymour.
2. Weatherproof In-Use Receptacle Covers:
- a. NEMA 3R rated.
  - b. Cast aluminum.
  - c. Compatible with GFCI receptacles.
  - d. Complete with weather resistant gaskets and stainless steel screws.
  - e. Category Four Approved Products. See Section 01 6200 for definitions of Categories:
    - 1) Hubbell: WP26MH, horizontal; WP26M, vertical.
    - 2) Intermatic: WP1010HMC, horizontal; WP1010MC, vertical.
    - 3) Red Dot: CKMG, horizontal; CKMGV, vertical.
- E. Occupancy Sensors:
- 1. Ceiling, ultrasonic type.
    - a. Complete with sensor and combined relay / control transformer.
    - b. Category Four Approved Products. See Section 01 6200 for definitions of Categories:
      - 1) Cooper Controls:
        - a) Sensor: OAC-U-0501-R.
        - b) Relay / Transformer: SP20-MV.
      - 2) IR-TEC America:
        - a) Sensor: OS-361DT.
        - b) Relay / Transformer: PPU-300.
      - 3) Leviton:
        - a) Sensor: OSC05-RUW.
        - b) Relay / Transformer: OPP20-D2.
      - 4) Sensorswitch:
        - a) Sensor: CMPDT9.
        - b) Relay / Transformer: MP-20-SP0DM.
      - 5) Watt Stopper:
        - a) Sensor: W-500A.
        - b) Relay / Transformer: BZ-150.
    - c. Provide manual ON and OFF momentary override switches. Refer to Contract Drawings for number of switches.
  - 2. Ceiling, dual technology type.
    - a. Complete with sensor and relay / transformer.
    - b. Category Four Approved Products. See Section 01 6200 for definitions of Categories:
      - 1) Cooper Controls:
        - a) Sensor: OAC-DT-0501-R.
        - b) Relay / Transformer: SP20-MV.
      - 2) IR-TEC America:
        - a) Sensor: OS-361DT.
        - b) Relay / Transformer: PPU-300.
      - 3) Leviton:
        - a) Sensor: OSC05-RMW.
        - b) Relay / Transformer: OPP20-D2.
      - 4) Sensorswitch:
        - a) Sensor: CMPDT9.
        - b) Relay / Transformer: MP-20-SP0DM.
      - 5) Watt Stopper:
        - a) Sensor: DT-305.
        - b) Relay / Transformer: BZ-150.
    - c. Provide manual ON and OFF momentary override switches. Refer to Contract Drawings for number of switches.
  - 3. Wall switch, passive infrared type.

- a. Features include sensitivity and time delay adjustments.
  - b. Manual ON / auto OFF capability.
  - c. Category Four Approved Products. See Section 01 6200 for definitions of Categories:
    - 1) Cooper Controls: OSW-P-1001-MV-W.
    - 2) IR-TEC America: LbS-700NW.
    - 3) Leviton: ODS10-IDW.
    - 4) Sensorswitch: WSD-V-WH.
    - 5) Watt Stopper: PW-100-W.
- F. Surge Protective Device (for landscape irrigation controller):
1. Type 3 as defined in UL 1449 and approved for exterior application.
  2. Parallel metal oxide varistors, MOV, from each line to ground: 120 / 240 VAC. UV resistant construction with epoxy encapsulation of electrical connections.
  3. Include **1/2 inch (12.7 mm)** mounting nipple and locknut.
  4. Category Four approved Products. See Section 01 6200 for definitions of Categories:
    - a. ASZ175B1 by Cooper Power Systems.
    - b. AG2401C by Intermatic.
    - c. 54175-SSA by Leviton.
    - d. TDS120XR50S by Square D.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 INSTALLATION

- A. Install devices flush with walls, straight, and solid to box.
- B. Label dimmer switch groupings with **1/16 inch (1.6 mm)** thick laminated plastic composition material with contrasting color core. Engraved letter shall be **1/4 inch (6 mm)** high.
- C. Install surge protective device in knock-out of junction box installed on bottom of automatic sprinkler controller.

**END OF SECTION**

**SECTION 26 2816****ENCLOSED SWITCHES AND CIRCUIT BREAKERS****PART 1 - GENERAL****1.1 SUMMARY**

- A. Includes But Not Limited To:
  - 1. Furnish and install disconnects as described in Contract Documents, except those provided integral with equipment.
- B. Related Requirements:
  - 1. Section 26 0501: Common Electrical Requirements.

**PART 2 - PRODUCTS****2.1 ASSEMBLIES**

- A. Manufacturers:
  - 1. Category Four Approved Manufacturers. See Section 01 6200 for definitions of Categories.
    - a. Disconnects: Same as Manufacturer of Project's main panelboard.
    - b. Fuses.
      - 1) Cooper Bussmann, Ellisville, IL [www.cooperbussmann.com](http://www.cooperbussmann.com).
      - 2) Edison Fuse, Ellisville, IL (314) 391-3443.
      - 3) Ferraz Shawmut, Newburyport, MA [www.ferrazshawmut.com](http://www.ferrazshawmut.com).
      - 4) Littelfuse Inc, Des Plaines, IL [www.littelfuse.com](http://www.littelfuse.com).
- B. Disconnects:
  - 1. Heavy-duty quick-make, quick-break type, non-fused unless indicated otherwise.
  - 2. Provide interlock to prevent opening of door when switch is in ON position.
  - 3. Provide means to lock switch in OFF position with padlock.
  - 4. Disconnects for motor circuits shall be horsepower rated.
  - 5. Disconnects For Furnace Units And Unit Heaters: Provide manual starter with thermal overload relay. Provide overload relay to match motor full load amps.
  - 6. Enclosures:
    - a. Interior: NEMA / CEMA Type 1.
    - b. Exterior: NEMA / CEMA Type 3R.
  - 7. Fuses:
    - a. Fuse fused disconnects with dual-element time delay fuses and equip with rejection type fuse holders.
    - b. Fuses on Project shall be from single manufacturer.

**PART 3 - EXECUTION****3.1 INSTALLATION**

- A. Label disconnects to indicate equipment served, such as Condensing Unit CU-1. Use **1/16 inch (1.6 mm)** thick laminated plastic composition material with contrasting color core. Engraved letters shall be **1/4 inch (6 mm)** high. Attach labels with screws.

- B. Install furnace disconnects on furnace at location where it is accessible from front of unit and it does not interfere with unit's operation.

**END OF SECTION**

**SECTION 26 5100****INTERIOR LIGHTING****PART 1 - GENERAL****1.1 SUMMARY**

- A. Includes But Not Limited To:
  - 1. Furnish and install lighting system as described in Contract Documents, complete with lamps.
- B. Related Requirements:
  - 1. Section 26 0501: 'Common Electrical Requirements'.
  - 2. Section 26 5121: 'Interior Lighting: LED Dimming Drivers'.
  - 3. Section 09 5116: 'Acoustical Tile Ceilings'.

**1.2 REFERENCES**

- A. Reference Standards:
  - 1. American National Standards Institute (ANSI):
    - a. ANSI C78.377-2017, 'American National Standard for Electric Lamps: Specification for the Chromaticity of Solid State Lighting Products'.
  - 2. Federal Communications Commission (FCC):
    - a. Code of Federal Regulations (CFR):
      - 1) FCC 47 CFR Part 18, 'Industrial, Scientific, and Medical Equipment'.
  - 3. Institute of Electrical and Electronics Engineers (IEEE):
    - a. IEEE C62.41.1-2002, 'Guide on the Surge Environment in Low-Voltage (1000 V and Less) AC Power Circuits'.

**PART 2 - PRODUCTS****2.1 ASSEMBLIES**

- A. Manufacturers:
  - 1. Manufacturer Contact List:
    - a. Advance Transformer Co, Rosemont, IL [www.advancetransformer.com](http://www.advancetransformer.com).
    - b. Cooper Wiring Devices by Eaton, Peachtree City, GA [www.cooperindustries.com](http://www.cooperindustries.com).
    - c. General Electric Lighting, Hendersonville, NC or General Electric Lighting Canada Inc, Mississauga, ON [www.gelighting.com/na](http://www.gelighting.com/na).
    - d. Howard Lighting Products, Laurel, MS [www.howard-ind.com](http://www.howard-ind.com).
    - e. Osram Sylvania, Danvers, MA [www.sylvania.com](http://www.sylvania.com) or Osram Sylvania Ltd, Mississauga, ON (905) 673-6171.
    - f. Philips Lighting Co, Somerset, NJ [www.lighting.philips.com/nam](http://www.lighting.philips.com/nam) or Philips Lighting Canada, Scarborough, ON (416) 292-3000.
    - g. Universal Lighting Technologies, Nashville, TN [www.universalballast.com](http://www.universalballast.com).
    - h. Venture Lighting International, Solon, OH [www.venturelighting.com](http://www.venturelighting.com).
    - i. Watt Stopper Inc, Santa Clara, CA [www.wattstopper.com](http://www.wattstopper.com).
    - j. Westinghouse Lighting Corp, Philadelphia, PA [www.westinghouselightbulbs.com](http://www.westinghouselightbulbs.com).
  - 2. Product Options: When several lighting fixtures are specified by name for one use on Drawings, select any one of those specified. Do not mix fixtures from different manufacturers specified for one use.

- B. Materials
1. Lighting Fixtures:
    - a. Type One Acceptable Products:
      - 1) See Fixture Schedule on Drawings for acceptable manufacturers and models.
      - 2) Equals as approved by Architect before bidding. See Section 01 6200.
    - b. See 'Light Fixture Schedule' provided by Owner's Representative.
      - a)
  2. Lamps:
    - a. Other Lamps:
      - 1) Category Four Approved Manufacturers. See Section 01 6200 for definitions of Categories:
        - a) General Electric.
        - b) North American Philips.
        - c) Osram / Sylvania.
        - d) Westinghouse.
    - b. LED Lamps and Fixtures:
      - 1) Replacement Lamps shall have minimum efficiency of 70 lm / W per LM 79.
      - 2) Integral LED Lamps shall have minimum efficiency of 90 lm / W per LM 79.
      - 3) Provide minimum rated life of 50,000 per LM 80 and LM 70 standards.
      - 4) Color Temperature: 3000k.
      - 5) Provide full spectrum color index of 65.
- C. Factory Assembly:
1. Fixtures shall be fully assembled complete with necessary wiring, sockets, lamps, reflectors, ballasts, auxiliaries, plaster frames, recessing boxes, hangers, supports, lenses, diffusers, and other accessories essential for complete working installation.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 INSTALLATION

- A. Interface With Other Work:
1. Coordinate with Sections under 09 5000 heading to obtain symmetrical arrangement of fixtures in acoustic tile ceiling as shown on Reflected Ceiling Plan in Contract.
  2. In mechanical equipment rooms, coordinate locations of light fixtures with equipment locations to provide proper room illumination without obstruction. Suspend fixtures that must be mounted below pipes, ducts, etc, with chains or other Architect approved method.
- B. Securely mount fixtures. Support fixtures weighing **50 lbs (23 kg)** or more from building framing or structural members.
- C. Fasten lay-in fixtures to ceiling suspension system on each side with bolts, screws, rivets, or clips. In addition, connect lay-in fixtures with two (2) No. 12 gauge diagonal wires with three (3) turns each end; two (2) per fixture minimum to building framing or structural members. Connect to opposing corners of fixture. Wires may be slightly slack. Make final conduit connections to lay-in fluorescent fixtures with specified flexible conduit or flexible fixture whips.
- D. Where fixtures are shown installed end to end, provide suitable connectors or collars to connect adjoining units to appear as a continuous unit.
- E. Where recessed fixtures are to be installed, provide openings, plaster rings, etc, of exact dimensions for such fixtures to be properly installed. Coordinate fixture installation with ceiling type and thickness. Terminate circuits for recessed fixtures in an extension outlet box near fixture and connect with specified flexible conduit.

### **3.2 ADJUSTMENT**

- A. Repair scratches or nicks on exposed surfaces of fixtures to match original undamaged conditions.

**END OF SECTION**

**SECTION 26 5121****INTERIOR LIGHTING: LED Dimming Drivers****PART 1 - GENERAL****1.1 SUMMARY**

- A. Includes But Not Limited To:
1. Furnish and install Interior Lighting LED Dimming Drivers as described in Contract Documents, complete with lamps.
- B. Related Requirements:
1. Section 26 0501: 'Common Electrical Requirements'.
  2. Section 26 0924, 'Lighting Control System'.
  3. Section 26 2726: 'Wiring Devices'.
  4. Section 26 5100: 'Interior Lighting'.
- C. Reference Standards:
1. American National Standards Institute (ANSI) / American National Standard Lighting Group (ANSLG):
    - a. ANSI/ANSLG C78.377-2017, 'American National Standard for Electric Lamps: Specification for the Chromaticity of Solid State Lighting Products'.
    - b. ANSI/ANSLG C82.11-2017, 'High-Frequency Fluorescent Lamp Ballasts'.
  2. American National Standards Institute (ANSI) / Illuminating Engineering Society (IES):
    - a. ANSI/IES RP-16-10, 'Nomenclature and Definitions for Illuminating Engineering'.
  3. Federal Communications Commission (FCC):
    - a. Code of Federal Regulations (CFR):
      - 1) FCC 47 CFR Part 15, 'Class B: Radio Frequency Devices'.
  4. Institute of Electrical and Electronics Engineers (IEEE) / American National Standards Institute (ANSI):
    - a. IEEE/ANSI C62.41.1-2002, 'Guide on the Surge Environment in Low-Voltage (1000 V and Less) AC Power Circuits'.
  5. International Electrotechnical Commission (IEC):
    - a. IEC 60929 ED. 4.0 B:2011, 'AC and/or DC Supplied Electronic Control Gear for Tubular Fluorescent Lamps - Performance Requirements'.
    - b. IEC 61000-3-2 ED. 5.0 B:2018, 'Electromagnetic Compatibility (EMC) - Part 3-2: Limits for Harmonic Current Emissions (Equipment Input Current  $\leq$  16 A per phase)'.
    - c. IEC 61347-1 ED. 3.1 B:2017, 'Lamp Controlgear - Part 1: General and Safety Requirements'.
    - d. IEC 61347-2-13 ED. 2.1 B:2016, 'Lamp Controlgear - Part 2-13: Particular Requirements for d.c. or a.c. Supplied Electronic Controlgear for LED modules'.
    - e. IEC 61547 ED. 2.0 B:2009, 'Equipment for General Lighting Purposes - EMC Immunity Requirements'.
    - f. IEC 62384 ED. 1.0 B:2006, 'D.C. or A.C. Supplied Electronic Control Gear for LED Modules - Performance Requirements'.
    - g. IEC 62386-101 ED. 2.1 B:2018, 'Digital Addressable Lighting Interface - Part 101: General Requirements - System'.
  6. National Electrical Manufacturers Association (NEMA):
    - a. NEMA 410-2015, 'Performance Testing for Lighting Controls and Switching Devices with Electronic Drivers and Discharge Ballasts'.
  7. Underwriters Laboratories (UL):
    - a. UL 1310: 'Class 2 Power Units' (2018).
  8. Underwriters Laboratories (UL) / Underwriters Laboratories of Canada (ULC):



- a. UL 8750: 'Standard for Light Emitting Diode (LED) Equipment for Use in Lighting Products' (2015).

## 1.2 SUBMITTALS

- A. Action Submittals:
  1. Product Data:
    - a. Manufacturer's published product data on dimensions, ratings, catalog numbers and identification of products and accessories for products included for project. Include performance data.
  2. Shop Drawings:
    - a. Provide fixture type(s) list for each specific driver.
    - b. Provide wiring diagrams as needed for special operation or interaction with other system(s).
- B. Informational Submittals:
  1. Qualification Statements:
    - a. Manufacturer: Provide experience compliance documentation.
    - b. Products: Provide compliance documentation with UL / ULC requirements.
- C. Closeout Submittals:
  1. Include following in Operations And Maintenance Manual specified in Section 01 7800:
    - a. Warranty Documentation:
      - 1) Final, executed copy of Warranty on drivers.

## 1.3 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Regulatory Agency Sustainability Approvals:
  1. Meet UL / ULC requirements.
- B. Qualifications. Requirements of Section 01 4301 applies but not limited to following:
  1. Manufacturer:
    - a. Manufacture with five (5) years experience in manufacture of dimmable electronic lighting drivers.
    - b. Provide experience documentation.

## 1.4 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Ambient Conditions:
  1. General:
    - a. Proceed with installation only when following ambient conditions can be maintained:
      - 1) Install when the temperature is between **minus 4 deg F (minus 20 deg C)** minimum and **122 deg. F (50 deg. C)** maximum and relative humidity is ninety (90) percent, non-condensing.
      - 2) Protect from dust and excess moisture during installation.

## 1.5 WARRANTY

- A. Manufacturer Warranty:
  1. Provide five (5) year warranty on drivers to operate driver at or below required driver warranty temperature.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 ASSEMBLIES

#### A. Manufacturers:

1. Category Four Approved Manufacturers. See Section 01 6200 for definitions of Categories:
  - a. eldoLED America, San Jose, CA [www.eldoled.com](http://www.eldoled.com).
  - b. General Electric Lighting, Hendersonville, NC or General Electric Lighting Canada Inc, Mississauga, ON [www.gelighting.com/na](http://www.gelighting.com/na).
  - c. Howard Lighting Products, Laurel, MS [www.howard-ind.com](http://www.howard-ind.com).
  - d. OSRAM Sylvania, Danvers, MA or OSRAM Sylvania LTD, Mississauga, Ontario Canada [www.Sylvania.com](http://www.Sylvania.com).
  - e. Philips Lighting Co, Somerset, NJ [www.lighting.philips.com/nam](http://www.lighting.philips.com/nam) or Philips Lighting Canada, Scarborough, ON (416) 292-3000.

#### B. LED Dimming Driver:

1. Description:
  - a. LED Dimming Driver:
    - 1) 4 wire (010V DC Voltage Controlled) Dimming Drivers.
    - 2) Integral Diming Driver for replacement lamp.
2. Design Criteria:
  - a. Driver:
    - 1) Driver must be able to operate for (+/- 10 percent) supply voltage of 120V through 277VAC at 60Hz.
    - 2) Driver to be UL / ULC recognized under component program and shall be modular for simple field replacement. Drivers that are not UL / ULC recognized or not suited for field replacement will not be used.
    - 3) Driver shall have ability to provide no light output when analog control signal drops below 0.5 V, and shall consume 0.5 watts or less in this standby. Control deadband between 0.5V and 0.65V shall be included to allow for voltage variation of incoming signal without causing noticeable variation in fixture to fixture output.
  - b. Range and Quality:
    - 1) LED dimming to be equal in range and quality to commercial grade incandescent dimmer:
      - a) Quality of dimming to be defined by dimming range, freedom from perceived flicker or visible stroboscopic flicker, smooth and continuous change in level (no visible steps in transitions), natural square law response to control input, and stable when input voltage conditions fluctuate over what is typically experience in commercial environment.
    - 2) Ten-year expected life while operating at maximum case temperature and 90 percent non-condensing relative humidity.
  - c. Inrush Current:
    - 1) Driver must limit inrush current as followings:
      - a) Minimum Requirement: Meet or exceed NEMA 410 driver inrush standard of 430 amps per 10 amps load with maximum of 370 amps<sup>2</sup> per second.
      - b) Preferred Requirement: Meet or exceed 30mA<sup>2</sup>s at 277VAC for up to 50 watts of load and 75A at 240us at 277VAC for 100 watts of load.
  - d. Withstand up to 1,000 volt surge without impairment of performance as defined by IEEE/ANSI C62.41.1 Category A.
  - e. Light Output:
    - 1) No visible change in light output with variation of plus/minus 10 percent line voltage input.
  - f. Harmonic Distortion:
    - 1) Total Harmonic Distortion less than 20 percent and meet ANSI/ANSLG C82.11 maximum allowable THD requirements at full output.
    - 2) THD shall at no point in dimming curve allow imbalance current to exceed full output THD.
  - g. Automatic Adaptation:

- 1) Driver must support automatic adaptation, allowing for future luminaire upgrades and enhancements and deliver improved performance.
  - a) Adjustment of forward LED voltage, supporting 3V through 55V.
  - b) Adjustment of LED current from 200mA to 1.05A at the 100 percent control input point in increments of 1 mA.
  - c) Adjustment for operating hours to maintain constant lumens (within 5 percent) over 50,000 hour design life of system, and deliver up to 20 percent energy savings early in life cycle.
- h. Light Quality:
  - 1) Over entire range of available drive currents, driver shall provide step-free, continuous dimming to black from 100 - 1 percent light output and step to 0 percent where indicated. Driver shall respond similarly when raising from 0 percent to 100 percent.
  - 2) Drivers to track evenly across multiple fixtures at all light levels, and shall have input signal to output light level that allows smooth adjustment over entire dimming range.
  - 3) Driver and luminaire electronics shall deliver illumination that is free from objectionable flicker as measured by flicker index (ANSI/IES RP-16-10). At all points within dimming range from 100-0.1 percent luminaire shall have:
    - a) LED dimming driver shall provide continuous step-free, flicker free dimming similar to incandescent source.
    - b) Minimum Requirement: Flicker index shall less that 5 percent at all frequencies below 1000 Hz.
    - c) Preferred specification: Flicker index shall be equal to incandescent, less that 1 percent at all frequencies below 1000 Hz.
- i. Control Input:
  - 1) 4-Wire (0-10V DC Voltage Controlled) Dimming Drivers:
    - a) Must meet IEC 60929 ED. 4.0 B Annex E for General White Lighting LED drivers.
    - b) Connect to devices compatible with 0 to 1 OV Analog Control Protocol, Class 2, capable of sinking 0.6 ma per driver at low end of 0.3V. Limit number of drivers on each 0-1 OV control output based on voltage drop and control capacity.
    - c) Control relays or contactors and transformers for up to six circuits
    - d) Sensor controller with HIGH, LOW, and DEADBAND adjustments.
  - 2) Integral Dimmer Driver for replacement lamps:
    - a) LED Driver shall not cause shadows.
    - b) LED Driver shall be line voltage controlled and shall be compatible with any universal dimmer.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 INSTALLATION

- A. Installation of driver to meet Manufacturer's prescribed methods and instructions.
- B. Meet Ambient Conditions requirements for installation.
- C. Driver may be remote mounted up to 300 ft (90 m) depending on power level and wire gauge.
- D. 0-10V input shall be protected from line voltage miswire, and immune and output unresponsive to induced AC voltage on control leads.

**END OF SECTION**

**SECTION 26 5200****EMERGENCY LIGHTING****PART 1 - GENERAL****1.1 SUMMARY**

- A. Includes But Not Limited To:
  - 1. Furnish and install emergency battery units as described in Contract Documents.
- B. Related Requirements:
  - 1. Section 26 0501: 'Common Electrical Requirements'.

**PART 2 - PRODUCTS****2.1 SYSTEMS**

- A. Manufacturers:
  - 1. Manufacturer Contact List:
    - a. Beghelli, Miramar, FL [www.beghelliusa.com](http://www.beghelliusa.com).
    - b. Bodine Emergency Lighting, Collierville, TN [www.bodine.com](http://www.bodine.com)
    - c. Dual-Lite, Cheshire, CT [www.dual-lite.com](http://www.dual-lite.com).
    - d. Iota Engineering Co, Tucson, AZ [www.iotaengineering.com](http://www.iotaengineering.com)
    - e. Lightolier, Fall River, MA [www.lightolier.com](http://www.lightolier.com).
    - f. Lithonia Lighting, Conyers, GA [www.lithonia.com](http://www.lithonia.com).
    - g. McPhilben / Day-Brite Lighting, Tupelo, MS [www.mcphilben.com](http://www.mcphilben.com).
    - h. Sure-Lites / Cooper Lighting, Elk Grove, IL [www.cooperlighting.com](http://www.cooperlighting.com).
- B. Materials:
  - 1. Fluorescent Battery Packs:
    - a. Design Criteria:
      - 1) Batteries shall be long life nickel cadmium type.
      - 2) Complete with charging indicator light and test switch.
      - 3) Components shall be fully concealed and easily accessible for maintenance or replacement.
      - 4) Factory installed in lighting fixture, or field installed to same standards.
    - b. Linear Fluorescent Lighting Fixtures:
      - 1) Battery pack shall operate one (1) lamp at approximately 600 lumens initially and 60 percent minimum of initial lumens after ninety (90) minutes.
      - 2) Charger shall be capable of full recharge in twenty four (24) hours.
    - c. Class Two Quality Products: See Section 01 4301 for Manufacturer Qualifications and Section 01 6200:
      - 1) Any Manufacturer that conforms to Contract Documents requirements.
  - 2. Emergency Lighting Units And Fixtures:
    - a. Design Criteria:
      - 1) Shall operate indicated number of lamps for ninety (90) minutes of emergency operation.
      - 2) Sealed, maintenance free, lead calcium type battery.
      - 3) Painted steel housing and complete with power indicator light and test switch.
      - 4) Lamps to be designed for wet locations and with full vertical and horizontal adjustment of lamps.
    - b. Category Four Approved Products. See Section 01 6200 for definitions of Categories:
      - 1) See Contract Drawings for approved fixtures. Coordinate emergency lighting unit and fixture so that systems function as required.

**PART 3 - EXECUTION****3.1 INSTALLATION**

- A. Battery Packs:
  - 1. General:
    - a. Wire so unit can be tested with lights on.
    - b. Wire so lamps in normal mode are switched off with other lighting in area. Connect unit to unswitched conductor of normal lighting circuit.
  - 2. Linear Fluorescent Lighting Fixtures:
    - a. Install in ballast channel of fixture with charging indicator light and test switch mounted on fixture end, or visible and accessible through lens.
- B. Emergency Lighting Units:
  - 1. Aim lamps to maximize lighting of first **50 feet (15 meters)** of egress path.
  - 2. Wire so lamps are normally off and operate upon loss of normal building power.
  - 3. Connect units to un-switched conductor of normal lighting circuit.

**END OF SECTION**

**SECTION 26 5600****EXTERIOR LIGHTING****PART 1 - GENERAL****1.1 SUMMARY**

- A. Includes But Not Limited To:
  - 1. Furnish and install exterior lighting system as described in Contract Documents.
- B. Products Furnished But Not Installed Under This Section:
  - 1. Anchor bolts.
- C. Related Requirements:
  - 1. Section 03 3111: 'Cast-In-Place Structural Concrete' for bases for light poles and installation of anchor bolts.
  - 2. Section 26 0501: 'Common Electrical Requirements'.

**PART 2 - PRODUCTS****2.1 SYSTEM**

- A. Manufacturers:
  - 1. Manufacturer Contact List:
    - a. Cutler-Hammer Inc, Milwaukee, WI [www.cutler-hammer.eaton.com](http://www.cutler-hammer.eaton.com) or Cutler-Hammer/Eaton Yale Ltd, Burlington, ON (905) 333-6442.
    - b. General Electric Industrial Systems, Charlotte, NC or G E Lighting Canada Inc, Mississauga, ON [www.geindustrial.com](http://www.geindustrial.com).
    - c. Intermatic Inc, Spring Grove, IL [www.intermatic.com](http://www.intermatic.com).
    - d. Paragon Electric Co Inc, Carol Stream, IL [www.icca.invensys.com/paragon](http://www.icca.invensys.com/paragon) or Paragon Electric / Maple Chase, Mississauga, ON (800) 951-5526 or (905) 890-5956.
    - e. Siemens Energy & Automation, Alphrata, GA [www.sea.siemens.com](http://www.sea.siemens.com) or Siemens Canada, Mississauga, ON (905) 819-8000.
    - f. Square D Co, Palatine, IL or Square D / Schneider Electric, Toronto, ON [www.squared.com](http://www.squared.com).
    - g. Tork Inc, Mount Vernon, NY [www.tork.com](http://www.tork.com).
- B. Materials:
  - 1. Exterior Fixtures:
    - a. Finish shall be high quality polyester powder coating:
      - 1) Finish process shall consist of cleaning, electrostatically applying power coat, and thermal curing.
      - 2) Weather, scratch, UV, and fade resistant.
    - b. Color shall be Manufacturer's standard white, natural aluminum, or medium bronze as selected by Architect before bidding.
    - c. Type One Acceptable Products:
      - 1) As indicated on Fixture Schedule. Do not mix fixtures from different manufacturers for one use.
      - 2) Equals as approved by Architect before bidding. See Section 01 6200.
  - 2. Parking Area Poles:
    - a. Designed for wind loading required for Project location as determined by Architect.
    - b. Aluminum hinged base type with matching aluminum anchor bolt cover secured to base.
    - c. Include hand hole with cover at pole base.
    - d. Finish And Color: Match parking area fixtures.
  - 3. Exterior Lighting Control:

- a. Photo Cell:
  - 1) 120 volts.
  - 2) Category Four Approved Products. See Section 01 6200 for definitions of Categories.
    - a) Paragon: CW201-00.
    - b) Tork: 2101.
- b. Lighting Contactor:
  - 1) 120 volt coil, 20 amps, 2 pole, NEMA 1 enclosure.
  - 2) By same manufacturer as main panelboard.
  - 3) Category Four Approved Products. See Section 01 6200 for definitions of Categories.
    - a) Cutler Hammer: CN35.
    - b) General Electric: CR260L-21CA22.
    - c) Siemens: LEN01B200120A.
    - d) Square D: Class 8903, Type LG-20.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 INSTALLATION

- A. Interface With Other Work:
  1. Coordinate location of anchor bolts and conduit in concrete bases so pole will be properly mounted and centered on base.
  2. Install hinged light pole bases so poles can be completely lowered to ground without obstruction out into parking area.
  3. Install time switches, manual bypass switches, and contactor inside building to control parking area and building exterior lighting. Label each component to identify lighting controlled, I.E. 'PARKING LIGHTING' or 'BUILDING LIGHTING.' Label with 1/16 inch (1.5 mm) thick laminated plastic composition material with contrasting color core. Engraved letters shall be 1/4 inch (6 mm) high.
  4. Locate photocell(s) outside building under soffit and away from any light source and direct sunlight.
  5. Wire photocell and time switch in series for photo cell ON, time switch OFF operation.

**END OF SECTION**

**SECTION 27 1116****COMMUNICATIONS CABINETS, RACKS, FRAMES, AND ENCLOSURES****PART 1 - GENERAL****1.1 SUMMARY**

- A. Selection Includes But Is Not Limited To:
  - 1. Furnish and install communications cabinets, racks, frames, and enclosures as described in Contract Documents.
- B. Related Requirements:
  - 1. Section 26 0526: 'Grounding And Bonding For Electrical Systems'.
  - 2. Section 27 1501: 'Communications Horizontal Cabling'.
  - 3. Section 27 4117: 'Video Systems'.
  - 4. Section 27 5117: 'Audio Systems'.
- C. Products Installed But Not Furnished Under This Section:
  - 1. Cable Management, Vertical Cable Management, and Horizontal Cable Management.

**1.2 REFERENCES**

- A. Association Publications:
  - 1. British Standards Institution (BSI):
    - a. BS EN 50310:2006, 'Application of Equipotential Bonding and Earthing in Buildings with Information Technology Equipment.
  - 2. Building Industry Consulting Service International (BISCI):
    - a. Information Transport Systems Installation Methods Manual (ITSIMM) (5<sup>th</sup> Edition).
    - b. Telecommunications Distribution Methods Manual (TDMM) (12<sup>th</sup> Edition).
  - 3. Institute of Electrical and Electronics Engineers:
    - a. IEEE 802.3-2018, '*Standard for Ethernet*'.
    - b. IEEE 1100-2005, 'Recommended Practice for Powering and Grounding Electric Equipment'.
  - 4. Telecommunications Industry Association:
    - a. TIA TSB-162, 'Telecommunication Cabling Guidelines for Wireless Access Points' (November 2013).
- B. Reference Standards:
  - 1. International Electrotechnical Commission:
    - a. IEC 60603-7:2011, 'Connectors for electronic equipment – Part 7 'Detail specification for 8-way, unshielded, free and fixed connectors'.
  - 2. International Organization for Standardization / International Electrotechnical Commission:
    - a. ISO/IEC 11801 ED.2.0 EN CORR3:2008, 'Information Technology-Generic Cabling for Customer Premises'.
  - 3. National Fire Protection Association:
    - a. NFPA 70, 'National Electrical Code (NEC)' (2017 or most recent edition adopted by AHJ).
  - 4. Telecommunications Industry Association:
    - a. TIA-568.2, 'Balanced Twisted-Pair Telecommunications Cabling and Components Standards' (Revision D, 2018).
    - b. TIA-569, 'Telecommunications Pathways And Spaces' (Revision D, 2015).
    - c. TIA-606, 'Administration Standard for Telecommunications Infrastructure' (Revision C, 2017).
    - d. TIA-607, 'Telecommunications Bonding and Grounding (Earthing) for Customer Premises' (Revision C, 2015).



- e. TIA-758, 'Customer-Owned Outside Plant Telecommunication Infrastructure Standard' (Revision B, 2012).
- f. TIA-942, 'Telecommunications Infrastructure Standard for Data Centers' (Revision B, 2017).
- g. TIA-1152, 'Requirements for Field Test Instruments and Measurements for Balanced Twisted-Pair Cabling' (Revision A 2016).

### 1.3 SUBMITTALS

- A. Action Submittals:
  1. Product Data:
    - a. Provide Manufacturer's documentation and descriptive information on each piece of equipment to be used.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 SYSTEMS

- A. Manufacturers:
  1. Category Four Approved Manufacturers. See Section 01 6200 for definitions of Categories:
    - a. Atlas Sound, Phoenix, AZ [www.atlassound.com](http://www.atlassound.com).
    - b. Lowell Manufacturing Co., Pacific, MO [www.lowellmfg.com](http://www.lowellmfg.com)
    - c. Middle Atlantic Products, Fairfield, NJ [www.middleatlantic.com](http://www.middleatlantic.com).

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 INSTALLERS

- A. Approved Installers:
  1. Approved installers in Section 27 5117 are to both furnish and install components of this section. See Section 01 4301. Installer requirements of Section 01 4301 applies.

### 3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. Equipment Cabinet:
  1. See Section 27 5117 'Sound System' for installation of Sound Equipment.
- B. Equipment Cabinet:
  1. Install vent panels at top and bottom of equipment cabinets and between components where possible for maximum ventilation when equipment locations is not specified in Contract Drawings. Locate amplifiers at top of cabinet. Locate equalizers below amplifiers, separated by several vent panels.
  2. Securely fasten equipment plumb and square in place. Utilize all fastening holes in front of cabinet.
  3. Securely fasten in place equipment that is not rack mounted, including relays and other small components. Do not use sticky-back tape.
  4. Install balancing / isolation transformer when balanced and unbalanced components are connected.
  5. Wire XLR-type connections with pin 2 hot, pin 1 shield.
  6. Connect powered components to 120 VAC outlets on voltage suppressor power bars. Do not connect to outlets on other components.
  7. Identification:
    - a. Legibly identify user-operated system controls and system input / output jacks using engraved, permanently attached laminated plastic plates or imprinted Lexan labels. Label

equipment and controls within equipment cabinets using similar labels or printed labels from a label maker or laser printer.

- b. Affix label to rack panel inside cabinet listing name and telephone number of installer. Appropriate warranty instructions may be included.
- C. Communications Racks, Frames and Enclosures:
1. Racks shall be installed as per Manufacturer's recommendations.
  2. Racks shall be securely attached to concrete floor with **3/8 inch (9.5 mm)** minimum hardware or as required by local codes.
  3. Place racks with **36 inches (900 mm)** minimum clearance front and back from walls and **28 inches (710 mm)** clear on one side of rack. When mounted in row, maintain **36 inches (900 mm)** minimum from wall behind and in front of row of racks and from wall at each end of row.
  4. Grounding:
    - a. Racks shall be grounded to telecommunications ground bus bar as per Section 26 0526 'Grounding And Bonding For Electrical Systems'.
    - b. Racks shall be grounded in accordance with TIA-607.
  5. Seismic Bracing:
    - a. Comply with IBC and local seismic requirements for all equipment and conduit pathways.
  6. Rack mount screws not used for installing patch panels and other hardware shall be bagged and left with rack upon completion of installation.
  7. Mounted termination block fields shall be mounted on Terminal Board in Technology Room provided by Electrical as shown in Contract Documents.
    - a. Wall mounted termination block fields shall be installed with lowest edge of Terminal Board.

### 3.3 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Non-Conforming Work: Non-conforming work as covered in the General Conditions applies, but is not limited to the following:
1. Correct any work found defective or not complying with Contract Document requirements at no additional cost to Owner.

**END OF SECTION**

**SECTION 27 1501****COMMUNICATIONS HORIZONTAL CABLING****PART 1 - GENERAL****1.1 SUMMARY**

- A. Includes But Not Limited To:
1. Furnish, install, and test communications horizontal cabling as described in Contract Documents including following:
    - a. Cables and related terminations.
    - b. Patch cords and modular connectors.
    - c. Surface raceway and outlet poles.
    - d. Support and grounding hardware.
    - e. UTP Cable.
    - f. UTP Patch cords.
    - g. UTP Connector Modules.
    - h. Installation and testing of Owner Furnished Network Equipment.
- B. Related Requirements:
1. Division 26: Raceways and surface boxes.
  2. Section 07 8400: 'Firestopping' for furnishing and installation of firestopping.
  3. Section 26 0526: 'Grounding And Bonding For Electrical Systems' for installation and termination.
  4. Section 27 1116: 'Communications Cabinet, Racks, Frames, and Enclosures'.
  5. Section 27 5117: 'Audio Systems'.
- C. Products Installed But Not Furnished Under This Section:
1. Owner Furnished Network Equipment as specified on TT (Technology Telecommunication) and TA (Technology Audiovisual) Drawings as shown in Contract Documents including:
    - a. Internet Firewall.
    - b. ISP Modem.
    - c. Network Switch.
    - d. Wireless Access Port.
- D. Related Requirements:
1. Section 01 6400: Owner will provide Network Equipment as specified on TT (Technology Telecommunication) and TA (Technology Audiovisual) Drawings as shown in Contract Documents. Contract Documents establishes quality of materials and installation for information of Contractor, Architect, and Owner's Representatives. Design Criteria in PART 2 of this Section identifies Contractor's responsibility for Owner Network Equipment.

**1.2 REFERENCES**

- A. Association Publications:
1. Building Industry Consulting Service International (BISCI):
    - a. *Information Technology Systems Installation Methods Manual (ITSIMM)* (7<sup>th</sup> Edition).
    - b. *Telecommunications Distribution Methods Manual (TDMM)* (14<sup>th</sup> Edition).
  2. Institute of Electrical and Electronics Engineers:
    - a. IEEE 802.3-2018, '*Standard for Ethernet*'.
    - b. IEEE 1100-2005, '*Recommended Practice for Powering and Grounding Electric Equipment*'.
  3. Telecommunications Industry Association:
    - a. TIA TSB-162, '*Telecommunication Cabling Guidelines for Wireless Access Points*' (Revision A, 2013).

- B. Reference Standards:
1. National Fire Protection Association:
    - a. NFPA 70, 'National Electrical Code (NEC)' (2020 or most recent edition adopted by AHJ).
  2. Telecommunications Industry Association:
    - a. TIA-568.1 'Commercial Building Telecommunications Infrastructure Standard' (Revision D, 2019)
    - b. TIA-568.2, 'Balanced Twisted-Pair Telecommunications Cabling and Components Standards' (Revision D, 2018).
    - c. TIA-568.4 'Broadband Coaxial Cabling and Components Standard (Revision D, 2017)
    - d. TIA-606, 'Administration Standard for Telecommunications Infrastructure' (Revision C, 2017).
    - e. TIA-607, 'Telecommunications Bonding and Grounding (Earthling) for Customer Premises' (Revision D, 2019).
    - f. TIA-758, 'Customer-Owned Outside Plant Telecommunication Infrastructure Standard' (Revision B, 2012).
    - g. TIA-1152, 'Requirements for Field Test Instruments and Measurements for Balanced Twisted-Pair Cabling' (Revision A 2016).
  3. Underwriters Laboratories:
    - a. UL 94: Standard for Test for Flammability of Plastic Materials for Parts in Devices and Appliances (March 2013 6th Edition).
      - 1) 94HB, 'Horizontal Burn Test'.

### 1.3 ADMINISTRATIVE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Coordination:
1. Coordinate with Project Manager and/or Facility Manager well in advance of Substantial Completion for installation of all Owner Furnished Network Equipment.

### 1.4 SUBMITTALS

- A. Action Submittals:
1. Product Data:
    - a. Provide Manufacturer's documentation, installation instructions, and descriptive information on each piece of equipment to be used.
  2. Shop Drawings:
    - a. Provide three (3) copies of labeling system reflecting approved label scheme for cable installation for racks, cables, panels, and outlets.
- B. Informational Submittals:
1. Certificates:
    - a. Provide Installer certificates of qualifications required.
  2. Design Data:
    - a. Identification and labeling:
      - 1) Provide labeling system for cable installation to be approved by Owner.
        - a) Clearly identify all components of system: racks, cables, panels and outlets.
        - b) Designate cables origin and destination and unique identifier for cable within facility by room number and port count.
        - c) Racks and patch panels shall be labeled to identify location within cable system infrastructure.
      - b. After system installation, provide three (3) full documentation sets to Consulting Engineer/Architect for approval.
  3. Tests And Evaluation Reports:
    - a. Submit documentation within ten (10) working days of completion of each testing phase. This is inclusive of all test results and record drawings.
    - b. Draft drawings may include annotations done by hand. Final copies of all drawings shall be submitted within thirty (30) working days of completion of each testing phase.
    - c. At request of Consulting Engineer, provide copies of original test results.
  4. Field Quality Control Submittals:

- a. Architect will provide floor plans in paper and electronic formats on which record documentation information can be recorded.
- 5. Qualification Statements:
  - a. Letter from Manufacturer certifying level of training and experience of Installer.
- C. Closeout Submittals:
  - 1. Include following information in Operations And Maintenance Manual specified in Section 01 7800:
    - a. Operations and Maintenance Data:
      - 1) Provide operating and maintenance instructions for each item of equipment submitted under Product Data.
    - b. Warranty Documentation:
      - 1) Final, executed copy of Warranty.
    - c. Record Documentation:
      - 1) Manufacturers documentation:
        - a) Manufacturer's literature or cut sheet.
      - 2) Tests and evaluation reports.
      - 3) As-built Documentation:
        - a) Provide record document to include cable routes and outlet locations.
          - (1) Sequential number shall identify outlet locations.
          - (2) Numbering, icons, and drawing conventions used shall be consistent throughout all documentation.
          - (3) Provide labeling system information.

## 1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Regulatory Agency Sustainability Approvals:
  - 1. System shall meet approval of authority having jurisdiction (AHJ). NEC and State and/or local ordinances and regulations shall govern unless more stringent requirements are specified.
  - 2. Meet all TIA/EIA commercial building wiring standards.
  - 3. Meet Telecommunications Distribution Methods Manual (TDMM) (12<sup>th</sup> Edition) requirements for installation and testing.
  - 4. All Networks shall be installed per applicable standards and manufacturer's guidelines.
  - 5. Cable assemblies shall be UL / CE Listed and CSA Certified. Cables shall be a distinctive green or green/yellow in color, and all jackets shall be UL, VW-1 flame rated.
  - 6. Grounding shall conform to all required Commercial Building Grounding and Bonding Requirements for Telecommunications, Electrical Codes, and Manufacturer's grounding requirements.
- B. Qualifications: Requirements of Section 01 4301 applies, but is not limited to following:
  - 1. Manufacturer Qualifications:
    - a. Provide single source for all products of system:
      - 1) KeyConnect by Belden.
      - 2) Netkey by Panduit.
      - 3) System 6 by Siemon.
      - 4) Uniprise Media 6 by CommScope.
  - 2. Installers Qualifications:
    - a. Approved and Certified by Manufacturer (installation and maintenance trained):
      - 1) Belden Certified System Vendor (CSV).
        - a) Belden Certified LDS Partner.
      - 2) CommScope Certified Business Partner.
        - a) CommScope Certified LDS Partner.
      - 3) Panduit Certified Installer (PCI).
      - 4) Siemon Certified Installers (CI).
    - b. Three (3) year experience with similar projects. Provide documentation.

## 1.6 WARRANTY

- A. Special Warranty:
1. Cabling System:
    - a. Provide warranty for permanent link cabling system to meet Category 6 standard requirements for structured cabling system for twenty (20) years.
  2. Installer Warranty:
    - a. Installer guarantees that all work is in accordance with all express and implied requirements of Contract Documents, that all work is of good quality, and further warrants work and material for period of (1) year from date of substantial completion of project, unless longer period of time is specified in Contract. All work not conforming to these requirements, may be considered defective:
      - 1) If, within one (1) year after substantial completion of work, or within such longer period of time as may be prescribed by law or by terms of any warranty in Contract, any of work is found to be defective or not in accordance with Contract, Installer shall at Installer cost correct it promptly after receipt of written notice from Owner.
      - 2) Installer's obligation shall survive termination of Contract.
      - 3) Owner shall give such notice within reasonable time after discovery of condition.
    - b. Installer warrants to Owner that all materials and equipment furnished under this Contract shall be new unless otherwise specified, free from faults and defects and in conformance with Contract Documents:
      - 1) Contractor shall secure manufacturer's warranties and deliver copies thereof to Owner upon completion of work.
      - 2) All such warranties shall commence from date of substantial completion and will not in any way reduce Installer's responsibilities under this Contract.
      - 3) Whenever guarantees or warranties are required by specifications for longer period than one year, such longer period shall govern.
    - c. Installer will provide twenty (20) year minimum end to end manufacturer warranty.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 OWNER-FURNISHED PRODUCTS

- A. Category Four Products. See Section 01 6200 for definitions of Categories:
1. Owner Furnished Network Equipment as specified on TT (Technology Telecommunication) and TA (Technology Audiovisual) Drawings as shown in Contract Documents including:
    - a. Internet Firewall.
    - b. ISP Modem.
    - c. Network Switch(es).
    - d. Wireless Access Points.
  2. Coordination:
    - a. Coordinate installation of all Owner Furnished Network Equipment including but limited to:
      - 1) Installation and configure devices in accordance with Owner requirements.
      - 2) Proper set-up of network equipment.
      - 3) Owner Furnished internet service to building prior to final installation of AV and Voice Data Equipment.
      - 4) Testing of network equipment.

### 2.2 SYSTEMS

- A. Manufacturers:
1. Category Four Approved Manufacturers and Products. See Section 01 6200 for definitions of Categories:
    - a. Belden, St. Louis, MO [www.belden.com](http://www.belden.com).
    - b. Panduit Corporation, Tinley Park IL [www.panduit.com](http://www.panduit.com).
    - c. Systemax Solutions, a CommScope Company, Hickory, NC [www.systemax.com](http://www.systemax.com).

- d. The Siemon Company, Watertown, CT [www.siemon.com](http://www.siemon.com).
- B. Design Criteria:
1. Must install single manufacture as complete permanent link.
    - a. Category 6 minimum compliance margin on all parameters beyond category 6 and Power Sum ACR out to 250 MHz.
  2. Entire Category 6 system to be provided by single approved Manufacturer throughout.
  3. Install structured cabling system that will be able to support interconnections to active telecommunications equipment for voice and data applications in multi vendor, multi product environment. Structured cabling system should adhere to TIA-568, TIA-606; TIA-607, and TIA-942 standards with respect to pathways, distribution, administration, and grounding of the system.
  4. Each room drop will consist of two drops each consisting of two terminations can be interoperable to accommodate either voice or data applications. Provide convenience phone drops that will consist of single termination that will be installed in proper faceplate for each location's phone.
  5. Install, terminate, test, and guarantee each drop according to customer all applicable standards and customer preferences.
  6. Horizontal cables will be rated Category 6 (250 MHz) in performance and rated to comply with TIA-568 to connector outlets at Work Area. Horizontal cables will home run back to Technology Room (Entrance Facility / Main Cross Connect) and will terminate on individual Category 6 rated jacks to populate modular 48 port angled patch panel on open or flat patch panel inside enclosures. All cables will be patched at cutover as interconnection into floor serving active equipment using RJ45 modular equipment cables rated to Category 6.
  7. Match additions to horizontal raceway to complete system according to TIA-568 where suspension and protection gaps exist.
- C. Components – Work Area Subsystem:
1. Provide connectivity equipment used to connect horizontal cabling subsystem and equipment in work area. Both copper and fiber media shall be supported. Connectivity equipment shall include following options:
    - a. Patch (equipment) cords and modular connectors.
    - b. Outlets and surface mount boxes.
    - c. Surface raceway and outlet poles.
    - d. Consolidation point / MUJO.
  2. Patch Cords and Modular Connectors:
    - a. Match horizontal cabling medium and rating. Same Manufacturer shall provide modular connectors and patch cords. Total patch cord length at work area is not to exceed **10 feet (3.0 m)**.
    - b. Copper Connectivity:
      - 1) Network Cabling System:
        - a) Provide for Work Area subsystem, including all modular connectors.
        - b) Modular connectors shall support of high-speed networks and applications designed for implementation on copper cabling.
        - c) Outlets shall utilize fully interchangeable and individual connector modules that mount side-by-side to facilitate quick and easy moves, adds and changes.
      - 2) Modular Connections:
        - a) Data Modules shall be Category 6:
          - (1) Eight position modules required in all work areas and shall exceed connector requirements of TIA Category 6 standard.
          - (2) Prove termination cap with strain relief on cable jacket, ensure cable twists are maintained to within **1/8 inch (3 mm)** and include wiring scheme label. Wiring scheme label shall be available with TIA-568 wiring schemes.
        - b) Terminations shall use for TIA-568 wiring scheme.
        - c) Modules shall terminate 4 pair 23 100-ohm solid unshielded twisted pair cable.
        - d) Modules shall meet ISO 11801 standard including complying with intermateability standard IEC 60603-7 for backward compatibility.
        - e) Category 6 modules shall have UL and CSA approval.
        - f) Modules shall have ETL verified Category 6 performance and ISO 11801 Class E performance in both basic and channel links.
        - g) Modules shall be universal in design, accepting 2, 3, or 4 pair modular plugs without damage to outer jack contacts.

- h) Modules shall be able to be re-terminated minimum of 10 times and be available in 11 standard colors for color-coding purposes.
  - i) Jack shall snap into all outlets and patch panels.
  - j) Module shall include black base to signify Category 6 400 MHz performance.
- 3) Patch Cords:
- a) Category 6 patch cords shall be factory terminated with modular plugs featuring one-piece, tangle-free latch design and strain-relief boots to support easy moves, adds, and changes.
  - b) Constructed with Category 6 23-AWG stranded UTP cable.
  - c) Each patch cord shall be one hundred (100) percent performance tested at factory in channel test to TIA Category 6 standard.
  - d) Patch cords shall come in standard lengths of **3, 5, 7, 9, 14 and 20 feet (0.90, 1.50, 2.15, 2.75, 4.20 and 6.1 meters)** and 6 standard colors of Blue or White.
  - e) Provide one (1) each **8 feet (2.45 m)** patch cord for 50 percent of terminated work station ports.
3. Outlets and Surface Mount Boxes:
- a. Outlets and surface mount boxes shall support network system by providing high-density in-wall, surface mount cabling applications.
  - b. Provide faceplates for flush mount:
    - 1) Outlets faceplates shall be manufactured from high-impact thermoplastic material with UL 94 flammability rating of 94 HB or better.
4. Copper Cable:
- a. Design Criteria:
    - 1) Performance exceeds all TIA-568 Category 6 and ISO 11801 for Class E cable requirements.
    - 2) ETL tested and verified for Category 6 component performance.
    - 3) Conductors are twisted in pairs with four pairs contained in flame retardant PVC jacket separated by a spline.
    - 4) Performance tested to 650 MHz.
    - 5) Plenum (CMP) and non-plenum/riser (CMR) flame rated.
    - 6) Maximum installation tension of 25 lbs (110 N).
    - 7) Installation temperature range: **32 deg F (0 deg C) to 140 deg F (60 deg C)**.
    - 8) Operating temperature range: **14 deg F (minus 10 deg C) to 140 deg F (60 deg C)**.
    - 9) Cable diameter: Riser – **0.26 inch (6.604 mm)** 0.260"; Plenum – **0.25 inch (6.35 mm)**.
    - 10) Easy payout, reel-in-a-box and descending length markings on cable speed installation.
    - 11) Supports following applications: Ethernet 10BASE-T, 100BASE-T (Fast Ethernet) and 1000BASE-T (Gigabit Ethernet); 1.2Gb/s ATM; Token Ring 4/16; digital video; and broadband/baseband analog video.
    - 12) Color shall be blue.
- D. Horizontal Distribution Cabling:
- 1. General:
    - a. Horizontal distribution cabling system is portion of telecommunications cabling system that extends from work area telecommunications outlet/connector to horizontal cross-connect in Technology Room (Entrance Facility / Main Cross Connect).
      - 1) Horizontal cabling in office should terminate in Technology Room (Entrance Facility / Main Cross Connect) located on same floor as Work Area being served.
      - 2) Horizontal cabling is installed in star topology (home run).
      - 3) Bridged taps and splices are not permitted as part of copper horizontal cabling.
- E. Components – Technology Room (Entrance Facility / Main Cross Connect):
- 1. General:
    - a. Connect networking equipment to horizontal and backbone cabling subsystems:
      - 1) Termination hardware (connectors and patch cords), racks, cable management products and cable routing products.
      - 2) Cable termination hardware.
    - b. Terminate each horizontal or backbone cabling run using appropriate connectors or connecting blocks depending upon cable type:
      - 1) Matching patch cords will be used to perform cross-connect activities or to connect into the networking/voice hardware:



- a) Category 6 Enhanced Unshielded Twisted Pair (UTP).
- c. Four-pair Category 6 UTP cabling shall be terminated onto four-pair Category 6 module:
  - 1) All modules shall be terminated using 568-B wiring scheme.
  - 2) Eight position module shall exceed connector requirements of TIA Category 6 standard.
  - 3) Jack termination to 4-pair, 100 ohm solid unshielded twisted pair cable shall be by use of forward motion termination cap and shall not require use of punchdown or insertion tool.
2. Rack, Cabinet, and Cabling Management Enclosure:
  - a. Cable Management:
    - 1) Cable Management System shall be used to provide neat and efficient means for routing and protecting fiber and copper cables and patch cords on telecommunication racks and enclosures.
    - 2) Provide complete cable management system comprised of vertical and horizontal cable managers to manage cables on both front and rear of rack.
    - 3) System shall protect network investment by maintaining system performance, controlling cable bend radius and providing cable strain relief.
  - b. Vertical Cable Management:
    - 1) General:
      - a) Vertical cable managers include components that aid in routing, managing and organizing cable to and from equipment.
      - b) Panels shall protect network equipment by controlling cable bend radius and providing cable strain relief.
    - 2) Provide panels with universal design mounting to **19 inches (480 mm)** rack and constructed of steel bases with PVC duct attached.
    - 3) Covers shall be able to hinge from either side yet still be easily removed to allow for quick moves, adds, and changes.
  - c. Horizontal Cable Management:
    - 1) General:
      - a) Horizontal cable managers include components that aid in routing managing and organizing cable to and from equipment.
      - b) Panels shall protect network equipment by controlling cable bend radius and providing cable strain relief.
    - 2) Provide panels with universal design mounting to **19 inches (480 mm)** rack and constructed of steel bases with PVC duct attached.
    - 3) Duct fingers shall include retaining tabs to retain cables in place during cover removal.
    - 4) Covers shall be able to hinge from either side yet still be easily removed to allow for quick moves, adds, and changes.
3. Patch Cords:
  - a. Provide patch cords between modular patch panels configured as cross-connect or between patch panel and networking hardware when patch is used as interconnect. Provide one (1) each **3 feet (0.90 m)** patch cord for each terminated patch panel port.
  - b. Provide patch cords as indicated on Drawings and Specifications as shown in Contract Documents. Ensure all devices are fully connected to network equipment.
  - c. Provide additional patch cords with appropriate length to connect all Owner provided internet enabled appliances (IEA) as specified on TT (Technology Telecommunication) and TA (Technology Audiovisual) Drawings as shown in Contract Documents.
  - d. Patch cords shall be factory terminated with modular plugs featuring one-piece, tangle-free latch design and black strain-relief boots to support easy moves, adds and changes.
  - e. Construct patch cords with Category 6 24-AWG stranded UTP cable.
  - f. Patch cords shall be one hundred (100) percent performance tested at factory in channel test to Category 6 standard.
4. Patch Panels:
  - a. Four-pair Category 6 UTP cabling shall be terminated onto four-pair-punch-down style connecting hardware mounted to rear of integral patch panels and routed to Category 6 modules on front face of patch panel.
  - b. Patch panels shall be universal for TIA-568 wiring configurations.
  - c. Patch panels shall have removable 6-port design that allows 6-port module to be removed without disrupting other ports.
  - d. Integral cable tie mounts shall be included in panel for cable management on back of panel.

- e. Port and panels shall be easy to identify with write-on areas and optional label holder for color-coded labels.
  - f. Rack mountable patch panels shall mount to standard **19 inches (480 mm)** rack.
5. Grounding and Bonding:
- a. Provide Telecommunications Bonding Backbone:
    - 1) Ground all telecommunications cable shields, equipment, racks, cabinets, raceways, and other associated hardware that has potential to act as current carrying conductor.
    - 2) Install telecommunication Bonding Backbone independent of building's electrical and building ground.
    - 3) Designed in accordance with recommendations contained in TIA-607 Telecommunications Bonding and Grounding Standard.
  - b. All wires used for telecommunications grounding purposes shall be identified with green insulation:
    - 1) Non-insulated wires shall be identified at each termination point with wrap of green tape.
    - 2) All cables and bus bars shall be identified and labeled as required.
6. Firestopping: Furnish and install firestopping as per Section 07 8400.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 INSTALLATION

- A. General:
- 1. Install communications system in accordance with Manufacturer's written instructions, and complying with applicable portions of NEC 'Standard of Installation'.
- B. Work Area Outlets:
- 1. Cables shall be coiled in in-wall or surface-mount boxes if adequate space is present to house cable coil without exceeding Manufacturers bend radius.
    - a. No more than **12 inches (300 mm)** of UTP slack shall be stored in in-wall box, modular furniture raceway, or insulated walls.
    - b. Excess slack shall be loosely configured and stored in ceiling above each drop location when there is not enough space present in outlet box to store slack cable.
  - 2. Cables shall be dressed and terminated in accordance with TIA-568, Manufacturer's recommendations, and best industry practices.
  - 3. Cables shall be bundled using Velcro straps at least **0.25 inch (6.35 mm)** wide. Use of plastic wire ties or zip ties is not allowed on project.
  - 4. Pair untwist at termination shall not exceed **0.125 inch (3.175 mm)**.
  - 5. Bend radius of cable in termination area shall not be less than 4 times outside diameter of cable.
  - 6. Cable jacket shall be maintained to within **one inch (25 mm)** of termination point.
  - 7. Data / voice jacks, unless otherwise noted in Contract Documents, shall be located on each faceplate.
  - 8. Horizontal Cabling:
    - a. Data jacks in horizontally oriented faceplates shall occupy rightmost position(s).
    - b. Voice jacks shall occupy the top position(s) on the faceplate. Voice jacks in horizontally oriented faceplates shall occupy the left-most position(s).
- C. Horizontal Cross Connect:
- 1. Cables shall be dressed and terminated in accordance with TIA-568, Manufacturer's recommendations, and best industry practices.
  - 2. Pair untwist at termination shall not exceed **0.125 inch (3.175 mm)**.
    - a. Bend radius of cable in termination area shall not be less than 4 times outside diameter of cable.
  - 3. Cables shall be neatly bundled and dressed to their respective panels or blocks.
    - a. Each panel or block shall be fed by individual bundle separated and dressed back to point of cable entrance into rack or frame.

- b. Cables shall be bundled using Velcro straps at least **0.25 inch (6.35 mm)** wide. Use of plastic wire ties or zip ties is not allowed on project.
  - 4. Cable jacket shall be maintained as close as possible to termination point.
  - 5. Each cable shall be clearly labeled on cable jacket behind patch panel at location that can be viewed without removing bundle support ties.
    - a. Cables labeled within bundle, where label is obscured from view shall not be acceptable.
  - 6. Horizontal Cabling:
    - a. A pull cord (nylon; **1/8 inch (3 mm)** minimum) shall be co-installed with all cable installed in any conduit.
    - b. Cable raceways shall not be filled greater than required by TIA-569 maximum fill for particular raceway type.
    - c. Cables shall be installed in continuous lengths from origin to destination (no splices) except for transition points, or consolidation points.
    - d. Where transition points or consolidation points are allowed, they shall be located in accessible locations and housed in enclosure intended and suitable for purpose.
    - e. Cable's minimum bend radius and maximum pulling tension shall not be exceeded.
    - f. If J-hook or trapeze system is used to support cable bundles, all horizontal cables shall be supported at **48 inch (1 200 mm)** to **60 inches (1 500 mm)** maximum intervals. At no point shall cable(s) rest on acoustic ceiling grids or panels.
    - g. Horizontal distribution cables shall be bundled in groups of no more than 25 cables. Cable bundle quantities in excess of 25 cables may cause deformation of bottom cables within bundle and degrade cable performance.
    - h. Cables shall be bundled using Velcro straps at least **0.25 inch (6.35 mm)** wide. Use of plastic wire ties or zip ties is not allowed on project.
    - i. Cable shall be installed above fire-sprinkler systems and shall not be attached to system or any ancillary equipment or hardware. Cable system and support hardware shall be installed so that it does not obscure any valves, fire alarm conduit, boxes, or other control devices.
    - j. Cables shall not be attached to ceiling grid or lighting fixture wires. Where support for horizontal cable is required, install appropriate carriers to support cabling.
    - k. Cables shall be identified by self-adhesive label and meet requirements of TIA-606. Cable label shall be applied to cable behind faceplate on section of cable that can be accessed by removing cover plate.
    - l. Unshielded twisted pair cable shall be installed so that there are no bends smaller than four times the cable outside diameter at any point in run and at termination field.
    - m. Pulling tension on 4-pair UTP cables shall not exceed **25 lbf (111 N)** for a four-pair UTP cable.
- D. Vertical Outlet Pole And Surface Raceway:
  - 1. Horizontal Cabling:
    - a. General:
      - 1) Vertical outlet poles and Surface Raceway refers to surface raceway system used for branch circuit wiring and/or data network, voice, and other low-voltage cabling. Surface raceway shall be used in solid wall applications or for applications where moves, additions and changes are very typical to workflow.
    - b. Raceway system shall consist of raceway, appropriate fittings and accessories to complete installation per electrical Contract Documents. Non-metallic surface raceway is to be utilized in dry interior locations only as covered in Article 352, part B of the NEC, as adopted by the NFPA and as approved by the ANSI.
- E. Copper Termination Hardware:
  - 1. Cables shall be dressed and terminated in accordance with TIA-568, Manufacturer's recommendations, and best industry practices.
  - 2. Pair untwist at termination shall not exceed **0.125 inch (3.175 mm)**.
    - a. Bend radius of cable in termination area shall not be less than 4 times outside diameter of cable.
  - 3. Cables shall be neatly bundled and dressed to their respective panels or blocks.
    - a. Each panel or block shall be fed by individual bundle separated and dressed back to point of cable entrance into rack or frame.
    - b. Cables shall be bundled using Velcro straps at least **0.25 inch (6.35 mm)** wide. Use of plastic wire ties or zip ties is not allowed on project.

4. Cable jacket shall be maintained as close as possible to termination point.
  5. Each cable shall be clearly labeled on cable jacket behind patch panel at location that can be viewed without removing bundle Velcro support straps.
    - a. Cables labeled within bundle, where label is obscured from view shall not be acceptable.
- F. Grounding System:
1. Where required, Telecommunications Bonding Backbone shall be designed and/or approved by qualified Installer.
  2. Follow requirements of TIA-607.
- G. Seismic Bracing:
1. Comply with IBC and local seismic requirements for all equipment and conduit pathways.
- H. Identification and Labeling:
1. Apply machine generated approved labeling for racks, cables, panels and outlets:
    - a. Designate cables origin and destination and unique identifier for cable by room name and/or number and port count.
    - b. Racks and patch panels shall be labeled to identify location within cable system infrastructure.
  2. Place labeling within view at termination point on each end.
  3. Outlet, patch panel and wiring block labels shall be installed on, or in, space provided on device.
  4. See Contract Drawings for labeling scheme.
  5. Conform to IP addressing assignments as listed in Attachment 'FACILITIES ZONE IP ADDRESS ASSIGNMENT TABLE'.
    - a. See Attachment 'FACILITIES ZONE IP ADDRESS ASSIGNMENT TABLE' for 'IP Address Assignments.

### 3.2 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Field Tests:
1. Provide testing upon completion of installation.
    - a. General:
      - 1) Testing to be in accordance with TIA standards and Manufacturer's system warranty guidelines and best industry practice.
        - a) If any of these are in conflict, discrepancies shall be brought to attention of Architect/Consulting Engineer for clarification and resolution.
    - b. Cables and termination hardware:
      - 1) Test complete system for defects in installation.
      - 2) Verify cabling system performance under installed conditions according to requirements of TIA-568:
        - a) All pairs of each installed cable shall be verified prior to system acceptance.
        - b) Any defect in cabling system installation including but not limited to cable, connectors, feed through couplers, patch panels, and connector blocks shall be repaired or replaced in order to ensure one hundred (100) percent useable conductors in all cables installed.
    - c. Copper channel testing:
      - 1) All twisted-pair copper cable links shall be tested for compliance to requirements of TIA-568 for appropriate Category of cabling installed.
      - 2) Backbone multimode fiber cabling shall be tested at both 850 nm and 1300 nm.
    - d. UTP Cables and Links testing:
      - 1) UTP cabling channel must be tested at swept frequencies up to 250 MHz for internal channel performance parameters as defined in IEEE 802.3 and TIA-568. Certifications shall include following parameters for each pair of each cable installed:
        - a) Wire map (pin to pin connectivity).
        - b) Length (in feet or millimeters).
        - c) Near End Crosstalk (NEXT).
        - d) Far End Crosstalk (FEXT).

- e) ELFEXT.
- f) Attenuation/Crosstalk Ration (ACR).
- g) Return Loss.
- h) Propagation Delay.
- i) Delay Skew.
- j) Test equipment shall provide electronic and printed record of these tests.
- 2) Test each pair of cable for opens, shorts, grounds, and pair reversal.
  - a) Correct short or grounded and reversed pairs.
  - b) Examine open and shorted pairs to determine if problem is caused by improper termination.
  - c) If termination is proper, tag bad pairs at both ends and note on termination sheets.
  - d) If horizontal cable contains bad conductors, remove and replace cable.
- e. Testing Equipment:
  - 1) Comply with requirements of TIA-568.
    - a) Appropriate level III tester shall be used to verify Category 6 cabling systems.
  - 2) UTP Cables and Links test equipment:
    - a) Category Four Approved Testing Equipment. See Section 01 6200 for definitions of Categories:
      - (1) Fluke Networks DTX-1800 with firmware version 2.04 or later.
        - (a) Test lead to be P/N DTX-PLA001 or PLA002 universal permanent link interface adapter.
      - (2) Agilent Wirescope Pro N2640A with firmware version 2.1.9 or later.
        - (a) Test lead to be P/N N2644A-101 universal CAT6A link smart probes.
- f. Re-Testing:
  - 1) Consulting Engineer may request ten (10) percent random field re-test to be conducted on cable system, at no additional cost to Owner, to verify documented findings.
    - a) Tests shall be repeat of those defined above.
    - b) If findings contradict documentation submitted, additional testing can be requested to extent determined necessary by Consulting Engineer, including one hundred (100) percent re-test at no additional cost to Owner.
- g. Tests And Evaluation Reports:
  - 1) Printouts generated for each cable by wire test instrument shall be submitted as part of documentation package. Installer may furnish this information in electronic form.
    - a) Media shall contain electronic equivalent of test results as defined by the Section along with software necessary to view and evaluate test reports.
  - 2) Submit documentation within ten (10) working days of completion of each testing phase. This is inclusive of all test results and record drawings.
  - 3) Draft drawings may include annotations done by hand. Final copies of all drawings shall be submitted within thirty (30) working days of completion of each testing phase.
  - 4) If requested by Consulting Engineer, provide copies of original test results.
- h. Test Documentation:
  - 1) Provide electronic format documentation within three (3) weeks after completion of project.
  - 2) Documentation shall be clearly marked on outside front cover with following:
    - a) "Project Test Documentation".
    - b) Project name.
    - c) Date of completion (month and year).
  - 3) Test results shall include following:
    - a) Record of test frequencies.
    - b) Cable type.
    - c) Conductor pair and cable (or outlet) I.D.
    - d) Measurement direction.
    - e) Reference setup.
    - f) Crew member name(s).
    - g) Test equipment name, manufacturer, model number, serial number, software version.
    - h) Last calibration date:
      - (1) Unless Manufacturer specifies more frequent calibration cycle, annual calibration cycle is required on all test equipment used on project.

- (2) Document shall detail test method used and specific settings of equipment during test as well as software version being used in field test equipment.
- B. Non-Conforming Work: Non-conforming work as covered in General Conditions applies, but is not limited to following:
1. Any cable damaged or exceeding recommended installation parameters during installation shall be replaced at no additional cost to Owner.
  2. Any defect in cabling system installation including but not limited to cable, connectors, feed through couplers, patch panels, and connector blocks shall be repaired or replaced in order to ensure one hundred (100) percent useable conductors in all cables installed at no additional cost to Owner.
  3. Correct deviation and repeat applicable testing at no additional cost to Owner.
  4. Correct any work found defective or not complying with Association Publications and TDMM requirements at no additional cost to Owner.
    - a. Document all problems found and corrective action taken.
    - b. Include both failed and passed test data.

#### END OF SECTION

#### ATTACHMENTS

### Facilities Zone IP Address Assignments

Installers connecting any equipment to the Facilities Zone shall conform to the IP addressing assignments listed in the Table below.

- For each device listed, the Device must be statically assigned the IP Address that is given by adding the specified offset in the table to the Facility Zone Gateway address.
- IP addresses should follow standard IPv4 Octet form.
- The respective Device installer is responsible for setup of the device.
- Structured Cabling Installer shall post a copy of this list near the Firewall, with the Gateway address filled in.

**SECTION 27 5117****AUDIO SYSTEMS****PART 1 - GENERAL****1.1 SUMMARY**

- A. Includes But Not Limited To:
  - 1. Furnish and install complete and operational sound system as described in Contract Documents including:
    - a. Complete systems for amplifying sound signals from microphones and media source equipment and distributing them to loudspeakers at various locations.
  - 2. Assist Audiovisual Consultant with final inspection and equalization of system and provide necessary test equipment for audio system and partition noise isolation tests if applicable. Correct problems found at time of final inspection of system.
  
- B. Related Requirements:
  - 1. Division 26 'Electrical':
    - a. Raceway, boxes, and installation of speaker enclosures and mounting rings furnished by Division 27.
    - b. Power to equipment location and power relay wiring if applicable.
  - 2. Section 27 1116: 'Communications Cabinet, Racks, Frames, and Enclosures'.
  - 3. Section 27 1501: 'Communications Horizontal Cabling'.
  - 4. Audiovisual Consultant will perform final inspection, system balance, and instruct CES personnel in operation of system.
  
- C. Products Installed But Not Furnished Under This Section:
  - 1. Webcast Communicator or Webcast Capable Device.
  
- D. Related Requirements:
  - 1. Section 01 6400: Owner will furnish Webcast Communicator or Webcast Capable Device such as personal computer or laptop. This Section establishes quality of materials and installation for information of Contractor, Architect, and Owner's Representatives.

**1.2 REFERENCES**

- A. Association Publications:
  - 1. Building Industry Consulting Service International (BISCI):
    - a. *Information Transport Systems Installation Methods Manual (ITSIMM)* (5<sup>th</sup> Edition).
    - b. *Telecommunications Distribution Methods Manual (TDMM)* (12<sup>th</sup> Edition).
  - 2. InfoComm International Association:
    - a. *Audiovisual Best Practices: The Design & Integration Process for the AV and Construction Industries*.
    - b. *AV Design Reference Manual* (1st Edition, 2006).
    - c. *Basics of Audio and Visual Systems Design* (2003).
  - 3. Institute of Electrical and Electronics Engineers:
    - a. IEEE 1100-2005, '*Recommended Practice for Powering and Grounding Electric Equipment*'.
  
- B. Reference Standards:
  - 1. American National Standards Institute/InfoComm International Association:
    - a. ANSI/INFOCOMM 1M:2009, 'Audio Coverage Uniformity in Enclosed Listener Areas'.
    - b. ANSI/INFOCOMM 2M:2010, 'Standard Guide for Audiovisual Systems Design and Coordination Processes'.
    - c. ANSI/INFOCOMM 4:2012, 'Audiovisual Systems Energy Management'.
  - 2. National Fire Protection Association:

- a. NFPA 70, 'National Electrical Code (NEC)' (2017 or most recent edition adopted by AHJ).
- b. NFPA 72, 'National Fire Alarm and Signaling Code' (2019 or most recent edition adopted by AHJ).
- 3. Telecommunications Industry Association:
  - a. TIA-568.2, 'Balanced Twisted-Pair Telecommunications Cabling and Components Standards' (Revision D, 2018).
  - b. TIA-569, 'Telecommunications Pathways And Spaces' (Revision D, 2015).
  - c. TIA-606, 'Administration Standard for Telecommunications Infrastructure' (Revision C, 2017).
  - d. TIA-607, 'Telecommunications Bonding and Grounding (Earthling) for Customer Premises' (Revision C, 2015).
  - e. TIA-758, 'Customer-Owned Outside Plant Telecommunication Infrastructure Standard' (Revision B, 2012).
- 4. Underwriters Laboratories (UL):
  - a. UL 486A-486B, 'Wire Connectors' (3rd Edition April 2018).

### 1.3 ADMINISTRATIVE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Coordination:
  - 1. Coordinate final inspection schedule of audio systems before Audiovisual Consultant's final inspection.
- B. Schedule:
  - 1. After completion of audio system installation of this section, Installer to perform Field Testing before Audiovisual Consultant Final Inspection of audio system.
  - 2. Notify Audiovisual Consultant two (2) weeks minimum before Audiovisual Consultant's final inspection as specified in Field Quality Control in Part 3 of this specification.

### 1.4 SUBMITTALS

- A. Informational Submittals:
  - 1. Special Procedure Submittals:
    - a. Provide itemized list of equipment to be supplied.
    - b. Provide proposed labeling for system components.
  - 2. Qualification Statement:
    - a. Installer:
      - 1) Provide Qualification documentation as requested by Engineer/Architect including:
        - a) List of Projects requested.
        - b) List of certified technician(s) with dates of training courses completed.
- B. Closeout Submittals:
  - 1. Include following in Operations And Maintenance Manual specified in Section 01 7800:
    - a. Operations and Maintenance Data:
      - 1) Equipment Manufacturer's manual:
        - a) Audio system operation and maintenance instructions.
        - b) List of equipment provided, including portable equipment, showing make, model, and serial number.
    - b. Warranty Documentation:
      - 1) Include copy of final, executed warranty.
    - c. Record Documentation:
      - 1) Software and Programming: Copies of all manufacturers' software used for programming various components and functions of the system shall be furnished to the Owner:
        - a) Original audio processor program files, source codes and compiled codes used for system control, audio setup and any other computerized functions of system including screen layout generation, configuration and layouts and any other related computer files shall also be furnished to Owner.



- b) In each and every case, all programming, code generation, configuration files, layout files and any other software and/or code written and generated of setup and operation of this system are property of Owner of system and not of Audiovisual Consultant, Contractor or Integrator.

## 1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Regulatory Agency Sustainability Approvals:
  1. System shall be installed in accordance with applicable standards, requirements, and recommendations of International Building Code, National Electrical Code and all local authorities having jurisdiction.
- B. Qualifications:
  1. Installer. Requirements of Section 01 4301 applies, but not limited to following:
    - a. Approved Installers:
      - 1) Installers are to furnish and install components of audio system and meet qualification requirements.
      - 2) Approval subject to agreement process for Pre-Approval Installers.
    - b. Alternate Installer(s):
      - 1) Firm specializing in performing work of this section:
        - a) Minimum three (3) years of successful installation experience of AV system projects of comparable size, and complexity required for this project. Audio systems must have included complete installation and setup work and must have been completed by factory trained and certified technician.
        - b) Firm successfully completed minimum of three (3) projects in past two (2) years before bidding.
        - c) Firms must have certified technician that has successfully completed all relevant training courses recommended by manufacturers and proficient of all specified equipment of this section.
        - d) Comply with specifications and Contract Documents.
      - 2) Submit documentation of compliance of qualifications before bid to Architect or Owner's Representative.
    - c. Same Approved Installer shall furnish and install components of Section 27 1116 'Communications Cabinets, Racks, Frames and Enclosures'.

## 1.6 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Delivery And Acceptance Requirements:
  1. Materials shall be delivered in original, unopened packages with labels intact.
- B. Storage And Handling Requirements:
  1. Provide secure location protected from weather in cool, dry location, out of direct sunlight in compliance with Manufacturer's instructions and recommendations.
  2. Keep materials free from dirt and foreign matter.

## 1.7 WARRANTY

- A. Special Warranty:
  1. Provide complete warranty repair or replacement for one (1) year at no cost to Owner, except in case of obvious abuse.
  2. If failure causes audio system to be inoperative or unusable for its intended purpose, Installer, when notified of problem shall repair system within five (5) days so it will be operational and usable. If defective components cannot be repaired in time, furnish and install temporary loaner equipment as required.
  3. Honor component warranties for term established by Manufacturer, if greater than one (1) year.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 OWNER-FURNISHED PRODUCTS

- A. Category Four Approved Products. See Section 01 6200 for definitions of Categories:
1. Webcast Communicator or Webcast Capable Device.

### 2.2 SYSTEM

- A. Manufacturers Contact List:
1. Category Four components as shown on Drawings from following Manufacturers. See Section 01 6200 for definition of Categories.
    - a. Atlas Sound, Phoenix, AZ [www.atlassound.com](http://www.atlassound.com).
    - b. Audio-Technica US Inc, Stow, OH [www.audio-technica.com](http://www.audio-technica.com).
    - c. Belden Wire & Cable Co, Richmond, IN [www.belden.com](http://www.belden.com).
    - d. BSS Audio, Sandy, UT [www.bssaudio.com](http://www.bssaudio.com).
    - e. Chatsworth, Westlake Village, CA [www.chatsworth.com](http://www.chatsworth.com).
    - f. Community Professional Loudspeakers, Chester, PA [www.communitypro.com](http://www.communitypro.com).
    - g. COMTEK Inc, Salt Lake City, UT [www.comtek.com](http://www.comtek.com).
    - h. Conquest Sound Co, Tinley Park, IL [www.conquestsound.com](http://www.conquestsound.com).
    - i. Crown Audio Inc, Elkhart, IN [www.crownaudio.com](http://www.crownaudio.com).
    - j. Countryman, Menlo Park, CA [www.countryman.com](http://www.countryman.com).
    - k. EIKI International, Laguna Niguel, CA [www.eiki.com](http://www.eiki.com).
    - l. Electro-Voice Inc, Burnsville, MN [www.electro-voice.com](http://www.electro-voice.com).
    - m. Emtech Electronics Inc, Orem, UT [www.emtechelectronics.com](http://www.emtechelectronics.com).
    - n. Extron, Anaheim, CA [www.extron.com](http://www.extron.com).
    - o. HellermannTyton, Milwaukee, WI [www.hellermann.tyton.com](http://www.hellermann.tyton.com).
    - p. Hubbell Inc, Orange, CT [www.hubbell-wiring.com](http://www.hubbell-wiring.com).
    - q. IVIE Technologies Inc, Lehi, UT [www.ivie.com](http://www.ivie.com).
    - r. JBL Professional, Northridge, CA [www.jblpro.com](http://www.jblpro.com).
    - s. König & Meyer, Wertheim, Germany [www.k-m.de/en](http://www.k-m.de/en).
    - t. Leviton Manufacturing Co, Little Neck, NY [www.leviton.com](http://www.leviton.com).
    - u. Liberty AV Solutions, Colorado Springs, CO [www.libertycable.com](http://www.libertycable.com).
    - v. Lowell Manufacturing Co, Pacific, MO [www.lowellmfg.com](http://www.lowellmfg.com).
    - w. Middle Atlantic Products, Fairfield, NJ [www.middleatlantic.com](http://www.middleatlantic.com).
    - x. Neutrik USA Inc, Lakewood, NJ (732) 901-9488. [www.neutrikusa.com](http://www.neutrikusa.com).
    - y. Newark Electronics, Sola and Triad, Chicago, IL [www.newark.com](http://www.newark.com).
    - z. QSC Audio Products, Costa Mesa, CA [www.qscaudio.com](http://www.qscaudio.com).
    - aa. Radio Design Labs, Carpinteria, CA [www.rdlnet.com](http://www.rdlnet.com).
    - bb. Rane Corp, Mukilteo, WA [www.rane.com](http://www.rane.com).
    - cc. Shure Brothers, Evanston, IL [www.shure.com](http://www.shure.com).
    - dd. SoundTech, Mundelein, IL [www.soundtech.com](http://www.soundtech.com).
    - ee. Soundtube Entertainment, Park City, UT [www.soundtube.com](http://www.soundtube.com).
    - ff. Surgex, Knightdale, NC [www.surgex.com](http://www.surgex.com).
    - gg. Switchcraft, Chicago, IL [www.switchcraft.com](http://www.switchcraft.com).
    - hh. TOA Electronics, South San Francisco, CA [www.toaelectronics.com](http://www.toaelectronics.com).
    - ii. TV One, Erlanger, KY [www.tvone.com](http://www.tvone.com).
    - jj. Whirlwind Music Distributors, Inc., Rochester, NY [www.whirlwindusa.com](http://www.whirlwindusa.com).
    - kk. Wireworks Corp, Hillside, NJ [www.wireworks.com](http://www.wireworks.com).
- B. Performance:
1. Capabilities:
    - a. Installations with audio DSP shall meet following performance parameters:
      - 1) From 100 Hz to 2 kHz, flat within plus or minus 2 dB.
      - 2) Above 2 kHz, slope down along an approximate 3 dB per octave slope to 8 kHz.
    - b. No noise, hum, RFI pickup or distortion shall be audible under normal operating conditions.
    - c. Audio systems shall reproduce program material at level of 80 to 85 dBA without audible distortion.

- d. All input levels shall be pre-set so system may be operated without going into feedback under normal conditions.
- C. System Requirements:
1. General:
    - a. Provide complete and fully functional audio systems using materials and equipment of types, sizes, ratings, and performances as indicated in equipment list in accompanying drawings:
      - 1) Use materials and equipment that comply with referenced standards and manufacturers' standard design and construction in accordance with published product information.
      - 2) Coordinate features of materials and equipment so they form integrated system with components and interconnections matched for optimum performance of specified functions.
  2. Provide all wire, cable, and connectors as required to complete installation of all systems as designed and specified.
- D. Equipment And Materials:
1. General:
    - a. Provide equipment selected from equipment list on drawings, or as substituted following proscribed substitution process, using all solid state components fully rated for continuous duty at ratings indicated or specified.
    - b. Select equipment for normal operation on input power supplied at 105 130 V, 60 Hz.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 INSTALLERS

- A. Approved Installers:
1. Category Four Approved Installers. See Section 01 6200 for definitions of Categories:
    - a. Qualifications:
      - 1) Meet qualification requirements as specified in Quality Assurance in Part 1 of this specification.
    - b. General Communications: (801) 266-5731.
    - c. Marshall Industries: (801) 266-2428.
    - d. Poll Sound: (801) 261-2500.
    - e. Professional Systems Technology: (801) 649-6696.

### 3.2 EXAMINATION

- A. Verification Of Conditions:
1. Verify compliance with following items before beginning work of this Section:
    - a. No cables spliced.
    - b. Isolated ground run back to electrical panel from all equipment cabinets.
    - c. Specified conduit, cables, speaker enclosures and equipment cabinets are properly installed.
    - d. Location and angle of speaker cabinets.
  2. Ensure that no solid structural or decorative member impedes sound propagation from speakers and that no member with cross section greater than **3/4 inch (19 mm)** is placed in front of speakers.
  3. Verify installation of fiberglass insulation in field-fabricated speaker enclosures.

### 3.3 INSTALLATION

- A. General:
1. Install system in accordance with NFPA 70 'National Electrical Code', NFPA 72 'National Fire Alarm and Signaling', and other applicable codes. Install equipment in accordance with manufacturer's written instructions.

- B. Mounting And Securing Equipment:
1. Equipment shall be firmly secured in place unless requirements of portability dictate otherwise.
  2. Fastenings and supports shall be adequate to support their loads with safety factor of at least three (3) times weight of equipment being installed.
  3. Any structural mounting that is not able to meet this requirement due to specific nature of equipment, manufacturer's requirements or limitations of facility, shall not be installed without prior approval of Engineer.
  4. Install all boxes, equipment, hardware, and other materials plumb, level, and square.
- C. Millwork:
1. Install technology equipment and support equipment in podium and other millwork in neat and cosmetically dressed out manner.
  2. Saw cuts, holes and recesses into laminates and woodwork shall be straight.
  3. Radius and circular cuts shall be consistent, and all uneven surfaces shall be corrected. This shall include use of moldings, grommets, bushings, laminates, and wood products as required to dress out installation of equipment.
  4. Install equipment and panels in technology racks and podiums using matching screws, hardware and grommets.
- D. Speakers:
1. Maintain uniform polarity in speakers and wiring.
  2. Employ no positive stop in rotation of speaker volume controls. Controls shall be capable of continuous rotations in either direction.
  3. Mount transformers with screws securely to speaker brackets or enclosures. Adjust torsion springs as necessary to securely support speaker assembly.
  4. Neatly mount speaker grilles, panels, connector plates, control panels, etc., tight, plumb, and square unless indicated otherwise on drawings.
  5. Provide brackets, screws, adapters, springs, rack mounting kits, etc, recommended by manufacturer for correct assembly and installation of speaker assemblies and electronic components.
  6. Line factory-fabricated speaker back boxes with **one inch (25 mm)** minimum fiberglass if not done by Back box Manufacturer.
  7. Speaker Back Boxes shall be secured to structure using **12 ga (2.7 mm)** minimum seismic safety cables.
- E. Technology:
1. Provide sufficient ventilation for adequate cooling of equipment.
  2. Install vent rack panels in unused spaces. Install vent panels at top and bottom and above each power amplifier.
  3. Securely fasten equipment plumb and square in place. Where equipment is installed in rack cabinets, utilize all fastening holes and cove open spaces with perforated panels.
  4. Securely fasten relays and small components. Do not use sticky-back tape for fasteners.
  5. Install balancing transformer on each unbalanced input or output that connects to devices outside equipment cabinet, or that connects to balanced input or output within equipment cabinet.
  6. Connect powered components to 120 VAC outlets on transient voltage surge suppressors. Do not connect to outlets on other components.
  7. Leave sufficient service loops to uniform length on cables to allow operation of system with chassis outside cabinet.
  8. Equipment shall be held firmly in place with proper types of mounting hardware as recommended and/or supplied by manufacturer:
    - a. Mounting hardware provided with equipment shall be used when practical. This shall include, but not be limited to, front and rear rack rails, angle brackets and rack mount kits.
    - b. Equipment shall be installed so as to provide reasonable safety to operator.
- F. Cables, Wires, And Connectors:
1. Cables:
    - a. Cable and wire shall be new and unspliced.
    - b. Splicing:
      - 1) Splicing of cables and conductors is expressly prohibited in any location other than equipment racks.

- 2) Splicing of control and speaker level conductors shall be accomplished via punch block or terminal strip connections only.
  - c. Additional cable length shall be provided at all connector locations. Duplex box, junction box, and floor box locations shall be installed with sufficient cable length behind cover plates to permit wiring maintenance and connector replacement in the future.
  - d. When cable runs utilize vertical cable raceways located within walls, acoustic integrity of walls shall be maintained:
    - 1) Cables that pass-through cover plates of junction boxes and raceways, through slab-to-slab walls, and through conduit lines shall be properly gasketed and sealed. Acoustic material shall be restored or replaced.
  - e. Separation between system cables and other services shall be maximized to prevent and/or minimize potential for electro-magnetic interference (EMI):
    - 1) Provide at least **12 inches (305 mm)** separation from electrical lines whenever feasible.
    - 2) Where separation is unavoidable, distribution cables shall cross other services at right angles whenever practical to minimize EMI.
  - f. Do not install signal cables on top of light fixtures, ceiling speakers, projection screens, HVAC controls or sensing devices, fire safety and sprinkler system detection technology, or any other technology or mechanical equipment.
  - g. Do not lay cables directly on top of T-bar grid ceiling tiles:
    - 1) Support cables installed outside of conduit at **4 feet (1.20 m)** maximum intervals from building structure.
    - 2) Do not utilize support wires from other trades or systems.
  - h. Install system cables shall not block access to other equipment or services, across removable service panels and/or in any other manner to prohibit routine maintenance of HVAC systems, fire safety equipment and building mechanical control systems.
  - i. Inter-rack cabling:
    - 1) Inter-rack cabling shall be neatly laced, dressed, strain relieved and adequately supported.
    - 2) Inter-rack cables shall be grouped according to signals being carried to reduce signal contamination. Separate groups shall be formed for following:
      - a) Power.
      - b) Control.
      - c) Audio cables carrying signals less than -20 dBm.
      - d) Audio cables carrying signals between -20 dBm and +20 dBm.
      - e) Audio cables carrying signals over +20 dBm.
  - j. Power cables, control cables, and high-level cables shall be run on left side of equipment racks as viewed from rear. All other cables shall be run on right side of all equipment racks as viewed from rear.
  - k. Cables, shall be cut to length dictated by cable run.
  - l. Terminal blocks, boards, strips or connectors, shall be furnished by installer for all cables which interface with racks, cabinets, consoles, or equipment modules. Affix terminal blocks, boards, strips or connectors to equipment racks using screws only. Double sided tape will not be accepted.
  - m. Shields for audio cables shall be grounded at input end only of various equipment items on system to prevent potential for ground loops.
  - n. Shields for microphone cables shall be grounded at both ends to allow Phantom Power to pass.
  - o. Where AV cable is installed in areas that are exposed to view of end users, install AV cable and associated power cables inside nylon braided sleeving (wire loom):
    - 1) Examples of such areas include, but are not limited to cables installed to projectors and monitors, and cables installed to devices in/on lecterns such as touch panels and document cameras.
    - 2) Where security cables are specified for physical security to such devices, install the specified security cables inside nylon braided sleeving along with AV cables.
2. Wiring and Cabling:
    - a. Comply with industry standard circuit polarity and loudspeaker wiring polarity. No cables shall be terminated with polarity reversal between connectors at either end.
    - b. System wire, after being cut and stripped, shall have wire strands twisted back to their original lay and be terminated by approved soldered or mechanical means. No bare wire ends shall be accepted.

- c. Do not place any wires and cables for this system in any conduit, raceway, wire way or cable tray that is used for mechanical systems of building.
  - d. Route all cable and wiring within equipment racks, cabinets and millwork according to function, separating wires of different signal levels (microphone, line level, amplifier output, AV, control, etc.) by as much distance as possible. Neatly arrange, harness and bundle all cable with velcro straps.
  - e. After completion of wiring and cable installation, all trough and box covers shall be notched out and grommetted for clearance of various cable bundles, (i.e., separate audio, and control). Panel covers shall be screwed back in place and all gaskets shall be restored or replaced.
3. Connectors:
- a. Provide connectors of type and quality as detailed in Contract Drawings and/or as required to meet minimum bandwidth requirements of equipment to which connectors are terminated. Overall quantity of connectors shall not be limited by quantities indicated in Contract Drawings and shall be provided as required.
  - b. No connectors shall be installed in non-accessible locations or used for splicing cables. Connectors shall be new.
  - c. Connectors shall incorporate strain relief mechanisms which firmly grip the jacket of connected cables.
  - d. Connectors shall be properly polarized to prevent improper seating.
  - e. Connectors shall provide appropriate electrical characteristics for circuitry to which they are attached.
  - f. Exposed conductors inside of equipment racks shall be dressed with heavy duty neoprene heat-shrink tubing.
  - g. Heat-shrink type tubing shall be used to insulate and dress ends of all wire and cables including separate tube for ground or drain wire.
  - h. Solder connections shall be made with rosin-core solder. Temperature controlled soldering irons rated at least 60 watts shall be used for all soldering work. No soldering guns, gas or butane, or temperature unregulated irons shall be used on job site.
  - i. Mechanical connections shall be made with approved crimp lugs of correct size and type for connection. Wire nuts shall not be permitted except inside speaker enclosures. Each connector shall be attached with proper size controlled-duty-cycle ratcheting crimp tool approved by manufacturer.
  - j. Conventional non-ratcheting type crimping tools are unacceptable, and shall not be used on job site. Presence of such tools on job site shall constitute evidence of mechanical connections made with unauthorized tools and shall provide sufficient grounds for rejection of all mechanical connections in system, and will be considered non-conforming work.
- G. Equipment Cabinet:
1. Install vent panels at top and bottom of equipment cabinets and between components where possible for maximum ventilation. Locate amplifiers at top of cabinet. Locate equalizers below amplifiers, separated by several vent panels.
  2. Securely fasten equipment plumb and square in place. Utilize all fastening holes in front of cabinet.
  3. Securely fasten in place equipment that is not rack mounted, including relays and other small components. Do not use sticky-back tape.
  4. Install balancing / isolation transformer when balanced and unbalanced components are connected.
  5. Wire XLR-type connections with pin 2 hot, pin 1 shield.
  6. Connect powered components to 120 VAC outlets on voltage suppressor power bars. Do not connect to outlets on other components.
  7. Identification:
    - a. Legibly identify user-operated system controls and system input / output jacks using engraved, permanently attached laminated plastic plates or imprinted Lexan labels. Label equipment and controls within equipment cabinets using similar labels or printed labels from a label maker or laser printer.
    - b. Affix label to rack panel inside cabinet listing name and telephone number of installer. Appropriate warranty instructions may be included.

H. Identification And Labeling:

1. Cables, regardless of length, shall be identified with machine-printed wrap-around labeling system at both ends:
    - a. These labels shall be self-laminating to ensure durability.
    - b. Label format used shall be equal, or better than, system detailed.
  2. There shall be no unmarked cables any place in system.
  3. Marking codes used on cables shall correspond to codes provided with submittals, and/or written documentation of 'Record Drawings'.
  4. Connectors, controls, equipment components, terminal blocks and equipment racks are to be permanently labeled in format approved during submittal process.
  5. Equipment labels are to be permanently engraved in metal. Alternative method shall be approved during submittal process only.
  6. Clearly and permanently label all jacks, controls, connections, and so forth. Embossed or printed label tape shall not be used and is considered unacceptable for this system. Attach labels with double stick tape as required.
  7. Labeling shall be completed prior to acceptance of final system.
- I. Grounding:
1. Provide equipment grounding connections for audio system as indicated. Tighten connections to comply with tightening torques specified in UL Standard 486A-486B to assure permanent and effective grounds.
  2. Ground equipment, conductor, and cable shields to eliminate shock hazard and to eliminate ground loops, common mode returns, noise pickup, cross talk, and other impairments. Provide 5 ohm ground at main equipment location. Measure, record, and report ground resistance.
  3. Provide grounding conductor with green insulation between as indicated on Contract Drawings. Comply with IEEE and TIA standards.
- J. Seismic Bracing:
1. Comply with IBC and local seismic requirements for all equipment and conduit pathways.

### 3.4 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Field Tests:
1. Installer Testing:
    - a. After completion of installation but before inspection by Audiovisual Consultant, perform following:
      - 1) Conduct system tests and make necessary corrections for proper system operation including, but not limited to, following:
        - a) Output level uniformity.
        - b) Polarity.
        - c) Shock, strain excited hum, and oscillation.
        - d) Clipping, hum, noise, and RFI in all system configurations.
        - e) Speaker line impedances.
        - f) Loose parts and poor workmanship or soldering.
      - 2) Sweep speaker systems with high-level sine wave or 1/3 octave pink noise source. Correct causes of buzzes or rattles related to speakers or enclosures. Notify Contractor and Audiovisual Consultant of external causes of buzzes or rattles.
      - 3) Rough Balance: Balance system well enough that it can be used for meetings before final inspection.
    - b. Complete documentation required by Audiovisual Consultant and submit to consultant within five (5) days of Substantial Completion.
- B. Field Inspections:
1. Audiovisual Consultant Inspection And Equalization:
    - a. Coordinate final inspection schedule with Audiovisual Consultant two (2) weeks minimum before Consultant's final inspection.
    - b. Have copy of Installer redlined documents sent to Audiovisual Consultant two (2) weeks minimum to before field inspection.
    - c. Have loose equipment (microphones, cables, etc.) available at time of inspection.
    - d. Assist Audiovisual Consultant in final inspection of completed system.

- e. Assist Audiovisual Consultant in noise isolation testing of folding partitions and office doors.
  - f. Provide following test equipment in good working order:
    - 1) Laptop computer:
      - a) Operating System: Microsoft Window 7.
      - b) Processor: 2 GHz Dual-Core Intel Processor or faster (or compatible).
      - c) RAM: 2 GB or greater.
      - d) Video: Graphics processor with 128 M dedicated video RAM, minimum 1024x768 display or better.
      - e) Sound Hardware: Audio Hardware with OS compatible ASIO, Wav/WDB drivers, sample rate of up to 192kHz and bit-resolutions of up to 32. Bit, or better.
    - 2) 1/3 octave real-time audio spectrum analyzer with SPL meter, and precision microphone.
    - 3) Digitally generated random pink noise generator, 20Hz-20KHz, minimum two (2) hour repetition rate or ten (10) minutes minimum of equivalent signal recorded on compact disc.
    - 4) Direct reading audio impedance meter, minimum three (3) frequencies, and ten (10) percent accuracy.
    - 5) Digital Volt-Ohmmeter.
    - 6) Audio oscillator, variable frequency, 20Hz-20KHz.
    - 7) MP3 player with pre-recorded speech and music program material.
    - 8) Necessary chargers, cables, test leads, adapters, and other accessories for test equipment.
    - 9) Tools and spare parts for making adjustments and corrections to system.
    - 10) CAT-5 / RJ-45 continuity tester similar to Ideal 62-200 or Amprobe DCT-300.
  - g. Correct minor items so Audiovisual Consultant may certify satisfactory completion during his visit.
- C. Non-Conforming Work:
- 1. Correct any work found defective or not complying with contract document requirements at no additional cost to the Owner.
- D. Manufacturer Services:
- 1. Provide services of factory authorized service representative to supervise field assembly and connection of components and pretesting, testing, and adjustment of system.

### 3.5 CLEANING

- A. Waste Management:
- 1. All work areas are to be kept clean, clear and free of debris at all times.
  - 2. Disposal of rubbish, debris, and packaging materials to Contractor provided Dumpster.

**END OF SECTION**



**SECTION 28 3101****FIRE DETECTION AND ALARM SYSTEM****PART 1 - GENERAL****1.1 SUMMARY**

- A. Includes But Not Limited To:
  - 1. Furnish and install fire alarm and detection system as described in Contract Documents.
  - 2. Furnish and install raceway, cable and conductors, boxes, and miscellaneous items necessary for complete system.
- B. Products Furnished But Not Installed Under This Section:
  - 1. Door Plates for door hold / release devices.
- C. Related Requirements:
  - 1. Division 21: Furnishing and installing of water flow switches, post indicating valves, valve tamper switches, and low air pressure switch.
  - 2. Section 23 0933: Furnishing and installing of duct smoke detectors in main return air ducts.
  - 3. Division 26: Quality of and installation standards for wiring, raceway, conduit, and boxes.

**1.2 REFERENCES**

- A. Reference Standards:
  - 1. National Fire Protection Association:
    - a. NFPA 72, 'National Fire Alarm and Signaling Code' (2019 or most recent edition adopted by AHJ).
  - 2. Underwriters Laboratories:
    - a. UL 268, 'Smoke Detectors for Fire Alarm Systems'.
    - b. UL 464, 'Audible Signal Appliances'.
    - c. UL 521, 'Heat Detectors for Fire Protective Signaling Systems'.
    - d. UL 864, 'Control Units and Accessories for Fire Alarm Systems'.
    - e. UL 1480, 'Speakers for Fire Alarm, Emergency, and Commercial and Professional'.
    - f. UL 1481, 'Power Supplies for Fire-Protective Signaling Systems'.
    - g. UL 1971, 'Standard for Signaling Devices for the Hearing Impaired'.

**1.3 SUBMITTALS**

- A. Action Submittals:
  - 1. Shop Drawings:
    - a. Prepared by authorized factory representative and including:
      - 1) Single line diagram of actual system. Typical riser diagrams are not acceptable.
      - 2) Complete wiring diagrams.
      - 3) Manufacturer's original catalog data and descriptive information on each piece of equipment to be used.
- B. Informational Submittals:
  - 1. Certificates:
    - a. Certificate of completion, from Manufacturer's Representative, in accordance with NFPA 72 requirements.
  - 2. Qualification Statement:
    - a. Installer:

- 1) Provide NICET Certification documentation.
- C. Closeout Submittals:
1. Include following information in Operations And Maintenance Manual specified in Section 01 7800:
    - a. Operations and Maintenance Data:
      - 1) Provide operating and maintenance instructions for each item of equipment submitted under Product Data.
      - 2) Provide instruction manual from Manufacturer that explains what is to be done in event of various indications.
    - b. Record Documentation:
      - 1) Include copy of approved shop drawings.

## 1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Regulatory Agency Sustainability Approvals:
1. System shall meet approval of authority having jurisdiction (AHJ). NEC and local ordinances and regulations shall govern unless more stringent requirements are specified.
  2. Equipment, devices, and cable shall be UL or Factory Mutual listed for use in fire alarm systems.
- B. Qualifications:
1. Installer:
    - a. Project Forman or Person in Charge at all times to be NICET Level III Certified for work performed by this Section.
    - b. Provide Certificate documentation before installation.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 SYSTEMS

- A. Manufacturers:
1. Type One Acceptable Manufacturers:
    - a. Fire-Lite Alarms, Northford, CT [www.firelite.com](http://www.firelite.com).
    - b. Mircom / Summit Systems Technologies, Cheektowaga (Buffalo), NY, Vaughan (Toronto), Ontario [www.mircom.com](http://www.mircom.com) / [www.summit-st.net](http://www.summit-st.net).
    - c. Potter Electric Signal Company, St. Louis, MO [www.pottersignal.com](http://www.pottersignal.com).
    - d. Silent Knight Security Systems, Northford CT [www.silentknight.com](http://www.silentknight.com).
    - e. Equal as approved by Architect before bidding. See Section 01 6200.
- B. Performance:
1. Design Criteria:
    - a. Automatic fire alarm system consisting of control panel, power supplies, alarm initiating devices, notification appliances, and off-site communicating devices. System shall be non-coded and addressable, and monitored for integrity of conductors.
    - b. Class A loop type initiating device circuits and Class A loop type notification appliance circuits.
    - c. Class B initiating device circuits and Class B notification appliance circuits including end-of-line devices.
    - d. Equipment and accessories furnished under this Specification shall be standard products of single manufacturer, or include written statement by Control Panel Manufacturer confirming compatibility of components and inclusion of these components under system warranty.
- C. Operation:
1. Operation Sequences:

- a. Operation of manual station or automatic activation of any smoke detector, heat detector, or sprinkler flow device shall:
    - 1) Cause system notification appliances to operate.
    - 2) Indicate zone in alarm on control panel.
    - 3) Initiate off-site alarm notification system.
    - 4) Indicate zone or device in alarm on remote annunciator.
  - b. System shall return to normal when operated device is returned to normal and control panel is manually reset, except alarms may be silenced as specified below.
  - c. Alarm may be silenced by switch in control panel.
    - 1) Ring Back Feature: When silenced, this shall not prevent the resounding of subsequent alarms if another zone should alarm.
  - d. When alarms are silenced, zone indicating red LEDs on control panel and remote annunciator shall remain indicated until operated device is returned to normal and control panel is manually reset.
  - e. Green pilot LED, or other visual annunciation, shall normally be on indicating that system is receiving normal power. In addition, failure of normal power shall be annunciated.
  - f. Trouble alarm and annunciation, operating together, shall signal trouble condition. Following conditions shall signal trouble condition:
    - 1) Failure of normal power.
    - 2) Opens or short circuits on indicating circuits.
    - 3) Disarrangements in system wiring.
    - 4) Control panel circuit board removal.
    - 5) Ground faults.
    - 6) Trouble silencing switch shall silence trouble alarm, but visual annunciation shall remain on until system is restored to normal. As ring-back feature, trouble alarm shall resound as reminder to return silencing switch to normal position.
  - g. Supervisory LED, separate from trouble LED, and alarm, operating together, shall signal operation of supervisory device, such as control valve tamper, low air pressure, and low temperature switches. Alarm silence switch shall operate in same manner as trouble alarm.
- D. Components:
1. Control Panel:
    - a. Listed under UL Standard 864.
    - b. Solid-state design with flush or semi-flush mounting.
    - c. Control functions shall be behind locked door with annunciating devices visible through door. Single key shall operate all keyed functions in system. Provide three keys.
    - d. Each zone shall be electrically supervised in accordance with wiring style specified.
    - e. Provide integral surge protection.
    - f. Make provisions for connection to off-site alarm notification system including all required programming. Provide separate dry contacts for alarm and supervisory/trouble alarms.
    - g. Power Supply:
      - 1) Provide indication of normal power supply.
      - 2) Loss of normal power shall activate trouble alarm.
      - 3) Meet requirements of and size in accordance with UL Standard 1481 and NFPA 72.
      - 4) Include standby batteries, charger, and automatic transfer equipment.
    - h. Visual Annunciation:
      - 1) Separate indication on each zone for alarm, trouble, or supervisory conditions.
      - 2) Visual indication shall be by LED lights or other easily identifiable method.
      - 3) On zoned system, permanently custom label zones by zone name, not number.
      - 4) Fault or trouble condition on any zone shall not affect any other zone.
    - i. Audible Voice Alarm Annunciation:
      - 1) Alarm signal shall be annunciated by audible voice evacuation message. Message shall be digitally recorded with message content meeting requirements of local code authority. Message shall be field programmable and retained in memory if power is interrupted.
      - 2) Output level shall be adjustable at control panel.
      - 3) Alarm signal shall also operate strobe lights, if specified.
      - 4) Provide alarm silence switches at control panel.
      - 5) Trouble alarm shall be horn integral to control panel.

- 6) Supervisory alarm may be same audible alarm as trouble alarm, but with separate visual annunciation.
2. Off-Site Alarm Notification System:
  - a. Provide one (1) analog telephone lines to fire alarm control panel.
  - b. Install, program and connect cellular communication device furnished by Owner. Coordinate with Owner at least four (4) weeks in advance for equipment delivery.
  - c. Provide dialer system equipment and programming compatible with Owner selected monitoring service (refer to alarm.ldschurch.org for details).
  - d. Owner will arrange for monitoring connection contract.
  - e. Communicator device shall transmit all zone identification, device identification alarm identification, and all other signals available at panel to Owner's Central Station using standard contact ID codes.
  - f. Phone Dialer device shall be of same manufacturer as Fire Alarm Panel or shall be supplied, approved and tested by Fire Alarm Panel Manufacturer.
3. Alarm Initiating Devices:
  - a. Smoke Detectors:
    - 1) Photoelectric type.
    - 2) Listed under UL Standard 268.
    - 3) Provide visual indication of alarm on unit.
  - b. Duct Smoke Detectors:
    - 1) Furnished and Installed by Division 23.
    - 2) Power provided by Division 26.
    - 3) Connect to Fire Detection And Alarm System by this Section.
  - c. Heat Detectors:
    - 1) Non-settable 135 deg F (57 deg C) fixed temperature.
    - 2) Provide visible indication that device has operated.
    - 3) Listed under UL Standard 521.
  - d. Low Building Temperature Device:
    - 1) Set for contact closure at 35 deg F (2 deg C).
    - 2) Type Two Acceptable Products;
      - a) Honeywell T631A1006.
      - b) Equal as approved by Architect before installation. See Section 01 6200.
  - e. Manual Fire Alarm Boxes:
    - 1) Non-coded and double-action requiring two actions to initiate alarm. Breakable glass type is not approved.
    - 2) Box shall mechanically latch when actuated and require key to reset. Key shall match control panel door lock.
4. Notification Appliances:
  - a. Color: White.
  - b. Combination Speaker / Strobe:
    - 1) Wall mounted flush or semi-flush.
    - 2) Audible voice output of 90 dB minimum at 10 feet (3 meters).
    - 3) Integrally mounted flashing light unit with block letters 'FIRE.' Adjustable light intensity of 15-110 candela and flash rate between one and three Hertz, except where higher rated output devices are indicated on Drawings.
    - 4) Listed under UL Standard 1480 and UL Standard 1971.
  - c. Strobe Only:
    - 1) Wall mounted flush or semi-flush.
    - 2) Integrally mounted flashing light unit with block letters 'FIRE.' Adjustable light intensity of 15-110 candela and flash rate between one and three Hertz.
    - 3) Listed under UL Standard 1971.
5. Accessory Devices:
  - a. Notification Appliance Protective Devices: Provide wire guard covers for appliances installed in Cultural Center.
6. Cables And Wiring:
  - a. Comply with NEC Article 760.
  - b. Jacket and insulation color shall be red.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 INSTALLATION

- A. Install fire alarm and detection systems as indicated, in accordance with Equipment Manufacturer's written instructions, and complying with applicable portions of NEC, NFPA, and NECA's 'Standard of Installation'.
1. Mounting Heights:
    - a. Unless otherwise indicated, mount center of outlets or boxes at following heights above finish floor:
      - 1) Control Panel: 72 inches (1 800 mm) to top.
      - 2) Wall-Mounted Horn / Strobe: 80 inches (2 1032 mm). 6 inches (150 mm) below ceiling, whenever ceiling is below 80 inches (2 1032 mm).
      - 3) Wall-Mounted Strobe: 80 inches (2 1032 mm). 6 inches (150 mm) below ceiling, whenever ceiling is below 80 inches (2 1032 mm).
      - 4) Manual pull stations: 48 inches (1 200 mm).
      - 5) Remote annunciator panel: 60 inches (1 500 mm).
  2. Locate fire alarm manual stations 24 inches (600 mm) minimum away from any light switch.
- B. Identification:
1. Label zone indicators on control unit indicating location and type of initiating device, i.e., CORRIDOR SMOKE, VALVE TAMPER, AIR SYSTEM SMOKE, etc. Labels shall be engraved plastic laminate, or other permanent labeling system as supplied by Control Unit Manufacturer.
  2. Post copy of wire identification list inside fire alarm panel door or other area accessible to fire alarm service personnel.
  3. Print location of circuit disconnecting means inside panel.
- C. Conductors:
1. Install conductors and make connections to water flow switches, valve tamper switches, low air pressure switches, and duct smoke detectors.
  2. Loop wires through each device on zone for proper supervision. Tee-taps not permitted.
  3. Minimum conductor size shall be 14 AWG unless otherwise specified.
- D. Do not install ceiling mounted detectors within 36 inches (900 mm) of air discharge grilles. Do not install manual fire alarm boxes within 24 inches (610 mm) of light switches. Coordinate with other trades as required.

### 3.2 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Field Tests:
1. Provide factory-trained representative to perform complete system testing in presence of Owner's representative and local fire department personnel upon completion of installation.
    - a. Test each initiating and annunciating device for proper operation, except fixed temperature heat detectors.
    - b. Test operation of trouble annunciation on each circuit.
    - c. Perform complete testing of control panel functions including off-site monitoring.

### 3.3 CLOSEOUT ACTIVITIES

- A. Instruction Of Owner:
1. Instruct Owner's Representative in proper operation and maintenance procedures.

**3.4 PROTECTION**

- A. Provide dust protection for installed smoke detectors until finish work is completed and building is ready for occupancy.
- B. Protect conductors from cuts, abrasion and other damage during construction.

**END OF SECTION**

**SECTION 31 0500  
COMMON EARTHWORK REQUIREMENTS**

**PART 1 GENERAL****1.01 SECTION INCLUDES**

- A. General procedures and requirements for earthwork.
- B. Verification of conditions.
- C. Preparation.
- D. Repair and restoration.
- E. Field quality control.

**1.02 RELATED REQUIREMENTS**

- A. Section 01 4000 - Quality Requirements: Procedures for testing, inspection, mock-ups, reports, certificates; use of reference standards.
- B. Section 32 9001 - Common Planting Requirements:
  - 1. Pre-installation conference held jointly with other landscape related sections.

**1.03 REFERENCES**

- A. Definitions:
  - 1. Aggregate Base: Layer of granular material immediately below concrete and asphalt paving or miscellaneous site concrete (sidewalks, curbs, etc) and below interior concrete slabs on grade.
  - 2. Base: See Aggregate Base.
  - 3. Building Grading: Sloping of grounds immediately adjacent to building. Proper grading causes water to flow away from a structure. Grading can be accomplished either with machinery or by hand.
  - 4. Compacted Fill: Placement of soils on building site placed and compacted per Contract Documents.
  - 5. Excavation: Removal of soil from project site or cavity formed by cutting, digging or scooping on project site.
  - 6. Fine Grading (FG): Preparation of subgrade preceding placement of surfacing materials (any aggregate base and topsoil) for contour of building site required. Fine Grading is conducted to ensure that earth forms and surfaces have been properly shaped and subgrade has been brought to correct elevations. It is performed after rough grading and placement of any complicated fill but before placement of aggregate base or topsoil.
  - 7. Finish Grading: Completed surface elevation of landscaping areas for seeding, sodding and planting on building site.
  - 8. Natural Grade: Undisturbed natural surface of ground.
  - 9. Rough Grading (RG): Grading, leveling, moving, removal, and placement of existing or imported soil to its generally required location and elevation. Cut and fill is part of rough grading.
  - 10. Subgrade (definition varies depending upon stage of construction and context of work being performed):
    - a. Prepared natural soils on which fill, aggregate base, or topsoil is placed OR
    - b. Prepared soils immediately beneath paving, sidewalks or topsoil.
  - 11. Topsoil Placement and Grading: Topsoil placement and finish grading work required to prepare site for installation of landscaping.

**1.04 ADMINISTRATIVE REQUIREMENTS**

- A. Consulting Engineers (Civil, Structural, Geotechnical) are to incorporate the requirements of the Geotechnical Evaluation Report for site specific requirements into all specification sections found in Division 31 and 32 as part of the design process.

- B. Preinstallation Meeting: Schedule meeting after completion of site clearing but no less than one week before beginning grading work for all affected installers.
  - 1. Include a review of:
    - a. Geotechnical Evaluation Report
    - b. Earthwork schedule.
      - 1) Site clearing.
      - 2) Earth moving
    - c. Field tests and inspection requirements.
    - d. Review Landscape Grading requirements.
    - e. Termite control application requirements.
  - 2. Include a review of items that occur before pre-installation conference for landscape sections:
    - a. Clearing and grubbing requirements.
    - b. Topsoil stripping and stockpiling requirements.
    - c. Landscape grading requirements.
    - d. Landscape finish grade tolerance requirements.
    - e. Landscape and plant tolerances.
    - f. Surface preparation of landscape and planting areas.
- C. Pre-installation meeting for landscape sections as specification in Section 32 9001:
  - 1. Schedule meeting after completion of Fine Grading, but one week minimum before beginning landscape work and held jointly with following sections:
    - a. Section 32 8423 - Underground Sprinklers: No Controllers.
    - b. Section 32 9120 - Topsoil and Placement.
    - c. Section 32 9122 - Topsoil Grading.
    - d. Section 32 9219 - Seeding
    - e. Section 32 9223 - Sodding.
    - f. Section 32 9300 - Plants.
  - 2. Post-installation meeting: Review that following landscape items have been installed correctly:
    - a. Topsoil placement.
    - b. Topsoil surface preparation.
    - c. Topsoil depth.
    - d. Landscape finish grade tolerances.
    - e. Surface preparation of landscape and planting areas.

## **PART 2 PRODUCTS - NOT USED**

## **PART 3 EXECUTION**

### **3.01 EXAMINATION**

- A. Verification of Conditions:
  - 1. Contact Underground Service Alert to arrange for utility location services forty-eight (48) hours, minimum, before performing any work on site.
  - 2. Perform minor, investigative excavations to verify location of various existing underground facilities at sufficient locations to assure that no conflict with the proposed work exists and sufficient clearance is available to avoid damage to existing facilities.
  - 3. Perform investigative excavating ten (10) days, minimum, in advance of performing any excavation or underground work.
  - 4. Notify Architect by phone or fax within twenty-four (24) hours upon discovery of conflicts or problems with existing facilities. Follow telephone or fax notification with letter and diagrams indicating conflict or problem with sufficient measurements and details to evaluate problem.

### **3.02 PREPARATION**

- A. Protection:



1. Spillage:
  - a. Avoid spillage by covering and securing loads when hauling on or adjacent to public streets or highways.
  - b. Remove spillage and sweep, wash, or otherwise clean project, streets, and highways.
2. Dust Control:
  - a. Take precautions necessary to prevent dust nuisance, both on-site and adjacent to public and private properties.
  - b. Correct or repair damage caused by dust.
3. Existing Plants And Features:
  - a. Do not damage tops, trunks, and roots of existing trees and shrubs on site that are intended to remain.
  - b. Do not use heavy equipment within branch spread.
  - c. Interfering branches may be removed only with permission of Architect.
  - d. Do not damage other plants and features that are to remain.

### **3.03 REPAIR / RESTORATION**

- A. Adjust existing covers, boxes, and vaults to grade.
- B. Replace broken or damaged covers, boxes, and vaults.
- C. Independently confirm size, location, and number of covers, boxes, and vaults that require adjustment.

### **3.04 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL**

- A. See Section 01 4000 - Quality Requirements, for additional requirements.
- B. Owner is responsible for Quality Assurance: Quality Assurance performed by Owner will be used to validate Quality Control by Contractor. Refer to Section 31 2323 Part 3 for subgrade, fill and aggregate base testing and inspection requirements.
  1. Quality Control is sole responsibility of Contractor.
  2. Testing and inspection of earthwork operations is required.
  3. Notify Architect if weather, scheduling, or any other circumstance has interrupted work, twenty-four (24) hours minimum, before intended resumption of work.
- C. Non-Conforming Work:
  1. If specified protection precautions are not taken or corrections and repairs not made promptly, Owner may take such steps as may be deemed necessary and deduct costs of such from monies due to Contractor. Such action or lack of action on Owner's part does not relieve Contractor from responsibility for proper protection of The Work.

**END OF SECTION**

BLANK PAGE

**SECTION 31 1000  
SITE CLEARING****PART 1 GENERAL****1.01 SUMMARY**

- A. This Section includes the following:
  - 1. Protecting existing trees, shrubs, groundcovers, plants and grass to remain.
  - 2. Clearing and grubbing.
  - 3. Stripping and stockpiling topsoil.
  - 4. Removing above- and below-grade site improvements.
  - 5. Disconnecting and capping or sealing site utilities.
  - 6. Temporary erosion and sedimentation control measures.

**1.02 MATERIAL OWNERSHIP**

- A. Except for stripped topsoil or other materials indicated to remain Owner's property, cleared materials shall become Contractor's property and shall be removed from Project site.

**1.03 PROJECT CONDITIONS**

- A. Traffic: Minimize interference with adjoining roads, streets, walks, and other adjacent occupied or used facilities during site-clearing operations.
  - 1. Do not close or obstruct streets, walks, or other adjacent occupied or used facilities without permission from Owner and authorities having jurisdiction.
  - 2. Provide alternate routes around closed or obstructed traffic ways if required by authorities having jurisdiction.
- B. Salvable Improvements: Carefully remove items indicated to be salvaged and store on Owner's premises where indicated.
- C. Utility Locator Service: Notify utility locator service for area where Project is located before site clearing.
- D. Do not commence site clearing operations until temporary erosion and sedimentation control measures are in place.

**PART 2 PRODUCTS****2.01 SOIL MATERIALS**

- A. Satisfactory Soil Materials: Requirements for satisfactory soil materials are specified in Division 31 Section "Earth Moving."
  - 1. Obtain approved borrow soil materials off-site when satisfactory soil materials are not available on-site.

**PART 3 EXECUTION****3.01 PREPARATION**

- A. Protect and maintain benchmarks and survey control points from disturbance during construction.
- B. Locate and clearly flag trees and vegetation to remain or to be relocated.
- C. Protect existing site improvements to remain from damage during construction.
  - 1. Restore damaged improvements to their original condition, as acceptable to Owner.

**3.02 TEMPORARY EROSION AND SEDIMENTATION CONTROL**

- A. Provide temporary erosion and sedimentation control measures to prevent soil erosion and discharge of soil-bearing water runoff or airborne dust to adjacent properties and walkways, according to Sediment and Erosion Control Drawings.
- B. Inspect, repair, and maintain erosion and sedimentation control measures during construction until permanent vegetation has been established.
- C. Remove erosion and sedimentation controls and restore and stabilize areas disturbed during removal.

**3.03 TREE PROTECTION**

- A. Erect and maintain temporary fencing around tree protection zones before starting site clearing. Remove fence when construction is complete.
- B. Do not excavate within tree protection zones, unless otherwise indicated.
- C. Repair or replace trees and vegetation indicated to remain that are damaged by construction operations, in a manner approved by Architect.

**3.04 UTILITIES**

- A. Locate, identify, disconnect, and seal or cap off utilities indicated to be removed.
  - 1. Arrange with utility companies to shut off indicated utilities.

- B. Existing Utilities: Do not interrupt utilities serving facilities occupied by Owner or others unless permitted under the following conditions and then only after arranging to provide temporary utility services according to requirements indicated:

1. Notify Architect not less than two days in advance of proposed utility interruptions.
2. Do not proceed with utility interruptions without Architect's written permission.

**3.05 CLEARING AND GRUBBING**

- A. Fill depressions caused by clearing and grubbing operations with satisfactory soil material unless further excavation or earthwork is indicated.

1. Place fill material in horizontal layers not exceeding a loose depth of 8 inches, and compact each layer to a density equal to adjacent original ground.

**3.06 TOPSOIL STRIPPING**

- A. Remove sod and grass before stripping topsoil.
- B. Strip topsoil to whatever depths are encountered in a manner to prevent intermingling with underlying subsoil or other waste materials.
- C. Stockpile topsoil materials away from edge of excavations without intermixing with subsoil. Grade and shape stockpiles to drain surface water. Cover to prevent windblown dust.

**3.07 SITE IMPROVEMENTS**

- A. Remove existing above- and below-grade improvements as indicated and as necessary to facilitate new construction.

**3.08 DISPOSAL**

- A. Disposal: Remove surplus soil material, unsuitable topsoil, obstructions, demolished materials, and waste materials including trash and debris, and legally dispose of them off Owner's property.
1. Separate recyclable materials produced during site clearing from other nonrecyclable materials. Store or stockpile without intermixing with other materials and transport them to recycling facilities.

**END OF SECTION**

**SECTION 31 1413  
TOPSOIL STRIPPING AND STOCKPILING**

**PART 1 GENERAL****1.01 SUMMARY**

- A. Includes But Not Limited To:
  - 1. Strip and stockpile acceptable topsoil as described in Contract Documents.
- B. Related Requirements:
  - 1. Section 31 0500: 'Common Earthwork Requirements':
    - a. General procedures and requirements for earthwork.
    - b. Pre-installation conference held jointly with other common earthwork related sections.
    - c. Pre-installation conference held jointly with other landscape related sections.
  - 2. Section 31 1000: 'Site Clearing'.
  - 3. Section 31 2200: 'Grading'.
  - 4. Section 31 2316: 'Excavation and Trenching'.
  - 5. Section 32 9001: 'Common Planting Requirements'.
  - 6. Section 32 9120: 'Topsoil And Placement'.
  - 7. Section 32 9122: 'Topsoil Grading'.

**1.02 REFERENCES**

- A. Definitions:
  - 1. Existing topsoil: Defined as total amount of soil stripped and stored for reuse, less vegetation layer stripped and disposed of as specified in Paragraphs below.

**1.03 ADMINISTRATIVE REQUIREMENTS**

- A. Pre-Installation Conference:
  - 1. Participate in pre-installation conferences as specified in Section 31 0500.

**PART 2 PRODUCTS: NOT USED****PART 3 EXECUTION****3.01 PERFORMANCE**

- A. Strip existing vegetation layer (\_\_\_) inches (mm) deep minimum from areas of site to receive buildings, landscaping, and paving and remove from site before stripping topsoil for storage and reuse.
- B. After stripping vegetation layer, strip existing topsoil additional inches (mm) deep minimum from areas of site to receive buildings and paving and store on site for later use.
  - 1. Existing topsoil is property of Contractor with restriction that topsoil is to be used first for Project landscape topsoil requirements and second for non-structural fill and backfill.
  - 2. After Project fill, backfill, and landscape topsoil requirements are satisfied, remove excess existing topsoil from site. Do not remove existing topsoil from site without Architect's written approval.
- C. Screen existing topsoil to meet standards established as specified in Section 32 9120 'Topsoil And Placement'.

**END OF SECTION**

BLANK PAGE

**SECTION 31 2000  
EARTH MOVING****PART 1 GENERAL****1.01 SUMMARY**

- A. This Section includes the following:
  - 1. Preparing subgrades for slabs-on-grade, walks, pavements, lawns and grasses.
  - 2. Excavating and backfilling for buildings and structures.
  - 3. Drainage course for slabs-on-grade.
  - 4. Base course for asphalt paving and concrete pavement and walks.
  - 5. Excavating and backfilling for utility trenches.
- B. Related Sections:
  - 1. Salt Lake City Standards and Specifications for improvements in public Right-of-Way.

**1.02 DEFINITIONS**

- A. Backfill: Soil material used to fill an excavation.
  - 1. Initial Backfill: Backfill placed beside and over pipe in a trench, including haunches to support sides of pipe.
  - 2. Final Backfill: Backfill placed over initial backfill to fill a trench.
- B. Base Course: Course placed between the subbase course and hot-mix asphalt paving and concrete pavement and walks.
- C. Bedding Course: Course placed over the excavated subgrade in a trench before laying pipe.
- D. Borrow Soil: Satisfactory soil imported from off-site for use as fill or backfill.
- E. Drainage Course: Course supporting the slab-on-grade that also minimizes upward capillary flow of pore water.
- F. Excavation: Removal of material encountered above subgrade elevations and to lines and dimensions indicated.
  - 1. Authorized Additional Excavation: Excavation below subgrade elevations or beyond indicated lines and dimensions as directed by Architect. Authorized additional excavation and replacement material will be paid for according to Contract provisions changes in the Work.
  - 2. Unauthorized Excavation: Excavation below subgrade elevations or beyond indicated lines and dimensions without direction by Architect. Unauthorized excavation, as well as remedial work directed by Architect, shall be without additional compensation.
- G. Fill: Soil materials used to raise existing grades.
- H. Structures: Buildings, footings, foundations, retaining walls, slabs, tanks, curbs, mechanical and electrical appurtenances, or other man-made stationary features constructed above or below the ground surface.
- I. Subbase Course: Course placed between the subgrade and base course.
- J. Subgrade: Surface or elevation remaining after completing excavation, or top surface of a fill or backfill immediately below subbase, drainage fill, or topsoil materials.
- K. Utilities: On-site underground pipes, conduits, ducts, and cables, as well as underground services within buildings.

**1.03 PROJECT CONDITIONS**

- A. Existing Utilities: Do not interrupt utilities serving facilities occupied by Owner or others unless permitted in writing by Architect and then only after arranging to provide temporary utility services according to requirements indicated.

**PART 2 PRODUCTS****2.01 SOIL MATERIALS**

- A. General: Provide borrow soil materials when sufficient satisfactory soil materials are not available from excavations.
- B. Satisfactory Soils: ASTM D 2487 Soil Classification Groups GW, GP, GM, SW, SP, and SM or AASHTO M 145 Soil Classification Groups A-1, A-2-4, A-2-5, and A-3, or a combination of these groups; free of rock or gravel larger than 3 inches in any dimension, debris, waste, frozen materials, vegetation, and other deleterious matter.
- C. Unsatisfactory Soils: Soil Classification Groups GC, SC, CL, ML, OL, CH, MH, OH, and PT according to ASTM D 2487 and A-2-6, A-2-7, A-4, A-5, A-6, and A-7 according to AASHTO M 145, or a combination of these groups.

1. Unsatisfactory soils also include satisfactory soils not maintained within 2 percent of optimum moisture content at time of compaction.
- D. Subbase Material: Naturally or artificially graded mixture of crushed gravel, crushed stone, and natural or crushed sand; ASTM D 2940; with at least 90 percent passing a 1-1/2-inch sieve and not more than 12 percent passing a No. 200 sieve.
- E. Base Course: Naturally or artificially graded mixture of crushed gravel, crushed stone, and natural or crushed sand; ASTM D 2940; with at least 95 percent passing a 1-1/2-inch sieve and not more than 12 percent passing a No. 200 sieve.
- F. Engineered Fill: Naturally or artificially graded mixture of natural or crushed gravel, crushed stone, and natural or crushed sand; ASTM D 2940; with at least 90 percent passing a 1-1/2-inch sieve and not more than 12 percent passing a No. 200 sieve.
- G. Bedding Course: Naturally or artificially graded mixture of natural or crushed gravel, crushed stone, and natural or crushed sand; ASTM D 2940; except with 100 percent passing a 1-inch sieve and not more than 8 percent passing a No. 200 sieve.
- H. Drainage Course: Narrowly graded mixture of washed crushed stone, or crushed or uncrushed gravel; ASTM D 448; coarse-aggregate grading Size 57; with 100 percent passing a 1-1/2-inch sieve and 0 to 5 percent passing a No. 8 sieve.

### **PART 3 EXECUTION**

#### **3.01 PREPARATION**

- A. Protect structures, utilities, sidewalks, pavements, and other facilities from damage caused by settlement, lateral movement, undermining, washout, and other hazards created by earthwork operations.
- B. Preparation of subgrade for earthwork operations including removal of vegetation, topsoil, debris, obstructions, and deleterious materials from ground surface is specified in Division 31 Section "Site Clearing."
- C. Protect and maintain erosion and sedimentation controls, which are specified in Division 31 Section "Site Clearing." during earthwork operations.

#### **3.02 EXCAVATION**

- A. Unclassified Excavation: Excavate to subgrade elevations regardless of the character of surface and subsurface conditions encountered. Unclassified excavated materials may include rock, soil materials, and obstructions. No changes in the Contract Sum or the Contract Time will be authorized for rock excavation or removal of obstructions.
  1. If excavated materials intended for fill and backfill include unsatisfactory soil materials and rock, replace with satisfactory soil materials.

#### **3.03 EXCAVATION FOR STRUCTURES**

- A. Excavate to indicated elevations and dimensions within a tolerance of plus or minus 1 inch. If applicable, extend excavations a sufficient distance from structures for placing and removing concrete formwork, for installing services and other construction, and for inspections.
  1. Excavations for Footings and Foundations: Do not disturb bottom of excavation. Excavate by hand to final grade just before placing concrete reinforcement. Trim bottoms to required lines and grades to leave solid base to receive other work.

#### **3.04 EXCAVATION FOR WALKS AND PAVEMENTS**

- A. Excavate surfaces under walks and pavements to indicated lines, cross sections, elevations, and subgrades.

#### **3.05 EXCAVATION FOR UTILITY TRENCHES**

- A. Excavate trenches to indicated gradients, lines, depths, and elevations.
- B. Excavate trenches to uniform widths to provide the following clearance on each side of pipe or conduit. Excavate trench walls vertically from trench bottom to 12 inches higher than top of pipe or conduit, unless otherwise indicated.
  1. Clearance: 12 inches each side of pipe or conduit.
- C. Trench Bottoms: Excavate and shape trench bottoms to provide uniform bearing and support of pipes and conduit. Shape subgrade to provide continuous support for bells, joints, and barrels of pipes and for joints, fittings, and bodies of conduits. Remove projecting stones and sharp objects along trench subgrade.
  1. Excavate trenches 6 inches deeper than elevation required in rock or other unyielding bearing material, 4 inches deeper elsewhere, to allow for bedding course.

#### **3.06 SUBGRADE INSPECTION**

- A. Proof-roll subgrade below the building slabs and pavements with heavy pneumatic-tired equipment to identify soft pockets and areas of excess yielding. Do not proof-roll wet or saturated subgrades.



- B. Reconstruct subgrades damaged by freezing temperatures, frost, rain, accumulated water, or construction activities, as directed by Architect, without additional compensation.

**3.07 UNAUTHORIZED EXCAVATION**

- A. Fill unauthorized excavation under foundations or wall footings by extending bottom elevation of concrete foundation or footing to excavation bottom, without altering top elevation. Lean concrete fill, with 28-day compressive strength of 2500 psi, may be used when approved by Architect.
  - 1. Fill unauthorized excavations under other construction or utility pipe as directed by Architect.

**3.08 STORAGE OF SOIL MATERIALS**

- A. Stockpile borrow soil materials and excavated satisfactory soil materials without intermixing. Place, grade, and shape stockpiles to drain surface water. Cover to prevent windblown dust.
  - 1. Stockpile soil materials away from edge of excavations. Do not store within drip line of remaining trees.

**3.09 UTILITY TRENCH BACKFILL**

- A. Place backfill on subgrades free of mud, frost, snow, or ice.
- B. Place and compact bedding course on trench bottoms and where indicated. Shape bedding course to provide continuous support for bells, joints, and barrels of pipes and for joints, fittings, and bodies of conduits.
- C. Backfill trenches excavated under footings and within 18 inches bottom of footings with satisfactory soil; fill with concrete to elevation of bottom of footings.
- D. Place and compact initial backfill of subbase material, free of particles larger than 1 inch in any dimension, to a height of 12 inches over the utility pipe or conduit.
  - 1. Carefully compact initial backfill under pipe haunches and compact evenly up on both sides and along the full length of utility piping or conduit to avoid damage or displacement of piping or conduit. Coordinate backfilling with utilities testing.
- E. Place and compact final backfill of satisfactory soil to final subgrade elevation.

**3.010 SOIL FILL**

- A. Plow, scarify, bench, or break up sloped surfaces steeper than 1 vertical to 4 horizontal so fill material will bond with existing material.
- B. Place and compact fill material in layers to required elevations as follows:
  - 1. Under grass and planted areas, use satisfactory soil material.
  - 2. Under walks and pavements, use satisfactory soil material.
  - 3. Under steps and ramps, use engineered fill.
  - 4. Under building slabs, use engineered fill.
  - 5. Under footings and foundations, use engineered fill.

**3.011 SOIL MOISTURE CONTROL**

- A. Uniformly moisten or aerate subgrade and each subsequent fill or backfill soil layer before compaction to within 2 percent of optimum moisture content.
  - 1. Do not place backfill or fill soil material on surfaces that are muddy, frozen, or contain frost or ice.
  - 2. Remove and replace, or scarify and air dry otherwise satisfactory soil material that exceeds optimum moisture content by 2 percent and is too wet to compact to specified dry unit weight.

**3.012 COMPACTION OF SOIL BACKFILLS AND FILLS**

- A. Place backfill and fill soil materials in layers not more than 8 inches in loose depth for material compacted by heavy compaction equipment, and not more than 4 inches in loose depth for material compacted by hand-operated tampers.
- B. Place backfill and fill soil materials evenly on all sides of structures to required elevations, and uniformly along the full length of each structure.
- C. Compact soil materials to not less than the following percentages of maximum dry unit weight according to ASTM D 1557:
  - 1. Under structures, building slabs, steps, and pavements, scarify and recompact top 12 inches of existing subgrade and each layer of backfill or fill soil material at 95 percent.
  - 2. Under walkways, scarify and recompact top 6 inches below subgrade and compact each layer of backfill or fill soil material at 95 percent.
  - 3. Under lawn or unpaved areas, scarify and recompact top 6 inches below subgrade and compact each layer of backfill or fill soil material at 85 percent.
  - 4. For utility trenches, compact each layer of initial and final backfill soil material at 95 percent.

**3.013 GRADING**

- A. General: Uniformly grade areas to a smooth surface, free of irregular surface changes. Comply with compaction requirements and grade to cross sections, lines, and elevations indicated.

- B. Site Grading: Slope grades to direct water away from buildings and to prevent ponding. Finish subgrades to required elevations within the following tolerances:
  - 1. Lawn or Unpaved Areas: Plus or minus 1 inch.
  - 2. Walks: Plus or minus 1 inch.
  - 3. Pavements: Plus or minus 1/2 inch.
- C. Grading inside Building Lines: Finish subgrade to a tolerance of 1/2 inch when tested with a 10-foot straightedge.

**3.014 SUBBASE AND BASE COURSES**

- A. Place subbase and base course on subgrades free of mud, frost, snow, or ice.
- B. On prepared subgrade, place subbase and base course under pavements and walks as follows:
  - 1. Shape subbase and base course to required crown elevations and cross-slope grades.
  - 2. Compact subbase and base course at optimum moisture content to required grades, lines, cross sections, and thickness to not less than 95 percent of maximum dry unit weight according to ASTM D 1557.

**3.015 DRAINAGE COURSE**

- A. Place drainage course on subgrades free of mud, frost, snow, or ice.
- B. On prepared subgrade, place and compact drainage course under cast-in-place concrete slabs-on-grade as follows:
  - 1. Place drainage course that exceeds 6 inches in compacted thickness in layers of equal thickness, with no compacted layer more than 6 inches thick or less than 3 inches thick.
  - 2. Compact each layer of drainage course to required cross sections and thicknesses to not less than **95** percent of maximum dry unit weight according to ASTM D 698.

**3.016 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL**

- A. Testing Agency: Owner will engage a qualified independent geotechnical engineering testing agency to perform field quality-control testing.
- B. Allow testing agency to inspect and test subgrades and each fill or backfill layer. Proceed with subsequent earthwork only after test results for previously completed work comply with requirements.
- C. Footing Subgrade: At footing subgrades, at least one test of each soil stratum will be performed to verify design bearing capacities. Subsequent verification and approval of other footing subgrades may be based on a visual comparison of subgrade with tested subgrade when approved by Architect.
- D. Testing agency will test compaction of soils in place according to ASTM D 1556, ASTM D 2167, ASTM D 2922, and ASTM D 2937, as applicable.
- E. When testing agency reports that subgrades, fills, or backfills have not achieved degree of compaction specified, scarify and moisten or aerate, or remove and replace soil to depth required; recompact and retest until specified compaction is obtained.

**3.017 PROTECTION**

- A. Protecting Graded Areas: Protect newly graded areas from traffic, freezing, and erosion. Keep free of trash and debris.
- B. Repair and reestablish grades to specified tolerances where completed or partially completed surfaces become eroded, rutted, settled, or where they lose compaction due to subsequent construction operations or weather conditions.
- C. Where settling occurs before Project correction period elapses, remove finished surfacing, backfill with additional soil material, compact, and reconstruct surfacing.
  - 1. Restore appearance, quality, and condition of finished surfacing to match adjacent work, and eliminate evidence of restoration to greatest extent possible.

**3.018 DISPOSAL OF SURPLUS AND WASTE MATERIALS**

- A. Disposal: Remove surplus satisfactory soil and waste material, including unsatisfactory soil, trash, and debris, and legally dispose of it off Owner's property.

**END OF SECTION**

**SECTION 32 0113****ASPHALT PAVING SURFACE TREATMENT: Asphalt Based Penetrating Seal****PART 1 - GENERAL****1.1 SUMMARY**

- A. Includes But Not Limited To:
1. Furnish and apply asphalt based penetrating seal on existing asphalt paving as described in Contract Documents.
- B. Related Requirements:
1. Section 01 1200: 'Multiple Contract Summary' for multiple contracts.
  2. Section 01 4523: 'Testing and Inspecting Services' for testing and inspection, and testing laboratory services for materials, products, and construction methods.
  3. Section 32 0117.01: 'Asphalt Paving Crack Seal' for completion of crack repair.
  4. Section 32 0117.02: 'Asphalt Paving Crack Fill' for completion of crack repair.
  5. Section 32 0118: 'Asphalt Paving Repair – Full Depth Patch'.
  6. Section 32 1216: 'Asphalt Paving: Superpave Method'.
  7. Section 32 1216: 'Asphalt Paving: Marshall Method'.
  8. Section 32 1713: 'Parking Bumpers'.
  9. Section 32 1723: 'Pavement Markings'.

**1.2 REFERENCES**

- A. Association Publications:
1. Asphalt Institute:
    - a. MS-4, '*The Asphalt Handbook*' (Seventh Edition).
    - b. MS-16, '*Asphalt in Pavement Preservation and Maintenance*' (Fourth Edition).
  2. Asphalt Emulsion Manufacturers Association:
    - a. MS-19, '*Basic Asphalt Emulsion Manual*' (Fourth Edition).
- B. Definitions:
1. Seal Coat: Thin surface treatment used to improve surface texture and protect asphalt surface. Main types of surface treatments are asphalt based emulsion seals, cape seals, chip seals, fog seals, micro surfacing, penetrating seals, refined coal tar emulsion seals, sand seals, sandwich seals and slurry seals.
- C. Reference Standards:
1. ASTM International:
    - a. ASTM D4552/D4552M-10(2016), 'Standard Practice for Classifying Hot-Mix Recycling Agents'.

**1.3 ADMINISTRATIVE REQUIREMENTS**

- A. Pre-Installation Conferences:
1. Participate in MANDATORY pre-installation conference as specified in Section 01 3100:
  2. Schedule asphalt based penetrating seal pre-installation conference to be held jointly with any other 'Asphalt Surface Treatment' sections involving asphalt maintenance:
  3. In addition to agenda items specified in Section 01 3100, review following:
    - a. Review crack repair schedule and verify that other repairs will be completed before application of asphalt based penetrating seal.

- b. Review asphalt based penetrating seal schedule.
- c. Review asphalt based penetrating seal mix design.
- d. Review asphalt based penetrating seal preparation requirements:
- e. Review safety issues.

B. Scheduling:

1. Manufacturer Instructions:

- a. Provide to Owner's Representative at least seven (7) days before asphalt based penetrating seal placement commences, approved Laboratory Report and Manufacturer's Certificate of compliance with these specifications covering specific materials to be used on this project.

## 1.4 SUBMITTALS

A. Action Submittals:

- 1. Provide Manufacturer's product literature.

B. Informational Submittals:

1. Design Submittals:

a. Asphalt Based Penetrating Seal:

- 1) Provide mix design for application rate of asphalt based penetrating seal.

2. Manufacturer Instructions:

a. Asphalt Based Penetrating Seal:

- 1) Provide Manufacturer's written substrate preparation and sealant application instructions.

3. Qualification Statement:

a. Installer / Supervisor:

- 1) Provide Qualification documentations if requested by Owner's Representative.

C. Closeout Submittals:

1. Include following in Operations And Maintenance Manual specified in Section 01 7800:

a. Record Documentation:

1) Manufacturer's documentation:

- a) Asphalt based penetrating seal product literature.
- b) Design Data Submittal.

## 1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Qualifications: Requirements of Section 01 4301 applies but not limited to following:

1. Installer:

- a. Minimum five (5) years experience in asphalt surface treatment installations.
- b. Minimum five (5) years satisfactorily completed projects of comparable quality, similar size, and complexity in past three (3) years before bidding:
  - 1) Project names and addresses.
  - 2) Date of installations.

2. Supervisor:

- a. Minimum of five (5) years satisfactorily completed projects of comparable quality, similar size, and complexity in past five (5) years as Supervisor of Applicators:
  - 1) Project names and addresses.
  - 2) Date of installation.
  - 3) Name of Supervisor or Owner.

3. Upon request, submit documentation.

## 1.6 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

A. Storage And Handling Requirements:

1. Asphalt Based Penetrating Seal:

- a. Following Manufacturer's recommendations.

## 1.7 FIELD CONDITIONS

### A. Ambient Conditions:

1. Asphalt Based Penetrating Seal:
  - a. Do not apply asphalt based penetrating seal when ambient temperatures will be less than **55 deg F (13 deg C)** for twenty-four (24) hour period or surface temperature will be less than **60 deg F (16 deg C)** for twenty-four (24) hour period.
  - b. Do not apply asphalt based penetrating seal if subsequent temperatures for forty-eight (48) hours are anticipated to drop below **50 deg F (10 deg C)**.
  - c. Do not apply asphalt based penetrating seal if it will be adversely affected by rain, or wet conditions or when surface contains standing water.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 MATERIAL

#### A. Asphalt Based Penetrating Seal:

1. Type One Acceptable Product and Manufacturers:
  - a. APR-100 by Mariani Asphalt (An Associated Asphalt Company), Tampa, FL (813) 623-3941, [www.associatedasphalt.com/companies/mariani-asphalt](http://www.associatedasphalt.com/companies/mariani-asphalt).
  - b. GSB-78 Pavement Sealer and Rejuvenator by Asphalt Systems, Inc., Salt Lake City, UT (801) 972-6433 [www.asphaltsystemsinc.com](http://www.asphaltsystemsinc.com). (Use GSB-88 instead of GSB-78 on pavements less than two (2) years old).
  - c. GSB-88 Pavement Sealer and Rejuvenator by Asphalt Systems, Inc., Salt Lake City, UT (801) 972-6433 [www.asphaltsystemsinc.com](http://www.asphaltsystemsinc.com).
  - d. Quick-Dry Anti-Oxidene Penetrating Asphalt Coating (asphalt, air-blown (CAS# 64742-93-4), equal to /or not less than 50 to 65 percent by weight, white stoddard solvent (CAS# 8052-41-3) 35 to 50 percent by weight. No other unnecessary binders, fillers or additives) by Texas Refinery Corp., Fort Worth, TX (956) 492-6254 [www.texasrefinery.com](http://www.texasrefinery.com).
  - e. Reclamite Preservative Seal by Tricor Refining LLC, Bakersfield, CA (661) 393-7110 [www.reclamite.com](http://www.reclamite.com).
  - f. RS-90 Cutback Asphalt Seal Coating/Rejuvenator by Denver Industrial Sales & Service Company (DISSCO), Denver, CO (303) 935-2485 [www.dissco.net](http://www.dissco.net).
  - g. Equal as approved by Owner's Representative before bidding. See Section 01 6200.
2. Performance Requirement:
  - a. Asphalt Based Penetrating Seal consisting of the following:
    - 1) Asphalt, CAS 8052-42-4 (or CAS 8052-41-3), 50 to 65 percent by weight and naphtha, CAS 8030-30-6, 35 to 50 percent by weight (or CAS 8008-20-9, 40 to 60 percent by weight) or white Stoddard solvent, CAS 64742-93-4, 35 to 50 percent by weight.
      - a) No water is acceptable.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 EXAMINATION

#### A. Evaluation And Assessment:

1. Do not apply sealer on asphalt that has not aged for at least one (1) month minimum.
2. Do not apply sealer over wet or damp pavement, or when precipitation is imminent.

### 3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Owner Responsibilities:
1. Remove Scout Trailer(s) if needed.
- B. Surface Preparation:
1. General:
    - a. Do not allow irrigation watering for at least twenty-four (24) hours prior to application.
    - b. Do not apply to new asphalt pavements (less than one (1) month) in that softening may occur.
    - c. New asphalt and patched areas should be allowed to cure for at least thirty (30) days at **60 deg F (16 deg C)** temperature prior to application to eliminate any concentration of oils on pavement surface. Longer cure times of up to sixty (60) days may be required. New asphalt must not exhibit ribboning, crawling nor show oil rings when clean water is poured onto surface.
      - 1) To determine if surface oils have dissipated, pour one (1) or two (2) gallons of clean water over pavement surface:
        - a) If water sheets out, uniformly wetting surface and no oil rings appear, surface is ready to be sealed.
        - b) If water balls up and/or shows signs of oil rings, additional curing time is required prior to sealing.
  2. Paint Stripes:
    - a. During Evaluation and Assessment, verify if acrylic, thermoplastic or paint stripes must be removed in preparation for asphalt based penetrating seal application.
  3. Grease or Oil Patches:
    - a. Remove grease or oil patches, and spillage of any material that has adhered to pavement. Do not place seal over unsound oil spots softened by fuel or oil.
    - b. Clean oil spots and treat with oil spot primer.
    - c. Seal areas damaged by oil or grease with an oil spot primer compatible with seal being used in accordance with Manufacturer's recommendations.
  4. Cleaning:
    - a. Remove all debris, dirt, dust, leaves, loose material, moisture, mud spots, sand, silt spots, vegetation (including moss), water and other objectionable and foreign material from existing surface prior to placing seal. In areas where moss is prevalent, apply herbicide.
    - b. Power brooms, power blowers, air compressors, vacuum sweepers, rotary brooms, water flushing equipment, and blowers, or by another approved method.
  5. Cracks:
    - a. Repair cracks if required per Section 32 0117.01 'Asphalt Paving Crack Seal' or Section 32 0117.02 'Asphalt Paving Crack Fill' prior to placing asphalt based penetrating seal. Cracks that contain weed and other live vegetation matter must be treated with Pre-Emergent Herbicide prior to crack repair.

### 3.3 APPLICATION

- A. Asphalt Based Penetrating Seal:
1. Applied after Asphalt Paving is installed as specified in Section 1216: 'Asphalt Paving' as follows:
    - a. Mandatory Asphalt Paving Surface Treatment (Asphalt Based Penetrating Seal) to be applied no sooner than thirty (30) days or no later than eighteen (18) months of placing Asphalt Paving to be included with this project.
  2. Surface preparation:
    - a. Do not apply asphalt based penetrating sealer until completion of surface preparation items.
  3. Follow Manufacturer's recommendations for application of sealer.
  4. Apply sealer without thinning from container using squeegee, brush, or sprayer at rate of **1-1/2 gallons (5.6 liters) per 100 square feet (9.3 square meters)** minimum and **2 gallons (7.6 liters) per 100 square feet (9.3 square meters)** maximum, depending on absorbency of pavement.
- B. Paint Stripes:
1. If paint stripes were removed in preparation for penetration seal, include following:
    - a. Apply paint stripes after asphalt based penetrating seal has been applied and cured.

**3.4 CLEANING**

- A. General:
1. Upon completion of asphalt based penetrating seal operations, clean up and remove debris.

**3.5 PROTECTION**

- A. Do not allow traffic on paving until asphalt based penetrating seal is thoroughly cured:
1. Warm weather condition is approximately twenty-four (24) hours.
- B. Do not allow irrigation watering for at least twenty-four (24) hours after application.

**END OF SECTION**

**SECTION 32 1216  
ASPHALT PAVING****PART 1 GENERAL****1.01 SUMMARY**

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. Cold milling of existing hot-mix asphalt pavement.
  - 2. Hot-mix asphalt patching.
  - 3. Hot-mix asphalt paving.
  - 4. Hot-mix asphalt paving overlay.
  - 5. Pavement-marking paint.
- B. Related Sections:
  - 1. Division 31 Section "Earth Moving" for aggregate subbase and base courses.
  - 2. Division 32 Section "Concrete Paving Joint Sealants" for joint sealants and fillers at paving terminations.
  - 3. Salt Lake City Standards and Specifications for improvements in public Right-of-Way.

**1.02 SUBMITTALS**

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated. Include technical data and tested physical and performance properties.
  - 1. Job-Mix Designs: Certification, by authorities having jurisdiction, of approval of each job mix proposed for the Work.
  - 2. Job-Mix Designs: For each job mix proposed for the Work.
- B. Material Certificates: For each paving material, from manufacturer.

**1.03 QUALITY ASSURANCE**

- A. Manufacturer Qualifications: A paving-mix manufacturer registered with and approved by authorities having jurisdiction or the DOT of state in which Project is located.
- B. Regulatory Requirements: Comply with materials, workmanship, and other applicable requirements of local DOT for asphalt paving work.
  - 1. Measurement and payment provisions and safety program submittals included in standard specifications do not apply to this Section.

**1.04 PROJECT CONDITIONS**

- A. Environmental Limitations: Do not apply asphalt materials if subgrade is wet or excessively damp, if rain is imminent or expected before time required for adequate cure, or if the following conditions are not met:
  - 1. Tack Coat: Minimum surface temperature of 60 deg F.
  - 2. Asphalt Base Course: Minimum surface temperature of 40 deg F and rising at time of placement.
  - 3. Asphalt Surface Course: Minimum surface temperature of 60 deg F at time of placement.
- B. Pavement-Marking Paint: Proceed with pavement marking only on clean, dry surfaces.

**PART 2 PRODUCTS****2.01 AGGREGATES**

- A. Coarse Aggregate: ASTM D 692, sound; angular crushed stone, crushed gravel, or cured, crushed blast-furnace slag.
- B. Fine Aggregate: ASTM D 1073 or AASHTO M 29, sharp-edged natural sand or sand prepared from stone, gravel, cured blast-furnace slag, or combinations thereof.
- C. Mineral Filler: ASTM D 242 or AASHTO M 17, rock or slag dust, hydraulic cement, or other inert material.

**2.02 ASPHALT MATERIALS**

- A. Asphalt Binder: AASHTO M 320 or AASHTO MP 1a, AC10 - for on-site pavement. Coordinate with authority having jurisdiction for pavement in public right-of-ways.
- B. Tack Coat: ASTM D 977 or AASHTO M 140 emulsified asphalt.

**2.03 AUXILIARY MATERIALS**

- A. Herbicide: Commercial chemical for weed control, registered by the EPA. Provide in granular, liquid, or wettable powder form.
- B. Pavement-Marking Paint: MPI #32 Alkyd Traffic Marking Paint.
  - 1. Color: As indicated.



- C. Wheel Stops: Precast, air-entrained concrete, 2500-psi minimum compressive strength, 4-1/2 inches high by 9 inches wide by 72 inches long. Provide chamfered corners, drainage slots on underside, and holes for anchoring to substrate.
  - 1. Dowels: Galvanized steel, 3/4-inch diameter, 10-inch minimum length.

## **2.04 MIXES**

- A. Hot-Mix Asphalt: Dense, hot-laid, hot-mix asphalt plant mixes approved by authorities having jurisdiction and complying with the following requirements:
  - 1. Provide mixes with a history of satisfactory performance in geographical area where Project is located.
  - 2. Surface Course: 1/2" Mix.

## **PART 3 EXECUTION**

### **3.01 EXAMINATION**

- A. Proof-roll subgrade below pavements with heavy pneumatic-tired equipment to identify soft pockets and areas of excess yielding. Do not proof-roll wet or saturated subgrades.
- B. Proceed with paving only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

### **3.02 COLD MILLING**

- A. Clean existing pavement surface of loose and deleterious material immediately before cold milling. Remove existing asphalt pavement by cold milling to grades and cross sections indicated.
  - 1. Mill to a depth of 2 inches, unless otherwise noted.

### **3.03 PATCHING**

- A. Hot-Mix Asphalt Pavement: Saw cut perimeter of patch and excavate existing pavement section to sound base. Excavate rectangular or trapezoidal patches, extending 12 inches into adjacent sound pavement, unless otherwise indicated. Cut excavation faces vertically. Remove excavated material. Recompact existing unbound-aggregate base course to form new subgrade.
- B. Portland Cement Concrete Pavement: Break cracked slabs and roll as required to reseal concrete pieces firmly.
  - 1. Remove disintegrated or badly cracked pavement. Excavate rectangular or trapezoidal patches, extending into adjacent sound pavement, unless otherwise indicated. Cut excavation faces vertically. Recompact existing unbound-aggregate base course to form new subgrade.
- C. Tack Coat: Apply uniformly to vertical surfaces abutting or projecting into new, hot-mix asphalt paving at a rate of 0.05 to 0.15 gal./sq. yd..
  - 1. Allow tack coat to cure undisturbed before applying hot-mix asphalt paving.
  - 2. Avoid smearing or staining adjoining surfaces, appurtenances, and surroundings. Remove spillages and clean affected surfaces.
- D. Patching: Fill excavated pavements with hot-mix asphalt base mix for full thickness of patch and, while still hot, compact flush with adjacent surface.

### **3.04 SURFACE PREPARATION**

- A. General: Immediately before placing asphalt materials, remove loose and deleterious material from substrate surfaces. Ensure that prepared subgrade is ready to receive paving.
- B. Herbicide Treatment: Apply herbicide according to manufacturer's recommended rates and written application instructions. Apply to dry, prepared subgrade or surface of compacted-aggregate base before applying paving materials.
- C. Tack Coat: Apply uniformly to surfaces of existing pavement at a rate of 0.05 to 0.15 gal./sq. yd..
  - 1. Allow tack coat to cure undisturbed before applying hot-mix asphalt paving.
  - 2. Avoid smearing or staining adjoining surfaces, appurtenances, and surroundings. Remove spillages and clean affected surfaces.

### **3.05 HOT-MIX ASPHALT PLACING**

- A. Machine place hot-mix asphalt on prepared surface, spread uniformly, and strike off. Place asphalt mix by hand to areas inaccessible to equipment in a manner that prevents segregation of mix. Place each course to required grade, cross section, and thickness when compacted.
  - 1. Spread mix at minimum temperature of 250 deg F.
  - 2. Regulate paver machine speed to obtain smooth, continuous surface free of pulls and tears in asphalt-paving mat.
- B. Place paving in consecutive strips not less than 10 feet wide unless infill edge strips of a lesser width are required.
- C. Promptly correct surface irregularities in paving course behind paver. Use suitable hand tools to remove excess material forming high spots. Fill depressions with hot-mix asphalt to prevent segregation of mix; use suitable hand tools to smooth surface.

**3.06 JOINTS**

- A. Construct joints to ensure a continuous bond between adjoining paving sections. Construct joints free of depressions, with same texture and smoothness as other sections of hot-mix asphalt course.
1. Clean contact surfaces and apply tack coat to joints.
  2. Offset longitudinal joints, in successive courses, a minimum of 6 inches.
  3. Offset transverse joints, in successive courses, a minimum of 24 inches .
  4. Construct transverse joints at each point where paver ends a day's work and resumes work at a subsequent time. Construct these joints using either "bulkhead" or "papered" method according to AI MS-22, for both "Ending a Lane" and "Resumption of Paving Operations."

**3.07 COMPACTION**

- A. General: Begin compaction as soon as placed hot-mix paving will bear roller weight without excessive displacement. Compact hot-mix paving with hot, hand tampers or with vibratory-plate compactors in areas inaccessible to rollers.
1. Complete compaction before mix temperature cools to 185 deg F.
- B. Breakdown Rolling: Complete breakdown or initial rolling immediately after rolling joints and outside edge. Examine surface immediately after breakdown rolling for indicated crown, grade, and smoothness. Correct laydown and rolling operations to comply with requirements.
- C. Intermediate Rolling: Begin intermediate rolling immediately after breakdown rolling while hot-mix asphalt is still hot enough to achieve specified density. Continue rolling until hot-mix asphalt course has been uniformly compacted to the following density:
1. Average Density: 92 percent of reference maximum theoretical density according to ASTM D 2041, but not less than 90 percent nor greater than 96 percent.
- D. Finish Rolling: Finish roll paved surfaces to remove roller marks while hot-mix asphalt is still warm.
- E. Edge Shaping: While surface is being compacted and finished, trim edges of pavement to proper alignment. Bevel edges while asphalt is still hot; compact thoroughly.
- F. Protection: After final rolling, do not permit vehicular traffic on pavement until it has cooled and hardened.
- G. Erect barricades to protect paving from traffic until mixture has cooled enough not to become marked.

**3.08 INSTALLATION TOLERANCES**

- A. Pavement Thickness: Compact each course to produce the thickness indicated within the following tolerances:
1. Surface Course: Plus 1/4 inch, no minus.
- B. Pavement Surface Smoothness: Compact each course to produce a surface smoothness within the following tolerances as determined by using a 10-foot straightedge applied transversely or longitudinally to paved areas:
1. Surface Course: 1/8 inch.
  2. Crowned Surfaces: Test with crowned template centered and at right angle to crown. Maximum allowable variance from template is 1/4 inch.

**3.09 PAVEMENT MARKING**

- A. Do not apply pavement-marking paint until layout, colors, and placement have been verified with Architect.
- B. Allow paving to age for **30** days before starting pavement marking.
- C. Sweep and clean surface to eliminate loose material and dust.
- D. Apply paint with mechanical equipment to produce pavement markings, of dimensions indicated, with uniform, straight edges. Apply at manufacturer's recommended rates to provide a minimum wet film thickness of 15 mils.

**3.010 WHEEL STOPS**

- A. Install wheel stops in bed of adhesive as recommended by manufacturer.
- B. Securely attach wheel stops to pavement with not less than two galvanized-steel dowels embedded at one-quarter to one-third points. Securely install dowels into pavement and bond to wheel stop. Recess head of dowel beneath top of wheel stop.

**3.011 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL**

- A. Testing Agency: Owner will engage a qualified testing agency to perform tests and inspections.
- B. Replace and compact hot-mix asphalt where core tests were taken.
- C. Remove and replace or install additional hot-mix asphalt where test results or measurements indicate that it does not comply with specified requirements.

**3.012 DISPOSAL**

- A. Except for material indicated to be recycled, remove excavated materials from Project site and legally dispose of them in an EPA-approved landfill.

**END OF SECTION**

**SECTION 32 1313  
CONCRETE PAVING**

**PART 1 GENERAL****1.01 SUMMARY**

- A. This Section includes exterior cement concrete pavement for the following:
  - 1. Driveways and roadways.
  - 2. Parking lots.
  - 3. Curbs and gutters.
  - 4. Walkways.
- B. Related Sections:
  - 1. Division 31 Section "Earth Moving" for aggregate subbase and base courses.
  - 2. Salt Lake City Standards and Specifications for improvements in public Right-of-Way.

**1.02 SUBMITTALS**

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.
- B. Design Mixtures: For each concrete pavement mixture.

**1.03 QUALITY ASSURANCE**

- A. Manufacturer Qualifications: Manufacturer of ready-mixed concrete products who complies with ASTM C 94/C 94M requirements for production facilities and equipment.
- B. ACI Publications: Comply with ACI 301, "Specification for Structural Concrete," unless modified by requirements in the Contract Documents.

**PART 2 PRODUCTS****2.01 STEEL REINFORCEMENT**

- A. Plain-Steel Welded Wire Reinforcement: ASTM A 185, fabricated from as-drawn steel wire into flat sheets.
- B. Deformed-Steel Welded Wire Reinforcement: ASTM A 497, flat sheet.
- C. Reinforcing Bars: ASTM A 615/A 615M, Grade 60; deformed.
- D. Plain Steel Wire: ASTM A 82, as drawn.
- E. Deformed-Steel Wire: ASTM A 496.
- F. Bar Supports: Bolsters, chairs, spacers, and other devices for spacing, supporting, and fastening reinforcing bars, welded wire reinforcement, and dowels in place. Manufacture bar supports according to CRSI's "Manual of Standard Practice."

**2.02 CONCRETE MATERIALS**

- A. Cementitious Material: Use the following cementitious materials, of the same type, brand, and source throughout the Project:
  - 1. Portland Cement: ASTM C 150, Type II
- B. Normal-Weight Aggregates: ASTM C 33, Class 4S coarse aggregate, uniformly graded. Provide aggregates from a single source.
- C. Water: ASTM C 94/C 94M.
- D. Air-Entraining Admixture: ASTM C 260.
- E. Chemical Admixtures: ASTM C 494/C 494M, of type suitable for application, certified by manufacturer to be compatible with other admixtures and to contain not more than 0.1 percent water-soluble chloride ions by mass of cementitious material.

**2.03 CURING MATERIALS**

- A. Absorptive Cover: AASHTO M 182, Class 2, burlap cloth.
- B. Moisture-Retaining Cover: ASTM C 171, polyethylene film or white burlap-polyethylene sheet.
- C. Water: Potable.
- D. Evaporation Retarder: Waterborne, monomolecular film forming; manufactured for application to fresh concrete.
- E. Clear Waterborne Membrane-Forming Curing Compound: ASTM C 309, Type 1, Class B, dissipating.
- F. White Waterborne Membrane-Forming Curing Compound: ASTM C 309, Type 2, Class B.

**2.04 RELATED MATERIALS**

- A. Expansion- and Isolation-Joint-Filler Strips: ASTM D 1751, asphalt-saturated cellulosic fiber or ASTM D 1752, cork or self-expanding cork.
- B. Joint Sealant- Prosoco LS and Prosoco Salt Guard
- C. Pavement-Marking Paint: Latex, waterborne emulsion, lead and chromate free, ready mixed, complying with FS TT-P-1952, with drying time of less than 45 minutes.

1. Color: As indicated.

## **2.05 CONCRETE MIXTURES**

- A. Prepare design mixtures, proportioned according to ACI 301, with the following properties:
  1. Compressive Strength (28 Days): 4000 psi.
  2. Maximum Water-Cementitious Materials Ratio at Point of Placement: 0.45.
  3. Air Content: 5 to 7 percent.

## **2.06 CONCRETE MIXING**

- A. Ready-Mixed Concrete: Measure, batch, and mix concrete materials and concrete according to ASTM C 94/C 94M and ASTM C 1116. Furnish batch certificates for each batch discharged and used in the Work.

## **PART 3 EXECUTION**

### **3.01 EXAMINATION**

- A. Proof-roll prepared base surface below concrete pavements with heavy pneumatic-tired equipment to identify soft pockets and areas of excess yielding.

### **3.02 EDGE FORMS AND SCREED CONSTRUCTION**

- A. Set, brace, and secure edge forms, bulkheads, and intermediate screed guides for pavement to required lines, grades, and elevations. Install forms to allow continuous progress of work and so forms can remain in place at least 24 hours after concrete placement.
- B. Clean forms after each use and coat with form-release agent to ensure separation from concrete without damage.

### **3.03 STEEL REINFORCEMENT**

- A. General: Comply with CRSI's "Manual of Standard Practice" for fabricating, placing, and supporting reinforcement.

### **3.04 JOINTS**

- A. General: Form construction, isolation, and contraction joints and tool edgings true to line with faces perpendicular to surface plane of concrete. Construct transverse joints at right angles to centerline, unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Construction Joints: Set construction joints at side and end terminations of pavement and at locations where pavement operations are stopped for more than one-half hour unless pavement terminates at isolation joints.
- C. Isolation Joints: Form isolation joints of preformed joint-filler strips abutting concrete curbs, catch basins, manholes, inlets, structures, walks, other fixed objects, and where indicated.
- D. Contraction Joints: Form weakened-plane contraction joints, sectioning concrete into areas as indicated. Construct contraction joints for a depth equal to at least one-fourth of the concrete thickness.
- E. Edging: Tool edges of pavement, gutters, curbs, and joints in concrete after initial floating with an edging tool to a 1/4-inch radius. Repeat tooling of edges after applying surface finishes. Eliminate tool marks on concrete surfaces.
- F. Sealant: Apply Prosoco LS and Prosoco Salt Guard to all joints after concrete is properly cured.

### **3.05 CONCRETE PLACEMENT**

- A. Moisten subbase to provide a uniform dampened condition at time concrete is placed.
- B. Comply with ACI 301 requirements for measuring, mixing, transporting, and placing concrete.
- C. Deposit and spread concrete in a continuous operation between transverse joints. Do not push or drag concrete into place or use vibrators to move concrete into place.
- D. Screed pavement surfaces with a straightedge and strike off.
- E. Commence initial floating using bull floats or darbies to impart an open textured and uniform surface plane before excess moisture or bleed water appears on the surface. Do not further disturb concrete surfaces before beginning finishing operations or spreading surface treatments.

### **3.06 FLOAT FINISHING**

- A. General: Do not add water to concrete surfaces during finishing operations.
- B. Float Finish: Begin the second floating operation when bleed-water sheen has disappeared and concrete surface has stiffened sufficiently to permit operations. Float surface with power-driven floats, or by hand floating if area is small or inaccessible to power units. Finish surfaces to true planes. Cut down high spots and fill low spots. Rfloat surface immediately to uniform granular texture.
  1. Burlap Finish: Drag a seamless strip of damp burlap across float-finished concrete, perpendicular to line of traffic, to provide a uniform, gritty texture.
  2. Medium-to-Fine-Textured Broom Finish: Draw a soft bristle broom across float-finished concrete surface perpendicular to line of traffic to provide a uniform, fine-line texture.
  3. Medium-to-Coarse-Textured Broom Finish: Provide a coarse finish by striating float-finished concrete surface 1/16 to 1/8 inch deep with a stiff-bristled broom, perpendicular to line of traffic.

- C. Slip-Resistive Aggregate Finish: Before final floating, spread slip-resistive aggregate finish on pavement surface according to manufacturer's written instructions.
1. Cure concrete with curing compound recommended by slip-resistive aggregate manufacturer. Apply curing compound immediately after final finishing.
  2. After curing, lightly work surface with a steel wire brush or abrasive stone and water to expose nonslip aggregate.

### **3.07 CONCRETE PROTECTION AND CURING**

- A. General: Protect freshly placed concrete from premature drying and excessive cold or hot temperatures.
- B. Comply with ACI 306.1 for cold-weather protection.
- C. Evaporation Retarder: Apply evaporation retarder to concrete surfaces if hot, dry, or windy conditions cause moisture loss approaching 0.2 lb/sq. ft. x h before and during finishing operations. Apply according to manufacturer's written instructions after placing, screeding, and bull floating or darbying concrete, but before float finishing.
- D. Begin curing after finishing concrete but not before water has disappeared from surface.
- E. Curing Methods: Cure concrete by moisture curing, moisture-retaining-cover curing, curing compound or a combination of these methods.

### **3.08 PAVEMENT TOLERANCES**

- A. Comply with tolerances of ACI 117 and as follows:
1. Elevation: 1/4 inch.
  2. Thickness: Plus 3/8 inch, minus 1/4 inch.
  3. Surface: Gap below 10-foot- long, unlevelled straightedge not to exceed 1/4 inch.
  4. Joint Spacing: 3 inches.
  5. Contraction Joint Depth: Plus 1/4 inch, no minus.
  6. Joint Width: Plus 1/8 inch, no minus.

### **3.09 PAVEMENT MARKING**

- A. Allow concrete pavement to cure for 28 days and be dry before starting pavement marking.
- B. Sweep and clean surface to eliminate loose material and dust.
- C. Apply paint with mechanical equipment to produce pavement markings of dimensions indicated with uniform, straight edges. Apply at manufacturer's recommended rates to provide a minimum wet film thickness of 15 mils.

### **3.010 REPAIRS AND PROTECTION**

- A. Remove and replace concrete pavement that is broken, damaged, or defective or that does not comply with requirements in this Section.
- B. Exclude traffic from pavement for at least 14 days after placement.
- C. Maintain concrete pavement free of stains, discoloration, dirt, and other foreign material. Sweep concrete pavement not more than two days before date scheduled for Substantial Completion inspections.

**END OF SECTION**

---

**SECTION 32 1713****PARKING BUMPERS****PART 1 - GENERAL****1.1 SUMMARY**

- A. Includes But Not Limited To:
1. Furnish and install parking bumpers as described in Contract Documents.

**1.2 REFERENCES**

- A. Reference Standards:
1. ASTM International:
    - a. ASTM A615/A615M-18, 'Standard Specification for Deformed and Plain Carbon-Steel Bars for Concrete Reinforcement'.
    - b. ASTM A1064/A1064M-18a, 'Standard Specification for Carbon-Steel Wire and Welded Wire Reinforcement, Plain and Deformed, for Concrete'.
    - c. ASTM C33/C33M-18, 'Standard Specification for Concrete Aggregates'.
    - d. ASTM C150/C150M-18, 'Standard Specification for Portland Cement'.

**PART 2 - PRODUCTS****2.1 MATERIALS**

- A. Precast Concrete:
1. Cement: ASTM C150/C150M, Type II.
  2. Aggregates: ASTM C33/C33M.
- B. Reinforcing:
1. Bars: ASTM A615/A615M, Grade 60.
  2. Reinforcing Mesh: ASTM A1064/A1064M.
- C. Sealants:
1. Category Four Approved Products. See Section 01 6200 for definitions of Categories:
    - a. Dow Corning Corp, Midland, MI [www.dowcorning.com](http://www.dowcorning.com):
      - 1) Primer: 1200 Prime Coat.
      - 2) Sealant: 790 Silicone Building Sealant.
    - b. Momentive Performance Materials Inc. (formally GE Sealants & Adhesives), Huntersville, NC [www.ge.com/silicones](http://www.ge.com/silicones) Primer: SS4044 Primer.
      - 1) Primer: SS4044 Primer.
      - 2) Sealant: GE SCS2000 SilPruf Silicone Sealant & Adhesive.
- D. Pins: Epoxy coated No. 4 bar, 24 inches (610 mm) long.

**2.2 FABRICATION**

- A. Precast Concrete Parking Bumpers:
1. 3000 psi (20.68 MPa) concrete minimum.
  2. Chamfered edges.
  3. Smooth finish free from pits and rock pockets.

4. Cast openings for pins.
5. Cast in two (2) bars, No. 3 minimum, full length of bumper less coverage requirements.

### **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

#### **3.1 INSTALLATION**

- A. Install level with paving and aligned with sidewalks.
- B. Recess anchoring pins **1/2 inch (12.7 mm)** below top of bumper. Install sealant in hole to top of bumper.

**END OF SECTION**



**SECTION 32 1723****PAVEMENT MARKINGS****PART 1 - GENERAL****1.1 SUMMARY**

- A. Includes But Not Limited To:
  - 1. Furnish acrylic paint and apply pavement and curb markings as described in Contract Documents including:

**1.2 REFERENCES**

- A. Reference Standards:
  - 1. Federal Specifications and Standards:
    - a. FED-STD-595C, 'Federal Standard: Colors Used in Government Procurement' (16 Jan 2008).
    - b. FED TT-P-1952F, 'Paint, Traffic and Airfield Marking, Waterborne' (17 Feb 2015).
  - 2. U.S. Department of Transportation Federal Highway Administration:
    - a. FHWA MUTCD-10, 'Manual on Uniform Traffic Control Devices'.

**1.3 SUBMITTALS**

- A. Action Submittal:
  - 1. Product Data:
    - 1) Manufacturer's published product data and certification that product supplied meets requirements of this specification.
- B. Informational Submittal:
  - 1. Test And Evaluation Reports:
    - a. Acrylic Paint:
      - 1) Provide reports showing compliance to FED TT-P-1952F.
- C. Closeout Submittals:
  - 1. Include following in Operations And Maintenance Manual specified in Section 01 7800:
    - a. Record Documentation:
      - 1) Manufacturer's Documentation:
        - a) Product data.
        - b) Specification compliance documentation.
      - 2) Testing and Inspection Reports:
        - a) Reports showing compliance.

**1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE**

- A. Regulatory Agency Sustainability Approvals:
  - 1. Paint must meet requirements of FED TT-P-1952-F and local regulations for VOC.
  - 2. Paint handicap spaces to conform to ADA Standards and local code requirements.

**1.5 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING**

- A. Delivery and Acceptance Requirements:
  - 1. Materials shall be delivered in original, unopened containers with labels intact.

- a. Labels to include:
  - 1) Manufacturer's name and address.
  - 2) TT-P-1952F reference.
  - 3) Classification Type.
  - 4) Color.
- B. Storage And Handling Requirements:
  - 1. Follow Manufacturer's storage and handling requirements.
  - 2. Protect stored material from freezing at temperatures above 35 deg F (2 deg C) or above 115 deg F (46.1 deg C).
  - 3. Do not invert or roll containers.

## 1.6 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Ambient Conditions:
  - 1. Acrylic Paint:
    - a. Apply only on dry clean surfaces, during favorable weather (not excessively windy, dusty, or foggy), and when damage by rain, fog, or condensation not anticipated.
    - b. Paving surface and Ambient temperature shall be minimum 50 deg F (10 deg C) and rising.
    - c. Temperature shall not drop below 50 deg F (10 deg C) within twenty-four (24) hour period following application.
    - d. Acetone based paints that are one hundred (100) percent acrylic shall not drop below 32 deg F (0 deg C) within twenty-four (24) hour period following application.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 MATERIAL

- A. Acrylic Paint:
  - 1. Description:
    - a. Low VOC, ready-mixed, one- component, acrylic waterborne traffic marking paint suitable for application on concrete, asphalt, sealers, and previously painted areas of these surfaces.
  - 2. Design Criteria:
    - a. General:
      - 1) Traffic Paint.
      - 2) Non-volatile portion of vehicle for all classification types shall be composed of one hundred (100) percent acrylic.
      - 3) Meet FED TT-P-1952F specification requirements.
      - 4) Fast drying when applied at ambient conditions requirement.
      - 5) Low VOC.
      - 6) Non-Reflectorized.
      - 7) Traffic paints not intended for use as floor paints. Do not use on pedestrian walkways or large surfaces such as ramps, floors and stairs which may become slippery when wet.
    - b. Classification:
      - 1) Type I for use under normal conditions.
    - c. Composition:
      - 1) Non-volatile portion for all types shall be composed of one hundred (100) percent acrylic polymer as determined by infrared spectral analysis.
      - 2) Prohibited material:
        - a) Product does not contain mercury, lead, hexavalent chromium, toluene, chlorinated solvents, hydrolysable chlorine derivatives, ethylene-based glycol ethers and their acetates, nor any carcinogen.
    - d. Qualitative Requirements:
      - 1) Meet FED TT-P-1952F requirements for:
        - a) Abrasion resistance.

- b) Accelerated package stability.
- c) Accelerated weathering.
- d) Appearance.
- e) Color requirements:
  - (1) Color Match (all colors except white and yellow).
  - (2) Daylight directional reflectance.
  - (3) Yellow color match.
- f) Condition in container.
- g) Dry-through (early washout) for Type II only.
- h) Flexibility.
- i) Freeze/thaw stability.
- j) Heat-shear stability.
- k) Scrub resistance.
- l) Skinning.
- m) Titanium dioxide content.
- n) Water resistance.
- e. Quantitative requirements:
  - 1) Meet FED TT-P-1952F requirements (Table 1).
  - 2) Acetone based paints that are one hundred (100) percent acrylic and have exempt status under Federal law are exempt from meeting FED TT-P-1925F requirements.
- 3. Colors:
  - a. General:
    - 1) Traffic Paint will be furnished in white and any Federal Standard 595 color in accordance to FED-STD-595C:
      - a) Yellow: 33538.
      - b) Blue: 35180.
      - c) Red: 31136.
  - b. White (Yellow may be used at Owner Representative's discretion):
    - 1) Lane lines, edge lines, transverse lines, arrows, words, symbol markings, speed bump markings, parking space markings.
  - c. Yellow:
    - 1) Cross-hatching in medians, cross hatching in safety zones separating opposing traffic flows, crosswalk stripes, safety markings, centerlines, edge lines along left edge of one-way roadway or one-way ramp.
  - d. Blue And White:
    - 1) In parking spaces specifically designated as reserved for disabled.
  - e. Red:
    - 1) Fire lanes, no parking zones, special raised pavement markers that are placed to be visible to "wrong-way" drivers.
- 4. Type Two Acceptable Products:
  - a. Any product meeting design criteria of this specification as approved by Architect/Owner's Representative before application. See Section 01 6200.

## **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

### **3.1 PREPARATION**

- A. Acrylic Paint:
  - 1. Asphalt Surfaces:
    - a. Do not apply paint until asphalt has cooled.
    - b. Allow new seal coated surfaces to cure for at least twenty-four (24) hours before applying paint.
  - 2. Concrete Surfaces:
    - a. Do not apply paint to new concrete surfaces until concrete has cured seven (7) days minimum.
- B. Surfaces shall be dry and free of grease and loose dirt particles.

- C. Perform layout with chalk or lumber crayon only.

### 3.2 APPLICATION

- A. General:
  - 1. Mix in accordance and apply as per Manufacturer's instructions.
  - 2. Apply at locations and to dimensions and spacing as shown on Contract Drawings.
- B. Tolerances:
  - 1. General: Make lines parallel, evenly spaced, and with sharply defined edges.
  - 2. Line Widths:
    - a. Plus or minus **1/4 inch (6 mm)** variance on straight segments.
    - b. Plus or minus **1/2 inch (13 mm)** variance on curved alignments.
- C. Coverage:
  - 1. Paint stripes added to new asphalt and concrete surfaces:
    - a. Apply single coat.
  - 2. Apply traffic paint at rate of 13 to 15 mils minimum wet thickness, 8 to 9 mils dry thickness. Application at more than 15 mils may result in extended dry times and may cause lifting or cracking on some asphalt surfaces.

### 3.3 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Non-Conforming Work:
  - 1. Replace or correct defective material not conforming to requirements of this specification or any work performed that is of inferior quality at no cost to Owner.

### 3.4 CLEANING

- A. General:
  - 1. Remove drips, overspray, improper markings, and paint material tracked by traffic by sand blasting, wire brushing, or other method approved by Architect/Owner's Representative before performance.
- B. Waste Management:
  - 1. Remove debris resulting from work of this Section. Dispose of or recycle all trash and excess material in manner conforming to current EPA regulations and local laws.

**END OF SECTION**

**SECTION 32 3113****CHAIN LINK FENCES AND GATES****PART 1 - GENERAL****1.1 SUMMARY**

- A. Includes But Not Limited To:
  - 1. Furnish and install complete fence and gates as described in Contract Documents.
- B. Related Requirements:
  - 1. Section 03 3111: 'Cast-In-Place Structural Concrete' for mow strips at fencing and setting sleeves in concrete retaining walls.
  - 2. Section 05 0503: 'Shop-Applied Metal Coatings' for priming and galvanizing repair.
  - 3. Section 05 0523: 'Metal Fastening' for welding requirements.

**1.2 REFERENCES**

- A. Association Publications: / Organizations:
  - 1. Chain Link Fence Manufacturers Institute (CLFMI), Columbia, MD [www.chainlinkinfo.org](http://www.chainlinkinfo.org).
    - a. WLG 2445, '*Chain Link Fence Wind Load Guide for the Selection of Line Post and Line Post Spacing*' (2012).
    - b. CLF-SFR0111, '*Chain Link Fence Manufacturers Institute Security Fencing Recommendations*'.
    - c. CLF-PM0610, '*Field Inspection Guide*'.
    - d. CLF-TP0211, '*Tested and Proven Performance of Security Grade Chain Link Fencing Systems*'.
- B. Reference Standards:
  - 1. ASTM International:
    - a. ASTM A123/A123M-17, 'Standard Specification for Zinc (Hot-Dip Galvanized) Coatings on Iron and Steel Products'.
    - b. ASTM A153/A153M-16a, 'Standard Specification for Zinc Coating (Hot-Dip) on Iron and Steel Hardware'.
    - c. ASTM A392-11a(2017), 'Standard Specification for Zinc-Coated Steel Chain-Link Fence Fabric'.
    - d. ASTM A1011/A1011M-18a, 'Standard Specification for Steel, Sheet and Strip, Hot-Rolled, Carbon, Structural, High-Strength Low-Alloy, High-Strength Low-Alloy with Improved Formability, and Ultra-High Strength'.
    - e. ASTM C1107/C1107M-17, 'Standard Specification for Packaged Dry, Hydraulic-Cement Grout (Nonshrink)'.
    - f. ASTM F1043-18, 'Standard Specification for Strength and Protective Coatings on Steel Industrial Chain Link Fence Framework'.
    - g. ASTM F1083-18, 'Standard Specification for Pipe, Steel, Hot-Dipped Zinc-Coated (Galvanized) Welded, for Fence Structures'.
    - h. ASTM F3000/F3000M-13(2018), 'Standard Specification for Polymer Privacy Insert Slats for Chain Link Fabric and Privacy Chain Link Fabric Manufactured Containing Pre-Installed Privacy Slats'.

**1.3 SUBMITTALS**

- A. Action Submittals:
  - 1. Product Data: Manufacturer literature or cut sheets on fence components.
  - 2. Samples: Types of vision slats and colors for Architect's selection.

- B. Closeout Submittals:
  - 1. Include following in Operations And Maintenance Manual specified in Section 01 7800:
    - a. Warranty Documentation:
      - 1) Vision Slats:
        - a) Final, executed copy of Warranty.

## 1.4 WARRANTY

- A. Vision Slats:
  - 1. Manufacturers twenty-five (25) year, pro-rata limited Warranty.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 ASSEMBLIES

- A. Materials:
  - 1. Fabric:
    - a. Chain Link Fabric of 9 ga (3.7 mm) wire, galvanized before or after weaving with 1.2 ounce (34 grams) zinc coating conforming to requirements of ASTM A392, Class I.
    - b. Mesh:
      - 1) With Visual Privacy / Security Slats:
        - a) 2 inch (50 mm) square mesh required by specified vision slat.
    - c. Knuckle both selvages.
  - 2. Framework:
    - a. Posts and Rails shall be roll-formed, self-draining shapes meeting strength requirements of ASTM F1043, Table 3, and with 2 ounce (56.7 grams) zinc coating per 1 sq ft (0.0929 sq meter) of surface area conforming to ASTM A123/A123M.
    - b. Line Posts:
      - 1) Line Posts 8 feet (2.45 m) and under:
        - a) 1.875 by 1.625 inch (48 by 41 mm) C-section roll formed from steel conforming to ASTM A1011/A1011M, Grade 45, with minimum theoretical bending strength of 247 lbs (112 kg) under 6 foot (1.80 m) cantilever load.
        - b) 2.375 inch (60 mm) outside diameter Schedule 40 tubular section weighing 3.65 lbs (1.6 kg) per lineal 1 ft (305 mm) meeting requirements of ASTM F1083.
        - c) 2.375 inch (60 mm) outside diameter Schedule 40 tubular section weighing 3.12 lbs (1.42 kg) per lineal 1 ft (305 mm) formed from steel meeting requirements of ASTM A1011/A1011M.
    - c. Top And Brace Rail:
      - 1) 1.625 by 1.25 inch (41 by 32 mm) roll formed section of 45,000 psi (310 MPa) yield strength channel shaped rail with minimum theoretical bending strength of 247 lbs (112 kg) on 10 foot (3.050 m) midpoint load.
      - 2) 1.660 inch 42 mm outside diameter Schedule 40 pipe weighing 2.27 lbs (1.03 kg) per lineal 1 ft (305 mm) meeting requirements of ASTM F1083.
      - 3) 1.660 inch 42 mm outside diameter Schedule 40 tubular section weighing 1.84 lbs (0.83 kg) per lineal 1 ft (305 mm) formed from steel meeting requirements of ASTM A1011/A1011M.
    - d. Fittings:
      - 1) Pressed steel or malleable iron, hot-dip galvanized conforming to ASTM A153/A153M.
      - 2) Tie wires shall be 12 ga (2.05 mm) minimum galvanized steel or 9 ga (3 mm) minimum aluminum wire.
    - e. Tension Wire: 7 ga (3.66 mm) minimum galvanized spring steel.
  - 3. Gate Leafs Wider Than 6 Feet (1.80 Meters):
    - a. Fabricate perimeter frames from metal and finish to match fence framework. Assemble frames by welding or with special fittings and rivets, for rigid connections, providing security against removal or breakage connections.

- 1) Provide same fabric as for fence. Install fabric with stretcher bars at vertical edges and at top and bottom edges. Attach stretchers bars to frame at not more than **15 inches (380 mm)** on center.
- 2) Install diagonal cross-bracing consisting of **3/8 inch (9.5 mm)** diameter adjustable length truss rods to ensure frame rigidity without sag or twist.
- b. Swing Gates: Fabricate perimeter frames of minimum **1.90 inches (48.26 mm)** OD pipe.
- c. Gate Hardware: Provide hardware and accessories for each gate, galvanized per ASTM A153/A153M, and in accordance with following:
  - 1) Hinges: Size and material to suit gate size, non-lift-off type, offset to permit 180 degree gate opening. Provide 1-1/2 pair of hinges for each leaf over **6 foot (1.80 m)** nominal height.
  - 2) Latch At Paving: Forked type or plunger-bar type to permit operation from either side of gate, with padlock eye as integral part of latch.
- d. Keeper: Provide keeper for vehicle gates, which automatically engages gate leaf and holds it in open position until manually released.
- e. Double Gates:
  - 1) Provide gate stops for double gates, consisting of mushroom type flush plate with anchors, set in concrete, and designed to engage center drop rod or plunger bar.
  - 2) Include locking device and padlock eyes as integral part of latch, permitting both gate leaves to be locked with single padlock.
- f. Sliding Gates: Provide Manufacturer's standard heavy-duty inverted channel track, ball-bearing hanger sheaves, overhead framing and supports, guides, stays, bracing, hardware, and accessories as required.

B. Mixes:

1. Post Foundation Concrete:
  - a. One cu ft cement, **2 cu ft (0.0566 cu m)** sand, **4 cu ft (0.1132 cu m)** gravel, and **5 gallons (18.93 liters)** minimum to **6 gallons (22.71 liters)** maximum water.
  - b. Mix thoroughly before placing.

## 2.2 ACCESSORIES

A. Vision Slats And Fabric:

1. Manufacturer Contact List:
  - a. *PrivacyLink*, Hyde Park, UT [www.eprivacylink.com](http://www.eprivacylink.com).
2. Description:
  - a. High-density polyethylene (HDPE), double-walled, self-locking or with locking feature that prevents slats from being removed
  - b. Slats pre-woven and pre-inserted into chain link fabric.
3. Design Criteria:
  - a. Meet ASTM F3000/F3000M requirements for pre-installed privacy slats.
  - b. Provide slats with ultra violet (UV) inhibitors.
4. Visual Privacy / Security:
  - a. Near-Total Privacy:
    - 1) Description:
      - a) When installed, slats will provide 98 percent minimum visual privacy/security.
      - b) Mesh: **2 inch x 2 inch (50 mm x 50 mm)**.
    - 2) Pre-inserted Slats:
      - a) Double-wall with wings on each side of slat that wedge slats tightly into mesh and secured in place at both top and bottom of fence by flexible round tubes.
    - 3) Type Two Acceptable Product:
      - a) Noodle Link Plus by *PrivacyLink*.
      - b) Equal as approved by Architect before installation. See Section 01 6200.
5. Color:
  - a. Slats:
    - 1) As selected by Architect from Manufacturer's standard colors.
  - b. Flexible round tubes:
    - 1) Galvanized Grey.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 INSTALLATION

- A. Fence shall be installed by mechanics skilled and experienced in erecting fences of this type and in accordance with Contract Documents.
1. When general ground contour is to be followed, make changes of grade in gradual, rolling manner.
  2. Evenly space posts in line of fence a maximum of **10 feet (3.050 meter)** center to center.
- B. Post Foundations:
1. Except atop retaining walls, set posts with concrete post foundations as specified below:
    - a. Line Posts:
      - 1) Diameter **8 inch (200 mm)**
      - 2) Depth **36 inch (915 mm)**.
    - b. Gate, End, And Corner Posts:
      - 1) Diameter **12 inch (305 mm)**
      - 2) Depth **42 inch (1 065 mm)**.
    - c. At mow strips, set top of post foundation below grade sufficient to allow for placing of mow strip. Measure post foundation depth from top of mow strip.
    - d. Where fences are incorporated into slabs, measure post foundation depth from top of slab. Extend bottom of slab footing sufficient to allow specified amount of concrete around post. At existing slabs, install fence outside perimeter of slab.
    - e. For fences on retaining walls, provide **12 inch (305 mm)** long sleeves to be cast into retaining wall. Set pipe in sleeve and grout space between sleeve and post full.
- C. Fence:
1. After posts have been permanently positioned and concrete cured for one (1) week minimum, install framework, braces, and top rail. Join top rail with **6 inch (150 mm)** minimum couplings at not more than **21 foot (6.40 meter)** centers.
  2. Stretch fabric by attaching one end to terminal post and supplying sufficient tension to other end of stretch so slack is removed.
    - a. Fasten fabric to line posts with tie wires. Pass ties over one strand of fabric and hook under line post flange.
    - b. Place one tie as close to bottom of fabric as is possible with additional ties equally spaced between top and bottom band on approximately equal spacing not to exceed **14 inches (355 mm)** on center.
    - c. Attach fabric to roll formed terminals by weaving fabric into integral lock loops formed in post. Attach fabric to tubular terminals with tension bars and bands.
    - d. Hold fabric approximately **2 inches (50 mm)** above finish grade line.
    - e. On top rail, space tie wires at no more than **24 inches (610 mm)** on center.
    - f. Securely attach fittings and firmly tighten nuts.

### 3.2 CLEANING

- A. Spread dirt from foundation excavations evenly around surrounding area unless otherwise directed. Leave area free of excess dribbles of concrete, pieces of wire, and other scrap materials.

**END OF SECTION**



**SECTION 32 8423**  
**UNDERGROUND SPRINKLERS**

**PART 1 - GENERAL****1.1 SUMMARY**

- A. Includes But Not Limited To:
  - 1. Furnish and install planting irrigation system as described in Contract Documents complete with accessories necessary for proper function.
- B. Related Requirements:
  - 1. Section 01 4301: Quality Assurance – Qualifications.
  - 2. Section 22 1116: Stop and waste valve.
  - 3. Division 26: Controller conduit and power to controller.

**1.2 ADMINISTRATIVE REQUIREMENTS**

- A. Pre-Installation Conference:
  - 1. Schedule pre-installation conference before irrigation system installation begins.
  - 2. In addition to agenda items specified in Section 01 3100, review the following:
    - a. Landscape architect or designated landscape consultant shall demonstrate or describe method to be used to maintain head spacing from concrete and to stabilize heads.
- B. Sequencing:
  - 1. Install sleeves before installation of cast-in-place concrete site elements and paving.

**1.3 SUBMITTALS**

- A. Action Submittals:
  - 1. Product Data:
    - a. Manufacturer's cut sheets for each element of system.
    - b. Parts lists for operating elements of system.
- B. Informational Submittals:
  - 1. Certificates:
    - a. Acceptance certificate of irrigation system.
      - 1) Upon acceptance of irrigation system, reviewer will provide signed acceptance certificate.
      - 2) Certificate will include name and signature of reviewer, reviewer's company, date of review, and reviewer's telephone number.
  - 2. Test And Evaluation Reports:
    - a. Results of mainline service pressure test before beginning work on system should be submitted as a report following the testing and before burial of the mainline.
    - b. Provide the following from Main Line Irrigation test and observation:
      - 1) Record and submit documentation of Irrigation Main Line tests, issues, and measure taking to correct problems.
  - 3. Manufacturer Instructions:
    - a. Manufacturer's printed literature on operation and maintenance of operating elements of system.
    - b. Instruction Manual:
      - 1) Includes complete directions for system operation and maintenance, including winterizing, controller program worksheet and annual service and scheduling calendar based on local site specific conditions.
    - c. Complete instructions on how to drain entire filter to prevent freezing.
  - 4. Qualification Submittals:
    - a. Irrigation subcontractor: See Section 01 4301 for supplier qualifications.
      - 1) Provide documentation of the following:
        - a) Firm experience in irrigation contracting (minimum of five years)
        - b) Financial stability.
        - c) Comply with specifications and contract documents.

- d) Agree to complete reporting documents, including:
  - (1) Use only certified installers for SMART controller technology as required in this document.
  - (2) Assist landscape architect in completing the Watering Schedule for the Site Management Plan (SMP).

C. Closeout Submittals:

1. Include following in Operations And Maintenance Manual specified in Section 01 7800:
  - a. Operations And Maintenance Data:
    - 1) Include one copy in Operations and Maintenance Manual specified in Section 01 7800. Also include one copy to be included in Site Management Plan. Include the following information:
      - 2) Instruction Manual.
      - 3) Manufacturer's printed literature.
      - 4) Manufacturer's cut sheets.
      - 5) Manufacturer's parts list.
      - 6) Main Line Irrigation observation report.
      - 7) Freezing prevention instructions.
  - b. Record Documentation:
    - 1) Certificates:
      - a) Acceptance certificate of irrigation system.
    - 2) Testing and Inspection Reports:
      - a) Mainline Pressure Test.
      - b) Main Line Irrigation test and observation.
    - 3) Record drawings: As installation occurs, prepare accurate record drawing to be submitted before final inspection, including:
      - a) Detail and dimension changes made during construction.
      - b) Significant details and dimensions not shown in original Contract Documents.
      - c) Field dimensioned locations of valve boxes, manual drains, quick-coupler valves, control wire runs not in mainline ditch, soil moisture sensors (if soil moisture sensor technology is selected for the site) and both ends of sleeves.
      - d) Take dimensions from permanent constructed surfaces or edges located at or above finish grade.
      - e) Take and record dimensions at time of installation.
      - f) Reduce copy of record drawing to **18 by 24 inches** color key circuits, and laminate both sides with 5 mil thick or heavier plastic. Drill two **1/2 inch** holes at top of board and hang on hooks in Custodial Room or location designated by Owner's Representative.
2. Final payment for system will not be authorized until Closeout Submittals are received and accepted by Architect and landscape consultant.

D. Maintenance Material Submittals:

1. Tools:
  - a. Furnish following items before Final Closeout Review:
    - 1) One heavy-duty key for stop and waste or main shut-off valve.
    - 2) One quick coupler key with brass hose swivel and cap key.

#### 1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Regulatory Requirements:
  1. Work and materials shall be in accordance with latest rules and regulations, and other applicable state or local laws.
  2. Nothing in Contract Documents is to be construed to permit work not conforming to these codes.
- B. Qualifications: Requirements of Section 01 4301 applies, but not limited to the following:
  1. Installer:
    - a. Use trained factory certified personnel familiar with required irrigation system and SMART controller installation procedures. Follow requirements shown in PART 3 Execution 3.1 Installers.
    - b. Perform installation under direction of foreman or supervisor with five years minimum experience in sprinkling system installations.

## 1.5 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Storage And Handling Requirements:
1. Storage and handling during installation, protect materials from damage and prolonged exposure to sunlight.

## 1.6 WARRANTY

- A. Manufacturer Warranty:
1. Standard one year guarantee stipulated in General Conditions Article 12.2 shall include:
    - a. Filling and repairing depressions and replacing plantings due to settlement of irrigation system trenches.
    - b. Adjusting system to supply proper coverage of areas to receive water.
    - c. Ensuring system can be adequately drained.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 SYSTEM

- A. Manufacturers:
1. Manufacturer Contact List (for reference only):
    - a. 3M, Austin, TX [www.3m.com/elpd](http://www.3m.com/elpd).
    - b. Carson Industries LLC, Glendora, CA [www.carsonind.com](http://www.carsonind.com).
    - c. V.I.T Products. Escandido, CA [www.vitproducts.com/strong-box](http://www.vitproducts.com/strong-box)
    - d. Netafim, Inc. [www.netafimusa.com](http://www.netafimusa.com).
    - e. Nibco Inc, Elkhart, IN [www.nibco.com](http://www.nibco.com).
    - f. Rain Bird Sprinkler Manufacturing Corp, Glendora, CA [www.rainbird.com](http://www.rainbird.com).
    - g. Valve and Filter Corporation, Arvada, CO [www.valveandfilter.com](http://www.valveandfilter.com).
    - h. Weathertrak Controllers, Petaluma, CA [www.weathertrak.com](http://www.weathertrak.com).
    - i. Amiad Filters, Mooresville, NC [www.amiadusa.com](http://www.amiadusa.com)
- B. Distributors:
2. Approved Distributors. See Section 01 6200 for definitions of Categories.
- B. Materials:
1. Rock-Free Soil:
    - a. Backfill soil around PVC pipe.
    - b. Soil having rocks no larger than **1/2 inch** in any dimension.
  2. Pea Gravel:
    - a. For use around drains, valves, and quick couplers.
    - b. **1/2 inch** maximum dimension, washed rock.
  3. Sand: Fine granular material naturally produced by rock disintegration and free from organic material, mica, loam, clay, and other deleterious substances.
  4. Native Material: Soil native to project site free of wood and other deleterious materials and rocks over **1-1/2 inches**.
  5. Topsoil: Remove rocks, roots, sticks, clods, debris, and other foreign matter over **1-1/2 inches** longest dimension encountered during trenching.
  6. Pipe, Pipe Fittings, And Connections:
    - a. Pipe shall be continuously and permanently marked with Manufacturer's name, size, schedule, type, and working pressure.
    - b. Pipe sizes shown on Drawings are minimum. Larger sizes may be substituted if at no additional cost to Owner.
    - c. Northern Climate Zone Pipe:
      - 1) Pressure Lines: Schedule 40 PVC.
      - 2) Lateral Lines: Schedule 40 PVC.
      - 3) Filter Assembly Piping: Galvanized steel.
      - 4) Quick Coupler Piping: Galvanized steel.
    - d. Fittings: Same material as pipe, except where detailed otherwise.
    - e. Sleeves:
      - 1) Under Parking Area And Driveway Paving: Schedule 40 PVC Pipe.
      - 2) All Other: Class 200 PVC Pipe.

- 3) Sleeve diameter shall be two times larger than pipe installed in sleeve.
7. Sprinkler Heads:
  - a. Each type of head shall be product of single manufacturer.
  - b. Spray Heads in Lawn Areas: Rainbird: 1806 PRS with MPR nozzles as noted in legend.
  - c. Rotors in Lawn Areas: Rainbird 5006+PCR with MPR nozzles as noted in legend.
8. Sprinkler Risers:
  - a. Pop-up sprinkler heads, shrub spray heads, bubbler heads, and stationary spray sprinkler heads shall have risers made up one of the following ways:
    - 1) Three schedule 40 street ells or Marlex street ells connected to lateral tee to form an adjustable riser or pop-up riser as detailed.
    - 2) Risers for sprinkler heads **14 inches** long minimum and **24 inches** maximum.  
Acceptable Products:
      - a) Hunter: SJ series with barbed fittings.
      - b) Rainbird: Swing Pipe with barbed fittings.
      - c) Equal as approved by Architect before installation. See Section 01 6200.
9. Automatic Irrigation Control Wiring And Controller:
  - a. Control wire shall be UF-UL listed, color coded PE insulated copper conductor direct burial size 14. For wire runs exceeding **3,3000 feet** use 12 AWG wire. Do not use green color coded wire.
  - b. Waterproof Wire Connectors:
    - 1) Control wire connections shall consist of a properly-sized wire nut inserted in a waterproof grease cap.
    - 2) Type Two Acceptable Products:
      - a) DBY or DBR by 3M
      - b) 'One Step' 20111SP by King Innovation
      - c) Equal as approved by Architect before installation. See Section 01 6200.
  - c. Automatic controllers:
    - 1) Approved Products. See Section 01 6200 for definitions of Categories.
      - a) Weathertrak WT-PRO3-C-12-CWM Indoor Controller (include one year subscription and site consult)
      - b) Lightning Arrestor:
        - A. #6 bare solid copper wire run thru conduit from controllers to a 5/8"x8' copper clad grounding rod in ground near controller.
10. Valves:
  - a. Manual Drain Valves:
    - 1) PVC ball valve with 'T' handle on main lines and in valve boxes on lateral lines.
    - 2) Category Four Approved Products. See Section 01 6200 for definitions of Categories.
      - a) Rainbird: BV Series, 1/2 inch.
  - b. Automatic Valves:
    - 1) Approved Products. See Section 01 6200 for definitions of Categories.
      - a) Rainbird: PESB-PRS-D series.
      - b) Rainbird: XCZ-100-PRB-COM.
  - c. Hydrometer:
    - 1) Netafim (Weathertrak compatible) LHM15TG1-MEL (with Paige Electric PE-393 Cable)
  - d. Isolation Valves:
    - 1) PVC ball valves, size to match pipe size.
    - 2) Nibco T-113 non-rising stem gate valve, size to match pipe size
  - e. Automatic Filter:
    - 1) 1" Amiad Mini Sigma Automatic Filter w/ 300 Micron screen (in Guardshack Enclosure)
  - f. Quick Coupling Valves and Keys:
    - 1) Approved Products. See Section 01 6200 for definitions of Categories.
      - a) Rainbird: 44NP with 55k-1 key, SH-O swivel, and Locking Cover Key.
11. Valve Accessories:
  - a. Valve manifolds:
    - 1) Type Two Acceptable Products.
      - a) Action: 1800 Series, Models 18001, and 18002.
      - b) Rainbird: MS Series.
      - c) Equals as approved by Architect before use. See Section 01 6200.

- b. Valve Boxes And Extensions:
    - 1) Lid Colors:
      - a) Green: Lawn areas (potable and secondary water).
      - b) Brown/Tan: Planter bed areas (rock or bark) / (potable and secondary water).
    - 2) Type Two Acceptable Products:
      - a) Rainbird: VB-STD, VB-JMB, VB-STDT or VB-JMT Series, VB-STDP or VB-JMBP Series, VB-MAX series.
      - b) Carson Industries: Model 1419-12, Model 1419-18, Model 1730-18 Jumbo.
      - c) Equal as approved by Architect before use. See Section 01 6200.
  - c. Valve Box Supports: CMU Block.
12. Drip System:
- a. Drip Valve Assembly:
    - 1) Approved Products. See Section 01 6200 for definitions of Categories.
      - a) Rainbird:
        - (1) Over 4 GPM: XCZ-100-PRB COM series (4-20 gpm).
        - (2) Under 4 GPM: XCZ-075-PRF series.
  - b. Distribution Tubing:
    - 1) Category Four Approved Products. See Section 01 6200 for definitions of Categories.
      - a) Rainbird SPX-Flex Flexible Hose
      - b) Netafim TLCV-09-12 Dripline for trees.
  - c. Drip Emitters
    - 1) Category Four Approved Products. See Section 01 6200 for definitions of Categories.
      - a) Rainbird XB-T-PC-1032.
      - b) Netafim: Techline CV tubing, flush valves, and fittings.
  - d. Valve Boxes:
    - 1) Lid Colors:
      - a) Green: Lawn areas (potable and secondary water).
      - b) Brown/Tan: Bare soil and rock areas (potable and secondary water).
    - 2) Type Two Acceptable Products:
      - a) Rainbird **12 Inch 300 mm** Standard: VB-STD, VB-STDT, or VB-STDP Series.
      - b) Carson Industries **12 Inch (300 mm)** Standard Series: Model 1419-12.
      - c) Equal as approved by Architect before use. See Section 01 6200.
13. Other Components:
- a. Recommended by Manufacturer and subject to Architect's review and acceptance before installation.
  - b. Provide components necessary to complete system and make operational.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 INSTALLERS

- A. Approved Irrigation System Installers: To have previous L.D.S. Church Meetinghouse experience within the past 3 years.

### 3.2 EXAMINATION

- A. Verification Of Conditions:
  - 1. Perform pressure test at stub-out on main water line provided for irrigation system.
  - 2. Notify Architect if pressures over **90 psi** or under **60 psi** are found to determine if some re-design of system is necessary before beginning work on system.

### 3.3 PREPARATION

- A. Protection:
  - 1. Protection Of In-Place Conditions:
    - a. Repair or replace work damaged during course of the Work at no additional cost to Owner. If damaged work is new, installer of original work shall perform repair or replacement.
    - b. Do not cut existing tree roots measuring over **2 inches** in diameter in order to install irrigation lines.
- B. Surface Preparation:
  - 1. Layout of Irrigation Heads:

- a. Location of heads and piping shown on Drawings is approximate. Actual placement may vary slightly as is required to achieve full, even coverage without spraying onto buildings, sidewalks, fences, etc.
- b. During layout, consult with Architect to verify proper placement and make recommendations, where revisions are advisable.
- c. Minor adjustments in system layout will be permitted to avoid existing fixed obstructions.
- d. Make certain changes from Contract Documents are shown on record drawings.

### 3.4 INSTALLATION

- A. Trenching And Backfilling:
  1. Pulling of pipe is not permitted.
  2. Excavate trenches to specified depth. Remove rocks larger than **1-1/2 inch** in any direction from bottom of trench. Separate out rocks larger than **1-1/2 inch** in any direction uncovered in trenching operation from excavated material and remove from areas to receive landscaping.
  3. Cover pipe both top and sides with **2 inches** of rock-free soil as specified under PART 2 PRODUCTS. Remainder of backfill to within **5 inches** of finish grade shall be as specified in Section 31 2323. Top **5 inches** of backfill shall be topsoil as specified in Section 32 9113.
  4. Do not cover pressure main, irrigation pipe, or fittings until Architect has inspected and approved system.
- B. Sleeving:
  1. Sleeve water lines and control wires under walks and paving. Extend sleeves **6 inches** minimum beyond walk or pavement edge. Cover sleeve ends until pipes and wires are installed to keep sleeve clean and free of dirt and debris.
  2. Position sleeves with respect to buildings and other obstructions so pipe can be easily removed.
- C. Grades And Draining:
  1. In localities where winterization is required, grade piping so system can be completely drained or blown out with compressed air. If system is not designed to be blown out with compressed air:
    - a. Slope pipe to drain to control valve box where possible.
    - b. Where this is not possible, slope pipe to a minimum number of low points. At these low points, install:
      - 1) **3/4 inch** brass ball valve for manual drain. Do not use automatic drain valves.
      - 2) Install **2 inch** Class 200 PVC pipe over top of drain and cut at finish grade.
      - 3) Provide rubber valve cap marker.
      - 4) Provide **one cu ft** pea gravel sump at outlet of each drain.
    - c. Slope pipes under parking areas or driveways to drain outside these areas.
    - d. Provide and install quick-coupling valve or valves in location for easy blowout of entire system. Install quick coupler valves with **4 lineal feet** minimum of Schedule 80 PVC pipe between valve and main line.
- D. Installation of Pipe:
  1. Install pipe in manner to provide for expansion and contraction as recommended by Manufacturer.
  2. Unless otherwise indicated on Drawings, install main lines and lateral lines connecting pop-up rotor and impact sprinklers with minimum cover of **18 inches** based on finished grade. Install remaining lateral lines, including those connecting drip tubing, with minimum of **12 inches** of cover based on finish grade.
  3. Install pipe and wires under driveways or parking areas in specified sleeves **18 inches** below finish grade or as shown on Drawings.
  4. Locate no sprinkler head closer than **12 inches** from building foundation. Heads immediately adjacent to mow strips, walks, or curbs shall be **one inch** below top of mow strip, walk, or curb and have one to **3 inches** clearance between head and mow strip, walk, or curb.
  5. Cut plastic pipe square. Remove burrs at cut ends before installation so unobstructed flow will result.
  6. Make solvent weld joints as follows:
    - a. Do not make solvent weld joints if ambient temperature is below **35 deg F**.
    - b. Clean mating pipe and fitting with clean, dry cloth and apply one coat of P-70 primer to each.
    - c. Apply uniform coat of 711 solvent to outside of pipe.
    - d. Apply solvent to fitting in similar manner.

- e. Give pipe or fitting a quarter turn to insure even distribution of solvent and make sure pipe is inserted to full depth of fitting socket.
  - f. Allow joints to set at least 24 hours before applying pressure to PVC pipe.
  7. Tape threaded connections with teflon tape.
  8. If pipe is larger than **3 inches (75 mm)**, install concrete thrust blocks wherever change of direction occurs on PVC main pressure lines.
- E. Control Valves And Controller
1. Install valves in plastic boxes with reinforced heavy duty plastic covers. Locate valve boxes within **12 inches** of sidewalks and shrub bed edges with tops at finish grade. Do not install more than two valves in single box.
  2. Place **3 inches** minimum of pea gravel below bricks supporting valve boxes to drain box. Set valve boxes over valve so all parts of valve can be reached for service. Set cover of valve box even with finish grade. Valve box cavity shall be reasonably free from dirt and debris.
  3. Wiring:
    - a. Tape control wire to side of main line every **10 feet** Where control wire leaves main or lateral line, enclose it in gray conduit.
    - b. Use waterproof wire connectors consisting of properly-sized wire nut and grease cap at splices and locate all splices within valve boxes.
    - c. Use white or gray color for common wire and other colors for all other wire. Each common wire may serve only one controller.
    - d. Run one spare control wire from panel continuously from valve to valve throughout system similar to common wire for use as a replacement if a wire fails. Spare wire shall be different color than other wires, except use of green wire is not acceptable. Mark spare control wire in control box as an unconnected wire. Extend spare control wires **24 inches** and leave coiled in each valve box.
- F. Sprinkler Heads:
1. Set sprinkler heads and quick-coupling valves perpendicular to finish grade.
  2. Do not install sprinklers using side inlets. Install using base inlets only.
  3. Set sprinkler heads at a consistent distance from existing walks, curbs, and other paved areas and to grade by using specified components or other method demonstrated in Pre-Construction Conference.
- G. Drip Assembly:
1. Install pipe providing for expansion and contraction as recommended by Manufacturer.
  2. Cut tubing square and remove burrs at cut ends.
  3. Distribution tubing shall be between **14 inches** minimum and **48 inches** maximum long. Layout PVC lateral lines as necessary to keep distribution tubing lengths within specified tolerances.
  4. Locate drip emitter on uphill side of plant within rootball zone.
  5. Layout in-line tubing for trees as indicated on Drawings. Layout in-line tubing for shrubs and groundcovers so plants receive water within rootball zones.
  6. Locate in-line tubing on top of soil but under bark mulch and filter fabric.
  7. Staple in-line tubing to ground at **6 foot** maximum intervals and within **12 inches** of ends and intersections.
  8. Assembly Using Solvent Weld Joints:
    - a. Do not make solvent weld joint if ambient temperature is below **35 deg F**.
    - b. Clean mating pipe and fitting with clean, dry cloth. Apply uniform coat of Weld-On PVC 795 solvent to outside of pipe and inside socket of fitting. Give joint quarter turn and make certain pipe is inserted to full depth of fitting socket.
    - c. Allow joints to set 24 hours minimum before applying pressure to pipe.
  9. Assembly Using 'Funny Pipe' Type Joints:
    - a. Connect distribution tubing to lateral line using barbed ell fitting.
    - b. Connect fitting to distribution tubing using straight barbed fitting with **1/2 inch** threaded end.
- H. Before installation of sprinkler heads and drip emitters, open control valves and use full head of water to flush out system.
- I. Arrange valve stations to operate in an easy-to-view progressive sequence around building. Tag valves with waterproof labels showing final sequence station assignments.

### 3.5 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Field Tests:
  - 1. Main Line:
    - a. Before backfilling main line, test pressure at 100 psi minimum for 2 hours minimum and make certain there are no leaks.
      - 1) A report of the test results along with photographs of the testing process are to be provided by the landscape architect or his authorized representative at completion of testing.
      - 2) This report shall be included in the Operations and Maintenance Manual along with the acceptance certificate at the end of the project.
      - 3) Notify Architect 2 working days minimum before conducting test.
    - b. Test report:
      - 1) Report of the test results along with photographs of the testing process are to be provided by the landscape architect or his authorized representative at completion of testing.
      - 2) This report shall be included in the Operations and Maintenance Manual along with the acceptance certificate at the end of the project.
    - c. Notify Architect 2 working days minimum before conducting test.
- B. Field Inspections:
  - 1. Architect's irrigation design consultant, or certified water auditor recommended by consultant and approved in writing by Architect, will review irrigation system before substantial completion.
  - 2. Installations completed after water source has been turned off for season, as determined by Architect, will be accepted following spring, after system can be checked for proper operation.
  - 3. Upon acceptance of irrigation system, reviewer will provide signed acceptance certificate.

### 3.6 ADJUSTING

- A. Adjust sprinkler heads to proper grade when turf is sufficiently established to allow walking on it without appreciable harm. Such lowering and raising of sprinkler heads shall be part of original contract with no additional cost to Owner.
- B. Adjust sprinkler heads for proper distribution and trim so spray does not fall on building.
- C. Adjust watering time of valves to provide proper amounts of water to plants.

### 3.7 CLOSEOUT ACTIVITIES

- A. Training:
  - 1. After system is installed and approved, instruct Owner's designated personnel in complete operation and maintenance procedures using the Meetinghouse Site Management Plan (MSMP) on new construction projects.

**END OF SECTION**



**SECTION 32 8466  
UNDERGROUND SPRINKLERS - CONTROLLERS**

**PART 1 GENERAL****1.01 SECTION INCLUDES**

- A. Furnish and install irrigation controllers as described in Contract Documents complete with accessories necessary for proper function.

**1.02 RELATED REQUIREMENTS:**

- A. Section 01 4000: 'Quality Requirements'.  
B. Section 32: 8423: 'Underground Sprinklers'.  
C. Section 32: 9001: 'Common Planting Requirements'.  
D. Division 26: Power to controller.

**1.03 DEFINITIONS**

- A. Landscape Management Plan (LMP): See Section 32 9001 for definition.  
B. Plant Establishment Period: See Section 32 9001 for definition.  
C. Smart Controller: Irrigation clocks that automatically adjust irrigation run times in response to environmental changes using sensors and weather information to manage watering times and frequency.  
D. Two Wire Path: Conducts power to solenoid valves and also conducts communication signals from Controller to each device on system.

**1.04 ADMINISTRATIVE REQUIREMENTS**

- A. Coordinate work with other sections.  
B. Pre-Installation Conference:  
1. Participate in pre-installation conference as specified in Section 32 8423 and Section 32 9000:  
a. In addition to agenda items specified in those Sections, review following:  
1) Submittal requirements.  
2) For projects with smart controllers, review 'Smart Controller Installation Checklist' which can be accessed on the AEC website here:  
[https://aec.churchofjesuschrist.org/aec/design\\_guidelines/](https://aec.churchofjesuschrist.org/aec/design_guidelines/)  
3) Training Acknowledgement requirements for operation of smart controller.  
4) Review Tests and Reports for smart controllers.

**1.05 SUBMITTALS**

- A. See Section 01 3000-Administrative Requirements, for submittal procedures. Submittals may be included in more than one submittal group listed below.  
B. Submittals for Review:  
1. Do not commence work or deliver products to site until Landcape Architect approves submittals for review.  
2. Product Data:  
a. Manufacturer's cut sheets for each element of system.  
C. Submittals for Information:  
1. Training Acknowledgement:  
a. Landscape Architect will provide certificate acknowledging training has been performed:  
1) Include name and signature of Installer, Installer's company, Installer's telephone number, and date.  
2) Include name and signature of Owner's Representative, Owner's Representative Group name, Owner's Representative Group telephone number, and date.

- 3) Acknowledge Owner's Representative has been trained in operation of controller.
2. Smart Controller Checklist completed by factory approved installer.
  - a. Complete and sign 'Smart Controller Installation Checklist'.
    - 1) Access 'Smart Controller Checklist' through:
      - (a) [https://aec.churchofjesuschrist.org/aec/design\\_guidelines/](https://aec.churchofjesuschrist.org/aec/design_guidelines/)
      - (b) Go to the Landscape sub-section.

D. Submittals for Project Closeout:

1. Operations And Maintenance Data (Digital Format Only):
  - a. Contractor's directions for controller operation and maintenance:
    - 1) Winter start-up and spring shut-down,
    - 2) Seasonal activation and shutdown,
  - b. Manufacturer Instructions:
    - 1) Manufacturer's printed literature on operation and maintenance of operating elements of system.
  - c. Contractor's recommended run times for each valve. Include sufficient time for plants to thrive during the following periods:
    - 1) Plant Establishment period.
    - 2) Post-Plant Establishment period.
  - d. Smart Controller Subscription Terms:
    - 1) HydroPoint WeatherTRAK:
      - (a) ET subscription.
2. Record Documentation:
  - a. Testing and Inspection Reports
    - 1) When pertinent, completed 'Smart Controller Installation Checklist'.
3. Warranty Documentation
  - a. Smart Controller Warranty
    - 1) Manufacturer's extended Warranty for smart controller.
  - b. Automatic Controller Warranty.
4. Landscape Management Plan (LMP) In addition to items listed in 32 8423 include the following:
  - a. Controller Operation and Maintenance Data
  - b. Smart controller checklist.
  - c. Controller warranty
  - d. Controller training acknowledgment.

E. Final payment for system authorized as per Section 32 8423.

## 1.06 QUALITY ASSURANCE

### A. Regulatory Requirements:

1. General:
  - a. Work and materials shall be in accordance with latest rules and regulations, and other applicable state or local laws.
  - b. Nothing in Contract Documents is to be construed to permit work not conforming to these codes.

### B. Qualifications:

1. Smart Controller Installer:
  - a. Manufacture approved certified installers familiar with required irrigation system and smart controller installation procedures:
    - 1) WeatherTRAK: Factory approved installer having completed WeatherTRAK certified contractor training (see [www.weathertrak.com](http://www.weathertrak.com) for details).
    - 2) Agree to complete reporting documents.
    - 3) Agree to instruct Owner's designated personnel in complete operation and maintenance of smart controller.

- 4) Agree to assist Landscape Architect in completing Watering Schedule for Landscape Management Plan (LMP).
2. Controller Installer:
  - a. Irrigation Subcontractor
    - 1) Company specializing in performing work of this section.
    - 2) Minimum five (5) years experience in irrigation sprinkler installations.
    - 3) Minimum five (5) satisfactorily completed irrigation sprinkler installations in past three (3) years of projects similar in size, scope, and complexity required for this project before bidding.
    - 4) Use trained personnel familiar with required irrigation sprinkler procedures and with Contract Documents.
    - 5) Foreman or supervisor required to attend pre-installation conference.
  - b. Irrigation Installer
    - 1) Perform installation under direction of foreman or supervisor.
    - 2) Minimum three (3) years experience in irrigation sprinkler installations similar in size, scope, and complexity.
3. Submit documentation upon request.

C. Testing and Inspection.

1. Owner will provide Certified Water Audit as specified in Section 32 8423:

### 1.07 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

A. Storage And Handling Requirements:

1. Protect materials from damage and prolonged exposure to sunlight.

### 1.08 WARRANTY

A. Warranty:

1. Smart Controller:
  - a. Provide Manufacturer's extended warranty for five (5) years to be free of design, materials, and workmanship defects.

## PART 2 PRODUCTS

### 2.01 SYSTEM

A. Manufacturers:

1. HydroPoint Data Systems, Inc., Petaluma, CA [www.hydropoint.com](http://www.hydropoint.com).
2. Rain Bird Sprinkler Manufacturing Corp, Glendora, CA [www.rainbird.com](http://www.rainbird.com).

B. Approved Distributors:

1. HydroPoint Data Systems, Inc. (Weather/TRAK) Petaluma, CA [www.hydropoint.com](http://www.hydropoint.com).
  - a. For CA, AZ, NV, TX, NM, CO, NC, NY, NJ, OR, and WA contact:
    - 1) Charles Zaher (707) 338-7029, [czaher@hydropoint.com](mailto:czaher@hydropoint.com).
  - b. Utah (and all other states) contact:
    - 1) Sprinkler Supply - West Jordan, UT, Joe Jackson (801) 404-1371 (801) 566-8172 [joe@sprinklersupplyco.com](mailto:joe@sprinklersupplyco.com).

C. Smart Controllers:

1. Hydropoint WeatherTRAK:
  - a. Traditional Wiring option:
    - 1) Model WTPRO3-C-xx-CWM (18 stations or more).
  - b. Inspection of system.
  - c. Vandal resistant powder coated steel finish suitable for either indoor or outdoor environments. Provide stainless steel where outdoor conditions require non-corrosive material.
  - d. Wall mounted enclosure assembly.
  - e. Key-Lock.
  - f. Low Profile Antenna.

- g. Universal Radio remote interface.
- h. One (1) year ET subscription.
- i. On-site post-installation controller inspection and start-up by authorized service provider.
- j. Site consultation (For O&M and R&I projects).
- k. All other components required for complete and operational system.

D. Automatic Rain Sensors:

- a. Hydro-Rain: HRC-100-RS-RF (wireless); HRC-100-RS-HW (wired).
- b. Rain Bird: WR2-RFC, WR2-48.

E. Hydrometer: See Section 32 8423.

F. Other Components:

- 1. Recommended by Manufacturer and subject to Landscape Architect's review and approval before installation.
- 2. Provide components necessary to complete system and make operational.

### **PART3 EXECUTION**

#### **3.01 PREPARATION**

A. Protection:

- 1. Protection Of In-Place Conditions:
  - a. Repair or replace work damaged during course of Work at no additional cost to Owner. If damaged work is new, installer of original work shall perform repair or replacement.
  - b. Do not cut existing tree roots measuring over 2 inches (50 mm) in diameter in order to install irrigation lines.

#### **3.02 INSTALLATION**

A. Controllers:

- 1. Install as detailed and as per manufacturer's recommendations.
- 2. In hot climates, install out of sun exposure.
- 3. Install grounding as per Manufacturer's recommendations:
  - a. Note: if controller is mounted within building, coordinate grounding with Electrical Engineer.
- 4. Install automatic rain sensor as per Manufacturer's recommendations.
- 5. Provide sticker with Facility Manager's Contact information inside Controller but in plain view.

B. Smart Controller:

- 1. Fill out 'Smart Controller Installation Checklist' provided in Attachment of this specification during installation of Controller.
- 2. Install communication connections as required: Wireless and/or ethernet.

#### **3.03 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL**

A. Field Tests and Inspections:

- 1. Verify controllers are fully operational and installed per manufacturer's recommendations.
- 2. Smart Controller Testing:
  - a. Use 'Smart Controller Installation Checklist' or 'Manufacturer's Operational Report' to test system to verify following:
    - 1) Verify all aspects of smart controller installation checklist or 'Manufacturer's Operational Report' are complete.
    - 2) Verify controller is installed correctly and will automatically adjust irrigation run times in response to environmental changes using sensor and weather information to manage watering times and frequency.
    - 3) Sign 'Smart Controller Installation Checklist' to be included in Closeout Submittals.

3. Substantial Completion Walkthrough. See Section 32 8423.
4. Irrigation Approval. See Section 32 8423.

B. Non-Conforming Work: Non-conforming work as covered in General Conditions applies, but is not limited to following:

1. Underground Sprinkler System:
  - a. Correct any work found defective or not complying with Contract Document requirements at no additional cost to Owner.

### **3.04 ADJUSTING**

A. Watering Time:

1. Adjust zone watering times to provide proper amounts of water to plants.

### **3.05 CLOSEOUT ACTIVITIES**

A. Training:

1. After system is installed and approved, instruct Owner's designated personnel in complete operation and maintenance procedures using Landscape Management Plan (LMP).
  - a. Describe difference between plant establishment schedule and post plant establishment schedule.

B. Smart Controller Training:

1. Manufacturer's approved Distributor to instruct Owner's designated personnel in complete operation and maintenance of smart controller.
2. Manufacturer's approved Distributor to review terms of Warranty, Maintenance procedures and contact information with Owner's Representative.

**END OF SECTION**

**SECTION 32 9001**  
**COMMON PLANTING REQUIREMENTS**

**PART 1 - GENERAL****1.1 SUMMARY**

- A. Includes But Not Limited To:
  - 1. Common procedures and requirements for landscaping work.
  - 2. Provide maintenance for new landscaping as described in Contract Documents.
- B. Related Requirements:
  - 1. Section 01 4301: Quality Assurance – Qualifications.
  - 2. Section 32 0501: Common Earthwork Requirements.
  - 3. Section 31 2213: Rough Grading.
  - 4. Section 31 2216: Fine Grading.
  - 5. Section 32 8423: Underground Sprinklers.
  - 6. Section 32 9113: Soil Preparation.

**1.2 ADMINISTRATIVE REQUIREMENTS**

- A. Pre-Installation Conference:
  - 1. Schedule pre-installation conference as specified in Section 31 2213.
  - 2. Schedule planting pre-installation conference after completion of Fine Grading specified in Section 31 2216, but before beginning landscape work.
  - 3. In addition to agenda items specified in Section 01 3100, review the following:
    - a. Establish responsibility for maintenance of new landscaping during all phases of construction period.
    - b. Prepare five typical landscape planting excavations and conduct percolation test to verify that water drains away within two hours. Discuss results of percolation tests with Architect and Owner's representative.

**1.3 SUBMITTALS**

- A. Closeout Submittals:
  - 1. Include following in Operations And Maintenance Manual specified in Section 01 7800:
    - a. Operations And Maintenance Data:
      - 1) At completion of landscape work, submit two copies of typewritten instructions recommending procedures to be established by Owner for maintenance of landscape work for one full year after contract maintenance period ends.

**1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE**

- A. Qualifications: Requirements of Section 01 4301 applies, but not limited to the following:
  - 1. Installer:
    - a. Use trained personnel familiar with required planting procedures and with Contract Documents.
    - b. Planting shall be performed under direction of foreman or supervisor with minimum five years experience in landscape installations.

**1.5 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING**

- A. Storage And Handling Requirements:
  - 1. Deliver packaged materials in containers showing weight, analysis, and name of Manufacturer.
  - 2. Deliver sod, plants, trees, and shrubs in healthy and vigorous condition.
  - 3. Protect materials from deterioration during delivery.
- B. Storage And Handling Requirements:
  - 1. Store in location on site where they will not be endangered and where they can be adequately watered and kept in healthy and vigorous condition.
  - 2. Protect materials from deterioration while stored at site.

**PART 2 - PRODUCTS:****2.1 POST-EMERGENT WEED CONTROL:**

- A. Acceptable Products:
  - 1. Dymid by Elanco.
  - 2. Treflan or Surflan by Dow Agrosiences.
  - 3. Equal as approved by Architect before use. See Section 01 6200.

**PART 3 - EXECUTION****3.1 INSTALLERS**

- A. Acceptable Installers: To have previous L.D.S. Church Meetinghouse or Seminary experience within the past 5 years.

**3.2 EXAMINATION**

- A. Verification Of Conditions:
  - 1. Inspect site and Contract Documents to become thoroughly acquainted with locations of irrigation, ground lighting, and utilities.
  - 2. Repair damage to irrigation, ground lighting, and utilities and other items adjacent to landscaping caused by work of this Section or replace at no additional cost to Owner.

**3.3 PREPARATION**

- A. Before proceeding with work, verify dimensions and quantities. Report variations between Drawings and site to Architect before proceeding with landscape work.
  - 1. Plant totals are for convenience of Contractor only and are not guaranteed. Verify amounts shown on Drawings.
  - 2. All planting indicated on Drawings is required unless indicated otherwise.
- B. Protection:
  - 1. Take care in performing landscaping work to avoid conditions that will create hazards. Post signs or barriers as required.
  - 2. Provide adequate means for protection from damage through excessive erosion, flooding, heavy rains, etc. Repair or replace damaged areas.
  - 3. Keep site well drained and landscape excavations dry.

**3.4 INSTALLATION**

- A. Interface With Other Work:
  - 1. Do not plant trees and shrubs until major construction operations are completed. Do not commence landscaping work until work of Section 31 2216 and Section 32 8423 has been completed and approved.
- B. Coordinate installation of planting materials during normal planting seasons for each type of plant material required.
- C. Hand excavate as required.
- D. Maintain grade stakes until parties concerned mutually agree upon removal.
- E. When conditions detrimental to plant growth are encountered, such as rubble fill or adverse drainage conditions, notify Architect before planting.

**3.5 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL**

- A. Field Inspection:
  - 1. Architect will inspect landscaping installation approximately two weeks before Substantial Completion.
  - 2. Replace landscaping that is dead or appears dead as directed by Architect within 10 days of notification and before Substantial Completion.

**3.6 CLEANING**

## A. Waste Management:

1. Immediately clean up soil or debris spilled onto pavement and dispose of deleterious materials.

**3.7 CLOSEOUT ACTIVITIES**

## A. Instruction Of Owner:

1. Replace damaged plantings at no additional cost to Owner.

**3.8 PROTECTION**

- A. Protect planted areas against traffic or other use immediately after planting is completed by placing adequate warning signs and barricades.
- B. Provide adequate protection of planted areas against trespassing, erosion, and damage of any kind. Remove this protection after Architect has accepted planted areas.

**3.9 MAINTENANCE**

## A. General:

1. Before beginning maintenance period, plants shall be in at least as sound, healthy, vigorous, and in approved condition as when delivered to site, unless accepted by Architect in writing at final landscape inspection.
2. Maintain landscaping from completion of landscape installation to 30 days after Substantial Completion Meeting. Areas sodded or seeded after September 1st will accepted following spring approximately one month after start of growing season, May 1st or as determined by Architect, if specified conditions have been met.
3. Replace landscaping that is dead or appears unhealthy or non-vigorous as directed by Architect before end of maintenance period. Make replacements within 10 days of notification. Lawn that does not live and has to be replaced shall be guaranteed and maintained an additional 30 days from date of replacement.

## B. Sodded Lawn:

1. Maintain sodded lawn areas until lawn complies with specified requirements and throughout maintenance period.
2. Water sodded areas in sufficient quantities and at required frequency to maintain sub-soil immediately under sod continuously moist **3 to 4 inches** deep.
3. Cut grass first time when it reaches **3 inches** high. Continue to mow at least once each week throughout maintenance period. Remove clippings.
4. Apply weed killer as necessary to maintain weed-free lawn. Apply weed killer in accordance with manufacturer's instructions during calm weather when air temperature is between **50 and 80 deg F**.
5. At end of 30 day maintenance period, fertilize lawns as recommended in Section 32 9113.

## C. Trees, Shrubs, And Plants:

1. Maintain by pruning, cultivating, and weeding as required for healthy growth.
2. Restore planting basins.
3. Tighten and repair stake and guy supports and reset trees and shrubs to proper grades or vertical positions as required.
4. Spray as required to keep trees and shrubs free of insects and disease.
5. Provide supplemental water by hand as needed in addition to water from sprinkling system.

**END OF SECTION**



**SECTION 32 9101**  
**PLANT MAINTENANCE**

**PART 1 - GENERAL****1.1 SUMMARY**

- A. Includes But Not Limited To:
  - 1. Provide maintenance for new landscaping as described in Contract Documents.
- B. Related Sections:
  - 1. Section 32 9001: Common Planting Requirements.

**PART 2 - PRODUCTS: Not Used****PART 3 - EXECUTION****3.1 PERFORMANCE**

- A. General:
  - 1. Before beginning maintenance period, plants shall be in at least as sound, healthy, vigorous, and in approved condition as when delivered to site, unless accepted by Architect in writing at final landscape inspection
  - 2. Maintain landscaping from completion of landscape installation to 30 days after Substantial Completion Meeting.
  - 3. Replace landscaping that is dead or appears unhealthy or non-vigorous as directed by Architect at end of maintenance period. Make replacements within 10 days of notification. Lawn that does not live and has to be replaced shall be guaranteed and maintained an additional 30 days from date of replacement.
- B. Sodded Lawn:
  - 1. Maintain sodded lawn areas until lawn complies with specified requirements and throughout maintenance period.
  - 2. Water sodded areas in sufficient quantities and at required frequency to maintain sub-soil immediately under sod continuously moist **3 to 4 inches** deep.
  - 3. Cut grass first time when it reaches **3 inches** high. Continue to mow at least once each week throughout maintenance period. Remove clippings.
  - 4. Apply weed killer as necessary to maintain weed-free lawn. Apply weed killer in accordance with manufacturer's instructions during calm weather when air temperature is between **50 and 80 deg F**.
  - 5. At end of 30 day maintenance period, fertilize lawns with 16-16-8 at rate recommended by Fertilizer Manufacturer.
- C. Trees, Shrubs, And Plants:
  - 1. Maintain by pruning, cultivating, and weeding as required for healthy growth.
  - 2. Restore planting basins.
  - 3. Tighten and repair stake and guy supports and reset trees and shrubs to proper grades or vertical positions as required.
  - 4. Spray as required to keep trees and shrubs free of insects and disease.
  - 5. Provide supplemental water by hand as needed in addition to water from sprinkling system.

**END OF SECTION**

**SECTION 32 9113**  
**SOIL PREPARATION**

**PART 1 - GENERAL****1.1 SUMMARY**

- A. Includes But Not Limited To:
1. Import and Spread screened topsoil meeting Church Standards.
  2. Perform soil preparation work as described in Contract Documents.
  3. Furnish and apply soil additives as described in Contract Documents.

**1.2 REFERENCES**

- A. Reference Standards:
1. ASTM International:
    - a. ASTM 1557-02, 'Standard Test Methods for Laboratory Compaction Characteristics of Soil Using Modified Effort.'

**1.3 ADMINISTRATIVE REQUIREMENTS**

- A. Pre-Installation Conference:
1. Schedule pre-installation conference as specified in Section 31 2213.
  2. In addition to agenda items specified in Section 01 3100, review the following:
    - a. Review soil amendments and fertilizer requirements.

**1.4 SUBMITTALS**

- A. Action Submittals:
1. Product Data:
    - a. Product literature and chemical / nutrient analysis of soil amendments and fertilizers.
  2. Samples:
    - a. Sample of soil conditioner for approval before delivery to site. Include product analysis list.
- B. Informational Submittals:
1. Installer Reports:
    - a. Delivery slips indicating amount of soil conditioner delivered to Project site.

**PART 2 - PRODUCTS****2.1 MATERIALS**

- A. Once imported topsoil meets the topsoil specs, incorporate the following additional soil amendments into the imported topsoil used for Project.
1. Acceptable Soil Amendments, Soil Conditioners, And Application Rates.
    - a. **"Soil Prep" Soil Conditioner from Miller Companies at the following rates:**
      - 1) **2 cubic yard per 1,000 square feet in lawn areas.**
      - 2) **25% 'Soil Prep' per soil volume mixed thoroughly in backfill of plant pits.**
    - b. EPA Class 'A' co-compost or compost with SAR less than 3.0, EC less than 4.0, and CN ratio of 15 to 25:1 passing through **1/2 inch** mesh screen:
  2. Acceptable Fertilizers And Application Rates:
    - a. **Apply NP and Iron Fertilizer at label rate and incorporate well. (Lawn areas)**
    - b. **Apply "Gro-Power Plus 5-3-1 w/M" into the backfill of plant pits and mix thoroughly at the following rates:**
      - 1) **5 lbs. for all deciduous and evergreen trees.**
      - 2) **2 cups for all shrubs.**
      - 3) **1 cup for all perennials and ornamental grasses.**
    - c. Equal as approved by Architect before installation. See Section 01 6200.

**PART 3 - EXECUTION****3.1 PERFORMANCE**

- A. Add specified soil amendments at specified rates to lawn areas. Roto-till or otherwise mix amendments evenly into top 4 inches of topsoil. Incorporate and leach soil amendments which require leaching, such as gypsum, within such time limits that soil is sufficiently dry to allow proper application of fertilizer and soil conditioners.

**END OF SECTION**

**SECTION 32 9120**  
**TOPSOIL PLACEMENT & GRADING**

**PART 1 - GENERAL****1.1 SUMMARY**

- A. Includes But Not Limited To:
1. Import topsoil meeting standard outlined in this section.
  2. Perform topsoil placement and grading work required to prepare site for installation of landscaping as described in Contract Documents.
  3. Furnish and apply soil additives as described in Contract Documents.

**1.2 REFERENCES**

- A. Reference Standards:
1. ASTM International:
    - a. ASTM 1557-02, 'Standard Test Methods for Laboratory Compaction Characteristics of Soil Using Modified Effort.'

**1.3 ADMINISTRATIVE REQUIREMENTS**

- A. Pre-Installation Conference: Participate in pre-installation conference specified in Section 31 2213.

**1.4 SUBMITTALS**

- A. Action Submittals:
1. Product Data: Product literature and chemical / nutrient analysis of soil amendments and fertilizers.
  2. Samples: Sample of soil conditioner for approval before delivery to site. Include product analysis list.
- B. Informational Submittals:
1. Field Quality Control Submittals:
    - a. Submit tests on all imported topsoil (if necessary to import) by licensed laboratory before use, using Owner Form 'Topsoil Test Report.'
      - 1) Before use, topsoil shall meet minimum specified requirements and be approved by Architect.
      - 2) If necessary, submit proposed amendments and application rates necessary to bring topsoil up to minimum specified requirements.
    - b. Submit report stating location of source of imported topsoil and account of recent use.

**PART 2 - PRODUCTS****2.1 MATERIALS**

- A. Topsoil:
1. Topsoil used in landscaped areas, whether imported or from site, shall be fertile, loose, friable soil meeting following criteria:
    - a. Chemical Characteristics:
      - 1) Acidity / alkalinity range: pH 5.5 to 8.0.
      - 2) Soluble Salts: less than 3.0 mmhos/cm.
      - 3) Sodium Absorption Ratio (SAR): less than 6.0.
      - 4) Organic Matter: greater than two percent.
    - b. Physical Characteristics:
      - 1) Gradation as defined by USDA triangle of physical characteristics as measured by hydrometer.
        - a) Sand: 15 to 60 percent.
        - b) Silt: 10 to 60 percent.
        - c) Clay: 5 to 30 percent.
      - 2) Clean and free from toxic minerals and chemicals, noxious weeds, rocks larger than **1-1/2 inch** in any dimension, and other objectionable materials.

- 3) Soil shall not contain more than 5 percent by volume of rocks measuring over **1/2 inch** in largest size once screened.

### **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

#### **3.1 EXAMINATION**

- A. Do not commence work of this Section until grading tolerances specified in Section 31 2216 are met.

#### **3.2 PREPARATION**

- A. Protection of In-Place Conditions: Protect utilities and site elements from damage.
- B. Surface Preparation:
  1. Disk, till, or aerate with approved agricultural aerator to depth of **6 inches**.
  2. Seven days maximum before beginning seeding and planting:
    - a. Loosen area **4 inches** deep, dampen thoroughly, and cultivate to properly break up clods and lumps.
    - b. Rake area to remove clods, rocks, weeds, roots, and debris.
    - c. Grade and shape landscape area to bring surface to true uniform planes free from irregularities and to provide drainage and proper slope to catch basins.
  3. Limit use of heavy equipment to areas no closer than **6 feet** from building or other permanent structures. Use hand held tillers for preparation of subsoil in areas closer than **6 feet**.

#### **3.3 PERFORMANCE**

- A. Tolerances:
  1. Total topsoil depth of **5 inches** minimum in lawn areas.
  2. All shrub beds between building and parking lot (including front of building) to have full bed filled with **12 inches** minimum of topsoil.
  3. All shrub beds between parking lot and property perimeter (including interior parking lot islands) to have topsoil implemented around individual plants in an area twice the size of the rootball and at the same depth as rootball.
  4. Finish grade of planting areas before planting and after addition of soil additives shall be specified distances below top of adjacent pavement of any kind:
    - a. Sodded Areas: **2 inches** below.
    - b. Shrub Areas with Rock Mulch: **4 inches** below.
- B. Do not expose or damage existing shrub or tree roots.
- C. Distribute screened/cleaned-up topsoil. Remove organic material, rocks and clods greater than 1-1/2 inch in any dimension, and other objectionable materials. Do not place topsoil whose moisture content makes it prone to compaction during placement process.
- D. Slope grade away from building for **12 feet** minimum from walls at slope of **1/2 inch in 12 inches** minimum unless otherwise noted. High point of finish grade at building foundation shall be **6 inches** minimum below finish floor level. Direct surface drainage in manner indicated on Drawings by molding surface to facilitate natural run-off of water. Fill low spots and pockets with topsoil and grade to drain properly.
- E. After landscape areas have been prepared, take no heavy objects over them except lawn rollers. Immediately before planting lawn and with topsoil in semi-dry condition, roll areas that are to receive lawn in two directions at approximately right angles with water ballast roller weighing **100 to 300 lbs**, depending on soil type. Rake or scarify and cut or fill irregularities that develop as required until area is true and uniform, free from lumps, depressions, and irregularities.

**END OF SECTION**

**SECTION 32 9223****SODDING****PART 1 - GENERAL****1.1 SUMMARY**

- A. Includes But Not Limited To:
  - 1. Furnish and install sodded lawn as described in Contract Documents.
- B. Related Requirements:
  - 1. Section 32 9001: Common Planting Requirements.

**1.2 SUBMITTALS**

- A. Informational Submittals:
  - 1. Source Quality Control Submittals: Written certification confirming lawn seed quality and mix.

**1.3 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING**

- A. Harvest, deliver, store, and handle sod in accordance with requirements of 'American Sod Producers (ASPA) Specifications for Turfgrass Sod Materials and Transplanting / Installing.'
- B. Cut sod in pieces approximately **3/4 to one inch** thick. Roll or fold sod so it may be lifted and handled without breaking or tearing and without loss of soil.
- C. Schedule deliveries to coincide with topsoil operations and laying. Keep storage at job site to minimum without causing delays.
  - 1. Deliver, unload, and store sod on pallets within 24 hours of being lifted.
  - 2. Do not deliver small, irregular, or broken pieces of sod.
- D. During wet weather, allow sod to dry sufficiently to prevent tearing during lifting and handling. During dry weather, protect sod from drying before installation. Water as necessary to insure vitality and to prevent excess loss of soil in handling. Sod that dries out before installation will be rejected.

**PART 2 - PRODUCTS****2.1 MATERIALS**

- A. Description:
  - 1. Superior sod grown from certified, high quality, seed of known origin or from plantings of certified grass seedlings or stolons:
    - a. Assure satisfactory genetic identity and purity.
    - b. Assure over-all high quality and freedom from noxious weeds or an excessive amount of other crop and weedy plants at time of harvest.
  - 2. Sod shall be composed of three varieties minimum of Kentucky Bluegrass.

**PART 3 - EXECUTION****3.1 INSTALLATION**

- A. Interface With Other Work: Do not commence work of this Section until work of Sections 32 9113 and 32 9300 has been completed and approved.
- B. Tolerances: Final grade of soil after sodding of lawn areas is complete shall be **one inch 5 mm** below top of adjacent pavement of any kind.
- C. Laying of Sod:
  - 1. Lay sod during growing season and within 48 hours of being lifted.
  - 2. Lay sod while top 6 inches of soil is damp, but not muddy. Sodding during freezing temperatures or over frozen soil is not acceptable.

3. Lay sod in rows perpendicular to slope with joints staggered. Butt sections closely without overlapping or leaving gaps between sections. Cut out irregular or thin sections with a sharp knife.
  4. Lay sod flush with adjoining existing sodded surfaces.
  5. Do not sod slopes steeper than 3:1. Consult with Architect for alternate treatment.
- D. After Laying of Sod Is Complete:
1. Roll horizontal surface areas in two directions perpendicular to each other.
  2. Repair and re-roll areas with depressions, lumps, or other irregularities. Heavy rolling to correct irregularities in grade will not be permitted.
  3. Water sodded areas immediately after laying sod to obtain moisture penetration through sod into top **6 inches** of topsoil.

### 3.2 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Field Inspection:
1. Sodded areas will be accepted at Project closeout if:
    - a. Sodded areas are properly established.
    - b. Sod is free of bare and dead spots and is without weeds.
    - c. No surface soil is visible when grass has been cut to height of **2-1/2 inches**.
  2. Sodded areas have been mowed a minimum of twice.

**END OF SECTION**

**SECTION 32 9300****PLANTS****PART 1 - GENERAL****1.1 SUMMARY**

- A. Includes But Not Limited To:
  - 1. Furnish and install landscaping plants as described in Contract Documents.
- B. Related Requirements:
  - 1. Section 32 9001: Common Planting Requirements.
  - 2. Section 32 9113: Soil Preparation.

**1.2 REFERENCES**

- A. Reference Standards:
  - 1. American Nursery & Landscape Association / American National Standards Institute:
    - a. ANLA / ANSI Z60.1-2004, 'American Standard for Nursery Stock.'

**1.3 SUBMITTALS**

- A. Action Submittals:
  - 1. Samples:
    - a. Top dressing mulches for approval before delivery to site.
    - b. Soil Amendments
- B. Closeout Submittals:
  - 1. Include following in Operations And Maintenance Manual specified in Section 01 7800:
    - a. Operations And Maintenance Data:
      - 1) Installer Instructions:
        - a) Provide written instructions covering maintenance requirements by Owner for one year beyond Contract maintenance period specified in Section 32 9001.
    - b. Warranty Documentation:
      - 1) Include final, executed copy of warranty.

**1.4 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING**

- A. Delivery And Acceptance Requirements:
  - 1. Deliver trees, shrubs, ground covers, and plants after preparations for planting have been completed and install immediately.
  - 2. Do not prune before delivery, except as approved by Architect.
  - 3. Protect bark, branches, and root systems from sun scald, drying, whipping, and other handling and tying damage.
  - 4. Do not bend or bind-tie trees or shrubs in such a manner as to destroy natural shape.
  - 5. Provide protective covering during delivery.
- B. Storage And Handling Requirements:
  - 1. Handle balled stock by root ball or container. Do not drop trees and shrubs during delivery.
  - 2. If planting is delayed more than six hours after delivery, set planting materials in shade and protect from weather and mechanical damage.
  - 3. Set balled stock on ground and cover ball with soil, saw dust, or other acceptable material approved by Architect. Do not place on pavement.
  - 4. Do not remove container-grown stock from containers before time of planting.
  - 5. Water root systems of trees and shrubs stored on site with fine spray. Water as often as necessary to maintain root systems in moist condition. Do not allow plant foliage to dry out.

**1.5 WARRANTY**

- A. Special Warranty:
  - 1. Provide written warranties as follows:



- a. Guarantee shrubs, ornamental grasses and perennials to live and remain in strong, vigorous, and healthy condition for one year minimum from date landscape installation is accepted as complete.
- c. Guarantee trees to live and remain in strong, vigorous, and healthy condition for one year from date landscape installation is accepted as complete.

## **PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

### **2.1 MATERIALS**

#### **A. Plants:**

1. Conform to requirements of Plant List and Key on Drawings and to ANLA / ANSI Z60.1.
2. Nomenclature:
  - a. Plant names used in Plant List conform to 'Standardized Plant Names' by American Joint Committee on Horticultural Nomenclature except in cases not covered. In these instances, follow custom of nursery trade. Plants shall bear a tag showing the genus, species, and variety of at least 10 percent of each species delivered to site.
3. Quality:
  - a. Plants shall be sound, healthy, vigorous, free from plant disease, insect pests or their eggs, noxious weeds, and have healthy, normal root systems. Container stock shall be well established and free of excessive root-bound conditions.
  - b. Do not prune plants or top trees prior to delivery.
  - c. Plant materials shall be subject to approval by Architect as to size, health, quality, and character.
  - d. Bare root trees are not acceptable.
  - e. Provide plant materials from licensed nursery or grower.
4. Measurements:
  - a. Measure height and spread of specimen plant materials with branches in their normal position as indicated on Drawings or Plant List.
  - b. Measurement should be average of plant, not greatest diameter. For example, plant measuring **15 inches (375 mm)** in widest direction and **9 inches (225 mm)** in narrowest would be classified as **12 inch (300 mm)** stock.
  - c. Plants properly trimmed and transplanted should measure same in every direction.
  - d. Measure caliper of trees **6 inches (150 mm)** above surface of ground.
  - e. Where caliper or other dimensions of plant materials are omitted from Plant List, plant materials shall be normal stock for type listed.
  - f. Plant materials larger than those specified may be supplied, with prior written approval of Architect, and:
    - 1) If complying with Contract Document requirements in all other respects.
    - 2) If at no additional cost to Owner.
    - 3) If sizes of roots or balls are increased proportionately.
5. Shape and Form:
  - a. Plant materials shall be symmetrical or typical for variety and species and conform to measurements specified in Plant List.
  - b. Well grown material will generally have height equal to or greater than spread. However, spread shall not be less than 2/3's of height.

### **2.2 ACCESSORIES**

#### **A. Planting Mix:**

1. As specified on details and Section 32 9113 (Soil Preparation)

#### **B. Tree Stakes:**

1. Acceptable Products:
  - a. **2 inch (50 mm)** diameter Lodgepole Pine.
  - b. Equal as approved by Architect before installation. See Section 01 6200.

#### **C. Tree Staking Ties:**

1. Acceptable Products:
  - a. **32 inch (800 mm)** Cinch-Tie tree ties by V.I.T. Products Inc, Escondido, CA [www.vitproducts.com](http://www.vitproducts.com).
  - b. Flex strap Tree Ties by Aquarius Brands Inc, Ontario, CA [www.aquariusbrands.com](http://www.aquariusbrands.com).

- c. Equal as approved by Architect before installation. See Section 01 6200.
- D. Pre-Emergent Herbicide:
  - 1. Approved Products. See Section 01 6200 for definitions of Categories.
    - a. Elanco XL2G granular by Crop Data Management Systems, Marysville, CA [www.cdms.net](http://www.cdms.net).
    - b. Ronstar G granular by Bayer Crop Science, Monheim, Germany [www.bayercropscience.com](http://www.bayercropscience.com).
    - c. Surflan AS liquid by United Phosphorous Inc, Trenton, NJ [www.upi-usa.com](http://www.upi-usa.com).
    - d. Oryzalin 4 A.S. liquid by FarmSaver, Seattle, WA [www.farmsaver.com](http://www.farmsaver.com).
- E. Weed Barrier:
  - 1. Acceptable Products:
    - a. DeWitt 4.1 oz 20 year woven polypropylene weed barrier.
    - b. Equal as approved by Architect before bidding. See Section 01 6200.
- F. Decorative Boulders:
  - 1. Acceptable Products:
    - a. 2'-4' size landscape boulders to compliment rock mulch (provide sample to Owner for approval).
    - b. Equal as approved by Architect before installation. See Section 01 6200.
- G. Rock Top Dressing Mulch:
  - 1. Acceptable Products:
    - a. 3/4"-1" 'Souththown' Crushed Stone from Utah Landscape Rock in Nephi, Utah or other approved provider.
    - b. Equal as approved by Architect before installation. See Section 01 6200.

## **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

### **3.1 EXAMINATION**

- A. Evaluation And Assessment:
  - 1. Before proceeding with work, check and verify dimensions and quantities. Report variations between Drawings and site to Architect before proceeding with work of this Section.
  - 2. Plant totals are for convenience only and are not guaranteed. Verify amounts shown on Drawings. All planting indicated on Drawings is required unless indicated otherwise.

### **3.2 PREPARATION**

- A. Layout individual tree and shrub locations and areas for multiple plantings. Stake locations and outline areas. Get Architect's approval before planting. Make minor adjustments as requested.

### **3.3 INSTALLATION**

- A. Interface With Other Work:
  - 1. Do not commence work of this Section until work of Section 32 9113 has been completed and approved.
- B. Excavation:
  - 1. If underground construction work or obstructions are encountered in excavation of planting holes, Architect will select alternate locations.
  - 2. Plant Excavation Size:
    - a. Diameter: Twice diameter of root ball or container minimum.
    - b. Depth: Equal to container or rootball depth.
  - 3. Unless excavated material meets topsoil requirements as specified in Section 32 9113, remove from landscape areas and do not use for landscaping purposes.
  - 4. Roughen sides and bottoms of excavations.
  - 5. With approval of Architect, select five typical planting excavations throughout site for drainage testing.
    - a. Fill selected excavations with water and verify that water drains away at rate of 3 inches per hour minimum. Inform Architect in writing of excavations where water does not drain properly.

- b. Select three excavations approximately **5 feet** away from each non-draining excavation and repeat tests. Continue testing process until non-draining areas have been identified.
  - c. In excavations located in identified non-draining areas, auger **6 inch** diameter hole **4 feet** deep in low point of each excavation and fill with tamped planting mix.
  - d. Do not plant trees or shrubs in holes that do not properly drain.
- C. Planting:
1. Removing Binders And Containers:
    - a. Remove top one / third of wire basket and burlap binders.
    - b. Remove plastic and twine binders from around root ball and tree trunk.
    - c. Remove wood boxes from around root ball. Remove box bottoms before positioning plant in hole. After plant is partially planted, remove remainder of box without injuring root ball.
  2. Plant immediately after removing binding material and containers. Place tree and shrub rootballs on undisturbed soil. After watering and settling, top of tree root balls shall be approximately **two inches** higher than finished grade and trunk flare is visible. Shrub root balls shall be approximately **one inch** higher than finished grade
  3. Properly cut off broken or frayed roots.
  4. Center plant in hole, remove remaining wire basket, and backfill with specified planting mix. Except in heavy clay soils, make ring of mounded soil around hole perimeter to form watering basin.
  5. Fill landscape excavations tamped planting mix. Settle by firming and watering to ensure top of ball one inch higher than surrounding soil.
  6. Do not use muddy soil for backfilling.
  7. Make adjustments in positions of plants as directed by Architect.
  8. Thoroughly water trees and shrubs immediately after planting.
  9. At base of each tree, leave **36 inch** diameter circle free of any grass.
- D. Supports for New Trees:
1. Provide new supports for trees noted on Drawings to be staked.
    - a. Remove nursery stakes delivered with and attached to trees.
    - b. Support shall consist of at least two tree stakes driven into hole base before backfill so roots are not damaged. Place stakes vertically and run parallel to tree trunk. Install stakes so **3 feet** of stake length is below finish grade.
    - c. Place tree ties **6 to 12 inches** below crotch of main tree canopy. Second set of tree ties may be required **18 to 24 inches** above finish grade, if directed by Architect.
    - d. Remove tops of tree stakes so top of stake is **6 inches** below main tree canopy to prevent damage to tree branches and canopy growth.
- E. Post Planting Weed Control:
1. Apply specified pre-emergent herbicide to shrub and ground cover planting areas and grass-free areas at tree bases after completion of planting.
  2. Areas shall be free of existing weed growth before application of herbicide.
- F. Weed Barrier Fabric:
1. After planting and application of herbicide in shrub beds, apply covering of specified weed barrier fabric.
  2. Achieve 100 percent coverage over ground areas.
  3. Overlap seams **6 inches** minimum.
  4. Staple at **5 feet** on center each way and within **3 inches** of edge of shrub bed, with two at each corner.
- G. Mulching:
1. After application of herbicide, mulch shrub areas with specified depth of bark or rock mulch.
  2. Place mulch to uniform depth and rake to neat finished appearance.

**END OF SECTION**

**SECTION 33 1113  
FACILITY WATER DISTRIBUTION PIPING**

**PART 1 GENERAL****1.01 SUMMARY**

- A. This Section includes water-distribution piping and related components outside the building for water service and fire-service mains.
- B. Utility-furnished products include water meters that will be furnished to the site, ready for installation.

**1.02 SUBMITTALS**

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.
- B. Shop Drawings: Pipe Materials, Valves, Detail precast concrete vault assemblies and indicate dimensions, method of field assembly, and components.
- C. Operation and maintenance data.

**1.03 QUALITY ASSURANCE**

- A. Regulatory Requirements:
  - 1. Comply with requirements of utility company supplying water. Include tapping of water mains and backflow prevention.
  - 2. Comply with standards of authorities having jurisdiction for potable-water-service piping, including materials, installation, testing, and disinfection.
  - 3. Comply with standards of authorities having jurisdiction for fire-suppression water-service piping, including materials, hose threads, installation, and testing.
- B. Piping materials shall bear label, stamp, or other markings of specified testing agency.
- C. Comply with ASTM F 645 for selection, design, and installation of thermoplastic water piping.
- D. Comply with FMG's "Approval Guide" or UL's "Fire Protection Equipment Directory" for fire-service-main products.
- E. NFPA Compliance: Comply with NFPA 24 for materials, installations, tests, flushing, and valve and hydrant supervision for fire-service-main piping for fire suppression.

**1.04 PROJECT CONDITIONS**

- A. Interruption of Existing Water-Distribution Service: Do not interrupt service to facilities occupied by Owner or others unless permitted under the following conditions and then only after arranging to provide temporary water-distribution service according to requirements indicated:
  - 1. Notify Owner no fewer than two days in advance of proposed interruption of service.
  - 2. Do not proceed with interruption of water-distribution service without Owner's written permission.

**1.05 COORDINATION**

- A. Coordinate connection to water main with utility company.

**PART 2 PRODUCTS****2.01 PIPE AND FITTINGS**

- A. Ductile-Iron Pipe: AWWA C151, Class 52, bell- and plain-spigot end unless grooved or flanged ends are indicated.
  - 1. Ductile-Iron Fittings: AWWA C110, ductile- or gray-iron standard pattern or AWWA C153, ductile-iron compact pattern.
  - 2. Glands, Gaskets, and Bolts for Mechanical Joints: AWWA C111, ductile- or gray-iron glands, rubber gaskets, and steel bolts.
  - 3. Gaskets for Push-on Joints: AWWA C111, rubber.

**2.02 GATE VALVES**

- A. AWWA, Cast-Iron Gate Valves:
  - 1. Non-rising-Stem, Resilient-Seated Gate Valves:
    - a. Description: Gray- or ductile-iron body and bonnet; with bronze or gray- or ductile-iron gate, resilient seats, bronze stem, and stem nut.
      - 1) Standard: AWWA C509.
      - 2) Minimum Pressure Rating: 200 psig.
      - 3) End Connections: Mechanical joint.
      - 4) Interior Coating: Complying with AWWA C550.

**2.03 GATE VALVE ACCESSORIES AND SPECIALTIES**

- A. Tapping-Sleeve Assemblies:
  - 1. Description: Sleeve and valve compatible with drilling machine.
    - a. Standard: MSS SP-60.

- b. Tapping Sleeve: Cast- or ductile-iron or stainless-steel, two-piece bolted sleeve with flanged outlet for new branch connection. Include sleeve matching size and type of pipe material being tapped and with recessed flange for branch valve.
    - c. Valve: AWWA, cast-iron, non-rising-stem, resilient-seated gate valve with one raised face flange mating tapping-sleeve flange.
  - B. Valve Boxes: Comply with AWWA M44 for cast-iron valve boxes. Include top section, adjustable extension of length required for depth of burial of valve, plug with lettering "WATER," and bottom section with base that fits over valve and with a barrel approximately 5 inches in diameter.
    - 1. Operating Wrenches: Steel, tee-handle with one pointed end, stem of length to operate deepest buried valve, and socket matching valve operating nut.
- 2.04 WATER METERS**
  - A. Water meters will be furnished by utility company.
- 2.05 CONCRETE METER VAULT**
  - A. Description: Precast, reinforced-concrete vault, per APWA Plan 505.
- 2.06 FIRE HYDRANTS**
  - A. Dry-Barrel Fire Hydrants:
    - 1. Description: Freestanding, with one NPS 4-1/2 and two NPS 2-1/2 outlets, 5-1/4-inch main valve, drain valve, and NPS 6 mechanical-joint inlet. Include interior coating according to AWWA C550. Hydrant shall have cast-iron body, compression-type valve opening against pressure and closing with pressure.
      - a. Standard: AWWA C502.
      - b. Pressure Rating: 150 psig minimum.

### **PART 3 EXECUTION**

- 3.01 EARTHWORK**
  - A. Refer to Division 31 Section "Earth Moving" for excavating, trenching, and backfilling.
- 3.02 PIPING APPLICATIONS**
  - A. General: Use pipe, fittings, and joining methods for piping systems according to the following applications.
  - B. Transition couplings and special fittings with pressure ratings at least equal to piping pressure rating may be used, unless otherwise indicated.
  - C. Flanges, unions, and special fittings may be used, instead of joints indicated, on aboveground piping and piping in vaults.
- 3.03 VALVE APPLICATIONS**
  - A. General Application: Use mechanical-joint-end valves for NPS 3 and larger underground installation. Use threaded- or flanged-end valves for installation in vaults. Use UL/FMG, non-rising-stem gate valves for installation with indicator posts. Use corporation valves and curb valves with ends compatible with piping, for NPS 2 and smaller installation.
  - B. Drawings indicate valve types to be used. Where specific valve types are not indicated, the following requirements apply:
    - 1. Underground Valves, NPS 3 and Larger: AWWA, cast-iron, non-rising-stem, resilient-seated gate valves with valve box.
    - 2. Underground Valves, NPS 4 and Larger, for Indicator Posts: UL/FMG, cast-iron, non-rising-stem gate valves with indicator post.
- 3.04 PIPING INSTALLATION**
  - A. Water-Main Connection: Arrange with utility company for tap of size and in location indicated in water main.
  - B. Water-Main Connection: Tap water main according to requirements of water utility company and of size and in location indicated.
  - C. Make connections larger than NPS 2 with tapping machine according to the following:
    - 1. Install tapping sleeve and tapping valve according to MSS SP-60.
    - 2. Install tapping sleeve on pipe to be tapped. Position flanged outlet for gate valve.
    - 3. Use tapping machine compatible with valve and tapping sleeve; cut hole in main. Remove tapping machine and connect water-service piping.
    - 4. Install gate valve onto tapping sleeve. Comply with MSS SP-60. Install valve with stem pointing up and with valve box.
  - D. Comply with NFPA 24 for fire-service-main piping materials and installation.
  - E. Install ductile-iron, water-service piping according to AWWA C600 and AWWA M41.
  - F. Bury piping with depth of cover over top at least 60 inches, with top at least 12 inches below level of maximum frost penetration.

- G. Extend water-service piping and connect to water-supply source and building-water-piping systems at outside face of building wall in locations and pipe sizes indicated.
  - 1. Terminate water-service piping until building-water-piping systems are installed. Terminate piping with caps, plugs, or flanges as required for piping material. Make connections to building-water-piping systems when those systems are installed.
- H. Install underground piping with restrained joints at horizontal and vertical changes in direction. Use restrained-joint piping, thrust blocks, anchors, tie-rods and clamps, and other supports.

### **3.05 ANCHORAGE INSTALLATION**

- A. Anchorage, General: Install water-distribution piping with restrained joints. Anchorages and restrained-joint types that may be used include the following:
  - 1. Concrete thrust blocks.
  - 2. Locking mechanical joints.
  - 3. Set-screw mechanical retainer glands.
  - 4. Bolted flanged joints.
  - 5. Pipe clamps and tie rods.
- B. Install anchorages for tees, plugs and caps, bends, crosses, valves, and hydrant branches.
- C. Apply full coat of asphalt or other acceptable corrosion-resistant material to surfaces of installed ferrous anchorage devices.

### **3.06 VALVE INSTALLATION**

- A. AWWA Gate Valves: Comply with AWWA C600 and AWWA M44. Install each underground valve with stem pointing up and with valve box.
- B. Corporation Valves and Curb Valves: Install each underground curb valve with head pointed up and with service box.

### **3.07 WATER METER INSTALLATION**

- A. Install water meters, piping, and specialties according to utility company's written instructions.

### **3.08 WATER METER BOX INSTALLATION**

- A. Install water meter boxes flush with surface.

### **3.09 FIRE HYDRANT INSTALLATION**

- A. General: Install each fire hydrant with separate gate valve in supply pipe, anchor with restrained joints or thrust blocks, and support in upright position.
- B. AWWA Fire Hydrants: Comply with AWWA M17.

### **3.010 CONNECTIONS**

- A. Drawings indicate general arrangement of piping, fittings, and specialties.
- B. Connect water-distribution piping to existing water main using tapping sleeve and tapping valve.
- C. Connect water-distribution piping to interior domestic water and fire-suppression piping.

### **3.011 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL**

- A. Piping Tests: Conduct piping tests before joints are covered and after concrete thrust blocks have hardened sufficiently. Fill pipeline 24 hours before testing and apply test pressure to stabilize system. Use only potable water. Complete tests in accordance with Provo City requirements.
- B. Prepare reports of testing activities.

### **3.012 IDENTIFICATION**

- A. Install continuous underground detectable warning tape during backfilling of trench for underground water-distribution piping. Locate below finished grade, directly over piping. Underground warning tapes are specified in Division 31 Section "Earth Moving."
- B. Permanently attach equipment nameplate or marker indicating plastic water-service piping, on main electrical meter panel. See Division 22 Section "Common Work Results for Plumbing" for identifying devices.

### **3.013 CLEANING**

- A. Clean and disinfect water-distribution piping as follows:
  - 1. Purge new water-distribution piping systems and parts of existing systems that have been altered, extended, or repaired before use.
  - 2. Use purging and disinfecting procedure prescribed by authorities having jurisdiction or, if method is not prescribed by authorities having jurisdiction, use procedure described in NFPA 24 for flushing of piping. Flush piping system with clean, potable water until dirty water does not appear at points of outlet.
  - 3. Use purging and disinfecting procedure prescribed by authorities having jurisdiction or, if method is not prescribed by authorities having jurisdiction, use procedure described in AWWA C651 or do as follows:

- a. Fill system or part of system with water/chlorine solution containing at least 50 ppm of chlorine; isolate and allow to stand for 24 hours.
  - b. Drain system or part of system of previous solution and refill with water/chlorine solution containing at least 200 ppm of chlorine; isolate and allow to stand for 3 hours.
  - c. After standing time, flush system with clean, potable water until no chlorine remains in water coming from system.
  - d. Submit water samples in sterile bottles to authorities having jurisdiction. Repeat procedure if biological examination shows evidence of contamination.
- B. Prepare reports of purging and disinfecting activities.

**END OF SECTION**

---

**SECTION 33 1313  
FACILITY SANITARY SEWERS**

**PART 1 GENERAL****1.01 SUMMARY**

- A. This Section includes gravity-flow, nonpressure sanitary sewerage outside the building, with the following components:
  - 1. Cleanouts.
  - 2. Precast concrete manholes.

**1.02 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS**

- A. Gravity-Flow, Nonpressure, Drainage-Piping Pressure Rating: 10-foot head of water.

**1.03 SUBMITTALS**

- A. Shop Drawings: Pipe materials, manholes (include plan, sections, details and covers).
- B. Coordination Drawings: Show pipe sizes, locations, and elevations.
- C. Field quality-control test reports.

**PART 2 PRODUCTS****2.01 PIPING MATERIALS**

- A. Refer to Part 3 "Piping Applications" Article for applications of pipe, fitting, and joining materials.

**2.02 PVC PIPE AND FITTINGS**

- A. PVC Sewer Pipe and Fittings, NPS 15 and Smaller: ASTM D 3034, SDR 35, with bell-and-spigot ends for gasketed joints with ASTM F 477, elastomeric seals.

**2.03 NONPRESSURE-TYPE PIPE COUPLINGS**

- A. Comply with ASTM C 1173, elastomeric, sleeve-type, reducing or transition coupling, for joining underground nonpressure piping. Include ends of same sizes as piping to be joined and corrosion-resistant-metal tension band and tightening mechanism on each end.
- B. Sleeve Materials:
  - 1. For Cast-Iron Soil Pipes: ASTM C 564, rubber.
  - 2. For Plastic Pipes: ASTM F 477, elastomeric seal or ASTM D 5926, PVC.
  - 3. For Dissimilar Pipes: ASTM D 5926, PVC or other material compatible with pipe materials being joined.
- C. Unshielded, Flexible Couplings: Elastomeric sleeve with stainless-steel shear ring and corrosion-resistant-metal tension band and tightening mechanism on each end.

**2.04 CLEANOUTS**

- A. Gray-Iron Cleanouts: ASME A112.36.2M, round, gray-iron housing with clamping device and round, secured, scoriated, gray-iron cover. Include gray-iron ferrule with inside calk or spigot connection and countersunk, tapered-thread, brass closure plug.
  - 1. Top-Loading Classification: Light and Heavy duty.
  - 2. Sewer Pipe Fitting and Riser to Cleanout: ASTM A 74, Service class, cast-iron soil pipe and fittings.

**2.05 MANHOLES**

- A. Standard Precast Concrete Manholes: ASTM C 478, precast, reinforced concrete, of depth indicated, with provision for sealant joints.
  - 1. Diameter: 48 inches minimum, unless otherwise indicated.
  - 2. Ballast: Increase thickness of precast concrete sections or add concrete to base section, as required to prevent flotation.
  - 3. Base Section: 6-inch minimum thickness for floor slab and 4-inch minimum thickness for walls and base riser section, and having separate base slab or base section with integral floor.
  - 4. Riser Sections: 4-inch minimum thickness, and of length to provide depth indicated.
  - 5. Top Section: Eccentric-cone type, unless concentric-cone or flat-slab-top type is indicated. Top of cone of size that matches grade rings.
  - 6. Joint Sealant: ASTM C 990, bitumen or butyl rubber.
  - 7. Resilient Pipe Connectors: ASTM C 923, cast or fitted into manhole walls, for each pipe connection.
  - 8. Steps: Individual FRP steps, wide enough to allow worker to place both feet on 1 step and designed to prevent lateral slippage off of step. Cast or anchor steps into sidewalls at 12- to 16-inch intervals. Omit steps if total depth from floor of manhole to finished grade is less than 60 inches.



9. Adjusting Rings: Interlocking rings with level or sloped edge in thickness and diameter matching manhole frame and cover. Include sealant recommended by ring manufacturer.
10. Grade Rings: Reinforced-concrete rings, 6- to 9-inch total thickness, to match diameter of manhole frame and cover.
11. Manhole Frames and Covers: Ferrous; 24-inch ID by 7- to 9-inch riser with 4-inch- minimum width flange and 26-inch- diameter cover. Include indented top design with lettering cast into cover, using wording equivalent to "SANITARY SEWER."
  - a. Material: ASTM A 48/A 48M, Class 35 gray iron, unless otherwise indicated.

## 2.06 CONCRETE

- A. General: Cast-in-place concrete according to ACI 318/318R, ACI 350R, and the following:
  1. Cement: ASTM C 150, Type II.
  2. Fine Aggregate: ASTM C 33, sand.
  3. Coarse Aggregate: ASTM C 33, crushed gravel.
  4. Water: Potable.
- B. Portland Cement Design Mix: 4000 psi minimum, with 0.45 maximum water/cementitious materials ratio.
  1. Reinforcement Fabric: ASTM A 185, steel, welded wire fabric, plain.
  2. Reinforcement Bars: ASTM A 615/A 615M, Grade 60, deformed steel.
- C. Manhole Channels and Benches: Factory or field formed from concrete. Portland cement design mix, 4000 psi minimum, with 0.45 maximum water/cementitious materials ratio. Include channels and benches in manholes.
  1. Channels: Concrete invert, formed to same width as connected piping, with height of vertical sides to three-fourths of pipe diameter. Form curved channels with smooth, uniform radius and slope.
    - a. Invert Slope: 2 percent through manhole.
  2. Benches: Concrete, sloped to drain into channel.
    - a. Slope: 8 percent.

## PART 3 EXECUTION

### 3.01 PIPING APPLICATIONS

- A. Pipe couplings and fittings with pressure ratings at least equal to piping rating may be used in applications below, unless otherwise indicated.
  1. Use nonpressure-type flexible couplings where required to join gravity-flow, nonpressure sewer piping, unless otherwise indicated.
    - a. Unshielded flexible couplings for same or minor difference OD pipes.
    - b. Unshielded, increaser/reducer-pattern, flexible couplings for pipes with different OD.
    - c. Ring-type flexible couplings for piping of different sizes where annular space between smaller piping's OD and larger piping's ID permits installation.
- B. Gravity-Flow, Nonpressure Sewer Piping: Use the following pipe materials for each size range:
  1. NPS 3 and NPS 4: NPS 4 PVC sewer pipe and fittings, gaskets, and gasketed joints.
  2. NPS 5 and NPS 6: NPS 6 PVC sewer pipe and fittings, gaskets, and gasketed joints.
  3. NPS 8 and NPS 10: PVC sewer pipe and fittings, gaskets, and gasketed joints.
  4. NPS 12 and NPS 15: PVC sewer pipe and fittings, gaskets, and gasketed joints.

### 3.02 PIPING INSTALLATION

- A. General Locations and Arrangements: Drawing plans and details indicate general location and arrangement of underground sanitary sewerage piping. Location and arrangement of piping layout take design considerations into account. Install piping as indicated, to extent practical. Where specific installation is not indicated, follow piping manufacturer's written instructions.
- B. Install piping beginning at low point, true to grades and alignment indicated with unbroken continuity of invert. Place bell ends of piping facing upstream. Install gaskets, seals, sleeves, and couplings according to manufacturer's written instructions for using lubricants, cements, and other installation requirements.
- C. Install manholes for changes in direction, unless fittings are indicated. Use fittings for branch connections, unless direct tap into existing sewer is indicated.
- D. Install proper size increasers, reducers, and couplings where different sizes or materials of pipes and fittings are connected. Reducing size of piping in direction of flow is prohibited.
- E. Install gravity-flow, nonpressure, drainage piping according to the following:
  1. Install piping pitched down in direction of flow, at slope indicated.
  2. Install piping with 48-inch minimum cover.
  3. Install piping below frost line.

4. Install PVC sewer piping according to ASTM D 2321 and ASTM F 1668.

- F. Clear interior of piping and manholes of dirt and superfluous material as work progresses. Maintain swab or drag in piping, and pull past each joint as it is completed. Place plug in end of incomplete piping at end of day and when work stops.

### **3.03 PIPE JOINT CONSTRUCTION**

- A. Where specific joint construction is not indicated, follow piping manufacturer's written instructions.
- B. Join gravity-flow, nonpressure, drainage piping according to the following:
1. Join PVC sewer piping according to ASTM D 2321 and ASTM D 3034 for elastomeric-gasket joints.
  2. Join dissimilar pipe materials with nonpressure-type, flexible couplings.

### **3.04 MANHOLE INSTALLATION**

- A. General: Install manholes complete with appurtenances and accessories indicated.
- B. Install precast concrete manhole sections with sealants according to ASTM C 891.
- C. Form continuous concrete channels and benches between inlets and outlet.
- D. Set tops of frames and covers flush with finished surface of manholes that occur in pavements.

### **3.05 CLEANOUT INSTALLATION**

- A. Install cleanouts and riser extensions from sewer pipes to cleanouts at grade. Use cast-iron soil pipe fittings in sewer pipes at branches for cleanouts and cast-iron soil pipe for riser extensions to cleanouts. Install piping so cleanouts open in direction of flow in sewer pipe.
1. Use light-duty, top-loading classification cleanouts in earth or unpaved foot-traffic areas.
  2. Use heavy-duty, top-loading classification cleanouts in vehicle-traffic service areas.
- B. Set cleanout frames and covers in earth in cast-in-place-concrete block, 18 by 18 by 12 inches deep. Set with tops 1 inch above surrounding grade.
- C. Set cleanout frames and covers in concrete pavement with tops flush with pavement surface.

### **3.06 CONNECTIONS**

- A. Make connections to existing piping and underground manholes in accordance with utility company standards.

### **3.07 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL**

- A. Inspect interior of piping to determine whether line displacement or other damage has occurred. Inspect after approximately 24 inches of backfill is in place, and again at completion of Project.
1. Submit separate report for each system inspection.
  2. Defects requiring correction include the following:
    - a. Alignment: Less than full diameter of inside of pipe is visible between structures.
    - b. Deflection: Flexible piping with deflection that prevents passage of ball or cylinder of size not less than 92.5 percent of piping diameter.
    - c. Crushed, broken, cracked, or otherwise damaged piping.
    - d. Infiltration: Water leakage into piping.
    - e. Exfiltration: Water leakage from or around piping.
  3. Replace defective piping using new materials, and repeat inspections until defects are within allowances specified.
  4. Re-inspect and repeat procedure until results are satisfactory.
- B. Test new piping systems, and parts of existing systems that have been altered, extended, or repaired, for leaks and defects.
1. Do not enclose, cover, or put into service before inspection and approval.
  2. Test completed piping systems according to requirements of authorities having jurisdiction.
  3. Schedule tests and inspections by authorities having jurisdiction with at least 24 hours' advance notice.
  4. Submit separate report for each test.
  5. Hydrostatic Tests: Test sanitary sewerage according to requirements of authorities having jurisdiction and the following:
    - a. Allowable leakage is maximum of 50 gal./inch of nominal pipe size per mile of pipe, during 24-hour period.
    - b. Close openings in system and fill with water.
    - c. Purge air and refill with water.
    - d. Disconnect water supply.
    - e. Test and inspect joints for leaks.
    - f. Option: Test ductile-iron piping according to AWWA C600, "Hydrostatic Testing" Section. Use test pressure of at least 10 psig.

6. Air Tests: Test sanitary sewerage according to requirements of authorities having jurisdiction, UNI-B-6, and the following:
  - a. Option: Test plastic gravity sewer piping according to ASTM F 1417.
  - b. Option: Test concrete gravity sewer piping according to ASTM C 924.
- C. Leaks and loss in test pressure constitute defects that must be repaired.
- D. Replace leaking piping using new materials, and repeat testing until leakage is within allowances specified.

**END OF SECTION**

---

**SECTION 33 4100  
STORM UTILITY DRAINAGE PIPING**

**PART 1 GENERAL****1.01 SUMMARY**

- A. This Section includes gravity-flow, nonpressure storm drainage outside the building, with the following components:
  - 1. Cleanouts.
  - 2. Precast Concrete Manholes

**1.02 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS**

- A. Gravity-Flow, Nonpressure, Drainage-Piping Pressure Rating: 10-foot head of water.

**1.03 SUBMITTALS**

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.
- B. Shop Drawings: For manholes, catch basins and inlet boxes (include sections, details, frames and covers, and catch basin frames and grates).
- C. Coordination Drawings: Show pipe sizes, locations, and elevations.
- D. Field quality-control test reports. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.

**PART 2 PRODUCTS****2.01 PIPING MATERIALS**

- A. Refer to Part 3 "Piping Applications" Article for applications of pipe, fitting, and joining materials.

**2.02 HDPE PIPE AND FITTINGS**

- A. Corrugated HDPE Drainage Pipe and Fittings NPS 10 and Smaller: AASHTO M 252M, Type S, with smooth waterway for coupling joints.
  - 1. Watertight Couplings: AASHTO M 252M, corrugated, matching tube and fittings.
- B. Corrugated HDPE Drainage Pipe and Fittings NPS 12 and Larger: AASHTO M 294M, Type S, with smooth waterway for coupling joints.
  - 1. Watertight Couplings: AASHTO M 294M, corrugated, matching pipe and fittings.

**2.03 PVC PIPE AND FITTINGS**

- A. PVC Sewer Pipe and Fittings, NPS 15 and Smaller: ASTM D 3034, SDR 35, with bell-and-spigot ends for gasketed joints with ASTM F 477, elastomeric seals.

**2.04 NONPRESSURE-TYPE PIPE COUPLINGS**

- A. Comply with ASTM C 1173, elastomeric, sleeve-type, reducing or transition coupling, for joining underground nonpressure piping. Include ends of same sizes as piping to be joined and corrosion-resistant-metal tension band and tightening mechanism on each end.
- B. Sleeve Materials:
  - 1. For Cast-Iron Soil Pipes: ASTM C 564, rubber.
  - 2. For Plastic Pipes: ASTM F 477, elastomeric seal or ASTM D 5926, PVC.
  - 3. For Dissimilar Pipes: ASTM D 5926, PVC or other material compatible with pipe materials being joined.
- C. Unshielded Flexible Couplings: Elastomeric sleeve with stainless-steel shear ring and corrosion-resistant-metal tension band and tightening mechanism on each end.

**2.05 CLEANOUTS**

- A. Gray-Iron Cleanouts: ASME A112.36.2M, round, gray-iron housing with clamping device and round, secured, scoriated, gray-iron cover. Include gray-iron ferrule with inside calk or spigot connection and countersunk, tapered-thread, brass closure plug.
  - 1. Top-Loading Classification(s): Light and Heavy duty.
  - 2. Sewer Pipe Fitting and Riser to Cleanout: ASTM A 74, Service class, cast-iron soil pipe and fittings.

**2.06 CONCRETE**

- A. General: Cast-in-place concrete according to ACI 318/318R, ACI 350R, and the following:

1. Cement: ASTM C 150, Type II.
2. Fine Aggregate: ASTM C 33, sand.
3. Coarse Aggregate: ASTM C 33, crushed gravel.
4. Water: Potable.

### 2.07 CATCH BASINS

- A. Standard Precast Concrete Catch Basins: ASTM C 478, precast, reinforced concrete, of depth indicated, with provision for sealant joints.
  1. Base Section: 6-inch minimum thickness for floor slab and 4-inch minimum thickness for walls and base riser section, and having separate base slab or base section with integral floor.
  2. Joint Sealant: ASTM C 990, bitumen or butyl rubber.
- B. Frames and Grates: ASTM A 536, Grade 60-40-18, ductile iron designed for A-16, structural loading. Include 24-inch ID by 7- to 9-inch riser with 4-inch minimum width flange, and 26-inch-diameter flat grate with small square or short-slotted drainage openings.
  1. Grate Free Area: Approximately 50 percent, unless otherwise indicated.

## PART 3 EXECUTION

### 3.01 PIPING APPLICATIONS

- A. Pipe couplings and fittings with pressure ratings at least equal to piping rating may be used in applications below, unless otherwise indicated.
  1. Use nonpressure-type flexible couplings where required to join gravity-flow, nonpressure sewer piping, unless otherwise indicated.
    - a. Unshielded flexible couplings for same or minor difference OD pipes.
    - b. Unshielded, increaser/reducer-pattern, flexible couplings for pipes with different OD.
    - c. Ring-type flexible couplings for piping of different sizes where annular space between smaller piping's OD and larger piping's ID permits installation.
- B. Gravity-Flow, Nonpressure Sewer Piping: Use the following pipe materials for each size range:
  1. NPS 3 to NPS 6: Corrugated PE drainage pipe and fittings, watertight couplings, and coupled joints.
  2. NPS 8 to NPS 15: Corrugated PE drainage pipe and fittings, watertight couplings, and coupled joints.
  3. NPS 18 to NPS 30: Corrugated PE pipe and fittings, watertight couplings, and coupled joints.

### 3.02 PIPING INSTALLATION

- A. General Locations and Arrangements: Drawing plans and details indicate general location and arrangement of underground storm drainage piping. Location and arrangement of piping layout take design considerations into account. Install piping as indicated, to extent practical. Where specific installation is not indicated, follow piping manufacturer's written instructions.
- B. Install piping beginning at low point, true to grades and alignment indicated with unbroken continuity of invert. Place bell ends of piping facing upstream. Install gaskets, seals, sleeves, and couplings according to manufacturer's written instructions for using lubricants, cements, and other installation requirements.
- C. Install manholes for changes in direction unless fittings are indicated. Use fittings for branch connections unless direct tap into existing sewer is indicated.
- D. Install proper size increasers, reducers, and couplings where different sizes or materials of pipes and fittings are connected. Reducing size of piping in direction of flow is prohibited.
- E. Install gravity-flow, nonpressure drainage piping according to the following:
  1. Install piping pitched down in direction of flow, at slope indicated.
  2. Install piping with 24-inch minimum cover.
- F. Clear interior of piping and manholes of dirt and superfluous material as work progresses.

### 3.03 CLEANOUT INSTALLATION

- A. Install cleanouts and riser extensions from sewer pipes to cleanouts at grade. Use cast-iron soil pipe fittings in sewer pipes at branches for cleanouts and cast-iron soil pipe for riser extensions to cleanouts. Install piping so cleanouts open in direction of flow in sewer pipe.

1. Use light-duty, top-loading classification cleanouts in earth or unpaved foot-traffic areas.
  2. Use heavy-duty, top-loading classification cleanouts in vehicle-traffic service areas.
- B. Set cleanout frames and covers in earth in cast-in-place-concrete block, 18 by 18 by 12 inches deep. Set with tops 1 inch above surrounding grade.
- C. Set cleanout frames and covers in concrete pavement with tops flush with pavement surface.

### **3.04 CATCH BASIN INSTALLATION**

- A. Set frames and grates to elevations indicated.

### **3.05 CONNECTIONS**

- A. Connect nonpressure, gravity-flow drainage piping to building's storm building drains specified in Division 22 Section "Facility Storm Drainage Piping."
- B. Make connections to existing piping and underground manholes.
1. Use commercially manufactured wye fittings for piping branch connections. Remove section of existing pipe; install wye fitting into existing piping; and encase entire wye fitting, plus 6-inch overlap, with not less than 6 inches of concrete with 28-day compressive strength of 3000 psi.

### **3.06 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL**

- A. Inspect interior of piping to determine whether line displacement or other damage has occurred. Inspect after approximately 24 inches of backfill is in place, and again at completion of Project.
1. Submit separate report for each system inspection.
  2. Defects requiring correction include the following:
    - a. Alignment: Less than full diameter of inside of pipe is visible between structures.
    - b. Deflection: Flexible piping with deflection that prevents passage of ball or cylinder of size not less than 92.5 percent of piping diameter.
    - c. Crushed, broken, cracked, or otherwise damaged piping.
    - d. Infiltration: Water leakage into piping.
    - e. Exfiltration: Water leakage from or around piping.
  3. Replace defective piping using new materials, and repeat inspections until defects are within allowances specified.
  4. Reinspect and repeat procedure until results are satisfactory.
- B. Test new piping systems, and parts of existing systems that have been altered, extended, or repaired, for leaks and defects.
1. Do not enclose, cover, or put into service before inspection and approval.
  2. Test completed piping systems according to requirements of authorities having jurisdiction.
  3. Schedule tests and inspections by authorities having jurisdiction with at least 24 hours' advance notice.
  4. Submit separate report for each test.
  5. Air Tests: Test storm drainage according to requirements of authorities having jurisdiction, UNI-B-6, and the following:
    - a. Option: Test plastic gravity sewer piping according to ASTM F 1417.
- C. Leaks and loss in test pressure constitute defects that must be repaired.
- D. Replace leaking piping using new materials, and repeat testing until leakage is within allowances specified.

**END OF SECTION**

---